MBL/WHOI

0 0301 0015789 7

PROTOZOOLOGY

593.
H 95
3

(3rd Edition)

PROTOZOOLOGY

By

RICHARD R. KUDO, D.Sc.

*Professor of Zoology
The University of Illinois
Urbana, Illinois*

With three hundred and thirty-six illustrations

CHARLES C THOMAS · PUBLISHER

301-327 EAST LAWRENCE AVENUE
SPRINGFIELD · ILLINOIS

1946

Published by CHARLES C THOMAS
301-327 EAST LAWRENCE AVENUE, SPRINGFIELD, ILLINOIS

Published simultaneously in Canada by
THE RYERSON PRESS, TORONTO

All rights in this book are reserved. No part may be reproduced in any form whatsoever without permission in writing from the publisher, except by a reviewer who wishes to quote extremely brief passages in connection with a critical review. Reproduction in whole or in part in digests, in condensations of the literature, in lectures, or in films; or by multigraphing, lithoprinting, or by any other processes or devices, is reserved by the publisher. For information, address Charles C Thomas.

Copyright, 1946, by CHARLES C THOMAS

First Edition, January 1931

Second Edition, September 1939

Third Edition, January 1946

Printed in the United States of America

*"The revelations of the Microscope are perhaps not
excelled in importance by those of the telescope.*

*While exciting our curiosity, our wonder
and admiration, they have proved of
infinite service in advancing our
knowledge of things
around us."*

LEIDY

Preface to the third edition

IN REVISING *Protozoology* for the second time, the author has maintained the original aim of the work for setting forth "introductory information on the common and representative genera of all groups of both free-living and parasitic Protozoa," and endeavored to limit its expansion to minimum. Errors, typographical and otherwise, which had appeared in the last edition have been corrected. In this he is much indebted to his former students, both graduates and undergraduates, who untiringly detected them and suggested improvement of many passages for clearer presentation. The criticisms offered by the reviewers of the second edition have also been considered.

Published papers that had been overlooked before and those that have appeared in the last six years have been consulted and referred to in the present edition. Chapters 4 to 6 were largely rewritten and enlarged in the light of recent works. Alterations and additions have been made in all other chapters. Two new chapters have been added; they are chapter 7 (Major groups and phylogeny of Protozoa) and chapter 45 (Collection, cultivation, and observation of Protozoa).

Since there is now a greater demand of the information on Protozoa that parasitize man than in the past, they have been more thoroughly treated in the present edition.

The author continues to believe in the importance of adequate illustrations in this sort of work. Sixty-nine new figures have been added; of these forty-seven have been newly prepared or rearranged from former figures, while twenty-two have been taken from his *Manual of human Protozoa* (1944).

The author once more expresses his indebtedness to numerous authors of published papers for the materials which have been incorporated in the work. He is under special obligation to Doctor Harold Kirby, University of California; Doctor Reginald D. Manwell, Syracuse University; Doctor Tracy M. Sonneborn, Indiana University; Doctor David H. Wenrich, University of Pennsylvania; and Doctor Lorande L. Woodruff, Yale University, for their kind advices, sincere criticisms and suggestions. He further wishes to thank Mr. Charles C Thomas for the interest and care with which the present edition has been put in print.

RICHARD R. KUDO

Urbana, Illinois
October, 1945

Preface to the second edition

THE present work is similar in its primary aim to that of its predecessor, *Handbook of Protozoology* (1931), in presenting "introductory information on the common and representative genera of all groups of both free-living and parasitic Protozoa," to advanced undergraduate and graduate students in zoology in colleges and universities. With the expansion of courses in protozoology at the University of Illinois and elsewhere, it seemed advisable to incorporate more material for lecture and discussion, in addition to the enlargement of the taxonomic section. The change of the text-contents has, therefore, been so extensive that a new title, *Protozoology*, is now given.

Chapters 1 to 6 deal with introduction, ecology, morphology, physiology, reproduction, and variation and heredity, of Protozoa. Each subject-matter has been considered in the light of more recent investigations as fully as the space permitted. Selection of material from so great a number of references has been a very difficult task. If any important papers have been omitted, it was entirely through over-sight on the part of the author.

The taxonomic portion (Chapters 7 to 43) has also been completely rewritten and enlarged. Numerous genera and species, both old and new, have been added; synonymy of genera and species has as far as possible been brought down to date; new taxonomic arrangement of major and minor subdivisions in each class has resulted in numerous changes. The class Ciliata has completely been reclassified, following Kahl's admirable work on free-living ciliates (1930-1935); however, unlike the latter, all parasitic ciliates have also been considered in the present work.

The author continues to believe that good illustrations are indispensable in this kind of work, since they are far more easily comprehended than lengthy descriptions. Therefore, many old illustrations have been replaced by more suitable ones and numerous new illustrations have further been added. All illustrations were especially prepared for this work and in the case of those which have been redrawn from illustrations found in published papers, the indebtedness of the author is indicated by mentioning the names of the investigators from whose works the illustrations were taken. In order to increase the reference value, all figures are accompanied by scales of magnification which are uniformly somewhat greater than those of *Handbook of Protozoology*, since the microscope now used in the class-room has been improved upon in recent years.

The list of references appended to the end of each chapter has been enlarged and is meant to aid those who wish to obtain fuller information than that which is given in this volume. Since comprehensive monographs on various groups of Protozoa are widely scattered and ordinarily not easily accessible, the author has endeavored to provide for each group as complete an information as possible for general reference purpose within the limited space, and hopes that the present work has reference value for teachers of biology, field workers in pure and applied biological sciences, veterinarians, physicians, public health workers, laboratory technicians, and others.

The author is under obligation to numerous writers for their valuable contributions which have been incorporated in the text. Special thanks are due Professor L. R. Cleveland, Harvard University; Professor R. P. Hall, New York University; Professor H. Kirby, Jr., University of California; Professor L. E. Noland, University of Wisconsin; Professor H. J. Van Cleave, University of Illinois; Professor D. H. Wenrich, University of Pennsylvania; and Professor L. L. Woodruff, Yale University, for their valued criticisms and suggestions. The author further wishes to express his appreciation to Mr. Charles C Thomas, for his patient and kind cooperation which has aided greatly in the completion and appearance of the present work.

R.R.K.

Urbana, Illinois, U.S.A.
July, 1939

CONTENTS

PREFACE.....	vii
PART I: GENERAL BIOLOGY.....	3
CHAPTER	
1 Introduction.....	5
Relationship of protozoology to other fields of biological science, p. 6; the history of protozoology, p. 10.	
2 Ecology.....	17
The free-living Protozoa, p. 17; the parasitic Protozoa, p. 24.	
3 Morphology.....	33
The nucleus, p. 34; the cytosome, p. 38; locomotor organellae, p. 41; fibrillar structures, p. 52; protective or supportive organellae, p. 61; hold-fast organellae, p. 65; the parabasal apparatus, p. 66; the blepharoplast, p. 67; the Golgi apparatus, p. 68; the chondriosomes, p. 70; the contractile and other vacuoles, p. 73; the chromatophore and associated organellae, p. 78.	
4 Physiology.....	84
Nutrition, p. 84; the reserve food matter, p. 98; respiration, p. 101; excretion and secretion, p. 103; movements, p. 106; irritability, p. 113.	
5 Reproduction.....	122
Nuclear division, p. 122; cytosomic division, p. 143; colony formation, p. 145; asexual reproduction, p. 147; sexual reproduction and life-cycles, p. 149; regeneration, p. 170.	
6 Variation and heredity.....	176
PART II: TAXONOMY AND SPECIAL BIOLOGY.....	191
CHAPTER	
7 Major groups and phylogeny of Protozoa.....	193
8 Phylum Protozoa.....	198
Subphylum 1 Plasmodroma.....	198
Class 1 Mastigophora.....	198
Subclass 1 Phytomastigina.....	200
Order 1 Chrysomonadina.....	200

9	Order 2 Cryptomonadina	213
10	Order 3 Phytomonadina	217
11	Order 4 Euglenoidina	232
	Order 5 Chloromonadina	243
12	Order 6 Dinoflagellata	245
13	Subclass 2 Zoomastigina	263
	Order 1 Rhizomastigina	263
14	Order 2 Protomonadina	268
15	Order 3 Polymastigina	293
16	Order 4 Hypermastigina	318
17	Class 2 Sarcodina	328
	Subclass 1 Rhizopoda	329
	Order 1 Proteomyxa	329
18	Order 2 Mycetozoa	335
19	Order 3 Amoebina	343
20	Order 4 Testacea	374
21	Order 5 Foraminifera	394
22	Subclass 2 Actinopoda	406
	Order 1 Heliozoa	406
23	Order 2 Radiolaria	417
24	Class 3 Sporozoa	427
	Subclass 1 Telosporidia	427
	Order 1 Gregarinida	428
25	Order 2 Coccidia	464
26	Order 3 Haemosporidia	484
27	Subclass 2 Acnidosporidia	507
	Order 1 Sarcosporidia	507
	Order 2 Haplosporidia	510
28	Subclass 3 Cnidosporidia	515
	Order 1 Myxosporidia	515
	Order 2 Actinomyxidina	531
29	Order 3 Microsporidia	535
	Order 4 Helicosporidia	542
30	Subphylum 2 Ciliophora	545
	Class 1 Ciliata	545
	Subclass 1 Protociliata	547
31	Subclass 2 Euciliata	551
	Order 1 Holotricha	551
	Suborder 1 Astomata	552
32	Suborder 2 Gymnostomata	560
	Tribe 1 Prostomata	560
33	Tribe 2 Pleurostomata	580

CONTENTS

xiii

	Tribe 3 Hypostomata.....	585
34	Suborder 3 Trichostomata.....	593
35	Suborder 4 Hymenostomata.....	608
36	Suborder 5 Thigmotricha.....	623
37	Suborder 6 Apostomea.....	630
38	Order 2 Spirotricha.....	636
	Suborder 1 Heterotricha.....	636
39	Suborder 2 Oligotricha.....	652
40	Suborder 3 Ctenostomata.....	665
41	Suborder 4 Hypotricha.....	668
42	Order 3 Chonotricha.....	681
43	Order 4 Peritricha.....	683
44	Class Suctoria.....	695
45	Collection, cultivation, and observation of Protozoa	710
AUTHOR AND SUBJECT INDEX.....		731

PROTOZOOLOGY

PROTOZOOLOGY
PART I: GENERAL BIOLOGY

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

PROTOZOA are unicellular animals. The body of a protozoan is morphologically a single cell and manifests all characteristics common to the living thing. The various activities which make up the phenomena of life are carried on by parts within the body or cell. These parts are comparable with the organs of a metazoan which are composed of a large number of cells grouped into tissues and are called **organellae** or cell-organs. Thus one sees that the one-celled protozoan is a complete organism somewhat unlike the cell of a metazoan, each of which is dependent upon other cells and cannot live independently. From this viewpoint, certain students of protozoology maintain that the Protozoa are non-cellular, and not unicellular, organisms. Dobell (1911) for example, pointed out that the term "cell" is employed to designate (1) the whole protozoan body, (2) a part of a metazoan organism, and (3) a potential whole organism (a fertilized egg) which consequently resulted in a confused state of knowledge regarding living things, and, therefore, proposed to define a cell as a mass of protoplasm composing part of an organism, and further considered that the protozoan is a non-cellular but complete organism, differently organized as compared with cellular organisms, the Metazoa and Metaphyta. The great majority of protozoologists, however, continue to consider the Protozoa as unicellular animals. Through the processes of organic evolution, they have undergone cytological differentiation and the Metazoa histological differentiation.

In being unicellular, the Protozoa and the Protophyta are alike. The majority of the Protozoa are quite clearly distinguishable from the majority of the Protophyta on the basis of nuclear condition, method of nutrition, direction of division-plane, etc. While numerous Protophyta appear to possess scattered nuclear material or none at all, the Protozoa contain at least one nucleus. It is generally considered that the binary fission of the Protozoa and of the Protophyta is longitudinal and transverse, respectively. A great majority of Ciliata, however, multiply by transverse division. In general the nutrition of Protozoa is holozoic and of Protophyta, holophytic; but there are large numbers of Protozoa which nourish themselves by holophytic method. Thus an absolute and clean-cut separation of the two groups of unicellular organisms is not possible. Haeckel

coined the name **Protista** to include these organisms in a single group, but this is not generally adopted, since it includes undoubted animals and plants, thus creating an equal amount of confusion between it and the animal or the plant. Calkins (1933) excluded chromatophore-bearing Mastigophora from his treatment of Protozoa, thus placing organisms similar in every way, except the presence or absence of chromatophores, in two different groups. This intermingling of characteristics between the two groups of microorganisms shows clearly their close interrelationship and suggests strongly their common ancestry.

Although the majority of Protozoa are solitary and the body is composed of a single cell, there are several forms in which the organism is made up of more than one cell. These forms, which are called colonial Protozoa (p. 145), are well represented by the members of Phytomastigina, in which the individuals are either joined by cytoplasmic threads or embedded in a common matrix. These cells are alike both in structure and in function, although in a few forms there may be a differentiation of the individuals into reproductive and vegetative cells. Unlike the cells in a metazoan which form tissues, these vegetative cells of colonial Protozoa are not dependent upon other cells; therefore, they do not form any tissue. The reproductive cells produce zygotes through sexual fusion, which subsequently undergo repeated division and may produce a stage comparable with the blastula stage of a metazoan, but never reaching the gastrula stage. Thus colonial Protozoa are only cell-aggregates without histological differentiation and may thus be distinguished from the Metazoa.

Between 15,000 and 20,000 species of Protozoa are known to man. From comparatively simple forms such as Amoeba, up to highly complicated organisms as represented by numerous ciliates, the Protozoa vary exceedingly in their body organization, morphological characteristics, behavior, habitat, etc., which necessitates a taxonomic arrangement for proper consideration as set forth in detail in chapters 8 to 44.

Relationship of protozoology to other fields of biological science

A brief consideration of the relationship of Protozoology to other fields of biology and its possible applications may not be out of place here. Since the Protozoa are single-celled animals manifesting the characteristics common to all living things, they have been studied by numerous investigators with a view to dis-

covering the nature and mechanism of various phenomena, the sum-total of which is known collectively as life. Though the investigators generally have been disappointed in the results, inasmuch as the assumed simplicity of unicellular organisms has proved to be offset by the complexity of their cell-structure, nevertheless any discussion of biological principles today must take into account the information obtained from studies of Protozoa. It is now commonly recognized that adequate information on various types of Protozoa is a prerequisite to a thorough comprehension of biology and to proper application of biological principles.

Practically all students agree in assuming that the higher types of animals have been derived from organisms which existed in the remote past and which probably were somewhat similar to the Protozoa of the present day. Since there is no sharp distinction between the Protozoa and the Protophyta or between the Protozoa and the Metazoa, and since there are intermediate forms between the major classes of the Protozoa themselves, progress in protozoology contributes toward the advancement of our knowledge on the probable steps by which living things in general evolved.

Geneticists have undertaken studies on heredity and variation among Protozoa. "Unicellular animals," wrote Jennings (1909), "present all the problems of heredity and variation in miniature. The struggle for existence in a fauna of untold thousands showing as much variety of form and function as any higher group, works itself out, with ultimate survival of the fittest, in a few days under our eyes, in a finger bowl. For studying heredity and variation we get a generation a day, and we may keep unlimited numbers of pedigreed stock in a watch glass that can be placed under the microscope." Morphological variations are encountered commonly in all forms. Whether variation is due to germinal or environmental conditions, is often difficult to determine. The recent discovery of the mating types in *Paramecium aurelia* (Sonneborn; Kimbell) and in *P. bursaria* (Jennings) will probably assist in bringing to light many genetic problems of Protozoa which have remained obscure in the past.

Parasitic Protozoa are limited to one or more specific hosts. Through studies of the forms belonging to one and the same genus or species, the phylogenetic relation among the host animals may be established or verified. The mosquitoes belonging to the genera *Culex* and *Anopheles*, for instance, are known to transmit avian and human Plasmodium respectively. They are further infected by specific microsporidian parasites. For instance, *Thelohania legeri*

has been found widely only in many species of anopheline mosquitoes; *T. opacita* has, on the other hand, been found exclusively in culicine mosquitoes, although the larvae of the species belonging to these two genera live frequently in the same body of water. By observing certain intestinal Protozoa in some monkeys, Hegner obtained evidence on the probable phylogenetic relationship between them and other higher mammals. The relation of various Protozoa of the wood-roach to those of the termite, as revealed by Cleveland and his associates, gives further proof that the Blattidae and the Isoptera are of the common origin.

Study of a particular group of parasitic Protozoa and their hosts may throw light on the geographic condition of the earth in the remote past. The members of the genus *Zelleriella* are usually found in the colon of the frogs belonging to the family Leptodactylidae. Through an extensive study of these amphibians from South America and Australia, Metcalf found that the species of *Zelleriella* occurring in the frogs of the two continents are almost identical. He finds it more difficult to conceive of convergent or parallel evolution of both the hosts and the parasites, than to assume that there once existed between Patagonia and Australia a land connection over which frogs, containing *Zelleriella*, migrated.

Experimental studies of large Protozoa have thrown light on the relation between the nucleus and the cytoplasm, and have furnished a basis for an understanding of regeneration in animals. In Protozoa we find various types of nuclear divisions ranging from a simple amitotic division to a complex process comparable in every detail with the typical metazoan mitosis. A part of our knowledge in cytology is based upon studies of Protozoa.

Through the efforts of various investigators in the past fifty years, it has now become known that numerous parasitic Protozoa occur in man (Kudo, 1944). *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Balantidium coli*, and three species of *Plasmodium*, all of which are pathogenic to man, are widely distributed throughout the world. In certain restricted areas are found other pathogenic forms, such as *Trypanosoma* and *Leishmania*. Since all parasitic Protozoa presumably have originated in free-living forms and since our knowledge of the morphology, physiology, and reproduction of the parasitic forms has largely been obtained in conjunction with the studies of the free-living organisms, a general knowledge of the entire phylum is necessary to understand the parasitic forms.

Recent studies have further revealed that almost all domestic animals are hosts to numerous parasitic Protozoa, many of which

are responsible for serious infectious diseases. Many of the forms found in domestic animals are morphologically indistinguishable from those occurring in man. *Balantidium coli* is now generally considered as a parasite of swine, and man is its secondary host. Knowledge of protozoan parasites is useful to medical practitioners, just as it is essential to veterinarians inasmuch as certain diseases in animals, such as Texas fever, dourine, nagana, blackhead, coccidiosis, etc., are caused by protozoans.

Sanitary betterment and improvement are fundamental requirements in the modern civilized world. One of man's necessities is safe drinking water. The majority of Protozoa live freely in various bodies of water and some of them are responsible, if present in sufficiently large numbers, for giving certain odors to the waters of reservoirs or ponds (p. 100). But these Protozoa which are occasionally harmful are relatively small in number compared with those which are beneficial to man. It is generally understood that bacteria live on various waste materials present in polluted water, but that upon reaching a certain population, they would cease to multiply and would allow the excess organic substances to undergo decomposition. Numerous holozoic Protozoa, however, feed on the bacteria and prevent them from reaching the saturation population. Protozoa thus seem to help indirectly in the purification of the water. Protozoology therefore must be considered as part of modern sanitary science.

Young fish feed extensively on small aquatic organisms, such as larvae of insects, small crustaceans, annelids, etc., all of which depend largely upon Protozoa and Protophyta as sources of food supply. Thus the fish are indirectly dependent upon Protozoa as food material. On the other hand, there are numbers of Protozoa which live at the expense of fish. The Myxosporidia are almost exclusively parasites of fish and sometimes cause death to large numbers of commercially important fishes. Success in fish-culture, therefore, requires among other things a thorough knowledge of Protozoa.

Since Russel and Hutchinson suggested some thirty years ago that Protozoa are probably a cause of limitation of the numbers, and therefore the activities of bacteria in the soil and thus tend to decrease the amount of nitrogen which is given to the soil by the nitrifying bacteria, several investigators have brought out the fact that in the soils of temperate climates Protozoa are present commonly and active throughout the year. The exact relation between specific protozoans and bacteria in the soil is a matter which still awaits future investigations, although numerous experiments and

observations have already been made. All soil investigators should be acquainted with the biology and taxonomy of free-living protozoans.

It is a matter of common knowledge that the silkworm and the honey bee suffer from protozoan infection known as microsporidiosis. Sericulture in southern Europe suffered great damages in the middle of the nineteenth century because of the "pébrine" disease, caused by the microsporidian, *Nosema bombycis*. During the first decade of the present century, another microsporidian, *Nosema apis*, was found to infect a large number of honey bees. Methods of control have been developed and put into practice so that these microsporidian infections are at present not serious, even though they still occur. On the other hand, other Microsporidia are now known to infect certain insects, such as mosquitoes and lepidopterous pests, which, when heavily infected, die sooner or later. Methods of destruction of these insects by means of chemicals are more and more used, but attention should also be given to utilization of the parasitic Protozoa and Protophyta for this purpose.

While the majority of Protozoa lack permanent skeletal structures and their fossil forms are unknown, there are at least two large groups in the Sarcodina which possess conspicuous shells and which are found as fossils. They are Foraminifera and Radiolaria. From early palaeozoic era down to the present day, the carbonate of lime which makes up the skeletons of numerous Foraminifera has been left embedded in various rock strata. Although there is no distinctive foraminiferan fauna characteristic of a given geologic period, there are certain peculiarities of fossil Foraminifera which distinguish one formation from the other. From this fact one can understand that knowledge of foraminiferous rocks is highly useful in checking up logs in well drilling. The skeletons of the Radiolaria are the main constituent of the ooze of littoral and deep-sea regions. They have been found abundantly in siliceous rocks of the palaeozoic and the mesozoic eras, and are also identified with the clays and other formations of the miocene period. Thus knowledge of these two orders of Sarcodina, at least, is essential for the student of geology and paleontology.

The history of protozoology

Aside from a comparatively small number of large forms, Protozoa are unobservable with the naked eye, so that we can easily understand why they were unknown prior to the invention of the microscope. Antony van Leeuwenhoek (1632-1723) is commonly recog-

nized as the father of protozoology. Grinding lenses himself, Leeuwenhoek made more than four hundred simple microscopes, including one which, it is said, had a magnification of 270 times (Harting). Among the many things he discovered were various Protozoa. According to Dobell (1932), Leeuwenhoek saw in 1674 for the first time free-living Protozoa in fresh water. Among them, he observed bodies "green in the middle, and before and behind white," which Dobell interprets were *Euglena*. Between 1674 and 1716 he observed numerous microscopic organisms which he communicated to the Royal Society of London and which, as Dobell considered, were *Vorticella*, *Stylonychia*, *Carchesium*, *Volvox*, *Haematococcus*, *Coleps*, *Kerona*, *Anthophysis*, *Elphidium*, *Polytoma*, etc. According to Dobell, Huygens gave in 1678 "unmistakable descriptions of *Chilodon*(ella), *Paramecium*, *Astasia* and *Vorticella*, all found in infusions."

Colpoda was seen by Bonanni (1691) and Harris (1696) rediscovered *Euglena*. In 1718 there appeared the first treatise on microscopic organisms, particularly of Protozoa, by Joblot who emphasized the non-existence of abiogenesis by using boiled hay-infusions in which no Infusoria developed without exposure to the atmosphere. This experiment confirmed that of Redi who, some forty years before, had made his well-known experiments by excluding flies from meat. Joblot illustrated, according to Woodruff (1937), *Paramecium*, the slipper animalcule, with the first identifiable figure. Trembley (1745) studied division in some ciliates, including probably *Paramecium*, which generic name was coined by Hill in 1752. *Noctiluca* was first described by Baker (1753).

Rösel von Rosenhoff (1755) observed an organism, possibly either *Pelomyxa carolinensis* Wilson (*Chaos chaos* Linnaeus (Schaeffer, 1926)) or a mycetozoan (Mast and Johnson, 1931), which he called "der kleine Proteus," and also *Vorticella*, *Stentor*, and *Volvox*. Wrisberg (1764) coined the term "Infusoria" (Dujardin; Woodruff). By using the juice of geranium, Ellis (1770) caused the extrusion of the 'fins' (trichocysts) in *Paramecium*. Eichhorn (1783) observed the heliozoan, *Actinosphaerium*, which now bears his name. O. F. Müller described *Ceratium* a little later and published two works on the Infusoria (1773, 1786). Although he included unavoidably some Metazoa and Protophyta in his monographs, some of his descriptions and figures of Ciliata were so well done that they are of value even at the present time.

At the beginning of the nineteenth century the cylcosis in *Paramecium* was brought to light by Gruithuisen. Goldfuss (1817) coined

the term **Protozoa**, including in it the coelenterates. Ten years later there appeared d'Orbigny's systematic study of the Foraminifera, which he considered "microscopical cephalopods." In 1828 Ehrenberg began publishing his observations on Protozoa and in 1838 he summarized his contributions in *Die Infusionsthierchen als Vollkommene Organismen*, in which he diagnosed genera and species so well that many of them still hold good. Ehrenberg excluded Rotatoria and Cercaria from Infusoria. Through the studies of Ehrenberg the number of known Protozoa increased greatly; he, however, proposed the term "Polygastricha," under which he placed Mastigophora, Rhizopoda, Ciliata, Suctoria, desmids, etc., since he believed that the food vacuoles present in them were stomachs. This hypothesis became immediately the center of controversy, which incidentally, together with the then-propounded cell theory and improvements in microscopy, stimulated researches on Protozoa.

Dujardin (1835) took pains in studying the protoplasm of various Protozoa and found it alike in all. He named it **sarcode**. In 1841 he published an extensive monograph of various Protozoa which came under his observations. The term Rhizopoda was coined by this investigator. The commonly used term **protoplasm** was coined by Purkinje in 1840. The Protozoa was given a distinct definition by Siebold in 1845, as follows: "Die Thiere, in welchen die verschiedenen Systeme der Organe nicht scharf ausgeschieden sind, und deren unregelmässige Form und einfache Organization sich auf eine Zelle reduzieren lassen." Siebold subdivided Protozoa into Infusoria and Rhizopoda. The sharp differentiation of Protozoa as a group certainly inspired numerous microscopists. As a result, various students brought forward several group names, such as Radiolaria (J. Müller, 1858), Ciliata (Perty, 1852), Flagellata (Cohn, 1853), Suctoria (Claparède and Lachmann, 1858), Heliozoa, Protista (Haeckel, 1862, 1866), Mastigophora (Diesing, 1865), etc. Of Suctoria, Stein failed to see the real nature (1849), but his two monographs on Ciliata and Mastigophora (1854, 1859-1883) contain concise descriptions and excellent illustrations of numerous species. Haeckel (1873), who went a step further than Siebold by distinguishing between Protozoa and Metazoa, devoted ten years to his study of Radiolaria, especially those of the Challenger collection, and described in his celebrated monographs more than 4000 species.

In 1879 the first comprehensive monograph on the Protozoa of North America was put forward by Leidy under the title of *Fresh-water Rhizopods of North America*, which showed the wide distribution of many known forms of Europe and revealed a number of new

and interesting forms. This work was followed by Stokes' *The Fresh-water Infusoria of the United States*, which appeared in 1888. Bütschli (1880-1889) established Sarcodina and made an excellent contribution to the taxonomy of the then-known species of Protozoa, which is still considered as one of the most important works on general protozoology. The painstaking researches by Maupas, on the conjugation of ciliates, corrected erroneous interpretation of the phenomenon observed by Balbiani some thirty years before and gave impetus to a renewed cytological study of Protozoa. The variety in form and structure of the protozoan nuclei became the subject of intensive studies by several cytologists. Weismann (1881) put into words the immortality of the Protozoa. Schaudinn contributed much toward the cytological and developmental studies of Protozoa.

In the first year of the present century, Calkins in the United States and Doflein in Germany wrote modern textbooks on protozoology dealing with the biology as well as the taxonomy. Calkins initiated the so-called isolation pedigree culture of ciliates in order to study the physiology of conjugation and other phenomena connected with the life-history of the ciliates. Recently application of bacteria-free culture technique to certain free-living flagellates and ciliates has brought to light hitherto unknown facts regarding nutritional requirements of these organisms.

Today the Protozoa are more and more intensively and extensively studied from both the biological and the parasitological sides, and important contributions appear continuously. Since all parasitic Protozoa appear to have originated in free-living forms, the comprehension of the morphology, physiology, and development of the latter group is obviously fundamentally important for a thorough understanding of the former group.

Compared with the advancement of our knowledge on free-living Protozoa, that on parasitic forms has been very slow. This is to be expected, of course, since the vast majority of them are so minute that the discovery of their presence has been made possible only through improvements in the microscope and in technique.

Here again Leeuwenhoek seems to have been the first to observe a parasitic protozoan, for he observed, according to Dobell, in the fall of 1674, the oocysts of the coccidian, *Eimeria stiedae*, in the contents of the gall bladder of an old rabbit; in 1681, *Giardia intestinalis* in his own diarrhoeic stools; and in 1683, *Opalina* and *Nyctotherus* in the gut contents of frogs. The oral *Trichomonas* of man was observed by O. F. Müller (1773) who named it *Cercaria tenax* (Dobell, 1939). There is no record of anyone having seen Protozoa living in

other organisms, until 1828, when Dufour's account of the gregarine from the intestine of coleopterous insects appeared. Some ten years later, Hake rediscovered the oocysts of *Eimeria stiedae*. A flagellate was observed in the blood of salmon by Valentin in 1841, and the frog trypanosome was discovered by Gluge and Gruby (1842), the latter author creating the genus *Trypanosoma* for it.

The gregarines were a little later given attention by Siebold (1839), Kölliker (1848) and Stein (1848). The year 1849 marks the first record of an amoeba being found in man, for Gros then observed *Entamoeba gingivalis* in the human mouth. Five years later, Davaine found in the stools of cholera patients two flagellates (*Trichomonas* and *Chilomastix*). Kloss in 1855 observed the coccidian, *Klossia helicina*, in the excretory organ of *Helix*; and Eimer (1870) made an extensive study of *Coccidia* occurring in various animals. *Balantidium coli* was discovered by Malmsten in 1857. Lewis in 1870 observed *Entamoeba coli* in India, and Lösch in 1875 found *Entamoeba histolytica* in Russia. At the beginning of the last century, an epidemic disease, pébrine, of the silkworm appeared in Italy and France, and a number of biologists became engaged in its investigation. Foremost of all, Pasteur (1870) made an extensive report on the nature of the causative organism, now known as *Nosema bombycis*, and also on the method of control and prevention. Perhaps this is the first scientific study of a parasitic protozoan to result in an effective practical method of control of its infection.

Lewis observed in 1878 an organism which is since known as *Trypanosoma lewisi* in the blood of rats. In 1879 Leuckart created the group "Sporozoa," including in it the gregarines and coccidians. Other groups under Sporozoa were soon definitely designated. They are Myxosporidia (Bütschli, 1881), Microsporidia and Sarcosporidia (Balbiani, 1882).

Parasitic protozoology received a far-reaching stimulus when Laveran (1880) discovered the malarial parasite in the human blood. Smith and Kilbourne (1893) demonstrated that the Babesia of the Texas fever of cattle in the southern United States was transmitted by the cattle tick from host to host, and thus brought to light for the first time the close relationship which exists between an arthropod and a parasitic protozoan. Two years later, Bruce discovered *Trypanosoma brucei* in the blood of horses and cattle suffering from "nagana" disease in Africa, and in the following year he showed by experiments that the tsetse fly transmits the trypanosome from host to host. Studies of malarial diseases continued and several important contributions appeared. Golgi (1886, 1889) studied the schizogony

and its relation to the occurrence of fever and was able to distinguish two types of fever. MacCallum (1897-1898) found in the United States the union of a microgamete and a macrogamete of *Haemoproteus* of birds. Almost at the same time, Schaudinn and Siedlecki (1897) showed that anisogamy results in the production of zygotes in *Coccidia*. The latter author published later further observations on the life-cycle of *Coccidia* (1898, 1899).

Ross (1898) showed how *Plasmodium relictum* (*P. praecox*) was carried by *Culex fatigans* and described its life-cycle. Since that time several investigators have brought to light important observations concerning the biology and development of malarial organisms and their relation to man. In the present century, Forde and Dutton (1901) observed that the sleeping sickness in equatorial Africa was due to an infection by *Trypanosoma gambiense*. In 1903 Leishman and Donovan recognized *Leishmania* of "kala-azar."

Artificial cultivation of bacteria had contributed toward a very rapid advancement in bacteriology, and it was natural, as the number of known parasitic Protozoa rapidly increased, that attempts to cultivate them in vitro should be made. Musgrave and Clegg (1904) cultivated, on bouillon-agar, small free-living amoebae from old faecal matter. In 1905 Novy and McNeal cultivated successfully the trypanosome of birds in blood-agar medium, which remained free from bacterial contamination and in which the organisms underwent multiplication. Almost all species of *Trypanosoma* and *Leishmania* have since been cultivated in a similar manner. This serves for detection of a mild infection and also identification of the species involved. It was found, further, that the changes which these organisms underwent in the culture media were imitative of those that took place in the invertebrate host, thus contributing toward the life-cycle studies of them.

Bass (1911), and Bass and Johns (1912) demonstrated that *Plasmodium* of man could be cultivated in vitro for a few generations. During and since the World War I, it became known that numerous intestinal Protozoa of man are widely present throughout the tropical, subtropical and temperate zones. Taxonomic, morphological and developmental studies on these forms have therefore appeared in an enormous number. Cutler (1918) seems to have succeeded in cultivating *Entamoeba histolytica*, though his experiment was not repeated by others. Barrett and Yarborough (1921) cultivated *Balantidium coli* and Boeck (1921) cultivated *Chilomastix mesnili*. Boeck and Drbohlav (1925) succeeded in cultivating *Entamoeba histolytica*, and their work was repeated and improved upon by sev-

eral investigators. While the cultivation has not yet thrown much light on this and similar amoebae, it has revealed certain evidences that there is no sexual reproduction in these amoebae.

References

- BÜTSCHLI, O. 1887-1889 Bronn's Klassen und Ordnungen des Thier-reichs. Vol. 1, Part 3.
- CALKINS, G. N. 1933 *The biology of the Protozoa*. 2 ed. Philadelphia.
- COLE, F. J. 1926 *The history of protozoology*. London.
- DOBELL, C. 1911 The principles of protistology. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 23.
- 1932 *Antony van Leeuwenhoek and his "little animals."* New York.
- 1939 The common flagellate of the human mouth, *Trichomonas tenax* (O.F.M.): its discovery and its nomenclature. Parasitology, Vol. 31.
- DOFLEIN, F. and E. REICHENOW. 1929 *Lehrbuch der Protozoenkunde*. 5 ed. Jena.
- DUJARDIN, F. 1841 *Histoire naturelle des Zoophytes*. Paris.
- KUDO, R. R. 1944 *Manual of Human Protozoa*. Springfield, Illinois.
- NORDENSKIÖLD, E. 1928 *The history of biology*. New York.
- WOODRUFF, L. L. 1937 Louis Joblot and the Protozoa. Sci. Monthly, Vol. 94.
- 1939 Some pioneers in microscopy, with special reference to protozoology. Tr. N. Y. Acad. Sci., Ser. 2, Vol. 1.

CHAPTER 2

Ecology

WITH regard to their habitats, the Protozoa may be divided into free-living forms and those living on or in other organisms. Mastigophora, Sarcodina, Ciliata, and Suctoria include both free-living and parasitic Protozoa, but Sporozoa are exclusively parasitic.

The free-living Protozoa

The vegetative or trophic stages of free-living Protozoa have been found in every type of fresh and salt water, soil and decaying organic matter. Even in the circumpolar regions or at extremely high altitudes, certain protozoa occur at times in fairly large numbers. The factors, which influence their distribution in a given body of water, are temperature, light, chemical composition, acidity, kind and amount of food, and degree of adaptability of the individual protozoans to various environmental changes. Their early appearance as living organisms, their adaptability to various habitats, and their capacity to remain viable in encysted condition, probably account for the wide distribution of the Protozoa throughout the world. The common free-living amoebae, numerous testaceans and others, to mention a few, of fresh waters, have been observed in innumerable places of the world.

Temperature. The majority of Protozoa are able to live only within a small range of temperature variation, although in the encysted state they can withstand a far greater temperature fluctuation. The lower limit of the temperature is marked by the freezing of the protoplasm, and the upper limit by the destructive chemical change within the body protoplasm. The temperature toleration seems to vary among different species of Protozoa; and even in the same species under different conditions. For example, Chalkley (1930) placed *Paramecium caudatum* in 4 culture media (balanced saline, saline with potassium excess, saline with calcium excess, and saline with sodium excess), all with pH from 5.8 or 6 to 8.4 or 8.6, at 40°C. for 2–16 minutes and found that (1) the resistance varies with the hydrogen-ion concentration, maxima appearing in the alkaline and acid ranges, and a minimum at or near about 7.0; (2) in a balanced saline, and in saline with an excess of sodium or potassium, the alkaline maximum is the higher, while in saline with an excess of calcium, the acid maximum is the higher; (3) in general, acidity decreases and alkalinity increases resistance; and (4) between pH 6.6

and 7.6, excess of potassium decreases resistance and excess of calcium increases resistance. Glaser and Coria (1933) cultivated *Paramecium caudatum* on dead yeast free from living organisms at 20–28°C. (optimum 25°C.) and noted that at 30°C. the organisms were killed. Doudoroff (1936), on the other hand, found that in *P. multimicronucleatum* its resistance to raised temperature was low in the presence of food, but rose to a maximum when the food was exhausted, and there was no appreciable difference in the resistance between single and conjugating individuals.

The thermal waters of hot springs have been known to contain living organisms including Protozoa. Glaser and Coria obtained from the thermal springs of Virginia, several species of Mastigophora, Ciliata, and an amoeba which were living in the water, the temperature of which was 34–36°C., but did not notice any protozoan in the water which showed 39–41°C. Uyemura and his co-workers made a series of studies on Protozoa living in various thermal waters of Japan, and reported that many species lived at unexpectedly high temperatures. Some of the Protozoa observed and the temperatures of the water in which they were found are as follows: *Amoeba* sp., *Vahlkampfia limax*, *A. radiosa*, 30–51°C.; *Amoeba verrucosa*, *Chilodonella* sp., *Lionotus fasciola*, *Paramecium caudatum*, 36–40°C.; *Oxytricha fallax*, 30–56°C.

Under experimental conditions, it has been shown repeatedly that many protozoans become accustomed to a very high temperature if the change be made gradually. Dallinger (1887) showed a long time ago that *Tetramitus rostratus* and two other species of flagellates became gradually acclimatized up to 70°C. in several years. In nature, however, the thermal death point of most of the free-living Protozoa appears to lie between 36° and 40°C. and the optimum temperature, between 16° and 25°C.

On the other hand, the low temperature seems to be less detrimental to Protozoa than the higher one. Many protozoans have been found to live in water under ice, and several haematochrome-bearing Phytomastigina undergo vigorous multiplication on snow in high altitudes, producing the so-called "red snow." Klebs (1893) subjected the trophozoites of *Euglena* to repeated freezing without apparent injury and Jahn (1933) found no harmful effect when *Euglena* cultures were kept without freezing at -0.2°C . for one hour, but when kept at -4°C . for one hour the majority were killed. Gaylord (1908) exposed *Trypanosoma gambiense* to liquid air for 20 minutes without apparent injury, but the organisms were killed after 40 minutes' immersion.

Kühn (1864) observed that *Amoeba* and *Actinophrys* suffered no ill effects when kept at 0°C. for several hours as long as the culture medium did not freeze, but were killed when the latter froze. Molisch (1897) likewise noticed that *Amoeba* dies as soon as the ice forms in its interior or immediate vicinity. Chambers and Hale (1932) demonstrated that internal freezing could be induced in an amoeba by inserting an ice-tipped pipette at $-0.6^{\circ}\text{C}.$, the ice spreading in the form of fine feathery crystals from the point touched by the pipette. They found that the internal freezing kills the amoebae, although if the ice is prevented from forming, a temperature as low as $-5^{\circ}\text{C}.$ brings about no visible damage to the organism. At 0°C., Deschiens (1934) found the trophozoites of *Entamoeba histolytica* remained alive, though immobile, for 56 hours, but were destroyed in a short time when the medium froze at $-5^{\circ}\text{C}.$

According to Greeley, when *Stentor coeruleus* was slowly subjected to low temperatures, the cilia kept on beating at 0°C. for 1-3 hours, then cilia and gullet were absorbed, the ectoplasm was thrown off, and the body became spherical. When the temperature was raised, this spherical body is said to have undergone a reverse process and resumed its normal activity. If the lowering of temperature is rapid and the medium becomes solidly frozen, *Stentor* perishes. Efimoff (1924) observed that *Paramecium* multiplied once in about 13 days at 0°C., withstood freezing at $-1^{\circ}\text{C}.$ for 30 minutes, but died when kept for 50-60 minutes at the same temperature. He further stated that *Paramecium caudatum*, *Colpidium colpoda*, and *Spirostomum ambiguum*, perished in less than 30 minutes, when exposed below $-4^{\circ}\text{C}.$, and that quick and short cooling (not lower than $-9^{\circ}\text{C}.$) produced no injury, but if it is prolonged, *Paramecium* became spherical and swollen to 4-5 times normal size, while *Colpidium* and *Spirostomum* shrunk. Wolfson (1935) studied *Paramecium* sp. in gradually descending subzero-temperature, and observed that as the temperature decreases the organism often swims backward, its bodily movements cease at $-14.2^{\circ}\text{C}.$, but the cilia continue to beat for some time. While *Paramecium* recover completely from a momentary exposure to $-16^{\circ}\text{C}.$, long cooling at this temperature brings about degeneration. When the water in which the organisms are kept freezes, no survival was noted. *Plasmodium knowlesi* and *P. inui* in the blood of *Macacus rhesus* remain viable, according to Coggeshall (1939), for as long as 70 days at $-76^{\circ}\text{C}.$, if frozen and thawed rapidly.

Light. In the Phytomastigina which include chromatophore-bearing flagellates, the sun light is essential to photosynthesis (p. 92). The

sun light further plays an important rôle in those protozoans which are dependent upon chromatophore-possessing organisms as chief source of food supply. Hence the light is another factor concerned with the distribution of free-living protozoans in the water.

Chemical composition of water. The chemical nature of the water is another important factor which influences the very existence of Protozoa in a given body of water. Protozoa differ from one another in morphological as well as physiological characteristics. Individual protozoan species requires a certain chemical composition of the water in which it can be cultivated under experimental conditions, although this may be more or less variable among different forms (Needham et al., 1937).

In their "biological analysis of water" Kolkwitz and Marsson (1908, 1909) distinguished four types of habitats for many aquatic plant, and a few animal, organisms, which were based upon the kind and amount of inorganic and organic matter and amount of oxygen present in the water: namely, *katharobic*, *oligosaprobic*, *mesosaprobic*, and *polysaprobic*. **Katharobic** protozoans are those which live in mountain springs, brooks, or ponds, the water of which is rich in oxygen, but free from organic matter. **Oligosaprobic** forms are those that inhabit waters which are rich in mineral matter, but in which no purification processes are taking place. Many *Phytomastigina*, various testaceans and many ciliates, such as *Frontonia*, *Lacrymaria*, *Oxytricha*, *Stylonychia*, *Vorticella*, etc. inhabit such waters. **Mesosaprobic** protozoans live in waters in which active oxidation and decomposition of organic matter are taking place. The majority of freshwater protozoans belong to this group: namely, numerous *Phytomastigina*, *Heliozoa*, *Zoomastigina*, and all orders of *Ciliata*. Finally **polysaprobic** forms are capable of living in waters which, because of dominance of reduction and cleavage processes of organic matter, contain at most a very small amount of oxygen and are rich in carbonic acid gas and nitrogenous decomposition products. The black bottom slime contains usually an abundance of ferrous sulphide and other sulphurous substances. Lauterborn (1901) called this *sapropelic*. Examples of polysaprobic protozoans are *Pelomyxa palustris*, *Euglypha alveolata*, *Pamphagus armatus*, *Mastigamoeba*, *Trepomonas agilis*, *Hexamita inflata*, *Rhynchomonas nasuta*, *Heteronema acus*, *Bodo*, *Cercomonas*, *Dactylochlamys*, *Ctenostomata*, etc. The so-called "sewage organisms" abound in such habitat (Lackey).

Certain free-living Protozoa which inhabit waters rich in decomposing organic matter are frequently found in the faecal matter of various animals. Their cysts either pass through the alimentary

canal of the animal unharmed or are introduced after the faeces are voided, and undergo development and multiplication in the faecal infusion. Such forms are collectively called **coprozoic** Protozoa. The coprozoic protozoans grow easily in suspension of old faecal matter which are rich in decomposed organic matter and thus show a strikingly strong capacity of adapting themselves to conditions different from those of the water in which they normally live. Some of the Protozoa which have been referred to as coprozoic and which are mentioned in the present work are, as follows: *Scytomonas pusilla*, *Rhynchomonas nasuta*, *Cercomonas longicauda*, *C. crassicauda*, *Trepomonas agilis*, *Dimastigamoeba gruberi*, *Acanthamoeba hyalina*, *Chlamydomphrys stercorea* and *Tillina magna*.

As a rule, the presence of sodium chloride in the sea water prevents the occurrence of the large number of fresh-water inhabitants. Certain species, however, have been known to live in both fresh and brackish or salt water. Among the species mentioned in the present work, the following species have been reported to occur in both fresh and salt waters: Mastigophora: *Amphidinium lacustris*, *Ceratium hirundinella*; Sarcodina: *Lieberkühnia wagneri*; Ciliata: *Mesodinium pulex*, *Prorodon discolor*, *Lacrymaria olor*, *Amphileptus claparedei*, *Lionotus fasciola*, *Nassula aurea*, *Trochilioides recta*, *Chilodonella cucullulus*, *Trimyema compressum*, *Paramecium calkinsi*, *Colpidium campylum*, *Platynematum sociale*, *Cinetochilum margaritaceum*, *Pleuronema coronatum*, *Caenomorpha medusula*, *Spirostomum minus*, *S. teres*, *Climacostomum virens*, and *Thuricola folliculata*; Suctoria: *Metacineta mystacina*, *Endosphaera engelmanni*.

It seems probable that many other protozoans are able to live in both fresh and salt water, judging from the observations such as that made by Finley (1930) who subjected some fifty species of freshwater Protozoa of Wisconsin to various concentrations of sea water, either by direct transfer or by gradual addition of the sea water. He found that *Bodo uncinatus*, *Uronema marina*, *Pleuronema jaculans* and *Colpoda aspera* are able to live and reproduce even when directly transferred to sea water, that *Amoeba verrucosa*, *Euglena*, *Phacus*, *Monas*, *Cyclidium*, *Euplotes*, *Lionotus*, *Paramecium*, *Stylonychia*, etc., tolerate only a low salinity when directly transferred, but, if the salinity is gradually increased, they live in 100 per cent sea water, and that *Arcella*, *Cyphoderia*, *Aspidisca*, *Blepharisma*, *Colpoda cucullus*, *Halteria*, etc. could not tolerate 10 per cent sea water even when the change was gradual. Finley noted no morphological changes in the experimental protozoans which might be attributed to the presence of the salt in the water, except *Amoeba*

verrucosa, in which certain structural and physiological changes were observed as follows: as the salinity increased, the pulsation of the contractile vacuole became slower. The body activity continued up to 44 per cent sea water and the vacuole pulsated only once in 40 minutes, and after systole, it did not reappear for 10–15 minutes. The organism became less active above this concentration and in 84 per cent sea water the vacuole disappeared, but there was still a tendency to form the characteristic ridges, even in 91 per cent sea water, in which the organism was less fan-shaped and the cytoplasm seemed to be more viscous. Yocom (1934) found that *Euplotes patella* was able to live normally and multiply up to 66 per cent of sea water; above that concentration no division was noticed, though the organism lived for a few days in up to 100 per cent salt water, and *Paramecium caudatum* and *Spirostomum ambiguum* were less adaptive to salt water, rarely living in 60 per cent sea water. Frisch (1935) found that no freshwater Protozoa lived above 40 per cent sea water and that *Paramecium caudatum* and *P. multimicronucleatum* died in 33–52 per cent sea water. Hardin (1942) reports that *Oikomonas termo* will grow when transferred directly to a glycerol-peptone culture medium, in up to 45 per cent sea water, and cultures contaminated with bacteria and growing in a dilute glycerol-peptone medium will grow in 100 per cent sea water.

Hydrogen-ion concentration. Closely related to the chemical composition is the hydrogen-ion concentration (pH) of the water which influences the distribution of Protozoa. The hydrogen-ion concentration of freshwater bodies vary a great deal between highly acid bog waters in which various testaceans may frequently be present, to highly alkaline water in which such forms as *Acanthocystis*, *Hyalobryon*, etc., occur. In standing deep fresh water, the bottom region is often acid because of the decomposing organic matter, while the surface water is less acid or slightly alkaline due to the photosynthesis of green plants which utilize carbon dioxide. In some cases different pH may bring about morphological differences. For example, in bacteria-free cultures of *Paramecium bursaria* in a tryptone medium, Loefer (1938) found that at pH 7.6–8.0 the length averaged 86 or 87 μ , but at 6.0–6.3 the length was about 129 μ . The greatest variation took place at pH 4.6 in which no growth occurred. The shortest animals at the acid and alkaline extremes of growth, were the widest, while the narrowest forms (about 44 μ wide) were found in culture at pH 5.7–7.4. Several workers have made observations on the pH range of the water or medium in which certain protozoans live, grow, and multiply, which data are collected in Table 1.

TABLE 1.—Protozoa and hydrogen-ion concentration

Protozoa	pH range of medium in which growth occurs	Optimum range	Observers
A. In bacteria-free cultures			
<i>Euglena gracilis</i>	3.5-9.0	—	Dusi
	3.0-7.7	6.7	Alexander
	3.9-9.9	6.6	Jahn
<i>E. deses</i>	6.5-8.0	7.0	Dusi
	5.3-8.0	7.0	Hall
<i>E. pisciformis</i>	6.0-8.0	6.5-7.5	Dusi
	5.4-7.5	6.8	Hall
<i>Chilomonas paramecium</i>	4.8-8.0	6.8	Mast and Pace
	4.1-8.4	4.9; 7.0	Loefer
<i>Chlorogonium euchlorum</i>	4.8-8.7	7.1-7.5	Loefer
<i>C. elongatum</i>	4.8-8.7	7.1-7.5	Loefer
<i>C. teragamum</i>	4.2-8.6	6.7-8.3	Loefer
<i>Colpidium campylum</i>	—	5.4	Kidder
<i>Glaucoma scintillans</i>	—	5.6-6.8	Kidder
<i>G. ficaria</i>	4.0-9.5	5.1; 6.7	Johnson
<i>Tetrahymena geleii</i>	—	5.6-8.0	Kidder
<i>T. vorax</i>	—	6.2-7.6	Kidder
<i>Paramecium bursaria</i>	5.3-8.0	6.7-6.8	Loefer
B. In cultures containing bacteria			
<i>Carteria obtusa</i>	—	3.5-4.5	Wermel
<i>Acanthocystis aculeata</i>	7.4 or above	8.1	Stern
<i>Paramecium caudatum</i>	5.3-8.2	7.0	Darby
	6.0-9.5	7.0	Morea
<i>P. aurelia</i>	5.7-7.8	6.7	Morea
	5.9-8.2	5.9-7.7	Phelps
<i>P. multimicronucleatum</i>	4.8-8.3	7.0	Jones
<i>P. sp.</i>	—	7.8-8.0	Saunders
	7.0-8.5	7.8-8.0	Pruthi
<i>Colpidium sp.</i>	6.0-8.5	—	Pruthi
<i>Colpoda cucullus</i>	5.5-9.5	6.5; 7.5	Morea
<i>Holophyra sp.</i>	6.5-7.4	—	Pruthi
<i>Plagiopyla sp.</i>	6.9-7.5	—	Pruthi
<i>Amphileptus sp.</i>	6.8-7.5	7.1-7.3	Pruthi
<i>Spirostomum ambiguum</i>	6.8-7.5	7.4	Saunders
<i>S. sp.</i>	6.5-8.0	7.5	Morea
<i>Stentor coeruleus</i>	7.8-8.0	—	Hetherington
<i>Blepharisma undulans</i>	—	6.5	Moore
<i>Gastrostyla sp.</i>	6.0-8.5	—	Pruthi
<i>Stylonychia pustulata</i>	6.0-8.0	6.7; 8.0	Darby

Seemingly various Protozoa require a definite pH value in order to carry on maximum metabolic activities. As a matter of fact,

Pringsheim, Hall, Loefer, Johnson, and others, found that sodium acetate may increase or decrease the growth rate of various *Phytomastigina* subject to the hydrogen-ion concentration of the culture media.

Food. The kind and amount of food available in a given body of water also controls the distribution of Protozoa. The food is ordinarily one of the deciding factors of the number of Protozoa in a natural habitat. Species of *Paramecium* and many other holozoic protozoans cannot live in waters in which bacteria or minute protozoans do not occur. If other conditions are favorable, then the greater the number of food bacteria, the greater the number of these protozoans. *Didinium nasutum* feeds almost exclusively on *Paramecium*, hence it cannot live in the absence of the latter ciliate. As a rule, euryphagous protozoans are widely distributed and stenophagous forms are limited in their distribution.

Some protozoans inhabit soil of various types and localities. Under ordinary circumstances, they occur near the surface, their maximum abundance being found at a depth of about 10–12 cm. (Sandon, 1927). It is said that a very few protozoans occur in the subsoil. Here also one notices a very wide geographical distribution of apparently one and the same species. For example, Sandon found *Amoeba proteus* in samples of soil collected from Greenland, Tristan da Cunha, Gough Island, England, Mauritius, Africa, India, and Argentina. This amoeba is known to occur in various parts of North America, Europe, Japan, and Australia. The majority of Testacea inhabit moist soil in abundance. Sandon observed *Trinema enchelys* in the soils of Spitzbergen, Greenland, England, Japan, Australia, St. Helena, Barbados, Mauritius, Africa, and Argentina.

The parasitic Protozoa

Some Protozoa belonging to all groups live on or in other organisms. The Sporozoa are made up exclusively of parasites. The relationships between the host and the protozoan differ in various ways, which make the basis for distinguishing the associations into three types as follows: **commensalism**, **symbiosis**, and **parasitism**.

Commensalism is an association in which an organism, the commensal, is benefited, while the host is neither injured nor benefited. Depending upon the location of the commensal in the host body, the term ectocommensalism or endocommensalism is used. Ectocommensalism is often represented by Protozoa which may attach themselves to any aquatic animals that inhabit the same body of water, as shown by various species of Chonotricha, Peritricha, and

Suctoria. In other cases, there is a definite relationship between the commensal and the host. For example, *Kerona polyporum* is found on various species of Hydra, and many ciliates placed in Thigmotricha (p. 623) are inseparably associated with certain species of the mussels.

Endocommensalism is often difficult to distinguish from endoparasitism, since the effect of the presence of a commensal upon the host cannot be easily understood. On the whole, the protozoans which live in the lumen of the alimentary canal may be looked upon as endocommensals. These protozoans undoubtedly use part of the food material which could be used by the host, but they do not invade the host tissue. As examples of endocommensals may be mentioned: *Endamoeba blattae*, *Lophomonas blattarum*, *L. striata*, *Nyctotherus ovalis*, etc., of the cockroach; *Entamoeba coli*, *Iodamoeba bütschlii*, *Endolimax nana*, *Dientamoeba fragilis*, *Chilomastix mesnili*, etc., of the human intestine; numerous species of Protociliata of Anura, etc. Because of the difficulties mentioned above, the term **parasitic Protozoa**, in its broad sense, includes the commensals also.

Symbiosis on the other hand is an association of two species of organisms, which is of mutual benefit. The cryptomonads belonging to Chrysidella ("Zooxanthellae") containing yellow or brown chromatophores, which live in Foraminifera and Radiolaria, and certain algae belonging to Chlorella ("Zoochlorellae") containing green chromatophores, which occur in some freshwater protozoans, such as *Paramecium bursaria*, *Stentor amethystinus*, etc., are looked upon as holding symbiotic relationship with the respective protozoan host. Several species of the highly interesting Hypermastigina, which are present commonly and abundantly in various species of termites and the woodroach Cryptocercus, have been demonstrated by Cleveland to digest the cellulose material which makes up the bulk of wood-chips the host animals take in and to transform it into glycogenous substances that are used partly by the host insects. If deprived of these flagellates by being subjected to oxygen under pressure or to a high temperature, the termites die, even though the intestine is filled with wood-chips. If removed from the gut of the termite, the flagellates die. Thus the association here may be said to be an absolute symbiosis.

Parasitism is an association in which one organism (the parasite) lives at the expense of the other (the host). Here also ectoparasitism and endoparasitism occur, although the former is not commonly found. *Hydramoeba hydroxena* (p. 370) feeds on the body cells of Hydra which, according to Reynolds and Looper, die on an average

in 6.8 days as a result of the infection and the amoebae disappear in from 4 to 10 days if removed from a host Hydra. *Costia necatrix* (p. 297) often occurs in an enormous number, attached to various freshwater fishes especially in an aquarium, by piercing through the epidermal cells and appears to disturb the normal functions of the host tissue. *Ichthyophthirius multifiliis* (p. 568), another ectoparasite of freshwater fishes, goes further by completely burying themselves in the epidermis and feeds on the host's tissue cells and, not infrequently, contributes toward the cause of the death of the host fishes.

The endoparasites absorb by osmosis the vital body fluid, feed on the host cells or cell-fragments by pseudopodia or cytostome, or enter the host tissues or cells themselves, living on the cytoplasm or in some cases on the nucleus. Consequently they bring about abnormal or pathological conditions upon the host which often succumbs to the infection. Endoparasitic Protozoa of man are *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Balantidium coli*, species of Plasmodium and Leishmania, *Trypanosoma gambiense*, etc. The Sporozoa, as was stated before, are without exception coelozoic, histozoic, or cytozoic parasites.

Because of their modes of living, the endoparasitic Protozoa cause certain morphological changes in the cells, tissues, or organs of the host. The active growth of *Entamoeba histolytica* in the glands of the colon of the victim, produces slightly raised nodules first which develop into abscesses and the ulcers formed by the rupture of abscesses, may reach 2 cm. or more in diameter, completely destroying the tissues of the colon wall. Similar pathological changes are also noticed in the case of infection by *Balantidium coli*. In *Leishmania donovani*, the victim shows an increase in number of the large macrophages and mononuclears and also an extreme enlargement of the spleen. *Trypanosoma cruzi* brings about the degeneration of the infected host cells and an abundance of leucocytes in the infected tissues, followed by an increase of fibrous tissue. *T. gambiense*, the causative organism of African sleeping sickness, causes enlargement of lymphatic glands and spleen, followed by changes in meninges and an increase of cerebro-spinal fluid. Its most characteristic changes are the thickening of the arterial coat and the round-celled infiltration around the blood vessels of the central nervous system.

Brand's (1938) summary of the carbohydrate metabolism of the pathogenic trypanosomes tends to show that the sugar is only partially oxidized in the presence of oxygen and that the carbohydrate metabolism of the infected host is disturbed, as shown mainly by the unbalanced condition of the blood sugar, by lowering of the glycogen reserves, and by reduced ability to build glycogen from

sugar. Malarial infection is invariably accompanied by an enormous enlargement of the spleen ("spleen index"); the blood becomes watery; the erythrocytes decrease in number; the leucocytes, sub-normal; but mononuclear cells increase in number; pigment granules which are set free in the blood plasma at the time of merozoite-liberation are engulfed by leucocytes; and enlarged spleen contains large amount of pigments which are lodged in leucocytes and endothelial cells. In *Plasmodium falciparum*, the blood capillaries of brain, spleen and other viscera may completely be blocked by infected erythrocytes.

FIG. 1. Histological changes in host fish caused by myxosporidian infection, $\times 1920$ (Kudo). a, portion of a cyst of *Myxobolus intestinalis*, surrounded by peri-intestinal muscle of the black crappie; b, part of a cyst of *Thelohanellus notatus*, enveloped by the connective tissue of the blunt-nosed minnow.

In Myxosporidia which are either histozoic or coelozoic parasites of fishes, the tissue cells that are in direct contact with highly enlarging parasites, undergo various morphological changes. For example, the circular muscle fibers of the small intestine of *Pomoxis sparoides*, which surround *Myxobolus intestinalis*, a myxosporidian, become modified a great deal and turn about 90° from the original direction, due undoubtedly to the stimulation exercised by the myxosporidian parasite (Fig. 1, a). In the case of another myxosporidian, *Thelohanellus notatus*, the connective tissue cells of the host fish surrounding the protozoan body, transform themselves into

"epithelial cells" (Fig. 1, b), a state comparable to the formation of the ciliated epithelium from a layer of fibroblasts lining a cyst formed around a piece of ovary implanted into the adductor muscle of *Pecten* as observed by Drew (1911).

Practically all Microsporidia are cytozoic, and the infected cells become hypertrophied enormously, producing in one genus the so-called Glugea cysts (Fig. 257). In many cases, the hypertrophy of the nucleus of the infected cell is far more conspicuous than that of the cytoplasm (Fig. 255).

Information concerning toxic substances produced by parasitic Protozoa is meager. Sarcosporidia appear to produce a certain toxic substance which, when injected into the blood vessel, is highly toxic to experimental animals. This was named sarcocystine (Laveran and Mesnil) or sarcosporidiotoxin (Teichmann and Braun).

For the great majority of parasitic Protozoa, there exists a definite host-parasite relationship and animals other than the specific hosts possess a natural immunity against an infection by a particular parasitic protozoan. Immunity involved in diseases caused by Protozoa has been most intensively studied on haemozoic forms, especially *Plasmodium* and *Trypanosoma*, since they are the causative organisms of important diseases. Development of these organisms in hosts depends on various factors such as the species and strains of the parasites, the species and strains of vectors, and immunity of the host. Boyd and co-workers showed that reinoculation of persons who have recovered from an infection with *Plasmodium vivax* or *P. falciparum* with the same strain of the parasites, will not result in a second clinical attack, because of the development of homologous immunity, but with a different strain of the same species or different species, a definite clinical attack occurs, thus there being no heterologous tolerance. The homologous immunity was found to continue for at least three years and in one case for about seven years in *P. vivax*, and for at least four months in *P. falciparum* after apparent eradication of the infection. In the case of leishmaniasis, recovery from a natural or induced infection apparently develops a lasting immunity against reinfection with the same species of *Leishmania*.

It has been shown that in infections with avian, monkey and human *Plasmodium* or *Trypanosoma lewisi*, a considerable number of the parasites are destroyed during the developmental phase of the infection and that after a variable length of time, resistance to the parasites often develops in the host, as the parasites disappear from the peripheral blood and symptoms subside, though the host still harbors the organisms. In malarious countries, the adults and chil-

dren show usually a low and a high rate of malaria infection respectively, but the latter frequently do not show symptoms of infection, even though the parasites are detectable in the blood. Apparently repeated infection produces tolerance which can keep, as long as the host remains healthy, the parasites under control. There seems to be also racial difference in the degree of immunity against *Plasmodium* and *Trypanosoma*, as shown by James, Milam and Kusch, etc.

As to the mechanism of immunity, the destruction of the parasites by phagocytosis of the endothelial cells of the spleen, bone marrow and liver and continued regenerative process to replace the destroyed blood cells, are the two important phases in the cellular defense mechanism. Besides, there are indications that humoral defense mechanism through the production of antibodies is in active operation in infections by *Plasmodium knowlesi* (Coggeshall and Kumm, Eaton, etc.) and trypanosomes (Taliaferro).

With regard to the origin of parasitic Protozoa, it is generally agreed among biologists that the parasite in general evolved from the free-living form. The protozoan association with other organisms was begun when various protozoans which lived attached to, or by crawling on, submerged objects happened to transfer themselves to various invertebrates which occur in the same water. These Protozoa benefit by change in location as the host animal moves about, and thus enlarging the opportunity to obtain a continued supply of food material. Such ectocommensals are found abundantly; for example, the peritrichous ciliates attached to the body and appendages of various aquatic animals such as larval insects and microcrustaceans. Ectocommensalism may next lead to ectoparasitism as in the case of *Costia* or *Hydramoeba*, and then again instead of confining themselves to the body surface, the Protozoa may bore into the body wall from outside and actually acquire the habit of feeding on tissue cells of the attached animals as in the case of *Ichthyophthirius*.

The next step in the evolution of parasitism must have been reached when Protozoa, accidentally or passively, were taken into the digestive system of the Metazoa. Such a sudden change in habitat appears to be fatal to most protozoans. But certain others possess extraordinary capacity to adapt themselves to an entirely different environment. For example, Dobell (1918) observed in the tadpole gut, a typical free-living limax amoeba, with characteristic nucleus, contractile vacuoles, etc., which was found in numbers in the water containing the faecal matter of the tadpole. *Glaucoma pyriformis* (*Tetrahymena geleii*), a free-living ciliate, was found to

occur in the body cavity of the larvae of *Theobaldia annulata* (after MacArthur) and in the larvae of *Chironomus plumosus* (after Treillard and Lwoff). Lwoff successfully inoculated this ciliate into the larvae of *Galleria mellonella* which died later from the infection. Recently Janda and Jírovec (1937) injected bacteria-free culture of this ciliate into annelids, molluscs, crustaceans, insects, fishes, and amphibians, and found that only insects—all of 14 species (both larvae and adults)—became infected by this ciliate. In a few days after injection the haemocoel became filled with the ciliates. Of various organs, the ciliates were most abundantly found in the adipose tissue. The organisms were much larger than those present in the original culture. The insects, into which the ciliates were injected, died from the infection in a few days. The course of development of the ciliate within an experimental insect depended not only on the amount of the culture injected, but also on the temperature. At 1–4°C. the development was much slower than at 26°C.; but if an infected insect was kept at 32–36°C. for 0.5–3 hours, the ciliates were apparently killed and the insect continued to live. When Glaucoma taken from *Dixippus morosus* were placed in ordinary water, they continued to live and underwent multiplication. The ciliate showed a remarkable power of withstanding the artificial digestion; namely, at 18°C. they lived 4 days in artificial gastric juice with pH 4.2; 2–3 days in a juice with pH 3.6; and a few hours in a juice with pH 1.0. Cleveland (1928) observed *Tritrichomonas fecalis* in faeces of a single human subject for three years which grew well in faeces diluted with tap water, in hay infusions with or without free-living protozoans or in tap water with tissues at –3° to 37°C., and which, when fed *per os*, was able to live indefinitely in the gut of frogs and tadpoles. Reynolds (1936) found that *Colpoda steini*, a free-living ciliate of fresh water, occurs naturally in the intestine and other viscera of the land slug, *Agriolimax agrestis*, the slug forms being much larger than the free-living individuals.

It may be further speculated that Vahlkampfia, Hydramoeba, Schizamoeba, and Endamoeba, are the different stages of the course the intestinal amoebae might have taken during their evolution. Obviously endocommensalism in the alimentary canal was the initial phase of endoparasitism. When these endocommensals began to consume an excessive amount of food or to feed on the tissue cells of the host gut, they became the true endoparasites. Destroying or penetrating through the intestinal wall, they became first established in the body or organ cavities and then invaded tissues, cells or even nuclei, thus developing into pathogenic Protozoa. The endoparasites

developing in invertebrates which feed upon the blood of vertebrates as source of food supply, will have opportunities to establish themselves in the higher animals.

References

- CALKINS, G. N. and F. M. SUMMERS (editors). 1941 *Protozoa in biological research*. New York.
- CHALKLEY, H. W. 1930 Resistance of *Paramecium* to heat as affected by changes in hydrogen-ion concentration and in inorganic salt balance in surrounding medium. U. S. Publ. Health. Rep., Vol. 45.
- CLEVELAND, L. R. 1926 Symbiosis among animals with special reference to termites and their intestinal flagellates. Quart. Rev. Biol., Vol. 1.
- 1928 *Tritrichomonas fecalis* nov. sp. of man; its ability to grow and multiply indefinitely in faeces diluted with tap water and in frogs and tadpoles. Amer. Jour. Hyg., Vol. 8.
- DALLINGER, W. H. 1887 The president's address. Jour. Roy. Micr. Soc. for 1887.
- DOBELL, C. 1918 Are *Entamoeba histolytica* and *Entamoeba ranarum* the same species? Parasitology, Vol. 10.
- DOUDOROFF, M. 1936 Studies in thermal death in *Paramecium*. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 72.
- EFIMOFF, W. W. 1924 Ueber Ausfrieren und Ueberkältung der Protozoen. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 49.
- FINLEY, H. E. 1930 Toleration of freshwater Protozoa to increased salinity. Ecology, Vol. 11.
- GLASER, R. W. and N. A. CORIA. 1933 The culture of *Paramecium caudatum* free from living microorganisms. Jour. Parasit. Vol. 20.
- JANDA, V. and O. JÍROVEC 1937 Ueber künstlich hervorgerufenen Parasitismus eines freilebenden Ciliaten *Glaucoma piriformis* und Infektionsversuche mit *Euglena gracilis* und *Spirochaeta biflexa*. Mém. soc. zool. tchéc. de Prague, Vol. 5.
- KIDDER, G. W. 1941 Growth studies on ciliates. VII. Biol. Bull., Vol. 80.
- KOLKWITZ, R. and M. MARSSON 1909 Oekologie der tierischen Saprobien. Intern. Rev. Ges. Hydrobiol. u. Hydrogr., Vol. 2.
- KUDO, R. R. 1929 Histo-zoic Myxosporidia found in freshwater fishes of Illinois, U.S.A. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 65.
- LACKEY, J. B. 1925 The fauna of Imhof tanks. Bull. New Jersey Agr. Exp. Stat., No. 417.
- LAUTERBORN, R. 1901 Die "sapropelische" Lebewelt. Zool. Anz., Vol. 24.
- NEEDHUM, J. G., P. S. GALTSOFF, F. E. LUTZ and P. S. WELCH. 1937 *Culture methods for invertebrate animals*. Ithaca, N.Y.
- NOLAND, L. E. 1925 Factors influencing the distribution of freshwater ciliates. Ecology, Vol. 6.

- REYNOLDS, B. D. 1936 *Colpoda steini*, a facultative parasite of the land slug, *Agriolimax agrestis*. Jour. Parasit., Vol. 22.
- and J. B. Looper 1928 Infection experiments with *Hydramoeba hydroxena* nov. gen. Ibid., Vol. 15.
- SANDON, H. 1927 *The composition and distribution of the protozoan fauna of the soil*. Edinburgh.
- TALIAFERRO, W. H. 1926 Host resistance and types of infections in trypanosomiasis and malaria. Quart. Rev. Biol., Vol. 1.
- VON BRAND, T. 1938 The metabolism of pathogenic trypanosomes and the carbohydrate metabolism of their hosts. Ibid., Vol. 13.
- WENYON, C. M. 1926 *Protozoology*. 2 vols. London and New York.
- WOLFSON, C. 1935 Observations on *Paramecium* during exposure to sub-zero temperatures. Ecology, Vol. 16.
- YOCOM, H. B. 1934 Observations on the experimental adaptation of certain freshwater ciliates to sea water. Biol. Bull., Vol. 67.

CHAPTER 3

Morphology

PROTOZOA range in size from ultramicroscopic to macroscopic, though they are on the whole minute microscopic animals. The parasitic forms, especially cytozoic parasites, are often extremely small, while free-living protozoans are usually of much larger dimensions. Noctiluca, Foraminifera, Radiolaria, many ciliates such as Stentor, Bursaria, etc., represent larger forms. Colonial protozoans such as Carchesium, Zoothamnium, Ophrydium, etc., are even greater than the solitary forms. On the other hand, Plasmodium, Leishmania, and microsporidian spores may be mentioned as examples of the smallest forms. The unit of measurement employed in protozoology is, as in general microscopy, 1 micron (μ) which is equal to 0.001 mm.

The body form of Protozoa is even more varied, and because of its extreme plasticity it frequently does not remain constant. Furthermore the form and size of a given species may vary according to the kind and amount of food as is discussed elsewhere (p. 94). From a small simple spheroidal mass up to large highly complex forms, all possible body forms occur. Although the great majority are without symmetry, there are some which possess a definite symmetry. Thus bilateral symmetry is noted in all members of Diplomonadina (p. 311); radial symmetry in Gonium, Cyclonexis, etc.; and universal symmetry, in certain Heliozoa, Volvox, etc.

The fundamental component of the protozoan body is the protoplasm which is without exception differentiated into the nucleus and the cytosome. Haeckel's monera are now considered as non-existent, since improved microscopic technique has failed in recent years to reveal any anucleated protozoans. The nucleus and the cytosome are inseparably important to the well-being of a protozoan, as has been shown by numerous investigators since Verworn's pioneer work. In all cases, successful regeneration of the body is accomplished only by the nucleus-bearing portions and enucleate parts degenerate sooner or later. On the other hand, when the nucleus is taken out of a protozoan, both the nucleus and cytosome degenerate, which indicates their intimate association in carrying on the activities of the body. It appears certain that the nucleus controls the assimilative phase of metabolism which takes place in the cytosome in normal animals, while the cytosome is capable of carrying on the catabolic

phase of the metabolism. Aside from the importance as the controlling center of metabolism, evidences point to the conclusion that the nucleus contains the genes or hereditary factors which characterize each species of protozoans from generation to generation, as in the cells of multicellular animals and plants.

The nucleus

Because of a great variety of the body form and organization, the protozoan nuclei are of various forms, sizes and structures. At one extreme there is a small nucleus and, at the other, a large voluminous one and, between these extremes, is found almost every conceivable variety of form and structure. The majority of Protozoa contain a single nucleus, though many may possess two or more throughout the greater part of their life-cycle. In several species, each individual possesses two similar nuclei, as in *Diplomonadina*, *Protoopalina* and *Zelleriella*. In *Euciliata* and *Suctorina*, two dissimilar nuclei, a macronucleus and a micronucleus, are typically present. The macronucleus is always larger than the micronucleus, and controls the trophic activities of the organism, while the micronucleus is concerned with the reproductive activity. Certain Protozoa possess numerous nuclei of similar structure, as for example, in *Pelomyxa*, *Mycetozoa*, *Actinosphaerium*, *Opalina*, *Cepedea*, *Myxosporidia*, *Microsporidia*, etc.

The essential components of the protozoan nucleus are the nuclear membrane, chromatin, plastin and nucleoplasm. Their interrelationship varies sometimes from one developmental stage to another, and vastly among different species. Structurally, they fall in general into one of the two types: vesicular and compact.

The **vesicular** nucleus (Fig. 2, *a*) consists of a nuclear membrane which is sometimes very delicate but distinct, nucleoplasm and chromatin. Besides there is an intranuclear body which is, as a rule, more or less spherical and which appears to be of different make-ups as judged by its staining reactions among different nuclei. It may be composed of chromatin, of plastin, or of a mixture of both. The first type is sometimes called karyosome and the second, nucleolus or plasmosome. Absolute distinction between these two terms cannot be made as they are based upon the difference in affinity to nuclear stains which cannot be standardized and hence do not give uniformly the same result. Following Minchin and others, the term **endosome** is advocated here to designate one or more conspicuous bodies other than the chromatin granules, present within the nuclear membrane.

When viewed in life, the nucleoplasm is ordinarily homogeneous and structureless. But, upon fixation, there appear invariably plastin strands or networks which seem to connect the endosome and the nuclear membrane. Some investigators hold that these strands or networks exist naturally in life, but due to the similarity of refractive indices of the strands and of the nucleoplasm, they are not visible and that, when fixed, they become readily recognizable because of a change in these indices. In some nuclei, however, certain strands have been observed in life, as for example in the nucleus of the species of *Barbulanympha* (Fig. 152, c), according to Cleveland and his associates (1934). Others maintain that the achromatic structures prominent in fixed vesicular nuclei are mere artifacts brought about

FIG. 2. a, vesicular nucleus; b, compact nucleus (diagrams).

by fixation and do not exist in life and that the nucleoplasm is a homogeneous liquid matrix of the nucleus.

The chromatin substance is ordinarily present as small granules although at times they may be in block forms. Precise knowledge of chromatin is still lacking. At present the determination of the chromatin depends upon the following tests: (1) artificial digestion which does not destroy this substance, while non-chromatinic parts of the nucleus are completely dissolved; (2) acidified methyl green which stains the chromatin bright green; (3) 10 per cent sodium chloride solution which dissolves, or causes swelling of, chromatin granules, while nuclear membrane and achromatic substances remain unattacked; and (4) in the fixed condition Feulgen's nucleal reaction. The vesicular nucleus is most commonly present in various orders of the Sarcodina and Mastigophora.

The **compact** nucleus (Fig. 2, b), on the other hand, contains a large amount of chromatin substance and a comparatively small amount of nucleoplasm, and is thus massive. The macronucleus of the Ciliophora is almost always of this kind. The variety of forms of the compact nuclei is indeed remarkable. It may be spherical, ovate, cylindrical, club-shaped, band-form, moniliform, horseshoe-form, filamentous, or dendritic. The nuclear membrane is always

distinct, and the chromatin substance is usually of spheroidal form, varying in size among different species and often even in the same nucleus. In the majority of species, the chromatin granules are small and compact, though in some forms, such as *Nyctotherus ovalis* (Fig. 3), they may reach 20μ or more in diameter in some individuals,

FIG. 3. Parts of four macronuclei of *Nyctotherus ovalis*, showing chromatin spherules of different sizes, $\times 650$ (Kudo).

and while the smaller chromatin granules seem to be solid, larger forms contain alveoli of different sizes in which smaller chromatin granules are suspended (Kudo, 1936).

There is no sharp demarcation between the vesicular and compact nuclei, since there are numerous nuclei the structures of which are intermediate between the two. Moreover what appears to be a vesicular nucleus in life, may approach a compact nucleus when fixed and stained as in the case of Euglenoidina. Several experimental observations show that the number, size, and structure of the endo-

some in the vesicular nucleus, and the amount and arrangement of the chromatin in the compact nucleus, vary according to the physiological state of the whole organism. The macronucleus may be divided into two or more parts with or without connections among them and in *Dileptus anser* into more than 200 small nuclei, each of which is "composed of a plastin core and a chromatin cortex" (Calkins; Hayes).

In general, the chromatin granules or spherules fill the intranuclear space compactly, in which one or more endosomes may occur. In many nuclei these chromatin granules appear to be suspended freely, while in others a reticulum appears to make the background. The chromatin of compact nuclei gives a strong positive Feulgen's nucleal reaction. The macronuclear and micronuclear chromatin substances respond differently to Feulgen's nucleal reaction or to the so-called nuclear stains, as judged by the difference in the intensity or tone of color. In *Paramecium caudatum*, *P. aurelia*, *Chilodonella*, *Nyctotherus ovalis*, etc., the macronuclear chromatin is colored more deeply than the micronuclear chromatin, while in Colpoda, Urostyla, Euplotes, Stylonychia, and others, the reverse seems to be the case, which may support the validity of the assumption by Heidenhain that the two types of the nuclei of Euciliata and Suctoria are made up of different chromatin substances—idiochromatin in the micronucleus and trophochromatin in the macronucleus—and in other classes of Protozoa, the two kinds of chromatin are present together in a single nucleus.

Chromidia. Since the detection of chromatin had solely depended on its affinity to certain nuclear stains, several investigators found extranuclear chromatin granules in many protozoans. Finding such granules in the cytosome of *Actinosphaerium eichhorni*, *Arcella vulgaris*, and others, Hertwig (1902) called them chromidia, and maintained that under certain circumstances, such as lack of food material, the nuclei disappear and the chromatin granules become scattered throughout the cytosome. In the case of *Arcella vulgaris*, the two nuclei break down completely to produce a chromidial-net which later reforms into smaller secondary nuclei. It has, however, been found by Bělař that the lack of food caused the encystment rather than chromidia-formation in *Actinosphaerium* and, according to Reichenow, Jollos observed that in *Arcella* the nuclei persisted, but were thickly covered by chromidial-net which could be cleared away by artificial digestion to reveal the two nuclei. In *Diffugia*, the chromidial-net is vacuolated or alveolated in the fall and in each alveolus appear glycogen granules which seem to serve as reserve

food material for the reproduction that takes place during that season (Zuelzer), and the chromidia occurring in *Actinosphaerium* appear to be of a combination of a carbohydrate and a protein (Rumjantzew and Wermel). Apparently the widely distributed volutin (p. 101), and many inclusions or cytozoic parasites, such as *Sphaerita*, which occur occasionally in different Sarcodina, have in some cases been called chromidia. By using Feulgen's nucleal reaction, Reichenow (1928) obtained a diffused violet-stained zone in *Chlamydomonas* and held them to be dissolved volutin. Calkins (1933) found the chromidia of *Arcella vulgaris* negative to the nucleal reaction, but by omitting acid-hydrolysis and treating with fuchsin-sulphurous acid for 8-14 hours, the chromidia and the secondary nuclei were found to show a typical positive reaction and believed that the chromidia were chromatin. Thus at present the real nature of chromidia is still not clearly known, although many protozoologists are inclined to think that the substance is not chromatinic, but, in some way, is connected with the metabolism of the protozoan.

The cytosome

The extranuclear part of the protozoan body is the cytosome. It is composed of the cytoplasm, a colloidal system, which may be homogenous, granulated, vacuolated, reticulated, or fibrillar in optical texture, and is almost always colorless. The chromatophore-bearing Protozoa are variously colored, and those with symbiotic algae or cryptomonads are also greenish or brownish in color. Furthermore, pigment or crystals which are produced in the body, may give protozoans various colorations. In several forms pigments are diffused throughout the cytoplasm. For example, many dinoflagellates are beautifully colored, which, according to Kofoid and Swezy, is due to a thorough diffusion of pigment in the cytoplasm. *Stentor coeruleus* is ordinarily blue-colored, the pigment *stentorin* (Lankester) is lodged as granules between the surface striae; and rose- or purple-coloration of several species of *Blepharisma* appears to be due to a special pigment, *zoopurpurin* (Arcichovskij) which is said to be lodged in the ectoplasmic granules often called protrichocysts (p. 65). The development of zoopurpurin is definitely correlated with the sun-light, as shown by Giese. Deeply pink specimens will lose color completely in a few hours when exposed to strong sun-light and the recoloration takes place in darkness very slowly.

The extent and nature of the cytosomic differentiation differ greatly among various groups. In the majority of Protozoa, the cytoplasm is differentiated into the ectoplasm and the endoplasm.

The **ectoplasm** is the cortical zone which is hyaline and homogeneous. In the Ciliophora, it is a permanent and distinct part of the body and contains several organellae; in the Sarcodina and the Sporozoa, it is more or less a temporarily differentiated zone and hence varies greatly at different times and, in the Mastigophora, it seems to be more or less permanent. The **endoplasm** is more voluminous and fluid. It is granulated or alveolated and contains various organellae. While the alveolated cytoplasm is normal in forms such as the members of Heliozoa and Radiolaria, in other cases the alveolation of normally granulated or vacuolated cytoplasm indicates invariably the degeneration of the protozoan body. In Amoeba and other Sarcodina, the "hyaline cap" and "layer" (Mast) make up the ectoplasm, and the "plasmasol" and "plamagel" (Mast) compose the endoplasm (Fig. 44).

In numerous Sarcodina and certain Mastigophora, the body surface is naked and not protected by any form-giving organella. According to the observations by Kite, Howland, and others, the surface layer is not only elastic, but solid, and therefore the name **plasma-membrane** may be applied to it. Such forms are capable of undergoing amoeboid movement by formation of pseudopodia and by continuous change of form due to the movement of the cytoplasm which is more fluid. However, the majority of Protozoa possess a characteristic and constant body form due to the development of a special envelope, the **pellicle**. In *Amoeba striata* and *A. verrucosa*, there is a distinct pellicle. The same is true with some flagellates, such as certain species of Euglena, Peranema, and Astasia, in which it is elastic and expansible so that the organisms show a great deal of plasticity.

The pellicle of a ciliate is much thicker and more definite, and often variously ridged or sculptured. In many, linear furrows and ridges run longitudinally, obliquely, or spirally; and, in others, the ridges are combined with hexagonal or rectangular depressed areas. Still in others, such as Coleps, elevated platelets are arranged parallel to the longitudinal axis of the body. In certain peritrichous ciliates, such as *Vorticella monilata*, *Carchesium granulatum*, etc., the pellicle may possess nodular thickenings arranged in more or less parallel rows at right angles to the body axis.

While the pellicle always covers the protozoan body closely, there are other kinds of protective envelopes produced by Protozoa which may cover the body rather loosely. These are the shell, test, lorica or envelope. The **shell** of various Phytomastigina is usually made up of cellulose, a carbohydrate, which is widely distributed

in the plant kingdom. It may be composed of a single or several layers, and may possess ridges or markings of various patterns on it. In addition to the shell, gelatinous substance may in many forms be produced to surround the shelled body or in the members of Volvocidae to form the matrix of the entire colony in which the individuals are embedded. In the dinoflagellates, the shell is highly developed and often composed of numerous plates which are variously sculptured.

In other Protozoa, the shell is made up of chitin or pseudo-chitin (tectin). Common examples are found in the testaceans; for example, in Arcella and allied forms, the shell is made up of chitinous material constructed in particular ways which characterize the different genera. Newly formed shell is colorless, but older ones become brownish, because of the presence of iron oxide. Diffugia and related genera form shells by gluing together small sand-grains, diatom-shells, debris, etc., with chitinous or pseudochitinous substances which they secrete. Many foraminiferans seem to possess a remarkable selective power in the use of foreign materials, for the construction of their shells. According to Cushman, *Psammosphaera fusca* uses sand-grains of uniform color but of different sizes, while *P. parva* uses grains of more or less uniform size but adds, as a rule, a single large acerose sponge spicule which is built into the test and which extends out both ways considerably. Cushman thinks that this is not accidental, since the specimens without the spicules are few and those with a short or broken spicules are not found. *P. bowmanni*, on the other hand, uses only mica flakes which are found in a comparatively small amount, and *P. rustica* uses acerose sponge spicules for the framework of the shell, skilfully fitting smaller broken pieces into polygonal areas. Other foraminiferans combine chitinous secretion with calcium carbonate and produce beautifully complicated shells (Fig. 4) with one or numerous pores. In the Coccolithidae, variously shaped platelets of calcium carbonate ornament the shell.

The silica is present in the shells of various Protozoa. In Euglypha and related testaceans, siliceous scales or platelets are produced in the endoplasm and compose a new shell at the time of fission or of encystment together with the chitinous secretion. In many heliozoans, siliceous substance forms spicules, platelets, or combination of both which are embedded in the mucilaginous envelope that surrounds the body and, in some cases, a special clathrate shell composed of silica, is to be found. In some Radiolaria, isolated siliceous spicules occur as in Heliozoa, while in others the lateral development of the spines results in production of highly complex and the most

beautiful shells with various ornamentations or incorporation of foreign materials. Many pelagic radiolarians possess numerous conspicuous radiating spines in connection with the skeleton, which apparently aid the organisms in maintaining their existence in the open sea.

FIG. 4. Diagram of the shell of *Peneroplis pertusus*, $\times$ about 35 (Carpenter). ep, external pore; s, septum; sc, stolon canal.

Certain Protomonadina possess a funnel-like collar in the flagellated end and in some in addition a chitinous lorica surrounds the body. The lorica found in the Ciliophora is mostly composed of chitinous substance alone, especially in Peritricha, although others produce a house made up of gelatinous secretion containing foreign materials as in *Stentor* (p. 645). In the Tintinnidae, the loricae are either solely chitinous in numerous marine forms not mentioned in the present work or composed of sand-grains or coccoliths cemented together by chitinous secretion, which are found in fresh-water forms.

Locomotor organellae

Closely associated with the body surface are the organellae of locomotion: *pseudopodia*, *flagella*, and *cilia*. These organellae are not confined to Protozoa alone and occur in various cells of Metazoa. All protoplasmic masses are capable of movement which may result in change of their forms.

Pseudopodia. A pseudopodium is a temporary projection of part of the cytoplasm of those protozoans which do not possess a definite pellicle. Pseudopodia are therefore a characteristic organella of

Sarcodina, though many Mastigophora and certain Sporozoa, which lack a pellicle, are also able to produce them. According to their form and structure, four kinds of pseudopodia are distinguished.

1). **Lobopodium** is formed by an extension of the ectoplasm, accompanied by a flow of endoplasm as is commonly found in *Amoeba proteus* (Figs. 44; 161). It is finger- or tongue-like, sometimes branched, and its distal end is typically rounded. It is quickly formed and equally quickly retracted. In many cases, there are many pseudopodia formed from the entire body surface, in which the largest one will counteract the smaller ones and the organism will move in one direction; while in others, there may be a single pseudopodium formed, as in *Amoeba striata*, *A. guttula*, *Vahlkampfia limax*, *Pelomyxa carolinensis*, etc., in which case it is a broadly tongue-like extension of the body in one direction and the progressive movement of the organisms is comparatively rapid. The lobopodia may occasionally be conical in general shape, as in *Amoeba spumosa*. Although ordinarily the formation of lobopodia is by a general flow of the cytoplasm, in some it is sudden and "eruptive," as in *Endamoeba blattae* or *Entamoeba histolytica* in which the flow of the endoplasm presses against the inner zone of the ectoplasm and the accumulated pressure finally causes breaks through the zone, resulting in a sudden extension of the endoplasmic flow at that point.

2). **Filopodium** is a more or less filamentous projection composed almost exclusively of the ectoplasm. It may be sometimes branched, but the branches do not anastomose. Many testaceans, such as *Lecythium*, *Boderia*, *Plagiophrys*, *Pamphagus*, *Euglypha*, etc., form this type of pseudopodia. The pseudopodia of *Amoeba radiosa* may be considered as approaching this type rather than the lobopodia.

3). **Rhizopodium** is also filamentous, but branching and anastomosing. It is found in numerous Foraminifera, such as *Elphidium*, *Peneroplis* (Fig. 5), etc., and in certain testaceans, such as *Lieberkühnia*, *Myxotheca*, etc. The abundantly branching and anastomosing rhizopodia often produce a large network which serve almost exclusively for capturing prey.

4). **Axopodium** is, unlike the other three types, a more or less semi-permanent structure and composed of axial rod and cytoplasmic envelope. Axopodia are found in many Heliozoa, such as *Actinophrys*, *Actinosphaerium*, *Camptonema*, *Sphaerastrum*, and *Acanthocystis*. The axial rod, which is composed of fibrils (Doflein; Roskin), arises from the central body or the nucleus located in the approximate center of the body, from each of the nuclei in multi-

nucleate forms, or from the zone between the ectoplasm and endoplasm (Fig. 6). Although semipermanent in structure, the axial rod is easily absorbed and reformed. In the genera of Heliozoa, not

FIG. 5. Pseudopodia of *Elphidium strigilata*, $\times$ about 50
(Schulze from Kühn).

mentioned above and in numerous radiolarians, the radiating filamentous pseudopodia are so extremely delicate that it is difficult to determine whether an axial rod exists in each or not, although they resemble axopodia in general appearance.

There is no sharp demarcation between the four types of pseudo-

podia, as there are transitional pseudopodia between any two of them. For example, the pseudopodia formed by *Arcella*, *Lesquer-eusia*, *Hyalosphaenia*, etc., resemble more lobopodia than filopodia, though composed of the ectoplasm only. The pseudopodia of *Actinomonas*, *Elaeorhanis*, *Clathrulina*, etc., may be looked upon as transitional between rhizopodia and axopodia.

FIG. 6. Portion of *Actinosphaerium eichhorni*, $\times 800$ (Kühn), ar, axial rod; cv, contractile vacuole; ec, ectoplasm; en, endoplasm; n, nucleus.

While the pseudopodia formed by an individual are usually of characteristic form and appearance, they may show an entirely different appearance under different circumstances. According to the often-quoted experiment of Verworn, a limax amoeba changed into a radiosa amoeba upon addition of potassium hydrate to the water (Fig. 7). Mast has recently shown that when *Amoeba proteus* or *A. dubia* was transferred from a salt medium into pure water, the amoeba produced radiating pseudopodia, and when transferred back to a salt medium, it changed into monopodial form, which change, he was inclined to attribute to the difference in the water contents of the amoeba. In some cases during and after certain internal changes, an amoeba may show conspicuous differences in pseudopodia (Neresheimer). As was stated before, pseudopodia occur widely in forms which are placed under classes other than Sarcodina during a part of their life-cycle. Care, therefore, should be exer-

cised in using them for taxonomic consideration of the Protozoa.

Flagella. The flagellum is a filamentous extension of the cytoplasm and is ordinarily extremely fine and highly vibratile, so that it is difficult to recognize it in life under the microscope with a moderate magnification. It is most clearly observed over a darkfield condenser. Lugol's solution (p. 721) stains it, though the organism is killed. In a number of species, the flagellum, however, can be seen in life as a long filament, as for example in *Peranema*. As a rule, the number of flagella present in a single individual is small, varying from one to eight, but in *Hypermastigina* there are numerous fla-

FIG. 7. Form-change in a limax-amoeba (Verworn). a, b, contracted forms; c, individual showing typical form; d-f, radiosiforms, after addition of KOH solution to the water.

gella. A flagellum appears to be composed of at least two parts (Fig. 8, a, b). An elastic axial filament takes its origin in the basal granule. Surrounding this filament there is a sheath of contractile cytoplasm which varies in thickness alternately on the opposite sides of the filament. The flagellum ordinarily tapers toward its distal end where the axial filament is said to be frequently exposed.

Vlk (1938) found, besides the kind mentioned above which he called the whip-flagellum, another form named by him ciliary flagellum. The latter is said to be uniformly thick, but possesses dense ciliary projections which are arranged on it in one or two spiral rows

FIG. 8. Diagrams of flagella. a, flagellum of *Euglena* (Bütschli); b, flagellum of *Trachelomonas* (Plenge); c, ciliary flagellum with one row of cilia; d, a ciliary flagellum with two rows of cilia; e, whip-flagella of *Polytoma uvella*; f, ciliary flagellum of *Urceolus cyclostomus*; g, the flagella of *Monas socialis* (Vlk).

(Fig. 8, c, d). The whip-flagellum occurs in *Chlamydomonas*, *Polytoma uvella* (e), *Cercomonas crassicauda*, *Trepomonas rotans*, *T. agilis*, *Hexamita inflata*, *Urophagus rostratus*, etc.; the ciliary

flagellum, in *Mallomonas*, *Chromulina*, *Trachelomonas*, *Urceolus* (*f*), *Phacus*, *Euglena*, *Astasia*, *Distigma*, etc.; and both kinds in *Synura*, *Uroglena*, *Dinobryon*, *Monas* (*g*), etc. (Vik).

The flagellum is most frequently inserted near the anterior end of the body and directed forward, its movement pulling the organism forward. Combined with this, there may be a trailing flagellum which is directed posteriorly and serves to steer the course of movement or to push the body forward to a certain extent. In a comparatively small number of flagellates, the flagellum is inserted near the

FIG. 9. Diagrams of two flagellates, showing their structures (Kühn).
a, *Trypanosoma brucei*; b, *Proteromonas lacertae*.

posterior end of the body and would push the body forward by its vibration. Lankester coined the terms *tractella* and *pulsella* for pulling and pushing flagella respectively.

In certain parasitic Mastigophora, such as *Trypanosoma* (Fig. 9, *a*), *Trichomonas*, etc., there is a very delicate membrane extending out from the side of the body, a flagellum bordering its outer margin. When this membrane vibrates, it shows a characteristic undulating movement, as will easily be seen in *Trypanosoma rotatorium* of the frog, and is called the **undulating membrane**. In many of the dinoflagellates, the transverse flagellum seems to be similarly constructed (Kofoed and Swezy) (Fig. 107, *d*, *f*).

Cilia. The cilia are the organella of locomotion found in the Ciliophora. They aid in the ingestion of food and serve often as a tactile organella. The cilia are fine and more or less short processes of ectoplasm and occur in large numbers in the majority of the Holotricha.

They may be uniformly long, as in *Protociliata*, or may be of different lengths, being longer at the extremities, on certain areas, in peristome or in circumoral areas. Ordinarily the cilia are arranged in longitudinal, oblique, or spiral rows, being inserted either on the ridges or in the furrows. Again the cilia may be confined to certain parts or zones of the body.

FIG. 10. Diagrams of cilia (Klein). a, *Coleps*; b, *Cyclidium glaucoma*; c, *Colpidium colpoda*. af, axial filament; bg, basal granule; cf, circular fibril; cs, cross-striation; sg, secondary granule.

Each cilium originates in a basal granule situated in the deeper part of the ectoplasm and, in a few species, a cilium is found to be made up of an elastic axial filament arising from the basal granule, and the contractile sheath. Gelei observed in flagella and cilia, lipoid substance in granular or rod-like forms which differed even among different individuals of the same species; and Klein found in many cilia of *Colpidium colpoda*, an argentophilous substance in granular form much resembling the lipoid structure of Gelei and called them "cross-striation" of the contractile component (Fig. 10).

FIG. 11. a, five anal cirri of *Euplotes eurystomus* (Taylor); b, schematic ventral view of *Stylonychia* to show the distribution of the cirri.

The cilia are often present more densely in a certain area than in other parts of body and, consequently, such an area stands out conspicuously, and is sometimes referred to as a *ciliary field*. If this area is in the form of a zone, it may be called a *ciliary zone*. Some authors use *pectinellae* for short longitudinal rows or transverse bands of close-set cilia. In a number of forms, such as Coleps, Stentor, etc., there occur, mingled among the vibratile cilia, immobile stiff cilia which are apparently solely tactile in function.

FIG. 12. Diagrams of cirrus and membranella of *Euplotes eurystomus*, $\times 1450$ (Taylor). a, an anal cirrus in side view; b, a membranella; bg, basal granule; cpg, coagulated protoplasmic granules; cr, ciliary root; fp, fiber plate.

In the Hypotricha, the cilia are largely replaced by cirri, although in some species both may occur. A **cirrus** is composed of a number of cilia arranged in 2 to 3 rows that fused into one structure completely (Figs. 11, 12), which was demonstrated by Taylor. Klein also showed by desiccation that each marginal cirrus of *Stylonychia* was composed of 7 to 8 cilia. In some instances, the distal portion of a cirrus may show two or more branches. The cirri are confined to the ventral surface in Hypotricha, and called frontal, ventral, anal, caudal, and marginal cirri, according to their location (Fig. 11). Unlike the cilia, the cirri may move in any direction so that the organisms bearing them, show various types of locomotion. Oxytricha,

Stylonychia, etc., walk on frontals, ventrals, and anals, while swimming movement by other species is of different types.

In all euciliates except Holotricha, there are adoral membranellae. A **membranella** is composed of a double ciliary lamella, fused completely into a plate (Fig. 12). A number of these membranellae occur on a margin of the peristome, forming the **adoral zone** of membranellae, which serves for bringing the food particles to the cytostome. The frontal portion of the zone, the so-called **frontal membrane** appears to serve for locomotion and Kahl considers that it is probably made up of three lamellae. The oral membranes which are often found in Holotricha and Heterotricha, are transparent thin membranous structures composed of one or two rows of cilia, which are

FIG. 13. Diagrams showing the possible development of a suctorian tentacle from a cytostome and cytopharynx of a ciliate (Collin).

more or less strongly fused. The membranes, located in the lower end of the peristome, are sometimes called perioral membranes, and those in the cytopharynx, undulating membranes.

In Suctoria, cilia are present only during the developmental stages, and, as the organisms become mature, tentacles develop in their stead. The **tentacles** are concerned with food-capturing, and are either prehensile or usually suctorial. In some instances the tentacles are tubular and this type is interpreted by Collin as possibly derived from a cytostome and cytopharynx of the ciliate (Fig. 13).

Although the vast majority of Protozoa possess only one of the three organellae of locomotion mentioned above, a few may possess pseudopodia in one phase and flagella in another phase during their life-cycle. Among many examples, may be mentioned Dimastigamoebidae (Fig. 160), *Tetramitus rostratus* (Fig. 134), etc. Furthermore, there are some protozoans which possess two types of organellae at the same time. Flagellum or flagella and pseudopodia occur

in many Phytomastigina and Rhizomastigina, and a flagellum and cilia are present in *Ileonema* (Fig. 273, *b*, *c*).

In the cytosome of Protozoa there occur various organellae, each of which will be considered briefly here.

Fibrillar structures

One of the fundamental characteristics of the protoplasm is its contractility. If a fully expanded *Amoeba proteus* is subjected to a

FIG. 14. Myonemes in *Stentor coeruleus* (Schröder). *a*, cross-section of ectoplasm; *b*, surface view of three myonemes; *c*, two isolated myonemes; *bg*, basal granules; *cl*, cilium; *gis*, granules between striae; *m*, myonemes; *mc*, myoneme canal.

mechanical pressure, it retracts its pseudopodia and contracts into a more or less spherical form. In this response there is no special organella, and the whole body reacts. But in certain other Protozoa, there are special organellae of contraction. Many Ciliophora are able to contract instantaneously when subjected to mechanical pressure, as will easily be noticed by following the movement of *Stentor*, *Spirostomum*, *Trachelocerca*, *Vorticella*, etc., under a dissecting microscope. The earliest observer of the contractile elements of

Protozoa appears to be Lieberkühn (1857) who noted the "muscle fibers" in the ectoplasm of *Stentor* which were later named myonemes (Haeckel) or neurophanes (Neresheimer).

The **myonemes** of *Stentor* have been studied by several investigators. According to Schröder (1906), there is a canal between each two longitudinal striae and in it occurs a long banded myoneme which measures in cross-section $3-7\mu$ high by about 1μ wide and which appears cross-striated (Fig. 14). Roskin (1923) considers that,

FIG. 15. a, b, fibrillar structures of the stalk of *Zoothamnium* (Koltzoff); c, myonemes in *Gregarina* (Schneider). ef, elastic fiber; ie, inner envelope; k, kinoplasm; oe, outer envelope; t, thecaloplasm.

the myoneme is a homogeneous cytoplasm (kinoplasm) and the wall of the canal is highly elastic and counteracts the contraction of the myonemes. All observers agree that the myoneme is a highly contractile organella.

Many stalked peritrichous ciliates have well-developed myonemes not only in the body proper, but also in the stalk. Koltzoff's studies show that the stalk is a pseudochitinous tube, enclosing an inner tube filled with granulated thecaloplasm, which surrounds a central

rod, composed of kinoplasm, on the surface of which are arranged skeletal fibrils (Fig. 15). The contraction of the stalk is brought about by the action of kinoplasm and walls, while elastic rods will lead to extension of the stalk. Myonemes present in the ciliates aid in the contraction of body, but those which occur in many Gregarinida aid apparently in locomotion, being arranged longitudinally, transversely and probably spirally (Fig. 15, c). In certain Radiolaria, such as *Acanthometron elasticum* (Fig. 195, c), etc., each axial spine is connected with 10–30 myonemes (myophrisks) originating in the body surface. When these myonemes contract, the body volume is increased, thus in this case functioning as a hydrostatic organella.

In *Isotricha prostoma* and *I. intestinalis*, Schuberg (1888) observed that the nucleus is suspended by ectoplasmic fibrils and called the apparatus **karyophore**. In some forms these fibrils are replaced by ectoplasmic membranes as in *Nyctotherus ovalis* (Zuluta; Kudo). ten Kate (1927) studied fibrillar systems in *Opalina*, *Nyctotherus*, *Ichthyophthirius*, *Didinium*, and *Balantidium*, and found that there are numerous fibrils, each of which originates in a basal granule of a cilium and takes a transverse or oblique course through the endoplasm, ending in a basal granule located on the other side of the body. He further noted that the cytopharynx and nucleus are also connected with these fibrils. ten Kate suggested **morphonemes** for them, since he believed that the majority were form-retaining fibrils.

The well-coordinated movement of cilia in the ciliate has long been recognized, but it was Sharp (1914) who definitely showed that this ciliary coordination is made possible by a certain fibrillar system which he discovered in *Epidinium* (*Diplodinium*) *ecaudatum* (Fig. 16). Sharp recognized in this ciliate a complicated fibrillar system connecting all the motor organellae of the cytostomal region, and thinking that it was "probably nervous in function," as its size, arrangement and location did not suggest supporting or contractile function, he gave the name **neuromotor apparatus** to the whole system. This apparatus consists of a central motor mass, the *motorium* (which is stained red with Zenker fixation and modified Mallory's connective tissue staining), located in the ectoplasm just above the base of the left skeletal area, from which definite strands radiate: namely, one to the roots of the dorsal membranellae (a dorsal motor strand); one to the roots of the adoral membranellae (a ventral motor strand); one to the cytopharynx (a circum-oesophageal ring and oesophageal fibers); and several strands into the

FIG. 16. A composite drawing from three median sagittal sections of *Epidinium ecaudatum*, fixed in Zenker and stained with Mallory's connective tissue stain, $\times 1200$ (Sharp). am, adoral membranellae; c, cytostome; cp, cytopharynx; cpg, cytophyge; cpr, circumpharyngeal ring; dd, dorsal disk; dm, dorsal membrane; ec, ectoplasm; en, endoplasm; m, motorium; oc, oral cilia; od, oral disk; oef, oesophageal fibers; of, opercular fibers; p, pellicle; prs, pharyngeal retractor strands; sl, skeletal laminae; vs, ventral skeletal area.

ectoplasm of the operculum (opercular fibers). A similar apparatus has since been observed in many other ciliates: *Euplotes* (Yocom; Taylor), *Balantidium* (McDonald), *Paramecium* (Rees; Brown; Lund), *Tintinnopsis* (Campbell), *Boveria* (Pickard), *Dileptus* (Vischer), *Chlamydodon* (MacDougall), *Entorhipidium* and *Lechriopyla* (Lynch), *Eupoterion* (MacLennan and Connell), *Metopus* (Lucas), *Troglodytella* (Robertson), *Oxytricha* (Lund), *Ancistruma* and *Conchophthirus* (Kidder), etc.

FIG. 17. Diagrams showing the neuromotor apparatus of *Euplotes patella* (Taylor). a, diagrammatic dorsal view of the entire apparatus, $\times 1600$; b, dissected portion of disintegrating membranella fiber plates attached to the membranella fiber; c, a dissociated fiber plate of a frontal cirrus with its attached fibers, $\times 1450$. acf, anal cirrus fiber; afp, anal fiber plate; eg, small and large ectoplasmic granules; m, motorium; mf, membranella fiber; mfp, membranella fiber plate.

Euplotes patella, a common free-living hypotrichous ciliate, has been known for nearly 50 years to possess definite fibrils connecting the anal cirri with the anterior part of the body. Engelmann suggested that their function was more or less nervelike, while others maintained that they were supporting or contracting in function. Yocom (1918) traced the fibrils to the motorium, a very small bilobed body (about 8μ by 2μ) located close to the right anterior corner of the triangular cytostome (Fig. 17, a). Joining with its left end are five long fibers from the anal cirri which converge and appear to unite with the motorium as a single strand. From the right end of the motorium extends the membranella-fiber anteriorly and then to left

along the proximal border of the oral lip and the bases of all membranellae. Yocom further noticed that within the lip there is a latticework structure whose bases very closely approximate the cyto-stomal fiber. Taylor (1920) recognized two additional groups of fibrils in the same organism: (1) membranella fiber plates, each of which is contiguous with a membranella basal plate, and is attached at one end to the membranella fiber; (2) dissociated fiber plates contiguous with the basal plates of the frontal, ventral and marginal cirri, to each of which are attached the dissociated fibers(c). By means of microdissection needles, Taylor demonstrated that these fibers have nothing to do with the maintenance of the body form, since there results no deformity when *Euplotes* is cut fully two-thirds its width, thus cutting the fibers, and that when the motorium is destroyed or its attached fibers are cut, there is no coordination in the movements of the adoral membranellae and anal cirri.

A striking feature common to all neuromotor systems, is that there seems to be a central motorium from which radiate fibers to different ciliary structures and that, at the bases of such motor organellae, are found the basal granules or plates to which the "nerve" fibers from the motorium are attached.

Independent of the studies on the neuromotor system of American investigators, Klein (1926) introduced the silver-impregnation method which had first been used by Golgi in 1873 to demonstrate various fibrillar structures of metazoan cells, to Protozoa in order to demonstrate the cortical fibers present in ciliates, by dry-fixation and impregnating with silver nitrate. Klein (1926) subjected the ciliates of numerous genera and species to this method, and observed that there was a fibrillar system in the ectoplasm at the level of the basal granules which could not be demonstrated by other methods. Klein (1927) named the fibers **silver lines** and the whole complex, the **silverline system**, which vary among different species (Fig. 18). Gelei, Chatton and Lwoff, Jírovec, Lynch, Jacobson, Kidder, Lund, and others, applied the silver-impregnation method to many other ciliates and confirmed Klein's observations. Chatton and Lwoff (1935) found in *Apostomea*, the system remains even after the embryonic cilia have entirely disappeared and considered it infraciliature.

The question whether the neuromotor apparatus and the silverline system are independent structures or different aspects of the same structure has been raised frequently. Turner (1933) found that in *Euplotes patella* (*E. eurystomus*) the silverline system is a regular latticework on the dorsal surface and a more irregular network on

the ventral surface. These lines are associated with rows of rosettes from which bristles extend. These bristles are held to be sensory in function and the network, a sensory conductor system, which is connected with the neuromotor system. Turner maintains that the neuromotor apparatus in *Euplotes patella* is augmented by a distinct but connected external network of sensory fibrils. He however finds no motorium in this protozoan.

Lund (1933) also made a comparative study of the two systems in *Paramecium multimicronucleatum*, and observed that the silverline system of this ciliate consists of two parts. One portion is made up

FIG. 18. The silverline system of *Ancistruma mytili*, $\times 1000$ (Kidder).
a, ventral view; b, dorsal view.

of a series of closely-set polygons, usually hexagons, but flattened into rhomboids or other quadrilaterals in the regions of the cytostome, cytopyge, and suture. This system of lines stains if the organisms are well dried. Usually the lines appear solid, but frequently they are interrupted to appear double at the vertices of the polygons which Klein called "indirectly connected" (pellicular) conductile system. In the middle of the anterior and posterior sides of the hexagons is found one granule or a cluster of 2-4 granules,

which marks the outer end of the trichocyst. The second part which Klein called "directly connected" (subpellicular) conductile system consists essentially of the longitudinal lines connecting all basal granules in a longitudinal row of hexagons and of delicate transverse fibrils connecting granules of adjacent rows especially in the cytostomal region (Fig. 19).

FIG. 19. Diagram of the cortical region of *Paramecium multimicronucleatum*, showing various organelles, $\times 7300$ (Lund). bg, basal granule; c, cilia; et, tip of trichocyst; lf, longitudinal fibril; p, pellicle; t, trichocyst; tf, transverse fibril.

By using Sharp's technique, Lund found the neuromotor system of *Paramecium multimicronucleatum* constructed as follows: The subpellicular portion of the system is the longitudinal fibrils which connect the basal granules. In the cytostomal region, the fibrils of right and left sides curve inward forming complete circuits (the circular cytosomal fibrils) (Fig. 20). The postoral suture is separated at the point where the cytopyge is situated. Usually 40–50 fibrils radiate outward from the cytostome (the radial cytostomal fibrils). The pharyngeal portion is more complex and consists of (1) the oesophageal network, (2) the motorium and associated fibrils, (3) penniculus which is composed of 8 rows of basal granules, thus forming a heavy band of cilia in the cytopharynx, (4) oesophageal process, (5) paraoesophageal fibrils, (6) posterior neuromotor chain, and (7) postoesophageal fibrils. Lund concludes that the so-called silverline

FIG. 20. The neuromotor system of *Paramecium multimicronucleatum* (Lund). a, oral network; b, motorium, $\times 1670$. aep, anterior end of penniculus; c, cytopyge; ccf, circular cytotosomal fibril; cof, circular oesophageal fibril; cpf, circular pharyngeal fibril; ef, endoplasmic fibrils; lbf, longitudinal body fibril; lof, longitudinal oesophageal fibrils; lpf, longitudinal pharyngeal fibril; m, motorium; oo, opening of oesophagus; op, oesophageal process; paf, paraesophageal fibrils; pep, posterior end of penniculus; pnc, posterior neuromotor chain; pof, postoesophageal fibrils; rcf, radial cytotosomal fibril; s, suture.

system includes three structures: namely, the peculiarly ridged pellicle; trichocysts which have no fibrillar connections among them or with fibrils, hence not conductile; and the subpellicular system, the last of which is that part of the neuromotor system that concerns with the body cilia. ten Kate (1927) suggested that **sensomotor apparatus** is a better term than the neuromotor apparatus.

Protective or supportive organellae

The external structures as found among various Protozoa which serve for body protection, have already been considered (p. 39). Here certain internal structures will be discussed. The greater part of the shell of Foraminifera is to be looked upon as endoskeleton and thus supportive in function. In Radiolaria, there is a membranous structure, the **central capsule**, which divides the body into a central region and a peripheral zone. The intracapsular portion contains the nucleus or nuclei, and is the seat of reproductive processes, and thus the capsule is to be considered as a protective organella. The endoskeletal structures of Radiolaria vary in chemical composition and forms, and are arranged with a remarkable regularity (pp. 418-425).

In some of the astomatous euciliates, there are certain structures which seem to serve for attaching the body to the host's organ, but which seem to be supportive to a certain extent also. The peculiar organella *furcula*, observed by Lynch in *Lechriopyla* (p. 597) is said to be concerned with either the neuromotor system or protection. The members of the family Ophryoscolecidae (p. 654), which are common commensals in the stomach of ruminants, have conspicuous **endoskeletal plates** which arise in the oral region and extend posteriorly. Dogiel (1923) believed that the skeletal plates of Cycloposthium and Ophryoscolecidae are made up of hemicellulose, "ophryoscolein," which was also observed by Strelkow (1929). MacLennan found that the skeletal plates of *Polyplastron multivesiculatum* were composed of small, roughly prismatic blocks of paraglycogen, each possessing a central granule.

In certain Polymastigina and Hypermastigina, there occurs a flexible structure known as the **axostyle**, which varies from a filamentous structure as in several *Trichomonas*, to a very conspicuous rod-like structure occurring in *Parajoenia*, *Gigantomonas*, etc. The anterior end of the axostyle is very close to the anterior tip of the body, and it extends lengthwise through the cytoplasm, ending near the posterior end or extending beyond the body surface. In other cases, the axostyle is replaced by a bundle of **axostylar filaments**

which have connections with the flagella as seen in certain *Hypermastigina* such as *Lophomonas*.

In trichomonad flagellates there is often present along the line of attachment of the undulating membrane, a rod-like structure which has been known as **costa** (Kunstler) and which, according to Kirby's extensive study, appears to be most highly developed in *Pseudotrypanosoma* and *Trichomonas*. The staining reaction indicates that its chemical composition is different from that of flagella, blepharoplast, parabasal body, or chromatin.

FIG. 21. a, trichites in *Spathidium spathula*, $\times 300$ (Woodruff and Spencer); b, trichites in *Pseudoprorodon farctus*, $\times 400$ (Roux).

In the gymnostomatous ciliates, the cytopharynx is often surrounded by rod-like bodies, and the entire apparatus is often called **oral** or **pharyngeal basket**, which is considered as supportive in function. The rod-like bodies appear in most cases to be **trichites** which may have been derived from the trichocysts, but which do not explode as do the latter. For example, in *Chilodonella cucullulus* the oral basket is composed of 12 trichites which are so completely fused in part that the lower portion appears as a smooth tube and in *Pseudoprorodon farctus* (Fig. 21, b) much longer trichites form the basket, with reserve structures scattered throughout the cytoplasm (Engelmann). In *Spathidium spathula* (Fig. 21, a), trichites are imbedded like a paling in the thickened rim of the anterior end. They are also distributed throughout the endoplasm and, according to Woodruff and Spencer, "some of these are apparently newly formed and being transported to the oral region, while others may well be

FIG. 22. a, b, cortical region of *Frontonia leucas*, with embedded and extruded trichocysts (Tönniges); c, d, embedded and discharged trichocysts of *Dileptus anser*, $\times 4200$ (Hayes); e, two extruded trichocysts of *Paramecium caudatum*, $\times 1530$ (original). ci, cilium; ec, ectoplasm; en, endoplasm; extr, extruded trichocyst; p, pellicle; rt, root of trichocyst; thr, thread of trichocyst; tr, trichocyst; trb, bulb of trichocyst; trg, trichocyst granule.

trichites which have been torn away during the process of prey ingestion." Whether the numerous 12–20 μ long needle-like endoskeletal structures which Kahl observed in *Remanella* (p. 584) are modified trichites or not, is not known.

In numerous ciliates, there is another ectoplasmic organella, the **trichocyst**, which is much shorter, though somewhat similar in general form. As seen in a *Paramecium*, the refractile fusiform trichocysts are embedded in the ectoplasm and arranged regularly at right angles to the body surface, while in forms, such as *Cyclogramma* they are situated obliquely (Fig. 278, c). In *Frontonia leucas* (Fig. 22), Tönniges found that the trichocysts originate in the chromatinic endosomes of the macronucleus and development takes place during their migration to the ectoplasm; on the other hand, Brodsky believes that the trichocysts are composed of colloidal excretory substances and are first formed in the vicinity of the macronucleus, becoming fully formed during the course of their migration toward the periphery of the body. In species of *Prorodon*, Krüger recently observed that the rod-like trichocysts of these ciliates are composed of a cylindrical sac containing a long filament which is arranged in a manner somewhat similar to the polar capsule of cnidosporidian spores. The end facing the body surface is filamentous and connected with the pellicle.

The extrusion of the trichocysts is easily induced by means of mechanical pressure or chemical (acid or alkaline) stimulation, though the mechanism of extrusion is not well understood in all forms. Brodsky maintains that the fundamental force is not the mechanical pressure, but that under the influence of certain stimuli the expansion of the colloidal substances results in the extrusion of the trichocysts through the pellicle. The fully extruded trichocysts are needle-like in general form. The trichocysts of *Frontonia leucas* are about 6 μ long, but when extruded, measure 50–60 μ in length, and those of *Paramecium caudatum* may reach 40 μ in length.

Dileptus anser feeds on various ciliates through the cytostome, located at the base of the proboscis, which possesses a band of long trichocysts on its ventral side. When food organisms come in contact with the ventral side of the proboscis, they give a violent jerk, and remain motionless. Visscher saw no formed elements discharged from the trichocysts, and, therefore, considered that these trichocysts contained a toxic fluid and named them toxicytes. Recently Hayes found that the exploded trichocysts (Fig. 22) could be distinctly seen and suggested that these trichocysts themselves may be toxic.

Although the trichocyst was first discovered by Ellis (1769) and so named by Allman (1855), nothing concrete is yet known as to their function. Ordinarily the trichocysts are considered as a defensive organella as in the case of the oft-quoted example *Paramecium*, but, as Mast demonstrated, the extruded trichocysts of this ciliate do not have any effect upon *Didinium* other than forming a viscid mass about the former to hamper the latter. Penard considers that some trichocysts may be secretory organellae to produce material for loricae or envelope, with which view Kahl concurs, as granular to rod-shaped trichocysts occur in *Metopus*, *Amphileptus*, etc. Klein has called these ectoplasmic granules **protrichocysts**, and in *Prorodon*, Krüger observed, besides typical tubular trichocysts, torpedo-like forms to which he applied the same name. To this group may belong the trichocysts recognized by Kidder in *Conchophthirus mytili*. The trichocysts present in certain Cryptomonadina (*Chilomonas* and *Cyathomonas*) are probably homologous with the protrichocysts. The pigments, which give a beautiful coloration to certain ciliates such as *Stentor* and *Blepharisma*, are said to be lodged in the protrichocysts.

Hold-fast organellae

In the Mastigophora, Ciliophora, and a few Sarcodina, there are forms which possess a **stalk** supporting the body or the lorica. With the stalk the organism is attached to a solid surface. In some cases, as in *Anthophysis*, *Maryna*, etc., the dendritic stalks are made up of gelatinous substances rich in iron, which gives to them a reddish brown color. In parasitic Protozoa, there are special organellae developed for attachment. Many genera of cepheline gregarines are provided with an **epimerite** of different structures (Figs. 208–210), by which the organisms are able to attach themselves to the gut epithelium of the host. In Astomata, such as *Intoshellina*, *Maupasella*, *Lachmannella*, etc., simple or complex protrusible chitinous structures are often present in the anterior region; or a certain area of the body may be concave and serves for adhesion to the host, as in *Rhizocaryum*, *Perezella*, etc.; or, again, there may be a distinctive sucker-like organella near the anterior extremity of the body, as in *Haptophyra*, *Steinella*, etc. A sucker is also present on the antero-ventral part of *Giardia intestinalis*.

In the Myxosporidia and Actinomyxidia, there appear, during the development of spore, 1–4 special cells which develop into **polar capsules**, each, when fully formed, enclosing a more or less long spirally coiled delicate thread, the **polar filament** (Fig. 259).

The polar filament is considered as a temporary anchoring organella of the spore at the time of its germination after it gained entrance into the alimentary canal of a suitable host. In the Microsporidia, the filament may or may not be enclosed within a capsule. The **nematocysts** (Fig. 110, b) of certain dinoflagellates belonging to *Nematoidium* and *Polykrikos*, are almost identical in structure with those

FIG. 23. Parabasal apparatus in: a, *Lophomonas blattarum* (Kudo); b, *Metadevescovina debilis*; c, *Devescovina* sp. (Kirby). af, axostylar filaments; bl, blepharoplasts; f, food particles; fl, flagella; n, nucleus; pa, parabasal apparatus.

found in the coelenterates. They are distributed through the cytoplasm, and various developmental stages were noticed by Chatton, and Kofoid and Swezy, which indicates that they are characteristic structures of these dinoflagellates and not foreign in origin as had been held by some. The function of the nematocysts in these protozoans is not understood.

The parabasal apparatus

In the cytosome of many parasitic flagellates, there is frequently present a conspicuous structure known as the **parabasal apparatus** (Janicki), consisting of the parabasal body and often thread (Cleveland), which latter may be absent in some cases. This structure

varies greatly among different genera and species in appearance, structure and position within the body. It is usually connected with the blepharoplast and located very close to the nucleus, though not directly connected with it. It may be single, double, or multiple, and may be pyriform, straight or curved rod-like, bandform, spirally coiled or collar-like (Fig. 23). Kofoed and Swezy considered that the parabasal body is derived from the nuclear chromatin, varies in size according to the metabolic demands of the organism, and is a "kinetic reservoir." On the other hand, Duboseq and Grassé maintain that this body is the Golgi apparatus, since (1) acetic acid destroys both the parabasal body and the Golgi apparatus; (2) both are demonstrable with the same technique; (3) the parabasal body is made up of chromophile and chromophobe parts as is the Golgi apparatus; and (4) there is a strong evidence that the parabasal body is secretory in function. According to Kirby, who has made an extensive study of this organella, the parabasal body could be stained with Delafield's haematoxylin or Mallory's triple stain after fixation with acetic acid-containing fixatives and the body does not show any evidence to indicate that it is a secretory organella. Moreover the parabasal body is discarded or absorbed at the time of division of the body and two new ones are formed.

The parabasal body of *Lophomonas blattarum* to which the name was originally applied, is discarded when the organism divides and two new ones are reformed from the centriole or blepharoplast (Fig. 62), and its function appears to be supportive. Possibly not all so-called parabasal bodies are homologous or analogous. A fuller comprehension of the structure and function of the organella rests on further investigations.

The blepharoplast

In the Mastigophora or in other groups in which flagellate stages occur, the flagellum ends internally in a **basal granule**, which, in turn, is sometimes connected by a much larger body. This latter organella has been called the **blepharoplast**. In many instances they appear to be combined in one. The blepharoplast is further connected by a fibril, the **rhizoplast**, with the nucleus (Fig. 24). The blepharoplast and centriole are considered synonymous by Minchin, Cleveland, and others, since they give rise to the kinetic organella. Woodcock and Minchin held, on the other hand, that the blepharoplast was a nucleus holding a special relation with locomotor organellae, and called it **kinetonucleus**. In recent years it has become known that the blepharoplast of many flagellates re-

sponds positively to Feulgen's nucleal reaction which may indicate the presence of thymonucleic acid or chromatin in this structure.

The Golgi apparatus

With the discovery of a wide distribution of the so-called Golgi apparatus in metazoan cells, a number of protozoologists also re-

FIG. 24. Flagellar attachment in Euglenoidina (Hall and Jahn). a, *Euglena deses*, $\times 2025$; b, *E. acus*, $\times 750$; c, *E. spirogyra*, $\times 720$; d, *Menoidium incurvum*, $\times 1550$.

ported a homologous structure from many protozoans. It seems impossible at present to indicate just exactly what the Golgi apparatus is, since the so-called Golgi techniques, the important ones of which are based upon the assumption that the Golgi material is

osmiophile and argentophile, and possesses a strong affinity to neutral red, are not specific and the results obtained by using the same method often vary a great deal. Some of the examples of the Golgi apparatus reported from Protozoa are summarized in Table 2.

It appears thus that the Golgi bodies occurring in Protozoa are small osmiophilic granules or larger spherules which are composed of osmiophile cortical and osmiophobe central substances. Fre-

FIG. 25. The Golgi bodies in *Amoeba proteus* (Brown).

quently the cortical layer is of unequal thickness, and, therefore, crescentic forms appear. Ringform apparatus was noted in *Chilodonella* and *Dogielella* by Nassonov and network-like forms were observed by Brown in *Pyrsonympha* and *Dinenympha*. The Golgi apparatus of Protozoa as well as of Metazoa, appears to be composed of a lipoidal material in combination with protein substance.

In line with the suggestion made for the metazoan cell, the Golgi apparatus of Protozoa is considered as having something to do with secretion or excretion. Nassonov considers that osmiophilic lipoidal substance, which he observed in the vicinity of the walls of the contractile vacuole and its collecting canals in many ciliates and flagellates, is homologous with the metazoan Golgi apparatus and secretes the fluid waste material into the vacuole from which it is excreted to the exterior. According to Brown, there is no blackening by osmic impregnation of the contractile vacuole in *Amoeba proteus*,

but fusion of minute vacuoles associated with crescentic Golgi bodies produces the vacuole.

Duboseq and Grassé who hold that the parabasal body is the Golgi apparatus, maintain that this body is a source of energy which is utilized by the motor organellae. Joyet-Lavergne pointed out that

TABLE 2.—*Golgi apparatus in Protozoa*

Protozoa	Golgi apparatus	Observers
Monocystis, Gregarina	Spheres, rings, crescents	Hirschler
<i>Endamoeba blattae</i>	Spheres, rings, crescents	Hirschler
Adelea	Crescents, beaded grains	King and Gatenby
<i>Entamoeba gingivalis</i>	Rings, crescents to network	Causey
Vorticella, Lionotus, Paramecium, Dogiella, Nassula, Chilomonas, Chilodonella	The membrane of contractile vacuole and collecting canals	Nassonov
Holomastigotes, Pyrsonympha, etc.	Parabasal bodies	Duboseq and Grassé
Aggregata, gregarines	Crescents, rings	Joyet-Lavergne
Euglenoidina	Stigma	Grassé
Chilomonas	Granules, vacuoles	Hall
Peranema	Rings, globules, granules	Hall
Chromulina, Astasia	Rings, spherules with a dark rim	Hall
<i>Amoeba proteus</i> (Fig. 25)	Rings, crescents, globules, granules	Brown
Pyrsonympha, Dinonympha	Rings, crescents, spherules; granules break down to form network near posterior end	Brown
<i>Euglena gracilis</i>	Spherical, discoidal with dark rim; tend to group around or near nucleus	Brown
<i>Blepharisma undulans</i>	Rings in the cytoplasm	Moore

in certain sporozoans the Golgi apparatus is granular and may be the center of enzyme production. The exact morphological and physiological information of the Golgi apparatus must be looked for in future observations.

The chondriosomes

Widely distributed in many metazoan cells, the chondriosomes have also been recognized in various Protozoa. The chondriosomes possess a low refractive index, and are composed of substances easily

soluble in alcohol, acetic acid, etc. Osmium tetroxide blackens the chondriosomes, but the color bleaches faster than in the Golgi bodies. Janus green B stains them even in 1:500,000 solution, but stains also other inclusions, such as the Golgi bodies (in some cases) and certain bacteria. According to Horning (1926), janus red is said to be a more exclusive chondriosome stain, as it does not stain bacteria. The chemical composition of the chondriosome seems to be somewhat similar to that of the Golgi body; namely, it is a protein compounded with a lipoidal substance. If the protein is small in amount, it is

FIG. 26. The chondriosomes in *Peranema trichophorum*, $\times 1750$ (Hall)
a, b, surface views and c, optical section of a single individual.

said to be unstable and easily attacked by reagents; on the other hand, if the protein is relatively abundant, it is more stable and resistant to reagents.

The chondriosomes occur as small spherical to oval granules, rod-like or filamentous bodies, and show a tendency to adhere to or remain near protoplasmic surfaces. In many cases they are distributed without any definite order; in others, as in *Paramecium* or *Opalina*, they are regularly arranged between the basal granules of cilia (Horning). In *Peranema trichophorum* (Fig. 26), according to Hall, the chondriosomes are said to be located along the spiral striae of the pellicle. Causey (1925) noticed in *Leishmania brasiliensis* usually eight spherical chondriosomes in each individual, which become rod-shaped when the organism divides. He further observed spherical and rod-like chondriosomes in *Notiluca scintillans*.

In certain Protozoa, the chondriosomes are not always demonstrable. For example, Horning states in *Monocystis* the chondriosomes present throughout the asexual life-cycle as rod-shaped bodies, but at the beginning of the spore formation they decrease in size and number, and in the spore none exists. The chondriosomes appear as soon as the sporozoites are set free. Thus it would appear that the chondriosomes are reformed *de novo*. On the other hand, Fauré-Fremiet, the first student of the chondriosomes in Protozoa, maintained that they reproduce by division, which has since been confirmed by many observers. As a matter of fact, Horning found in *Opalina*, the chondriosomes are twisted filamentous structures and undergo multiple longitudinal fission in asexual division phase. Before encystment, the chondriosomes divide repeatedly transversely and become spherical bodies which persist during encystment and in the gametes. In zygotes, these spherical bodies fuse to produce longer forms which break up into elongate filamentous structures. Richardson and Horning further succeeded in bringing about division of the chondriosomes in *Opalina* by changing pH of the medium.

As to the function of chondriosomes, opinions vary. A number of observers hold that they are concerned with the digestive process. After studying the relationship between the chondriosomes and food vacuoles of *Amoeba* and *Paramecium*, Horning suggested that the chondriosomes are the seat of enzyme activity and it is even probable that they actually give up their own substance for this purpose. Mast and Doyle hold that the "excretory granules" (chondriosomes) in *Amoeba proteus* contribute to the formation of the contractile vacuole. The view that the chondriosomes may have something to do with the cell-respiration expressed by Kingsbury was further elaborated by Joyet-Lavergne through his studies on certain Sporozoa. That the chondriosomes are actively concerned with the development of the gametes of the Metazoa is well known. Zweibaum's observation, showing an increase in the amount of fatty acid in *Paramecium* just prior to conjugation, appears to suggest this function. On the other hand, Calkins found that in *Uroleptus*, the chondriosomes became abundant in exconjugants, due to transformation of the macronuclear material into the chondriosomes. It may be stated that the chondriosomes appear to be associated with the formation of enzymes which participate actively in the processes of catalysis or synthesis in the protozoan body. The author agrees with McBride and Hewer who wrote: "it is a remarkable thing that so little is known positively about one of the 'best known' protoplasmic inclusions."

The contractile and other vacuoles

The majority of Protozoa possess one or more vacuoles known as pulsating or **contractile vacuoles**. They occur regularly in all freshwater inhabiting Sarcodina and Mastigophora, and in Ciliophora regardless of habitat. In the Sporozoa, which are all parasitic, and the Sarcodina and Mastigophora, which live either in salt water or in the body of other animals, there is no contractile vacuole.

In various species of free-living amoebae, the contractile vacuole is formed by accumulation of water in one or more droplets which finally fuse into one. It enlarges itself continuously until it reaches a maximum size (*diastole*) and suddenly bursts through the thin cytoplasmic layer above it (*systole*), discharging its content to out-

FIG. 27. Diagrams showing the contractile vacuole, the accessory vacuoles and the aperture, during diastole and systole in *Conchophthirus* (Kidder).

side. The location of the vacuole is not definite in such forms and, therefore, it moves about with the cytoplasmic movements; and, as a rule, it is confined to the temporary posterior region of the body. Although almost spherical in form, it may occasionally be irregular in shape, as in *Amoeba striata* (Fig. 161, *f*). In many testaceans and heliozoans, the contractile vacuoles which are variable in number, are formed in the ectoplasm and the body surface bulges out above the vacuoles at diastole.

In the Mastigophora, the contractile vacuole appears to be more or less constant in position. In Phytomastigina, they are usually located in the anterior region and, in Zoomastigina, as a rule, in the posterior half of the body. The number of the vacuoles present in an individual varies from one to several.

In the Ciliophora, except Protociliata, there occur one to many contractile vacuoles, which seem to be located in the deepest part of the ectoplasm and therefore constant in position. Directly above each vacuole is found a pore in the pellicle, through which the content of the vacuole is discharged to outside. In the species of Con-

chophthirus, Kidder (1934) observed a narrow slit in the pellicle just posterior to the vacuole on the dorsal surface (Fig. 27). The margin of the slit is thickened and highly refractile. During diastole, the slit is nearly closed and, at systole, the wall of the contractile vacuole appears to break and the slit opens suddenly, the vacuolar content pouring out slowly. When there is only one contractile vacuole, it is usually located either near the cytopharynx or, more often, in the posterior part of the body. When several to many vacuoles are present, they may be distributed without apparent order, in linear series, or along the body outline. When the contractile vacuoles are deeply seated, there is a delicate duct which connects the vacuole with the pore on the pellicle as in *Paramecium*

FIG. 28. Diagrams showing the successive stages in the formation of the contractile vacuole in *Paramecium multimicronucleatum* (King); upper figures are side views; lower figures front views; solid lines indicate permanent structures; dotted lines temporary structures, a, full diastole; b-d, stages of systole; e, content of ampulla passing into injection canal; f, formation of vesicles from injection canals; g, fusion of vesicles to form contractile vacuole; h, full diastole.

woodruffi or in Ophryoscolecidae. In *Balantidium*, *Nyctotherus*, etc., the contractile vacuole is formed very close to the permanent cytophyge located at the posterior extremity, through which it empties its content.

In a number of ciliates there occur radiating or **collecting canals** besides the main contractile vacuole. These canals radiate from the central vacuole in *Paramecium*, *Frontonia*, *Disematostoma*, etc. But when the vacuole is terminal, the collecting canals of course do not

radiate, in which case the number of the canals varies among different species: one in *Spirostomum*, *Stentor*, etc., 2 in *Climacostomum*, *Eschaneustyla*, etc., and several in *Tillina*. In *Peritricha*,

FIG. 29. Contractile vacuoles of *Paramecium multimicronucleatum*, $\times 1200$ (King). a, early systole, side view; b, diastole, front view; c, complete systole, front view; d, systole, side view.

the contractile vacuole occurs near the posterior region of the peristome and its content is discharged through a canal into the vestibule, and in *Ophrydium ectatum*, the contractile vacuole empties its content into the cytopharynx through a long duct (Mast).

Of numerous observations concerning the operation of the contractile vacuole, that of King (1935) on *Paramecium multimicro-nucleatum* (Figs. 28, 29) may be quoted here. In this ciliate, there are 2 to 7 contractile vacuoles which are located below the ectoplasm on the aboral side. There is a permanent pore above each vacuole. Leading to the pore is a short tube-like invagination of the pellicle, with inner end of which the temporary membrane of the vacuole is in contact (Fig. 28, *a*). Each vacuole has 5–10 long collecting canals with strongly osmiophilic walls (Fig. 29), and each canal is made up of terminal portion, a proximal injection canal, and an ampulla between them. Surrounding the distal portion, there is osmiophilic cytoplasm which may be granulated or finely reticulated, and which Nasonov interpreted as homologous to the Golgi apparatus of the metazoan cell. The injection canal extends up to the pore. The ampulla becomes distended first with fluid transported discontinuously down the canal and the fluid next moves into the injection canal. The fluid now is expelled into the cytoplasm just beneath the pore as a vesicle, the membrane of which is derived from a membrane which closed the end of the injection canal. These fluid vesicles coalesce presently to form the contractile vacuole in full diastole and the fluid is discharged to exterior through the pore, which becomes closed by the remains of the membrane of the discharged vacuole.

In *Haptophrya michiganensis*, MacLennan (1944) observed that accessory vacuoles appear in the wall of the contractile canal which extends along the dorsal side from the sucker to the posterior end, as the canal contracts. The canal wall expands and enlarging accessory vacuoles fuse with one another, followed by a full expansion of the canal. Through several excretory pores with short ducts the content of the contractile canal is excreted to the exterior. The function of the contractile vacuole is considered in the following chapter (p. 103).

Various other vacuoles or vesicles occur in different Protozoa. In the ciliates belonging to Loxodidae, there are variable numbers of **Müller's vesicles** or bodies, arranged in 1–2 rows along the aboral surface. These vesicles (Fig. 30, *a–c*) vary in diameter from 5 to 8.5 μ and contain a clear fluid in which one large spherule or several small highly refractile spherules are suspended. In some, there is a fila-

mentous connection between the spherules and the wall of the vesicle. Penard maintains that these bodies are balancing cell-organs and called the vesicle, the statocyst, and the spherules, the statoliths.

Another vacuole, known as **concrement vacuole**, is a characteristic organella in Bütschliidae and Paraisotrichidae. As a rule, there is a single vacuole present in an individual in the anterior third of body. It is spherical to oval and its structure appears to be highly complex. According to Dogiel, the vacuole is composed of a pellicular cap, a permanent vacuolar wall, concretment grains and two

FIG. 30.a-c, Müller's vesicles in *Loxodes* (a, b) and in *Remanella* (c) (a, Penard; b, c, Kahl); d, concretment vacuole of *Blepharoprosthium* (Dogiel). cf, centripetal fibril; cg, concretment grains; cp, cap; fw, fibrils of wall; p, pellicle; vp, vacuolar pore; w, wall.

fibrillar systems (Fig. 30, d). When the organism divides, the anterior daughter individual retains it, and the posterior individual develops a new one from the pellicle into which concretment grains enter after first appearing in the endoplasm. This vacuole shows no external pore. Dogiel believes that its function is sensory and has named the vacuole, the statocyst, and the enclosed grains, the statoliths.

Food vacuoles are conspicuously present in the holozoic Protozoa which take in whole or parts of other organisms as food. The food

vacuole is a space in the cytoplasm, containing the fluid medium which surrounds the protozoans and in which are suspended the food matter, such as various Protophyta, other Protozoa or small Metazoa. In the Sarcodina, the Mastigophora and the Suctoria, which do not possess a cytostome, the food vacuoles assume the shape of the food materials and, when these particles are large, it is difficult to make out the thin film of water which surrounds them. When minute food particles are taken through a cytostome, as is the case with the majority of euciliates, the food vacuoles are usually spherical and of approximately the same size within a single protozoan. In the saprozoic Protozoa, which absorb fluid substances through the body surface, food vacuoles containing solid food, of course, do not occur.

The chromatophore and associated organelles

In the Phytomastigina and certain other forms which are green-colored, one to many **chromatophores** (Fig. 31) or chloroplasts containing chlorophyll occur in the cytosome. The chromatophores vary in form among different species; namely, discoidal, ovoid, band-form, rod-like, cup-like, fusiform, network or irregularly diffused. The color of the chromatophore depends upon the amount and kinds of pigment which envelops the underlying chlorophyll substance. Thus the chromatophores of Chrysomonadina are brown or orange, as they contain one or more accessory pigments, including phycochrysin, and those of Cryptomonadina are of various types of brown with very diverse pigmentation. In Chloromonadina, the chromatophores are bright green, containing an excess of xanthophyll. In dinoflagellates, they are dark yellow or brown, because of the presence of pigments: carotin, phylloxanthin, and peridinin (Kylin), the last of which is said to give the brown coloration. A few species of Gymnodinium contain blue-green chromatophores for which phycocyanin is held to be responsible. The chromatophores of Phytomonadina and Euglenoidina are free from any pigmentation, and therefore green. Aside from various pigments associated with the chromatophores, there are carotinoid pigments which occur often outside the chromatophores, and are collectively known as **haematochrome**. The haematochrome occurs in *Haematococcus pluvialis*, *Euglena sanguinea*, *E. rubra*, *Chlamydomonas*, etc. In *Haematococcus*, it increases in volume and in intensity when there is a deficiency in phosphorus and especially in nitrogen; and when nitrogen and phosphorus are present sufficiently in the culture medium, the haematochrome loses its color completely (Reichenow; Pringsheim). Steinecke

also noticed that the frequent yellow coloration of phytomonads in moorland pools is due to a development of carotin in the chromatophores as a result of deficiency in nitrogen. Johnson (1939) noted that the haematochrome granules of *Euglena rubra* become collected in the central portion instead of being scattered throughout the body when sunlight becomes weaker. Thus this *Euglena* appears green in a weak light and red in a strong light.

FIG. 31. a, *Trachelomonas hispida*, $\times 530$ (Doflein); b, c, living and stained reproductive cells of *Pleodorina illinoisensis*, $\times 1000$ (Merton); d-f, terminal cells of *Hydrurus foetidus*, showing division of chromatophore and pyrenoid (Geitler); g-i, *Chlamydomonas* sp., showing the division of pyrenoid (Geitler).

In association with the chromatophores are found the **pyrenoids** (Fig. 31) which are usually embedded in them. The pyrenoid is a viscous structureless mass of protein (Czurda), and may or may not be covered by tightly fitting starch-envelope, composed of several pieces or grains which appear to grow by apposition of new material on the external surface. A pyrenoid divides when it reaches a certain size, and also at the time of the division of the organism in which it occurs. As to its function, it is generally agreed that the pyrenoid is concerned with the formation of the starch and allied anabolic products of photosynthesis.

Chromatophore-bearing Protozoa usually possess also a **stigma** (Fig. 31) or eye-spot. The stigma may occur in exceptional cases in colorless forms, as in Khawkinia, Polytomella, etc. It is ordinarily situated in the anterior region and appears as a reddish or brownish red dot or short rod, embedded in the cortical layer of the cytoplasm. The color of the stigma is due to the presence of droplets of haematochrome in a cytoplasmic network. The stigma is incapable of division and a new one is formed *de novo* at the time of cell division. In many species, the stigma possesses no accessory parts, but, according to Mast, the pigment mass in Chlamydomonas, Pandorina, Eudorina, Euglena, Trachelomonas, etc., is in cup-form, the concavity being deeper in the colonial than in solitary forms. There is a colorless mass in the concavity, which appears to function as a lens. In certain dinoflagellates, there is an **ocellus** (Fig. 107, c, d, g, h) which is composed of amyloid lens and a dark pigment mass (melanosome) that is sometimes capable of amoeboid change of form. The stigma is, in general, regarded as an organella for the perception of light intensity. Mast (1926) considers that the stigma in the Volvocidae is an organella which determines the direction of the movement.

References

- BĚLAŘ, K. 1926 Der Formwechsel der Protistenkerne. Ergebn. u. Fortschr. Zool., Vol. 6.
- BRODSKY, A. 1924 Die Trichocysten der Infusorien. Arch. rus. protist., Vol. 3.
- BROWN, V. E. 1930 The Golgi apparatus of *Amoeba proteus*. Biol. Bull., Vol. 59.
- 1930 The Golgi apparatus of *Pyrsonympha* and *Dinenympha*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 71.
- CALKINS, G. N. and F. M. SUMMERS (editors). 1941 *Protozoa in biological research*. New York.
- CAUSEY, D. 1925-1926 Mitochondria and Golgi bodies in *Endamoeba gingivalis*. Mitochondria in *Leishmania brasiliensis*. Mitochondria in *Noctiluca scintillans*. Univ. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 28.
- CHATTON, E. and A. LWOFF 1935 Les ciliés apostomes. Arch. zool. exp. et gén., Vol. 77.
- CLEVELAND, L. R., S. R. HALL, E. P. SANDERS and J. COLLIER 1934 The wood-feeding roach *Cryptocercus*, its Protozoa, and the symbiosis between Protozoa and roach. Mem. Amer. Acad. Arts Sci., Vol. 17.
- CUSHMAN, J. A. 1933 *Foraminifera: their classification and economic use*. Second edition. Sharon, Mass.
- DOFLEIN, F. 1916 Studien zur Naturgeschichte der Protozoen. VII. Zool. Jahrb. Abt. Anat., Vol. 39.

- DOGIEL, V. 1923 Cellulose als Bestandteil des Skellettes bei einigen Infusorien. Biol. Zentralbl., Vol. 43.
- 1929 Die sog. "Konkrementenvakuole" der Infusorien als eine Statocyste betrachtet. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 68.
- DUBOSCQ, O. and P. P. GRASSÉ 1933 L'appareil parabasal des flagellés. Arch. zool. exp. et gén., Vol. 63.
- GELEI, J. VON 1926 Zur Kenntnis des Wimperapparates. Zeitschr. f. ges. Anat., Abt. I, Vol. 81.
- GIESE, A. C. 1938 Reversible bleaching of *Blepharisma*. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 57.
- HALL, R. P. 1929 Reaction of certain cytoplasmic inclusions to vital dyes and their relation to mitochondria and Golgi apparatus in the flagellate *Peranema trichophorum*. Jour. Morph. Physiol., Vol. 48.
- and T. L. JAHN 1929 On the comparative cytology of certain euglenoid flagellates and the systematic position of the families Euglenidae and Astasiidae. Trans. Amer. Micro. Soc., Vol. 48.
- HAYES, M. L. 1938 Cytological studies on *Dileptus anser*. Ibid., Vol. 57.
- HERTWIG, R. 1902 Die Protozoen und die Zelltheorie. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 1.
- HORNING, E. S. 1926 Observations on mitochondria. Austral. Jour. Exp. Biol. Med. Sci., Vol. 3.
- 1927 On the orientation of mitochondria on the surface cytoplasm of infusorians. Ibid., Vol. 4.
- 1929 Mitochondrial behavior during the life cycle of a sporozoan (*Monocystis*). Quart. Jour. Micr. Sci., Vol. 73.
- JANICKI, C. v. 1911 Zur Kenntnis des Parabasalapparates bei parasitischen Flagellaten. Biol. Zentralbl., Vol. 31.
- KIDDER, G. W. 1933 On the genus *Ancistruma* Strand (*Ancistrum* Maupas). Biol. Bull., Vol. 64.
- 1933 *Conchophthirus caryoclada* sp. nov. Ibid., Vol. 65.
- 1934 Studies on the ciliates from freshwater mussels. Ibid., Vol. 66.
- KING, R. L. 1935 The contractile vacuole of *Paramecium multimicronucleatum*. Jour. Morph., Vol. 58.
- KIRBY, JR., H. 1931 The parabasal body in trichomonad flagellates. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 50.
- KLEIN, B. M. 1926 Ergebnisse mit einer Silbermethode bei Ciliaten. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 56.
- 1927 Die Silberliniensystem der Ciliaten. Ibid., Vol. 58.
- 1929 Weitere Beiträge zur Kenntnis des Silberliniensystems der Ciliaten. Ibid., Vol. 65.
- 1930 Das Silberliniensystem der Ciliaten. Ibid., Vol. 69.
- KOFOID, C. A. and OLIVE SWEZY 1921 The free-living unarmored Dinoflagellata. Mem. Univ. California. Vol. 5.
- KOLTZOFF, N. K. 1911 Untersuchung über die Kontraktilität des Stieles von *Zoothamnium alternans*. Biol. Zeitschr. Moskau., Vol. 2.

- KRÜGER, F. 1934 Untersuchungen über die Trichocysten einiger Prorodon-Arten. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 83.
- KUDO, R. R. 1924 A biologic and taxonomic study of the Microsporidia. Illinois Biol. Monogr., Vol. 9.
- 1926 Observations on *Lophomonas blattarum*, a flagellate inhabiting the colon of the cockroach, *Blatta orientalis*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 53.
- 1936 Studies on *Nyctotherus ovalis* Leidy, with special reference to its nuclear structure. Ibid., Vol. 87.
- LUND, E. E. 1933 A correlation of the silverline and neuromotor systems of Paramecium. Univ. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 39.
- LYNCH, J. E. 1930 Studies on the ciliates from the intestine of Strongylocentrotus. II *Lechriopyla mystax*, gen. nov., sp. nov. Ibid. Vol. 33.
- MACLENNAN, R. F. 1944 The pulsatory cycle of the contractile canal in the ciliate Haptophrya. Trans. Amer. Micro. Soc., Vol. 63.
- MAST, S. O. 1928 Structure and function of the eye-spot in unicellular and colonial organisms. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 60.
- 1944 A new peritrich belonging to the genus Ophrydium. Trans. Amer. Micro. Soc., Vol. 63.
- NASSONOV, D. 1924 Der Exkretionsapparat (kontraktile Vakuole) der Protozoen als Homologen des Golgischen Apparatus der Metazoenzelle. Arch. mikr. Anat., Vol. 103.
- PENARD, E. 1922 *Études sur les infusoires d'eau douce*. Geneva.
- PINEY, A. 1931 *Recent advances in microscopy*. London.
- PRINGSHEIM, E. 1914 Die Ernährung von *Haematococcus pluvialis*. Beitr. Biol. Pflanzen, Vol. 12.
- REICHENOW, E. 1909 Untersuchungen an *Haematococcus pluvialis* nebst Bemerkungen über andere Flagellaten. Arch. kaiserl. Gesundheitsamt., Vol. 33.
- 1928 Ergebnisse mit der Nuklealfärbung bei Protozoen. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 61.
- RICHARDSON, K. C. and E. S. HORNING 1931 Cytoplasmic structures in binucleate opalinids with special reference to the Golgi apparatus. Jour. Morph. Physiol., Vol. 52.
- ROSKIN, G. 1923 La structure des Myonèmes des infusoires. Bull. biol. France et Belg., Vol. 57.
- 1925 Ueber die Axopodien der Heliozoa und die Greiftentakel der Ephelotidae. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 52.
- RUMJANTZEW, A. and E. WERMEL 1925 Untersuchungen ueber den Protoplasmabau von *Actinosphaerium eichhorni*. Ibid., Vol. 52.
- SCHRÖDER, O. 1906 Beiträge zur Kenntnis von *Stentor coeruleus* und *St. roeselii*. Ibid., Vol. 8.
- SCHUBERG, A. 1888 Die Protozoen des Wiederkäuermagens. I. Zool. Jahrb. Abt. System., Vol. 3.
- SHARP, R. 1914 *Diplodinium ecaudatum* with an account of its neuromotor apparatus. Univ. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 13.
- STRELKOW, A. 1929 Morphologische Studien über oligotriche Infusorien aus dem Darne des Pferdes. I. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 68.

- TAYLOR, C. V. 1920 Demonstration of the function of the neuromotor apparatus in Euplotes by the method of micro-dissection. Univ. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 19.
- TEN KATE, C. G. B. 1927 Ueber das Fibrillensystem der Ciliaten. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 57.
- TÖNNIGES, C. 1914 Die Trichocysten von *Frontonia leucas* und ihr chromidialer Ursprung. Ibid., Vol. 32.
- TURNER, J. P. 1933 The external fibrillar system of Euplotes with notes on the neuromotor apparatus. Biol. Bull. Vol. 64.
- VERWORN, M. 1903 *Allgemeine Physiologie*. Fourth edition. Jena.
- VISSCHER, J. P. 1926 Feeding reactions in the ciliate *Dileptus gigas*, with special reference to the trichocysts. Biol. Bull., Vol. 45.
- VLK, W. 1938 Ueber den Bau der Geissel. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 90.
- WOODRUFF, L. L. and H. SPENCER 1922 Studies on *Spathidium spathula*. I. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 35.
- YOCOM, H. B. 1918 The neuromotor apparatus of *Euplotes patella*. Univ. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 18.

CHAPTER 4

Physiology

THE morphological consideration which has been given in the last chapter, is, though necessarily brief, indicative of the occurrence of various and often complex organellae in Protozoa. The physiological activity of the whole protozoan is the sum-total of all the functions which are carried on by numerous minute parts or organellae of the cell body, unlike the condition found in a metazoan. Indeed, as Calkins (1933) stated, "physiological problems (of Protozoa) for the most part begin where similar problems of the Metazoa leave off, namely the ultimate processes of the single cell. Here the functional activities have to do with the action and interaction of different substances which enter into the make-up of protoplasm and, for the most part, these are beyond our powers of analysis." A full discussion of various physiological problems pertaining to Protozoa is out of question in the present work and, therefore, a general consideration on protozoan physiology will suffice for our purpose.

Nutrition

Protozoa obtain nourishment in manifold ways. Information on the nutrition of the Protozoa is undergoing an accelerated progress through improvements in technique in experimental cultivation of these organisms. Doyle (1943) has given an excellent review on the subject. It will be here briefly considered under three types: *holozoic*, *holophytic*, and *saprozoic*.

Holozoic (zootrophic, heterotrophic) nutrition. This is the method by which all higher animals obtain their nourishment; namely, the protozoan uses other animals or plants as sources of food. It involves the food-capture and ingestion, digestion and assimilation, and rejection of indigestible portions.

The methods of food-capture vary among different forms. In the Sarcodina, the food organisms are captured and taken into the body at any point. The methods however vary. According to Rhumbler's oft-quoted observations, four methods of food-ingestion occur in amoebae (Fig. 32); namely, (1) by "import," in which the food is taken into the body upon contact, with very little movement on the part of the amoeba (*a*); (2) by "circumfluence," in which the cytoplasm flows around the food organism as soon as it comes in contact with it on all sides and engulfs it (*b*); (3) by "circumvallation," in which the amoeba without contact with the food, forms

pseudopodia which surround the food on all sides and ingest it (c); (4) by "invagination," in which the amoeba touches and adheres to the food, and the ectoplasm in contact with it is invaginated into the endoplasm as a tube, the cytoplasmic membrane later disappears (d-h). Jennings, Kepner, Schaeffer and others, have made studies with reference to the food-ingestion in amoebae.

FIG. 32. Various ways by which amoebae capture food organisms. a, *Amoeba verrucosa* feeding on *Oscillatoria* by 'import' (Rhumbler); b, *A. proteus* feeding on bacterial glea by 'circumfluence'; c, on *Paramecium* by 'circumvallation' (Kepner and Whitlock); d-h, *A. verrucosa* ingesting a food particle by 'invagination' (Gross-Allermann).

In certain testaceans, such as *Gromia*, several rhizopodia cooperate in engulfing the prey and, in *Lieberkühnia* (Fig. 33), Verworn noted ciliates are captured by and digested in rhizopodia. Similar observation was made by Schaudinn in the heliozoan *Camptonema* in which several axopodia anastomose to capture a prey (Fig. 109, d). In the holozoic *Mastigophora*, such as *Hypermastigina*, which do not possess cytostome, the food-ingestion is by pseudopodia also.

The food particles become attached to the pseudopodium and are

held there on account of the viscid nature of the pseudopodium. The sudden immobility of active organisms upon coming in contact with pseudopodia of certain forms, such as *Actinophrys*, *Actinosphaerium*, *Gromia*, *Elphidium*, etc., suggests, however, probable discharge of poisonous substances. In the Suctoria which lack a cytostome, the tentacles serve as food-capturing organellae. The suctorial tentacle bears on its distal end a rounded knob which, when it comes in contact with an actively swimming ciliate, stops the latter immediately (*Parapodophrya typha*, Fig. 329, *a*). The prehensile tentacles of Ephelotidae are said to be similar in structure to the axopodia, in

FIG. 33. Rhizopodia of *Lieberkühnia*, capturing and digesting *Colpidium colpoda* (Verworn).

that each possesses a bundle of axial filaments around a cytoplasmic core (Roskin). These tentacles are capable of piercing through the body of a prey. In some suctorians, such as *Choanophrya* (Fig. 334, *a*), the tentacles are said to be tubular, and both solid and liquid food materials are sucked in through the cavity. The rapidity with which tentacles of a suctorian stop a very actively swimming ciliate is attributed to a certain substance secreted by the tentacles, which paralyzes the prey.

In the cytostome-bearing Mastigophora, the lashing of flagella will aid in bringing about the food particles to the cytostome, where it is taken into the endoplasm. In the ciliates there are numerous types of cytostomes and associated organellae. But food-capturing seems to be in general of two kinds. When the cytostome is permanently open, the organism ingests food particles which are small enough to pass the cytostome and cytopharynx, as in the case of *Paramecium*. Another type is one, such as noted in *Coleps*, *Didi-*

nium, etc., where the ciliate attacks other organism and sucks in the body substance of the latter through the enlarged cytostome.

The ingested food particles are always surrounded by a film of fluid which envelops the organism and the whole is known as the **food vacuole** (p. 77). The quantity of fluid taken in with the food varies greatly and, generally speaking, it seems to be inversely proportional to the size, but proportional to the activity, of the food organisms. Food vacuoles composed entirely of surrounding liquid medium have occasionally been observed. Edwards (1925) observed ingestion of fluid medium by an amoeba by forming food-cups under changed chemical composition. Brug (1928) reports seeing *Entamoeba histolytica* engulf liquid culture medium by formation of lip-

FIG. 34. Ingestion of brine by *Rhopalophrya salina* (Kirby).

like elevation of the ectoplasm and Kirby (1932) figures ingestion of the brine containing no visible organisms by the cytostome of *Rhopalophrya salina* (Fig. 34). Mast and Doyle (1934) state that if *Amoeba proteus*, *A. dubia*, *A. doylei*, or *A. radiosa* is placed in an albumin solution, a hypertonic balanced salt solution, or a hypertonic solution of calcium gluconate it rapidly decreases in volume, and forms numerous tubes filled with fluid, which disintegrate sooner or later and release their fluid content in the cytoplasm. At times 50 or more such tubes may be present, which indicates that the organism ingests considerable quantities of fluid in this way. The two authors consider that it is "a biological adaptation which serves to compensate for the rapid loss of water."

The food vacuoles finally reach the endoplasm and in forms such as *Amoebina* the vacuoles are carried about by the moving endoplasm. In the ciliates, the fluid endoplasm shows often a definite rotation movement. In *Paramecium*, the general direction is along the aboral side to the anterior region and down the other side, with

a short cyclosis in the posterior half of the body. In *Carchesium*, according to Greenwood, the food-vacuoles pass down to one end of the macronucleus and then move close along its concave surface to the anterior end of the nucleus where defecation to the vestibule takes place (Fig. 35).

As stated above, in a number of species the food organisms are paralyzed or killed upon contact with pseudopodia, tentacles or exploded trichocysts. In numerous other cases, the captured organism is taken into the food vacuole alive, as will easily be noted by observing *Chilomonas* taken in by *Amoeba proteus* or actively moving bacteria ingested by *Paramecium*. But the prey ceases to move in a

FIG. 35. Diagram showing the digestion within the food vacuoles in *Carchesium polypinum* (Greenwood). a, digestion area; b, region of little change; c, region of acid reaction; d, region of neutral reaction; e, defecation area.

very short time. It is generally believed that some substances are secreted into the food vacuole by the protoplasm of the organisms, to stop the activity of the prey within the food vacuole. Engelmann (1878) demonstrated that the granules of blue litmus, when ingested by *Paramecium* or *Amoeba*, became red in a few minutes. Brandt

(1881) examined the staining reactions of amoebae by means of haematoxylin, and found that the watery vacuoles contained an acid. Metschnikoff (1889) also showed that there appears an acid secretion around the ingested litmus grains in Mycetozoa. Greenwood and Saunders (1884) found in *Carchesium* that ingestion of food particles stimulated the cytoplasm to secrete a mineral acid (Fig. 35). According to Nirenstein (1925), the food vacuole in *Paramecium* undergoes change in reaction which can be grouped in two periods. The first is acid reaction and the second alkaline reaction, in which albumin digestion takes place. On the other hand, Khainsky (1910) observed that the food vacuole of ciliates, such as *Paramecium*, is

FIG. 36. Diagram showing changes in reactions in food-vacuoles of *Paramecium caudatum*, after ingesting litmus (Shapiro). b, blue; cv, contractile vacuole; lb, light blue; lr, light red; r, red.

acid during the entire period of protein digestion, and becomes neutral to finally alkaline when the solution of the food substance is ended. Metalnikoff (1912) found that in the food vacuoles of *Paramecium*, besides acid-alkaline reaction change, some vacuoles never show acid reaction and others occasionally show sustained acid reaction. Shapiro (1927) studied the reaction change of the food vacuoles

in *Paramecium caudatum* (Fig. 36) by using phenol red, neutral red, Congo red, and litmus, and found that when the organism is kept in a medium with pH 7, its food vacuoles are first alkaline (pH 7.6), soon reach a maximum acidity (pH 4.0), while still in the posterior half of the body. Later, the vacuoles show a decreased acidity, finally reaching pH 7.0. In *Vorticella* sp. and *Stylonychia pustulata*, the range of pH observed in the food vacuoles was said to be 4.5–7.0 and 4.8–7.0 respectively. The food vacuoles of *Actinosphaerium*, according to Howland (1928), possess at the beginning pH 6.0–7.0 for 5 to 10 minutes, but this soon changes to acid (pH 4.3) in which digestion appears to be carried on. In older food vacuoles which are of less acid (pH 5.4–5.6), the digestion appears to be at an end. In the species of *Bresslaua*, Claff, Dewey and Kidder (1941) noted that a Colpoda taken into the food vacuole is instantly killed with a sudden release of an acid which shows pH 3.0–4.2. During digestion the protoplasm of the prey becomes alkaline and the undigested residue becomes acid before extrusion. Mast's recent observations (1942) on the food vacuoles in *Amoeba proteus* and *A. dubia* containing *Chilomonas* or *Colpidium* indicate: (1) the fluid in the vacuoles becomes first acid and then alkaline; (2) the increase in the acidity of the fluid in the vacuole is not due to cytoplasmic secretion, but is probably due to respiration in the ingested organisms, chemical changes associated with their death, etc.; and (3) the death of the organisms taken in the food vacuoles is probably caused by the decrease in oxygen in the vacuoles, owing to the respiration of the organisms in them.

Just exactly what processes take place in the food vacuole have been observed only in a few cases. Nirenstein noticed the appearance of numerous neutral red-stainable granules around the food vacuole which pass into the interior of the vacuole, and regarded them as carriers of a tryptic ferment, while Roskin and Levinsohn demonstrated the oxidase reaction in these granules. A number of enzymes have been reported in the Protozoa, some of which are mentioned in Table 3.

These findings suffice to indicate that the digestion in Protozoa is carried on also by enzymes and its course appears to vary among different Protozoa. The albuminous substances are digested and decomposed into simpler compounds by enzymes and absorbed by the surrounding cytoplasm. The power to digest starch into soluble sugars is widely found among various Protozoa. It has been reported in Mycetozoa, Foraminifera, Pelomyxa, Amoeba, Entamoeba, Ophryoscolecidae and other ciliates by several investigators.

In *Pelomyxa*, Stole (1900) found that the so-called refringent bodies are intimately associated with the carbohydrate metabolism in that they are filled with glycogen which amount is proportionate to the food matter the organism obtains.

The members of *Vampyrella* (p. 330) are known to dissolve the cellulose wall of algae, especially *Spirogyra* in order to feed on their contents. *Pelomyxa* (Stole), *Foraminifera* (Schaudinn), *Amoeba* (Rhumbler), *Hypermastigina*, *Polymastigina* (Cleveland), etc., have also been known for possessing the power of cellulose digestion. Many of the *Hypermastigina* and *Polymastigina* which lead symbi-

TABLE 3.—*Enzymes in Protozoa*

Protozoa	Enzymes	Observers
<i>Aethalium septicum</i>	Pepsin-like enzyme, dissolving albumin in acid medium	Krukenberg (1886)
<i>Pelomyxa palustris</i>	Pepsin-like and diastatic enzymes	Hartog and Dixon (1893)
Soil amoebae	"Amoebodiastase": trypsin-like, active in neutral or slightly alkaline medium, liquefies gelatin, coagulates albumin, inactive at 60°C.	Mouton (1902)
<i>Balantidium coli</i>	Diastatic enzyme	Glaessner (1908)
<i>Euglena gracilis</i>	Proteolytic enzyme in cultures	Jahn (1931)
<i>Glaucoma pyriformis</i>	Proteolytic enzyme, capable of hydrolyzing casein	Lwoff (1932)
<i>Colpidium striatum</i>	Proteolytic enzyme, capable of hydrolyzing casein	Elliott (1933)
Poly- and Hypermastigina in wood roach	Cellulase; Cellobiase	Cleveland et al. (1934)

otic life in the intestine of the termite and of the wood roach, as demonstrated by Cleveland and his co-workers, digest by enzymes the cellulose which the host insect ingests. The assimilation products produced by an enormous number of these flagellates are seemingly sufficient to support the protozoans as well as the host. The ciliate commensals inhabiting the stomach of ruminants also apparently digest the cellulose, since the faecal matter as a rule does not contain this substance. The digestion of fat by Protozoa had not been known, although oils and fat have been observed in numerous Protozoa, until Dawson and Belkin (1928) injected different oils into *Amoeba dubia* and found that from 1.4 to 8.3 per cent of the injected oil was digested. Mast (1938) noticed that the neutral fat

globules of *Colpidium* are digested by *Amoeba proteus* and transformed into fatty acid and glycerine which unite and form neutral fat.

The indigestible residue of the food is extruded from the body. The extrusion may take place at any point on the surface in many Sarcodina by a reverse process of the ingestion of food. But in pelticle-bearing forms, the defecation takes place either through the cytopyge located in the posterior region of the body or through an aperture to the vestibule (in *Carchesium*). Permanent cytopyge is lacking in some forms. In *Fabrea salina*, Kirby (1934) noticed that a large opening is formed at the posterior end, the contents of food vacuoles are discharged, and the opening closes over. At first the margin of the body is left uneven, but soon the evenly rounded outline is restored. The same seems to be the case with *Spirostomum* (Fig. 37), *Blepharisma*, etc. [14]

FIG. 37. Outline sketches showing the defecation process in *Spirostomum ambiguum* (Blättner).

Holophytic (autotrophic, phytotrophic) nutrition. This is the type of nutrition in which the Protozoa are able to decompose carbon dioxide by means of chlorophyll contained in chromatophores (p. 78) in the presence of the sunlight, liberating the oxygen and combining the carbon with other elements derived from water and inorganic salts. The pyrenoids (p. 79) are inseparably connected with the reserve carbohydrate formation in this nutrition. Aside from the Phytomastigina, chromatophores were definitely observed in a ciliate *Cyclotrichium meunieri* (Fig. 268, o) by Powers. In a number of other cases, the organism itself is without chromatophores but is apparently not holozoic, because of the presence of chlorophyll-bearing organisms within it. For example, in the testacean *Paulinella* (Fig. 182, c) in which occur no food vacuoles, chromatophores of peculiar shape are always present. The latter appear to be a species of alga which holds a symbiotic relationship with the testacean, and perhaps acts for the sarcodinan as the chromatophores of the Phyto-

mastigina. A similar relationship seems to exist between *Paramecium bursaria* and a zoochlorella, *Paraeuplotes tortugensis* and a zooxanthella and others (p. 25). Pringsheim showed that organic matters from zoochlorellae are passed on to their host, *Paramecium bursaria*, to be used as food. Through studies of relationships between zooxanthellae and invertebrates Yonge observed that the zooxanthellae utilize carbon dioxide, nitrogen and phosphorus which are the catabolic products of the host and supply in return oxygen, fats and carbohydrates to the host.

Saprozoic (saprophytic) nutrition. In this nutrition, the Protozoa obtain nourishment by diffusion through the body surface. This is accomplished without any special organellae. Perhaps the only instance in which the saprozoic nutrition is accomplished through a special organella is the **pusules** (Figs. 107, 108) in marine dinoflagellates which, according to Kofoed and Swezy, appear to contain decomposed organic matter and aid the organisms in carrying on this process. The dissolved food matters are simpler compounds which originate in animal or vegetable matter due to the decomposing activities of bacterial organisms. Numerous free-living Zoomastigina nourish themselves with this method. Recently a number of investigators found that saprozoic Protozoa could be cultivated in bacteria-free media of known compositions. For example, Pringsheim observed in *Polytoma uvella* (Fig. 97, *h*) that sodium acetate is needed from which the starch among others is produced and carbohydrates have no direct bearing upon the nutrition, but fatty acids derived from them participate in the metabolism. Hall, Jahn, Loefer and others are following the same line of work which may lead to a better understanding of saprozoic nutrition as found in Protozoa.

The Protozoa which live within the body of another organism are able to nourish themselves by absorbing the digested or decomposed substances of the host and could be considered as saprozoic, though the term **parasitic** has sometimes been used. Coelozoic Protozoa belong to this group, as for example, Protociliata, astomatous ciliates, Trypanosomatidae, etc. In the case of cytozoic or certain histozoic forms, such as Cnidosporidia, the host cytoplasm is apparently liquefied or hydrolyzed by enzymes before being absorbed by them. The parasitic Protozoa, which actually feed on host tissue cells, such as *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Balantidium coli*, etc., or endocommensals, employ, of course, the holozoic nutrition.

Many Protozoa nourish themselves by more than one method at the same or different times, subject to a change in external condi-

tions. This is sometimes referred to as **mixotrophic** nutrition (Pfeiffer). For example, *Euglena gracilis*, according to Zumstein (1900) and Lwoff (1932) may lose its green coloration and becomes Astasia-like in the dark, or even in the light when the culture medium is very abundant in decomposed organic substances, which may indicate that this organism is capable of carrying on both holophytic and saprozoic nutrition.

With the introduction of bacteria-free culture technique in recent years, it has now become well established that a protozoan species exhibits conspicuous differences in form, size and structure, which are exclusively due to differences in the kind and amount of food material. For example, Kidder, Lilly and Claff (1940) noted in *Tetrahymena vorax* (Fig. 38), bacteria-feeders are tailed ($50\text{--}75\mu$ long), saprozoic forms are fusiform to ovoid ($30\text{--}70\mu$ long), forms feeding on sterile dead ciliates are fusiform ($60\text{--}80\mu$ long), and carnivores and cannibals are irregularly ovoid ($100\text{--}250\mu$ long), in the latter form of which a large preparatory vacuole becomes developed. In *Chilomonas paramecium*, Mast (1939) observed the individuals grown in sterile glucose-peptone solution were much smaller than those cultured in acetate-ammonium solution and moreover the former contained many small starch grains, but no fat, while the latter showed many larger starch grains and a little fat. *Amoeba proteus* when fed exclusively on Colpidium, became very large and extremely "fat" and sluggish, growing and multiplying slowly, but indefinitely; when fed on Chilomonas only, they grew and multiplied for several days, then decreased in number and soon died, but lived longer on Chilomonas cultured in the glucose-peptone.

Since the fact that **endocrines** influence greatly the metabolic activity and growth in higher animals became known, many workers undertook to determine the effects of various endocrines of vertebrates upon Protozoa. Nowikoff (1908) first noticed the apparent increase in number of *Paramecium caudatum* when cultured in a solution of desiccated sheep thyroid as compared with the culture in a hay infusion. Shumway (1914, 1917) found that the emulsions of fresh thyroid, boiled thyroid and commercial powder, produced an increase of about 65 per cent in the division rate in Paramecium over common hay infusions. These animals were smaller and more actively motile, and showed more vacuolated cytoplasm. Abderhalden and Schiffmann (1922) made a similar observation by using thyroid "optone." Shumway found further that suspensions of thymus, spleen, ovary, suprarenal, and pituitary body, did not have any effect on Paramecium. By using freshly prepared thyroid extracts of

cat, bird, turtle, frog, and fish, on *Paramecium* and *Stylonychia*, Budington and Harvey (1915) noticed also that all extracts increased the division rate.

Flather (1919) saw the contraction of the contractile vacuoles of *Paramecium* accelerated by adrenaline and pineal extract. Cori (1923) noted the acceleration (about 12 per cent) of the division

FIG. 38. Form and size variation in *Tetrahymena vorax*, due to differences in kind and amount of food material, as seen in life. $\times 400$ (Kidder, Lilly and Claff). a, bacteria-feeder; b, c, saprozoic forms; d, individual which has fed on killed *Colpidium campylum*; e, starved individual from a killed-*Colpidium* culture; f-i, progressive form and size changes of saprozoic form in the presence of living *Colpidium*; j, a young carnivore which has been removed to a culture with living yeast.

rate in *P. putrinum* occurred only in faintly alkaline thyroid extract in hay infusions. Riddle and Torrey (1923) on the other hand found that the thyroxine brought about a slight fall in the rate of division, an increased rate of pulsation of the contractile vacuoles, and a decrease in number of excretory crystals in *Paramecium*. The two investigators suggested that the thyroxine accelerates catabolic, and not anabolic, processes. Woodruff and Swingle (1923, 1924), using a pedigree culture of *P. aurelia* found that (1) neither thyroid, pineal, nor pituitary material possesses intrinsic properties which accelerate division in *Paramecium* and (2) thyroxine does not accelerate the division and above certain concentrations, it depresses the division in this ciliate.

Ball (1925) found different clones of *P. caudatum* and *P. aurelia*, respond differently to similar conditions and obtained following results: (1) with an uncontrolled bacterial food supply, individuals of the same clone may divide at a higher rate in solutions of the desiccated thyroid, liver, and hypophysis, than in hay infusions; (2) if approximately equal number of bacteria are provided, thyroid does not bring about any significant increase in the division rate; and (3) the evidence indicates that thyroid accelerates the division rate of *Paramecium* by providing a favorable bacterial food supply, and not by any specific action of the thyroid hormone. Solutions of both the anterior and the posterior lobes of the pituitary gland produce no significantly higher rate of division than does a solution of liver. Unlike the observations made by some previous workers, Ball finds no demonstrable increase in the metabolic rate in thyroid-fed animals as compared with those cultured in hay infusions.

The importance of **vitamins** has abundantly been demonstrated in recent years for many higher animals. It is, therefore, natural to find attempts made to discover the influence of certain vitamins on Protozoa. Lwoff and Dusi (1937, 1938) found the growth of *Chilomonas paramecium* in asparagin media was favorably supported by thiamine, or by thiazole, and in ammonium acetate media, thiamine could be replaced by thiazole and pyrimidine. Thiamine has no accelerating effect on the growth of *Euglena gracilis* in light (Elliott, 1937), but either this substance or pyrimidine is necessary for the growth of the organism if cultured in asparagin and acetate media in darkness (Lwoff and Dusi). It is probable that chromatophore-bearing forms are able to synthesize thiamine from the constituents of inorganic media in sunlight. *E. pisciformis* on the other hand is said to require thiamine for growth even in light (Dusi, 1939).

Many colorless flagellates require thiamine for growth as in *Chilo-*

monas paramecium mentioned above, others appear to be capable of synthesizing it as in *Polytoma uvella* (Lwoff and Dusi). In a number of ciliates such as *Colpidium campylum*, *C. striatum*, *Tetrahymena geleii*, etc., thiamine seems to support growth according to several workers. For example, Elliott (1939) observed crystalline thiamine chloride to be a limiting factor for the growth of *Colpidium striatum* in media free from this substance. Vitamin B₁ was found most effective in concentration of 1:10,000 to 1:10,000,000. This worker further found that crystalline riboflavin and vitamin B₆ (concentrate) cannot supplant thiamine in the nutrition of this ciliate. According to Hall and Shottenfeld (1941), the density of population in bacteria-free cultures of *Glaucoma pyriformis* is related quantitatively to the concentration of thiamine and the phases of death also are influenced markedly by the available concentration of this vitamin. For *Colpidium campylum*, Hall (1942) observed thiamine and riboflavin to be essential for growth in a de-ashed gelatin medium, and thiamine to be necessary for growth in a silk-peptone culture which has been subjected to prolonged heating in strongly alkaline solution.

Lilly (1942) succeeded in growing bacteria-free several strains of *Stylonychia pustulata* and *Pleurotricha lanceolata* on ciliates (5 species), flagellates (3 species) and a strain of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, all cultured in sterile condition. He found that for continued growth of the two ciliates, it was necessary to supply in addition to the food organisms, a supplementary growth factor which was found in the largest quantity in yeast cells and less so in infusions of a wide variety of plant materials, but which was not found in effective concentrations in media made from animal organs or tissues. This substance was soluble in water and in 70 per cent alcohol, was stable to heat and alkali, and was adsorbed on charcoal and on Fuller's earth. The investigator considers it as not identical with any of the known vitamins of the B complex. Johnson and Baker (1943) have examined certain B vitamins in relation to populations of *Tetrahymena geleii* and found: (1) the addition of thiamine to fresh proteose-peptone medium produced a higher maximum population; (2) all of the long-time cultures containing added thiamine, had secondary increase in population, almost to the original peaks, after 64 days; (3) cultures with a mixture of thiamine, riboflavin, and pyridoxine, maintained the highest level of living population; and (4) cultures with para-aminobenzoic acid had higher maximum populations than those obtained under other conditions, but died out sooner than the other types of cultures (addition of thiamine prevented this early dying-out).

Ascorbic acid has been found to be an essential factor for the growth in *Leishmania donovani*, *L. tropica*, *Trypanosoma cruzi* (Lwoff), *Tritrichomonas foetus* (Cailleau), etc. Haematin is said to be a necessary growth factor for the two species of *Leishmania* and *Trypanosoma cruzi* (Lwoff). Observations on the effect of vitamins as applied to host infected by Protozoa are meager. Becker and his associates (1941) have shown that when a ration somewhat restricted in vitamins B₁ and B₆ was used as basal, the addition of moderate amounts of thiamine chloride resulted in a reduction in the number of oocysts of *Eimeria nieschulzi* eliminated by host rats. The same was true when vitamins B₁ and B₆ were administered to infected rats intraperitoneally in normal salt solution. On the other hand, vitamin B₆ supplement alone produced an increase in the oocyst production.

Certain substances which are sometimes called **growth stimulants** have also been applied to Protozoa in recent years. Elliott (1935) found that pantothenic acid brings about a doubling of the growth of *Colpidium campylum* in sterile culture at pH 5.5–6.6, but not at pH 7.0 or above, and it does not accelerate the growth of *Haemato-coccus pluvialis* in bacteria-free cultures. Thus it appears that pantothenic acid has no effect on chlorophyll-bearers. As to the effect of auxins (plant growth substances), the same investigator demonstrated that *Euglena gracilis* grew faster in a medium at pH 5.6 in light and in the presence of auxins, while these substances did not bring about any noticeable effect on such colorless forms as *Khawkinea halli* and *Colpidium striatum*. Hall (1939) examined the effect of pimelic acid on *Colpidium campylum* in sterile cultures and found that it exerts some sort of catalytic effect on the metabolism of this ciliate in peptone and gelatin media, as shown by an increase in the growth rate and in the density of population, but the effect may be masked, or perhaps, eliminated by the addition of dextrose to the medium.

Fuller information on the relationships between endocrines, vitamins and growth-promoting substances and Protozoa is dependent upon a greater application of sterile culture method and standardization of basal culture media to many Protozoa in future.

The reserve food matter

The anabolic activities of Protozoa result in the growth and increase in the volume of the organism, and also in the formation and storage of reserve food-substances which are deposited in the cytoplasm to be utilized later for growth or reproduction. The reserve food stuff is ordinarily glycogen or glycogenous substances,

which seem to be present widely. Thus, in saprozoic Gregarinida, there occur in the cytoplasm numerous refractile bodies which stain brown to brownish-violet in Lugol's solution; are insoluble in cold water, alcohol, and ether; become swollen and later dissolved in boiling water; and are reduced to a sugar by boiling in dilute sulphuric acid. This substance which composes the refractile bodies is called **paraglycogen** (Bütschli) or zooamylon. The abundant glycogen bodies of *Pelomyxa* have already been mentioned (p. 91). Rumjantzew and Wermel demonstrated glycogen in *Actinosphaerium*. In *Iodamoeba*, glycogen body is conspicuously present and is looked upon as a characteristic feature of the organism. The iodophilic vacuole of the spores of *Myxobolidae* is a conspicuously well-defined vacuole containing glycogenous substance and is also considered as possessing a taxonomic value. In many ciliates, both free-living (*Paramecium*, *Glaucoma*, *Vorticella*, etc.) and parasitic (*Ophryoscolecidae*, *Nyctotherus*, *Balantidium*, etc.), glycogenous bodies are always present. According to MacLennan (1936), the development of the paraglycogen in *Ichthyophthirius* is associated with the chondriosomes. In *Eimeria tenella*, glycogenous substance does apparently not occur in the schizonts, merozoites, or microgametocytes; but becomes apparent first in the macrogametocyte, and increases in amount with its development, a small amount being demonstrable in the sporozoites (Edgar et al., 1944).

FIG. 39. a-d, two types of paramylon present in *Euglena gracilis* (Bütschli); e-h, paramylon of *E. sanguinea*, $\times 1100$ (Heidt). e, natural appearance; f, g, dried forms; h, strongly pressed bodies.

The anabolic products of the holophytic nutrition are starch, paramylon, oil and fats. The **paramylon** bodies are of various forms among different species, but appear to maintain a certain characteristic form within a species and can be used to a certain extent in taxonomic consideration. According to Heidt (1937), the paramylon of *Euglena sanguinea* (Fig. 39) is spirally coiled which confirms Bütschli's observation. The paramylon appears to be a polysac-

charide which is insoluble in boiling water, but dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid, potassium hydroxide, and slowly in formaldehyde. It does not stain with either iodine or chlor-zinc-iodide and when treated with a dilute potassium hydroxide, the paramylon bodies become enlarged and frequently exhibit a concentric stratification.

In the Chrysomonadina, the reserve food material is in the form of refractile bodies which are collectively called **leucosin**, probably a carbohydrate. **Oils** occur in various Protozoa and when there is a sufficient number of oil-producing forms in a body of water, the water may develop various odors. Table 4 shows kinds of odor produced by certain Protozoa when they are present in the water in large numbers:

TABLE 4.—*Protozoa and odors of water*

Protozoa	Odor produced by them
Cryptomonas	candied violets
Mallomonas	aromatic, violets, fishy
Synura	ripe cucumber, muskmelon, bitter and spicy taste
Uroglenopsis	fishy, cod-liver oil-like
Dinobryon	fishy, like rockweed
Chlamydomonas	fishy, unpleasant or aromatic
Eudorina	faintly fishy
Pandorina	faintly fishy
Volvox	fishy
Ceratium	vile stench
Glenodinium	fishy
Peridinium	fishy, like clam-shells
Bursaria	Irish moss, salt marsh, fishy (Whipple)
Pelomyxa	ripe cucumber (Schaeffer)

Fats have also been detected in many Protozoa, such as Myxosporidia, Protociliata, certain Euciliata, Trypanosoma, etc. According to Panzer, the fat content of *Eimeria gadi* was 3.55 per cent and Pratje reports that 12 per cent of the dry matter of *Noctiluca scintillans* appeared to be the fatty substance present in the form of granules and is said to give luminescence upon mechanical or chemical stimulation. A number of other dinoflagellates, such as Peridinium, Ceratium, Gonyaulax, Gymnodinium, etc., also emit luminescence. In other forms the fat may be hydrostatic in function, as is the case with a number of pelagic Radiolaria, many of which are also luminous.

Another reserve food-stuff which occurs widely in Protozoa, ex-

cepting Ciliophora, is the so-called **volutin** or metachromatic granule. It is apparently equally widely present in Protophyta. In fact it was first discovered in the protophytan *Spirillum volutans*. Meyer coined the name and held it to be made up of a nucleic acid. It stains deeply with nuclear dyes. Reichenow (1909) demonstrated that if *Haematococcus pluvialis* (Fig. 40) is cultivated in a phosphorus-free medium the volutin is quickly used up and does not reappear. If however, the organisms are cultivated in a medium rich in phosphorus, the volutin increases greatly in volume and, as the culture becomes old, it gradually breaks down. In *Polytomella agilis* (Fig. 98, c, d), Doflein showed that an addition of sodium phosphate resulted in an increase of volutin. Reichenow, Schumacher, and others, hold that the volutin appears to be a free nucleic acid, and is a special reserve food material for the nuclear substance. Recently Sas-

FIG. 40. *Haematococcus pluvialis*, showing the development of volutin in the medium rich in phosphorus and its disintegration in an exhausted medium, $\times 570$ (Reichenow). a, second day; b, third day; c, fourth day; d, e, sixth day; f, eighth day.

suchin (1935) studied the volutin in *Spirillum volutans* and *Sarcina flava* and found that the volutin appears during the period of strong growth, nourishment and multiplication, disappears in unfavorable condition of nourishment and gives a series of characteristic carbohydrate reactions. Sassuchin considers that the volutin is not related to the nucleus, but is a reserve food material of the cell, and is composed of glycoprotein.

Respiration

In order to carry on various vital activities, the Protozoa, like all other organisms, must transform the potential energy stored in highly complex chemical compounds present in the cytoplasm, into various forms of active energy by oxidation. The oxygen involved in this process appears to be brought into contact with the substances in two ways in Protozoa. The great majority of free-living, and certain parasitic forms absorb free molecular oxygen from the surrounding media. The absorption of oxygen appears to be carried on by the permeable body surface, since there is no special organella for this purpose. The polysaprobic Protozoa are known

to live in water containing no free oxygen. For example, Noland (1927) observed *Metopus es* in a pool, 6 feet in diameter and 18 inches deep, filled with dead leaves which gave a strong odor of hydrogen sulphide. The water in it showed pH 7.2 at 14°C., and contained no dissolved oxygen, 14.9 c.c. per liter of free carbon dioxide, and 78.7 c.c. per liter of fixed carbon dioxide. The parasitic Protozoa of metazoan digestive systems live also in a medium containing no molecular oxygen. All these forms appear to possess capacity of splitting complex oxygen-bearing substances present in the body to produce necessary oxygen.

Several investigators studied the influence of abundance or lack of oxygen upon different Protozoa. For example, Pütter demonstrated that several ciliates reacted differently when subjected to anaerobic condition, some perishing rapidly, others living for a considerable length of time. Death is said by Löhner to be brought about by a volume-increase due to accumulation of the waste products. When first starved for a few days and then placed in anaerobic environment, *Paramecium* and *Colpidium* died much more rapidly than unstarved individuals. Pütter, therefore, supposed that the difference in longevity of aerobic Protozoa in anaerobic conditions was correlated with that of the amount of reserve food material such as protein, glycogen and paraglycogen present in the body. Pütter further noticed that *Paramecium* is less affected by anaerobic condition than *Spirostomum* in a small amount of water, and maintained that the smaller the size of body and the more elaborate the contractile vacuole system, the organisms suffer the less the lack of oxygen in the water, since the removal of catabolic products depends upon these factors.

The variety of habitats and results of artificial cultivations of various Protozoa indicate clearly that the oxygen requirements vary a great deal among different forms. Attempts were made in recent years to determine the oxygen requirement of Protozoa. The results of the observations are not always convincing. The oxygen consumption of *Paramecium* is said, according to Lund (1918) and Amberson (1928), to be fairly constant over a wide range of oxygen concentration. Specht (1934) found the measurements of the oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide production in *Spirostomum ambiguum* vary because of the presence of a base produced by the organism. Soule (1925) observed in the cultural tubes of *Trypanosoma lewisi* and *Leishmania tropica*, the oxygen contained in about 100 c.c. of air of the test tube is used up in about 12 and 6 days respectively. A single *Paramecium caudatum* is said to consume in one hour at

21°C. from 0.0052 c.c. (Kalmus) to 0.00049 c.c. (Howland and Bernstein) of oxygen. *Amoeba proteus*, according to Hulpieu (1930), succumbs slowly when the amount of oxygen in water is less than 0.005 per cent and also in excess, which latter confirms Pütter's observation on *Spirostomum*. According to Clark (1942), a normal *Amoeba proteus* consumes 1.4×10^{-3} mm³ of oxygen per hour, while an enucleated amoeba only 0.2×10^{-3} mm.³ He suggests that "the oxygen-carriers concerned with 70 per cent of the normal respiration of an amoeba are related in some way to the presence of the nucleus." The *Hypermastigina* of termites are killed, according to Cleveland, when the host animals are kept in an excess of oxygen. Jahn (1935) found that *Chilomonas paramecium* in bacteria-free cultures in heavily buffered peptone-phosphate media at pH 6.0 required for rapid growth carbon dioxide which apparently brings about a favorable intracellular hydrogen-ion concentration.

Excretion and secretion

The catabolic waste material composed of water, carbon dioxide, urea and other nitrogenous compounds, all of which are soluble, pass out of the body by diffusion through the surface or by means of the contractile vacuole (p. 73). The protoplasm of the Protozoa is generally considered to possess a molecular make-up which appears to be similar among those living in various habitats. In the freshwater Protozoa, the water diffuses through the body surface and so increases the water content of the body protoplasm as to interfere with its normal function. The contractile vacuole, which is invariably present in all freshwater forms, is the means of getting rid of this excess water from the body. On the other hand, marine or parasitic Protozoa live in nearly isotonic media and there is no excess of water entering the body, hence the contractile vacuoles are not found in them. Just exactly why all euciliates and suctorians possess the contractile vacuole regardless of habitat, has not fully been explained. It is assumed that the pellicle of the ciliate is impermeable to salts and slowly permeable to water (Kitching). If this is true in all ciliates, it is not difficult to understand the universal occurrence of the contractile vacuole in the ciliates and suctorians.

That the elimination of excess amount of water from the body is one of the functions of the contractile vacuole appears to be beyond doubt judging from the observations of Zuelzer (1907), Finley (1930) and others, on *Amoeba verrucosa* which lost gradually its contractile vacuole as sodium chloride was added to the water, losing the organella completely in the seawater concentration. Herf (1922)

studied the pulsation of the contractile vacuoles of *Paramecium caudatum* in fresh water as well as various salt concentrations, and obtained the following measurements:

Per cent NaCl in water	0	0.25	0.5	0.75	1.00
Contraction period in second	6.2	9.3	18.4	24.8	163.0
Excretion per hour in body volumes	4.8	2.82	1.38	1.08	0.16

The contractile vacuole also serves to remove from the body part of soluble catabolic wastes, judged by numerous observations. Weatherby (1929) showed that the excretory vacuole of *Spirostomum* contains urea, and that of *Didinium* contains ammonia and occasionally trace of uric acid. The number of the contractile vacuoles present in a given species as in various species of *Paramecium*, is not always constant. Nor is its size constant. According to Taylor (1920) the average size of the contractile vacuole of *Euplotes patella* is 29μ at maximum diastole, but may become $45\text{--}50\mu$ in diameter upon disturbance or after incision. The rate of pulsation is subject to change with temperature, physiological state of the organism, amount of food substances present in the water, etc. For example, Rossbach observed in the three ciliates mentioned below the pulsation of the contractile vacuole increased first rapidly and then more slowly with the rise of the temperature of the water:

	Time in seconds between two systoles at different temperature (C.)					
	5°	10°	15°	20°	25°	30°
<i>Euplotes charon</i>	61	48	31	28	22	23
<i>Stylonychia pustulata</i>	18	14	10-11	6-8	5-6	4
<i>Chilodonella cucullulus</i>	9	7	5	4	4	—

In *Amoeba mira*, Hopkins (1938) found that small vacuoles (acid reaction) appear and coalesce with one another and also with bacteria taken in as food, thus giving rise to larger ones (alkaline reaction). These larger vacuoles after giving off substances to the protoplasm by diffusion, are discharged. Thus the vacuole system in this amoeba appears to perform not only digestive function, but also excretory function as excess water, food residues and a substance stainable by janus green B, are extruded by way of this system.

Aside from the soluble forms, there often occur in the protozoan body insoluble catabolic products in the forms of **crystals** and **granules** of various kinds. Schewiakoff (1893) first noticed that *Paramecium* often contained crystals (Fig. 41) composed of calcium phosphate, which disappeared completely in 1-2 days when the organ-

isms were starved, and reappeared when food was given. Schewiakoff did not see the extrusion of these crystals, but considered that these crystals were first dissolved and excreted by the contractile vacuoles, as they were seen collected around the vacuoles. In *Amoeba proteus*, Schubotz (1905) noted that the crystals were of similar chemical composition and of usually bipyramidal or rhombic form, and that they measured about $2\text{--}5\mu$ in length and doubly refractile. Schaeffer (1920) observed calcium phosphate crystals in three species of

FIG. 41. Examples of crystals present in Protozoa. a-e, in *Paramecium caudatum* (Schewiakoff), (a-d, $\times 1000$, e, $\times 2600$); f, in *Amoeba proteus*; g, in *A. discoides*; h-l, in *A. dubia* (Schaeffer).

Amoeba and was inclined to think that the forms and dimensions of these crystals were characteristic of each species. Thus in *Amoeba proteus*, they are truncate bipyramids, rarely flat plates, up to 4.5μ long; in *A. discoides*, abundant, truncate bipyramids, up to 2.5μ long; and in *A. dubia*, variously shaped (4 kinds), few, but large, up to 10μ , 12μ , 30μ long (Fig. 41).

Howland detected uric acid in *Paramecium caudatum* and *Amoeba verrucosa*. Luce and Pohl (1935) noticed that at certain times amoebae in culture are clear and contain relatively a few crystals but, as the culture grows older and the water becomes more neutral, the crystals become abundant and the organisms become opaque in transmitted light. These crystals are tubular and six-sided, and vary in length from 0.5 to 3.5μ . They considered the crystals were composed of calcium chlorophosphate. Mast and Doyle (1935), on the other hand, noted in *Amoeba proteus* two kinds of crystals, plate-like and bipyramidal, which vary in size up to 7μ in length and which are suspended in alkaline fluid to viscous vacuoles. These two authors believed that the plate-like crystals are probably leucine, while the bipyramidal crystals consist of a magnesium salt of a substituted glycine. Other crystals are said to be composed of urate, carbonate, oxalate, etc.

Another catabolic product is the **haemozoin** (melanin) grains

which occur in many haemosporidians and which appear to be composed of a derivative of the haemoglobin of the infected erythrocyte. In certain Radiolaria, there occurs a brownish amorphous mass which is considered as catabolic waste material and, in Foraminifera, the cytoplasm is frequently loaded with masses of brown granules which appear also to be catabolic waste and are extruded from the body periodically.

While intracellular secretions are usually difficult to recognize, because the majority remain in fluid form except those which produce endoskeletal structures occurring in Heliozoa, Radiolaria, certain parasitic ciliates, etc., the extracellular secretions are easily recognizable as loricae, shells, envelopes, stalks, collars, mucous substance, pigments which give the body a characteristic coloration (p. 38), etc. Furthermore, many Protozoa secrete, as was stated before, certain substances through the pseudopodia, tentacles or trichocysts which possess paralyzing effect upon the preys.

Movements

Protozoa move about by means of the *pseudopodia*, *flagella*, or *cilia*, which may be combined with internal contractile organellae.

Movement by pseudopodia. Amoeboid movements have long been studied by numerous observers. The first attempt to explain the movement was made by Berthold (1886), who held that the difference in the surface tension was the cause of amoeboid movements, which view was supported by the observations and experiments of Bütschli (1894) and Rhumbler (1898). According to this view, when an amoeba forms a pseudopodium, there probably occurs a diminution of the surface tension of the cytoplasm at that point, due to certain internal changes which are continuously going on within the body and possibly to external causes, and the internal pressure of the cytoplasm will then cause the streaming of the cytoplasm. This results in the formation of a pseudopodium which becomes attached to the substratum and an increase in tension of the plasma-membrane draws up the posterior end of the amoeba, thus bringing about the movement of the whole body.

Jennings (1904) found that the movement of *Amoeba verrucosa* (Fig. 42, *a*) could not be explained by the surface tension theory, since he observed "in an advancing amoeba substance flows forward on the upper surface, rolls over at the anterior edge, coming in contact with the substratum, then remains quiet until the body of the amoeba has passed over it. It then moves upward at the posterior end, and forward again on the upper surface, continuing

in rotation as long as the amoeba continues to progress." Thus *Amoeba verrucosa* may be compared with an elastic sac filled with fluid. Dellinger (1906) studied the movement of *Amoeba proteus*, *A. verrucosa* and *Diffugia spiralis*. Studying in side view, he found

FIG. 42. a, diagram showing the movement of *Amoeba verrucosa* in side view (Jennings); b, a marine limax-amoeba in locomotion (Pantin from Reichenow). ac, area of conversion; cet, contracting ectoplasmic tube; fe, fluid ectoplasm; ge, gelated ectoplasm.

that the amoeba (Fig. 43) extends a pseudopod, "swings it about, brings it into the line of advance, and attaches it" to the substratum and that there is then a concentration of the substance back of this point and a flow of the substance toward the anterior end. Dellinger

FIG. 43. Outline sketches of photomicrographs of *Amoeba proteus* during locomotion, as viewed from side (Dellinger).

held thus that "the movements of amoebae are due to the presence of a contractile substance," which was said to be located in the endoplasm as a coarse reticulum.

In the face of advancement of our knowledge on the nature of protoplasm, Rhumbler realized the difficulties of the surface tension

FIG. 44. Diagram of *Amoeba proteus*, showing the solation and gelation of the cytoplasm during amoeboid movement (Mast). c, crystal; cv, contractile vacuole; f, food vacuole; hc, hyaline cap; n, nucleus; pg, plasmagel; pgs, plasmagel sheet; pl, plasmalemma; ps, plasmasol.

theory and later suggested that the conversion of the ectoplasm to endoplasm and vice versa were the cause of the cytoplasmic movements, which was much extended by Hyman (1917). Hyman considered that: (1) a gradient in susceptibility to potassium cyanide exists in each pseudopodium, being the greatest at the distal end, and the most recent pseudopodium, the most susceptible; (2) the susceptibility gradient (or metabolic gradient) arises in the amoebae before the pseudopodium appears and hence the metabolic change which produces increased susceptibility, is the primary cause of pseudopodium formation; and (3) since the surface is in a state of gelation, amoeboid movement must be due to alterations of the colloidal state. Solation, which is brought about by the metabolic change, is regarded as the cause of the extension of a pseudopodium, and gelation of the withdrawal of pseudopodia and of active contraction. Schaeffer (1920) mentioned the importance of the surface layer which is a true surface tension film, the ectoplasm, and the streaming of endoplasm in the amoeboid movement.

Pantin (1923) studied a marine limax-type amoeba (Fig. 42, *b*) and came to recognize acid secretion and absorption of water at the place where the pseudopodium was formed. This results in swelling of the cytoplasm and the pseudopodium is formed. Because of the acidity, the surface tension increases and to lower or reduce this, concentration of substances in the "wall" of the pseudopodium follows. This leads to the formation of a gelatinous ectoplasmic tube which, as the pseudopodium extends, moves toward the posterior region where the acid condition is lost, gives up water and contracts finally becoming transformed into endoplasm near the posterior end. The contraction of the ectoplasmic tube forces the endoplasmic streaming to the front.

This observation is in agreement with that of Mast (1923, 1926, 1931) who after a series of carefully conducted observations on *Amoeba proteus* came to hold that the amoeboid movement is brought about by "four primary processes; namely, attachment to the substratum, gelation of plasmasol at the anterior end, solation of plasmagel at the posterior end and the contraction of the plasmagel at the posterior end" (Fig. 44). As to how these processes work, Mast states: "The gelation of the plasmasol at the anterior end extends ordinarily the plasmagel tube forward as rapidly as it is broken down at the posterior end by solation and the contraction of the plasmagel tube at the posterior end drives the plasmasol forward. The plasmagel tube is sometimes open at the anterior end and the plasmasol extends forward and comes in contact with the plasma-

lemma at this end (Fig. 45, *a*), but at other times it is closed by a thin sheet of gel which prevents the plasmasol from reaching the anterior end (*b*). This gel sheet at times persists intact for considerable periods, being built up by gelation as rapidly as it is broken down by stretching, owing to the pressure of the plasmagel against it. Usually it breaks periodically at various places. Sometimes the breaks are small and only a few granules of plasmasol pass through and these gelate immediately and close the openings (*d*). At other times the breaks are large and plasmasol streams through, filling the hyaline cap (*c*), after which the sol adjoining the plasmalemma gel-

FIG. 45. Diagrams of varied cytoplasmic movements at the tip of a pseudopodium in *Amoeba proteus* (Mast). g, plasmagel; hc, hyaline cap; hl, hyaline layer; pl, plasmalemma; s, plasmasol.

ates forming a new gel sheet. An amoeba is a turgid system, and the plasmagel is under continuous tension. The plasmagel is elastic and, consequently, is pushed out at the region where its elasticity is weakest and this results in pseudopodial formation. When an amoeba is elongated and undergoing movement, the elastic strength of the plasmagel is the highest at its sides, lowest at the anterior end and intermediate at the posterior end, which results in continuity of the elongated form and in extension of the anterior end. If pressure is brought against the anterior end, the direction of streaming of plasmasol is immediately reversed, and a new hyaline cap is formed at the posterior end which is thus changed into a new anterior end."

Flagellar movement. The flagellar movement is in a few instances observable as in *Peranema*, but in most cases it is very difficult to observe in life. Since there is difference in the number, location, size, and probably structure (p. 45) of flagella occurring in Protozoa, it is supposed that there are varieties of flagellar movements. The first explanation was advanced by Bütschli, who observed that the flagellum undergoes a series of lateral movements and, in so doing, a pres-

sure is exerted on the water at right angles to its surface. This pressure can be resolved into two forces: one directed parallel, and the other at right angles, to the main body axis. The former will drive the organism forward, while the latter will tend to rotate the animal on its own axis.

Gray (1928), who gave an excellent account of the movement of flagella, points out that "in order to produce propulsion there must be a force which is always applied to the water in the same direction and which is independent of the phase of lateral movement. There can be little doubt that this condition is satisfied in flagellated organisms not because each particle of the flagellum is moving laterally to and fro, but by the transmission of the waves from one end of the flagellum to the other, and because the direction of the transmission is always the same. A stationary wave, as apparently contemplated by Bütschli, could not effect propulsion since the forces acting on the water are equal and opposite during the two phases of the movement. If however the waves are being transmitted in one direction only, definite propulsive forces are present which always act in a direction opposite to that of the waves."

Because of the nature of the flagellar movement, the actual process has often not been observed. Verworn observed long ago that in *Peranema trichophorum* the undulation of the distal portion of flagellum is accompanied by a slow forward movement, while undulation along the entire length is followed by a rapid forward movement. Recently Krijgsman (1925) studied *Monas* sp. (Fig. 46) which he found in soil cultures, under the darkfield microscope and stated: (1) when the organism moves forward with the maximum speed, the flagellum starting from *c1*, with the wave beginning at the base, stretches back (*c 1-6*), and then waves back (*d, e*), which brings about the forward movement. Another type is one in which the flagellum bends back beginning at its base (*f*) until it coincides with the body axis, and in its effective stroke waves back as a more or less rigid structure (*g*); (2) when the organism moves forward with moderate speed, the tip of the flagellum passes through 45° or less (*h-j*); (3) when the animal moves backward, the flagellum undergoes undulation which begins at its base (*k-o*); (4) when the animal moves to one side, the flagellum becomes bent at right angles to the body and undulation passes along it from its base to tip (*p*); and (5) when the organism undergoes a slight lateral movement, only the distal end of the flagellum undulates (*q*).

Ciliary movement. The cilia are the locomotor organella present permanently in the ciliates and vary in size and distribution among

different species. Just as flagellates show various types of movements, so do the ciliates. Individual cilium on a progressing ciliate bends throughout its length and strikes the water so that the organism tends to move in a direction opposite to that of the effective beat, while the water moves in the direction of the beat (Fig. 47,

FIG. 46. Diagrams illustrating flagellar movements of *Monas* sp. (Krijgsman). a-g, rapid forward movement (a, b, optical image of the movement in front and side view; c, preparatory and d, e, effective stroke; f, preparatory and g, effective stroke); h-j, moderate forward movement (h, optical image; i, preparatory and j, effective stroke); k-o, undulatory movement of the flagellum in backward movement; p, lateral movement; q, turning movement.

a-d). In the Protociliata and the majority of holotrichous and heterotrichous ciliates, the cilia are arranged in longitudinal, or oblique rows and it is clearly noticeable that the cilia are not beating in the same phase, although they are moving at the same rate. A cilium (Fig. 47, e) in a single row is slightly in advance of the cilium behind it and slightly behind the one just in front of it, thus the cilia on the same longitudinal row beat metachronously. On the other hand, the cilia on the same transverse row beat synchronously, the condition clearly being recognizable on *Opalina* among others, which is much like the waves passing over a wheat field on a windy day.

FIG. 47. Diagrams illustrating ciliary movements (Verworn). a-d, movement of a marginal cilium of *Urostyla grandis* (a, preparatory and b, effective stroke, resulting in rapid movement; c, preparatory, and d, effective stroke, bringing about moderate speed); e, metachronous movements of cilia in a longitudinal row.

day. The organized movements of cilia, cirri, membranellae and undulating membranes are probably controlled by the neuromotor system (p. 54) which appears to be conductile as judged by the results of micro-dissection experiments of Taylor (p. 57).

The Protozoa which possess myonemes are able to move by contraction of the body or of the stalk, and others combine this with the secretion of mucous substance as is found in *Haemogregarina* and *Gregarinida*.

Irritability

Under natural conditions, the Protozoa do not behave always in the same manner, because several stimuli act upon them usually in combination and predominating stimulus or stimuli vary under dif-

ferent circumstances. Many investigators have, up to the present time, studied the reactions of various Protozoa to external stimulations, full discussion of which is beyond the scope of the present work. Here one or two examples in connection with the reactions to each of the various stimuli will only be mentioned. Of various responses expressed by a protozoan against a stimulus such as changes in body form, movement, structure, behavior, etc., the movement is the most clearly recognizable one and, therefore, free-swimming forms, particularly ciliates, have been the favorite objects of study. We consider the reaction to a stimulus in protozoans as the movement response, and this appears in one of the two directions: namely, toward, or away from, the source of the stimulus. Here we speak of positive or negative reaction. In forms such as *Amoeba*, the external stimulation is first received by the body surface and then by the whole protoplasmic body. In flagellated or ciliated Protozoa, the flagella or cilia act in part sensory; in fact in a number of ciliates are found non-vibratile cilia which appear to be sensory in function. In a comparatively small number of forms, there are sensory organellae such as stigma, ocellus, statocysts, concretion vacuoles, etc.

In general, the reaction of a protozoan to any external stimulus depends upon its intensity so that a certain chemical substance may bring about entirely opposite reactions on the part of the protozoans in different concentrations and, even under identical conditions, different individuals of a given species may react differently.

Reaction to mechanical stimuli. One of the most common stimuli a protozoan would encounter in the natural habitat is that which comes from contact with a solid object. When an amoeba which Jennings observed, came in contact with the end of a dead algal filament at the middle of its anterior surface (Fig. 48, *a*), the amoeboid movements proceeded on both sides of the filament (*b*), but soon motion ceased on one side, while it continued on the other, and the organism avoided the obstacle by reversing a part of the current and flowing in another direction (*c*). When an amoeba is stimulated mechanically by the tip of a glass rod (*d*), it turns away from the side touched, by changing endoplasmic streaming and forming new pseudopodia (*e*). Positive reactions are also often noted, when a suspended amoeba (*f*) comes in contact with a solid surface with the tip of a pseudopodium, the latter adheres to it by spreading out (*g*). Streaming of the cytoplasm follows and it becomes a creeping form (*h*). Positive reactions toward solid bodies account of course for the ingestion of food particles.

In *Paramecium*, according to Jennings, the anterior end is more sensitive than any other parts, and while swimming, if it comes in contact with a solid object, the response may be either negative or positive. In the former case, avoiding movement (Fig. 49, c) follows and in the latter case, the organism rests with its anterior end or the whole side in direct contact with the object, in which position it ingests food particles through the cytostome.

FIG. 48. Reactions of amoebae to mechanical stimuli (Jennings). a-c, an amoeba avoiding an obstacle; d, e, negative reaction to mechanical stimulation; f-h, positive reaction of a floating amoeba.

Reaction to gravity. The reaction to gravity varies among different Protozoa, according to body organization, locomotor organelles, etc. Amoebae, Testacea and others which are usually found attached to the bottom of the container, react as a rule positively toward gravity, while others manifest negative reaction as in the case of *Paramecium* (Jensen; Jennings), which explains in part why *Paramecium* in a culture jar are found just below the surface film in mass, although the vertical movement of *P. caudatum* is undoubtedly influenced by various factors, as was pointed out by Dembowski (1929).

Reaction to current. Free-swimming Protozoa appear to move or orientate themselves against the current of water. In the case of *Paramecium*, Jennings observed the majority place themselves in line with the current, with anterior end upstream. The mycetozoan is said to exhibit also a well-marked positive reaction.

Reaction to chemical stimuli. When methylgreen, methylene blue, or sodium chloride is brought in contact with an advancing amoeba, the latter organism reacts negatively (Jennings). Jennings further observed various reactions of *Paramecium* against chemical stimulation. This ciliate shows positive reaction to weak solutions of many acids and negative reactions above certain concentrations. For example, *Paramecium* enters and stays within the

FIG. 49. Reactions of *Paramecium* (Jennings). a, collecting in a drop of 0.02% acetic acid; b, ring-formation around a drop of a stronger solution of the acid; c, avoiding reaction.

area of a drop of 0.02 per cent acetic acid introduced to the preparation (Fig. 49, a); and if stronger acid is used, the organisms collect about its periphery where the acid is diluted by the surrounding water (Fig. 49, b). The reaction to chemical stimuli is probably of the greatest importance for the existence of Protozoa, since it leads them to proper food substances, the ingestion of which is the foundation of metabolic activities. In the case of parasitic Protozoa, possibly the reaction to chemical stimuli results in their finding specific host animals and their distribution in different organs and tissues within the host body. Recent investigations tend to indicate that chemotaxis plays an important rôle in the sexual reproduction in Protozoa.

Reaction to light stimuli. Most Protozoa seem to be indifferent to the ordinary light, but when the light intensity is suddenly increased, there is usually a negative reaction. Verworn saw the direction of movements of an amoeba reversed when its anterior end was subjected to a sudden illumination; Rhumbler observed that an amoeba, which was in the act of feeding, stopped feeding when it was subjected to strong light. According to Mast, *Amoeba proteus* ceases to move when suddenly strongly illuminated, but continues to move if the increase in intensity is gradual and if the illumination remains constant, the amoeba begins to move. According to Jennings, *Stentor coeruleus* reacts negatively against light.

The positive reaction to light is most clearly shown in stigma-bearing Mastigophora, as is well observable in a jar containing *Euglena*, *Phacus*, etc., in which the organisms collect at the place where the light is strongest. If the light is excluded completely, the organisms become scattered throughout the container, inactive and sometimes encyst, although the mixotrophic forms would continue activities by saprozoic method. The positive reaction to light by chromatophore-bearing forms enables them to find places in the water where photosynthesis can be carried on to the maximum degree.

All Protozoa seem to be more sensitive to ultraviolet rays. Inman found that amoeba shows a greater reaction to the rays than others and Hertel observed that *Paramecium* which was indifferent to an ordinary light, showed an immediate response (negative reaction) to the rays. MacDougall brought about mutations in *Chilodonella* by means of these rays (p. 181). When ciliates are vitally stained with eosin, erythrosin, etc., they react sometimes positively or negatively as in *Paramecium* (Metzner), or always negatively, as in *Spirostomum* (Blättner). According to Efimoff, this "induced phototaxis" is not limited to fluorescent dyes, but also is possessed by all vital-staining dyes. Zuelzer (1905) studied the effects of radium rays upon various Protozoa and found that the effect was not the same among different species. For example, limax amoeba was more resistant than others. In all cases, however, long exposure to the rays was fatal to Protozoa, the first effect of exposure being shown by accelerated movement. Halberstaedter and Luntz (1929) studied injuries and death of *Eudorina elegans* by exposure to radium rays. Joseph and Prowazek (1902) found *Paramecium* and *Volvox* gave negative response to the röntgen-ray.

Reaction to temperature stimuli. As was stated before, there seems to be an optimum temperature range for each protozoan,

although it can withstand temperatures which are lower or higher than that range. As a general rule, the higher the temperature, the greater the metabolic activities, and the latter condition results in turn in a more rapid growth and more frequent reproduction. It has been suggested that change to different phases in the life-cycle of a protozoan in association with the seasonal change may be largely due to temperature changes of the environment. In the case of parasitic Protozoa which pass their life-cycle in two hosts: warm-blooded and cold-blooded animals, such as *Plasmodium* and mammalian trypanosomes, the change in body temperature of host animals may bring about specific stages in their development.

Reaction to electrical stimuli. Since Verworn's experiments, several investigators studied the effects of electric current which is passed through Protozoa in water. *Amoeba* shows negative reaction to the anode and moves toward the cathode either by reversing the cytoplasmic streaming (Verworn) or by turning around the body (Jennings). The free-swimming ciliates move mostly toward the cathode, but a few may take a transverse position (*Spirostomum*) or swim to the anode (*Paramecium*, *Stentor*, etc.). Of flagellates, Verworn noticed that *Trachelomonas* and *Peridinium* moved to the cathode, while *Chilomonas*, *Cryptomonas*, and *Polytomella*, swam to the anode.

References

- BALL, G. H. 1925 Studies on *Paramecium*. I. Uni. Cal. Publ. Zool., Vol. 23.
- BECKER, E. R. 1941 Effect of parenteral administration of vitamin B₁ and vitamin B₆ on a *Coccidium* infection. Proc. Soc. Exper. Biol. Med., Vol. 46.
- and R. I. DILWORTH. 1941 Nature of *Eimeria nieschulzi* growth-promoting potency of feeding stuffs. II. Vitamins B₁ and B₆. Jour. Infect. Dis., Vol. 68.
- BERTHOLD, C. 1886 Studien über Protoplasma-mechanik. Leipzig.
- BRUG, S. L. 1928 Observations on a culture of *Entamoeba histolytica*. Med. Dienst Volksges. Ned. Indie for 1928.
- CALKINS, G. N. and F. M. SUMMERS (editors). 1941 *Protozoa in biological research*. New York.
- CLAFF, C. L., V. C. DEWEY and G. W. KIDDER 1941 Feeding mechanisms and nutrition in three species of Bresslaua. Biol. Bull., Vol. 81.
- CLARK, A. M. 1942 Some effects of removing the nucleus from *Amoeba*. Australian Jour. Exp. Biol. and Med. Sci., Vol. 20.
- CLEVELAND, L. R. 1925 Toxicity of oxygen for Protozoa *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Animals defaunated without injury. Biol. Bull., Vol. 48.
- , S. R. HALL, E. P. SANDERS and J. COLLIER 1934 The wood-feeding roach *Cryptocercus*, its Protozoa, and the symbiosis between Protozoa and roach. Mem. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sci., Vol. 17.

- DAWSON, J. A. and M. BELKIN 1928 The digestion of oil by *Amoeba dubia*. Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med., Vol. 25.
- DELLINGER, O. P. 1906 Locomotion of amoebae and allied forms. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 3.
- DEMBOWSKI, J. 1929 Die Vertikalbewegungen von *Paramecium caudatum*. II. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 68.
- DOFLEIN, F. 1918 Ueber *Polytomella agilis* Aragão. Zool. Jahrb. Abt. Anat., Vol. 41.
- DOYLE, W. L. 1943 The nutrition of the Protozoa. Biol. Rev., Vol. 18.
- EDGAR, S. A., C. A. HERRICK and L. A. FRASER. 1944 Glycogen in the life cycle of the coccidium, *Eimeria tenella*. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 63.
- ELLIOTT, A. M. 1938 The influence of certain plant hormones on the growth of Protozoa. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 11.
- GRAY, J. 1928 *Ciliary movement*. Cambridge.
- GREENWOOD, M. 1894 Constitution and formation of "food vacuoles" in Infusoria. Phil. Trans. (B), Vol. 185.
- and E. R. SAUNDERS 1884 The role of acid in protozoan digestion. Jour. Physiol., Vol. 16.
- HALL, R. P. 1939 Pimelic acid as a growth stimulant for *Colpidium campylum*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 92.
- 1942 Incomplete proteins as nitrogen sources, and their relation to vitamin requirements in *Colpidium campylum*. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 15.
- 1943 Growth-factors for Protozoa. In Harris and Thimann: *Vitamins and hormones*. Vol. 1.
- and A. SHOTTENFELD 1941 Maximal density and phases of death in populations of *Glaucoma piriformis*. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 14.
- HARVEY, E. N. 1940 *Living light*. Princeton.
- HEIDT, K. 1937 Form und Struktur der Paramylonkörner von *Euglena sanguinea*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 88.
- HERFS, A. 1922 Die pulsierende Vakuole der Protozoen, ein Schutzorgan gegen Aussüssung. Ibid., Vol. 44.
- HOPKINS, D. L. 1938 The vacuoles and vacuolar activity in the marine amoeba, *Flabellula mira* Schaeffer and the nature of the neutral red system in Protozoa. Biodynamica, No. 34.
- HOWLAND, R. B. 1928 The pH of gastric vacuoles. Protoplasma, Vol. 5.
- and A. BERNSTEIN 1931 A method for determining the oxygen consumption of a single cell. Jour. Gen. Physiol., Vol. 14.
- HULPIEU, H. R. 1930 The effect of oxygen on *Amoeba proteus*. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 56.
- HYMAN, L. H. 1917 Metabolic gradients in amoeba and their relation to the mechanism of amoeboid movement. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 24.
- JENNINGS, H. S. 1904 Contributions to the study of the behavior of the lower organisms. Publ. Carnegie Inst. Washington, No. 16.
- 1906 *Behavior of the lower organisms*. New York.

- JOHNSON, W. H. 1941 Nutrition in the Protozoa. *Quart. Rev. Biol.*, Vol. 16.
- and E. G. S. BAKER 1943 Certain B vitamins on populations of *Tetrahymena geleii*. *Physiol. Zool.*, Vol. 16.
- KHAINSKY, A. 1910 Zur Morphologie und Physiologie einiger Infusorien (*Paramecium caudatum*) auf Grund einer neuen histologischen Methode. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 21.
- KIDDER, G. W., D. M. LILLY and C. L. CLAFF. 1940 Growth studies on ciliates. IV. *Biol. Bull.*, Vol. 78.
- KIRBY, H. Jr., 1934 Some ciliates from salt marshes in California. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 82.
- KOFOID, C. A. and O. SWEZY 1921 The free-living unarmored Dinoflagellata. *Mem. Univ. Calif.*, Vol. 5.
- KRIJGSMAN, B. J. 1925 Beiträge zum Problem der Geisselbewegung. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 52.
- KUDO, R. R. 1921 On the nature of structures characteristic of enidosporidian spores. *Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc.*, Vol. 40.
- LILLY, D. M. 1942 Nutritional and supplementary factors in the growth of carnivorous ciliates. *Physiol. Zool.*, Vol. 15.
- MAST, S. O. 1923 Mechanics of locomotion in amoeba. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.*, Vol. 9.
- 1926 Structure, movement, locomotion, and stimulation in amoeba. *Jour. Morph. Physiol.*, Vol. 41.
- 1931 Locomotion in *Amoeba proteus*. *Protoplasma*, Vol. 14.
- 1938 Digestion of fat in *Amoeba proteus*. *Biol. Bull.*, Vol. 75.
- 1939 The relation between kind of food, growth, and structure in Amoeba. *Ibid.*, Vol. 77.
- 1942 The hydrogen ion concentration of the content of the food vacuoles and the cytoplasm in Amoeba and other phenomena concerning the food vacuoles. *Biol. Bull.*, Vol. 83.
- and W. L. DOYLE 1934 Ingestion of fluid by amoeba. *Ibid.*, Vol. 20.
- ——— 1935 Structure, origin and function of cytoplasmic constituents in *Amoeba proteus* with special reference to mitochondria and Golgi substance. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 86.
- MELDRUM, N. U. 1934 *Cellular respiration*. London.
- METALNIKOFF, S. 1912 Contribution à l'étude de la digestion intracellulaire chez les protozoaires. *Arch. zool. exp. (sér. 5)*, Vol. 9.
- MOUTON, H. 1902 Recherches sur la digestion chez les amibes et sur leur diastase intracellulaire. *Ann. Inst. Pasteur*. Vol. 16.
- NIRENSTEIN, E. 1925 Ueber die Natur und Stärke der Säurebildung in den Nahrungsvakuolen von *Paramecium caudatum*. *Zeitschr. wiss. Zool.*, Vol. 125.
- NOLAND, L. E. 1927 Conjugation in the ciliate *Metopus sigmoides*. *Jour. Morph. Physiol.*, Vol. 44.
- PANTIN, C. F. A. 1923 On the physiology of amoeboid movement I. *Jour. Marine Biol. Assn. Plymouth, N. S.*, Vol. 13.
- PANZER, T. 1913 Beitrag zur Biochemie der Protozoen. *Hoppe-Seylers Zeitschr. phys. Chemie*, Vol. 86.
- POWERS, P. B. A. 1932 *Cyclotrichium meunieri* sp. nov.; cause of red water in the gulf of Maine. *Biol. Bull.*, Vol. 63.

- PRATJE, A. 1921 Makrochemische, quantitative Bestimmung des Fettes und Cholesterins, sowie ihrer Kennzahlen bei *Noctiluca miliaris*. Biol. Zentralbl., Vol. 21.
- PRINGSHEIM, E. G. 1923 Zur Physiologie saprophytischer Flagellaten. Beitr. allg. Bot., Vol. 2.
- PÜTTER, A. 1905 Die Atmung der Protozoen. Zeitschr. allg. Physiol., Vol. 5.
- 1908 Methoden zur Erforschung des Lebens der Protistenk. Tigerstedt's Handb. physiol. Methodik, Vol. 1.
- ROSKIN, G. and L. LEVINSOHN 1926 Die Oxydasen und Peroxydasen bei Protozoen. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 56.
- RHUMBLER, L. 1910 Die verschiedenartigen Nahrungsaufnahmen bei Amöben als Folge verschiedener Colloidalzustände ihrer Oberflächen. Arch. Entw. Organism., Vol. 30.
- SASSUCHIN, D. N. 1935 Zum Studium der Protisten- und Bakterienkerne. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 84.
- SCHAEFFER, A. A. 1920 *Amoeboid movement*. Princeton.
- SCHEWIAKOFF, W. 1894 Ueber die Natur der sogenannten Exkretkörner der Infusorien. Zeitschr. wiss. Zool., Vol. 57.
- SCHOPFER, W. H. (translated by N. L. Noecker). 1943 *Plants and vitamins*. Waltham, Mass.
- SHAPIRO, N. N. 1927 The cycle of hydrogen-ion concentration in the food vacuoles of Paramecium, Vorticella, and Stylonychia. Trans. Amer. Micro. Soc., Vol. 46.
- SOULE, M. H. 1925 Respiration of *Trypanosoma lewisi* and *Leishmania tropica*. Jour. Infec. Dis., Vol. 36.
- STOLC, A. 1900 Beobachtungen und Versuche ueber die Verdauung und Bildung der Kohlenhydrate bei einem amöbenartigen Organismen, *Pelomyxa palustris*. Zeitschr. wiss. Zool. Vol. 68.
- VERWORN, M. 1889 *Psycho-physiologische Protistenstudien*. Jena.
- 1903 *Allgemeine Physiologie*. 4te Aufl. Jena.
- WEATHERBY J. H. 1929 Excretion of nitrogenous substances in Protozoa. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 2.
- WHIPPLE, G. C. 1927 *The microscopy of drinking water*. 4 ed. New York.
- WOODRUFF, L. L. and W. W. SWINGLE 1924 The effects of thyroid and some other endocrine products on Paramecium. Amer. Jour. Physiol., Vol. 69.
- ZUELZER, M. 1907 Ueber den Einfluss des Meerwassers auf die pulsierende Vacuole. Berlin. Sitz.-Ber. Ges. naturf. Freunde.
- ZUMSTEIN, H. 1900 Zur Morphologie und Physiologie der *Euglena gracilis* Klebs. Pringsheims Jahrb. wiss. Botanik, Vol. 34.

CHAPTER 5

Reproduction

THE mode of reproduction in Protozoa is highly variable among different groups, although it is primarily a cell division. The reproduction is initiated by the nuclear division in all cases, which will therefore be considered first.

Nuclear division

Between a simple direct division on the one hand and a complicated indirect division which is comparable with the typical metazoan mitosis on the other hand, all types of nuclear division occur.

Direct nuclear division. Although not so widely found as it was thought to be in former years, amitosis occurs normally and regularly in many forms. While the micronuclear division of the Ciliophora is mitotic (p. 137), the macronuclear division is invariably amitosis. The sole exception to this general statement appears to be the so-called promitosis reported by Ivanic (1938) in the macronucleus in the "Vermehrungsruhe" stage of *Chilodenella uncinata* in which chromosomes and spindle-fibers were observed. In *Paramecium caudatum* (Fig. 50), the micronucleus initiates the division by mitosis and the macronucleus elongates itself without any visible changes in its internal structure. The elongated nucleus becomes constricted through the middle and two daughter nuclei are produced.

It is assumed that the nuclear components undergo solation during division, since the formed particles of nucleus which are stationary in the resting stage, manifest a very active Brownian movement as was observed *in vivo* in *Endamoeba blattae* (Fig. 51). Furthermore, in some cases the nuclear components may undergo phase reversal, that is to say, the chromatin granules which are dispersed phase in the non-staining fluid dispersion medium in the resting nucleus, become dispersion medium in which the latter is suspended as dispersed phase. By using Feulgen's nucleal reaction, Reichenow (1928) demonstrated this reversal phenomenon in the division of the macronucleus of *Chilodonella cucullulus* (Fig. 52).

The macronucleus becomes at the time of its division somewhat enlarged and its chromatin granules are more deeply stained than before. But chromosomes which characterize the mitotic division are entirely absent, although in a few forms in which mating types

occur, the type difference and certain other characters, according to Sonneborn and Kimball, appear to be under control of genic constituents of the macronucleus. Since the number of chromatin granules appear approximately the same in the macronuclei of different generations of a given species, the reduced number of chromatin gran-

FIG. 50. Nuclear and cytosomic division of *Paramecium caudatum* as seen in stained smears, $\times 260$ (Kudo).

ules must be restored sometime before the next division takes place. Calkins (1926) is of the opinion that "each granule elongates and divides into two parts, thus doubling the number of chromomeres." Reichenow (1928) found that in *Chilodonella cucullulus* the lightly Feulgen positive endosome appeared to form chromatin granules and Kudo (1936) maintained that the large chromatin spherules of

FIG. 51. Division of *Endamoeba blattae* as seen in life, $\times 250$ (Kudo).
The entire process took one hour and seven minutes.

FIG. 52. The solation of chromatin during the macronuclear division of *Chilodonella cucullulus*, as demonstrated by Feulgen's nuclear reaction, $\times 1800$ (Reichenow).

the macronucleus of *Nyctotherus ovalis* probably produce smaller spherules in their alveoli.

When the macronucleus is elongated as in *Spirostomum*, *Stentor*, *Euplotes*, etc., the nucleus becomes condensed into a rounded form prior to its division. When the macronuclear material is distributed throughout the cytoplasm as numerous grains as in *Dileptus anser* (Fig. 239, c), "each granule divides where it happens to be and with the majority of granules both halves remain in one daughter cell after division" (Calkins). Hayes noticed a similar division, but at the time of simultaneous division prior to cell division, each macronucleus becomes elongated and breaks into several small nuclei.

During the "shortening period" of the elongated macronuclei prior to division, there appear 1-3 characteristic zones which have

FIG. 53. Macronuclear reorganization before division in *Euplotes eurystomus*, $\times 240$ (Turner). a, reorganization band appearing at a tip of the macronucleus; b-d, later stages.

been called by various names, such as nuclear clefts, reconstruction bands, reorganization bands, etc. In *Euplotes patella* (*E. eurystomus*), Turner (1930) observed prior to division of the macronucleus a reorganization band consisting of a faintly staining zone ("reconstruction plane") and a deeply staining zone ("solution plane"), appears at each end of the nucleus (Fig. 53, a) and as each moves toward the center, a more chromatinic area is left behind (b-d). The two bands finally meet in the center and the nucleus assumes an ovoid form. This is followed by a simple division into two. In the T-shaped macronucleus of *E. woodruffi*, according to Pierson (1943), a reorganization band appears first in the right arm and the posterior tip of the stem of the nucleus. When the anterior band reaches the junction of the arm and stem, it splits into two, one part moving along the left arm to its tip, and the other entering and passing down

the stem to join the posterior band. According to Summers (1935) a process similar to that of *E. eurystomus* occurs in *Diophrys appendiculata* and *Stylonychia pustulata*; but in *Aspidisca lynceus* (Fig. 54) a reorganization band appears first near the middle region of the macronucleus (b), divide into two and each moves toward an end, leaving between them a greater chromatinic content of the

FIG. 54. Macronuclear reorganization prior to division in *Aspidisca lynceus*, $\times 1400$ (Summers). a, resting nucleus; b-i, successive stages in reorganization process; j, a daughter macronucleus shortly after division.

reticulum (c-i). Summers suggested that "the reorganization bands are local regions of karyolysis and resynthesis of macronuclear materials with the possibility of an elimination of physically or possibly chemically modified nonstaining substances into the cytoplasm."

The extrusion of a certain portion of the macronuclear material during division has been observed in a number of species. In *Uroleptus halseyi*, Calkins actually noticed each of the eight macronuclei

is "purified" by discarding a reorganization band and an "x-body" into the cytoplasm before fusing into a single macronucleus which then divides into two nuclei. In the more or less rounded macronucleus that is commonly found in many ciliates, no reorganization band has been recognized. A number of observers have however noted that during the nuclear division there appears and persists a small body within the nuclear figure, located at the division plane as in the case of *Loxoecephalus* (Behrend), *Eupoteriorion* (MacLennan and

FIG. 55. Macronuclear division in *Conchophthirus mytili*, $\times 440$ (Kidder).

Connell) and even in the widely different protozoan, *Endamoeba blattae* (Kudo) (Fig. 51). We owe Kidder for a careful comparative study of this body. Kidder (1933) observed that during the division of the macronucleus of *Conchophthirus mytili* (Fig. 55), the nucleus "casts out a part of its chromatin at every vegetative division," which "is broken down and disappears in the cytoplasm of either daughter organism." A similar phenomenon has since been found further in *C. anodontae*, *C. curtus*, *C. magna* (Kidder), *Urocentrum turbo*, *Colpidium colpoda*, *C. campylum*, *Glaucoma scintillans* (Kidder and Diller), and *Allosphaerium convexa* (Kidder and Summers). Kidder and his associates believe that the process is probably

elimination of waste substances of the prolonged cell-division, since chromatin extrusion does not take place during a few divisions subsequent to reorganization after conjugation in *Conchophthirus mytili* and since in *Colpidium* and *Glaucoma*, the chromatin elimination appears to be the cause of high division rate and infrequency of conjugation.

Woodruff and Erdmann (1914) observed that in *Paramecium aurelia* (Fig. 56, a) at regular intervals of about 30 days, the old

FIG. 56. Diagram showing the endomixis in *Paramecium aurelia* (Woodruff). a, normal individual; b, degeneration of macronucleus and first micronuclear division; c, second micronuclear division; d, degeneration of 6 micronuclei; e, cell division; f, g, first and second reconstruction micronuclear divisions; h, transformation of 2 micronuclei into 2 macronuclei; i, micronuclear and cell divisions; j, typical nuclear condition is restored.

macronucleus breaks down and disappears, while each of the two micronuclei divides twice, forming eight nuclei (b, c). Of these, six disintegrate. At this point the organism divides into two, each daughter individual receiving one micronucleus (d, e). This nucleus soon divides twice into four, two of which develop into macronuclei (f-h), and the other two divide again. Here the organisms divide once more by binary fission (i), each bearing one macronucleus and two micronuclei (j). This process which is "a complete periodic nuclear reorganization without cell fusion in a pedigreed race of Parame-

cium" was called by the two authors **endomixis**. In the case of *P. caudatum*, they found endomixis occurs at intervals of about 60 days. Endomixis has since been reported in *Spathidium spathula*, *Euplotes longipes*, *Chilodonella uncinata*, *Didinium nasutum*, *Paramecium multimicronucleatum*, *Urostyla grandis*, *Paraclevelandia simplex*, etc. It appears to be another process of nuclear reorganization.

As has already been stated, two types of nuclei: macronucleus and micronucleus, occur in Euciliata and Suctoria. The macronucleus is the center of the whole metabolic activity of the organism and in the absence of this nucleus, the animal perishes. The waste substances which become accumulated in the macronucleus through its manifold activities, are apparently eliminated at the time of division, as has been cited above in many species. On the other hand, it is also probable that under certain circumstances, the macronucleus becomes impregnated with waste materials which cannot be eliminated through this process. Prior to and during conjugation (p. 154) and autogamy (p. 161), the macronucleus becomes transformed, in many species, into irregularly coiled thread-like structure (Fig. 79) which undergoes segmentation into pieces and finally is absorbed by the cytoplasm. New macronuclei are formed from some of the division-products of micronuclei (synkarya) by probably incorporating the old macronuclear material. In most cases this supposition is not demonstrable. However, Kidder (1938) has shown in the encysted *Paraclevelandia simplex*, an endocommensal of the colon of certain wood-feeding roaches, this is actually the case; namely, one of the divided micronuclei fuses directly with a part of macronucleus (endomixis) to form a macronuclear anlage which then develops into a macronucleus after passing through "ball-of-yarn" stage similar to that which appears in an exconjugant of *Nyctotherus* (Fig. 79).

Since the macronucleus originates in a micronucleus, it must contain all structures which characterize the micronucleus. Why then does it not divide mitotically as does the micronucleus? During conjugation or autogamy in a ciliate, the macronucleus degenerates, disintegrates and finally becomes absorbed in the cytoplasm. In *Paramecium aurelia*, Sonneborn (1940, 1942) observed that in amicronucleate animals or when the micronuclei fail to give rise to macronuclei, many (40 or more) pieces of the disintegrated old macronucleus do not degenerate, but instead regenerate into new macronuclei, which are segregated out to daughter individuals formed at successive divisions, until one such regenerated macronucleus is present in each individual. These macronuclei grow and

behave in the same way as do those which arise from micronuclei. Thus the macronucleus in this ciliate appears to be a compound structure with its 40 or more component parts, each containing all that is needed for development into a complete macronucleus. From these observations, Sonneborn concludes that the macronucleus in *P. aurelia* appears to undergo amitosis, since it is a compound nucleus composed of 40 or more "sub-nuclei" and since at fission all that is necessary to bring about genetically equivalent functional macronuclei is to segregate these multiple subnuclei into two random groups.

FIG. 57. Amitosis of the vegetative nucleus in the trophozoite of *Myxosoma catostomi*, $\times 2250$ (Kudo).

Other examples of amitosis are found in the vegetative nuclei in the trophozoite of Myxosporidia, as for example, *Myxosoma catostomi* (Fig. 57), *Thelohanellus notatus* (Debaisieux), etc., in which the endosome divides first, followed by the nuclear constriction. In *Streblomastix strux*, the compact elongated nucleus was found to undergo a simple division by Kofoid and Swezy.

Indirect nuclear division. The indirect division which occurs in the protozoan nuclei is of manifold types as compared with the mitosis in the metazoan cell, in which, aside from minor variations, the change is of a uniform pattern. Chatton, Alexieff and others, have proposed several terms to designate the various types of indirect nuclear division, but no one of these types is sharply defined. For our purpose, mentioning of examples will suffice.

A veritable mitosis was noted by Dobell in the heliozoan *Oxnerella maritima* (Fig. 58), which possesses an eccentrically situated nucleus containing a large endosome and a central centriole, from which radiate many axopodia (*a*). The first sign of the nuclear division is the slight enlargement, and migration toward the centriole, of the nucleus (*b*). The centriole first divides into two (*c, d*) and the nucleus becomes located between the two centrioles (*e*). Presently spindle fibers are formed and the nuclear membrane disappears (*f, g*). After passing through an equatorial-plate stage, the two groups of 24 chromosomes move toward the opposite poles (*g-i*). As the spindle fibers become indistinct, radiation around the centrioles becomes

conspicuous and the two daughter nuclei are completely reconstructed to assume the resting phase (*j-l*). The mitosis of another heliozoan *Acanthocystis aculeata* is, according to Schaudinn and Stern, very similar to the above. Aside from these two species, the centriole has been reported in many others, such as *Hartmanella*

FIG. 58. Nuclear and cytosomic division in *Oxnerella maritima*, $\times$ about 1000 (Dobell). a, a living individual; b, stained specimen; c-g, prophase; h, metaphase; i, anaphase; j, k, telophase; l, division completed.

(Arndt), Euglypha, Monocystis (Bělař), Aggregata (Dobell; Bělař; Naville), various Hypermastigina (Kofoid; Duboseq, Grassé; Kirby; Cleveland and his associates).

In numerous species the division of the centriole (or blepharoplast) and a connecting strand between them, which has been called **desmose** (centrodesmose or paradesmose), have been observed. Ac-

FIG. 59. Mitosis in *Trichonympha campanula*, $\times 800$ (Kofoid and Swezy). a, resting nucleus; b-g, prophase; h, metaphase; i, j, anaphase; k, telophase; l, a daughter nucleus being reconstructed.

cording to Kofoid and Swezy (1919), in *Trichonympha campanula* (Fig. 59), the prophase begins early, during which 52 chromosomes are formed and become split. The nucleus moves nearer the anterior end where the centriole divides into two, between which develops a

desmose. From the posterior end of each centriole; astral rays extend out and the split chromosomes form loops, pass through "tangled skein" stage, and emerge as 26 chromosomes. In the metaphase, the equatorial plate is made up of V-shaped chromosomes as each of the

FIG. 60. Development of spindle and astral rays during the mitosis in *Barbulanympha*, $\times 930$ (Cleveland). a, interphase centrioles and centrosomes; b, prophase centrioles with astral rays developing from their distal ends through the centrosomes; c, meeting of astral rays from two centrioles; d, astral rays developing into the early central spindle; e, a later stage showing the entire mitotic figure.

split chromosomes are still connected at one end, which finally becomes separate in anaphase, followed by reformation of two daughter nuclei.

As to the origin and development of the achromatic figure, various observations and interpretations have been advanced. Certain *Hypermastigina* possess very large filiform centrioles and a large rounded nucleus. In *Barbulanympha* (Fig. 60), Cleveland (1938a) found that the centrioles vary from 15 to 30 μ in length in the four species of the genus which he studied. They can be seen, according to Cleveland, in life as made up of a dense hyaline protoplasm. When stained, it becomes apparent that the two centrioles are joined at their anterior ends by a **desmose** and their distal ends 20 to 30 μ apart, each of which is surrounded by a special **centrosome** (*a*). In the resting stage no fibers extend from either centriole, but in the prophase, astral rays begin to grow out from the distal end of each centriole (*b*). As the rays grow longer (*c*), the two sets soon meet and the individual rays or fibers join, grow along one another and overlap to form the **central spindle** (*d*). In the resting nucleus, there are large irregular chromatin granules which are connected by fibrils with one another and also with the nuclear membrane. As the achromatic figure is formed and approaches the nucleus, the chromatin becomes arranged in a single spireme imbedded in matrix. The spireme soon divides longitudinally and the double spireme presently breaks up transversely into paired chromosomes. The central spindle begins to compress the nuclear membrane and the chromosomes become shorter and move apart. The intra- and extra-nuclear fibrils unite as the process goes on (*e*), the central spindle now assumes an axial position, and two groups of V-shaped chromosomes are drawn to opposite poles. In the telophase, the chromosomes elongate and become branched, thus assuming conditions seen in the resting nucleus.

In the unique resting nucleus of *Spirotrichonympha polygyra* (Fig. 61), Cleveland (1938) found four chromosomes, each of which contains a distinct coil within a sheath and its one end connected with the anterior margin of the nuclear membrane by an intranuclear chromosomal fiber, and the other end with a deeply staining endosome (*a*). The spindle fibers appear between the separating flagellar bands which come in contact with the nuclear membrane. Soon some of the astral rays become connected with the intranuclear chromosomal fibers and one long and one short chromosomes which become thicker and shorter move toward each pole. During the telophase, each chromosome splits lengthwise and forms the resting nucleus (*g*).

In *Lophomonas blattarum*, the nuclear division (Fig. 62) is initiated by the migration of the nucleus out of the calyx. On the nuclear membrane is attached the centriole which probably originates in the

blepharoplast ring; the centriole divides and the desmose which grows, now stains very deeply, the centrioles becoming more conspicuous in the anaphase when new flagella develop from them. Chromatin granules become larger and form a spireme, from which 6-8 chromosomes are produced. Two groups of chromosomes move toward the opposite poles, and when the division is completed, each centriole becomes the center of formation of all motor organellae.

FIG. 61. Mitosis in *Spirotrichonympha polygyra* (Cleveland). a, resting nucleus with 4 chromosomes; b, c, prophase; d, chromosomes moving apart; e, elongation of nucleus; f, telophase; g, a daughter nucleus in which the chromosomes are splitting. a-e, $\times 3800$; f, g, $\times 2400$.

In some forms, such as *Noctiluca* (Calkins), *Actinophrys* (Bělař), etc., there may appear at each pole, a structureless mass of cytoplasm (centrosphere), but in a very large number of species there appear no special structures at poles and the spindle fibers become stretched seemingly between the two extremities of the elongating

nuclear membrane. Such is the condition found in *Cryptomonas* (Bělař), *Rhizochrysis* (Doflein), *Aulacantha* (Borgert), and in micronuclear division of the majority of Euciliata and Suctorina.

The behavior of the endosome during the mitosis differs among different species as are probably their functions. In *Eimeria schubergi* (Schaudinn), *Euglena viridis* (Tschenzoff), *Oxyrrhis marina* (Hall), *Colacium vesiculosum* (Johnson), *Haplosporidium limnodrili* (Gran-

FIG. 62. Nuclear division in *Lophomonas blattarum*, $\times 1530$ (Kudo). a, resting nucleus; b, c, prophase; d, metaphase; e-h, anaphase; i-k, telophase.

ata), etc., the conspicuously staining endosome divides by elongation and constriction along with other chromatic elements, but in many other cases, it disappears during the early part of division and reappears when the daughter nuclei are reconstructed as observed in *Monocystis*, *Dimorpha*, *Euglypha*, *Pamphagus* (Bělař), *Acanthocystis* (Stern), *Chilomonas* (Doflein), *Dinenympha* (Kirby), etc.

In the vegetative division of the micronucleus of *Conchophthirus anodontae* (Fig. 63), Kidder (1934) found that prior to division the micronucleus moves out of the pocket in the macronucleus and the

chromatin becomes irregularly disposed in a reticulum; swelling continues and the chromatin condenses into a twisted band, a spireme, which breaks into many small segments, each composed of large chromatin granules. With the rapid development of the spindle fibers, the twelve bands become arranged in the equatorial plane and condense. Each chromosome now splits longitudinally and two groups of 12 daughter chromosomes move to opposite poles and

FIG. 63. Mitosis of the micronucleus of *Conchophthirus anodontae*, $\times 2640$ (Kidder). a-c, prophase; d, e, metaphase; f, g, anaphase; h, i, telophase.

transform themselves into two compact daughter nuclei. In *Zelleriella intermedia* (Fig. 64), Chen (1936) saw the formation of 24 chromosomes, each of which is connected with a fiber of the intranuclear spindle and splits lengthwise in the metaphase. While in the majority of protozoan mitosis, the chromosomes split longitudinally, there are observations which suggest a transverse division. As exam-

ples may be mentioned the chromosomal divisions in *Astasia laevis* (Bělař), *Entosiphon sulcatum* (Lackey), and a number of ciliates. In a small number of species observations vary within a species, as, for example, in *Peranema trichophorum* in which the chromosomes were observed to divide transversely (Hartmann and Chagas) as well as longitudinally (Hall and Powell; Brown). It is inconceivable that the division of the chromosome in a single species of organism is haphazard. The apparent transverse division might be explained

FIG. 64. Stages in mitosis in *Zelleriella intermedia*, $\times 1840$ (Chen).
a, early prophase; b, metaphase; c, anaphase; d, telophase.

by assuming, as Hall (1937) showed in *Euglena gracilis*, that the splitting is not completed at once and the pulling force acting upon them soon after division brings forth the long chromosomes still connected at one end. Thus the chromosomes remain together before the anaphase begins.

In the instances considered on the preceding pages, the so-called chromosomes found in them, appear to be essentially similar in structure and behavior to typical metazoan chromosomes. In many other cases, the so-called chromosomes or "pseudochromosomes" are slightly enlarged chromatin granules which differ from the ordinary chromatin granules in their time of appearance and movement only. In these cases it is of course not possible at present to determine how and when their division occurs before separating to the respective division pole. In Table 5 are listed the number of the "chromosomes" which have been reported by various investigators in the Protozoa that are mentioned in the present work:

TABLE 5.—*Chromosomes in Protozoa*

Protozoa	Number of chromosomes	Observers
<i>Rhizochrysis scherffeli</i>	22	Doflein
<i>Haematococcus pluvialis</i>	20-30	Elliott
<i>Polytomella agilis</i>	5	Doflein
<i>Chlamydomonas</i> spp.	10 (haploid)	Pascher
<i>Polytoma uvella</i>	16 (diploid); 8 (haploid)	Moewus
<i>Euglena pisciformis</i>	12-15(?)	Dangeard
<i>E. viridis</i>	30 or more	Dangeard
<i>Phacus pyrum</i>	30-40	Dangeard
<i>Menoidium incurvum</i>	About 12	Hall
<i>Vacuolaria virescens</i>	About 30	Fott
<i>Syndinium turbo</i>	5	Chatton
<i>Anthophysis vegetans</i>	8-10	Dangeard
<i>Cercomonas longicauda</i>	4-5	Dangeard
<i>Collodictyon triciliatum</i>	About 20	Bělař
<i>Chilomastix gallinarum</i>	About 12	Boeck and Tanabe
<i>Eutrichomastix serpentis</i>	5	Kofoid and Swezy
<i>Dinenympha fimbricata</i>	25-30	Kirby
<i>Metadevescovina debilis</i>	About 4	Light
<i>Trichomonas elongatum</i>	3	Hinshaw
<i>Tritrichomonas batrachorum</i>	4 or 8	Kuczynski
	6	Bishop
<i>T. augusta</i>	5	Kofoid and Swezy
	4 or 8	Kuczynski
<i>Hexamita salmonis</i>	5 or 6	Davis
<i>Giardia intestinalis</i>	4	Kofoid and Swezy
<i>G. muris</i>	4	Kofoid and Christiansen
<i>Calonympha grassii</i>	4 or 5	Janicki
<i>Spirotrichonympha polygyra</i>	2 doubles	Cup
	2	Cleveland
<i>Lophomonas blattarum</i>	16 or 8 doubles	Janicki
	8 or 6	Kudo
	12 or 6 doubles	Bělař
<i>L. striata</i>	12 or 6 doubles	Bělař
<i>Barbulanympha laurabuda</i>	40	Cleveland
<i>B. ufalula</i>	50	Cleveland
<i>Rhynchonympha tarda</i>	19	Cleveland
<i>Urinympha talea</i>	14	Cleveland
<i>Staurojoenia assimilis</i>	24	Kirby
<i>Trichonympha campanula</i>	52 or 26 doubles	Kofoid and Swezy
<i>T. grandis</i>	22	Cleveland
<i>Plasmodiophora brassicae</i>	8 (diploid); 4 (haploid)	Terby
<i>Dimastigamoeba bistadialis</i>	16-18	Kühn

TABLE 5.—*Continued*

Protozoa	Number of chromosomes	Observers
<i>Endamoeba disparata</i>	About 12	Kirby
<i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>	6	Kofoed and Swezy; Uribe
<i>E. coli</i>	6	Swezy; Stabler
<i>E. gingivalis</i>	5	Stabler
<i>Dientamoeba fragilis</i>	4	Wenrich
	6	Dobell
<i>Hydramoeba hydroxena</i>	8	Reynolds and Threlkeld
<i>Spirillina vivipara</i>	12 (diploid); 6 (haploid)	Myers
<i>Patellina corrugata</i>	24 (diploid); 12 (haploid)	Myers
<i>Pontigulasia vas</i>	8-12	Stump
<i>Actinophrys sol</i>	44 (diploid); 22 (haploid)	Bělař
<i>Oxnerella maritima</i>	About 24	Dobell
<i>Thalassicolla nucleata</i>	4	Bělař
<i>Aulacantha scolymantha</i>	More than 1600	Borgert
	4 in gamogony	Bělař
<i>Zygosoma globosum</i>	12 (diploid); 6 (haploid)	Noble
<i>Diplocystis schneideri</i>	6 (diploid); 3 (haploid)	Jameson
<i>Gregarina blattarum</i>	6 (diploid); 3 (haploid)	Sprague
<i>Nina gracilis</i>	5 (haploid)	Léger and Duboseq
<i>Actinocephalus parvus</i>	8 (diploid); 4 (haploid)	Weschenfelder
<i>Aggregata eberthi</i>	12 (diploid); 6 (haploid)	Dobell and Jameson; Bělař; Naville
<i>Merocystis kathae</i>	6 (haploid)	Patten
<i>Adelea ovata</i>	8-10 (diploid); 4-5 (haploid)	Greiner
<i>Adelina deronis</i>	20 (diploid); 10 (haploid)	Hauschka
<i>Orcheobius herpobdellae</i>	10-12	Kunze
<i>Chloromyxum leydigi</i>	4 (diploid); 2 haploid	Naville
<i>Sphaerospora polymorpha</i>	4 (diploid); 2 (haploid)	Kudo
<i>Myxidium lieberkuhni</i>	4	Bremer
<i>M. serotinum</i>	4 (diploid); 2 (haploid)	Kudo
<i>Sphaeromyxa sabrazesi</i>	6	Debaisieux; Bělař
	4	Naville
<i>S. balbianii</i>	4	Naville

TABLE 5.—*Continued*

Protozoa	Number of chromosomes	Observers
<i>Myxobolus pfeifferi</i>	4	Keysselitz; Mercier; Georgevitch
<i>Protoopalina intestinalis</i>	8 (diploid); 4 (haploid)	Metcalf
<i>Zelleriella antilliensis</i>	2(?)	Metcalf
<i>Z. intermedia</i>	24	Chen
<i>Didinium nasutum</i>	16 (diploid); 8 (haploid)	Prandtl
<i>Chilodonella uncinata</i>	4 (diploid); 2 (haploid)	Enrique; MacDougall
<i>C. uncinata</i> (tetraploid)	8; 4	MacDougall
<i>Conchophthirus anodontae</i>	12 (diploid)	Kidder
<i>C. mytili</i>	16 (diploid); 8 (haploid)	Kidder
<i>Ancistruma isseli</i>	About 5 (haploid)	Kidder
<i>Paramecium aurelia</i>	30–40	Diller
<i>Stentor coeruleus</i>	28 (diploid); 14 (haploid)	Mulsow
<i>Oxytricha fallax</i>	24 (diploid); 12 (haploid)	Gregory
<i>Uroleptus halseyi</i>	24 (diploid); 12 (haploid)	Calkins
<i>Pleurotricha lanceolata</i>	About 40 (dipl.); 20 (haploid)	Manwell
<i>Stylonychia pustulata</i>	6	Prowazek
<i>Euplotes patella</i>	6 (diploid) 8 (diploid); 4 (haploid)	Yocom; Ivanic Turner
<i>Carchesium polypinum</i>	16 (diploid); 8 (haploid)	Popoff
<i>Trichodina</i> sp.	4–6	Diller

In many other Protozoa, the division figure, especially the achromatic figure, suggests strongly a mitosis, but the chromatin substance which makes up the equatorial plate can hardly be called chromosomes. A typical example of this type is found in the nuclear division of *Amoeba proteus* (Fig. 65). According to Chalkley and Daniel (1933), the conspicuous granules present, in the resting nucleus, under the membrane contain very little chromatin, while abundant chromatin is lodged in the central area. The peripheral granules appear to give rise to achromatic figure. At the beginning of division, the chromatin granules become aggregated in a zone (b); they then assume a ring-form along the periphery of the central mass

of network (*c*); at this stage, the cytoplasm around the nucleus is much vacuolated. A little later appears a discoid equatorial plate or ring which is connected with the nuclear membrane by numerous fibrils, and the nucleus becomes markedly flattened with its membrane still intact (*d*), which is considered as the end of the prophase. In the metaphase, the nuclear membrane becomes extremely faint and the portion over one side of the plate is without it (*e*). At the

FIG. 65. Nuclear division in *Amoeba proteus*, $\times 180$ (Chalkley and Daniel). a, resting stage; b-d, prophase; e, metaphase; f, g, anaphase; h, a daughter nucleus.

anaphase the membrane completely disappears, the equatorial plate splits and each half contracts in the plane of the plate, producing two daughter-plates. In some specimens a faint spindle formation is noted. At about this time, vacuolated condition of the perinuclear cytoplasm disappears (*f*). In later phases of anaphase the plates are more widely separated and are slightly less in diameter as compared with earlier stages. There are distinct polar caps of fibrillar material at the poles of the spindle (*g*), finally each plate transforms itself into a resting nucleus (*h*). The two investigators added that if the chromatin granules located in the equatorial plate are chromosomes, "they must be extremely numerous." Liesche (1938) estimates the number of these granules which he called chromosomes as between 500 and 600.

Cytosomic division

Binary fission. As in metazoan cells, the binary fission occurs very widely among the Protozoa. It is a division of the body through middle of the extended long axis into two nearly equal daughter individuals (Fig. 51). In *Amoeba proteus*, Chalkley and Daniel found that there is a definite correlation between the stages of nuclear division and external morphological changes (Fig. 66). During the pro-

FIG. 66. External morphological changes during division of *Amoeba proteus*, as viewed in life in reflected light, $\times$ about 20 (Chalkley and Daniel). a, shortly before the formation of the division sphere; b, a later stage; c, prior to elongation; d, further elongation; e, division almost completed.

phase, the organism is rounded, studded with fine pseudopodia and exhibits under reflected light a clearly defined hyaline area near its center (a), which disappears in the metaphase (b, c). During the anaphase the pseudopodia rapidly become coarser; in the telophase the elongation of body, cleft formation, and return to normal pseudopodia, take place.

In Testacea, one of the daughter individuals remains, as a rule, within the old test, while the other moves into a newly formed one, as in *Arcella*, *Pyxidicula*, *Euglypha*, etc. According to Doflein, the division plane coincides with the axis of body in *Cochliopodium*, *Pseudodiffugia*, etc., and the delicate homogeneous test also divides

into two parts. In the majority of the Mastigophora, the division is longitudinal, as is shown by that of *Menoidium incurvum* (Fig. 67). In certain dinoflagellates, such as *Ceratium*, *Cochliodinium*, etc., the division plane is oblique, while in forms such as *Oxyrrhis* (Dunklerly; Hall), the fission is transverse. In *Streblomastix strix* (Kofoid and Swezy), *Lophomonas striata* (Kudo), *Spirotrichonympha bispira*

FIG. 67. Nuclear and cytosomic division in *Menoidium incurvum*, $\times$ about 1400 (Hall). a, resting stage; b, c, prophase; d, equatorial plate; e, f, anaphase; g, telophase.

(Cleveland), etc., the division takes place transversely but the polarity of the posterior individual is reversed so that the posterior end of the parent organism becomes the anterior end of the posterior daughter individual. In the ciliate *Bursaria*, Lund (1917), observed reversal of polarity in one of the daughter organisms at the time of division of normal individuals and also in those which regenerated after being cut into one-half the normal size.

In the Ciliophora the division is as a rule transverse (Fig. 50), in which the cytosome without any enlargement or elongation divides by constriction through the middle so that the two daughter individuals are about half as large at the end of division. Both individuals usually retain their polarity.

Multiple division. In multiple division the body divides into a number of daughter individuals, with or without residual cyto-

plasmic masses of the parent body. In this process the nucleus may undergo either simultaneous multiple division, as in *Aggregata*, or more commonly, repeated binary fission, as in *Plasmodium* (Fig. 225) to produce large numbers of nuclei, each of which becomes the center of a new individual. The number of daughter individuals often varies, not only among the different species, but also within one and the same species. Multiple division occurs commonly in the Foraminifera (Fig. 184); the Radiolaria (Fig. 194), and various groups of Sporozoa in which the trophozoite multiplies abundantly by this method.

Budding. Multiplication by budding which occurs in the Protozoa is the formation of one or more smaller individuals from the parent organism. It is either exogenous or endogenous, depending upon the location of the developing buds or gemmules. Exogenous budding has been reported in *Acanthocystis*, *Noctiluca* (Fig. 107), *Myxosporidia* (Fig. 68, *b*), astomatous ciliates (Fig. 266), *Chonotricha*, *Suctorina* (Fig. 331, *k*), etc. Endogenous budding has been found in *Testacea*, *Gregarinida*, *Myxosporidia* (Figs. 247, *e*; 249, *j*), and other Sporozoa as well as *Suctorina* (Fig. 331, *h*). Collin observed a unique budding in *Tokophrya cyclopum* in which the entire body, excepting the stalk and pellicle, transforms itself into a young ciliated bud which leaves sooner or later the parent pellicle as a swarmer.

Plasmotomy. Occasionally the multinucleate body of a protozoan divides into two or more small, multinucleate individuals, the cytosomic division taking place independently of nuclear division. This has been called plasmotomy by Doflein. It has been observed in the trophozoites of several coelozoic myxosporidians, such as *Chloromyxum leydigi* (Fig. 68), *Sphaeromyxa balbianii* (Fig. 68), etc. It occurs further in Mycetozoa (Fig. 156), Protociliata and certain Sarcodina (*Pelomyxa*).

Colony formation

When the division is repeated without a complete separation of the daughter individuals, a colonial form is produced. The component individuals of a colony may either have protoplasmic connections among them or be grouped within a gelatinous envelope if completely separated. Or, in the case of loricate or stalked forms, these exoskeletal structures may become attached to one another. Although varied in appearance, the arrangement and relationship of the component individuals are constant, and this makes the basis for distinguishing the types of protozoan colonies, as follows:

Catenoid or linear colony. The daughter individuals are attached endwise, forming a chain of several individuals. It is of comparatively rare occurrence. Examples: Astomatous ciliates such as *Radiophrya* (Fig. 266), *Protoradiophrya* (Fig. 266) and dinoflagellates such as *Ceratium*, *Haplozoon* (Fig. 109) and *Polykrikos* (Fig. 110).

Arboroid or dendritic colony. The individuals remain connected with one another in a tree-form. The attachment may be by means

FIG. 68. a, b, budding in *Myxidium lieberkuhni*; c, d, plasmotomy in *Chloromyxum leydigi*; e, plasmotomy in *Sphaeromyxa balbianii*.

of the lorica, stalk, or gelatinous secretions. It is a very common colony found in different groups. Examples: *Dinobryon* (Fig. 92), *Hyalobryon* (Fig. 92), etc. (connection by lorica); *Colacium* (Fig. 102), many *Peritricha* (Figs. 322; 324), etc. (by stalk); *Poteriodendron* (Fig. 116), *Stylobryon* (Fig. 130), etc. (by lorica and stalk); *Hydrurus* (Fig. 93), *Spongomonas* (Fig. 129), *Cladomonas* (Fig. 129) and *Anthophys* (Fig. 130) (by gelatinous secretions).

Discoïd colony. A small number of individuals are arranged in a single plane and grouped together by a gelatinous substance. Exam-

ples: *Cyclonexis* (Fig. 92), *Gonium* (Fig. 99), *Platydorina* (Fig. 100), *Protospongia* (Fig. 114), *Bicosoeca* (Fig. 116), etc.

Spheroid colony. The individuals are grouped in a spherical form. Usually enveloped by a distinct gelatinous mass, the component individuals may possess protoplasmic connections among them. Examples: *Uroglena* (Fig. 92, *c*), *Uroglenopsis* (Fig. 92, *d*), *Volvox* (Fig. 99), *Pandorina* (Fig. 100, *f*), *Eudorina* (Fig. 100, *h*), etc. Such forms as *Stephanoon* (Fig. 100, *a*) appear to be intermediate between this and the discoid type. The component cells of some spheroid colonies show a distinct differentiation into somatic and reproductive individuals, the latter developing from certain somatic cells during the course of development.

The **gregaloid** colony, which is sometimes spoken of, is a loose group of individuals of one species, usually of Sarcodina, which become attached to one another by means of pseudopodia in an irregular form.

Asexual reproduction

The Protozoa nourish themselves by certain methods, grow and multiply, by the methods described in the preceding pages. This phase of the life-cycle of a protozoan is the vegetative stage or the **trophozoite**. The trophozoite repeats its asexual reproduction process under favorable circumstances. Generally speaking, the Sporozoa increase to a much greater number by schizogony and the trophozoites are called **schizonts**.

Under certain conditions, the trophozoite undergoes **encystment** (Fig. 69). Prior to encystment, the trophozoites cease to ingest, and extrude remains of, food particles, resulting in somewhat smaller forms which are usually rounded and inactive. This phase is sometimes called the precystic stage. The whole organism becomes de-differentiated; namely, various cell organs such as cilia, cirri, flagella, axostyle, peristome, etc., become absorbed. Finally the organism secretes substances which become solidified into a resistant wall, and thus the **cyst** is formed. In this condition, the protozoan is apparently able to maintain its vitality for a certain length of time under unfavorable conditions. The causes of encystment are still the matter which many investigators are attempting to comprehend. It appears certain at least in some cases that the encystment is brought about by changes in temperature, chemical composition, amount of water, food material, and catabolic waste substances, etc., in the medium in which the organisms live. In some cases, the organisms encyst temporarily in order to undergo nuclear reorgani-

zation and multiplication as in *Colpoda cucullus* (Kidder and Claff, 1938). Because of the latter condition and also of the failure in attempting to cause certain Protozoa to encyst under experimental conditions, some suppose that certain internal factors play as great

FIG. 69. Encystment of *Lophomonas blattarum*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo).

a part as do the external conditions in the phenomenon of encystment. Ordinarily a single cyst wall seems to be sufficient to protect the protoplasm against unfavorable external conditions. In some cases there may be a double cyst wall, the inner one usually being more delicate. The cyst wall is generally composed of homogeneous substances, but it may contain calcareous scales as in *Euglypha* (Fig. 70). While chitin is the common material of which the cyst wall

FIG. 70. Encystment of *Euglypha acanthophora*, $\times 320$ (Kühn).

is composed, cellulose makes up the cyst membrane of numerous *Phytomastigina*.

The capacity of Protozoa to produce cyst is probably one of the reasons why they are so widely distributed over the surface of the globe. The minute protozoan cysts are easily carried from place to

place by wind, attached to soil particles, debris, etc., by the flowing water of rivers or the current in oceans or by insects, birds, other animals to which they become readily attached. When a cyst encounters a proper environment, a redifferentiation process takes place within the cyst. Various organellae which characterize the organism, are regenerated and reformed, and the trophozoite excysts. The emerged organism once more returns to its trophic phase of

FIG. 71. Diagram illustrating the life-cycle of *Thelohania legeri* (Kudo). a, extrusion of the polar filament in gut of anopheline larva; b, emerged amoebula; c-f, schizogony in fat body; g-m, sporont-formation; m-x, stages in spore-formation.

existence. Although encystment is a general occurrence among Protozoa, there are some species in which this phenomenon has never been observed. *Paramecium* belongs to this group (p. 600).

In Sporozoa, no encystment occurs. Here at the end of active schizogony, sexual reproduction usually initiates the production of large numbers of the **spores** (Fig. 71).

Sexual reproduction and life-cycles

Besides reproducing by the asexual method, numerous Protozoa reproduce themselves in a manner comparable with the sexual re-

production which occurs universally in the Metazoa. Various types of sexual reproduction have been reported in literature, of which a few will be considered here. The sexual fusion or **syngamy** which is a complete union of two gametes, has been reported from various groups, while the conjugation which is a temporary union of two individuals for the purpose of exchanging the nuclear material, is found almost exclusively in the Ciliophora.

Sexual fusion. The gametes which develop from trophozoites, may be morphologically alike (**isogametes**) or unlike (**anisogametes**), both of which are, in well-studied forms, physiologically different as judged by their behavior toward each other. If a gamete does not meet with another one, it perishes. Anisogametes are called **microgametes** and **macrogametes**. Difference between them is comparable in many instances (Figs. 74; 76; 225) with that which exists between

FIG. 72. a, macrogamete, and b, microgamete of *Volvox aureus*, $\times 1000$ (Klein).

the spermatozoa and ova of Metazoa. The microgametes are motile, relatively small and usually numerous, while the macrogametes are usually not motile, much more voluminous and fewer in number. Therefore, they have sometimes been referred to as male and female gametes (Fig. 72).

While morphological differences between the gametes have long been known and studied by many workers, whatever information we possess on physiological differences between them is of recent origin. Since 1933, Moewus and his co-workers have published a series of papers based upon their extended studies of bacteria-free cultures of many species (and strains) of *Chlamydomonas* (p. 217) which throw some light on the gamete differentiation among these phytomonadinans. The gametes in *Chlamydomonas* are mostly isogamous, except in a few forms. Sexual fusion takes place in the majority of species and strains between the gametes produced in different clones, and there is no gametic fusion within a single clone. Moewus obtained "sex substances" from some of the cultures and showed that these are chemotactic substances. Each gamete secretes substances that attract the other and each reacts to the substances

secreted by the other. Kuhn, Moewus and Wendt (1939) recognized "hormones," and named them, termones (sex-determining hormones), androtermone (male-determining hormone) and gynotermone (female-determining hormone).

In a few strains or species of *Chlamydomonas*, sexual fusion is found to take place among the gametes that develop within a single clone. Moewus considers in these cases there exist two types of gametes in a clone. However, Pascher, Pringsheim, and others obtained results which seem to indicate that there is no physiological or sex differentiation between the fusing gametes. In the much-studied Sporozoa, for example, *Plasmodium*, the two gametes are both morphologically and physiologically differentiated, and sexual fusion always takes place between two anisogametes.

FIG. 73. Sexual fusion in *Copromonas subtilis*, $\times 1300$ (Dobell).

The isogamy is typically represented by the flagellate *Copromonas subtilis* (Fig. 73), in which there occurs, according to Dobell, a complete nuclear and cytoplasmic fusion between two isogametes. Each nucleus, after casting off a portion of its nuclear material, fuses with the other, thus forming a zygote containing a **synkaryon**. In *Stephanosphaera pluvialis* (Fig. 74), both asexual and sexual reproductions occur, according to Hieronymus. Each individual multiplies and develops into numerous biflagellate gametes, all of which are alike. Isogamy between two gametes results in formation of numerous zygotes which later develop into trophozoites.

Anisogamy has been observed in certain Foraminifera. It perhaps occurs in the Radiolaria also, although positive evidence has yet to be presented. Anisogamy seems to be more widely distributed. In *Pandorina morum* (Fig. 75), Pringsheim observed that each cell develops asexually into a young colony (a, b) or into anisogametes (c) which undergo sexual fusion (d-g) and encyst (h). The organism emerged from the cyst, develops into a young trophozoite (i-m). A similar life-cycle was found by Goebel in *Eudorina elegans* (Fig. 76).

Among the Sporozoa, anisogamy is of common occurrence. In Coccidia, the process was well studied in *Eimeria schubergi* (Fig. 215), *Aggregata eberthi* (Fig. 217), *Adelea ovata* (Fig. 222), etc., and the resulting products are the **oocysts** (zygotes) in which the spores

FIG. 74. The life-cycle of *Stephanosphaera pluvialis* (Hieronymus).
a-e, asexual reproduction; f-m, sexual reproduction.

or sporozoites develop. Similarly in Haemosporidia such as *Plasmodium vivax* (Fig. 225), anisogamy results in the formation of the **ookinetes** or motile zygotes which give rise to a large number of sporozoites. Among Myxosporidia, a complete information as to how the initiation of sporogony is associated with sexual reproduc-

FIG. 75. The life-cycle of *Pandorina morum*, $\times 400$ (Pringsheim).
a, b, asexual reproduction; c-m, sexual reproduction.

FIG. 76. The life-cycle of *Eudorina elegans* (Goebel). a, asexual reproduction; b, sexual reproduction, a female colony with clustered and isolated microgametes.

tion, is still lacking. Naville, however, states that in the trophozoite of *Sphaeromyxa sabrazesi* (Fig. 245), micro- and macro-gametes develop, each with a haploid nucleus. Anisogamy, however, is peculiar in that the two nuclei remain independent. The microgametic nucleus divides once and the two nuclei remain as the vegetative nuclei of the pansporoblast, while the macrogamete nucleus multiplies repeatedly and develop into two spores. Anisogamy has been suggested to occur in some members of Amoebina, particularly in *Endamoeba blattae*. Mercier (1909) believed that in this amoeba there occurs anisogamy soon after excystment in the host's intestine, but this still awaits confirmation. Cultural studies of various parasitic amoebae in recent years show no evidence of sexual reproduction. Among the Ciliophora, the sexual fusion occurs only in Protociliata (Fig. 263).

Conjugation. The conjugation is a temporary union of two individuals of one and the same species for the purpose of exchanging part of the nuclear material and occurs almost exclusively in the Euciliata and Suctoria. The two individuals which participate in this process may be either isogamous or anisogamous. In *Paramecium caudatum* (Fig. 77), two similar individuals come in contact on their oral surface (*a*). The micronucleus in each conjugant divides twice (*b-e*), forming four micronuclei, three of which degenerate and do not take active part during further changes (*f-h*). The remaining micronucleus divides once more, producing a wandering pronucleus and a stationary pronucleus (*f, g*). The wandering pronucleus in each of the conjugants enters the other individual and fuses with its stationary pronucleus (*h, r*). The two conjugants now separate from each other and become exconjugants. In each exconjugant, the synkaryon divides three times in succession (*i-m*) and produces eight nuclei (*n*), four of which remain as micronuclei, while the other four develop into new macronuclei (*o*). Cytosomic fision follows then, producing first, two individuals with four nuclei (*p*) and then, four small individuals, each containing a micronucleus and a macronucleus (*a*). According to Jennings, however, of the four smaller nuclei formed in the exconjugant indicated in Fig. 77, *o*, only one remains active, and the other three degenerate. This active nucleus divides prior to the cytosomic division so that in the next stage (*p*), there are two developing macronuclei and one micronucleus which divides once more before the second and last cytosomic division (*q*). During these changes the original macronucleus disintegrates, degenerates, and finally becomes absorbed in the cytoplasm.

In 1937, Sonneborn discovered that in certain races of *P. aurelia*,

FIG. 77. Diagram illustrating the conjugation of *Paramecium caudatum*. a-q, $\times$ about 130 (Calkins); r, a synkaryon, $\times$ 1200 (Dehorne).

there are two classes of individuals with respect to "sexual" differentiation and that the members of different classes conjugate with each other, while the members of each class do not. These classes

were called the **mating types**. Soon a similar phenomenon has been reported by several workers in five other species of the genus; namely, *P. bursaria*, *P. caudatum*, *P. trichium*, *P. calkinsi*, and *P. multimicronucleatum*. When organisms which belong to different mating types are brought together, they adhere to one another in large clumps ("agglutination") of numerous individuals (Fig. 78, b).

FIG. 78. Mating behavior of *Paramecium bursaria* (Jennings). a, individuals of a single mating type; b, 6 minutes after individuals of two mating types have been mixed; c, after about 5 hours, the large masses have been broken down into small masses; d, after 24 hours, paired conjugants.

After a few to several hours, the large masses break down into small masses (Fig. 78, c) and still later, conjugants appear in pairs (Fig. 78, d). The only other ciliate in which mating types are definitely known to occur is *Euplotes patella* in which, according to Kimball (1939), there occurs no agglutination mating reaction.

How widely mating types occur is not known at present. But as

was pointed out by Jennings, the mating types may be of general occurrence among ciliates; for example, Maupas (1889) observed that in *Lionotus* (*Loxophyllum*) *fasciola*, *Leucophrys patula*, *Stylonychia pustulata*, and *Onychodromus grandis*, conjugation took place between the members of two clones of different origin, and not among the members of a single clone. Precise information on the occurrence among different ciliates depends on future research.

In *Paramecium aurelia*, Sonneborn distinguishes seven varieties which possess the same morphological characteristics. There occurs no conjugation between the clones of different varieties. Within each of the six varieties, there are two mating types, while there is only one type in the seventh variety. Animals belonging to the same variety, but to different mating types only conjugate when put together (Table 6). In *P. bursaria*, Jennings (1938, 1939) finds three varieties, but each of two varieties contains four mating types and in the third variety eight mating types occur (Table 6). In *Euplotes patella*, Kimball (1939) observed six mating types (Table 6). These mating types cannot be considered as the true sex types, since the conjugants mutually fertilize each other.

Recent studies of mating types have revealed much information regarding conjugation. Conjugation usually does not occur in well-fed or extremely starved animals, and appears to take place shortly after the depletion of food. Temperature also plays a rôle in conjugation, as it takes place within a certain range of temperature which varies even in a single species among different varieties (Sonneborn). Light seems to have different effects on conjugation in different varieties of *P. aurelia*. The time between two conjugations also varies in different species and varieties. In *P. bursaria*, Jennings found that in some races the second conjugation would not take place for many months after the first, while in others such an "immature" period may be only a few weeks. In *P. aurelia*, in some varieties there is no "immature" period, while in others there is 6 to 10 days' "immaturity."

Very little is known about the physiological state of conjugants as compared with vegetative individuals. Several investigators observed that animals which participate in conjugation show much viscous body surface. Boell and Woodruff (1941) found that the mating individuals of *Paramecium calkinsi* show a lower respiratory rate than not-mating individuals. Neither is the mechanism of conjugation understood at present. Kimball (1942) discovered in *Euplotes patella*, the fluid taken from cultures of animals of one type induces conjugation among the animals of other types. Pre-

TABLE 6.—Continued

Paramecium bursaria (Jennings)

Variety		1				2								3			
	Type	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
1	A	—	+	+	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	B	+	—	+	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	C	+	+	—	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	D	+	+	+	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2	E	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	—	—	—	—
	F	—	—	—	—	+	—	+	+	+	+	+	+	—	—	—	—
	G	—	—	—	—	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	—	—	—
	H	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	+	—	—	—	—
	J	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	+	—	—	—	—
	K	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	—	+	+	—	—	—	—
	L	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	—	—	—	—
	M	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	—	—	—	—	—
3	N	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+
	O	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	—	+	+
	P	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	—	+
	Q	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	+	+	+	—

Euplotes patella (Kimball)

Type	I	II	III	IV	V	VI
I	—	+	+	+	+	+
II	+	—	+	+	+	+
III	+	+	—	+	+	+
IV	+	+	+	—	+	+
V	+	+	+	+	—	+
VI	+	+	+	+	+	—

than one micronucleus may divide for the third time to produce several pronuclei, for example, two in *Euplotes patella*, *Stylonychia pustulata*; two to three in *Oxytricha fallax* and two to four in *Uroleptus mobilis*. This third division is always characterized by long extended nuclear membrane stretched between the division products.

Ordinarily the individuals which undergo conjugation appear to be morphologically similar to those that are engaged in the trophic activity, but in some species, the organism divides just prior to conjugation. According to Wichterman (1936), conjugation in

Nyctotherus cordiformis (Fig. 79) takes place only among those which live in the tadpoles undergoing metamorphosis (f-j). The conjugants are said to be much smaller than the ordinary tropho-

FIG. 79. The life-cycle of *Nyctotherus cordiformis* in *Hyla versicolor* (Wichterman). a, a cyst; b, excystment in tadpole; c, d, division is repeated until host metamorphoses; e, smaller pre-conjugant; f-j, conjugation; k, exconjugant; l, amphinucleus divides into 2 nuclei, one micro-nucleus and the other passes through the "spireme ball" stage before developing into a macronucleus; k-n, exconjugants found nearly exclusively in recently transformed host; o, mature trophozoite; p-s, binary fission stages; t, precystic stage.

zoites, because of the preconjugation fission (*d-e*). The micronuclear divisions are similar to those that have been described for *Paramecium caudatum* and finally two pronuclei are formed in each conjugant. Exchange and fusion of pronuclei follow. In each exconjugant, the synkaryon divides once to form the micronucleus and the macronuclear anlage (*k-l*) which develops into the "spireme ball" and finally into the macronucleus (*m-o*).

A sexual process which is somewhat intermediate between the sexual fusion and conjugation, is noted in several instances. According to Maupas' classical work on *Vorticella nebulifera*, the ordinary vegetative form divides twice, forming four small individuals, which become detached from one another and swim about independently. Presently each becomes attached to one side of a stalked individual. In it, the micronucleus divides three times and produces eight nuclei, of which seven degenerate; and the remaining nucleus divides once more. In the stalked form the micronucleus divides twice, forming four nuclei, of which three degenerate, and the other dividing into two. During these changes the cytoplasm of the two conjugants fuse completely. The wandering nucleus of the smaller conjugant unites with the stationary nucleus of the larger conjugant, the other two pronuclei degenerating. The synkaryon divides several times to form a number of nuclei, from some of which macronuclei are differentiated and exconjugant undergoes multiplication.

Another example of this type has been observed in *Metopus es* (Fig. 80). According to Noland (1927), the conjugants fuse along the anterior end (*a*), and the micronucleus in each individual divides in the same way as was observed in *Paramecium caudatum* (*b-e*). But the cytoplasm and both pronuclei of one conjugant pass into the other (*f*), leaving the degenerating macronucleus and a small amount of cytoplasm behind in the shrunken pellicle of the smaller conjugant which then separates from the other (*j*). In the larger exconjugant, two pronuclei fuse, and the other two degenerate and disappear (*g, h*). The synkaryon divides into two nuclei, one of which condenses into the micronucleus and the other grows into the macronucleus (*i, k-m*). This is followed by the loss of cilia and encystment.

Automixis. In certain Protozoa, the fusion occurs between two nuclei which originate in a single nucleus of an individual. This process has been called automixis by Hartmann, in contrast to the amphimixis (Weismann) which is the complete fusion of two nuclei originating in two individuals, as was discussed in the preceding pages. If the two nuclei which undergo a complete fusion are present in a single cell, the process is called **autogamy**, but, if they are in two

different cells, then **paedogamy**. The autogamy is of common occurrence in the myxosporidian spores. The young sporoplasm contains two nuclei which fuse together prior to or during the process of germination in the alimentary canal of a specific host fish, as for example in *Sphaeromyxa sabrazesi* (Figs. 244; 245) and *Myxosoma cato-stomi* (Fig. 243). In the Microsporidia, autogamy appears to initiate the spore-formation at the end of schizogonic activity of individuals as in *Thelohania legeri* (Fig. 71).

FIG. 80. Conjugation of *Metopus es* (Noland). a, early stage; b, first micronuclear division; c, d, second micronuclear division; e, third micronuclear division; f, migration of pronuclei from one conjugant into the other; g, large conjugant with two pronuclei ready to fuse; h, large conjugant with the synkaryon, degenerating pronuclei and macronucleus; i, large exconjugant with newly formed micronucleus and macronucleus; j, small exconjugant with degenerating macronucleus; k-m, development of two nuclei. a, $\times 290$; b-j, $\times 250$, k-m, $\times 590$.

Diller (1936) observed in solitary *Paramecium aurelia* (Fig. 81), certain micronuclear changes similar to those which occur in conjugating individuals. The two micronuclei divide twice, forming eight nuclei (*a-d*), some of which divide for the third time (*e*), producing two functional and several degenerating nuclei (*f*). The two functional nuclei then fuse in the "paroral cone" and form the

FIG. 81. Diagram illustrating autogamy in *Paramecium aurelia* (Diller). a, normal animal; b, first micronuclear division; c, second micronuclear division; d, individual with 8 micronuclei and macronucleus preparing for skein formation; e, two micronuclei dividing for the third time; f, two gamete-nuclei formed by the third division in the paroral cone; g, fusion of the nuclei, producing synkaryon; h, i, first and second division of synkaryon; j, with 4 nuclei, 2 becoming macronuclei and the other 2 remaining as micronuclei; k, macronuclei developing, micronuclei dividing; l, one of the daughter individuals produced by fission.

synkaryon (*g, h*) which divides twice into four (*i, j*). The original macronucleus undergoes fragmentation and becomes absorbed in the cytoplasm. Of the four micronuclei, two transform into the new macronuclei and two remain as micronuclei (*k*) each dividing into two after the body divided into two (*l*).

Another sexual process appears to have been observed by Diller (1934) in conjugating *Paramecium trichium* in which there was no nuclear exchange between the two conjugants. Wichterman (1939, 1940) observed a similar process in *P. caudatum* and named it **cytogamy**. Two small (about 200μ long) individuals of *P. caudatum*

fuse on their oral surfaces. There occur three micronuclear divisions as in the case of conjugation, but there is no nuclear exchange between the members of the pair. The two gametic nuclei in each individual are said to fuse and form a synkaryon as in autogamy.

The paedogamy occurs in at least two species of Myxosporidia, namely, *Leptotheca ohlmacheri* (Fig. 247) and *Unicapsula muscularis* (Fig. 248). The spores of these myxosporidians contain two uninucleate sporoplasms which are independent at first, but prior to emergence from the spore, they undergo a complete fusion to meta-

FIG. 82. Paedogamy in *Actinophrys sol*, $\times 460$ (Bělař). a, withdrawal of axopodia; b, c, division into two uninucleate bodies, surrounded by a common gelatinous envelope; d-f, the first reduction division; g-i, the second reduction division; j-l, synkaryon formation.

morphose into a uninucleate amoebula. Perhaps the classical example of the paedogamy is that which was found by Hertwig (1898) in *Actinosphaerium eichhorni*. The organism encysts and the body divides into numerous uninucleate secondary cysts. Each secondary cyst divides into two and remains together within a common cyst-wall. In each the nucleus divides twice, and forms four nuclei, one of which remains functional, the remaining three degenerating. The paedogamy results in formation of a zygote in place of a secondary cyst. Bělař (1922) observed a similar process in *Actinophrys sol* (Fig. 82). This heliozoan withdraws its axopodia and divides into two uninucleate bodies which become surrounded by a common

gelatinous envelope. Both nuclei divide twice and produce four nuclei, three of which degenerate. The two daughter cells, each with one haploid nucleus, undergo paedogamy and the resulting individual now contains a diploid nucleus.

In *Paramecium aurelia*, Diller (1936) found simple fragmentation of the macronucleus which was not correlated with any special micronuclear activity and which could not be stages in conjugation or autogamy. Diller suggests that if conjugation or autogamy is to create a new nuclear complex, as is generally held, it is conceivable that somewhat the same result might be achieved by 'purification act' (through fragmentation) on the part of the macronucleus itself, without involving micronuclei. He coined the term **hemixis** to include these reorganizations.

FIG. 83. Mitotic and meiotic micronuclear divisions in conjugating *Didinium nasutum*. (Prandtl, modified). a, normal micronucleus; b, equatorial plate in the first (mitotic) division; c, anaphase in the first division; d, equatorial plate in the second division; e, anaphase in the second (meiotic) division.

Meiosis. In the foregoing sections, references have been made to the divisions which the nuclei undergo prior to sexual fusion or conjugation. In all Metazoa, during the development of the gametes, the gametocytes undergo reduction division or meiosis, by which the number of chromosomes is halved; that is to say, each fully mature gamete possesses half (haploid) number of chromosomes typical to the species (diploid). In the zygote, the diploid number is reestablished. In the Protozoa in which sexual reproduction occurs during their life-cycle, meiosis presumably takes place to maintain the constancy of chromosome-number, but the process is understood only in a small number of species.

In conjugation, the meiosis seems to take place in the second micronuclear division, although in some, for example, *Oxytricha fallax*, according to Gregory, the actual reduction occurs during the first division. Prandtl (1906) was the first to note a reduction in number of chromosomes in the Protozoa. In conjugating *Didinium nasutum* (Fig. 83), he observed 16 chromosomes in each of the

daughter micronuclei during the first division, but only 8 in the second division. Since that time, the fact that meiosis occurs during the second micronuclear division has been observed in *Chilodonella uncinata* (Enrique; MacDougall), *Carchesium polypinum* (Popoff), *Uroleptus halseyi* (Calkins), etc. (note the ciliates in Table 5 on p. 141). In various species of *Paramecium* and many other forms, the number of chromosomes appears to be too great to allow a precise counting, but Sonneborn's work on the mating types in *Paramecium* as quoted elsewhere (p. 186), indicates clearly the occurrence of meiosis during conjugation.

Information on the meiosis involved in the complete fusion of gametes is even more scanty and fragmentary. In *Monocystis rostrata*, a parasite of the earthworm, Mulsow (1911) noticed that the nuclei of two gametocytes which encyst together, multiply by mitosis in which eight chromosomes are constantly present, but in the last division in gamete formation, each daughter nucleus receives only 4 chromosomes. In another species of *Monocystis*, Calkins and Bowling (1926) observed that the diploid number of chromosomes was 10 and that haploid condition is established in the last gametic division thus confirming Mulsow's finding.

In the paedogamy of *Actinophrys sol*, Bělař finds 44 chromosomes in the first nuclear division, but after two meiotic divisions, the remaining functional nucleus contains only 22 chromosomes so that when paedogamy is completed the diploid number is restored. In *Polytoma uvella*, Moewus finds each of the two gametes is haploid (8 chromosomes) and the zygotes are diploid. The synkaryon divides twice, and during the first division reduction division takes place.

In the coccidian *Aggregata eberthi* (Fig. 217), according to Dobell and Jameson, Bělař, and Naville, and in the gregarine *Diplocystis schneideri*, according to Jameson, there is no reduction in the number of chromosomes during the gamete-formation, but the first zygotic division is meiotic, 12 to 6 and 6 to 3, respectively. A similar reduction takes place also in *Gregarina blattarum* (6 to 3, after Sprague, 1941) and in *Adelina deronis* (20 to 10, after Hauschka, 1943). Thus in these forms, the zygote is the only stage in which diploid nucleus occurs, while the nuclei in stages in the remainder of the life-cycle are haploid.

Some sixty years ago Weismann pointed out that a protozoan grows and multiplies by binary fission or budding into two equal or unequal individuals without loss of any protoplasmic part and these in turn grow and divide, and that thus in Protozoa there is neither senescence nor natural death which occur invariably in Metazoa in

which germ and soma cells are differentiated. Since that time, the problem of potential immortality of Protozoa has been a matter which attracted the attention of numerous investigators. Because of large dimensions, rapid growth and reproduction, and ease with which they can be cultivated in the laboratory, the majority of Protozoa used in the study of the problem have been free-living freshwater ciliates that feed on bacteria and other microorganisms.

The very first extended study was made by Maupas (1888) who isolated *Stylonychia pustulata* on February 27, 1886, and observed 316 binary fissions until July 10. During this period, there was noted a gradual decrease in size and increasing abnormality in form and

FIG. 84. Degeneration or aging in *Stylonychia pustulata*. $\times 340$ (Maupas, modified). a, Beginning stage with reduction in size and completely atrophied micronucleus; b, c, advanced stages in which disappearance of the frontal zone, reduction in size, and fragmentation of the macronucleus occurred; d, final stage before disintegration.

structure, until the animals could no longer divide and died (Fig. 84). A large number of isolation culture experiments have since been carried on numerous species of ciliates by many investigators. The results obtained are not in agreement. However, the bulk of obtained data indicates that the vitality of animals decreases with the passing of generations until finally the organisms suffer inevitable death, and that in the species in which conjugation or other sexual reproduction occurs, the declining vitality becomes restored. Perhaps the most thorough experiment was carried on by Calkins (1919, 1933) with *Uroleptus mobilis*. Starting with an exconjugant on

November 17, 1917, a series of pure-line cultures was established by the daily isolation method. It was found that no series lived longer than a year, but when two of the progeny of a series were allowed to conjugate after the first 75 generations, the exconjugants repeated the history of the parent series, and did not die when the parent series died. In this way, lines of the same organism have lived for more than 12 years, passing through numerous series. In a series, the average division for the first 60 days was 15.4 divisions per 10 days, but the rate gradually declined until death. Woodruff and Spencer (1924) also found the isolation cultures of *Spathidium spatula* (fed on *Colpidium colpoda*) died after a gradual decline in the division rate, but were inclined to think that improper environmental conditions rather than internal factors were responsible for the decline.

On the other hand, Woodruff (1932) found that 5071 generations produced by binary fission from a single individual of *Paramecium aurelia* between May 1, 1907 and May 1, 1915, did not manifest any decrease in vitality after eight years of uninterrupted asexual reproduction without conjugation. With a race of *P. caudatum*, Metalnikov (1924) observed a similar continued asexual reproduction. Dawson (1919) subjected an amiconucleate race of *Oxytricha hymenostoma* to isolation culture and found that it declined in division-rate and finally died out; but in mass cultures, the organisms lived indefinitely. He attributed the decline in isolation culture to improper environmental conditions. With *Actinophrys sol* Bělař (1924) carried on isolation cultures (thus preventing paedogamy (p. 164) for 1244 generations for a period of 32 months and noticed no decline in the division rate. Hartmann (1921) made a similar observation on *Eudorina elegans*. It would appear that in these forms the life continues indefinitely without apparent decrease in vital activity.

As has been noted in the beginning part of the chapter, the macronucleus in the ciliates undergoes, at the time of binary fission a reorganization process before dividing into two parts and undoubtedly, there occurs at the same time extensive cytoplasmic reorganization as judged by the degeneration and absorption of the old, and formation of the new, organellae. It is reasonable to suppose that this reorganization of the whole body structure at the time of division is an elimination process of waste material accumulated by the organism during the various phases of vital activities as was considered by Kidder and others (p. 127) and that this elimination, though not complete, enables the protoplasm of the products of division to carry on their metabolic functions more actively.

As the generations are multiplied, the general decline in vitality is manifest not only in the decreased division-rate, slow growth, abnormal form and function of certain organellae, etc., but also in inability to complete the process involved in conjugation. Jennings found that when individuals of aging stock of *Paramecium bursaria* conjugate with those of a young vigorous stock, certain numbers of exconjugants die without multiplication, or give rise to weak and abnormal descendants. As the stock grows older, the number of exconjugants that die or are weak increases until a period arrives at which time all the exconjugants die without multiplication. However, if conjugation takes place before the decline in vitality becomes too great, such stocks in some cases are able to restore to high vitality. Endomixis and autogamy have also been considered to have a similar effect on the vitality of the progeny of the individuals in which they occur. Experimental data indicate that conjugation of still vigorous young stocks does not bring about any greater vitality to their progeny, but that of older stocks results in many strains with restored vitality. Sonneborn (1942) mentions the appearance of varied characters after macronuclear regeneration (p. 129) in *P. aurelia*. The animals become smaller and of different form; they reproduce more slowly; they are less viable and die out after a period of few weeks or months. Thus regenerated macronuclei are unable to produce high vitality.

It is probable that the process of replacing old macronuclei by micronuclear material which are derived from the products of fusion of two micronuclei of either the same (autogamy) or two different animals (conjugation), would perhaps result in a complete elimination of waste substances from the newly formed macronuclei, and divisions which follow this fusion may result in shifting the waste substances unequally among different daughter individuals. Thus in some individuals there may be a complete elimination of waste material and consequently a restored high vitality, while in others the influence of waste substances present in the cytoplasm may offset or handicap the activity of new macronuclei, giving rise to stocks of low vitality which will perish sooner or later. In addition in conjugation, the union of two haploid micronuclei produces diverse genetic constitutions which would be manifest in progeny in manifold ways. Experimental evidences indicate clearly such is actually the case.

In many ciliates, the elimination of waste substances at the time of binary fission and sexual reproduction (conjugation, and autogamy), seemingly allow the organisms continued existence through

a long chain of generations indefinitely. Jennings (1929, 1942) who has recently reviewed the whole problem states: "Some Protozoa are so constituted that they are predestined to decline and death after a number of generations. Some are so constituted that decline occurs, but this is checked or reversed by substitution of reserve parts for those that are exhausted; they can live indefinitely, but are dependent on this substitution. In some the constitution is such that life and multiplication can continue indefinitely without visible substitution of a reserve nucleus for an exhausted one; but whether this is due to the continued substitution, on a minute scale, of reserve parts for those that are outworn cannot now be positively stated. This perfected condition, in which living itself includes continuously the necessary processes of repair and elimination, is found in some free cells, but not in all."

Regeneration

The capacity of regenerating the lost parts, though variable among different species, is characteristic of all Protozoa from simple forms to those with highly complex organizations, as shown by observations of numerous investigators. Brandt (1877) studied regeneration in *Actinosphaerium eichhorni* and found that only nucleate portions containing at least one nucleus regenerated, and enucleate portions or isolated nuclei degenerated. Similarly Gruber (1886) found in *Amoeba proteus* the nucleate portion regenerated completely, while enucleate part became rounded and perished in a few days. The parts which do not contain nuclear material, may continue to show certain metabolic activities such as locomotion, contraction of contractile vacuoles, etc., for some time; for example, Grosse-Allermann (1909) saw enucleate portions of *Amoeba verrucosa* alive for 20 to 25 days, while Stole (1910) found enucleate *Amoeba proteus* living for 30 days. Clark (1942, 1943) showed that *Amoeba proteus* lives for about seven days after it has been deprived of its nucleus. Enucleated individuals show a 70 per cent depression of respiration and are unable to digest food due to the failure of zymogens to be activated in the dedifferentiating cytoplasm. It is now a well established fact that when a protozoan is cut into two parts and the parts are kept under proper environmental conditions, the enucleated portion is able to carry on catabolic activities, but unable to undertake anabolic activities, and consequently degenerates sooner or later.

In Arcella (Martini; Hegner) and Diffugia (Verworn; Penard), when the tests are partially destroyed, the broken tests remain un-

changed. Verworn considered that in these testaceans test-forming activity of the nucleus is limited to the time of asexual reproduction of the organisms. On the other hand several observers report in Foraminifera the broken shell is completely regenerated at all times. Verworn pointed out that this indicates that here the nucleus controls the formation of shell at any time. In a radiolarian, *Thalassicolla nucleata*, the central capsule, if dissected out from the rest of body, will regenerate into a complete organism (Schneider). A few regeneration studies on Sporozoa have not given any results to be considered here, because of the difficulties in finding suitable media for cultivation in vitro.

An enormous number of regeneration experiments have been conducted on more than 50 ciliates by numerous investigators. Here also the general conclusion is that the nucleus is necessary for regeneration. In many cases, the macronucleus seems to be the only essential nucleus for regeneration, as judged by the continued division on record of several amiconucleate ciliates and by experiments such as Schwartz's in which there was no regeneration in *Stentor coeruleus* from which the whole macronucleus had been removed.

A remarkably small part of a protozoan is known to be able to regenerate completely if nuclear material is included. For example, Sokoloff found 1/53–1/69 of *Spirostomum ambiguum* and 1/70–1/75 of *Dileptus anser* regenerated and Philips showed portions down to 1/80 of an amoeba were able to regenerate. In *Stentor coeruleus*, Lillie and Morgan found pieces as small as 1/27 and 1/64 respectively of the original organisms regenerated. Burnside cut 27 specimens of this ciliate belonging to a single clone, into two or more parts in such a way that some of the pieces contained a large portion of the nucleus while others a small portion. These fragments regenerated and multiplied, giving rise to 268 individuals. No dimensional differences resulted from the different amounts of nuclear material present in the cut specimens. Apparently regulatory processes took place and in all cases normal size was restored, regardless of the amount of the nuclear material in ancestral pieces. Thus biotypes of diverse sizes are not produced by causing inequalities in the proportions of nuclear material in different individuals.

Information on regeneration in individuals in division or encystment is incomplete. While Calkins observed that the regenerative reaction in *Uronychia* was slowed down in late division stages, in *Stentor* and *Paramecium* other investigators found no difference in regeneration between vegetative individuals and those undergoing fission.

In addition to these restorative regenerations, there are physiological regenerations in which as in the case of asexual and sexual reproduction, various organellae such as cilia, flagella, cytostome, contractile vacuoles, etc., are completely regenerated due to certain internal conditions.

References

- BALAMUTH, W. 1940 Regeneration in Protozoa: a problem of morphogenesis. *Quart. Rev. Biology*, Vol. 15.
- BĚLAR, K. 1924 Untersuchungen an *Actinophrys sol* Ehrenberg. II. Beiträge zur Physiologie des Formwechsels. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 48.
- 1926 Der Formwechsel der Protistenkerne. *Ergebn. u. Fortsch. Zool.*, Vol. 6.
- BOELL, E. J. and L. L. WOODRUFF 1941 Respiratory metabolism of mating types in *Paramecium calkinsi*. *Jour. Exp. Zool.*, Vol. 87.
- BURNSIDE, L. H. 1929 Relation of body size to nuclear size in *Stentor coeruleus*. *Ibid.*, Vol. 54.
- CALKINS, G. N. 1919 *Uroleptus mobilis* Engelm. II. Renewal of vitality through conjugation. *Ibid.*, Vol. 29.
- 1933 *The biology of the Protozoa*. Second edition. Philadelphia.
- and R. C. BOWLING 1926 Gametic meiosis in *Monocystis*. *Biol. Bull.*, Vol. 51.
- and F. M. SUMMERS, editors. 1941 *Protozoa in biological research*. New York.
- CHALKLEY, H. W. and G. E. DANIEL. 1933 The relation between the form of the living cell and the nuclear phases of division in *Amoeba proteus*. *Physiol. Zool.*, Vol. 6.
- CHEN, T. T. 1936 Observations on mitosis in opalinids. I. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.*, Vol. 22.
- CLARK, A. M. 1942 Some effects of removing the nucleus from *Amoeba*. *Austral. Jour. Exp. Biol. & Med. Sci.*, Vol. 20.
- 1943 Some physiological functions of the nucleus in *Amoeba*, investigated by micrurgical methods. *Ibid.*, Vol. 21.
- CLEVELAND, L. R. 1938 Longitudinal and transverse division in two closely related flagellates. *Biol. Bull.*, Vol. 74.
- 1938a Origin and development of the achromatic figure. *Ibid.*
- , S. R. HALL, E. P. SANDERS and J. COLLIER 1934 The wood-feeding roach *Cryptocercus*, its Protozoa, and the symbiosis between Protozoa and roach. *Mem. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sci.*, Vol. 17.
- DAWSON, J. A. 1919 An experimental study of an amiconucleate *Oxytricha*. *Jour. Exp. Zool.*, Vol. 29.
- DILLER, W. F. 1936 Nuclear reorganization processes in *Paramecium aurelia*, with descriptions of autogamy and 'hemixis.' *Jour. Morph.*, Vol. 59.
- DOBELL, C. 1908 The structure and life history of *Copromonas subtilis*. *Quart. Jour. Mier. Sci.*, Vol. 52.

- 1917 On *Oxnerella maritima*, nov. gen., nov. spec., a new heliozoan, and its method of division, with some remarks on the centroplast of the Heliozoa. *Ibid.*, Vol. 62.
- 1925 The life-history and chromōsome cycle of *Aggregata eberthi*. *Parasitology*, Vol. 17.
- GIESE, A. C. 1939 Studies on conjugation in *Paramecium multimicronucleatum*. *Amer. Nat.*, Vol. 73.
- GILMAN, L. C. 1941 Mating types in diverse races of *Paramecium caudatum*. *Biol. Bull.*, Vol. 80.
- HALL, R. P. 1923 Morphology and binary fission of *Menoidium incurvum*. *Univ. California Publ. Zool.*, Vol. 20.
- HARTMANN, M. 1917 Ueber die dauernde rein agame Züchtung von *Eudorina elegans* and ihre Bedeutung für das Befruchtungs- und Todproblem. *Ber. preuss. Akad. Wiss., Phys.-Math. Klasse*, pp. 760-776.
- HAUSCHKA, T. S. 1943 Life history and chromosome cycle of the coccidian, *Adelina deronis*. *Jour. Morph.*, Vol. 73.
- IVANIC, M. 1938 Ueber die mit der Chromosomenbildung verbundene promitotische Grosskernteilung bei den Vermehrungsrueh Stadien von *Chilodon uncinatus*. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 91.
- JAMESON, A. P. 1920 The chromosome cycle of gregarines with special reference to *Diplocystis schneideri*. *Quart. Jour. Micr. Sci.*, Vol. 64.
- JENNINGS, H. S. 1929 Genetics of the Protozoa. *Bibliogr. Gen.*, Vol. 5.
- 1938 Sex reaction types and their inheritance in *Paramecium bursaria*. I.II. Clones collected from natural habitats. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.*, Vol. 24.
- 1939 Genetics of *Paramecium bursaria*. I. Genetics, Vol. 24.
- 1941 Genetics of *Paramecium bursaria*. II. *Proc. Amer. Phil. Soc.*, Vol. 85.
- 1942 Genetics of *Paramecium bursaria*. III. Genetics, Vol. 27.
- 1942 Senescence and death in Protozoa and invertebrates. In E. V. Cowdry: *Problems of ageing*. Second edition. Baltimore.
- , D. RAFFEL, R. S. LYNCH and T. M. SONNEBORN 1932 The diverse biotypes produced by conjugation within a clone of *Paramecium aurelia*. *Jour. Exp. Zool.*, Vol. 62.
- KIDDER, G. W. 1933 Studies on *Conchophthirus mytili* de Morgan. I. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 79.
- 1938 Nuclear reorganization without cell division in *Paraclevelandia simplex*, an endocommensal ciliate of the wood-feeding roach, *Panesthia*. *Ibid.*, Vol. 91.
- and C. L. CLAFF 1938 Cytological investigations of *Colpoda cucullus*. *Biol. Bull.*, Vol. 74.
- and W. F. DILLER 1934 Observations on the binary fission of four species of common free-living ciliates, with special reference to the macronuclear chromatin. *Ibid.*, Vol. 67.
- and F. M. SUMMERS 1935 Taxonomic and cytological studies on the ciliates associated with the amphipod family Orchestidae from the Woods Hole district. *Ibid.*, Vol. 68.

- KIMBALL, R. F. 1939 Change of mating type during vegetative reproduction in *Paramecium aurelia*. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 81.
- 1939 Mating types in Euplotes. Amer. Nat., Vol. 73.
- 1942 The nature and inheritance of mating types in *Euplotes patella*. Genetics, Vol. 27.
- 1943 Mating types in the ciliate Protozoa. Quart. Rev. Biology, Vol. 18.
- KOFOID, C. A. and O. SWEZY 1919 On *Streblomastix strix*, a polymastigote flagellate with a linear plasmodial phase. Univ. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 20.
- 1919 On *Trichonympha campanula* sp. nov. Ibid.
- KORSCHULT, E. 1927 *Regeneration und Transplantation*. Vol. 1. Berlin.
- KUDO, R. R. 1925 Observations on *Endamoeba blattae*. Amer. Jour. Hyg., Vol. 6.
- 1926 Observations on *Lophomonas blattarum*, a flagellate inhabiting the colon of the cockroach, *Blatta orientalis*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 53.
- 1926 A cytological study of *Lophomonas striata*. Ibid., Vol. 55.
- 1936 Studies on *Nyctotherus ovalis* Leidy, with special reference to its nuclear structure. Ibid., Vol. 87.
- LIESCHE, W. 1938 Die Kern- und Fortpflanzungsverhältnisse von *Amoeba proteus*. Ibid., Vol. 91.
- LUND, E. J. 1917 Reversibility of morphogenetic processes in *Bursaria*. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 24.
- MAUPAS, E. 1888 Recherches expérimentales sur la multiplication des infusoires ciliés. Arch. zool. exp. et gén. (2), Vol. 6.
- 1889 Le rejeunissement karyogamique chez les ciliés. Ibid., Vol. 7.
- MULSOW, K. 1911 Ueber Fortpflanzungserscheinungen bei *Monocystis rostrata* n. sp. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 22.
- NOLAND, L. E. 1927 Conjugation in the ciliate *Metopus sigmoides*. Jour. Morph. Physiol., Vol. 44.
- PRANDTL, H. 1906 Die Konjugation von *Didinium nasutum*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 7.
- REICHENOW, E. 1928 Ergebnisse mit der Nuclealfärbung bei Protozoen. Ibid., Vol. 61.
- SÓKOLOFF, B. 1924 Das Regenerationsproblem bei Protozoen. Ibid., Vol. 47.
- SONNEBORN, T. M. 1937 Sex, sex inheritance and sex determination in *Paramecium aurelia*. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Vol. 23.
- 1938 Mating types in *Paramecium aurelia*: diverse conditions for mating in different stocks; occurrence, number and interrelations of the types. Proc. Amer. Phil. Soc., Vol. 79.
- 1940 The relation of macronuclear regeneration in *Paramecium aurelia* to macronuclear structure, amitosis and genetic determination. Anat. Record, Vol. 78.
- 1942 Sex hormones in unicellular organisms. Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol., Vol. 10.

- 1942a Inheritance in ciliate Protozoa. Amer. Nat., Vol. 76.
- SPRAGUE, V. 1941 Studies on *Gregarina blattarum* with particular reference to the chromosome cycle. Ill. Biol. Monogr., Vol. 18.
- SUMMERS, F. M. 1935 The division and reorganization of the macronuclei of *Aspidisca lynceus*, *Diophrys appendiculata* and *Stylonychia pustulata*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 85.
- TURNER, J. P. 1930 Division and conjugation in *Euplotes patella* with special reference to the nuclear phenomena. Univ. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 33.
- WICHTERMAN, R. 1936 Division and conjugation in *Nyctotherus cordiformis* with special reference to the nuclear phenomena. Jour. Morph., Vol. 60.
- 1940 Cytogamy: a sexual process occurring in living joined pairs of *Paramecium caudatum* and its relation to other sexual phenomena. Ibid., Vol. 66.
- WOODRUFF, L. L. 1932 *Paramcium aurelia* in pedigree culture for twenty-five years. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 51.
- and R. ERDMANN 1914 A normal periodic reorganization process without cell fusion in *Paramecium*. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 17.
- and H. SPENCER 1921 The survival value of conjugation in the life history of *Spathidium spathula*. Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. and Med., Vol. 18.

CHAPTER 6

Variation and heredity

IT IS generally recognized that individuals of all species of organism show a greater or less variation in morphological and physiological characteristics. Protozoa are no exceptions, and manifest a wide variation in size, form, structure, and physiological characters among the members of a single species. The different groups in a species are spoken of as the races, varieties, strains, etc. It is well known that dinoflagellates show a great morphological variation in different localities. Schröder (1914) found at least nine varieties of *Ceratium hirundinella* (Fig. 85) occurring in various waters of Europe, and List found that the organisms living in shallow ponds possess a marked morphological difference from those living in deep ponds. *Cyphoderia ampulla* is said to vary in size among those inhabiting the same deep lakes; namely, individuals from the deep water may reach 200μ in length, while those from the surface layer measure only about 100μ long.

In many species of Foraminifera, the shell varies in thickness according to the part of ocean in which the organisms live. Thus the strains which live floating in surface water have a much thinner shell than those that dwell on the bottom. For example, according to Rhumbler, *Orbulina universa* inhabiting surface water has a comparatively thin shell, $1.28-18\mu$ thick, while individuals living on the bottom have a thick shell, up to 24μ in thickness. According to Uyemura, a species of *Amoeba* living in thermal waters, showed a distinct dimensional difference in different springs. It measured $10-40\mu$ in diameter in sulphurous water and $45-80\mu$ in ferrous water; in both types of water the amoebae were larger at $36-40^{\circ}\text{C}$. than at 51°C .

Such differences or varieties appear to be due to the influence of diverse environmental conditions, and will continue to exist under these conditions; but when the organisms of different varieties are subjected to a similar environment, the strain differences disappear sooner or later. That the differences in kind and amount of foods bring about extremely diverse individuals in *Tetrahymena vorax* and *Chilomonas paramecium* in bacteria-free cultures has already been mentioned (p. 94). *Chlamydomonas debaryana* are represented by many races differing in form, size, and structure, in various localities as well as under different laboratory conditions. Moewus (1934) dis-

tinguished 12 such varieties and showed that any variety could be changed into another by using different culture media. This transformation, however, did not occur at the same rate among different

FIG. 85. Varieties of *Ceratium hirundinella* from various European waters (Schröder). a, *furcoides*-type (130–300 μ by 30–45 μ); b, *brachyceroides*-type (130–145 μ by 30–45 μ); c, *silesiacum*-type (148–280 μ by 28–34 μ); d, *carinthiacum*-type (120–145 μ by 45–60 μ); e, *gracile*-type (140–200 μ by 60–75 μ); f, *austriacum*-type (120–160 μ by 45–60 μ); g, *robustum*-type (270–310 μ by 45–55 μ); h, *scotticum*-type (160–210 μ by 50–60 μ); i, *piburgense*-type (180–260 μ by 50–60 μ).

racess. It was found that the longer a strain has remained under conditions producing a given type, the greater the time and the number of generations needed to change it to a new type under a new condition, as is shown in Table 7.

While in many species, the races or varieties have apparently been brought about into being under the influence of environmental conditions, in others the inherited characters persist for a long period, and still in others the biotype may show different inherited char-

acters. To the last-mentioned category belongs perhaps a strain of *Tetrahymena geleii* in which, according to Furgason (1940), a pure-line bacteria-free culture derived from a single individual was found to be composed of individuals differing in shape and size which became more marked in older cultures.

The first comprehensive study dealing with the variation in size and its inheritance in uniparental or vegetative reproduction of

TABLE 7.—*Relation between the number of days cultivated in peptone medium and the number of days cultivated in salt-sugar medium needed to change from type 1 to type 5 in Chlamydomonas debaryana (Moevus).*

Days in peptone medium as type 1	Days in salt-sugar medium needed to change to type 5
28	28
140	49
273	133
441	175
567	231
609	370
644	459
672	531
690	534

Protozoa was conducted by Jennings (1909). From a "wild" lot of *Paramecium caudatum*, eight races or biotypes with the relative mean lengths of 206, 200, 194, 176, 142, 125, 100, and 45 μ were isolated. It was found that within each clone derived from a single parent, the size of individuals varies greatly (which is attributable to growth, amount of food, and other environmental conditions), any one of which may give rise to progeny of the same mean size. Thus selection within the pure race has no effect on the size, and the differences brought about merely by environment are not inherited. Jennings (1916) examined the inheritance of the size and number of spines, size of shell, diameter of mouth, and size and number of teeth of the testacean *Diffugia corona*, and showed that "a population consists of many hereditarily diverse stocks, and a single stock, derived from a single progenitor, gradually differentiates into such hereditarily diverse stocks, so that by selection marked results are produced." Root (1918) with *Centropyxis aculeata*, Hegner (1919) with *Arcella dentata*, and Reynolds (1924) with *A. polypora*, obtained similar results. Jennings (1937) studied the inheritance of teeth in *Diffugia corona* in normal fission and by altering through

operation, and found that operated mouth or teeth were restored to normal form in 3 or 4 generations and that three factors appeared to determine the character and number of teeth: namely, the size of the mouth, the number and arrangement of teeth in the parent, and "something in the constitution of the clone (its genotype) which tends toward the production of a mouth of a certain size, with teeth of a certain form, arrangement, and number."

Numerous strains have been recognized in all intensively studied parasitic Protozoa such as *Entamoeba*, *Trypanosoma*, *Plasmodium*, etc. For example, Dobell and Jepps (1918) noticed five races in *Entamoeba histolytica* on the basis of differences in the size of cysts. Spector (1936) distinguished two races in the trophozoite of this amoeba. The large strain was found to be pathogenic to kittens, but the small strain was not. Meleney and Frye (1933, 1935) and Frye and Meleney (1939) also hold that there is a small race in *Entamoeba histolytica* which has a weak capacity for invading the intestinal wall and not pathogenic to man. Sapero, Hakansson and Louttit (1942) similarly notice two races which can be distinguished by the diameters of cysts, the division line being 10μ and 9μ in living and balsam-mounted specimens respectively. The race with large cysts gives rise to trophozoites which are more actively motile, ingest erythrocytes, culture easily and is pathogenic to man and kitten, while the race with small cysts develops into less actively motile amoebae which do not ingest erythrocytes, difficult to culture, and is not pathogenic to hosts, thus not being histozoic.

Recent investigations by Boyd and his co-workers show beyond doubt that the species of *Plasmodium* are composed of many strains which vary in diverse physiological characters. In an extended study on *Trypanosoma lewisi*, Taliaferro (1921-1926) found that this flagellate multiplies only during the first ten days in the blood of a rat after inoculation, after which the organisms do not reproduce. In the adult trypanosomes, the variability for total length in a population is about 3 per cent. Inoculation of the same pure line into different rats sometimes brings about small but significant differences in the mean size and passage through a rat-flea generally results in a significant variability of the pure line. It is considered that some differences in dimensions among strains are apparently due to environment (host), but others cannot be considered as due to this cause, since they persist when several strains showing such differences are inoculated into the same host. Hoare (1943) reviewed recently the "biological" races of certain parasitic Protozoa.

Jollos (1921) subjected *Paramecium caudatum* to various environ-

mental influences such as temperature and chemicals, and found that the animals develop tolerance which is inherited through many generations even after removal to the original environment. For example, one of the clones which tolerated only 1.1% of standard solution of arsenic acid, was cultivated in gradually increasing concentrations for four months, at the end of which the tolerance for this chemical was raised to 5%. After being removed to water without arsenic acid, the tolerance changed as follows: 22 days, 5%; 46 days, 4.5%; 151 days, 4%; 166 days, 3%; 183 days, 2.5%; 198 days, 1.25% and 255 days, 1%. As the organisms reproduced about once a day, the acquired increased tolerance to arsenic was inherited for about 250 generations.

There are also known inherited changes in form and structure which are produced under the influence of certain environmental conditions. Jollos designated these changes long-lasting modifications (*Dauermodifikationen*) and maintained that a change in environmental conditions, if applied gradually, brings about a change, not in the nucleus, but in the cytoplasm, of the organism which when transferred to the original environment, is inherited for a number of generations. These modifications are lost usually during sexual processes at which time the whole organism is reorganized.

The long-lasting morphological and physiological modifications induced by chemical substances have long been known in parasitic Protozoa. Werbitzki (1910) discovered that *Trypanosoma brucei* loses its blepharoplast when inoculated into mice which have been treated with pyronin, acridin, oxazin and allied dyes. Laveran and Roudsky (1911) found that these dyes have a special affinity for, and bring about the destruction by auto-oxidation of, the blepharoplast. Such trypanosomes lacking blepharoplast behave normally and remain in that condition during many passages through mice. When subjected to small doses of certain drugs repeatedly, species of *Trypanosoma* often develop into drug-fast or drug-resistant strains which resist doses of the drug greater than those used for the treatment of the disease for which they are responsible. These modifications may also persist for several hundred passages through host animals and invertebrate vectors, but are eventually lost.

Long-lasting modifications have also been produced by several investigators by subjecting Protozoa to various environmental influences during the nuclear reorganization at the time of fission, conjugation, or autogamy. In *Stentor* (Popoff) and *Glaucoma* (Chatton), long-lasting modifications appeared during asexual divisions. Calkins (1924) observed a double-type *Uroleptus mobilis*

which was formed by a complete fusion of two conjugants. This abnormal animal underwent fission 367 times for 405 days, but finally reverted back to normal forms, without reversion to double form.

Jennings (1941) outlined five types of long-lasting inherited changes during vegetative reproduction, as follows: (1) changes that occur in the course of normal life history, immaturity to sexual maturity which involves many generations; (2) degenerative changes resulting from existence under unfavorable conditions; (3) adaptive changes or inherited acclimitization or immunity; (4) changes which are neither adaptive nor degenerative, occurring under specific environmental conditions; and (5) changes in form, size, and other characters, which are apparently not due to environment.

Whatever exact mechanism by which the long-lasting modifications are brought about may be, they are difficult to distinguish from permanent modification or mutation, since they persist for hundreds of generations, and cases of mutation have in most instances not been followed by sufficiently long enough pure-line cultures to definitely establish them as such.

Jollos observed that if *Paramecium* were subjected to environmental change during late stages of conjugation, certain individuals, if not all, become permanently changed. Possibly the recombining and reorganizing nuclear materials are affected in such a way that the hereditary constitution or genotype becomes altered. MacDougall subjected *Chilodonella uncinata* to ultraviolet rays and produced many changes which were placed in three groups: (1) abnormalities which caused the death of the organism; (2) temporary variations which disappeared by the third generation; and (3) variations which were inherited through successive generations and hence considered as mutations. The mutants were triploid, tetraploid, and tailed diploid forms (Fig. 86), which bred true for a variable length of time in pure-line cultures, either being lost or dying off finally. The tailed form differed from the normal form in the body shape, in the number of ciliary rows and contractile vacuoles, and in the mode of movement, but during conjugation it showed the diploid number of chromosomes as in the typical form. The tailed mutant remained true and underwent 20 conjugations during ten months.

In biparental inheritance, the nuclei of two individuals participate in producing new combinations which would naturally bring about diverse genetic constitutions. The new combination is accomplished either by sexual fusion in Sarcodina, Mastigophora, and Sporozoa, or by conjugation in Euciliata and Suctoria.

The genetics of sexual fusion is only known in a few forms. Perhaps

the most complete information was obtained by Moewus through his extended studies of certain Phytomonadina. In *Polytoma* (p. 222), *Chlamydomonas* (p. 217), and allied forms, the motile individuals are usually haploid. Two such individuals (gametes) fuse with each other and produce a diploid zygote which becomes encysted. The zygote later undergoes at least two divisions within the cyst wall, in the first division of which chromosome reduction takes place. These swarmers when set free become trophozoites and

FIG. 86. *Chilodonella uncinata* (MacDougall). a, b, ventral and side view of normal individual; c, d, ventral and side view of the tailed mutant.

multiply asexually by division for many generations, the descendants of each swarmer giving rise to a clone.

Moewus (1935) demonstrated the segregation and independent assortment of factors by hybridization of *Polytoma*. He used two varieties each of two species: *P. uella* and *P. pascheri*, both of which possess 8 haploid chromosomes. Their constitutions were as follows:

P. uella

Form A: Oval (F), without papilla (p), with stigma (S), large (D) (Fig. 87, a).

Form B: Oval (F), without papilla (p), without stigma (s), large (D) (Fig. 87, b).

P. pascheri

Form C: Pyriform (f), with papilla (P), without stigma (s), large (D) (Fig. 87, c).

Form D: Pyriform (f), with papilla (P), without stigma (s), small (d) (Fig. 87, d).

Thus six different crosses were possible from the four pairs of characters. When A (FpSD) and B (FpsD) fuse, the zygote divides into four swarmers, two swarmers have stigma (S), and the other two lack this cell organ, which indicates the occurrence of segregation of the two characters (S, s) during the reduction division. When B (FpsD) is crossed with C (fPsD), thus differing in two pairs of characters, two swarmers possess one combination or type and the other two another combination. Different pairs of combinations are

FIG. 87. a, b. *Polytoma wella*. a, Form A; b, Form B.
c, d. *P. pascheri*. c, Form C; d, Form D.
e, f. Crosses between Forms B and C. (Moewus)

of course found. It was found that about half the zygotes gives rise to the two parental combinations (Fig. 87, b, c), while the other half gives rise to FPsD (Fig. 87, e) and fpsD (Fig. 87, f).

When B (FpsD) is crossed with D (fPsd) or A (FpSD) is crossed with D (fPsd), only two types of swarmers are also formed from each zygote, and in the case of B $\times$ D, eight different combinations are produced, while in the case of A $\times$ D, sixteen different combinations, which appear in about equal numbers, are formed. Thus these four factors or characters show independent assortment during divisions of the zygote.

Furthermore, Moewus noticed that certain other characters appeared to be linked with some of the four characters mentioned above. For example, the length of flagella, if it is under control of a factor, is linked on the same chromosome with the size-controlling factors (D, d), for large individuals have invariably long flagella and small individuals short flagella. During the experiments to determine this linkage, it was found that crossing over occurs between two entire chromosomes that are undergoing synapsis.

In certain races of *Polytoma pascheri* and *Chlamydomonas eugametos*, the sexual fusion takes place between members of different clones only. The zygote gives rise as was stated before to four swarmers by two divisions, which are evenly divided between the two sexes, which shows that the sex-determining factors are lodged in a single chromosome pair. In a cross between *Chlamydomonas paradoxa* and *C. pseudoparadoxa*, both of which produce only one type of gamete in a clone, the majority of the zygotes yield four clones, two producing male gametes and the other two female gametes; but a small number of zygotes gives rise to four clones which contain both gametes. It is considered that this is due to crossing-over that brought the two sex factors (P and M) together into one chromosome, and hence the "mixed" condition, while the other chromosome which is devoid of the sex factors gives rise to individuals that soon perish.

In crosses between *Chlamydomonas eugametos* which possesses a stigma and 10 haploid chromosomes and *C. paupera* which lacks a stigma and 10 haploid chromosomes, 12 pairs of factors including sex factor are distinguishable. Consequently at least two chromosomes must have two factors in them. Thus adaptation to acid or alkaline culture media was found to be linked with differences in the number of divisions in zygote. That there occurs a sex-linked inheritance in *Chlamydomonas* was demonstrated by crossing stigma-bearing *C. eugametos* of one sex with stigma-lacking *C. paupera* of the opposite sex. The progeny that were of the same sex as *C. eugametos* parent possessed stigma, while those that were of the same sex as *C. paupera* parent lacked stigma. Thus it is seen that the sex factor and stigma factor are located in the same chromosome.

The genetics of conjugation which takes place between two diploid conjugants has been studied by various investigators. Pure-line cultures of exconjugants show that conjugation brings about diverse inherited constitutions in the clones characterized by difference in size, form, division-rate, mortality-rate, vigor, resistance, degeneration, etc. The diversities brought about by autogamy are not as varied as those produced by conjugation. In *Paramecium* much information has in recent years been brought to light through the studies of Sonneborn, Jennings, Kimball, and others on the mating type (p. 156). The mating type is as a rule inherited without change to descendants through vegetative reproduction.

Sonneborn (1939) has made extended studies of variety 1 of *Paramecium aurelia* (p. 158) and found that genetically diverse materials show different types of inheritance, as follows:

(1) Stocks containing two mating types. When types I and II conjugate, among a set of exconjugants some produce all of one mating type, others all of the other mating type and still others both types (one of one type and the other of the other type). In the last mentioned exconjugants, the types segregate usually at the first division, since of the two individuals produced by the first division, one and all its progeny, are of one mating type, and the other and all its progeny are of the other mating type. A similar change was also found to take place at autogamy. Sonneborn considers that the mating types are determined by macronuclei, as judged by segregation at first or sometimes second division in exconjugants and by the influence of temperature during conjugation and the first division.

(2) Stocks containing only one mating type. No conjugation occurs in such stocks. Autogamy does not produce any change in type which is always type I. Stocks that contain type II only have not yet been found.

(3) Hybrids between stocks containing one and two mating types. When the members of the stock containing both types I and II (two-type condition) conjugate with those of the stock containing one type (one-type condition), all the descendants of the hybrid exconjugants show two-type condition, which shows the dominancy of two-type condition over one-type condition. The factor for the two-type condition may be designated A and that for the one-type condition a. The parent stocks are AA and aa, and all F_1 hybrids Aa. When the hybrids (Aa) are backcrossed to recessive parent (aa) (158 conjugating pairs in one experiment), approximately one-half (81) of the pairs give rise to two-type condition (Aa) and the remaining one-half (77) of the pairs to one-type condition (aa), thus showing a typical Mendelian result. When F_1 hybrids (Aa) were interbred by 120 conjugating pairs, each exconjugant in 88 of the pairs gave rise to two-type condition and each exconjugant in 32 pairs produced one-type condition, thus approximating an expected Mendelian ratio of 3 dominants to 1 recessive. That the F_2 dominants are composed of two-thirds heterozygotes (Aa) and one-third homozygotes (AA) was confirmed by the results obtained by allowing F_2 dominants to conjugate with the recessive parent stock (aa). Of 19 pairs of conjugants, 6 pairs gave rise to only dominant progeny, which shows that they were homozygous (AA) and their progeny heterozygous (Aa), while 13 pairs produced one-half dominants and one-half recessives, which indicates that they were heterozygous (Aa) and their progeny half homozygous (aa) and half heterozygous

(Aa). Thus the genic agreement between two conjugants of a pair and the relative frequency of various gene combinations as shown in these experiments confirm definitely the occurrence of meiosis and chromosomal exchange during conjugation which have hitherto been known only on cytological ground.

In *Euplotes patella*, Kimball (1942) found that the six mating types (p. 159) are determined by six possible combinations of a series of three allelic genes. There is no dominance among these alleles, the three heterozygous combinations determining three mating types being different from one another and from the three determined by homozygous combination. Kimball (1939, 1941) had shown that the fluid obtained free of *Euplotes* from a culture of one mating type will induce conjugation among animals of certain other mating types. When all possible combinations of fluids and animals are made it was found that the fluid from any of the heterozygous types induces conjugation among animals of any types other than its own and the fluid from any of the homozygous types induces conjugation only among animals of the types which do not have the same allele as the type from which the fluid came. These reactions are explained by an assumption that each of the mating type alleles is responsible for the production by the animal of a specific conjugation-inducing substance. Thus the two alleles in a heterozygote act independently of each other; each brings about the production by the animal of a substance of its own. Thus heterozygous animals are induced to conjugate only by the fluids from individuals which possess an allele not present in the heterozygotes.

The relation between the cytoplasm and nucleus in respect to inheritance has become better known in recent years in some ciliates. De Garis (1935) succeeded in bringing about conjugation in *Paramecium caudatum*, between the members of a large clone (198 μ long) and of a small clone (73 μ long). The exconjugants of a pair are different only in the cytoplasm as the nuclei are alike through exchange of a haploid set of chromosomes. The two exconjugants divide and give rise to progeny which grow to size characteristic of each parent clone, division continuing at the rate of once or twice a day. However, as division is repeated, the descendants of the large clone become gradually smaller after successive fissions, while the descendants of the small clone become gradually larger, until at the end of 22 days (in one experiment) both clones produced individuals of intermediate size (about 135 μ long) which remained in generations that followed. Since the exconjugants differed in the cytoplasm only, it must be considered probable that at first the cytoplasmic character

was inherited through several vegetative divisions, but ultimately the influence of the new nucleus gradually changed the cytoplasmic character. The ultimate size between the two clones is not always midway between the mean sizes of the two parent clones, and is apparently dependent upon the nuclear combinations brought about by conjugation. It has also become known that different pairs of conjugants between the same two clones give rise to diverse progeny, similar to those of sexual reproduction in Metazoa, which indicates that clones of *Paramecium caudatum* are in many cases heterozygous for size factors and recombination of factors occur at the time of conjugation.

In *P. aurelia*, Kimball (1939) observed that there occasionally occurs a change of one mating type into another following autogamy. When the change is from type II to type I, not all animals change type immediately. Following the first few divisions of the product of the first division after autogamy there are present still some type II animals, although ultimately all become transformed into type I. Here also the cytoplasmic influence persists and is inherited through vegetative divisions. Jennings (1941) in his recent review writes as follows: "The primary source of diversities in inherited characters lies in the nucleus. But the nucleus by known material interchanges impresses its constitution on the cytoplasm. The cytoplasm retains the constitution so impressed for a considerable length of time, during which it assimilates and reproduces true to its impressed character. It may do this after removal from contact with the nucleus to which its present constitution is due, and even for a time in the presence of another nucleus of different constitution. During this period, cytoplasmic inheritance may occur in vegetative reproduction. The new cells produced show the characteristics due to this cytoplasmic constitution impressed earlier by a nucleus that is no longer present. But in time the new nucleus asserts itself, impressing its own constitution on the cytoplasm. Such cycles are repeated as often as the nucleus is changed by conjugation."

Sonneborn (1943) has recently found in the four races of variety 4 of *P. aurelia* a pair of characters which he designated as "killer" and "sensitive." Fluid in which the killer race has lived kills individuals of the sensitive races. Race 51 is a killer, while races 29, 32, and 47 are sensitive. It appears that the killer and sensitive characters never occur together in the same individual. All progeny in race 51 are killers, and all progeny of the sensitive races are sensitive. When the pure killer race 51 is crossed with the pure sensitive race 32, the two exconjugants of each pair produce phenotypically different

clones: one is a killer and the other is sensitive. He was able to demonstrate that the F_1 killer clones are those that derive their cytoplasm from the killer parent and the F_1 sensitive clones are those which contain the cytoplasm of the sensitive parent—a result contradictory to the hitherto prevailing notion that the two exconjugants possess the same genotype and should produce clones alike in their hereditary characters. Through a series of experiments, he has come to realize that there exist certain “relations between a gene and a cytoplasmic substance, both of which are required for the development of a hereditary character. When some of the cytoplasmic substance is present, the gene controls its continued production; but when the cytoplasmic substance is absent, the gene cannot initiate its production. Addition of the cytoplasmic substance to an organism, lacking the character dependent on it, but containing the required gene, results in the continued production of the substance, in the development of the character determined by the combined presence of gene and cytoplasmic substance, and in the hereditary maintenance of the character in successive generations.”

References

- CALKINS, G. N. 1924 *Uroleptus mobilis*. V. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 41.
- DE GARIS, C. F. 1935 Heritable effects of conjugation between free individuals and double monsters in diverse races of *Paramecium*. Ibid., Vol. 71.
- FURGASON, W. H. 1940 The significant cytostomal pattern of the “Glaucoma-Colpidium group,” and a proposed new genus and species, *Tetrahymena geleii*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 94.
- HEGNER, R. W. 1919 Heredity, variation, and the appearance of diversities during the vegetative reproduction of *Arcella dentata*. Genetics, Vol. 4.
- HOARE, C. A. 1943 Biological races in parasitic Protozoa. Biol. Reviews, Vol. 18.
- JENNINGS, H. S. 1909 Heredity and variation in the simplest organisms. Amer. Nat., Vol. 43.
- 1916 Heredity, variation and the results of selection in the uniparental reproduction of *Diffugia corona*. Genetics, Vol. 1.
- 1929 Genetics of the Protozoa. Bibliographia Genetica, Vol. 5.
- 1937 Formation, inheritance and variation of the teeth in *Diffugia corona*. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 77.
- 1939 Genetics of *Paramecium bursaria*. I. Mating types and groups, their interrelations and distribution; mating behavior and self-sterility. Genetics, Vol. 24.
- 1941 Inheritance in Protozoa. In G. N. Calkins and F. M. Summers (editors): *Protozoa in biological research*. New York.

- , D. RAFFEL, R. S. LYNCH and T. M. SONNEBORN 1932 The diverse biotypes produced by conjugation within a clone of *Paramecium*. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 63.
- JOLLOS, V. 1913 Experimentelle Untersuchungen an Infusorien Biol. Zentralbl., Vol. 33.
- 1921 Experimentelle Protistenstudien. I. Untersuchungen über Variabilität und Vererbung bei Infusorien. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 43.
- 1934 Dauermodifikationen und Mutationen bei Protozoen. Ibid., Vol. 83.
- KIMBALL, R. F. 1939 A delayed change of phenotype following a change of genotype in *Paramecium aurelia*. Genetics, Vol. 24.
- 1939 Mating types in *Euplotes*. Amer. Nat., Vol. 73.
- 1942 The nature and inheritance of mating types in *Euplotes patella*. Genetics, Vol. 27.
- MACDOUGALL, M. S. 1929 Modifications in *Chilodon uncinatus* produced by ultraviolet radiations. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 54.
- 1931 Another mutation of *Chilodon uncinatus* produced by ultraviolet radiation, with a description of its maturation process. Ibid., Vol. 58.
- MOEWUS, F. 1934 Ueber Dauermodifikation bei *Chlamydomonas*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 83.
- 1935 Ueber die Vererbung des Geschlechts bei *Polytoma pascheri* und bei *Polytoma uwelli*. Zeitschr. Induk. Abstamm.- u. Vererb., Vol. 69.
- 1936 Faktorenaustausch, insbesondere der Realisatoren bei *Chlamydomonas*-Kreuzungen. Berichte deutsch. Bot. Ges., Vol. 54.
- 1938 Vererbung des Geschlechts bei *Chlamydomonas eugametos* und verwandten Arten. Biol. Zentralbl., Vol. 58.
- REYNOLDS, B. D. 1924 Interactions of protoplasmic masses in relation to the study of heredity and environment in *Arcella polyzona*. Biol. Bull., Vol. 46.
- ROOT, F. M. 1918 Inheritance in the asexual reproduction in *Centropyxis aculeata*. Genetics, Vol. 3.
- SAPERO, J. J., E. G. HAKANSSON and C. M. LOUTTIT 1942 The occurrence of two significantly distinct races of *Endamoeba histolytica*. Amer. Jour. Trop. Med., Vol. 22.
- SONNEBORN, T. M. 1937 Sex, sex inheritance and sex determination in *Paramecium aurelia*. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Vol. 23.
- 1939 *Paramecium aurelia*: mating types and groups; lethal interactions; determination and inheritance. Amer. Nat., Vol. 73.
- 1942 Inheritance in ciliate Protozoa. Ibid., Vol. 76.
- 1943 Gene and Cytoplasm. I and II. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. Vol. 29.
- TALIAFERRO, W. H. 1926 Variability and inheritance of size in *Trypanosoma lewisi*. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 43.
- 1929 *The immunology of parasitic infections*. New York.
- and C. G. HUFF 1940 The genetics of the parasitic Protozoa. Amer. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Publication No. 12.

PART II: TAXONOMY AND
SPECIAL BIOLOGY

CHAPTER 7

Major groups and phylogeny of Protozoa

THE Protozoa are grouped into two subphyla: Plasmodroma (p. 198) and Ciliophora (p. 545). The Plasmodroma are more primitive Protozoa and subdivided into three classes: Mastigophora (p. 198), Sarcodina (p. 328), and Sporozoa (p. 427). The Ciliophora possess more complex body organizations, and are divided into two classes: Ciliata (p. 545) and Suctoria (p. 695).

In classifying Protozoa, the natural system would be one which is based upon the phylogenetic relationships among them in conformity with the doctrine that the present day organisms have descended from primitive ancestral forms through organic evolution. Unlike Metazoa, the great majority of Protozoa now existing do not possess skeletal structures, which condition also seemingly prevailed among their ancestors, and when they die, they disintegrate and leave nothing behind. The exceptions are Foraminifera (p. 394) and Radiolaria (p. 417) which produce multiform varieties of skeletal structures composed of inorganic substances and which are found abundantly preserved as fossils in the earliest fossiliferous strata. These fossils show clearly that the two classes of Sarcodina were already well-differentiated groups at the time of fossilization. The sole information the palaeontological record reveals for our reference is that the differentiation of the major groups of Protozoa must have occurred in an extremely remote period of the earth history. Therefore, consideration of phylogeny of Protozoa had to depend exclusively upon the data obtained through morphological, physiological, and developmental observations of the present-day forms.

The older concept which found its advocates until the beginning of the present century, holds that the Sarcodina are the most primitive of Protozoa. It was supposed that at the very beginning of the living world, there came into being undifferentiated mass of protoplasm which later became differentiated into the nucleus and the cytosome. The Sarcodina represented by amoebae and allied forms do not have any further differentiation and lack a definite body wall, they are, therefore, able to change body form by forming pseudopodia. These pseudopodia are temporary cytoplasmic processes and formed or withdrawn freely, even in the more or less permanent axopodia. On the other hand, flagella and cilia are permanent cell-organs possessing definite structural plans. Thus from

the morphological viewpoint, the advocates of this concept maintained that the Sarcodina are the Protozoa which were most closely related to ancestral forms and which gave rise to Mastigophora, Ciliata, and Sporozoa.

This concept is however difficult to follow, since it does not agree with the general belief that the plant came into existence before the animal; namely, holophytic organisms living on inorganic substances anteceded holozoic organisms living on organic substances. Therefore, from the physiological standpoint the Mastigophora which include a vast number of chlorophyll-bearing forms, must be considered as more primitive than the holozoic Sarcodina. The class Mastigophora is composed of Phytomastigina (chromatophore-bearing flagellates and closely related colorless forms) and Zoomastigina (colorless flagellates). Of the former, Chrysomonadina (p. 200) are mostly naked, and are characterized by possession of 1-2 flagella, 1-2 yellow chromatophores and leucosin. Though holophytic nutrition is general, many are also able to carry on holozoic nutrition. Numerous chrysomonads produce pseudopodia of different types; some possess both flagellum and pseudopodia; others such as Chrysamoeba (p. 203) may show flagellate and ameoboid forms (Klebs; Scherffel); still others, for example, members of Rhizochrysidina (p. 209), may lack flagella completely, though retaining the characteristics of Chrysomonadina. When individuals of Rhizochrysis (p. 210) divide, Scherffel (1901) noticed unequal distribution of the chromatophore resulted in the formation of colorless and colored individuals (Fig. 94, *a*, *b*). Pascher (1917) also observed that in the colonial chrysomonad, Chrysarachnion (p. 210), the division of component individuals produces many in which the chromatophore is entirely lacking (Fig. 94, *c*, *d*). Thus these chrysomonads which lack chromatophores, resemble Sarcodina rather than the parent Chrysomonadina.

Throughout all groups of Phytomastigina, there occur forms which are morphologically alike except the presence or absence of chromatophores. For example, Cryptomonas (p. 214) and Chilomonas (p. 214), the two genera of Cryptomonadina, are so morphologically alike that had it not been for the chromatophore, the former can hardly be distinguished from the latter. Other examples are Euglena, Astasia, and Khawkinia; Chlorogonium and Hyalogonium; Chlamydomonas and Polytoma; etc.

The chromatophores of various Phytomastigina degenerate readily under experimental conditions. For instance, Zumstein (1900) showed that *Euglena gracilis* loses its green coloration even in light

if cultured in fluids rich in organic substances; in a culture fluid with a small amount of organic substances, the organisms retain green color in light, lose it in darkness; and when cultured in a pure inorganic culture fluid, the flagellates remain green even in darkness. Therefore, it would appear reasonable to consider that the morphologically similar forms with or without chromatophores such as are cited above, are closely related to each other phylogenetically, that they should be grouped together in any scheme of classification, and that the apparent heterogeneity among Phytomastigina is due to the natural course of events. The newer concept which is at present followed widely is that the Mastigophora are the most primitive unicellular animal organisms.

Of Mastigophora, Phytomastigina are to be considered on the same ground more primitive than Zoomastigina. According to the studies of Pascher, Scherffel and others, Chrysomonadina appear to be the nearest to ancestral forms from which other groups of Phytomastigina arose. Among Zoomastigina, Rhizomastigina possibly gave rise to Protomonadina, from which Polymastigina and Hypermastigina later arose. The last-mentioned group is the most highly advanced one of Mastigophora in which an increased number of flagella is an outstanding characteristic.

As to the origin of Sarcodina, many arose undoubtedly from various Zoomastigina, but there are indications that they may have evolved directly from Phytomastigina. As was stated already, Rhizochrysidina possess no flagella and the chromatophore often degenerates or is lost through unequal distribution during division, apparently being able to nourish themselves by methods other than holophytic nutrition. Such forms may have given rise to Amoebina. Some chrysomonads such as *Cyrtophora* (p. 203) and *Palatinella*, have axopodia, and it may be considered that they are closer to the ancestral forms from which Heliozoa arose through stages such as shown by *Actinomonas* (p. 265), *Dimorpha* (p. 265), and *Pteridomonas* (p. 265) than any other forms. Another chrysomonad, *Porochrysis* (p. 204), possesses a striking resemblance to Testacea. The interesting marine chrysomonad, *Chrysothylakion* (p. 210) that produces a brownish calcareous test from which extrudes anastomosing rhizopodial network, resembling a monothalamous foraminiferan, and forms such as *Distephanus* (p. 209) with siliceous skeletons, may depict the ancestral forms of Foraminifera and Radiolaria respectively. The flagellate origin of these two groups of Sarcodina is also seen in the appearance of flagellated swimmers during their development. The Mycetozoa show also flagellated phase

during their life cycle, which perhaps suggests their origin in flagellated organisms. In fact, in the chrysomonad *Myxochrysis* (p. 205), Pascher (1917) finds a multinucleate and chromatophore-bearing organism (Fig. 90, *e-j*) that stands intermediate between Chrysomonadina and Mycetozoa. Thus there are a number of morphological, developmental, and physiological observations which suggest the flagellate origin of various Sarcodina.

The Sporozoa appear to be equally polyphyletic. The Telosporidia contain three groups in which flagellated microgametes occur, which suggests their derivation from flagellated organisms. Léger and Duboscq even considered them to have arisen from Bodonidae (p. 289) on the basis of flagellar arrangement. Obviously Gregarinida are the most primitive of the three groups. The occurrence of such a form as *Selenococcidium* (p. 466), would indicate the gregarine-origin of the Coccidia and the members of *Haemogregarinidae* (p. 480) suggest the probable origin of the Haemosporidia in the Coccidia. The Cnidosporidia are characterized by multinucleate trophozoites and by the spore in which at least one polar capsule with a coiled filament occurs. Some consider them as having evolved from Mycetozoa-like organisms, because of the similarity in multinucleate trophozoites, while others compare the polar filament with the flagellum. It is interesting to note here that the nematocyst, similar to the polar capsule, occurs in certain Dinoflagellata (p. 245) independent of flagella. The life cycle of Acnidosporidia is still incompletely known, but the group may have differentiated from such Sarcodina as Mycetozoa.

The Ciliata and Suctorina are distinctly separated from the other groups. They possess the most complex body organization seen among Protozoa. All ciliates possess cilia or cirri which differ from flagella essentially only in size. Apparently Protociliata and Euciliata have different origins, as judged by their morphological and physiological differences. It is probable that Protociliata arose from forms which gave rise to Hypermastigina. Among Euciliata, one finds such forms as *Coleps*, *Urotricha*, *Plagiocampa*, *Microregma*, *Trimyema*, *Anophrys*, etc., which have, in addition to numerous cilia, a long flagellum-like process at the posterior end, and *Ileonema* that possesses an anterior vibratile flagellum and numerous cilia, which also indicates flagellated organisms as their ancestors. It is reasonable to assume that Holotricha are the most primitive ciliates from which Spirotricha, Chonotricha, and Peritricha evolved. The Suctorina are obviously very closely related to Ciliata and most probably arose from ciliated ancestors by loss of cilia during adult stage

and by developing tentacles in some forms from cytostomes as was suggested by Collin (Fig. 13).

References

- BÜTSCHLI, O. 1883-1887 Bronn's Klassen und Ordnungen des Thierreichs. Vol. 1.
- DOFLEIN, F. and E. REICHENOW 1929 *Lehrbuch der Protozoenkunde*. Jena.
- MINCHIN, E. A. 1912 *Introduction to the study of the Protozoa*. London.
- PASCHER, A. 1912 Ueber Rhizopoden- und Palmellastadien bei Flagellaten. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 25.
- 1917 Rhizopodialnetz als Fangvorrichtung bei einer Plasmodialen Chrysomonade. Ibid., Vol. 37.
- 1917 Fusionsplasmodien bei Flagellaten und ihre Bedeutung für die Ableitung der Rhizopoden von den Flagellaten. Ibid.
- 1917 Flagellaten und Rhizopoden in ihren gegenseitigen Beziehungen. Ibid., Vol. 38.
- SCHERFFEL, A. 1901 Kleiner Beitrag zur Phylogenie einiger Gruppen niederer Organismen. Bot. Zeit., Vol. 59.
- ZUMSTEIN, H. 1900 Zur Morphologie von *Euglena gracilis* Klebs. Pringsheims Jahrb., Vol. 34.

CHAPTER 8

Phylum **Protozoa** Goldfuss

Subphylum 1 **Plasmodroma** Doflein

THE Plasmodroma possess pseudopodia which are used for locomotion and food-getting or flagella that serve for cell-organs of locomotion. In Sporozoa, the adult stage does not possess any cell-organs of locomotion. The body structure is less complicated than that of Ciliophora. In some groups, are found various endo- and exo-skeletons. The nucleus is of one kind, but may vary in number. Nutrition is holozoic, holophytic, or saprozoic. Sexual reproduction is exclusively by sexual fusion; asexual reproduction is by binary or multiple fission or budding. The majority are free-living, but numerous parasitic forms occur, Sporozoa being all parasitic.

The Plasmodroma are subdivided into three classes as follows:

Trophozoite with flagellum Class 1 Mastigophora
Trophozoite with pseudopodium Class 2 Sarcodina (p. 328)
Without cell-organs of locomotion; producing spores; all parasitic
. Class 3 Sporozoa (p. 427)

Class 1 **Mastigophora** Diesing

The Mastigophora includes those Protozoa which possess one to several flagella. Aside from this common characteristic, this class makes a very heterogeneous assemblage and seems to prevent a sharp distinction between the Protozoa and the Protophyta, as it includes Phytomastigina which are often dealt with by botanists.

In the majority of Mastigophora, each individual possesses 1-4 flagella during the vegetative stage, although species of Polymastigina may possess up to 8 or more flagella and of Hypermastigina a greater number of flagella. The palmella stage (Fig. 88) is common among the Phytomastigina and the organism is capable in this stage not only of metabolic activity and growth, but also of reproduction. In this respect, this group shows also a close relationship to algae.

All three types of nutrition, carried on separately or in combination, are to be found among the members of Mastigophora. In holophytic forms, the chlorophyll is contained in the chromatophores which are of various forms among different species and which differ in colors, from green to red. The difference in color appears to be due to the pigments which envelop the chlorophyll body (p. 78). Many forms adapt their mode of nutrition to changed environmental con-

ditions; for instance, from holophytic to saprozoic in the absence of the sunlight. Holozoic, saprozoic and holophytic nutrition are said to be combined in such a form as *Ochromonas*. In association with chromatophores, there occurs refractile granules or bodies, the pyrenoids, which are connected with starch-formation. Reserve food substances are starch, oil, etc. (p. 98).

In less complicated forms, the body is naked except for a slight cortical differentiation of the ectoplasm to delimit the body surface and is capable of forming pseudopodia. In others, there occurs a thin plastic pellicle produced by the cytoplasm, which covers the body surface closely. In still others, the body form is constant, being encased in a shell, test, or lorica, which is composed of chitin, pseudo-chitin, or cellulose. Not infrequently a gelatinous secretion envelops the body. In three families of *Protomonadina* there is a collar-like structure located at the anterior end, through which the flagellum protrudes.

The great majority of *Mastigophora* possess a single nucleus, and only a few are multinucleated. The nucleus is vesicular and contains a conspicuous endosome. Contractile vacuoles are always present in the forms inhabiting fresh water. In simple forms, the contents of the vacuoles are discharged directly through the body surface to the exterior; in others there occurs a single contractile vacuole near a reservoir which opens to the exterior through the so-called cytopharynx. In the *Dinoflagellata*, there are apparently no contractile vacuoles, but non-contractile pusules (p. 246) occur in some forms. In chromatophore-bearing forms, there occurs usually a stigma which is located near the base of the flagellum and seems to be the center of phototactic activity of the organism which possesses it.

Asexual reproduction is, as a rule, by longitudinal fission, but in some forms multiple fission also takes place under certain circumstances, and in others budding may take place. Colony-formation (p. 145), due to incomplete separation of daughter individuals, is widely found among this group. Sexual reproduction has been reported in a number of species.

The *Mastigophora* are free-living or parasitic. The free-living forms are found in fresh and salt waters of every description; many are free-swimming, others creep over the surface of submerged objects, and still others are sessile. Together with algae, the *Mastigophora* compose a major portion of plankton life which makes the foundation for the existence of all higher aquatic organisms. The parasitic forms are ecto- or endo-parasitic, and the latter inhabit either the digestive tract or the circulatory system of the host ani-

mal. *Trypanosoma*, a representative genus of the latter group, includes important disease-causing parasites of man and of domestic animals.

The Mastigophora are divided into two subclasses as follows:

With chromatophores Subclass 1 Phytomastigina
Without chromatophores Subclass 2 Zoomastigina (p. 263)

Subclass 1 **Phytomastigina** Doflein

The Phytomastigina possess the chromatophores and their usual method of nutrition is holophytic, though some are holozoic, saprozoic or mixotrophic; the majority are conspicuously colored; some that lack chromatophores are included in this group, since their structure and development resemble closely those of typical Phytomastigina.

1-4 flagella, either directed anteriorly or trailing

Chromatophores yellow, brown or orange

Anabolic products fat, leucosin Order 1 Chrysomonadina

Anabolic products starch or similar carbohydrates
. Order 2 Cryptomonadina (p. 213)

Chromatophores green

Anabolic products starch and oil . Order 3 Phytomonadina (p. 217)

Anabolic products paramylon Order 4 Euglenoidina (p. 232)

Anabolic products oil Order 5 Chloromonadina (p. 243)

2 flagella, one of which transverse Order 6 Dinoflagellata (p. 245)

Order 1 **Chrysomonadina** Stein

The chrysomonads are minute organisms and are plastic, since the majority lack a definite cell-wall. Chromatophores are yellow to brown and usually discoid, though sometimes reticulated, in form. Metabolic products are leucosin and fats. Starches have not been found in them. 1-2 flagella are inserted at or near the anterior end of body where a stigma is present.

Many chrysomonads are able to form pseudopodia for obtaining food materials which vary among different species. Nutrition, though chiefly holophytic, is also holozoic or saprozoic. Contractile vacuoles are invariably found in freshwater forms, and are ordinarily of simple structure.

Under conditions not fully understood, the chrysomonads lose their flagella and undergo division with development of mucilaginous envelope and thus transform themselves often into large bodies known as the palmella phase and undertake metabolic activities as well as multiplication (Fig. 88). Asexual reproduction is, as a rule, by longitudinal division during either the motile or the palmella

stage. Incomplete separation of the daughter individuals followed by repeated fission, results in numerous colonial forms mentioned elsewhere (p. 146). Some resemble higher algae very closely. Sexual

FIG. 88. The life-cycle of *Chromulina*, $\times$ about 200 (Kühn). a, encystment; b, fission; c, colony-formation; d, palmella-formation.

reproduction is unknown in this group. Encystment occurs commonly; in this the flagellum is lost and the cyst is often enveloped by a silicious wall possessing an opening with a plug.

The chrysomonads inhabit both fresh and salt waters, often occurring abundantly in plankton.

Motile stage dominant Suborder 1 *Euchrysomonadina*
Palmella stage dominant

Sarcodina-like; flagellate stage unknown
 Suborder 2 *Rhizochrysidina* (p. 209)
With flagellate phase Suborder 3 *Chrysocapsina* (p. 210)

Suborder 1 *Euchrysomonadina* Pascher

With or without simple shell

One flagellum Family 1 *Chromulinidae*

2 flagella

Flagella equally long Family 2 *Syncryptidae* (p. 205)

Flagella unequally long Family 3 *Ochromonadidae* (p. 206)

With calcareous or silicious shell

Bearing calcareous discs and rods Family 4 *Coccolithidae* (p. 208)

Bearing silicious skeleton Family 5 *Silicoflagellidae* (p. 209)

Family 1 *Chromulinidae* Engler

Minute forms, naked or with sculptured shell; with a single flagellum; often with rhizopodia; a few colonial; free-swimming or attached.

Genus **Chromulina** Cienkowski. Oval; round in cross-section; amoeboid; 1-2 chromatophores; palmella stage often large; in fresh water. Numerous species. The presence of a large number of these organisms gives a golden-brown color to the surface of the water.

FIG. 89. a, b, *Chromulina pascheri*, $\times 670$ (Hofeneder); c, *Chrysopsis sagene*, $\times 1000$ (Pascher); d, *Chrysococcus ornatus*, $\times 600$ (Pascher); e, *Mallomonas litomosa*, $\times 400$ (Stokes); f, *Pyramidochrysis modesta*, $\times 670$ (Pascher); g, *Sphaleromantis ochracea*, $\times 600$ (Pascher); h, *Kephyrion ovum*, $\times 1600$ (Pascher); i, *Chrysopyxis cyathus*, $\times 600$ (Pascher); j, *Cyrtophora pedicellata*, $\times 400$ (Pascher); k, *Palatinella cyrtophora*, $\times 400$ (Lauterborn); l, *Chrysosphaerella longispina*, $\times 600$ (Lauterborn).

C. pascheri Hofeneder (Fig. 89, *a, b*). 15–20 μ in diameter.

Genus **Chrysamoeba** Klebs. Body naked; flagellate stage ovoid, with 2 chromatophores, sometimes slender pseudopodia at the same time; flagellum may be lost and the organism becomes amoeboid, resembling *Rhizochrysis* (p. 210); standing fresh water.

C. radians K. (Fig. 90, *a, b*). Flagellated form 16–20 μ long; amoeboid stage about 15 μ with 10–20 μ long radiating pseudopodia; fresh water.

Genus **Chrysopsis** Pascher. Solitary; plastic or rigid; chromatophore diffused or branching; with stigma; amoeboid movement; holophytic, holozoic; fresh water. Several species.

C. sagene P. (Fig. 89, *c*). Anterior region actively plastic; stigma small; 8–14 μ long; flagellum about 30 μ long.

Genus **Chrysococcus** Klebs. Shell spheroidal or ovoidal, smooth or sculptured and often brown-colored; through an opening a flagellum protrudes; 1–2 chromatophores; one of the daughter individuals formed by binary fission leaves the parent shell and forms a new one; fresh water.

C. ornatus Pascher (Fig. 89, *d*). 14–16 μ by 7–10 μ .

Genus **Mallomonas** Perty (*Pseudomallomonas* Chodat). Body elongated; with silicious scales and often spines; 2 chromatophores rod-shaped; fresh water. Numerous species.

M. litomosa Stokes (Fig. 89, *e*). Scales very delicate, needle-like projections at both ends; flagellum as long as body; 24–32 μ by 8 μ .

Genus **Pyramidochrysis** Pascher. Body form constant; pyriform with 3 longitudinal ridges; flagellate end drawn out; a single chromatophore; 2 contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

P. modesta P. (Fig. 89, *f*). 11–13 μ long.

Genus **Sphaleromantis** Pascher. Triangular or heart-shaped; highly flattened; slightly plastic; 2 chromatophores; 2 contractile vacuoles; stigma large; long flagellum; fresh water.

S. ochracea P. (Fig. 89, *g*). 6–13 μ long.

Genus **Kephyrion** Pascher. With oval or fusiform lorica; body fills posterior half of lorica; one chromatophore; a single short flagellum; small; fresh water.

K. ovum P. (Fig. 89, *h*). Lorica up to 7 μ by 4 μ .

Genus **Chrysopyxis** Stein. With lorica of various forms, more or less flattened; 1–2 chromatophores; a flagellum; attached to algae in fresh water.

C. cyathus Pascher (Fig. 89, *i*). One chromatophore; flagellum twice body length; lorica 20–25 μ by 12–15 μ .

Genus **Cyrtophora** Pascher. Body inverted pyramid with 6–8

axopodia and a single flagellum; with a contractile stalk; a single chromatophore; a contractile vacuole; fresh water.

C. pedicellata P. (Fig. 89, j). Body 18–22 μ long; axopodia 40–60 μ long; stalk 50–80 μ long.

Genus **Palatinella** Lauterborn. Lorica tubular; body heartshaped;

FIG. 90. a, flagellate and b, amoeboid phase of *Chrysamoeba radians*, $\times 670$ (Klebs); c, surface view and d, optical section of *Porochrysis aspergillus*, $\times 400$ (Pascher); e–j, *Myxochrysis paradoxa* (Pascher). e, a medium large plasmodium with characteristic envelop; the large food vacuole contains protophytan, Scenedesmus, $\times 830$; f, diagrammatic side view of a plasmodium, engulfing a diatom; moniliform bodies are yellowish chromatophores, $\times 1000$; g–i, development of swarmer into plasmodium (stippled bodies are chromatophores), $\times 1200$.

anterior border with 16–20 axopodia; a single flagellum; a chromatophore; several contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

P. cyrtophora L. (Fig. 89, k). Lorica 80–150 μ long; body 20–25 μ by 18–25 μ ; axopodia 50 μ long.

Genus **Chrysosphaerella** Lauterborn. In spherical colony, individual cell, oval or pyriform, with 2 chromatophores; imbedded in gelatinous mass; fresh water.

C. longispina L. (Fig. 89, l). Individuals up to 15 μ by 9 μ ; colony up to 250 μ in diameter; in standing water rich in vegetation.

Genus **Porochrysis** Pascher. Shell with several pores through which rhizopodia are extended; a flagellum passes through an apical

pore; a single small chromatophore; leucosin grain, contractile vacuole; fresh water.

P. aspergillus P. (Fig. 90, *c, d*). Shell about 35μ long by 25μ wide; chromatophore very small; a large leucosin grain; fresh water.

Genus **Myxochrysis** Pascher. Body multinucleate, amoeboid; with yellowish moniliform chromatophores, many leucosin granules and contractile vacuoles; holozoic; surrounded by a brownish envelop which conforms with body form; flagellated swimmers develop into multinucleate plasmodium; plasmotomy and plasmogamy; fresh water.

M. paradoxa P. (Fig. 90, *e-j*). Plasmodium $15-18\mu$ or more in diameter; in standing water.

Family 2 Syncryptidae Poche

Solitary or colonial chrysomonads with 2 equal flagella; with or without pellicle (when present, often sculptured); some possess stalk.

Genus **Syncrypta** Ehrenberg. Spherical colonies; individuals with 2 lateral chromatophores, embedded in a gelatinous mass; 2 contractile vacuoles; without stigma; cysts unknown; fresh water.

S. volvox E. (Fig. 91, *a*). $8-14\mu$ by $7-12\mu$; colony $20-70\mu$ in diameter; in standing water.

Genus **Synura** Ehrenberg. Spherical or ellipsoidal colony composed of 2-50 ovoid individuals arranged radially; body usually covered by short bristles; 2 chromatophores lateral; no stigma; asexual reproduction of individuals is by longitudinal division; that of colony by bipartition; cysts spherical; fresh water.

S. uvella E. (Fig. 91, *b*). Cells oval; bristles conspicuous; $20-40\mu$ by $8-17\mu$; colony $100-400\mu$ in diameter; if present in large numbers, the organism is said to be responsible for an odor of the water resembling that of ripe cucumber (Moore).

S. adamsi Smith (Fig. 91, *c*). Spherical colony with individuals radiating; individuals long spindle, $42-47\mu$ by $6.5-7\mu$; 2 flagella up to 17μ long; in fresh water pond.

Genus **Hymenomonas** Stein. Solitary; ellipsoid to cylindrical; membrane brownish, often sculptured; 2 chromatophores; without stigma; a contractile vacuole anterior; fresh water.

H. roscola S. (Fig. 91, *d*). $17-50\mu$ by $10-20\mu$.

Genus **Derepyxis** Stokes. With cellulose lorica, with or without a short stalk; body ellipsoid to spherical with 1-2 chromatophores; 2 equal flagella; fresh water.

D. amphora S. (Fig. 91, *e*). Lorica $25-30\mu$ by $9-18\mu$; on algae in standing water.

D. ollula S. (Fig. 91, f). Lorica 20–25 μ by 15 μ .

Genus **Stylochrysallis** Stein. Body fusiform; with a gelatinous stalk attached to Volvocidae; 2 equal flagella; 2 chromatophores; without stigma; fresh water.

S. parasita S. (Fig. 91, g). Body 9–11 μ long; stalk about 15 μ long; on phytomonads.

FIG. 91. a, *Syncrypta volvox*, $\times 430$ (Stein); b, *Synura uvella*, $\times 500$ (Stein); c, *S. adamsi*, $\times 280$ (Smith); d, *Hymenomonas roseola*, $\times 400$ (Klebs); e, *Derepyxis amphora*, $\times 540$ (Stokes); f, *D. ollula*, $\times 600$ (Stokes); g, *Stylochrysallis parasitica*, $\times 430$ (Stein).

Family 3 Ochromonadidae Pascher

With 2 unequal flagella; no pellicle and plastic; contractile vacuoles simple; with or without a delicate test; solitary or colonial; free-swimming or attached.

Genus **Ochromonas** Wyssotzki. Solitary or colonial; body surface delicate; posterior end often drawn out for attachment; 1–2 chromatophores; usually with a stigma; encystment; fresh water. Many species.

O. mutabilis Klebs (Fig. 92, a). Ovoid to spherical; plastic, 15–30 μ by 8–22 μ .

O. ludibunda Pascher (Fig. 92, b). Not plastic; 12–17 μ by 6–12 μ .

Genus **Uroglena** Ehrenberg. Spherical or ovoidal colony, composed of ovoid or ellipsoidal individuals arranged on periphery of a

gelatinous mass; all individuals connected with one another by gelatinous processes running inward and meeting at a point; with a stigma and a plate-like chromatophore; asexual reproduction of

FIG. 92. a, *Ochromonas mutabilis*, $\times 670$ (Senn); b, *O. ludibunda*, $\times 540$ (Pascher); c, *Uroglena volvox*, $\times 430$ (Stein); d, *Uroglenopsis americana*, $\times 470$ (Lemmermann); e, *Cyclonexis annularis*, $\times 540$ (Stokes); f, *Dinobryon sertularia*, $\times 670$ (Scherffel); g, *Hyalobryon ramosum*, $\times 540$ (Lauterborn); h, *Stylopyxis mucicola*, $\times 470$ (Bolochozew).

individuals by longitudinal fission, that of colony by bipartition; cysts spherical with spinous projections, and a long tubular process; fresh water. One species.

U. volvox E. (Fig. 92, c). Cells $12-20\mu$ by $8-13\mu$; colony $40-400\mu$ in diameter; in standing water.

Genus **Uroglenopsis** Lemmermann. Similar to *Uroglena*, but individuals without inner connecting processes.

U. americana (Calkins) (Fig. 92, d). Each cell with one chromatophore; $5-8\mu$ long; flagellum up to 32μ long; colony up to 300μ

in diameter; when present in abundance, the organism gives an offensive odor to the water (Calkins).

U. europaea Pascher. Similar to the last-named species; but chromatophores 2; cells up to 7μ long; colony $150\text{--}300\mu$ in diameter.

Genus **Cyclonexis** Stokes. Wheel-like colony, composed of 10–20 wedge-shaped individuals; young colony funnel-shaped; chromatophores 2, lateral; no stigma; reproduction and encystment unknown; fresh water.

C. annularis S. (Fig. 92, e). Cells $11\text{--}14\mu$ long; colony $25\text{--}30\mu$ in diameter; in marshy water with sphagnum.

Genus **Dinobryon** Ehrenberg. Solitary or colonial; individuals with vase-like, hyaline, but sometimes, yellowish cellulose test, drawn out at its base; elongated and attached to the base of test with its attenuated posterior tip; 1–2 lateral chromatophores; usually with a stigma; asexual reproduction by binary fission; one of the daughter individuals leaving test as a swarmer, to form a new one; in colonial forms daughter individuals remain attached to the inner margin of aperture of parent tests and there secrete new tests; encystment common; the spherical cysts possess a short process; Ahlstrom (1937) studied variability of North American species and found the organisms occur more commonly in alkaline regions than elsewhere; fresh water. Numerous species.

D. sertularia E. (Fig. 92, f). $30\text{--}44\mu$ by $10\text{--}14\mu$.

D. divergens Imhof. $31\text{--}53\mu$ long; great variation in different localities (Ahlstrom).

Genus **Hyalobryon** Lauterborn. Solitary or colonial; individual body structure similar to that of *Dinobryon*; lorica in some cases tubular, and those of young individuals are attached to the exterior of parent tests; fresh water.

H. ramosum L. (Fig. 92, g). Lorica $50\text{--}70\mu$ long by $5\text{--}9\mu$ in diameter; body up to 30μ by 5μ ; on vegetation in standing fresh water.

Genus **Stylopyxis** Bolochozew. Solitary; body located at bottom of a delicate stalked lorica with a wide aperture; 2 lateral chromatophores; fresh water.

S. mucicola B. (Fig. 92, h). Lorica $17\text{--}18\mu$ long; stalk about 33μ long; body $9\text{--}11\mu$ long; fresh water.

Family 4 Coccolithidae Lohmann

The members of this family occur, with a few exceptions, in salt water only; with perforate (tremalith) or imperforate (discolith) discs, composed of calcium carbonate; 1–2 flagella; 2 yellowish

chromatophores; a single nucleus; oil drops and leucosin; holophytic. Examples:

Pontosphaera haeckeli Lohmann (Fig. 93, a).

Discosphaera tubifer Murray and Blackman (Fig. 93, b).

Family 5 Silicoflagellidae Borgert

Exclusively marine planktons; with siliceous skeleton which envelops the body. Example: *Distephanus speculum* (Müller) (Fig. 93, c).

FIG. 93. a, *Pontosphaera haeckeli*, $\times 1070$ (Kühn); b, *Discosphaera tubifer*, $\times 670$ (Kühn); c, *Distephanus speculum*, $\times 530$ (Kühn); d, *Rhizochrysis scherffeli*, $\times 670$ (Doflein); e-g, *Hydrurus foetidus* (e, entire colony; f, portion; g, cyst), e (Berthold), f, $\times 330$, g, $\times 800$ (Klebs); h, i, *Chrysocapsa paludosa*, $\times 530$ (West); j, k, *Phaeosphaera gelatinosa* (j, part of a mass, $\times 70$; k, three cells, $\times 330$) (West).

Suborder 2 Rhizochrysidina Pascher

No flagellate stage is known to occur; the organism possesses pseudopodia; highly provisional group, based wholly upon the absence of flagella; naked or with test; various forms; in some species chroma-

tophores are entirely lacking, so that the organisms resemble some members of the Sarcodina. Several genera.

Genus **Rhizochrysis** Pascher. Body naked and amoeboid; with 1-2 chromatophores: fresh water.

R. scherffeli P. (Figs. 93, *d*; 94, *a*, *b*). 10-14 μ in diameter; 1-2 chromatophores: branching rhizopods; fresh water.

Genus **Chrysidiastrum** Lauterborn. Naked; spherical; often several in linear association by pseudopodia; one yellow-brown chromatophore; fresh water.

C. catenatum L. Cells 12-14 μ in diameter.

Genus **Chrysarachnion** Pascher. Ameboid organism; with a chromatophore, leucosin grain and contractile vacuole; many individuals arranged in a plane and connected by extremely fine rhizopods, the whole forming a cobweb network. Small animals are trapped by the net; chromatophores are small; nutrition both holophytic and holozoic; during division the chromatophore is often unevenly distributed so that many individuals without any chromatophore are produced; fresh water.

C. insidians P. (Fig. 94, *c*, *d*). Highly amoeboid individuals 3-4 μ in diameter; chromatophore pale yellowish brown, but becomes bluish green upon death of organisms; a leucosin grain and a contractile vacuole; colony made up of 200 or more individuals.

Genus **Chrysothylakion** Pascher. With retort-shaped calcareous shell with a bent neck and an opening; shell reddish brown (with iron) in old individuals; through the aperture are extruded extremely fine anastomosing rhizopods; protoplasm which fills the shell is colorless; a single nucleus, two spindle-form brown chromatophores, several contractile vacuoles and leucosin body; marine water.

C. vorax P. (Fig. 94, *e*, *f*). The shell measures 14-18 μ long, 7-10 μ broad, and 5-6 μ high; on marine algae.

Suborder 3 **Chrysocapsina** Pascher

Palmella stage prominent; flagellate forms transient; colonial; individuals enclosed in a gelatinous mass; 1-2 flagella, one chromatophore, and a contractile vacuole; one group of relatively minute forms and the other of large organisms.

Genus **Hydrurus** Agardh. In a large (1-30 cm. long) branching gelatinous cylindrical mass; cells yellowish brown; spherical to ellipsoidal; with a chromatophore; individuals arranged loosely in gelatinous matrix; apical growth resembles much higher algae; multiplication of individuals results in formation of pyramidal forms

with a flagellum, a chromatophore, and a leucosin mass; cyst may show a wing-like rim; cold freshwater streams.

FIG. 94. a, b, *Rhizochrysis scherffeli*, $\times 500$ (Scherffel). a, 4 chromatophore-bearing individuals and an individual without chromatophore; b, the last-mentioned individual after 7 hours. c, d, *Chrysarachnion insidians* (Pascher). c, part of a colony composed of individuals with and without chromatophore, $\times 1270$; d, products of division, one individual lacks chromatophore, but with a leucosin body, $\times 2530$. e, f, *Chrysothylakion vorax* (Pascher). e, an individual with anastomosing rhizopodia and "excretion granules," $\times 870$; f, optical section of an individual; the cytoplasm contains two fusiform brownish chromatophores, a spheroid nucleus, a large leucosin body and contractile vacuole, $\times$ about 1200.

H. foetidus Kirschner (Figs. 31, *d-f*; 93, *e-g*). Olive-green, feathery tufts, 1–30 cm. long, develops an offensive odor; sticky to touch; occasionally encrusted with calcium carbonate; in running fresh water.

Genus **Chrysocapsa** Pascher. In a spherical to ellipsoidal gelatinous mass; cells spherical to ellipsoid; 1–2 chromatophores; with or without stigma; freshwater.

C. paludosa P. (Fig. 93, *h, i*). Spherical or ellipsoidal with cells distributed without order; with a stigma; 2 chromatophores; swarmer pyriform with 2 flagella; cells 11μ long; colony up to 100μ in diameter.

Genus **Phaeosphaera** West and West. In a simple or branching cylindrical gelatinous mass; cells spherical with a single chromatophore; fresh water.

P. gelatinosa W. and W. (Fig. 93, *j, k*). Cells $14\text{--}17.5\mu$ in diameter.

References

- BÜTSCHLI, O. 1883–1887 *Mastigophora*. In: Bronn's *Klassen und Ordnungen des Thierreichs*. Vol. 1, part 2.
- DOFLEIN, F. and E. REICHENOW. 1929 *Lehrbuch der Protozoenkunde*. Jena.
- KENT, S. 1880–1882 *A manual of Infusoria*. London.
- PASCHER, A. 1914 *Flagellatae: Allgemeiner Teil*. In: *Die Süßwasserflora Deutschlands*. Part 1.
- STEIN, F. 1878, 1883 *Der Organismus der Infusionsthiere*. 3 Abt. *Der Organismus der Flagellate oder Geisselinfusorien*. Parts 1 and 2. Leipzig.
-
- AHLSTROM, E. H. 1937 Studies on variability in the genus *Dinobryon* (*Mastigophora*). *Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc.*, Vol. 56.
- FRITSCH, F. E. 1935 *The structure and reproduction of the algae*. Cambridge.
- PASCHER, A. 1916 Studien über die rhizopodiale Entwicklung der Flagellaten. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 36.
- 1917 Rhizopodialnetz als Fangvorrichtung bei einer plasmodialen Chrysomonade. *Ibid.*, Vol. 37.
- 1917 Fusionsplasmodien bei Flagellaten und ihre Bedeutung für die Ableitung der Rhizopoden von den Flagellaten. *Ibid.*
- 1917 Flagellaten und Rhizopoden in ihren gegenseitigen Beziehungen. *Ibid.*, Vol. 38.
- SCHERFFEL, A. 1901 Kleiner Beitrag zur Phylogenie einiger Gruppen niederer Organismen. *Bot. Zeit.*, Vol. 59.
- SMITH, G. M. 1933 *The freshwater algae of the United States*. New York.
- WEST, G. S. and F. E. FRITSCH 1927 *A treatise on the British freshwater algae*. Cambridge.

CHAPTER 9

Order 2 *Cryptomonadina* Stein

THE cryptomonads differ from the chrysomonads in having a constant body form. Pseudopodia are very rarely formed, as the body is covered by a pellicle. The majority show dorso-ventral differentiation, with an oblique longitudinal furrow. 1-2 unequal flagella arise from the furrow or from the cytopharynx. In case 2 flagella are present, both may be directed anteriorly or one posteriorly. These organisms are free-swimming or creeping.

One or two chromatophores are usually present. They are discoid or band-form. The color of chromatophores varies: yellow, brown, red, olive-green. The nature of the pigment is not well understood, but it is said to be similar to that which is found in the *Dinoflagellata* (Pascher). One or more spherical pyrenoids which are enclosed within a starch envelope appear to occur outside the chromatophores. Nutrition is mostly holophytic; a few are saprozoic or holozoic. Assimilation products are solid discoid carbohydrates which stain blue with iodine in *Cryptomonas* or which stain reddish violet by iodine as in *Cryptochrysis*; fat and starch are produced in holozoic forms which feed upon bacteria and small Protozoa. The stigma is usually associated with the insertion point of the flagella. Contractile vacuoles, one to several, are simple and are situated near the cytopharynx. A single vesicular nucleus is ordinarily located near the middle of the body.

Asexual reproduction, by longitudinal fission, takes place in either the active or the non-motile stage. Sexual reproduction is unknown. Some cryptomonads form palmella stage and others gelatinous aggregates. In the suborder *Phaeocapsina*, the palmella stage is permanent. Cysts are spherical, and the cyst wall is composed of cellulose. The *Cryptomonadina* occur in fresh or sea water, living also often as symbionts in marine organisms.

Flagellate forms predominant.....Suborder 1 *Eucryptomonadina*
Palmella stage permanent.....Suborder 2 *Phaeocapsina* (p. 216)

Suborder 1 *Eucryptomonadina* Pascher

Truncate anteriorly; 2 anterior flagella; with an oblique furrow near anterior end.....Family 1 *Cryptomonadidae* (p. 214)
Reniform; with 2 lateral flagella; furrow equatorial.....
.....Family 2 *Nephroselmidae* (p. 215)

Family 1 **Cryptomonadidae** Stein

Genus **Cryptomonas** Ehrenberg. Body elliptical with a firm pellicle; anterior end truncate; dorsal side convex, ventral side slightly so or flat; nucleus posterior; longitudinal furrow; tubular cavity extending to the middle of body, through which equally long flagella arise; 2 lateral chromatophores vary in color from green to blue-green, brown or rarely red; holophytic; with small starch-like bodies

FIG. 95. a, *Cryptomonas ovata*, $\times 800$ (Pascher); b, *Chilomonas paramecium*, $\times 1330$ (Bütschli); c, d, *Chrysidella schaudinni*, $\times 1330$ (Winter); e, *Cyathomonas truncata*, $\times 670$ (Ulehl); f, *Cryptochrysis commutata*, $\times 670$ (Pascher); g, *Rhodomonas lens*, $\times 1330$ (Ruttner); h, *Nephroselmis olvacea*, $\times 670$ (Pascher); i, *Protochrysis phaeophycearum*, $\times 800$ (Pascher); j, k, *Phaeothamnion confervicolum*, $\times 600$ (Kühn).

which stain blue in iodine; 1-3 contractile vacuoles anterior; fresh water. Several species.

C. ovata E. (Fig. 95, a). 20-30 μ long; among vegetation.

Genus **Chilomonas** Ehrenberg. Similar to *Cryptomonas* in general body form and structure, but colorless because of the absence of chromatophores; without pyrenoid; cytopharynx deep, lower half marked by "rudimentary trichocysts"; 1-2 contractile vacuoles, anterior; nucleus in posterior half; endoplasm often filled with polygonal starch grains; fresh water.

C. paramecium E. (Fig. 95, b). Posterior end narrowed, slightly bent "dorsally"; 20-40 μ long; saprozoic; widely distributed in stagnant water and hay infusion.

C. oblonga Pascher. Oblong; posterior end broadly rounded; 20–50 μ long.

Genus **Chrysidella** Pascher. Somewhat similar to *Cryptomonas*, but much smaller; yellow chromatophores much shorter; those occurring in Foraminifera or Radiolaria as symbionts are known as **Zooxanthellae**. Several species.

C. schaudinni (Winter) (Fig. 95, c, d). Body less than 10 μ long; in the foraminiferan *Peneroplis pertusus*.

Genus **Cyathomonas** Fromentel. Body small, somewhat oval; without chromatophores; much flattened; anterior end obliquely truncate; with 2 equal or subequal anterior flagella; colorless; nucleus central; anabolic products, stained red or reddish violet by iodine; contractile vacuole usually anterior; a row of refractile granules, protrichocysts (p. 65), close and parallel to anterior margin of body; asexual reproduction by longitudinal fission; holozoic; in stagnant water and infusion. One species.

C. truncata Ehrenberg (Fig. 95, e). 15–30 μ long.

Genus **Cryptochrysis** Pascher. Furrow indistinctly granulated; 2 or more chromatophores brownish, olive-green, or dark green, rarely red; pyrenoid central; 2 equal flagella; some lose flagella and may assume amoeboid form; fresh water.

C. commutata P. (Fig. 95, f). Bean-shaped; 2 chromatophores; 19 μ by 10 μ .

Genus **Rhodomonas** Karsten. Furrow granulated; chromatophore one, red (upon degeneration the coloring matter becomes dissolved in water); pyrenoid central; fresh water.

R. lens Pascher and Ruttner (Fig. 95, g). Spindle-form; about 16 μ long; in fresh water.

Family 2 Nephroselmidae Pascher

Body reniform; with lateral equatorial furrow; 2 flagella arising from furrow, one directed anteriorly and the other posteriorly.

Genus **Nephroselmis** Stein. Reniform; flattened; furrow and cytopharynx distinct; no stigma; 1–2 chromatophores, discoid, brownish green; nucleus dorsal; a central pyrenoid; 2 contractile vacuoles; with reddish globules; fresh water.

N. olvacea S. (Fig. 95, h). 20–25 μ by 15 μ .

Genus **Protochrysis** Pascher. Reniform; not flattened; with a distinct furrow, but without cytopharynx; a stigma at base of flagella; 1–2 chromatophores, brownish yellow; pyrenoid central; 2 contractile vacuoles; fission seems to take place during the resting stage; fresh water.

P. phaeophycearum P. (Fig. 95, *i*). 15–17 μ by 7–9 μ .

Suborder 2 **Phaeocapsina** Pascher

Palmella stage predominant; perhaps border-line forms between brown algae and cryptomonads. Example: *Phaeothamnion confervicolum* Lagerheim (Fig. 95, *j, k*) which is less than 10 μ long.

References

- FRITSCH, F. E. 1935 *The structure and reproduction of the algae*. Cambridge.
PASCHER, A. 1913 *Cryptomonadinae. Süßwasserflora Deutschlands*, etc. part 2. Jena.
WEST, G. S. and F. E. FRITSCH. 1927 *A treatise on the British fresh-water algae*. Cambridge.

CHAPTER 10

Order 3 **Phytomonadina** Blochmann

THE phytomonads are small, more or less rounded, green flagellates, with a close resemblance to the algae. They show a definite body form, and most of them possess a cellulose membrane, which is thick in some and thin in others. There is a distinct opening in the membrane at the anterior end, through which 1-2 (or seldom 4 or more) flagella protrude. The majority possess numerous grass-green chromatophores, each of which contains one or more pyrenoids. The method of nutrition is mostly holophytic or mixotrophic; some colorless forms are, however, saprozoic. The metabolic products are usually starch and oils. Some phytomonads are stained red, owing to the presence of haematochrome. The contractile vacuoles may be located in the anterior part or scattered throughout the body. The nucleus is ordinarily centrally located, and its division seems to be mitotic, chromosomes having been definitely noted in several species.

Asexual reproduction is by longitudinal fission, and the daughter individuals remain within the parent membrane for some time. Sexual reproduction seems to occur widely. Colony formation also occurs, especially in the family Volvocidae. Encystment and formation of the palmella stage are common among many forms. The phytomonads have a much wider distribution in fresh than in salt water.

Solitary

- Membrane a single piece; rarely indistinct
 - 2 flagella Family 1 Chlamydomonadidae
 - 3 flagella Family 2 Trichlorididae (p. 222)
 - 4 flagella Family 3 Carteriidae (p. 222)
 - 5 flagella Family 4 Chlorasteridae (p. 224)
 - 6 or more flagella Family 5 Polyblepharididae (p. 224)
- Membrane bivalve Family 6 Phacotidae (p. 225)
- Colonial, of 4 or more individuals; 2 (1 or 4) flagella
 - Family 7 Volvocidae (p. 225)

Family 1 **Chlamydomonadidae** Bütschli

Solitary; spheroid, oval, or ellipsoid; with a cellulose membrane; 2 flagella; chromatophores, stigma, and pyrenoids usually present.

Genus **Chlamydomonas** Ehrenberg. Spherical, ovoid or elongated; sometimes flattened; 2 flagella; membrane often thickened at anterior end; a large chromatophore, containing one or more pyrenoids; stigma; a single nucleus; 2 contractile vacuoles anterior; asexual

reproduction and palmella formation known; sexual reproduction isogamy or anisogamy; fresh water. Numerous species.

C. monadina Stein (Fig. 96, *a-c*). 15–30 μ long; fresh water; Landaere noted that the organisms obstructed the sand filters used in connection with a septic tank, together with the diatom *Navicula*.

C. angulosa Dill. About 20 μ by 12–15 μ ; fresh water.

C. epiphytica Smith (Fig. 96, *d*). 8–9 μ by 7–8 μ ; in freshwater lakes.

C. globosa Snow (Fig. 96, *e*). Spheroid or ellipsoid; 5–7 μ in diameter; in freshwater lakes.

C. gracilis S. (Fig. 96, *f*). 10–13 μ by 5–7 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Haematococcus** Agardh (*Sphaerella* Sommerfeldt). Spheroidal or ovoid with a gelatinous envelope; chromatophore peripheral and reticulate, with 2–8 scattered pyrenoids; several contractile vacuoles; haematochrome frequently abundant in both motile and encysted stages; asexual reproduction in motile form; sexual reproduction isogamy; fresh water.

H. pluviialis (Flotow) (Figs. 40; 96, *g*). Spherical; with numerous radial cytoplasmic processes; chromatophore U-shape in optical section; body 8–50 μ , stigma fusiform, lateral; fresh water. Reichenow (1909) noticed the disappearance of haematochrome if the culture medium was rich in nitrogen and phosphorus. In bacteria-free cultures, Elliott (1934) observed 4 types of cells: large and small flagellates, palmella stage and haematocysts. Large flagellates predominate in liquid cultures, but when conditions become unfavorable, palmella stage and then haematocysts develop. When the cysts are placed in a favorable environment after exposure to freezing, desiccation, etc., they give rise to small flagellates which grow into palmella stage or large flagellates. No syngamy of small flagellates was noticed. Haematochrome appears during certain phases in sunlight and its appearance is accelerated by sodium acetate under sunlight.

Genus **Sphaerellopsis** Korschikoff (*Chlamydococcus* Stein). With gelatinous envelope which is usually ellipsoid with rounded ends; body elongate fusiform or pyriform, no protoplasmic processes to envelope; 2 equally long flagella; chromatophore large; a pyrenoid; with or without stigma; nucleus in anterior half; 2 contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

S. fluviatilis (Stein) (Fig. 96, *h*). 14–30 μ by 10–20 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Brachiomonas** Bohlin. Lobate; with horn-like processes, all directed posteriorly; contractile vacuoles; ill-defined chromatophore; pyrenoids; with or without stigma; sexual and asexual reproduction; fresh, brackish or salt water.

FIG. 96. a-c, *Chlamydomonas monadina*, $\times 470$ (Goroschankin); d, *C. epiphytica*, $\times 1030$ (Smith); e, *C. globosa*, $\times 2000$ (Snow); f, *C. gracilis*, $\times 770$ (Snow); g, *Haematococcus pluvialis*, $\times 500$ (Reichenow); h, *Sphaerellopsis fluviatilis*, $\times 490$ (Korschikoff); i, *Brachiomonas westiana* $\times 960$ (West); j, *Lobomonas rostrata*, $\times 1335$ (Hazen); k, *Diplostauron pentagonium*, $\times 1110$ (Hazen); l, *Gigantochloris permaxima*, $\times 370$ (Pascher); m, *Gloeomonas ovalis*, $\times 330$ (Pascher); n, *Scourfieldia complanata*, $\times 1540$ (West); o, *Thorakomonas sabulosa*, $\times 670$ (Korschikoff).

B. westiana Pascher (Fig. 96, i). $15\text{--}24\mu$ by $13\text{--}23\mu$; brackish water.

Genus **Lobomonas** Dangeard. Ovoid or irregularly angular; chromatophore cup-shaped; pyrenoid; stigma; a contractile vacuole; fresh water.

L. rostrata Hazen (Fig. 96, *j*). 5–12 μ by 4–8 μ .

Genus **Diplostauron** Korschikoff. Rectangular with raised corners; 2 equally long flagella; chromatophore; one pyrenoid; stigma; 2 contractile vacuoles anterior; fresh water.

D. pentagonium (Hazen) (Fig. 96, *k*). 10–13 μ by 9–10 μ .

Genus **Gigantochloris** Pascher. Unusually large form, equalling in size a colony of *Eudorina*; flattened; oval in front view; elongate ellipsoid in profile; membrane radially striated; 2 flagella widely apart, less than body length; chromatophore in network; numerous pyrenoids; often without stigma; in woodland pools.

G. permaxima P. (Fig. 96, *l*). 70–150 μ by 40–80 μ by 25–50 μ .

Genus **Gloeomonas** Klebs. Broadly ovoid, nearly subspherical; with a delicate membrane and a thin gelatinous envelope; 2 flagella widely apart; chromatophores numerous, circular or oval discs; pyrenoids (?); stigma; 2 contractile vacuoles anterior; fresh water.

G. ovalis K. (Fig. 96, *m*). 38–42 μ by 23–33 μ ; gelatinous envelope over 2 μ thick.

Genus **Scourfieldia** West. Whole body flattened; ovoid in front view; membrane delicate; 2 flagella 2–5 times body length; a chromatophore; without pyrenoid or stigma; contractile vacuole anterior; nucleus central; fresh water.

S. complanata W. (Fig. 96, *n*). 5.2–5.7 μ by 4.4–4.6 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Thorakomonas** Korschikoff. Flattened; somewhat irregularly shaped or ellipsoid in front view; membrane thick, enclusted with iron-bearing material, deep brown to black in color; protoplasmic body similar to that of *Chlamydomonas*; a chromatophore with a pyrenoid; 2 contractile vacuoles; standing fresh water.

T. sabulosa K. (Fig. 96, *o*). Up to 16 μ by 14 μ .

Genus **Coccomonas** Stein. Shell smooth; globular; body not filling intracapsular space; stigma; contractile vacuole; asexual reproduction into 4 individuals; fresh water.

C. orbicularis S. (Fig. 97, *a*). 18–25 μ in diameter; fresh water.

Genus **Chlorogonium** Ehrenberg. Fusiform; membrane thin and adheres closely to protoplasmic body; plate-like chromatophores usually present, sometimes ill-contoured; one or more pyrenoids; numerous scattered contractile vacuoles; usually a stigma; a central nucleus; asexual reproduction by 2 successive transverse fissions during the motile phase; isogamy reported; fresh water.

C. euchlorum E. (Fig. 97, *b*). 25–70 μ by 4–15 μ ; in stagnant water.

Genus **Phyllomonas** Korschikoff. Extremely flattened; membrane delicate; 2 flagella; chromatophore often faded or indistinct; numerous pyrenoids; with or without stigma; many contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

P. phacoides K. (Fig. 97, c). Leaf-like; rotation movement; up to 100μ long; in standing fresh water.

Genus **Sphaenochloris** Pascher. Body truncate or concave at flagellate end in front view; sharply pointed in profile; 2 flagella widely apart; chromatophore large; pyrenoid; stigma; contractile vacuole anterior; fresh water.

S. printzi P. (Fig. 97, d). Up to 18μ by 9μ .

Genus **Korschikoffia** Pascher. Elongate pyriform with an undulating outline; anterior end narrow, posterior end more bluntly

FIG. 97. a, *Coccomonas orbicularis*, $\times 500$ (Stein); b, *Chlorogonium euchlorum*, $\times 430$ (Jacobsen); c, *Phyllomonas phacoides*, $\times 200$ (Korschikoff); d, *Sphaenochloris printzi*, $\times 600$ (Printz); e, *Korschikoffia guttula*, $\times 1670$ (Pascher); f, *Furcilla lobosa*, $\times 670$ (Stokes); g, *Hyalogonium klebsi*, $\times 470$ (Klebs); h, *Polytoma uwella*, $\times 670$ (Dangeard); i, *Parapolytoma satura*, $\times 1600$ (Jameson); j, *Trichloris paradoxa*, $\times 990$ (Pascher).

rounded; plastic; chromatophores in posterior half; stigma absent; contractile vacuole anterior; 2 equally long flagella; nucleus nearly central; salt water.

K. guttula P. (Fig. 97, e). $6-10\mu$ by 5μ ; brackish water.

Genus **Furcilla** Stokes. U-shape, with 2 posterior processes; in side view somewhat flattened; anterior end with a papilla; 2 flagella equally long; 1-2 contractile vacuoles anterior; oil droplets; fresh water.

F. lobosa S. (Fig. 97, f). $11-14\mu$ long; fresh water.

Genus **Hyalogonium** Pascher. Elongate spindle-form; anterior end bluntly rounded; posterior end more pointed; 2 flagella; protoplasm

colorless; with starch granules; a stigma; asexual reproduction results in up to 8 daughter cells; fresh water.

H. klebsi P. (Fig. 97, *g*). 30–80 μ by up to 10 μ ; stagnant water.

Genus **Polytoma** Ehrenberg (*Chlamydolepharis* Francé; *Tussetia* Pascher). Ovoid; no chromatophores; membrane yellowish to brown; pyrenoid unobserved; 2 contractile vacuoles; 2 flagella about body length; stigma if present, red or pale-colored; many starch bodies and oil droplets in posterior half of body; asexual reproduction in motile stage; isogamy; saprozoic; in stagnant fresh water.

P. uvella E. (Figs. 8, *e*; 97, *h*). Oval to pyriform; stigma may be absent; 15–30 μ by 9–20 μ .

Genus **Parapolytoma** Jameson. Anterior margin obliquely truncate, resembling a cryptomonad, but without chromatophores; without stigma and starch; division into 4 individuals within envelope; fresh water.

P. satura J. (Fig. 97, *i*). About 15 μ by 10 μ ; fresh water.

Family 2 Trichlorididae

With three flagella.

Genus **Trichloris** Scherffel and Pascher. Bean-shape; flagellate side flattened or concave; opposite side convex; chromatophore large, covering convex side; 2 pyrenoids surrounded by starch granules; a stigma near posterior end of chromatophore; nucleus central; numerous contractile vacuoles scattered; 3 flagella near anterior end.

T. paradoxa S and P. (Fig. 97, *j*). 12–15 μ broad by 10–12 μ high; flagella up to 30 μ long.

Family 3 Carteriidae

With four flagella arising from anterior pole.

Genus **Carteria** Diesing (*Corbierea*, *Pithiscus* Dangeard; *Tetramastix* Korschikoff). Ovoid, chromatophore cup-shaped; pyrenoid; stigma; 2 contractile vacuoles; fresh water. Numerous species.

C. cordiformis (Carter) (Fig. 98, *a*). Heart-shaped in front view; ovoid in profile; chromatophore large; 18–23 μ by 16–20 μ .

C. ellipsoidalis Bold. Ellipsoid; chromatophore; a small stigma; division into 2, 4, or 8 individuals in encysted stage; 6–24 μ long; fresh water, Maryland (Bold, 1938).

Genus **Pyramimonas** Schmarda (*Pyramidomonas* Stein). Small pyramidal or heart-shaped body; with bluntly drawn-out posterior end; usually 4 ridges in anterior region; 4 flagella; green chromato-

phores cup-shaped; with or without stigma; with a large pyrenoid in the posterior part; contractile vacuoles in the anterior portion; fresh water. Several species.

P. tetrarhynchus S. (Fig. 98, b). 20–28 μ by 12–18 μ ; fresh water; Wisconsin (Smith, 1933).

P. montana Geitler. Bluntly conical; anterior end 4-lobed or truncate; posterior end narrowly rounded; plastic; pyriform nucleus

FIG. 98. a, *Carteria cordiformis*, $\times 600$ (Dill); b, *Pyramimonas tetra-rhynchus*, $\times 400$ (Dill); c, d, *Polytomella agilis*, $\times 1000$ (Doflein); e, *Spirogonium chlorogonioides*, $\times 670$ (Pascher); f, *Tetrablepharis multifilis*, $\times 670$ (Pascher); g, *Spermatozopsis exultans*, $\times 1630$ (Pascher); h, *Chlo-raster gyrans*, $\times 670$ (Stein); i, *Polyblepharides singularis*, $\times 870$ (Dan-gear); j, k, *Pocillomonas flos aquae*, $\times 920$ (Steinecke); l, m, *Phacotus lenticularis*, $\times 430$ (Stein); n, *Pteromonas angulosa*, $\times 670$ (West); o, p, *Dymorphococcus variabilis*, $\times 1000$ (Bold).

anterior, closely associated with 4 flagella; stigma; 2 contractile vacuoles anterior; chromatophore cup-shaped, granular, with scattered starch grains and oil droplets; a pyrenoid with a ring of small starch grains; 17–22.5 μ long (Geitler); 12–20 μ by 8–16 μ (Bold); flagella about body length; fresh water, Maryland (Bold, 1938).

Genus **Polytomella** Aragão. Ellipsoid, or oval, with a small papilla at anterior end, where 4 equally long flagella arise; with or without stigma; starch; fresh water.

P. agilis A. (Fig. 98, *c, d*). Numerous starch grains; 8–18 μ by 5–9 μ ; flagella 12–17 μ long; fresh water; hay infusion.

P. caeca Pringsheim. Ovoid with bluntly pointed posterior end; 12–20 μ by 10–12 μ ; membrane delicate; a small papilla at anterior end; no stigma; two contractile vacuoles below papilla; cytoplasm ordinarily filled with starch grains; fresh water.

Genus **Medusochloris** Pascher. Hollowed hemisphere with 4 processes, each bearing a flagellum at its lower edge; a lobed plate-shaped chromatophore; without pyrenoid below convex surface. One species.

M. phiale P. In salt water pools with decaying algae in the Baltic.

Genus **Spirogonium** Pascher. Body spindle-form; membrane delicate; flagella a little longer than body; chromatophore conspicuous; a pyrenoid; stigma anterior; 2 contractile vacuoles; fresh water. One species.

S. chlorogonioides (P). (Fig. 98, *e*). Body up to 25 μ by 15 μ .

Genus **Tetrapharix** Senn. Ellipsoid to ovoid; pyrenoid present; fresh water.

T. multifilis (Klebs) (Fig. 98, *f*). 12–20 μ by 8–15 μ ; stagnant water.

Genus **Spermatozopsis** Korschikoff. Sickle-form; bent easily, occasionally plastic; chromatophore mostly on convex side; a distinct stigma at more rounded anterior end; flagella equally long; 2 contractile vacuoles anterior; fresh water infusion.

S. exultans K. (Fig. 98, *g*). 7–9 μ long; also biflagellate; in fresh water with algae, leaves, etc.

Family 4 Chlorasteridae

With 5 flagella arising from anterior pole.

Genus **Chloraster** Ehrenberg. Similar to *Pyramimonas*, but anterior half with a conical envelope drawn out at four corners; with 5 flagella; fresh or salt water.

C. gyrans E. (Fig. 98, *h*). Up to 18 μ long; standing water; also reported from salt water.

Family 5 Polyblepharididae Dangeard

With 6 or more flagella arising from anterior end.

Genus **Polyblepharides** Dangeard. Ellipsoid or ovoid; flagella 6–8, shorter than body length; chromatophore; a pyrenoid; a central nucleus; 2 contractile vacuoles anterior; cysts; a questionable genus; fresh water.

P. singularis D. (Fig. 98, *i*). 10–14 μ by 8–9 μ .

Genus **Pocillomonas** Steinecke. Ovoid with broadly concave anterior end; covered with gelatinous substance with numerous small projections; 6 flagella; chromatophores disc-shaped; 2 contractile vacuoles anterior; nucleus central; starch bodies; without pyrenoid.

P. flos aquae S. (Fig. 98, *j, k*). 13 μ by 10 μ ; fresh water pools.

Family 6 Phacotidae Poche

The shell typically composed of 2 valves; 2 flagella protrude from anterior end; with stigma and chromatophores; asexual reproduction within the shell; valves may become separated from each other owing to an increase in gelatinous contents.

Genus **Phacotus** Perty. Oval to circular in front view; lenticular in profile; protoplasmic body does not fill dark-colored shell completely; flagella protrude through a foramen; asexual reproduction into 2 to 8 individuals; fresh water.

P. lenticularis (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 98, *l, m*). 13–20 μ in diameter; in stagnant water.

Genus **Pteromonas** Seligo. Body broadly winged in plane of suture of 2 valves; protoplasmic body fills shell; chromatophore cup-shaped; one or more pyrenoids; stigma; 2 contractile vacuoles; asexual reproduction into 2–4 individuals; sexual reproduction by isogamy; zygotes usually brown; fresh water. Several species.

P. angulosa (Lemmermann) (Fig. 98, *n*). With a rounded wing and 4 protoplasmic projections in profile; 13–17 μ by 9–20 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Dysmorphococcus** Takeda. Circular in front view; anterior region narrowed; posterior end broad; shell distinctly flattened posteriorly, ornamented by numerous pores; sutural ridge without pores; 2 flagella; 2 contractile vacuoles; stigma, pyrenoid, cup-shaped chromatophore; nucleus; multiplication by binary fission; fresh water.

D. variabilis T. (Fig. 98, *o, p*). Shell 14–19 μ by 13–17 μ ; older shells dark brown; fresh water; Maryland (Bold, 1938).

Family 7 Volvocidae Ehrenberg

An interesting group of colonial flagellates; individual similar to Chlamydomonadidae, with 2 equally long flagella (one in *Mastigospheera*; 4 in *Spondylomorom*), green chromatophores, pyrenoids, stigma, and contractile vacuoles; body covered by a cellulose membrane and not plastic; colony or coenobium is discoid or spherical; exclusively freshwater inhabitants.

Genus *Volvox* Linnaeus. Often large spherical or subspherical colonies, consisting of a large number of cells which are differentiated into somatic and reproductive cells; somatic cells numerous, embedded in gelatinous matrix, and contains a chromatophore, one or more pyrenoids, a stigma and several contractile vacuoles; in some species protoplasmic connections occur between adjacent cells; generative cells few and large. Both mono- and bi-sexual reproductions occur; monosexual gametes usually fewer and larger in size than bisexual ones, each producing a young colony by repeated division; bisexual reproduction anisogamy; zygotes usually brownish red in color, with smooth, undulating, or spinous envelopes; fresh water. Many species. Smith (1944) made a comprehensive study of the known species.

V. globator L. (Fig. 99, a). Monoecious. Sexual colonies 350–500 μ in diameter; 5000–15,000 cells, with cytoplasmic connections; 3–7 microgametocytes, each of which develops into over 250 microgametes; 10–40 macrogametes; zygotes 35–45 μ in diameter, covered with many sharply pointed spines. Parthenogenetic colonies 400–600 μ in diameter; 4–10 gonidia, 10–13 μ in diameter; young colonies up to 250 μ . Europe and North America.

V. aureus Ehrenberg (Figs. 72; 99, b). Dioecious. Male colonies 300–350 μ in diameter; 1000–1500 cells, with cytoplasmic connections; numerous microgametocytes; clusters of some 32 microgametes, 15–18 μ in diameter. Female colonies 300–400 μ ; 2000–3000 cells; 10–14 macrogametes; zygotes 40–60 μ with smooth surface. Parthenogenetic colonies up to 500 μ ; 4–12 gonidia; young colonies 150 μ in diameter. Europe and North America.

V. tertius Meyer. Dioecious. Male colonies up to 170 μ in diameter; 180–500 cells, without cytoplasmic connections; about 50 microgametocytes. Female colonies up to 500 μ ; 500–2000 cells; 2–12 macrogametes; zygotes 60–65 μ with smooth wall. Parthenogenetic colonies up to 600 μ in diameter; 500–2000 cells; 2–12 gonidia. Europe and North America.

V. spermatosphaera Powers. Dioecious. Male colonies up to 100 μ in diameter; cells, without connection, up to 128, each becoming microgametocyte. Female colonies up to 500 μ in diameter; 6–16 macrogametes; zygotes 35–45 μ ; with smooth membrane. Parthenogenetic colonies up to 650 μ in diameter; 8–10 gonidia; young colonies ellipsoid, up to 100 μ in diameter. North America.

V. weismannia P. Dioecious. Male colonies 100–150 μ in diameter; 250–500 cells; 6–50 microgametocytes; clusters of microgametes (up to 128) discoid, 12–15 μ in diameter. Female colonies up to 400 μ ;

FIG. 99. a, *Volvox globator*, $\times 200$ (Janet); b, *V. aureus*, $\times 110$ (Klein); c, *Gonium sociale*, $\times 270$ (Chlordat); d, *G. pectorale*, $\times 670$ (Hartmann); e, *G. formosum*, $\times 600$ (Pascher).

2000–3000 cells; 8–24 macrogametes; zygotes 30–50 μ in diameter, with reticulate ridges on shell. Parthenogenetic colonies up to 400 μ ; 1500–3000 cells; 8 or 10 gonidia, 40–60 μ in diameter; young colonies 100–200 μ in diameter. North America.

V. pergubator P. Dioecious. Male colonies 300–450 μ ; 5000–10,000 cells, with delicate cytoplasmic connections; 60–80 microgametocytes. Female colonies 300–550 μ ; 9000–13,000 cells; 50–120 macrogametes; zygotes 30–34 μ , covered with bluntly pointed spines. Parthenogenetic colonies up to 1.1 mm; 3–9 gonidia; young colonies 250–275 μ . North America.

Genus **Gonium** Müller. 4 or 16 individuals arranged in one plane; cell ovoid or slightly polygonal; with 2 flagella arranged in the plane of coenobium; with or without a gelatinous envelope; protoplasmic connections among individuals occur occasionally; asexual reproduction through simultaneous divisions of component cells; sexual reproduction isogamy; zygotes reddish; fresh water.

G. sociale (Dujardin) (Fig. 99, c). 4 individuals form a discoid colony; cells 10–22 μ by 6–16 μ wide; in open waters of ponds and lakes.

G. pectorale M. (Fig. 99, d). 16 (rarely 4 or 8) individuals form a colony; 4 cells in center; 12 peripheral, closely arranged; cells 5–14 μ by 10 μ ; colony up to 90 μ in diameter; fresh water.

G. formosum Pascher (Fig. 99, e) 16 cells in a colony further apart; peripheral gelatinous envelope reduced; cells similar in size to those of *G. sociale* but colony somewhat larger; freshwater lakes.

Genus **Stephanoon** Schewiakoff. Spherical or ellipsoidal colony, surrounded by gelatinous envelope, and composed of 8 or 16 biflagellate cells, arranged in 2 alternating rows on equatorial plane; fresh water.

S. askenasi S. (Fig. 100, a). 16 individuals in ellipsoidal colony; cells 9 μ in diameter; flagella up to 30 μ long; colony 78 μ by 60 μ .

Genus **Platydorina** Kofoid. 32 cells arranged in a slightly twisted plane; flagella directed alternately to both sides; fresh water.

P. caudata K. (Fig. 100, b). Individual cells 10–15 μ long; colony up to 165 μ long, 145 μ wide, and 25 μ thick; rivers and lakes.

Genus **Spondylomorum** Ehrenberg. 16 cells in a compact group in 4 transverse rings; each with 4 flagella; asexual reproduction by simultaneous division of component cells; fresh water. One species.

S. quaternarium E. (Fig. 100, c). Cells 12–26 μ by 8–15 μ ; colony up to 60 μ long.

Genus **Chlamydotrys** Korschikoff. Colony composed of 8 or 16 individuals; cells with 2 flagella; chromatophore; stigma; no pyrenoid; fresh water.

C. stellata K. (Fig. 100, d). Colony composed of 8 individuals arranged in 2 rings; individuals $14\text{--}15\mu$ long; colony $30\text{--}40\mu$ in diameter; Maryland (Bold, 1933).

Genus *Stephanosphaera* Cohn. Spherical or subspherical colony, with 8 (rarely 4 or 16) cells arranged in a ring; cells pyriform, but

FIG. 100. a, *Stephanoon askenatii*, $\times 440$ (Schewiakoff); b, *Platydorina caudata*, $\times 280$ (Kofoid); c, *Spondylomorom quaternarium*, $\times 330$ (Stein); d, *Chlamydotrys stellata*, $\times 430$ (Korschikoff); e, *Stephanosphaera pluvialis*, $\times 250$ (Hieronimus); f, *Pandorina morum*, $\times 300$ (Smith); g, *Mastigosphaera gobii*, $\times 520$ (Schewiakoff); h, *Eudorina elegans*, $\times 310$ (Goebel); i, *Pleodorina illinoisensis*, $\times 200$ (Kofoid).

with several processes; 2 flagella on one face; asexual reproduction and isogamy (p. 152); fresh water.

S. pluvialis C. (Figs. 74; 100, e). Cells $7\text{--}13\mu$ long; colony $30\text{--}60\mu$ in diameter.

Genus *Pandorina* Bory. Spherical or subspherical colony of usually 16 (sometimes 8 or 32) biflagellate individuals, closely packed

within a gelatinous, but firm and thick matrix; individuals often angular; with stigma and chromatophores; asexual reproduction through simultaneous division of component individuals; anisogamy preceded by division of each cell into 16 to 32 gametes; zygotes colored and covered by a smooth wall; fresh water. One species.

P. morum (Müller) (Figs. 75; 100, f). Cells 8–17 μ long; colony 20–40 μ , up to 250 μ in diameter; ponds and ditches.

Genus **Mastigosphaera** Schewiakoff. Similar to *Pandorina*; but individuals with a single flagellum which is 3.5 times the body length; fresh water.

M. gobii S. (Fig. 100, g). Individual 9 μ long; colony 30–33 μ .

Genus **Eudorina** Ehrenberg. Spherical or ellipsoidal colony of usually 32 or sometimes 16 spherical cells; asexual reproduction similar to that of *Pandorina*; sexual reproduction with 32–64 spherical green macrogametes and numerous clustered microgametes; reddish zygote with a smooth wall; fresh water.

E. elegans E. (Figs. 76; 100, h). Cells 10–24 μ in diameter; colony 40–150 μ in diameter; in ponds, ditches and lakes.

Genus **Pleodorina** Shaw. Somewhat similar to *Eudorina*, being composed of 32, 64, or 128 ovoid or spherical cells of 2 types: small somatic and large generative, located within a gelatinous matrix; fresh water.

P. illinoisensis Kofoed (Figs. 31, b, c; 100, i). 32 cells in ellipsoid colony, 4 vegetative and 28 reproductive individuals; arranged in 5 circles, 4 in each polar circle, 8 at equator and 8 on either side of equator; 4 small vegetative cells at anterior pole; vegetative cells 10–16 μ in diameter; reproductive cells 19–25 μ in diameter; colony up to 160 μ by 130 μ .

P. californica S. Spherical colony with 64 or 128 cells, of which 1/2–2/3 are reproductive cells; vegetative cells 13–15 μ ; reproductive cells up to 27 μ ; colony up to 450 μ , both in diameter.

References

- BOLD, H. C. 1938 Notes on Maryland Algae. Bull. Torrey Bot. Club., Vol. 65.
 CROW, W. B. 1918 The classification of some colonial chlamydomonads. New Phytologist, Vol. 17.
 DANGEARD, P. 1900 Observations sur la structure et le développement du *Pandorina morum*. Le Botaniste, Vol. 7.
 ELLIOTT, A. M. 1934 Morphology and life history of *Haematococcus pluvialis*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 82.
 ENTZ, G. Jr. 1913 Cytologische Beobachtungen an *Polytoma uwelli*. Verh. Deutsch. Zool. Ges. Ver., Vol. 23.

- FRITSCH, F. E. 1935 *The structure and reproduction of the algae*. Cambridge.
- GERLOFF, J. 1940 Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Variabilität und Systematik der Gattung Chlamydomonas. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 94.
- JANET, C. 1912, 1922, 1923 *Le Volvox. I, II, and III Memoires*. Paris.
- KOFOID, C. A. 1900 Plankton Studies, Nos. 2 and 3. Ann. Mag. Nat. Hist., Ser. 7, Vol. 6.
- MAST, S. O. 1928 Structure and function of the eye-spot in unicellular and colonial organisms. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 60.
- PASCHER, A. 1927 *Volvocales—Phytomonadinae*. In: *Die Süßwasserflora Deutschlands*, Part 4.
- PRINGSHEIM, E. G. 1937 Zur Kenntnis saprotropher Algen und Flagellaten. II. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 88.
- SHAW, W. R. 1894 Pleodorina, a new genus of the Volvocidae. Bot. Gaz., Vol. 19.
- SMITH, G. M. 1933 *The freshwater algae of the United States*. New York.
- 1944 A comparative study of the species of Volvox. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 63.
- WEST, G. S. and F. E. FRITSCH 1927 *A treatise on the British freshwater algae*. Cambridge.

CHAPTER 11

Order 4 Euglenoidina Blochmann

THE body is as a rule elongated; some are plastic, others have a definite body form with a well-developed, striated or variously sculptured pellicle. At the anterior end, there is an opening through which a flagellum protrudes. In holophytic forms the so-called cytostome and cytopharynx, if present, are apparently not concerned with the food-taking, but seem to give a passage-way for the flagellum and also to excrete the waste fluid matters which become collected in one or more contractile vacuoles located around the reservoir. In holozoic forms, a well-developed cytostome and cytopharynx are present. Ordinarily there is only one flagellum, but some possess two or three. Chromatophores are present in the majority of the Euglenidae, but absent in two families. They are green, vary in shape, such as spheroidal, band-form, cup-form, discoidal, or fusiform, and usually possess pyrenoids. Some forms may contain haematochrome. A small but conspicuous stigma is invariably present near the anterior end of the body in chromatophore-bearing forms.

Reserve food material is the paramylon body, fat, and oil, the presence of which depends naturally on the metabolic condition of the organism. The paramylon body assumes diverse forms in different species, but is, as a rule, constant in each species, and this facilitates specific identification to a certain extent. Nutrition is holophytic in chromatophore-possessing forms, which, however, may be saprozoic, depending on the amount of light and organic substances present in the water. The holozoic forms feed upon bacteria, algae, and smaller Protozoa.

The nucleus is, as a rule, large and distinct and contains almost always a large endosome. Asexual reproduction is by longitudinal fission; sexual reproduction has been observed in a few species. Encystment is common. The majority inhabit fresh water, but some live in brackish or salt water, and a few are parasitic in animals.

With stigma.....Family 1 Euglenidae
Without stigma

With 1 flagellum.....Family 2 Astasiidae (p. 239)

With 2 flagella.....Family 3 Anisonemidae (p. 241)

Family 1 Euglenidae Stein

Body plastic ("euglenoid"), but, as a rule, more or less spindle-

shaped during movement; the majority possess a single anterior flagellum (with the exception of *Eutreptia* and *Euglenomorpha*); green chromatophores (except one genus) and stigma occur, though in some cases absent; haematochrome often coexists; metabolic products oil and paramylon; asexual reproduction by longitudinal fission in either active or resting stage; mostly freshwater inhabitants.

Genus **Euglena** Ehrenberg. Short or elongated spindle, cylindrical, or band-form; pellicle usually marked by longitudinal or spiral striae; some highly plastic with a thin pellicle; others regularly spirally twisted; stigma usually anterior; chromatophores numerous and discoid, band-form, or fusiform; pyrenoids may or may not be surrounded by starch envelope; metabolic products paramylon bodies which may be two in number, one being located on either side of nucleus, and rod-like to ovoid in shape or numerous and scattered throughout; contractile vacuole small, near reservoir; asexual reproduction by longitudinal fission; sexual reproduction reported in *Euglena sanguinea*; common in stagnant water, especially where algae occur; when present in large numbers, the active organisms may form a green film on the surface of water and resting or encysted stages may produce conspicuous green spots on the bottom of pond or pool; in fresh water. Numerous species.

E. pisciformis Klebs (Fig. 101, *a*). $25\text{--}30\mu$ by $7\text{--}10\mu$; spindle-form with bluntly pointed anterior and sharply attenuated posterior end; slightly plastic; highly active; paramylon indistinct; a few chromatophores lateral and discoidal; each with 2 pyrenoids; flagellum fairly long. Johnson observed that division into 2 or 4 individuals occurs in encysted forms.

E. viridis Ehrenberg (Fig. 101, *b*). $50\text{--}60\mu$ by $14\text{--}18\mu$; anterior end rounded, posterior end pointed; spindle-shaped during motion, highly plastic when stationary; pellicle obliquely striated; chromatophores more or less band-form, arranged in a stellate form; nucleus posterior; nutrition holophytic, but also able to carry on saprozoic nutrition, during which period chromatophores degenerate. Multiplication in thin-walled cysts (Johnson).

E. acus E. (Figs. 24, *b*; 101, *c*). $50\text{--}200\mu$ long; long spindle-form; posterior end sharply pointed; flagellum short; spiral striation on pellicle very delicate; paramylon bodies several, rod-form; nucleus central; stigma distinct; numerous disc-like chromatophores; slug-like.

E. spirogyra E. (Figs. 24, *c*; 101, *d*). $80\text{--}125\mu$ by $10\text{--}20\mu$; cylindrical; with spiral striae, consisting of small knobs; numerous disc-

like chromatophores; 2 ovoidal paramylon bodies, one on either side of centrally located nucleus; flagellum short; stigma prominent; sluggish.

E. oxyuris Schmarda (Fig. 101, e). 150–500 μ by 30–45 μ ; almost always spirally twisted, somewhat flattened; pellicle with spirally arranged striae; numerous chromatophores; 2 ovoid paramylon bodies conspicuous, one on either side of nucleus; flagellum short.

FIG. 101. a, *Euglena pisciformis*, $\times 270$ (Klebs); b, *E. viridis*, $\times 370$ (Lemmermann); c, *E. acus*, $\times 270$ (Klebs); d, *E. spirogyra*, $\times 430$ (Stein); e, *E. oxyuris*, $\times 430$ (Stein); f, *E. sanguinea*, $\times 130$ (Klebs); g, *E. deses*, $\times 230$ (Lemmermann); h, *E. gracilis*, $\times 270$ (Klebs).

E. sanguinea E. (Figs. 39, e–h; 101, f). 80–200 μ by 25–45 μ ; flagellum long; pellicular striation conspicuous; haematochrome granular, scattered in sun light; often found in crust on the surface or half-dry bed of a pool.

E. deses E. (Figs. 24, a; 101, g). 85–155 μ by 15–22 μ ; elongate, highly plastic; body striation faintly visible; stigma distinct; nucleus

central, numerous chromatophores hemi-lenticular; several small rod-shaped paramylon bodies scattered; flagellum short.

E. gracilis Klebs (Figs. 39, *a-d*; 101, *h*). $35-55\mu$ by $6-23\mu$; cylindrical to elongated oval; highly plastic; flagellum less than body length; fusiform chromatophores 10-20, discoid; nucleus central; pyrenoids.

E. rubra Hardy. $70-170\mu$ by $25-36\mu$; cylindrical, rounded anteriorly and drawn out posteriorly; pellicle spirally striated; nucleus posterior; flagellum longer than body; the base of flagellum arranged as in *E. acus* (Fig. 24); stigma about 7μ in diameter, lateral to the reservoir, near which a contractile vacuole is formed; chromatophores, many, spindle-shaped, with 3 longitudinal grooves; when taken out of body disc-shaped; haematochrome granules red, numerous, measure $0.3-0.5\mu$ in diameter; paramylon bodies, numerous, ellipsoid; reproductive and temporary cysts and protective cysts ($34-47\mu$ in diameter), with gelatinous coat; multiplication noted only in encysted forms (Johnson).

Johnson (1939) found that the color of this *Euglena* was red in the morning and dull green in the late afternoon, due to the difference in the distribution of haematochrome within the body. When haematochrome granules are distributed throughout the body, the organism is bright-red, but when they are condensed in the center of the body, the organism is dull green. When part of the area of the pond was shaded with a board early in the morning, shortly after sunrise all the scum became red except the shaded area. When the board was removed, the red color appeared in 11 minutes while the temperature of the water remained 21°C . In the evening the change was reversed. Johnson and Jahn (1942) later found that green-red color change could be induced by raising the temperature of the water to $30-40^{\circ}\text{C}$. and by irradiation with infrared rays or visible light. The two workers hold that the function of haematochrome may be protective, since it migrates to a position which shields the chromatophores from very bright light. If this is true, it is easy to find the species thriving in hot weather in shallow ponds where temperature of the water rises to $35-45^{\circ}\text{C}$. In colder weather, it is supposed that this *Euglena* is less abundant and it exists in a green phase, containing a few haematochrome granules.

E. vermiformis Carter. 45μ by 5μ ; without flagellum; a slow spiral movement; retains cylindrical form during locomotion; among debris; stigma conspicuous; delicate pellicle not striated; about 8 peripheral chromatophores; many small paramylon bodies in the form of flattened elliptical rings; brackish water.

Genus **Khawkinea** Jahn and McKibben. Similar to Genus *Euglena*, but without chromatophores and thus permanently colorless; fresh water.

K. halli J. and Mc. 40–45 μ (30–65 μ) by 12–14 μ ; fusiform; pellicle spirally striated; plastic; flagellum slightly longer than body; stigma 2–3 μ in diameter, yellow-orange to reddish-orange, composed of many granules; numerous (25–100) paramylon bodies elliptical or polyhedral; cysts 20–30 μ in diameter; putrid leaf infusion; saprozoic.

K. ocellata (Khawkine). Similar to above; flagellum 1.5–2 times body length; fresh water.

Genus **Phacus** Nitzsch. Highly flattened; asymmetrical; body-form constant; pellicle often with prominent longitudinal or oblique striae; a flagellum and a stigma; nucleus posterior; a short “cytopharynx”; green chromatophores rounded discoid; with or without paramylon bodies around a pyrenoid; in fresh water. Numerous species. Allegre and Jahn (1943) surveyed species of this genus in Iowa.

P. pleuronectes (Müller) (Fig. 102, a). 45–100 μ by 30–70 μ ; short posterior prolongation slightly curved; a prominent fold on convex side, extending to middle of body; longitudinally striated; one or more circular paramylon bodies; colorless forms sometimes appear; flagellum as long as body.

P. longicaudus (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 102, b). 120–170 μ by 45–70 μ ; usually twisted with a long caudal prolongation; stigma prominent; discoidal paramylon body central; pellicle longitudinally striated.

P. pyrum (E.) (Fig. 102, c). About 30–50 μ long; pyriform, with a short caudal prolongation; pellicle obliquely striated.

P. triqueter (E.) (Fig. 102, d). 50–55 μ by 30–35 μ ; ovate; with a longitudinal ridge; posterior end acuminate; oblique striation distinct; 1–2 paramylon bodies.

P. anacoelus Stokes (Fig. 102, e). About 42 μ long; oval or round; with flagellum as long as body.

P. acuminata S. (Fig. 102, f). About 30–40 μ by 20–30 μ ; nearly circular in outline; longitudinally striated; fold long; flagellum as long as body; 2 small paramylon bodies.

Genus **Crumenula** Dujardin (*Lepocinclis* Perty). Body more or less ovo-cylindrical; rigid with spirally striated pellicle; often with a short posterior spinous projection; stigma sometimes present; numerous discoidal chromatophores marginal; paramylon bodies usually large and ring-shaped, laterally disposed; without pyrenoids; fresh water. Several species.

C. ova (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 102, *g*). 20–40 μ long; in fresh water with Euglena.

Genus **Trachelomonas** Ehrenberg. With a lorica which often possesses numerous spinous projections; sometimes yellowish to dark brown; a single flagellum protrudes from anterior aperture, the rim of which is frequently thickened to form a collar; chromatophores either 2 curved plates or numerous discs; paramylon bodies small grains; stigma and pyrenoids; multiplication by longitudinal fission; one daughter individual retains lorica and flagellum, while the other escapes through flagellar aperture, forms a new flagellum and secretes a lorica; cysts common; specific differentiation is based upon the lorica; fresh water. Numerous species.

T. hispida (Perty) (Figs. 31, *a*; 102, *h*). Lorica oval, with numerous minute spines; brownish; 8–10 chromatophores; 20–42 μ by 15–26 μ ; many varieties.

T. urceolata Stokes (Fig. 102, *i*). Lorica vasiform, smooth with a short neck; about 45 μ long.

T. piscatoris (Fisher) (Fig. 102, *j*). Lorica cylindrical with a short neck and with numerous short, conical spines; 25–40 μ long; flagellum 1–2 times body length.

T. verrucosa Stokes (Fig. 102, *k*). Lorica spherical, with numerous knob-like attachments; no neck; 24–25 μ in diameter.

T. vermiculosa Palmer (Fig. 102, *l*). Lorica spherical; with many sausage-form markings; 23 μ in diameter.

Genus **Cryptoglana** Ehrenberg. Body rigid, flattened; 2 band-form chromatophores lateral; a single flagellum; nucleus posterior; among freshwater algae. One species.

C. pigra E. (Fig. 102, *m*). Ovoid, pointed posteriorly; flagellum short; stigma prominent; 10–15 μ by 6–10 μ ; standing water.

Genus **Ascoglana** Stein. Encased in a flexible, colorless to brown lorica, attached with its base to foreign object; solitary; without stalk; body ovoidal, plastic; attached to test with its posterior end; a single flagellum; a stigma; numerous chromatophores discoid; with or without pyrenoids; reproduction as in *Trachelomonas* fresh water.

A. vaginicola S. (Fig. 102, *n*). Lorica about 43 μ by 15 μ .

Genus **Colacium** Ehrenberg. Stalked individuals form colony; frequently attached to animals such as copepods, rotifers, etc.; stalk mucilaginous; individual cells pyriform, ellipsoidal or cylindrical; without flagellum; a single flagellum only in free-swimming stage; discoidal chromatophores numerous; with pyrenoids; multiplication by longitudinal fission; also by swarmers, possessing a flagellum and a stigma; fresh water. Several species.

C. vesiculosum E. (Fig. 102, o). Colony of 2-8 cells; also solitary; 20-30 μ by 9-18 μ ; attached to freshwater copepods.

Genus **Eutreptia** Perty (*Eutreptiella* da Cunha). With 2 flagella at

FIG. 102. a, *Phacus pleuronectes*, $\times 670$ (Lemmermann); b, *P. longicaudus*, $\times 430$ (Stein); c, *P. pyrum*, $\times 400$ (Lemmermann); d, *P. triqueter*, $\times 430$ (Stein); e, *P. anacoelus*, $\times 330$ (Stokes); f, *P. acuminata*, $\times 560$ (Stokes); g, *Crumenula ova*, $\times 430$ (Stein); h, *Trachelomonas hispida*, $\times 430$ (Stein); i, *T. urceolata*, $\times 430$ (Stokes); j, *T. piscatoris*, $\times 520$ (Fischer); k, *T. verrucosa*, $\times 550$ (Stokes); l, *T. vermiculosa*, $\times 800$ (Palmer); m, *Cryptoglena pigra*, $\times 430$ (Stein); n, *Ascoglena vaginicola*, $\times 390$ (Stein); o, *Colacium vesiculosum*, $\times 390$ (Stein); p, *Eutreptia viridis*, $\times 270$ (Klebs); q, *E. marina*, $\times 670$ (da Cunha); r, *Euglenamorpha hegneri*, $\times 730$ (Wenrich).

anterior end; pellicle distinctly striated; plastic; spindle-shaped during movement; stigma; numerous discoid chromatophores; pyrenoids absent; paramylon bodies spherical or subcylindrical; multipli-

cation as in *Euglena*; cyst with a thick stratified wall; fresh or salt water.

E. viridis P. (Fig. 102, *p*). 50–70 μ by 5–13 μ ; in fresh water; a variety was reported from brackish water ponds.

E. marina (da Cunha) (Fig. 102, *q*). Flagella unequal in length; longer one as long as body, shorter one $\frac{1}{3}$; body 40–50 μ by 8–10 μ ; salt water.

Genus **Euglenamorpha** Wenrich. Body form and structure similar to those of *Euglena*, but with 3 flagella; in gut of frog tadpoles. One species.

E. hegneri W. (Fig. 102, *r*). 40–50 μ long.

Family 2 Astasiidae Bütschli

Similar to Euglenidae in body form and general structure, but without chromatophores; body is plastic, although it assumes usually an elongated form; there is a cytopharynx and cytostome, the former being connected with the reservoir near which contractile vacuole occurs; without stigma; flagellum usually straight and its free end vibrates in a characteristic manner; asexual reproduction by longitudinal fission.

Genus **Astasia** Dujardin. Body plastic, although ordinarily elongate; fresh water or endoparasitic (?) in Cyclops, etc. Several species.

A. klebsi Lemmermann (Fig. 103, *a*). Spindle-form; posterior portion drawn out; flagellum as long as body; plastic; paramylon bodies oval; 50–60 μ by 13–20 μ ; stagnant water.

Genus **Urceolus** Mereschkowsky (*Phialonema* Stein). Body colorless; plastic; flask-shaped; striated; a funnel-like neck; posterior region stout; a single flagellum protrudes from funnel and reaches inward the posterior third of body; fresh or salt water.

U. cyclostomus (Stein) (Figs. 8, *f*; 103, *b*). 25–50 μ long; fresh water.

U. sabulosus (Stokes) (Fig. 103, *c*). Spindle-form; covered with minute sand-grains; about 58 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Peranema** Dujardin. Elongate with a broad, rounded or truncate posterior end during locomotion; highly plastic when stationary; delicate pellicle shows a fine striation; flagellum long, tapers toward free end and vibrates; nucleus central; contractile vacuole; holozoic and saprozoic; in stagnant water; often in hay infusion.

P. trichophorum (Ehrenberg) (Figs. 26; 103, *d*). 20–70 μ long; body ordinarily filled with paramylon or starch grains derived from *Astasia*, *Menoidium*, etc.; very common.

FIG. 103. a, *Astasia klebsi*, $\times 500$ (Klebs); b, *Urceolus cyclostomus*, $\times 430$ (Stein); c, *U. sabulosus*, $\times 430$ (Stokes); d, *Peranema trichophorum*, $\times 530$ (Kudo); e, *Petalmonas mediocanellata*, $\times 1000$ (Klebs); f, *Menoidium incurvum*, $\times 1400$ (Hall); g, *Scytomonas pusilla*, $\times 430$ (Stein); h, *Anisonema acinus*, $\times 400$ (Klebs); i, *A. truncatum*, $\times 430$ (Stein); j, *A. emerginatum*, $\times 530$ (Stokes); k, *Heteronema acus*, $\times 430$ (Stein); l, *H. mutabile*, $\times 120$ (Stokes); m, *Tropidoscyphus octocostatus*, $\times 290$ (Lemmermann); n, *Distigma proteus*, $\times 430$ (Stein); o, *Entosiphon sulcatum*, $\times 430$ (Stein); p, *Notosolenus apocamptus*, $\times 1200$ (Stokes); q, *N. sinatus*, $\times 600$ (Stokes); r, *Marsupiogaster striata*, $\times 590$ (Schewiakoff); s, *M. picta* (Faria, da Cunha and Pinto).

P. granulifera Penard. Much smaller, 8–15 μ long; spherical or elongate; pellicle granulated; standing water.

Genus **Petalomonas** Stein. Colorless; constant in form; pellicle often with longitudinal keels on one side; a single flagellum; holozoic or saprozoic; cytostome at anterior end; cytopharynx fairly deep; in fresh water, rich in vegetable matter. Many species.

P. mediocanellata S. (Fig. 103, *e*). Ovoid with longitudinal furrow; flagellum about as long as body; 22–23 μ long.

Genus **Menoidium** Perty. Rigid body, more or less curved; pellicle striated; a single flagellum; fresh water.

M. incurvum (Fresenius) (Figs. 24, *d*; 67; 103, *f*). Crescentic cylinder; flagellum as long as body; nucleus central or terminal; 15–25 μ by 7–8 μ ; in standing fresh water. Hall (1923) made a careful cytological study of the organism (p. 144).

M. tortuosum Stokes. S-form; posterior end drawn out to a sharp point; elongate paramylon bodies; 42–78 μ long; in infusion.

Genus **Scytomonas** Stein. Oval or pyriform, with a delicate pellicle; a single flagellum; a contractile vacuole with a reservoir; holozoic on bacteria; longitudinal fission in motile stage; stagnant water and coprozoic.

S. pusilla S. (Fig. 103, *g*). About 15 μ long.

Genus **Copromonas** Dobell. Elongate ovoid; with a single flagellum; a small cytostome at anterior end; holozoic on bacteria; permanent fusion followed by encystment (p. 151); coprozoic in faecal matters of frog, toad, and man; several authors hold that this genus is probably identical with *Scytomonas* which was incompletely described by Stein.

C. subtilis D. (Fig. 73). 7–20 μ long.

Family 3 Anisonemidae Schewiakoff

Colorless body plastic or rigid with a variously marked pellicle; 2 flagella, one directed anteriorly and the other usually posteriorly; contractile vacuoles and reservoir; stigma absent; paramylon bodies usually present; free-swimming or creeping.

Genus **Anisonema** Dujardin. Generally ovoid; more or less flattened; asymmetrical; plastic or rigid; a slit-like ventral furrow; flagella at anterior end; cytopharynx long; contractile vacuole anterior; nucleus posterior; in fresh water. Several species.

A. acinus D. (Fig. 103, *h*). Rigid; oval; somewhat flattened; pellicle slightly striated; 25–40 μ by 16–22 μ .

A. truncatum Stein (Fig. 103, *i*). Rigid; ovoid; 60 μ by 20 μ .

A. emarginatum Stokes (Fig. 103, *j*). Rigid; 14 μ long; flagella long.

Genus **Heteronema** Dujardin. Plastic; rounded or elongate; flagella arise from anterior end, one directed forward and the other trailing; cytostome near base of flagella; holozoic; fresh water. Several species.

H. acus (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 103, *k*). Extended body tapers towards both ends; anterior flagellum as long as body, trailing one about $1/2$; contractile vacuole anterior; nucleus central; $45-50\mu$ long; fresh water.

H. mutabile (Stokes) (Fig. 103, *l*). Elongate; highly plastic; longitudinally striated; about 254μ long; in cypress swamp.

Genus **Tropidoscyphus** Stein. Slightly plastic; pellicle with 8 longitudinal ridges; 2 unequal flagella at anterior pole; holozoic or saprozoic; fresh or salt water.

T. octocostatus S. (Fig. 103, *m*). $35-63\mu$ long; fresh water, rich in vegetation.

Genus **Distigma** Ehrenberg. Plastic; elongate when extended; body surface without any marking; 2 flagella unequal in length, directed forward; cytostome and cytopharynx located at anterior end; endoplasm usually transparent; holozoic. One species.

D. proteus E. (Fig. 103, *n*). $50-110\mu$ long when extended; nucleus central; stagnant water; infusion.

Genus **Entosiphon** Stein. Oval, flattened; more or less rigid; flagella arise from a cytostome, one flagellum trailing; protrusible cytopharynx a long conical tubule almost reaching posterior end; nucleus centro-lateral; fresh water.

E. sulcatum (Dujardin) (Fig. 103, *o*). About 20μ long.

E. ovatum Stokes. Anterior end rounded; 10-12 longitudinal striae; about $25-28\mu$ long.

Genus **Notosolenus** Stokes. Free-swimming; rigid oval; ventral surface convex, dorsal surface with a broad longitudinal groove; flagella anterior; one long, directed anteriorly and vibratile; the other shorter and trailing; fresh water with vegetation.

N. apocamptus S. (Fig. 103, *p*). Oval with broad posterior end; $6-11\mu$ long.

N. sinuatus S. (Fig. 103, *q*). Posterior end truncate or concave; about 22μ long.

Genus **Marsupiogaster** Schewiakoff. Oval; flattened; asymmetrical; cytostome occupies entire anterior end; cytopharynx conspicuous, $1/2$ body length; body longitudinally striated; 2 flagella, one directed anteriorly, the other posteriorly; spherical nucleus; contractile vacuole anterior; fresh or salt water.

M. striata Schewiakoff (Fig. 103, *r*). About 27μ by 15μ ; fresh water; Hawaii.

M. picta Faria, da Cunha and Pinto (Fig. 103, s). In salt water; Rio de Janeiro.

Order 5 Chloromonadina Klebs

The chloromonads are of rare occurrence and consequently not well known. The majority possess small discoidal grass-green chro-

FIG. 104. a, *Gonyostomum semen*, $\times 540$ (Stein); b, *Vacuolaria virescens*, $\times 460$ (Senn); c, *Trentonia flagellata*, $\times 330$ (Stokes); d, *Thaumatomastix setifera*, $\times 830$ (Lauterborn).

matophores with a large amount of xanthophyll which on addition of an acid become blue-green. No pyrenoids occur. The metabolic products are fatty oil. Starch or allied carbohydrates are absent. Stigma is also not present.

Genus **Gonyostomum** Diesing (*Rhaphidomonas* Stein). With grass-green chromatophores; highly refractile trichocyst-like structures in cytoplasm; in fresh water. A few species.

G. semen D. (Fig. 104, a). Sluggish animal; about $45\text{--}60\mu$ long; in marshy water among decaying vegetation.

Genus **Vacuolaria** Cienkowski. Highly plastic; without trichocyst-like structures; anterior end narrow; with 2 flagella; cysts with a gelatinous envelope. One species.

V. virescens C. (Fig. 104, b). About $50\text{--}150\mu$ long; fresh water.

Genus **Trentonia** Stokes. Bi-flagellate as in the last genus; but flattened; anterior margin slightly bilobed. One species.

T. flagellata S. (Fig. 104, c). Slow-moving organism; encystment followed by binary fission; about 60μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Thaumatomastix** Lauterborn. Colorless; pseudopodia formed; 2 flagella, one extended anteriorly, the other trailing; holozoic; perhaps a transitional form between the Mastigophora and the Sarcodina. One species.

T. setifera L. (Fig. 104, d). About 20–35 μ by 15–28 μ ; fresh water.

References

- ALLEGRE, C. F. and T. L. JAHN 1943 A survey of the genus *Phacus* Dujardin (Protozoa; Euglenoidina). Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 62.
- DANGEARD, P. 1901 Recherches sur les Eugléniens. Le Botaniste. P. 97.
- FRITSCH, F. E. 1935 *The structure and reproduction of the algae*. Vol. 1. Cambridge.
- HALL, R. P. 1923 Morphology and binary fission of *Menoidium incurvum* (Fres.) Klebs. Uni. Cal. Publ. Zool., Vol. 20.
- JOHNSON, L. P. 1939 A study of *Euglena rubra* Hardy 1911. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 58.
- 1944 Euglenae of Iowa. Ibid. Vol. 63.
- and T. L. JAHN 1942 Cause of the green-red color change in *Euglena rubra*. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 15.
- LEMMERMANN, E. 1913 *Eugleninae*. In: *Süsswasserfl. Deutschlands*, Part 2.
- PASCHER, A. 1913 *Chloromonadinae*. Ibid. Part 2.
- SMITH, G. M. 1933 *The freshwater algae of the United States*. New York.
- WENRICH, D. H. 1924 Studies on *Euglenamorphia hegneri* n. g., n. sp., a euglenoid flagellate found in tadpoles. Biol. Bull., Vol. 47.
- WEST, G. S. and F. E. FRITSCH. 1927 *A treatise on the British freshwater algae*. Cambridge.

CHAPTER 12

Order 6 Dinoflagellata Bütschli

THE dinoflagellates make one of the most distinct groups of the Mastigophora, inhabiting mostly marine water, and to a lesser extent fresh water. In the general appearance, the arrangement of the two flagella, the characteristic furrows, and the possession of brown chromatophores, they are closely related to the Cryptomonadina.

The body is covered by an envelope composed of cellulose which may be a simple smooth piece, or may be composed of two valves or of numerous plates, that are variously sculptured and possess

FIG. 105. Diagram of a typical naked dinoflagellate (Lebour).

manifold projections. Differences in the position and course of the furrows and in the projections of the envelope produce numerous asymmetrical forms. The furrows, or grooves, are a transverse annulus and a longitudinal sulcus. The **annulus** is a girdle around the middle or toward one end of the body. It may be a complete, incomplete or sometimes spiral ring. While the majority show a single transverse furrow, a few may possess several. The part of the shell anterior to the annulus is called the **epitheca** and that posterior to the annulus the **hypotheca**. In case the envelope is not developed, the terms **epicone** and **hypocone** are used (Fig. 105). The **sulcus** may run from end to end or from one end to the annulus. The two flagella arise typically from the furrows, one being transverse and the other longitudinal.

The **transverse flagellum** which is often band-form, encircles the body and undergoes undulating movements, which in former years were looked upon as ciliary movements (hence the name *Cilioflagellata*). In the suborder *Prorocentrinea*, this flagellum vibrates freely

in a circle near the anterior end. The **longitudinal flagellum** often projects beyond the body and vibrates. Combination of the movements of these flagella produces whirling movements characteristic of the organisms.

The majority of dinoflagellates possess a single somewhat massive nucleus with evenly scattered chromatin, and usually several endosomes. There are two kinds of vacuoles. One is often surrounded by a ring of smaller vacuoles, while the other is large, contains pink-colored fluid and connected with the exterior by a canal opening into a flagellar pore. The latter is known as the **pusule** which functions as a digestive organella (Kofoid and Swezy). In many freshwater forms a stigma is present, and in Pouchetiidae there is an ocellus composed of an amyloid lens and a dark pigment-ball. The majority of planktonic forms possess a large number of small chromatophores which are usually dark yellow, brown or sometimes slightly greenish and are located in the periphery of the body, while bottom-dwelling and parasitic forms are, as a rule, colorless, because of the absence of chromatophores. A few forms contain haematochrome. The method of nutrition is holophytic, holozoic, saprozoic, or mixotrophic. In holophytic forms, anabolic products are starch, oil, or fats.

Asexual reproduction is by binary or multiple fission or budding in either the active or the resting stage and differs among different groups. Encystment is of common occurrence. In some forms the cyst wall is formed within the test. The cysts remain alive for many years; for example, Ceratium cysts were found to retain their vitality in one instance for six and one-half years. Conjugation and sexual fusion have been reported in certain forms, but definite knowledge on sexual reproduction awaits further investigation.

The dinoflagellates are abundant in the plankton of the sea and play an important part in the economy of marine life as a whole. A number of parasitic forms are also known. Their hosts include various diatoms, copepods and several pelagic animals.

- Bivalve shell without furrows.....Suborder 1 Prorocentrinea
- Naked or with shell showing furrows. .Suborder 2 Peridiniinea (p. 248)
- Naked; without furrows; no transverse flagellum.....
-Suborder 3 Cystoflagellata (p. 261)

Suborder 1 **Prorocentrinea** Poche

Test bivalve; without any groove; with yellow chromatophores; 2 flagella anterior, one directed anteriorly, the other vibrates in a circle; fresh or salt water.

Family **Prorocentridae** Kofoid

Genus **Prorocentrum** Ehrenberg. Elongate oval; anterior end bluntly pointed, with a spinous projection at pole; chromatophores small, yellowish brown; salt water.

P. micans E. (Fig. 106, a). 36–52 μ long; a cause of "red water."

P. triangulatum Martin. Triangular with rounded posterior end; shell-valves flattened; one valve with a delicate tooth; surface covered with minute pores; margin striated; chromatophores yellow-

FIG. 106. a, *Prorocentrum micans*, $\times 420$ (Schütt); b, c, *Exuviaella marina*, $\times 420$ (Schütt); d, e, *Cystodinium steini*, $\times 370$ (Klebs); f, *Glenodinium cinctum*, $\times 590$ (Schilling); g, *G. pulvisculum*, $\times 420$ (Schilling); h, *G. uliginosum*, $\times 590$ (Schilling); i, *G. edax*, $\times 490$ (Schilling); j, *G. neglectum*, $\times 650$ (Schilling).

brown, irregular, broken up in small masses; 17–22 μ (excluding tooth); Martin found it extremely abundant in brackish water in New Jersey.

Genus **Exuviaella** Cienkowski. Subspherical or oval; no anterior projection, except 2 flagella; 2 lateral chromatophores, large, brown, each with a pyrenoid and a starch body; nucleus posterior; salt water. Several species.

E. marina C. (Fig. 106, b, c). 36–50 μ long.

E. apora Schiller. Compressed, oval; striae on margin of valves; chromatophores numerous yellow-brown, irregular in form; 30–32 μ by 21–26 μ (Schiller); 17–22 μ by 14–19 μ (Lebour; Martin); common in brackish water, New Jersey.

Suborder 2 Peridiniinea Poche

Typical dinoflagellates with one to many transverse annuli and a sulcus; 2 flagella, one of which undergoes a typical undulating movement, while the other usually directed posteriorly. According to Kofoid and Swezy, this suborder is divided into two tribes.

Body naked or covered by a thin shell Tribe 1 Gymnodinioidae
Body covered by a thick shell Tribe 2 Peridinioidae (p. 257)

Tribe 1 Gymnodinioidae Poche

Naked or covered by a single piece cellulose membrane with annulus and sulcus, and 2 flagella; chromatophores abundant, yellow or greenish platelets or bands; stigma sometimes present; asexual reproduction, binary or multiple division; holophytic, holozoic, or saprozoic; the majority are deep-sea forms; a few coastal or fresh water forms also occur.

With a cellulose membrane Family 1 Cystodiniidae
Without shell

Furrows rudimentary Family 2 Pronoctilucidae (p. 249)

Annulus and sulcus distinct

Solitary

With ocellus Family 3 Pouchetiidae (p. 249)

Without ocellus

With tentacles Family 4 Noctilucidae (p. 251)

Without tentacles

Free-living Family 5 Gymnodiniidae (p. 251)

Parasitic Family 6 Blastodiniidae (p. 254)

Permanently colonial Family 7 Polykrikidae (p. 257)

Family 1 Cystodiniidae Kofoid and Swezy

Genus *Cystodinium* Klebs. In swimming phase, oval, with extremely delicate envelope; annulus somewhat acyclic; cyst-membrane drawn out into 2 horns.

C. steini K. (Fig. 106, *d*, *e*). Stigma beneath sulcus; chromatophores brown; swarmer about 45 μ long; freshwater ponds.

Genus *Glenodinium* Ehrenberg. (*Glenodiniopsis*, *Stasziecella* Woloszynska). Spherical; ellipsoidal or reniform in end-view; annulus a circle; several discoidal, yellow to brown chromatophores; horseshoe- or rod-shaped stigma in some; often with gelatinous envelope; fresh water. Many species.

G. cinctum E. (Fig. 106, *f*). Spherical to ovoid; annulus equatorial; stigma horseshoe-shaped; 43μ by 40μ .

G. pulvisculum Stein (Fig. 106, *g*). No stigma; 38μ by 30μ .

G. uliginosum Schilling (Fig. 106, *h*). $36\text{--}48\mu$ by 30μ .

G. edax S. (Fig. 106, *i*). 34μ by 33μ .

G. neglectum S. (Fig. 106, *j*). $30\text{--}32\mu$ by 29μ .

Family 2 *Pronoctilucidae* Lebour

Genus *Pronoctiluca* Fabre-Domergue. Body with an antero-ventral tentacle and sulcus; annulus poorly marked; salt water.

P. tentaculatum (Kofoid and Swezy) (Fig. 107, *a*). About 54μ long; off California coast.

Genus *Oxyrrhis* Dujardin. Subvoidal, asymmetrical posteriorly; annulus incomplete; salt water.

O. marina D. (Fig. 107, *b*). $10\text{--}37\mu$ long.

Family 3 *Pouchetiidae* Kofoid and Swezy

Ocellus consists of lens and melanosome (pigment mass); sulcus and annulus somewhat twisted; pusules usually present; cytoplasm colored; salt water (pelagic).

Genus *Pouchetia* Schütt. Nucleus anterior to ocellus; ocellus with red or black pigment mass with a red, brown, yellow, or colorless central core; lens hyaline; body surface usually smooth; holozoic; encystment common; salt water. Many species.

P. fusus S. (Fig. 107, *c*). About 94μ by 41μ ; ocellus 27μ long.

P. maxima Kofoid and Swezy (Fig. 107, *d*). 145μ by 92μ ; ocellus 20μ ; off California coast.

Genus *Protopsis* Kofoid and Swezy. Annulus and sulcus similar to those of *Gymnodinium* or *Gyrodinium*; with a simple or compound ocellus; no tentacles; body not twisted; salt water. A few species.

P. ochrea (Wright) (Fig. 107, *e*). 55μ by 45μ ; ocellus 22μ long; Nova Scotia.

Genus *Nematodinium* Kofoid and Swezy. With nematocysts; girdle more than 1 turn; ocellus distributed or concentrated, posterior; holozoic; salt water.

N. partitum K. and S. (Fig. 107, *f*). 91μ long; off California coast.

Genus *Proterythropsis* Kofoid and Swezy. Annulus median; ocellus posterior; a stout rudimentary tentacle; salt water. One species.

P. crassicaudata K. and S. (Fig. 107, *g*). 70μ long; off California.

Genus *Erythropsis* Hertwig. Epicone flattened, less than $1/4$ hypocone; ocellus very large, composed of one or several hyaline lenses attached to or imbedded in a red, brownish or black pigment

FIG. 107. a, *Pronoctiluca tentaculatum*, $\times 730$ (Kofoid and Swezy); b, *Oxyrrhis marina*, $\times 840$ (Senn); c, *Pouchetia fusus*, $\times 340$ (Schütt); d, *P. maxima*, $\times 330$ (Kofoid and Swezy); e, *Protopsis ochrea*, $\times 340$ (Wright); f, *Nematodinium partitum*, $\times 560$ (Kofoid and Swezy); g, *Proterothropsis crassicaudata*, $\times 740$ (Kofoid and Swezy); h, *Erythropsis cornuta*, $\times 340$ (Kofoid and Swezy); i, j, *Noctiluca scintillans* (i, side view; j, budding process), $\times 140$ (Robin).

body with a red, brown or yellow core, located at left of sulcus; sulcus expands posteriorly into ventro-posterior tentacle; salt water. Several species.

E. cornuta (Schütt) (Fig. 107, *h*). 104μ long; off California coast (Kofoid and Swezy).

Family 4 Noctilucidae Kent

Contractile tentacle arises from sulcal area and extends posteriorly; a flagellum; this group has formerly been included in the Cystoflagellata; studies by recent investigators, particularly by Kofoid, show its affinity with the present suborder; holozoic; salt water.

Genus **Noctiluca** Suriray. Spherical, bilaterally symmetrical; peristome marks the median line of body; cytostome at the bottom of peristome; with a conspicuous tentacle; cytoplasm greatly vacuolated, and cytoplasmic strands connect the central mass with periphery; specific gravity is less than that of sea water, due to the presence of an osmotically active substance with a lower specific gravity than sodium chloride, which appears to be ammonium chloride (Goethard and Heinsius); peripheral granules luminescent (p. 100); cytoplasm colorless or blue-green; sometimes tinged with yellow coloration in center; swarms formed by budding, and each possesses one flagellum, annulus, and tentacle; widely distributed in salt water; holozoic. One species.

N. scintillans (Macartney) (*N. miliaris* S.) (Fig. 107, *i, j*). Usually $500\text{--}1000\mu$ in diameter, with extremes of 200μ and 3 mm. Gross (1934) observed that complete fusion of two swarms (isogametes) results in cyst formation from which trophozoites develop. Acid content of the body fluid is said to be about pH 3.

Genus **Pavillardia** Kofoid and Swezy. Annulus and sulcus similar to those of *Gymnodinium*; longitudinal flagellum absent; stout finger-like mobile tentacle directed posteriorly; salt water. One species.

P. tentaculifera K. and S. 58μ by 27μ ; pale yellow; off California.

Family 5 Gymnodiniidae Kofoid

Naked forms with simple but distinct $1\frac{1}{2}$ –4 turns of annulus; with or without chromatophores; fresh or salt water.

Genus **Gymnodinium** Stein. Pellicle delicate; subcircular; bilaterally symmetrical; numerous discoid chromatophores varicolored (yellow to deep brown, green, or blue) or sometimes absent; stigma present in few; many with mucilaginous envelope; salt, brackish, or fresh water. Numerous species.

FIG. 108. a, *Gymnodinium aeruginosum*, $\times 500$ (Schilling); b, *G. rotundatum*, $\times 360$ (Klebs); c, *G. palustre*, $\times 360$ (Schilling); d, *G. agile*, $\times 740$ (Kofoid and Swezy); e, *Hemidinium nasutum*, $\times 670$ (Stein); f, *Amphidinium lacustre*, $\times 440$ (Stein); g, *A. scissum*, $\times 880$ (Kofoid and Swezy); h, *Gyrodinium biconicum*, $\times 340$ (Kofoid and Swezy); i, *G. hyalinum*, $\times 670$ (Kofoid and Swezy); j, *Cochlodinium atomaculatum*, $\times 340$ (Kofoid and Swezy); k, *Torodinium robustum*, $\times 670$ (Kofoid and Swezy); l, *Massartia nieuportensis*, $\times 670$ (Conrad); m, *Chilodinium cruciatum*, $\times 900$ (Conrad); n, o, *Trochodinium prismaticum*, $\times 1270$ (Conrad); p, *Ceratodinium asymmetricum*, $\times 670$ (Conrad).

G. aeruginosum S. (Fig. 108, a). Chromatophores green; $33\text{--}35\mu$ by 22μ ; ponds and lakes.

G. rotundatum Klebs (Fig. 108, b). $32\text{--}35\mu$ by $22\text{--}25\mu$; fresh water.

G. palustre Schilling (Fig. 108, c). 45μ by 38μ ; fresh water.

G. agile Kofoid and Swezy (Fig. 108, d). About 28μ long; along sandy beaches.

Genus **Hemidinium** Stein. Asymmetrical; oval; annulus about half a turn, only on left half. One species.

H. nasutum S. (Fig. 108, e). Sulcus posterior; chromatophores yellow to brown; with a reddish brown oil drop; nucleus posterior; transverse fission; $24\text{--}28\mu$ by $16\text{--}17\mu$; fresh water.

Genus **Amphidinium** Claparède and Lachmann. Form variable; epicone small; annulus anterior; sulcus straight on hypocone or also on part of epicone; with or without chromatophores; mainly holophytic, some holozoic; coastal or fresh water. Numerous species.

A. lacustre Stein (Fig. 108, f). 30μ by 18μ ; in fresh and salt (?) water.

A. scissum Kofoid and Swezy (Fig. 108, g). $50\text{--}60\mu$ long; along sandy beaches.

A. fusiforme Martin. Fusiform, twice as long as broad; circular in cross-section; epicone rounded conical; annulus anterior; hypocone 2–2.5 times as long as epicone; sulcus obscure; body filled with yellowish green chromatophores except at posterior end; stigma dull orange, below girdle; nucleus ellipsoid, posterior to annulus; pellicle delicate; $17\text{--}22\mu$ by $8\text{--}11\mu$ in diameter. Martin (1929) found that it was extremely abundant in parts of Delaware Bay and gave rise to red coloration of the water ("Red water").

Genus **Gyrodinium** Kofoid and Swezy. Annulus descending left spiral; sulcus extending from end to end; nucleus central; pusules; surface smooth or striated; chromatophores rarely present; cytoplasm colored; holozoic; salt or fresh water. Many species.

G. biconicum K. and S. (Fig. 108, h). 68μ long; salt water; off California.

G. hyalinum (Schilling) (Fig. 108, i). About 24μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Cochlodinium** Schütt. Twisted at least 1.5 turns; annulus descending left spiral; pusules; cytoplasm colorless to highly colored; chromatophores rarely present; holozoic; surface smooth or striated; salt water. Numerous species.

C. atromaculatum Kofoid and Swezy (Fig. 108, j). $183\text{--}185\mu$ by 72μ ; longitudinal flagellum 45μ long; off California.

Genus **Torodinium** Kofoid and Swezy. Elongate; epicone several times longer than hypocone; annulus and hypocone form augur-

shaped cone; sulcus long; nucleus greatly elongate; salt water. 2 species.

T. robustum K. and S. (Fig. 108, *k*). 67–75 μ long; off California.

Genus **Massartia** Conrad. Cylindrical; epicone larger (9–10 times longer and 3 times wider) than hypocone; no sulcus; with or without yellowish discoid chromatophore.

M. nieuportensis C. (Fig. 108, *l*). 28–37 μ long; brackish water.

Genus **Chilodinium** Conrad. Ellipsoid; posterior end broadly rounded, anterior end narrowed and drawn out into a digitiform process closely adhering to body; sulcus, apex to 1/5 from posterior end; annulus oblique, in anterior 1/3.

C. cruciatum C. (Fig. 108, *m*). 40–50 μ by 30–40 μ ; with trichocysts; brackish water.

Genus **Trochodinium** Conrad. Somewhat similar to *Amphidinium*; epicone small, button-like; hypocone with 4 longitudinal rounded ridges; stigma; without chromatophores.

T. prismaticum C. (Fig. 108, *n*, *o*). 18–22 μ by 9–12 μ ; epicone 5–7 μ in diameter; brackish water.

Genus **Ceratodinium** Conrad. Cuneiform; asymmetrical, colorless, more or less flattened; annulus complete, oblique; sulcus on half of epicone and full length of hypocone; stigma.

C. asymmetricum C. (Fig. 108, *p*). 68–80 μ by about 10 μ ; brackish water.

Family 6 Blastodiniidae Kofoid and Swezy

All parasitic in or on plants and animals; in colony forming genera, there occur **trophocyte** (Chatton) by which organism is attached to host and more or less numerous **gonocytes** (Chatton).

Genus **Blastodinium** Chatton. In the gut of copepods; spindle-shaped, arched, ends attenuated; envelope (not cellulose) often with 2 spiral rows of bristles; young forms binucleate; when present, chromatophores in yellowish brown network; swimmers similar to those of *Gymnodinium*; in salt water. Many species.

B. spinulosum C. (Fig. 109, *a*). About 235 μ by 33–39 μ ; swimmers 5–10 μ ; in *Palacalanus parvus*, *Clausocalanus arcuicornis* and *C. furcatus*.

Genus **Oodinium** Chatton. Spherical or pyriform; with a short stalk; nucleus large; often with yellowish pigment; on Salpa, Annelida, Siphonophora, etc.

O. poucheti (Lemmermann) (Fig. 109, *b*, *c*). Fully grown individuals up to 170 μ long; bright yellow ochre; mature forms become detached and free, dividing into numerous gymnodinium-like swimmers; on the tunicate, *Oikopleura dioica*.

Genus *Apodinium* Chatton. Young individuals elongate, spherical or pyriform; binucleate; adult colorless; formation of numerous swarmer in adult stage is peculiar in that lower of the 2 individuals formed at each division secretes a new envelope, and delays its

FIG. 109. a, *Blastodinium spinulosum*, $\times 240$ (Chatton); b, c, *Oodinium poucheti* (c, a swarmer) (Chatton); d, e, *Apodinium mycetoides* (d, swarmer-formation, $\times 450$; e, a younger stage, $\times 640$) (Chatton); f, *Chytriodinium parasiticum* in a copepod egg (Dogiel); g, *Trypanodinium ovicola*, $\times 1070$ (Chatton); h, *Duboscqella tintinnicola* (Duboseq and Collin); i, j, *Haplozoon clymenellae* (i, mature colony, $\times 300$; j, a swarmer, $\times 1340$) (Shumway); k, *Syndinium turbo*, $\times 1340$ (Chatton); l, *Paradinium poucheti*, $\times 800$ (Chatton); m, *Ellobiopsis chattoni* on *Calanus finmarchicus* (Caullery); n, *Paraellobiopsis coutieri* (Collin).

further division until the upper one has divided for the second time, leaving several open cups; on tunicates.

A. mycetoides C. (Fig. 109, *d, e*). On gill-slits of *Fritillaria pelucida*.

Genus **Chytriodinium** Chatton. In eggs of planktonic copepods; young individuals grow at the expense of host egg and when fully formed, body divides into many parts, each producing 4 swarmers. Several species.

C. parasiticum (Dogiel) (Fig. 109, *f*). In copepod eggs; Naples.

Genus **Trypanodinium** Chatton. In copepod eggs; swarmer-stage only known.

T. ovicola C. (Fig. 109, *g*). Swarmers biflagellate; about 15μ long.

Genus **Duboscqella** Chatton. Rounded cell with a large nucleus; parasitic in Tintinnidae. One species.

D. tintinnicola (Lohmann) (Fig. 109, *h*). Intracellular stage oval, about 100μ in diameter with a large nucleus; swarmers biflagellate.

Genus **Haplozoon** Dogiel. In gut of polychaetes; mature forms composed of variable number of cells arranged in line or in pyramid; salt water. Many species.

H. clymenellae (Calkins) (Fig. 109, *i, j*). In *Clymenella torquata*; colonial forms consist of 250 or more cells; Woods Hole.

Genus **Syndinium** Chatton. In gut and body cavity of marine copepods; multinucleate round cysts in gut considered as young forms; multinucleate body in host body cavity with numerous needle-like inclusions.

S. turbo C. (Fig. 109, *k*). In *Paracalanus parvus*, *Corycaeus venustus*, *Calanus finmarchicus*; swarmers about 15μ long.

Genus **Paradinium** Chatton. In body-cavity of copepods; multinucleate body without inclusions; swarmers formed outside the host body.

P. poucheti C. (Fig. 109, *l*). In the copepod, *Acartia clausi*; swarmers about 25μ long, amoeboid.

Genus **Ellobiopsis** Caullery. Pyriform; with stalk; often a septum near stalked end; attached to anterior appendages of marine copepods.

E. chattoni C. (Fig. 109, *m*). Up to 700μ long; on antennae and oral appendages of *Calanus finmarchicus*, *Pseudocalanus elongatus* and *Acartia clausi*.

Genus **Paraellobiopsis** Collin. Young forms stalkless; spherical; mature individuals in chain-form; on Malacostraca.

P. coutieri C. (Fig. 109, *n*). On appendages of *Nebalia bipes*.

Family 7 **Polykrikidae** Kofoid and Swezey

Two, 4, 8, or 16 individuals permanently joined; individuals similar to *Gymnodinium*; sulcus however extending entire body length; with nematocysts (Fig. 110, b); greenish to pink; nuclei about 1/2 the number of individuals; holozoic; salt water.

Genus **Polykrikos** Bütschli. With the above-mentioned characters; salt or brackish water.

P. kofoidi (Chatton) (Fig. 110, a, b). Greenish grey to rose; composed of 2, 4, 8, or 16 individuals; with nematocysts; each nematocyst possesses presumably a hollow thread, and discharges under suitable stimulation its content; a binucleate colony composed of 4 individuals about 110μ long; off California.

P. barnegatensis Martin. Ovate, nearly circular in cross-section, slightly concave ventrally; composed of 2 individuals; constriction slight; beaded nucleus in center; annuli descending left spiral, displaced twice their width; sulcus ends near anterior end; cytoplasm colorless, with numerous oval, yellow-brown chromatophores; nematocysts absent; 46μ by 31.5μ ; in brackish water of Barnegat Bay.

Tribe 2 **Peridinioidae** Poche

The shell composed of epitheca, annulus and hypotheca, which may be divided into numerous plates; body form variable.

With annulus and sulcus

Shell composed of plates; but no suture. Family 1 Peridiniidae

Breast plate divided by sagittal suture. Family 2 Dinophysidae (p. 261)

Without annulus or sulcus. Family 3 Phytodiniidae (p. 261)

Family 1 **Peridiniidae** Kent

Shell composed of numerous plates; annulus usually at equator, covered by a plate known as **cingulum**; variously sculptured and finely perforated plates vary in shape and number among different species; in many species certain plates drawn out into various processes, varying greatly in different seasons and localities even among one and the same species; these processes seem to retard descending movement of organisms from upper to lower level in water when flagellar activity ceases; chromatophores numerous small platelets, yellow or green; some deep-sea forms without chromatophores; chain formation in some forms; mostly surface and pelagic inhabitants in fresh or salt water.

Genus **Peridinium** Ehrenberg. Subspherical to ovoid; reniform in cross-section; annulus slightly spiral with projecting rims; hypotheca often with short horns and epitheca drawn out; colorless, green, or

brown; stigma usually present; cysts spherical; salt or fresh water. Numerous species.

P. tabulatum Claparède and Lachmann (Fig. 110, c). 48μ by 44μ ; fresh water.

FIG. 110. a, b, *Polykrikos kofoidi* (a, colony of four individuals, $\times 340$; b, a nematocyst, $\times 1040$) (Kofoid and Swezy); c, *Peridinium tabulatum*, $\times 460$ (Schilling); d, *P. divergens*, $\times 340$ (Calkins); e, *Ceratium hirundinella*, $\times 540$ (Stein); f, *C. longipes*, $\times 100$ (Wailles); g, *C. tripos*, $\times 140$ (Wailles); h, *C. fusus*, $\times 100$ (Wailles); i, *Heterodinium scrippsi*, $\times 570$ (Kofoid and Adamson).

P. divergens (E.) (Fig. 110, *d*). About 45μ in diameter; yellowish, salt water.

Genus **Ceratium** Schrank. Body flattened; with one anterior and 1–4 posterior horn-like processes; often large; chromatophores yellow, brown, or greenish; color variation conspicuous; fission is said to take place at night and in the early morning; fresh or salt water. Numerous species; specific identification is difficult due to a great variation (p. 176).

C. hirundinella (Müller) (Figs. 85; 110, *e*). 1 apical and 2–3 antapical horns; seasonal and geographical variations (p. 177); chain-formation frequent; $95\text{--}700\mu$ long; fresh and salt water. Numerous varieties.

C. longipes (Bailey) (Fig. 110, *f*). About 210μ by $51\text{--}57\mu$; salt water.

C. tripos (Müller) (Fig. 110, *g*). About 225μ by 75μ ; salt water. Wailes (1928) observed var. *atlantica* in British Columbia; Martin (1929) in Barnegat Inlet, New Jersey.

C. fusus (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 110, *h*). $300\text{--}600\mu$ by $15\text{--}30\mu$; salt water; widely distributed; British Columbia (Wailes), New Jersey (Martin), etc.

Genus **Heterodinium** Kofoid. Flattened or spheroidal; 2 large antapical horns; annulus submedian; with post-cingular ridge; sulcus short, narrow; shell hyaline, reticulate, porulate; salt water. Numerous species.

H. scrippsi K. (Fig. 110, *i*). $130\text{--}155\mu$ long; Pacific and Atlantic (tropical).

Genus **Dolichodinium** Kofoid and Adamson. Subconical, elongate; without apical or antapical horns; sulcus not indenting epitheca; plate porulate; salt water.

D. lineatum (Kofoid and Michener) (Fig. 111, *a*). 58μ long; eastern tropical Pacific.

Genus **Goniodoma** Stein. Polyhedral with a deep annulus; epitheca and hypotheca slightly unequal in size, composed of regularly arranged armored plates; chromatophores small brown platelets; fresh or salt water.

G. acuminata (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 111, *b*). About 50μ long; salt water.

Genus **Gonyaulax** Diesing. Spherical, polyhedral, fusiform, elongated with stout apical and antapical prolongations, or dorso-ventrally flattened; apex never sharply attenuated; annulus equatorial; sulcus from apex to antapex, broadened posteriorly; plates 1–6 apical, 0–3 anterior intercalaries, 6 precingulars, 6 annular plates, 6 postincingulars, 1 posterior intercalary and 1 antapical;

porulate; chromatophores yellow to dark brown, often dense; without stigma; fresh, brackish or salt water. Numerous species.

G. polyedra Stein (Fig. 111, c). Angular, polyhedral; ridges along sutures, annulus displaced 1–2 annulus widths, regularly pitted; salt water. "Very abundant in the San Diego region in the summer

FIG. 111. a, *Dolichodinium lineatum*, $\times 670$ (Kofoid and Adamson); b, *Goniodoma acuminata*, $\times 340$ (Stein); c, *Gonaulax polyedra*, $\times 670$ (Kofoid); d, *G. apiculata*, $\times 670$ (Lindemann); e, *Spiraulax jolliffei*, right side of theca, $\times 340$ (Kofoid); f, *Dinophysis acuta*, $\times 580$ (Schütt); g, h, *Oxyphysis oxytoxoides*, $\times 780$ (Kofoid); i, *Phytodinium simplex*, $\times 340$ (Klebs); j, k, *Dissodinium lunula*: j, primary cyst (Dogiel); k, secondary cyst with 4 swimmers (Wailes), $\times 220$.

plankton, July–September, when it causes local outbreaks of 'red water,' which extend along the coast of southern and lower California" (Kofoid, 1911).

G. apiculata (Penard) (Fig. 111, d). Ovate, chromatophores yellowish brown; 30–60 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Spiraulax** Kofoid. Biconical; apices pointed; sulcus not reaching apex; no ventral pore; surface heavily pitted; salt water.

S. jolliffei (Murray and Whitting) (Fig. 111, e). 132 μ by 92 μ ; California.

Family 2 Dinophysidae Kofoid

Genus **Dinophysis** Ehrenberg. Highly compressed; annulus widened, funnel-like, surrounding small epitheca; chromatophores yellow; salt water. Several species.

D. acuta E. (Fig. 111, f). Oval; attenuated posteriorly; 54–94 μ long; widely distributed; British Columbia (Wailes).

Genus **Oxyphysis** Kofoid. Epitheca developed; sulcus short; sulcal lists feebly developed; sagittal suture conspicuous; annulus impressed; salt water.

O. oxytoxoides K. (Fig. 111, g, h). 63–68 μ by 15 μ ; off Alaska.

FIG. 112. a, *Leptodiscus medusoides*, $\times 50$ (Hertwig); b, *Craspedotella pileolus*, $\times 110$ (Kofoid).

Family 3 Phytodiniidae Klebs

Genus **Phytodinium** Klebs. Spherical or ellipsoidal; without furrows; chromatophores discoidal, yellowish brown.

P. simplex K. (Fig. 111, i). Spherical or oval; 42–50 μ by 30–45 μ fresh water.

Genus **Dissodinium** Klebs (*Pyrocystis* Paulsen). Primary cyst, spherical, uninucleate; contents divide into 8–16 crescentic secondary cysts which become set free; in them are formed 2, 4, 6, or 8 Gymnodinium-like swimmers; salt water.

D. lunula (Schütt) (Fig. 111, j, k). Primary cysts 80–155 μ in diameter; secondary cysts 104–130 μ long; swimmers 22 μ long; widely distributed; British Columbia (Wailes).

Suborder 3 Cystoflagellata Haeckel

Since Noctiluca which had for many years been placed in this suborder, has been removed, according to Kofoid, to the second suborder, the Cystoflagellata becomes a highly ill-defined group and

includes two peculiar marine forms: *Leptodiscus medusoides* Hertwig (Fig. 112, a), and *Craspedotella pileolus* Kofoid (Fig. 112, b), both of which are medusoid in general body form.

References

- CHATTON, E. 1920 Les Péridieniens parasites; morphologie, reproduction, ethologie, Arch. zool. exp. et gén. Vol. 59.
- DIWALD, K. 1939 Ein Beitrag zur Variabilität und Systematik der Gattung Peridinium. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 93.
- FRITSCH, F. E. 1935 *The structure and reproduction of the algae*. Vol. 1. Cambridge.
- GROSS, F. 1934 Zur Biologie und Entwicklungsgeschichte von *Noctiluca miliaris*. Archiv. f. Protistenk., Vol. 83.
- KOFOID, C. A. 1906 On the significance of the symmetry of the Dinoflagellata. Uni. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 3.
- 1920 A new morphological interpretation of *Noctiluca* and its bearing on the status of Cystoflagellata. Ibid., Vol. 19.
- and A. M. ADAMSON 1933 The Dinoflagellata: The family Heterodiniidae of the Peridinioidae. Mem. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harvard, Vol. 54.
- and OLIVE SWEZY 1921 The free-living unarmored Dinoflagellata. Mem. Uni. Calif., Vol. 5.
- LEBOUR, MARIE V. 1925 *The dinoflagellates of northern seas*. London.
- MARTIN, G. W. 1929 Dinoflagellates from marine and brackish waters of New Jersey. Uni. Iowa Studies in Nat. Hist., Vol. 12.
- REICHENOW, E. 1930 *Parasitische Peridinea*. Grimpe's *Die Tierwelt der Nord- und Ostsee*. Part 19.
- SCHILLING, A. 1913 *Dinoflagellatae (Peridineae)*. *Süßwasserflora Deutschlands*, etc. H. 3.
- WAILES, G. H. 1928 Dinoflagellates and Protozoa from British Columbia. Vancouver Mus. Notes. Vol. 3.

CHAPTER 13

Subclass 2 *Zoomastigina* Doflein

THE *Zoomastigina* lack chromatophores and their body organizations vary greatly from a simple to a very complex type. The majority possess a single nucleus which is, as a rule, vesicular in structure. A characteristic organella, the parabasal body (p. 66) is present in numerous forms and myonemes are found in some species. Nutrition is holozoic or saprozoic (parasitic). Asexual reproduction is by longitudinal fission; sexual reproduction is unknown. Encystment occurs commonly. The *Zoomastigina* are free-living or parasitic in various animals.

- With pseudopodia besides flagella.....Order 1 *Rhizomastigina*
- With flagella only
 - With 1-2 flagella.....Order 2 *Protomonadina* (p. 268)
 - With 3-8 flagella.....Order 3 *Polymastigina* (p. 293)
 - With more than 8 flagella.....Order 4 *Hypermastigina* (p. 318)

Order 1 *Rhizomastigina* Bütschli

A number of borderline forms between the *Sarcodina* and the *Mastigophora* are placed here. Flagella vary in number from one to several and pseudopods also vary greatly in number and in appearance.

- With many flagella.....Family 1 *Multiciliidae*
- With 1-3 rarely 4 flagella.....Family 2 *Mastigamoebidae*

Family 1 *Multiciliidae* Poche

Genus **Multicilia** Cienkowski. Generally spheroidal, but amoeboid; with 40-50 flagella, long and evenly distributed; one or more nuclei; holozoic; food obtained by means of pseudopodia; multiplication by fission; fresh or salt water.

M. marina C. (Fig. 113, *a*). 20-30 μ in diameter; uninucleate; salt water.

M. lacustris Lauterborn (Fig. 113, *b*). Multinucleate; 30-40 μ in diameter; fresh water.

Family 2 *Mastigamoebidae*

With 1-3 or rarely 4 flagella and axopodia or lobopodia; uninucleate; flagellum arises from a basal granule which is connected with the nucleus by a rhizoplast; binary fission in both trophic and encysted stages; sexual reproduction has been reported in one spe-

cies; holozoic or saprozoic; the majority are free-living, though a few parasitic.

Genus **Mastigamoeba** Schulze (*Mastigina* Frenzel). Monomastigote, uninucleate, with finger-like pseudopodia; flagellum long and connected with nucleus; fresh water, soil or endocommensal.

FIG. 113. a, *Multicilia marina*, $\times 400$ (Cienkowski); b, *M. lacustris*, $\times 400$ (Lauterborn); c, *Mastigamoeba aspera*, $\times 200$ (Schulze); d, *M. longifilum*, $\times 340$ (Stokes); e, *M. setosa*, $\times 370$ (Goldschmidt); f, *Mastigella vitrea*, $\times 370$ (Goldschmidt).

M. aspera S. (Fig. 113, c). Subspherical or oval; during locomotion elongate and narrowed anteriorly, while posterior end rounded or lobed; numerous pseudopods slender, straight; nucleus near flagellate end; 2 contractile vacuoles; $150\text{--}200\mu$ by about 50μ ; in ooze of pond.

M. longifilum Stokes (Fig. 113, d). Elongate, transparent; flagellum twice body length; pseudopods few, short; contractile vacuole anterior; body 28μ long when extended, contracted about 10μ ; stagnant water.

M. setosa (Goldschmidt) (Fig. 113, e). Up to 140μ long.

M. hylae (Frenzel) (Fig. 114, a). In hind gut of frogs and tadpoles; $80\text{--}100\mu$ by 20μ ; flagellum about 10μ long.

Genus **Mastigella** Frenzel. Flagellum apparently not connected with nucleus; pseudopods numerous, digitate; body form changes actively and continuously; contractile vacuole.

M. vitrea Goldschmidt (Fig. 113, f). 150μ long; sexual reproduction (Goldschmidt).

FIG. 114. a, *Mastigamoeba hylae*, $\times 690$ (Becker); b, *Actinomonas mirabilis*, $\times 1140$ (Griessmann); c, *Dimorpha mutans*, $\times 940$ (Blochmann); d, *Pteridomonas pulex*, $\times 540$ (Penard); e, *Histomonas meleagridis*, $\times 940$ (Tyzzer); f, *Rhizomastix gracilis*, $\times 1340$ (Mackinnon).

Genus **Actinomonas** Kent. Generally spheroidal, with a single flagellum and radiating pseudopods; ordinarily attached to foreign object with a cytoplasmic process, but swims freely by withdrawing it; nucleus central; several contractile vacuoles; holozoic.

A. mirabilis K. (Fig. 114, b). Numerous simple filopodia; about 10μ in diameter; flagellum 20μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Dimorpha** Gruber. Ovoid or subspherical; with 2 flagella and radiating axopodia, all arising from an eccentric centriole; nucleus eccentric; pseudopods sometimes withdrawn; fresh water.

D. mutans G. (Fig. 114, c). $15\text{--}20\mu$ in diameter; flagella about $20\text{--}30\mu$ long.

Genus **Pteridomonas** Penard. Small, heart-shaped; usually attached with a long cytoplasmic process; from opposite pole there

arises a single flagellum, around which occurs a ring of extremely fine filopods; nucleus central; a contractile vacuole; holozoic; fresh water.

P. pulex P. (Fig. 114, d). 6–12 μ broad.

Genus **Histomonas** Tyzzer. Actively amoeboid; mostly rounded, sometimes elongate; a single nucleus; an extremely fine flagellum arises from a blepharoplast, located close to nucleus; axostyle (?) sometimes present; in domestic fowls. One species.

H. meleagridis (Smith) (*Amoeba meleagridis* S.) (Figs. 114, e; 115). Actively amoeboid organism; usually rounded; 8–21 μ (average 10–14 μ) in the largest diameter; nucleus circular or pyriform with a large

FIG. 115. *Histomonas meleagridis* as seen in smears from culture. $\times 1650$ (Bishop) a, an amoeboid form; b, rounded form with axostyle (?); c, nucleus preparing to divide; d, a stage in nuclear division.

endosome; a fine flagellum; food vacuoles contain bacteria, starch grains and erythrocytes; binary fission; during division flagellum is discarded; cysts unobserved; in young turkeys, chicks, grouse, and quail (Tyzzer).

This organism is the cause of enterohepatitis known as "black-head," an infectious disease, in young turkeys in which it is often fatal and also in other fowls. Smith (1895) discovered the organism and considered it an amoeba. It invades and destroys the mucosa of the intestine and caeca as well as the liver tissues. Trophozoites voided in faeces by infected birds may become the source of new infection when taken in by young birds with drink or food. Tyzzer however demonstrated that the organism is transmissible from bird to bird in the eggs of the nematode *Heterakis gallinae*. Bishop (1938) made a cultural study of the organism. Dobell (1940) points out the similarity between this flagellate and *Dientamoeba fragilis* (p. 368). Wenrich (1943) made a comparative study of forms found in the caecal smears of wild ring-neck pheasants and of chicks. The organisms measured 5–30 μ in diameter and possessed 1–4 flagella, though often there were no flagella.

Genus **Rhizomastix** Alexeieff. Body amoeboid; nucleus central; blepharoplast located between nucleus and posterior end; a long

fiber runs from it to anterior end and continues into the flagellum; without contractile vacuole; division in spherical cyst.

R. gracilis A. (Fig. 114, *f*). 8–14 μ long; flagellum 20 μ long; in intestine of axolotles and tipulid larvae.

References

- BECKER, E. R. 1925 The morphology of *Mastigina hylae* (Frenzel) from the intestine of the tadpole. Jour. Paras., Vol. 11.
- BISHOP, ANN 1938 *Histomonas meleagridis* in domestic fowls (*Gallus gallus*). Cultivation and experimental infection. Parasitology, Vol. 30.
- DOBELL, C. 1940 Research on the intestinal Protozoa of monkeys and man. X. Ibid., Vol. 32.
- LEMMERMANN, E. 1914 *Pantostomatinae*. *Süsswasserflora Deutschlands*, etc. H.L.
- TYZZER, E. E. 1919 Developmental phases of the protozoon of "blackhead" in Turkeys. Jour. Med. Res., Vol. 40.
- WENRICH, D. H. 1943 Observations on the morphology of *Histomonas* from pheasants and chickens. Jour. Morph., Vol. 72.

CHAPTER 14

Order 2 **Protomonadina** Blochmann

THE protomonads possess one or two flagella and are composed of a heterogeneous lot of Protozoa, mostly parasitic, whose affinities to one another are very incompletely known. The body is in many cases plastic, having no definite pellicle, and in some forms amoeboid. The method of nutrition is holozoic, or saprozoic (parasitic). Reproduction is, as a rule, by longitudinal fission, although budding or multiple fission has also been known to occur, while sexual reproduction, though reported in some forms, has not been confirmed.

With 1 flagellum

With collar

Collar enclosed in jelly Family 1 Phalansteriidae

Collar not enclosed in jelly

Without lorica Family 2 Codosigidae

With lorica Family 3 Bicosoecidae (p. 270)

Without collar

Free-living Family 4 Oikomonadidae (p. 271)

Parasitic Family 5 Trypanosomatidae (p. 272)

With 2 flagella

With undulating membrane Family 6 Cryptobiidae (p. 284)

Without undulating membrane

Flagella equally long Family 7 Amphimonadidae (p. 285)

Flagella unequally long

No trailing flagellum Family 8 Monadidae (p. 287)

One flagellum trailing Family 9 Bodonidae (p. 289)

Family 1 **Phalansteriidae** Kent

Genus **Phalansterium** Cienkowski. Small, ovoid; one flagellum and a small collar; numerous individuals are embedded in gelatinous substance which presents a dendritic form, with protruding flagella; fresh water.

P. digitatum Stein (Fig. 116, *a*). Cells about 17μ long; oval; colony dendritic; fresh water among vegetation.

Family 2 **Codosigidae** Kent

Small flagellates, sometimes with second flagellum which serves for fixation of body; delicate collar surrounds flagellum; ordinarily sedentary forms; if temporarily free, organisms swim with flagellum directed backward; holozoic on bacteria or saprozoic; often colonial; free-living in fresh water.

Genus **Codosiga** Kent (*Codonocladium* Stein; *Astrosiga* Kent). Individuals clustered at end of a simple or branching stalk; fresh water.

C. utriculus Stokes (Fig. 116, b). About 11μ long; attached to freshwater plants.

C. disjuncta (Fromentel) (Fig. 116, c). In stellate clusters; cells about 15μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Monosiga** Kent. Solitary; with or without stalk; occasionally with short pseudopodia; attached to freshwater plants. Several species.

FIG. 116. a, *Phalansterium digitatum*, $\times 540$ (Stein); b, *Codosiga utriculus*, $\times 1340$ (Stokes); c, *C. disjuncta*, $\times 400$ (Kent); d, *Monosiga ovata*, $\times 800$ (Kent); e, *M. robusta*, $\times 770$ (Stokes); f, *Desmarella moniliformis*, $\times 800$ (Kent); g, *Protospongia haeckeli*, $\times 400$ (Lemmermann); h, *Sphaeroeca volvox*, $\times 890$ (Lemmermann); i, *Diplosiga francei*, $\times 400$ (Lemmermann); j, *D. socialis*, $\times 670$ (Francé).

M. ovata K. (Fig. 116, d). $5\text{--}15\mu$ long; with a short stalk.

M. robusta Stokes (Fig. 116, e). 13μ long; stalk very long.

Genus **Desmarella** Kent. Cells united laterally to one another; fresh water.

D. moniliformis K. (Fig. 116, f). Cells about 6μ long; cluster composed of 2–12 individuals; standing fresh water.

D. irregularis Stokes. Cluster of individuals irregularly branching, composed of more than 50 cells; cells 7–11 μ long; pond water.

Genus **Protospongia** Kent. Stalkless individuals embedded irregularly in a jelly mass, collars protruding; fresh water.

P. haeckeli K. (Fig. 116, *g*). Body oval; 8 μ long; flagellum 24–32 μ long; 6–60 cells in a colony.

Genus **Sphaeroeca** Lauterborn. Somewhat similar to the last genus; but individuals with stalks and radiating; gelatinous mass spheroidal; fresh water.

S. volvox L. (Fig. 116, *h*). Cells ovoid, 8–12 μ long; stalk about twice as long; flagellum long; contractile vacuole posterior; colony 82–200 μ in diameter; fresh water.

Genus **Diplosiga** Frenzel (*Codonosigopsis* Senn). With 2 collars; without lorica; a contractile vacuole; solitary or clustered (up to 4); fresh water.

D. francei Lemmermann (Fig. 116, *i*). With a short pedicel; 12 μ long; flagellum as long as body.

D. socialis F. (Fig. 116, *j*). Body about 15 μ long; usually 4 clustered at one end of stalk (15 μ long).

Family 3 Bicosoecidae Poche

Small monomastigote; with lorica; solitary or colonial; collar may be rudimentary; holozoic; fresh water.

Genus **Bicosoeca** James-Clark. With vase-like lorica; body small, ovoid with rudimentary collar, a flagellum extending through it; protoplasmic body anchored to base by a cytoplasmic filament (flagellum?); a nucleus and a contractile vacuole; attached or free-swimming.

B. socialis Lauterborn (Fig. 117, *a*). Lorica cylindrical, 23 μ by 12 μ ; body about 10 μ long; often in groups; free-swimming in fresh water.

Genus **Salpingoeca** James-Clark. With a vase-like chitinous lorica to which stalked or stalkless organism is attached; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

S. fusiformis Kent (Fig. 117, *b*). Lorica short vase-like, about 15–16 μ long; body filling lorica; flagellum as long as body; fresh water.

Genus **Diplosigopsis** Francé. Similar to *Diplosiga* but with lorica; solitary; fresh water on algae.

D. affinis Lemmermann (Fig. 117, *c*). Chitinous lorica, spindle-form, about 15 μ long; body not filling lorica; fresh water.

Genus **Histiona** Voigt. With lorica; but body without attaching filament; anterior end with lips and sail-like projection; fresh water.

H. zachariasi V. (Fig. 117, d). Lorica cup-like; without stalk; about 13μ long; oval body 13μ long; flagellum long; standing fresh water.

Genus **Poteriodendron** Stein. Similar to *Bicosoeca*; but colonial; lorica vase-shaped; with a prolonged stalk; fresh water.

P. petiolatum (S.) (Fig. 117, e). Lorica $17\text{--}50\mu$ high; body $21\text{--}35\mu$ long; flagellum twice as long as body; contractile vacuole terminal; standing fresh water.

Genus **Codonoeca** James-Clark. With a stalked lorica; a single flagellum; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; fresh or salt water.

FIG. 117. a, *Bicosoeca socialis*, $\times 560$ (Lauterborn); b, *Salpingoeca fusiformis*, $\times 400$ (Lemmermann); c, *Diplosigopsis affinis*, $\times 590$ (Francé); d, *Histiona zachariasi*, $\times 440$ (Lemmermann); e, *Poteriodendron petiolatum*, $\times 440$ (Stein); f, *Codonoeca inclinata*, $\times 540$ (Kent); g, *Lagenoeca ovata*, $\times 400$ (Lemmermann).

C. inclinata Kent (Fig. 117, f). Lorica oval; aperture truncate; about 23μ long; stalk twice as long; body oval, about 17μ long; flagellum 1.5 times as long as body; contractile vacuole posterior; standing fresh water.

Genus **Lagenoeca** Kent. Resembles somewhat *Salpingoeca*; with lorica; but without any pedicel between body and lorica; solitary; free-swimming; fresh water.

L. ovata Lemmermann (Fig. 117, g). Lorica oval, 15μ long; body loosely filling lorica; flagellum 1.5 times body length; fresh water.

Family 4 Oikomonadidae Hartog

Genus **Oikomonas** Kent. A rounded monomastigote; uninucleate; encystment common; stagnant water, soil and exposed faecal matter.

O. termo (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 118, a). Spherical or oval; anterior end lip-like; flagellum about twice body length; a contractile vacuole; 5–20 μ in diameter; stagnant water. Hardin (1942) cultured the organism bacteria-free.

Genus **Thylacomonas** Schewiakoff. Pellicle distinct; cytostome anterior; one flagellum; contractile vacuole anterior; rare.

T. compressa S. (Fig. 118, b). 22 μ by 18 μ ; flagellum body length; fresh water.

Genus **Ancyromonas** Kent. Ovate to triangular; free-swimming or adherent; flagellum trailing, adhesive or anchorate at its distal end, vibratile throughout remainder of its length; nucleus central; a contractile vacuole; fresh or salt water.

FIG. 118. a, *Oikomonas termo*, $\times 1330$ (Lemmermann); b, *Thylacomonas compressa*, $\times 640$ (Lemmermann); c, *Ancyromonas contorta*, $\times 2000$ (Lemmermann); d, *Platytheca microspora*, $\times 650$ (Stein).

A. contorta (Klebs) (Fig. 118, c). Triangular, flattened; posterior end pointed; 6–7 μ by 5–6 μ ; flagellum short; a contractile vacuole; standing fresh water.

Genus **Platytheca** Stein. With a flattened pyriform lorica, with a small aperture; 1 or more contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

P. microspora S. (Fig. 118, d). Lorica yellowish brown, with a small aperture; 12–18 μ long; flagellum short; among roots of *Lemna*.

Family 5 Trypanosomatidae Doflein

Body characteristically leaf-like, although changeable to a certain extent; a single nucleus and a blepharoplast; a flagellum originates in a basal granule which may be independent from, or united with, the blepharoplast (Figs. 9; 119); basal portion of flagellum forms outer margin of undulating membrane which extends along one side of body; exclusively parasitic; a number of important parasitic Protozoa which are responsible for serious diseases of man and domestic animals in various parts of the world are included in it.

Genus **Trypanosoma** Gruby. Parasitic in the circulatory system of vertebrates; highly flattened, pointed at flagellate end, and bluntly rounded, or pointed, at other; polymorphism due to differences in development common; nucleus central; near bluntly rounded end, there is a blepharoplast and usually a basal granule from which the flagellum arises and runs toward opposite end, marking the outer boundary of the undulating membrane; in most cases flagellum extends freely beyond body; many with myonemes; multiplication by binary or multiple fission. The organism is carried from host to

In vertebrate host	In invertebrate host				In vertebrate host

Trypanosoma	Trypanosoma	Crithidia	Leptomonas	Leishmania	Leishmania
			Leptomonas and Phytomonas (in plant)		
			Leishmania		
		Crithidia			
	Herpetomonas				
	Trypanosoma				

FIG. 119. Diagram illustrating the morphological differences among the genera of Trypanosomatidae (Wenyon)

host by blood-sucking invertebrates and undergoes a series of changes in the digestive system of the latter (Fig. 120). A number of forms are pathogenic to their hosts and the diseased condition is termed *trypanosomiasis* in general.

T. gambiense Dutton (Fig. 121). The trypanosome, as it occurs in the blood, lymph or cerebro-spinal fluid, is extremely active; body elongate, tapering towards both ends and sinuous; $15-30\mu$ by $1-3\mu$; the small blepharoplast is located near the posterior end; flagellum arises from the blepharoplast and runs forward along the outer border of somewhat spiral undulating membrane, extending freely; binary fission; between long (dividing) and short (recently divided) forms, various intermediates occur; in man in central Africa.

No other stages are found in the human host. When a "tse-tse" fly, *Glossina palpalis* or *G. tachinoides*, sucks the blood of an infected person, the trypanosomes remain in its stomach for a few

FIG. 120. The life-cycle of *Trypanosoma lewisi* in the flea, *Ceratophyllus fasciatus* (Minchin and Thomson, modified). a, trypanosome from rat's blood; b, individual after being in flea's stomach for a few hours; c-l, stages in intracellular schizogony in stomach epithelium; m-r, two ways in which rectal phase may arise from stomach forms in rectum; s, rectal phase, showing various types; t, secondary infection of pylorus of hind-gut, showing forms similar to those of rectum.

days and undergo multiplication which produces flagellates of diverse size and form until 7th to 10th days when the organisms show a very wide range of forms. From 10th to 12th days on, long slender forms appear in great numbers and these migrate gradually towards proventriculus in which they become predominant forms. They further migrate to the salivary glands and attach themselves to the duct-wall in crithidia form. Here the development continues for 2-5 days and the flagellates finally transform themselves into small trypanosomes which are now infective. These metacyclic trypanosomes pass down through the ducts and hypopharynx. When the fly bites a person, the trypanosomes enter the victim. In addition to this so-called cyclic transmission, mechanical transmission may take place.

FIG. 121. *Trypanosoma gambiense* in a stained blood film of an inoculated rat. Two individuals are in the process of division, $\times 1150$ (Kudo).

Trypanosoma gambiense is a pathogenic protozoan which causes Gambian or Central African sleeping sickness. The disease occurs in, and confined to, central Africa within a zone on both sides of the equator where the vectors, *Glossina palpalis* and *G. tachinoides* (on the west coastal region) live. Many wild animals have been found naturally infected by the organisms and are considered to be reservoir hosts.

The chief lesions of infection are in the lymphatic glands and in the central nervous system. In all cases, there is an extensive small-cell infiltration of the perivascular lymphatic tissue throughout the central nervous system.

T. rhodesiense Stephens and Fantham (Fig. 122). Morphologically similar to *T. gambiense*, but when inoculated into rats, the position of the nucleus shifts in certain proportion (usually less than 5%) of individuals toward the posterior end, near or behind the blepharoplast, together with the shortening of body. Some consider this

trypanosome as a virulent race of *T. gambiense* or one transmitted by a different vector, others consider it a human strain of *T. brucei*.

The disease caused by this trypanosome appears to be more virulent and runs a course of only a few months. It is known as Rhodesian or East African sleeping sickness. The organism is confined to south-eastern coastal areas of Africa and transmitted by *Glossina morsitans*.

FIG. 122. *Trypanosoma rhodesiense* in a stained blood film of an inoculated rat, $\times 1150$ (Kudo).

T. cruzi Chagas (*Schizotrypanum cruzi* C.; *T. triatomae* Kofoid and McCulloch) (Fig. 123). A small curved (C or U) form about 20μ long; nucleus central; blepharoplast conspicuously large, located close to sharply pointed non-flagellate end; multiplication takes

FIG. 123. *Trypanosoma cruzi*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, five trypanosomes in a very thin blood film of an inoculated rat; 2, leishmania forms occurring in the skeletal muscle cell of patient; 3, a flagellating individual seen in a host cell.

place in the cells of nearly every organ of the host body; upon entering a host cell, the trypanosome loses its flagellum and undulating membrane, and assumes a leishmania form which measures 2 to 5μ in diameter; this form undergoes repeated binary fission, and a large number of daughter individuals are produced; they develop sooner or

later into trypanosomes which, through rupture of host cells, become liberated into blood stream.

This trypanosome is the causative organism of Chagas' disease or South American trypanosomiasis which is mainly a children's disease, and is widely distributed in Brazil, Argentina, Uruguay, Peru, Venezuela, Colombia, Panama, Salvador, Guatemala, and Mexico. In the infected person, the heart and skeletal muscles show cyst-like bodies.

The transmission of the organism is carried on by numerous species of reduviid bugs, bed bugs and certain ticks, though the first named bugs belonging to genus *Triatoma* (cone-nosed or kissing bug), especially *T. megista*, are the chief vectors. When *T. megista* (nymph or adult) ingests the infected blood, the organisms undergo division in stomach and intestine, and become transformed into erithidia forms which continue to multiply. In 8-10 days the metacyclic or infective trypanosomes make their appearance and pass out in the faeces of the bug. Inoculation of the parasite into man appears to take place through ingestion of the insect faeces or scratching the bite-site and directly injecting the trypanosomes into the wounds.

Cats, dogs, opossums, monkeys, armadillos, bats, foxes, squirrels, wood rats, etc., have been found to be naturally infected by *T. cruzi*, and are considered as reservoir hosts. Vectors are also numerous.

No cases of Chagas' disease have been reported from the United States, but Wood (1934) found a San Diego wood rat (*Neotoma fuscipes macrotis*) in the vicinity of San Diego, California, infected by *Trypanosoma cruzi* and Packchianian (1942) observed in Texas, 1 nine-banded armadillo (*Dasypus novemcinctus*), 8 opossums (*Didelphys virginiana*), 2 house mice (*Mus musculus*), and 32 wood rats (*Neotoma micropus micropus*), naturally infected by *Trypanosoma cruzi*. It has now become known through the studies of Kofoid, Wood, and others that *Triatoma protracta* (California, New Mexico), *T. rubida* (Arizona, Texas), *T. gerstaeckeri* (Texas), *T. heidemanni* (Texas), *T. longipes* (Arizona), etc., are naturally infected by *T. cruzi*. Wood and Wood (1941) consider it probable that human cases of Chagas' disease may exist in southwestern United States. For information on the species of *Triatoma* and their relationships to *Trypanosoma cruzi*, the reader is referred to Usinger (1944).

T. brucei Plimmer and Bradford (Figs. 9, a; 124, a). Polymorphic; 15-30 μ long (average 20 μ); transmitted by various species of tsetse flies, Glossina; the most virulent of all trypanosomes; the cause of the fatal disease known as "nagana" among mules, donkeys, horses,

camels, cattle, swine, dogs, etc., which terminates in the death of the host animal in from two weeks to a few months; wild animals are equally susceptible; the disease occurs, of course, only in the region in Africa where the tsetse flies live.

T. theileri Laveran (Fig. 124, b). Large trypanosome which occurs in blood of cattle; sharply pointed at both ends; 60–70 μ long; myonemes are well developed.

T. americanum Crawley. In American cattle; probably identical with *T. theileri*; transmitted from cattle to cattle by tabanid flies.

FIG. 124. a, *Trypanosoma brucei*; b, *T. theileri*; c, *T. melophagium*; d, *T. evansi*; e, *T. equinum*; f, *T. equiperdum*; g, *T. lewisi*; all $\times 1330$ (several authors).

T. melophagium (Flu) (Fig. 124, c). A trypanosome of the sheep; 50–60 μ long with attenuated ends; transmitted by *Melophagus ovinus*.

T. evansi (Steel) (Fig. 124, d). In horses, mules, donkeys, cattle, dogs, camels, elephants, etc.; infection in horses seems to be usually fatal and known as “surra”; about 25 μ long; monomorphic; transmitted by tabanid flies; widely distributed.

T. equinum Vages (Fig. 124, e). In horses in South America, causing an acute disease known as “mal de Caderas”; other domestic animals do not suffer as much as do horses; 20–25 μ long; without blepharoplast.

T. equiperdum Doflein (Fig. 124, f). In horses and donkeys; causes “dourine,” a chronic disease; widely distributed; 25–30 μ long; no intermediate host; transmission takes place directly from host to host during sexual act.

T. lewisi (Kent) (Figs. 120; 124, g). In blood of various species of rat; widely distributed; about 25μ long; very active; slender; with a long flagellum; transmitted by the flea, *Ceratophyllus fasciatus*, in which the organism undergoes changes (Fig. 120); when a rat swallows freshly voided faecal matter containing the organisms, it becomes infected.

T. duttoni Thiroux. In the mouse; similar to *T. lewisi*, but rats are said not to be susceptible, hence considered as a distinct species; transmission by fleas.

T. peromysci Watson. Similar to *T. lewisi*; in Canadian deer mice, *Peromyscus maniculatus* and others.

T. nabiasi Railliet. Similar to *T. lewisi*; in rabbits, *Lepus domesticus* and *L. cuniculus*.

T. paddae Laveran and Mesnil. In Java sparrow, *Munia oryzivora*.

T. noctuae (Schaudinn). In the little owl, *Athene noctua*.

Numerous other species are known.

Crocodiles, snakes, and turtles are also hosts for Trypanosoma. Transmission by blood-sucking arthropods or leeches.

T. rotatorium (Meyer) (Fig. 125, a). In tadpoles and adults of various species of frog; between a slender form with a long projecting flagellum measuring about 35μ long and a very broad one without free portion of flagellum, various intermediate forms are to be noted in a single host; blood vessels of internal organs, such as kidneys, contain more individuals than the peripheral vessels; nucleus central, hard to stain; blepharoplast small; undulating membrane highly developed; myonemes prominent; multiplication by longitudinal fission; the leech, *Placobdella marginata*, has been found to be the transmitter in some localities.

T. inopinatum Sergent and Sergent (Fig. 125, b). In blood of various frogs; slender; $12-20\mu$ long; larger forms $30-35\mu$ long; blepharoplast comparatively large; transmitted by leeches.

Numerous species of Trypanosoma have been reported from the frog, but specific identification is difficult; it is better and safer to hold that they belong to one of the 2 species mentioned above until their development and transmission become known.

T. diemyctyli Tobey (Fig. 125, c). In blood of the newt, *Triturus viridescens*; a comparatively large form; slender; about 50μ by $2-5\mu$; flagellum $20-25\mu$ long; with well developed undulating membrane.

Both fresh and salt water fish are hosts to different species of trypanosomes; what effect these parasites exercise upon the host

fish is not understood; as a rule, only a few individuals are observed in the peripheral blood of the host.

T. granulosum Laveran and Mesnil (Fig. 125, e). In the eel, *Anguilla vulgaris*; 70–80 μ long.

T. giganteum Neumann (Fig. 125, d). In *Raja oxyrhynchus*; 125–130 μ long.

T. remaki Laveran and Mesnil (Fig. 125, f). In *Esox lucius*, *E. reticulatus* and probably other species; 24–33 μ long.

FIG. 125. a, *Trypanosoma rotatorium* $\times 750$ (Kudo); b, *T. inopinatum*, $\times 1180$ (Kudo); c, *T. diemyctyli*, $\times 800$ (Hegner); d, *T. giganteum*, $\times 500$ (Neumann); e, *T. granulosum*, $\times 1000$ (Minchin); f, *T. remaki*, $\times 1650$ (Kudo); g, *T. percae*, $\times 1000$ (Minchin); h, *T. danilewskyi*, $\times 1000$ (Laveran and Mesnil); i, *T. rajae*, $\times 1600$ (Kudo).

T. percae Brumpt (Fig. 125, g). In *Perca fluviatilis*; 45–50 μ long.

T. danilewskyi Laveran and Mesnil (Fig. 125, h). In carp and goldfish; widely distributed; 40 μ long.

T. rajae Laveran and Mesnil (Fig. 125, i). In various species of *Raja*; 30–35 μ long.

Genus *Crithidia* Léger. Parasitic in arthropods and other invertebrates; blepharoplast located between central nucleus and flagellum-bearing end (Fig. 119); undulating membrane not so well developed as in *Trypanosoma*; it may lose the flagellum and form a leptomonas or rounded leishmania stage which leaves host intestine with faecal matter and becomes the source of infection in other host animals.

C. euryophthalmi McCulloch (Fig. 126, a–c). In gut of *Euryophthalmus convivus*; California coast.

C. gerridis Patton (Fig. 126 d). In intestine of water bugs, *Gerris* and *Microvelia*; 22–45 μ long.

C. hyalomae O'Farrell (Fig. 126, e, f). In body cavity of the cattle tick, *Hyalomma aegyptium* in Egypt; the flagellate through its invasion of ova is said to be capable of infecting the offspring while it is still in the body of the parent tick.

Genus **Leptomonas** Kent. Exclusively parasitic in invertebrates; blepharoplast very close to flagellate end; without undulating membrane (Fig. 119); non-flagellate phase resembles *Leishmania*.

L. ctenocephali Fantham (Fig. 126, g, h). In hindgut of the dog flea, *Ctenocephalus canis*; widely distributed.

FIG. 126. a–c, *Crithidia euryophthalmi* (a, b, in mid-gut; c, in rectum), $\times 880$ (McCulloch); d, *C. gerridis*, $\times 1070$ (Becker); e, f, *C. hyalomae*, $\times 1000$ (O'Farrell); g, h, *Leptomonas ctenocephali*, $\times 1000$ (Wenyon); i, j, *Phytomonas elmassiani* (i, in milkweed, *Asclepias* sp.; j, in gut of a suspected transmitter, *Oncopeltus fasciatus*), $\times 1500$ (Holmes); k, *Herpetomonas muscarum*, $\times 1070$ (Becker); l–n, *H. drosophilae*, $\times 1000$ (Chatton and Léger).

Genus **Phytomonas** Donovan. Morphologically similar to *Leptomonas* (Fig. 119); in the latex of plants belonging to the families Euphorbiaceae, Asclepiadaceae, Apocynaceae, Sapotaceae and Utricaceae; transmitted by hemipterous insects; often found in enormous numbers in localized areas in host plant; infection spreads from part to part; infected latex is a clear fluid, owing to the absence of starch grains and other particles, and this results in degeneration of the infected part of the plant. Several species.

P. davidi (Lafront). 15–20 μ by about 1.5 μ ; posterior portion of body often twisted two or three times; multiplication by longitudinal fission; widely distributed; in various species of Euphorbia.

P. elmassiani (Migone) (Fig. 126, *i, j*). In various species of milk-weeds; 9–20 μ long; suspected transmitter, *Oncopeltus fasciatus* (Holmes); in South and North America.

Genus **Herpetomonas** Kent. Ill-defined genus (Fig. 119); exclusively invertebrate parasites; Trypanosoma-, Crithidia-, Leptomonas-, and Leishmania-forms occur during development. Several species.

H. muscarum (Leidy) (*H. muscae-domesticae* (Burnett)). (Fig. 126, *k*). In gut of flies, belonging to the genera Musca, Calliphora, Sarcophaga, Lucilia, Phormia, etc; up to 30 μ by 2–3 μ .

H. drosophilae (Chatton and Alilaire) (Fig. 126, *l-n*). In intestine of *Drosophila confusa*; large leptomonad forms 21–25 μ long, flagellum body-length; forms attached to rectum 4–5 μ long.

Genus **Leishmania** Ross. In man or dog, the organism is an ovoid body with a nucleus and a blepharoplast; 2–5 μ in diameter; with often vacuoles and sometimes a rhizoplast near the blepharoplast; intracellular parasite in the cells of reticulo-endothelial system; multiplication by binary fission. In the intestine of blood-sucking insects or in cultures, the organism develops into leptomonad form which multiplies by longitudinal fission.

There are known at present three "species" of Leishmania which are morphologically alike. They do not show any distinct differential characteristics either by animal inoculation experiments or by culture method. The agglutination test which Noguchi (1924) applied for this purpose has been found to give contradictory results by recent investigators.

Species of Phlebotomus (sand-flies) have long been suspected as vectors of Leishmania. When a Phlebotomus feeds on kala-azar patient, the leishmania bodies become flagellated and undergo multiplication so that by the third day after the feeding, there are large numbers of Leptomonas flagellates in the mid-gut. These flagellates migrate forward to the pharynx and mouth cavity on the 4th or 5th day. On the 7th to 9th days (after the fly is fed a second time), the organisms may be found in the proboscis. But the great majority of the attempts to infect animals and man by the bite of infected Phlebotomus have failed, although in a number of cases small numbers of positive infection have been reported. Adler and Ber (1941) have succeeded recently in producing cutaneous leishmaniasis in 5 out of 9 human volunteers on the site of bites by laboratory-bred *P. papatasi* which were fed on the flagellates of *Leishmania tropica* suspended in 3 parts 2.7% saline and 1 part defibrinated blood and kept at a temperature of 30°C. Swaminath,

Shortt and Anderson (1942) also succeeded in producing kala-azar infections in 3 out of 5 volunteers through the bites of *P. argentipes*.

L. donovani (Laveran and Mesnil) (*L. infantum* Nicolle) (Fig. 127). As seen in stained spleen puncture smears, the organism is rounded ($1-3\mu$) or ovoid ($2-4\mu$ by $1.5-2.5\mu$); cytoplasm homogeneous, but often with minute vacuoles; nucleus comparatively large, often spread out and of varied shapes; blepharoplast stains more deeply and small; number of parasites in a host cell varies from a few to over 100.

This is the cause of kala-azar or visceral leishmaniasis which is widely distributed in Europe (Portugal, Spain, Italy, Malta, Greece, and southern Russia), in Africa (Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libya,

FIG. 127. *Leishmania donovani*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, an infected polymorphonuclear leucocyte; 2, leishmania bodies scattered in the blood plasma; 3, a large endothelial cell infected by the organisms; 4-6, flagellate forms which developed in the first five days of cultivation in blood-agar medium.

Abyssinia, Sudan, northern Kenya and Nigeria) and in Asia (India, China, Turkestan, etc.). The parasite is most abundantly found in the macrophages, mononuclear leucocytes, and polymorphonuclears of the reticulo-endothelial system of various organs such as spleen, liver, bone marrow, intestinal mucosa, lymphatic glands, etc. The most characteristic histological change appears to be an increase in number of large macrophages and mononuclears. The spleen and liver become enlarged due in part to increased fibrous tissue and macrophages.

The organism is easily cultivated in blood-agar media (p. 716). After two days, it becomes larger and elongate until it measures $14-20\mu$ by 2μ . A flagellum as long as body develops from the blepharoplast and it thus assumes leptomonad form which repeats

longitudinal division. Dogs are naturally infected with *L. donovani* and may be looked upon as reservoir host. Vectors are *Phlebotomus argentipes* and other species of *Phlebotomus*.

L. tropica (Wright). This is the causative organism of the Oriental sore or cutaneous leishmaniasis. It has been reported from Africa (mainly regions bordering the Mediterranean Sea), Europe (Spain Italy, France, and Greece), Asia (Syria, Palestine, Armenia, Southern Russia, Iraq, Iran, Arabia, Turkestan, India, Indo-China, and China), and Australia (northern Queensland). The organisms are present in the endothelial cells in and around the cutaneous lesions, located on hands, feet, legs, face, etc.

L. tropica is morphologically indistinguishable from *L. donovani*, but some believe that it shows a wider range of form and size than the latter. In addition to rounded or ovoid forms, elongate forms are often found, and even leptomonad forms have been reported from the scrapings of lesions. The insect vectors are *Phlebotomus papatasi* (p. 282), *P. sergenti* and others. Direct transmission through wounds in the skin also takes place. The lesion appears first as a small papula on skin; it increases in size and later becomes ulcerated. Microscopically an infiltration of corium and its papillae by lymphocytes and macrophages is noticed; in ulcerated lesions leishmania bodies are found in the peripheral zone and below the floor of the ulcers.

L. brasiliensis Vianna. This organism causes Espundia, Bubos, or South American or naso-oral leishmaniasis, which appears to be confined to South and Central America. It has been reported from Brazil, Peru, Paraguay, Argentina, Uruguay, Bolivia, Venezuela, Ecuador, Colombia, Panama, Costa Rica, and Mexico.

Its morphological characteristics are identical with those of *L. tropica*, and a number of investigators combine the two species into one. However, *L. brasiliensis* produces lesions mainly in the mucous membrane of the nose, mouth and pharynx. Vectors appear to be *Phlebotomus intermedius* and other species of the genus. Direct transmission through wounds is also probable.

Family 6 Cryptobiidae Poche

Biflagellate trypanosome-like protomonads; 1 flagellum free, the other marks outer margin of undulating membrane; blepharoplast an elongated rod-like structure, often referred to as the parabasal body; all parasitic.

Genus **Cryptobia** Leidy (*Trypanoplasma* Laveran and Mesnil).

Parasitic in reproductive organs of molluscs and other invertebrates and in blood and gut of fish.

C. helici's L. (Fig. 128, a). In reproductive organs of various species of *Helix* in America and Europe; 6–20 μ long; asexual reproduction through binary fission.

C. borreli (Laveran and Mesnil) (Fig. 128, b). In blood of various freshwater fishes such as *Catostomus*, *Cyprinus*, etc.; 20–25 μ long.

C. cyprini (Plehn) (Fig. 128, c). In blood of carp and goldfish; 10–30 μ long; rare.

C. grobbei (Keysselitz). In coelenteric cavity of Siphonophora; about 65 μ by 4 μ .

FIG. 128. a, *Cryptobia helici's*, $\times 1690$ (Bělař); b, *C. borreli*, $\times 580$ (Mavor); *C. cyprini*, $\times 600$ (Plehn).

Family 7 Amphimonadidae Kent

Body naked or with a gelatinous envelope; 2 equally long anterior flagella; often colonial; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; free-swimming or attached; mainly fresh water.

Genus **Amphimonas** Dujardin. Small oval or rounded amoeboid; flagella at anterior end; free-swimming or attached by an elongated stalk-like posterior process; fresh or salt water.

A. globosa Kent (Fig. 129, a). Spherical; about 13 μ in diameter; stalk long, delicate; fresh water.

Genus **Spongomonas** Stein. Individuals in granulated gelatinous masses; flagella with 2 basal granules; one contractile vacuole; colonial; with pointed pseudopodia in motile stage; fresh water.

S. uvella S. (Fig. 129, b). Oval; 8–12 μ long; flagella 2–3 times as long; colony about 50 μ high; fresh water.

Genus **Cladomonas** Stein. Individuals are embedded in dichotomous dendritic gelatinous tubes which are united laterally; fresh water.

C. fruticulosa S. (Fig. 129, c). Oval; about 8μ long; colony up to 85μ high.

Genus **Rhipidodendron** Stein. Similar to *Cladomonas*, but tubes are fused lengthwise; fresh water.

FIG. 129. a, *Amphimonas globosa*, $\times 540$ (Kent); b, *Spongomonas uvella*, $\times 440$ (Stein); c, *Cladomonas fruticulosa*, $\times 440$ (Stein); d, e, *Rhipidodendron splendidum* (d, a young colony, $\times 440$; e, a free-swimming individual, $\times 770$) (Stein); f, *Spiromonas augusta*, $\times 1000$ (Kent); g, *Diplomita socialis*, $\times 1000$ (Kent); h, *Streptomonas cordata*, $\times 890$ (Lemmermann); i, *Dinomonas vorax*, $\times 800$ (Kent).

R. splendidum S. (Fig. 129, d, e). Oval; about 13μ long; flagella about 2–3 times body length; fully grown colony 350μ high.

Genus **Spiromonas** Perty. Elongate; without gelatinous covering; spirally twisted; 2 flagella anterior; solitary; fresh water.

S. augusta (Dujardin) (Fig. 129, f). Spindle-form; about 10μ long; stagnant water.

Genus **Diplomita** Kent. With transparent lorica; body attached to bottom of lorica by a retractile filamentous process; a rudimentary stigma (?); fresh water.

D. socialis K. (Fig. 129, *g*). Oval flagellum about 2–3 times the body length; lorica yellowish or pale brown; broadly spindle in form; about 15μ long; pond water.

Genus **Streptomonas** Klebs. Free-swimming; naked; distinctly keeled; fresh water.

S. cordata (Perty) (Fig. 129, *h*). Heart-shaped; 15μ by 13μ ; rotation movement.

Genus **Dinomonas** Kent. Ovate or pyriform, plastic, free-swimming; 2 flagella, equal or sub-equal, inserted at anterior extremity, where large oral aperture, visible only at time of food ingestion, is also located, feeding on other flagellates; in infusions.

D. vorax K. (Fig. 129, *i*). Ovoid, anterior end pointed; 15 – 16μ long; flagella longer than body; hay infusion and stagnant water.

Family 8 Monadidae Stein

Two unequal flagella; one primary and the other secondary; swimming or attached; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; colony formation frequent; free-living.

Genus **Monas** Müller (*Physomonas* Kent). Plastic and actively motile (“dancing movement”); often attached to foreign objects; not longer than 20μ ; known for a long time, but still very incompletely. Krijgsman (1925) studied the flagellar movements (p. 111).

M. guttula Ehrenberg (Fig. 130, *a*). Spherical to ovoid; 14 – 16μ long; free-swimming or attached; longer flagellum about 1–2 times body length; cysts 12μ in diameter; stagnant water.

M. elongata (Stokes) (Fig. 130, *b*). Elongate; about 11μ long; free-swimming or attached; anterior end obliquely truncate; fresh water.

M. socialis (Kent) (Figs. 8, *g*; 130, *c*). Spherical; 5 – 10μ long; among decaying vegetation in fresh water.

M. vestita (Stokes) (Fig. 130, *d*). Spherical; about 13.5μ in diameter; stalk about 40μ long; pond water. Reynolds (1934) made a careful study of the organism.

M. sociabilis Meyer. Body 8 – 10μ long by 5μ ; two unequal flagella; the longer one is as long as the body and the shorter one about one-fourth; 20–50 individuals form a spheroid colony, resembling a detached colony of *Anthophysis*; polysaprobic.

Genus **Stokesiella** Lemmermann. Body attached by a fine cytoplasmic thread to a delicate and stalked vase-like lorica; 2 contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

S. dissimilis (Stokes) (Fig. 130, *e*). Solitary; lorica about 28μ long.

S. leptostoma (S.) (Fig. 130, *f*). Lorica about 17μ long; often in groups; on vegetation.

Genus **Stylobryon** Fromentel. Similar to *Stokesiella*; but colonial; on algae in fresh water.

S. abbotti Stokes (Fig. 130, g). Lorica campanulate; about 17μ long; main stalk about 100μ high; body oval or spheroidal; flagella short.

Genus **Dendromonas** Stein. Colonial; individuals without lorica, located at end of branched stalks; fresh water among vegetation.

FIG. 130. a, *Monas guttula*, $\times 620$ (Fisch); b, *M. elongata*, $\times 670$ (Stokes); c, *M. socialis*, $\times 670$ (Kent); d, *M. vestita*, $\times 570$ (Stokes); e, *Stokesiella dissimilis*, $\times 500$ (Stokes); f, *S. leptostoma*, $\times 840$ (Stokes); g, *Stylobryon abbotti*, $\times 480$ (Stokes); h, *Dendromonas virgaria*, a young colony of, $\times 670$ (Stein); i, *Cephalothamnium cyclopum*, $\times 440$ (Stein); j, k, *Anthophysis vegetans* (j, part of a colony, $\times 230$; k, an individual, $\times 770$) (Stein).

D. virgaria (Weisse) (Fig. 130, h). About 8μ long; colony 200μ high; pond water.

Genus **Cephalothamnium** Stein. Colonial; without lorica, but individuals clustered at the end of a stalk which is colorless and rigid; fresh water.

C. cyclopum S. (Fig. 130, i). Ovoid; $5-10\mu$ long; attached to body of Cyclops and also among plankton.

Genus **Anthophysis** Bory (*Anthophysa*). Colonial forms, some-

what similar to *Cephalothamnium*; stalks yellow or brownish and usually bent; detached individuals amoeboid with pointed pseudopodia.

A. vegetans (Müller) (Fig. 130, *j, k*). About 5–6 μ long; common in stagnant water and infusion.

Family 9 *Bodonidae* Bütschli

With 2 flagella; one directed anteriorly and the other posteriorly and trailing; flagella originate in anterior end which is drawn out to a varying degree; one to several contractile vacuoles; asexual reproduction by binary fission; holozoic or saprozoic (parasitic).

Genus *Bodo* Ehrenberg (*Prowazekia* Hartman and Chagas). Small, ovoid, but plastic; cytostome anterior; nucleus central or anterior; flagella connected with 2 blepharoplasts in some species; encystment common; in stagnant water and coprozoic. Numerous species.

B. caudatus (Dujardin) (Fig. 131, *a, b*). Highly flattened, usually tapering posteriorly; 11–22 μ by 5–10 μ ; anterior flagellum about body length, trailing flagellum longer; blepharoplast; cysts spherical; stagnant water.

B. edax Klebs (Fig. 131, *c*). Oval with pointed anterior end; 11–15 μ by 5–7 μ ; stagnant water.

Genus *Pleuromonas* Perty. Naked, somewhat amoeboid; usually attached with trailing flagellum; active cytoplasmic movement; fresh water.

P. jaculans P. (Fig. 131, *d*). Body 6–10 μ by about 5 μ ; flagellum 2–3 times body length; 4–8 young individuals are said to emerge from a spherical cyst; stagnant water.

Genus *Rhynchomonas* Klebs (*Cruzella* Faria, da Cunha and Pinto). Similar to *Bodo*, but there is an anterior extension of body, in which one of the flagella is embedded, while the other flagellum trails; a single nucleus; minute forms; fresh or salt water; also sometimes coprozoic.

R. nasuta (Stokes) (Fig. 131, *e*). Oval, flattened; 5–6 μ by 2–3 μ ; fresh water and coprozoic.

R. marina (F., C. and P.). In salt water.

Genus *Proteromonas* Kunstler (*Prowazekella* Alexeieff). Elongated pyriform; 2 flagella from anterior end, one directed anteriorly and the other, posteriorly; nucleus anterior; encysted stage is remarkable in that it is capable of increasing in size to a marked degree; exclusively parasitic; in gut of various species of lizards.

P. lacertae (Grassi) (Figs. 9, *b*; 131, *f*). Elongate, pyriform; 10–

30 μ long, gut of lizards belonging to the genera *Lacerta*, *Tarentola*, etc.

Genus **Retortamonas** Grassi (*Embadomonas* Mackinnon). Body plastic, usually pyriform or fusiform, drawn out posteriorly; a large cytostome toward anterior end; nucleus anterior; 2 flagella; cysts pyriform or ovoid; parasitic in the intestines of various animals.

FIG. 131. a, b, *Bodo caudatus*, $\times 1500$ (Sinton); c, *B. edax*, $\times 1400$ (Kühn); d, *Pleuromonas jaculans*, $\times 650$ (Lemmermann); e, *Rhynchomonas nasuta*, $\times 1800$ (Parisi); f, *Proteromonas lacertae*, $\times 2500$ (Kühn); g, *Retortamonas gryllotalpae*, $\times 2000$ (Wenrich); h, *R. blattae*, $\times 2000$ (Wenrich); i, *R. intestinalis*, $\times 2000$ (Wenrich); j, *Phyllomitus undulans*, $\times 1000$ (Stein); k, *Colponema loxodes*, $\times 650$ (Stein); l, *Cercomonas longicauda*, $\times 2000$ (Wenyon); m, *C. crassicauda*, $\times 2000$ (Dobell).

R. gryllotalpae G. (Fig. 131, g). About 7–14 μ (average 10 μ) long; in intestine of the mole cricket, *Gryllotalpa gryllotalpa*.

R. blattae (Bishop) (Fig. 131, h). About 6–9 μ long; in colon of cockroaches.

R. intestinalis (Wenyon and O'Connor) (Figs. 131, *i*; 132). Polymorphic, often pyriform or ovoid with drawn-out posterior end; 4–9 μ by 3–4 μ ; cytostome large, about 1/3 the body length; vesicular nucleus with an endosome near anterior end; anterior flagellum as long as the body; posterior flagellum shorter, but thicker, in or near cytostome; cysts pyriform; 4.5–7 μ long; a single nucleus and an oblong area surrounded by fibril; commensal in the lumen of human intestine; trophozoites and also cysts occur in diarrhoeic faeces; of comparatively rare occurrence.

Genus **Phyllomitus** Stein. Oval; highly plastic; cytostome large and conspicuous; 2 unequal flagella, each originates in a basal granule; apparently no blepharoplast; fresh water or coprozoic.

FIG. 132. *Retortamonas intestinalis*, $\times 1150$. 1–3, living organisms; 4, 5, stained trophozoites; 6, a fresh cyst; 7, 8, stained cysts (1–4, Wenyon and O'Connor; 5, Dobell and O'Connor; 7, Jepps; 6, 8, Kudo).

P. undulans S. (Fig. 131, *j*), Ovoid; 21–27 μ long; trailing flagellum much longer than anterior one; stagnant water.

Genus **Colponema** Stein. Body small; rigid; ventral furrow conspicuous, wide at anterior end; one flagellum arises from anterior end and the other from middle of body; fresh water.

C. loxodes S. (Fig. 131, *k*). 18–30 μ by 14 μ cytoplasm with refractile globules.

Genus **Cercomonas** Dujardin. Biflagellate, both flagella arising from anterior end of body; one directed anteriorly and the other runs backward over body surface, becoming a trailing flagellum; plastic; pyriform nucleus connected with the basal granules of flagella; spherical cysts uninucleate; fresh water or coprozoic.

C. longicauda D. (Fig. 131, *l*). Pyriform or ovoid; posterior end drawn out; 18–36 μ by 9–14 μ ; flagella as long as body; pseudopodia; fresh water and coprozoic.

C. crassicauda D. (Fig. 131, m). 10–16 μ by 7–10 μ ; fresh water and coprozoic.

References

- ADLER, S. and M. BER 1941 The transmission of *Leishmania tropica* by the bite of *Phlebotomus papatasi*. Indian Jour. Med. Res., Vol. 29.
- HARDIN, G. 1942 An investigation of the physiological requirements of a pure culture of the heterotrophic flagellate, *Oikomonas termo*, Kent. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 15.
- HOLMES, F. O. 1925 The relation of *Herpetomonas elmassiani* (Migone) to its plant and insect hosts. Biol. Bull., Vol. 49.
- LAVERAN, A. and F. MESNIL 1912 *Trypanosomes et Trypanosomiases*. Second edition. Paris.
- LEMMERMANN, E. 1914 *Protomastiginae*. Süßwasserfl. Deutschlands, etc., H. 1.
- MINCHIN, E. A. and J. D. Thomson 1915 The rat trypanosome, *Trypanosoma lewisi*, in its relation to the rat flea, *Ceratophyllus fasciatus*. Quart. Jour. Micr. Sci., Vol. 60.
- NELSON, R. 1922 The occurrence of Protozoa in plants affected with mosaic and related diseases. Michigan Agr. Coll. Bot. Stat., Tech. Bull. No. 58.
- REYNOLDS, B. D. 1934 Studies on monad flagellates. I, II. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 81.
- SWAMINATH, C. S., E. SHORTT and A. P. ANDERSON 1942 Transmission of Indian kala-azar to man by the bites of *Phlebotomus argentipes*. Indian Jour. Med. Res., Vol. 30.
- USINGER, R. L. 1944 The Triatominae of North and Central America and the West Indies and their public health significance. U. S. Public Health Bull., No. 288.
- WENYON, C. M. 1926 *Protozoology*, Vol. 1. London.
- WOOD, F. D. and S. F. WOOD 1941 Present knowledge of the distribution of *Trypanosoma cruzi* in reservoir animals and vectors. Amer. Jour. Trop. Med., Vol. 21.

CHAPTER 15

Order 3 **Polymastigina** Blochmann

THE Zoomastigina placed in this group possess 3-8 (in one family up to a dozen or more) flagella and generally speaking, are minute forms with varied characters and structures. Many possess a cytostome and one to many nuclei and the body is covered by a thin pellicle which allows the organism to change form, although each species shows a typical form. The cytoplasm does not show any special cortical differentiation; in many, there is an axial structure known as **axostyle** or axostylar filaments (p. 61). In Trichomonadidae, there is usually a rod-like structure, known as *costa* (Kunstler), along the base of the undulating membrane and in Devescovichidae, there is a subtriangular body, the *cresta*, directly below the basal portion of the trailing flagellum, which in some species is very large and capable of movement. At the time of division, the old costa is retained and a new one is formed; the cresta however is resorbed and two new ones are produced (Kirby). Parabasal bodies of various form and structure occur in many species.

The majority of Polymastigina inhabit the digestive tract of animals and nutrition is holozoic or saprozoic (parasitic). Many xylophagous forms hold symbiotic relationship with the host termites. Asexual reproduction is by longitudinal fission, sometimes multiple. Encystment is common, and the cyst is responsible for infection of new hosts through mouth. Sexual reproduction has not been definitely established.

With 1 nucleus Suborder 1 Monomonadina
 With 2 nuclei Suborder 2 Diplomonadina (p. 311)
 With more than 2 nuclei Suborder 3 Polymonadina (p. 315)

Suborder I **Monomonadina**

Without axial organella
 With 3 flagella Family 1 Trimastigidae (p. 294)
 With 4 flagella
 None undulates on body surface
 Without cell-organ of attachment . . Family 2 Tetramitidae (p. 296)
 With rostellum Family 3 Streblomastigidae (p. 298)
 One undulates on body surface . . Family 4 Chilomastigidae (p. 298)
 With more than 4 flagella Family 5 Callimastigidae (p. 299)
 With axial organella
 Without undulating membrane
 Without cresta
 Flagella not adhering to body
 Without rostellum Family 6 Polymastigidae (p. 299)

- With rostellum Family 7 Oxymonadidae (p. 301)
 Flagellar cords on body surface Family 8 Dinenymphidae (p. 302)
 With cresta Family 9 Devescovichidae (p. 303)
 With undulating membrane Family 10 Trichomonadidae (p. 308)

Family 1 Trimastigidae Kent

Genus **Trimastix** Kent. Ovate or pyriform; naked; free-swimming; with a laterally produced membranous border; 3 flagella (1 anterior flagellum vibrating, 2 trailing); salt water.

FIG. 133. a, *Trimastix marina*, $\times 1250$ (Kent); b, *Dallingeria drysdali*, $\times 2000$ (Kent); c, *Macromastix lapsa*, $\times 1500$ (Stokes).

T. marina K. (Fig. 133, a). About 18μ long; salt water.

Genus **Dallingeria** Kent. Free-swimming or attached; with trailing flagella; body small; with drawn-out anterior end; fresh water with decomposed organic matter.

D. drysdali K. (Fig. 133, b). Small; elongate oval; less than 6μ long; stagnant water.

Genus **Macromastix** Stokes. Free-swimming, somewhat like *Dallingeria*, but anterior region not constricted; 3 flagella from anterior end; one contractile vacuole; fresh water.

M. lapsa S. (Fig. 133, c). Ovoid; 5.5μ long; anterior flagellum $1/2$ and trailing flagella 2–3 times body length; pond water.

Genus *Mixotricha* Sutherland. Large; elongate; anterior tip spirally twisted and motile; posterior end probably eversible; body surface with a coat of cilia in closely packed transverse bands (insertion and movement entirely different from those of *Trichonympha*) except posterior end; 3 short flagella at anterior end; nucleus,

FIG. 134. Diagram illustrating the life-cycle of *Tetramitus rostratus* (Bunting). a, cyst; b, vegetative amoeba; c, division; d, after division; e, f, stages in transformation to flagellate form; g, fully formed flagellate; h, flagellate prior to division; i, flagellate after division; j-l, transformation stages to amoeba.

20μ by 2μ , connected with blepharoplasts by prolonged tube which encloses nucleus itself; cytoplasm with scattered wood chips; in termite gut. One species. Taxonomic position undetermined.

M. paradoxa S. About 340μ long, 200μ broad and 25μ thick; in gut of *Mastotermes darwiniensis*; Australia.

Family 2 Tetramitidae Bütschli

Genus *Tetramitus* Perty. Ellipsoidal or pyriform; free-swimming; cytostome at anterior end; 4 flagella unequal in length; a contractile vacuole; holozoic; fresh or salt water.

T. rostratus P. (Fig. 135, a). Form variable; usually ovoid with narrow posterior region; $18\text{--}30\mu$ by $8\text{--}11\mu$; stagnant water. Bunting (1922, 1926) observed a very interesting life-cycle of an organism which she found in culture of caecal contents of rat and which she identified as *T. rostratus* (Fig. 134).

FIG. 135. a, *Tetramitus rostratus*, $\times 620$ (Lemmermann); b, *T. pyriformis*, $\times 670$ (Klebs); c, *T. salinus*, $\times 1630$ (Kirby); d, *Collodictyon triciliatum*, $\times 400$ (Carter); e-j, *Costia necatrix* (e, f, $\times 800$ (Weltner); g-i, $\times 1400$ (Moroff); j, two individuals attached to host integument $\times 500$ (Kudo)); k, *Enteromonas hominis*, $\times 1730$ (Wenyon and O'Connor); l, *Copromastix prowazeki*, $\times 1070$ (Aragão).

T. pyriformis Klebs (Fig. 135, b). Pyriform, with pointed posterior end; $11\text{--}13\mu$ by $10\text{--}12\mu$; stagnant water.

T. salinus (Entz) (Fig. 135, c). 2 anterior flagella, 2 long trailing flagella; nucleus anterior; cytostome anterior to nucleus; a groove to posterior end; cytopharynx temporary and length variable; $20\text{--}30\mu$ long (Entz); $15\text{--}19\mu$ long (Kirby). Kirby observed it in a pool with a high salinity at Marina, California.

Genus *Collodictyon* Carter. Body highly plastic; with longitudinal

furrows; posterior end bluntly narrowed or lobed; no apparent cytostome; 4 flagella; a contractile vacuole anterior; fresh water.

C. triciliatum C. (Fig. 135, d). Spherical, ovoid or heart-shaped; 27–60 μ long; flagella as long as the body; pond water. Rhodes (1919) made a comprehensive cytological study of the organism.

Genus *Costia* Leclerque. Ovoid in front view; pyriform in profile; toward right side, a funnel-like depression, at the posterior end of which are located cytostome (?) and 2 long and 2 short flagella; contractile vacuole in posterior half; longitudinal division; encystment; ectoparasitic in various freshwater fishes.

FIG. 136. *Enteromonas hominis*, $\times 1150$. 1, 2 (da Fonseca); 3–6, living trophozoites; 7, 8, stained trophozoites; 9, 10, stained young and mature cysts (Wenyon and O'Connor).

C. necatrix (Henneguy) (Fig. 135, e–j). 10–20 μ by 5–10 μ ; compact nucleus central; a contractile vacuole; cyst uninucleate, spherical, 7–10 μ in diameter; when present in large numbers, the epidermis of fish appears to be covered by a whitish coat.

C. pyriformis Davis. A similar form; but smaller in size; 9–14 μ by 5–8 μ . Davis (1943) observed the organism on trout (*Salmo irideus* and *Salvelinus fontinalis*).

Genus *Enteromonas* da Fonseca (*Tricercomonas* Wenyon and O'Connor). Spherical or pyriform, though plastic; 3 anterior flagella; the fourth flagellum runs along the flattened body surface and extends a little freely at the posterior tip of body; nucleus anterior; no cytostome; cyst ovoid and with 4 nuclei when mature; parasitic in mammals. Da Fonseca (1915) originally observed only 3 flagella and no cysts; 4 flagella and encysted forms were noticed in *Tricercomonas* by Wenyon and O'Connor (1917); in da Fonseca's original preparations, Dobell (1935) observed 4 flagella as well as cysts

and concluded that *Enteromonas* and *Tricercomonas* are one and the same flagellate.

E. hominis da F. (*T. intestinalis* W. and O) (Figs. 135, *k*; 136). Trophozoites $4\text{--}10\mu$ by $3\text{--}6\mu$; nucleus circular or pyriform, with a large endosome, near anterior end; 4 flagella take their origins in blepharoplasts located close to nucleus; cytoplasm vacuolated or reticulated, contains bacteria; cysts ovoid, $6\text{--}8\mu$ by $4\text{--}6\mu$; with 1, 2, or 4 nuclei; commensal in the lumen of human intestine; found in diarrhoeic stools. Widely distributed.

Genus **Copromastix** Araújo. Four anterior flagella equally long; body triangular or pyramidal; coprozoic.

C. prowazeki A. (Fig. 135, *l*). About $16\text{--}18\mu$ long; in human and rat faeces.

FIG. 137. *Chilomastix mesnili*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, a living trophozoite; 2-4, stained trophozoites; 5, a fresh cyst; 6, a stained cyst.

Family 3 **Streblomastigidae** Kofoid and Swezy

Genus **Streblomastix** K. and S. Spindle-form; with a **rostellum**, the anterior tip of which is enlarged into a sucker-like cup; below the cup are inserted 4 equally long flagella; extremely elongate nucleus below rostellum; body surface with 4 or more spiral ridges; in termite gut. One species.

S. strix K. and S. (Fig. 138, *a*, *b*). $15\text{--}52\mu$ by $2\text{--}15\mu$; 4-8 spiral ridges; blepharoplast in rostellum; in *Termopsis angusticollis*.

Family 4 **Chilomastigidae** Wenyon

Four flagella, one of which undulates on body surface.

Genus **Chilomastix** Alexeieff. Pyriform; with a large cytostomal cleft at anterior end; nucleus anterior; 3 anteriorly directed flagella; short fourth flagellum undulates within the cleft; cysts common; in intestine of vertebrates. Several species.

C. mesnili (Wenyon) (Fig. 137). The trophozoite is oval or pyriform; $5\text{--}20\mu$ (majority $10\text{--}15\mu$) long; jerky movements; a large

cytostomal cleft near anterior end; nucleus, vesicular, often without endosome; 3 anterior flagella about 7–10 μ long; the fourth flagellum short, undulates in the cleft which ridge is marked by 2 fibrils. The cyst pyriform; 7–10 μ long; a single nucleus; 2 cytostomal fibrils and a short flagellum; commensal in the caecum and colon (some consider also in small intestine) of man. Both trophozoites and cysts occur in diarrhoeic faeces. It is widely distributed and very common.

C. intestinalis Kuczynski. In guinea pigs.

C. bettencourti da Fonseca. In rats and mice.

C. cuniculi da Fonseca. In rabbits.

C. caprae da Fonseca. In goat.

C. gallinarum Martin and Robertson. 11–20 μ by 5–6 μ ; in domestic fowls.

Family 5 *Callimastigidae* da Fonseca

Flagella 12 or more; in stomach of ruminants or in caecum and colon of horse.

Genus *Callimastix* Weissenberg. Ovoid; compact nucleus central or anterior; 12–15 long flagella near anterior end, vibrate in unison. Weissenberg (1912) considered this genus to be related to *Lophomonas* (p. 320), but organism lacks axial organellae; in Cyclops and alimentary canal of ruminants and horse.

C. cyclopis W. In body-cavity of *Cyclops* sp.

C. frontalis Braune (Fig. 138, c). 12 flagella; about 12 μ long; flagella 30 μ long; in cattle, sheep and goats.

C. equi Hsiung (Fig. 138, d). 12–15 flagella; 12–18 μ by 7–10 μ ; nucleus central; in caecum and colon of horse.

Family 6 *Polymastigidae* Bütschli

Genus *Polymastix* Bütschli. Pyriform; 4 flagella arise from 2 blepharoplasts located at anterior end; cytostome and axostyle inconspicuous; ectoplasm covered by longitudinal ridges; endocommensal in insects.

P. melolonthae (Grassi) (Fig. 138, e). 5–22 μ long; in hindgut of *Melolontha*, *Oryctes*, *Cetonia*, *Rhizotrogus*, *Tipula*, etc.

Genus *Eutrichomastix* Kofoid and Swezy (*Trichomastix* Blochmann). Pyriform; anterior end rounded; cytostome and nucleus anterior; 3 flagella of equal length arise from anterior end, the fourth trailing; axostyle projects beyond posterior end of body; all endocommensals.

E. serpentis (Dobell) (Fig. 138, f). About 10–25 μ long; in intestine of snakes: *Pituophis*, *Eutaenia*, and *Python*.

E. batrachorum (Dobell) (Fig. 138, g). Ovoid; $6-20\mu$ long; in intestine of *Rana fusca*.

E. axostylis Kirby (Fig. 138, h). Elongate, ellipsoid, or pyriform; axostyle projecting; $5-10.5\mu$ by $2-3.5\mu$; 3 anterior flagella $5-10\mu$ long; in gut of *Nasutitermes kirbyi*.

Genus **Hexamastix** Alexeieff. Body similar to *Eutrichomastix*, but with 6 flagella, of which one trails; axostyle conspicuous; parabasal body prominent.

FIG. 138. a, *Streblomastix strix*, $\times 1030$; b, its anterior end, showing the rostellum, blepharoplast, sucking cup and flagella (Kidder); c, *Callimastix frontalis*, $\times 1500$ (Braune); d, *C. equi*, $\times 1100$ (Hsiung); e, *Poly-mastix melolonthæ*, $\times 540$ (Hamburger); f, *Eutrichomastix serpentis*, $\times 1450$ (Kofoid and Swezy); g, *E. batrachorum*, $\times 1350$ (Dobell); h, *E. axostylis*, $\times 2000$ (Kirby); i, *Hexamastix termopsidis*, $\times 2670$ (Kirby); j, *H. batrachorum*, $\times 1000$ (Alexeieff); k, *Protrichomonas legeri*, $\times 1000$ (Alexeieff); l, *Monocercomonas bufonis*, $\times 1670$ (Alexeieff).

H. termopsidis Kirby (Fig. 138, i). Ovoidal or pyriform; $5-11\mu$ long; flagella $15-25\mu$ long; in gut of *Zootermopsis angusticollis* and *Z. nevadensis*; California.

H. batrachorum Alexeieff (Fig. 138, j). Oval or spindle form; $8-14\mu$ by $4-8\mu$; flagella about body length; in gut of *Triton taeniatus*.

Genus **Protrichomonas** Alexeieff. 3 anterior flagella of equal length, arising from a blepharoplast located at anterior end; parasitic.

P. legeri A. (Fig. 138, k). In oesophagus of the marine fish, *Box boops*.

FIG. 139. a, motile form with rostellum of *Oxymonas dimorpha*, $\times 900$ (Connell); b, attached and aflagellated form of *Oxymonas dimorpha*, $\times 460$ (Connell); c, *Proboscidiella kofoidi*, $\times 600$ (Kirby).

Genus **Monocercomonas** Grassi. Small; 4 flagella inserted in pairs in 2 places; 2 directed anteriorly and the other 2, posteriorly; axostyle filamentous; parasitic.

M. bufonis Dobell (Fig. 138, l). Spindle-form; $12-15\mu$ long; cysts spherical; in Axolotl, Triton, frogs and toads.

Family 7 Oxymonadidae Kirby

Genus **Oxymonas** Janicki. Attached phase with a conspicuous rostellum, the anterior end of which forms a sucking-cup for attachment; pyriform. In motile phase, rostellum is less conspicuous; 2

blepharoplasts located near the anterior extremity of axostyle, give rise to 2 flagella each; axostyle conspicuous; xylophagous; in termite gut.

O. dimorpha Connell (Fig. 139, *a, b*). Subovoid; delicate pellicle; axostyle slightly protruding; a pair of long anterior flagella from 2 blepharoplasts, connected by rhizoplast; nucleus anterior. When attached to intestine, rostellum elongate, flagella disappear; 17μ by 14μ to 195μ by 165μ ; in *Neotermes simplicicornis*; California and Arizona.

Genus **Proboscidiella** Kofoid and Swezy (*Microrhopalodina* Grassi and Foà; *Kirbyella* Zeliff). Attached and motile form similar to *Oxymonas*; but multinucleate; 3(?)–4 flagella from each karyomastigont (p. 315); rostellum with filaments which extend posteriorly as axostyles; in termite gut.

P. kofoidi Kirby (Fig. 139, *c*). Average size 66μ by 46μ ; rostellum as long as body; karyomastigonts 2–19 or more (average 8); each mastigont with 2 blepharoplasts from which extend 4 flagella; in *Cryptotermes dudleyi*.

Family 8 Dinenymphidae Grassi and Foà

Genus **Dinenympha** Leidy. Medium large; spindle form; 4–8 flagellar cords adhering to body which are spirally twisted about one turn; the flagella free at the posterior end; axostyle varies from cord to band; pyriform nucleus, anterior, with a large endosome; in termite gut.

D. gracilis L. (Fig. 140, *a*). $24\text{--}50\mu$ by $6\text{--}12\mu$; body flattened and twisted; ends attenuated; with adhering protophytes; in *Reticulitermes flavipes*.

D. fimbriata Kirby (Fig. 140, *b*). $52\text{--}64\mu$ by $8\text{--}18\mu$; 4–8 flagellar cords; with adherent protophytes; axostyle varies in width; in *Reticulitermes hesperus*.

Genus **Pyrsonympha** Leidy. Large; club-shaped, the posterior end is rounded; body surface with 4–8 flagellar cords which are arranged lengthwise or slightly spirally; flagella extend freely posteriorly; blepharoplast at the anterior tip, often with a short process for attachment; axostyle a narrow band, may be divided into parts; in termite gut.

P. vertens L. (Fig. 140, *c*). About $100\text{--}150\mu$ long; 4–8 flagellar cords; in *Reticulitermes flavipes*.

P. granulata Powell (Fig. 140, *d*). $40\text{--}120\mu$ by $5\text{--}35\mu$; 4–8 flagellar cords; in *Reticulitermes hesperus*.

Genus **Saccinobaculus** Cleveland. Elongate to spherical; 4, 8, or 12 flagella adhere to the body, and project out freely; axostyle is an extremely large paddle-like body and undulates, serving as cell-organ of locomotion; in wood-roach gut.

S. ambloaxostylus C. (Fig. 140, e). 65–110 μ by 18–26 μ ; in *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

FIG. 140. a, *Dinenympha gracilis*, $\times 730$ (Original); b, *D. fimbriata*, $\times 625$ (Kirby); c, *Pyrsonympha vertens*, $\times 730$ (Original); d, *P. granulata*, $\times 500$ (Powell); e, *Saccinobaculus ambloaxostylus*, $\times 600$ (Cleveland).

Family 9 Devescovinidae Doflein

Usually 3 anterior flagella and a trailing stout flagellum; near base of trailing flagellum an elongated **cresta** (becoming a large internal membrane in some species) (Fig. 141); trailing flagellum lightly adheres to body surface along edge of cresta; axostyle; parabasal body of various forms; single nucleus anterior; without undulating membrane; generally xylophagous.

Genus **Devescovina** Foà. Elongate body, usually pointed posteriorly; 3 anterior flagella about the body length; trailing flagellum, slender to band-form, about 1–1.5 times the body length; cresta; parabasal body spiraled around axostyle or nucleus; in termite intestine. Many species (Kirby, 1941).

D. lemniscata Kirby (Figs. 141; 142, a). 21–51 μ by 9–17 μ ; trailing flagellum a band; cresta long, 7–9 μ ; in *Cryptotermes hermsi* and many species of the genus; species of *Neotermes*, *Glyptotermes* and *Kalotermes*.

Genus **Parajoenia** Janicki. Medium large; with rounded extremities; 3 anterior flagella and trailing flagellum long; cresta of moderate size; parabasal body well developed with its anterior end close to blepharoplast; stout axostyle expanded anteriorly into leaflike capitulum, bearing a longitudinal keel; in intestine of termites.

FIG. 141. A diagrammatic view of the anterior part of *Devescovina lemniscata*, showing the cresta and other organellae (Kirby).

P. grassii J. (Fig. 142, b). 29–59 μ by 12–33 μ ; trailing flagellum stout, cordlike; cresta about 9 μ long; in *Neotermes connexus*.

Genus **Foaina** Janicki (*Janickiella* Dubosq and Grasse; *Paradevescovina*, *Crucinympha* Kirby). Small to medium large; 3 anterior flagella; trailing flagellum about twice the body length; cresta slender, 2.5–17 μ long; parabasal body single, in some with rami; in intestine of termites. Many species (Kirby, 1942a).

F. nana Kirby (Fig. 142, c). 6–18 μ by 4.5–8.5 μ ; trailing flagellum a moderately stout cord, 2–3 times the body length; cresta slender, 8.5 μ long; filament part of the parabasal body reaching the middle

FIG. 142. a, *Devescovina lemniscata*, $\times 1600$; b, *Parajoenia grassii*, with attached spirochaetes, $\times 1150$; c, *Foaina nana*, $\times 1150$; d, *Macrotrichomonas pulchra*, $\times 1600$ (all after Kirby); e, *Metadevescovina debilis*, $\times 1130$ (Light, modified).

of body; in *Cryptotermes hermsi* and many species of the genus; also species of *Glyptotermes*, *Rugitermes*, and *Procryptotermes*.

Genus **Macrotrichomonas** Grassi. Large; 3 anterior flagella; trailing flagellum well developed, 1–1.5 times the body length; cresta a broad internal membrane, 21–86 μ long; parabasal body coiled around the axostyle, 1–13 times; in termite gut. Several species (Kirby, 1942).

M. pulchra G. (Fig. 142, d). 44–91 μ by 21–41 μ ; trailing flagellum band-form; cresta large; parabasal body coiled closely 4–10 times; in *Glyptotermes parvulus*, and many other species of the genus.

Genus **Metadevescovina** Light. Moderately large; 3 anterior flagella; a short trailing flagellum; cresta small; parabasal body loosely coiled around axostyle; anterior end of axostyle in a loop; in termite gut.

M. debilis L. (Fig. 142, e). 30–70 μ by 15–30 μ ; in *Kalotermes hubbardi*.

Genus **Caduceia** França. Large; 3 long anterior flagella; trailing flagellum slender, shorter than body; cresta relatively small, 1–12 μ long; parabasal body coiled around axostyle 2–20 times; nucleus relatively large; in termites. Several species (Kirby, 1942).

C. bugnioni Kirby (Fig. 143, a). 48–80 μ by 18–40 μ ; in *Neotermes greeni*.

Genus **Pseudodevescovina** Sutherland. Large; 3 short anterior flagella; one short trailing flagellum; axostyle stout; cresta of moderate size; parabasal body large, divided into a number of attached cords; in termite gut.

P. uniflagellata S. (Fig. 143, b). 52–95 μ by 26–60 μ ; 3 delicate flagella, 30 μ long; trailing flagellum a little stouter; cresta 11–20 μ long; main parabasal body C-shaped, with 7–19 attached cords; in *Kalotermes insularis*.

Genus **Bullanympha** Kirby. Flagella and cresta similar to those in *Pseudodevescovina*; axostyle similar to that in *Caduceia*; proximal part of parabasal body bent in U-form around the nucleus and attached voluminous distal portion coiled around the axostyle; in termite gut.

B. silvestrii K. (Fig. 143, c). 50–138 μ by 35–100 μ ; cresta about 5.8 μ long; distal portion of parabasal body coils around axostyle about twice; in *Neotermes erythraeus*.

Genus **Gigantomonas** Dogiel (*Myxomonas* D.). Medium large; 3 short anterior flagella; a long and stout trailing flagellum; cresta conspicuously large; large axostyle; in termite gut. According to

Kirby's recent work, the so-called undulating membrane is a large cresta; in aflagellate phase (Myxomonas) the nuclear division takes place.

FIG. 143. a, *Caduceia bugnioni*, $\times 930$; b, *Pseudodevescovina uniflagellata*, $\times 1190$; c, *Bullanympha silvestrii*, $\times 780$ (all after Kirby); d, e, *Gigantomonas herculea* (Dogiel) (d, $\times 530$; e, amoeboid phase (Myxomonas), $\times 400$).

G. herculea D. (*M. polymorpha* D.) (Fig. 143, d, e). $60-75\mu$ by $30-35\mu$; in the intestine of *Hodotermes mossambicus*.

Family 10 *Trichomonadidae* Wenyon

Genus *Trichomonas* Donné (?*Ditrichomonas* Cutler). Pyriform; typically with 4 free anterior flagella; fifth flagellum along the outer margin of the undulating membrane; costa at the base of the membrane; axostyle well developed, often protruding beyond the posterior end of the body; cysts have been observed in forms inhabiting certain mammals such as *T. caviae* (Wenyon), but not in the three species living in man; all parasites. Numerous species (Wenrich, 1944).

T. hominis (Davaine) (Fig. 144). Active flagellate, undergoing a jerky or spinning movement; highly plastic, but usually ovoid or

FIG. 144. *Trichomonas hominis*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, living and 2, 3, stained trophozoites.

pyriform; 5–20 μ long; cytostome near anterior end; 4 anterior flagella equally long; fifth flagellum borders undulating membrane which is seen in life; in degenerating individuals the membrane may undulate, even after loss of flagella, simulating amoeboid movement; axostyle straight along the median line; vacuolated cytoplasm with bacteria; commensal in the colon and ileum of man; found in diarrhoeic stools. Wenrich (1944) states that in all 20 cases which he studied, some or most of the individuals showed five anterior flagella and two unequal blepharoplasts. Evidently the organisms belong to *Pentatrichomonas*.

Since encysted forms have not yet been found, transmission is assumed to be carried on by trophozoites. According to Dobell (1934), he became infected by an intestinal *Trichomonas* of a monkey (*Macacus nemestrinus*) by swallowing "a rich two-day culture" plus bacteria which were mixed with 10 cc. of sterilized milk on an empty stomach. The presence of *Trichomonas* in his stools was established on the 6th day by culture and on the 13th day by microscopical examination after taking in the cultures. The infection which lasted for about four and a half years, did not cause any ill effects upon

him. This flagellate is widely distributed and of common occurrence, especially in tropical and subtropical regions.

T. elongata Steinberg (*T. buccalis* Goodey). Similar to *T. hominis*; commensal in tartar and gum of human mouth. Dobell (1939) considers that its name should be *T. tenax* (O. F. Müller).

T. vaginalis Donn (Fig. 145). Similar to the above-mentioned two species; pyriform or fusiform; 10–30 μ by 10–20 μ ; cytoplasm contains many granules and bacteria; commensal in human vagina. Hogue (1943) noticed that this flagellate produces a substance which injures the tissue-culture cells. Feo (1944) reported that urethral specimens of 144 out of 926 men were found microscopically to contain

FIG. 145. *Trichomonas vaginalis*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, a living trophozoite; 2, a degenerating amoeboid trophozoite in life; 3, 4, stained trophozoites.

this flagellate. Some investigators consider the organism as a cause of vaginitis.

Because of the morphological similarity of these three species of human *Trichomonas*, a number of workers maintain that they may be one and the same species. Stabler and his co-workers (1941, 1942) obtained negative results by inoculating volunteer human subjects intravaginally with the cultures of *T. hominis* and *T. elongata*. On the other hand, Wenrich (1944) considers that there exist distinctly recognizable morphological differences among the three species. Dobell inoculated a rich culture of *Trichomonas* obtained from his stools into the vagina of a monkey (*Macacus rhesus*) and obtained a positive infection which was easily proven by culture, but unsatisfactorily by microscopical examination of smears. The infection thus produced, lasted over three years and did not bring about any ill effect on the monkey. He considers that *T. vaginalis* and *T. hominis* are synonyms and that there occur diverse strains different in minor morphological characters and physiological properties.

T. macacovaginae Hegner and Ratcliffe. In the vagina of *Macacus*

rhesus. Dobell (1934) holds that this is identical with *T. vaginalis* and *T. hominis*.

T. linearis Kirby (Fig. 146, a). Elongate, spindle-form; $9-24\mu$ by $3-8\mu$; in gut of *Orthognathotermes wheeleri*; Panama.

T. termitis (Cutler) (Fig. 146, b). $30-88\mu$ by $13-57\mu$ (Imms); in gut of *Archotermopsis wroughtoni*; India.

FIG. 146. a, *Trichomonas linearis*, $\times 2000$ (Kirby); b, *T. termitis*, $\times 630$ (Cutler); c, *Tritrichomonas brevicollis*, $\times 2000$ (Kirby); d, e, *Tricercomitus termopsidis*, $\times 890$ (Kirby); f, *Pentatrichomonoides scroa*, $\times 2000$ (Kirby); g, *Pseudotrypanosoma giganteum*, $\times 580$ (Kirby).

Genus **Tritrichomonas** Kofoid. Similar to *Trichomonas* in appearance and structure; but 3 anterior flagella; parasitic.

T. brevicollis Kirby (Fig. 146, c). Ovoid; undulating membrane curved around end; $10-17\mu$ by $4-8\mu$; in gut of *Kalotermes brevicollis*; Panama.

T. foetus (Riedmüller). Pathogenic; in genitalia of cattle; simi-

lar to *Trichomonas vaginalis*; but 3 anterior flagella; body about 15μ by 5μ ; transmission by sexual act, from cow to bull or bull to cow; in infected cow conception temporarily or permanently is suspended or death of foetus occurs.

T. fecalis Cleveland. 5μ by 4μ to 12μ by 6μ ; average dimensions 8.5μ by 5.7μ ; axostyle long, protruding $1/3$ – $1/2$ the body length from the posterior end; of 3 flagella, one is longer and less active than the other two; in the faeces of man. Its remarkable adaptability observed by Cleveland was noted elsewhere (p. 30).

T. batrachorum (Perty). Ovoid; 14 – 18μ by 6 – 10μ ; in frog gut.

T. augusta Alexeieff. Spindle-form; 18 – 22μ by 8 – 14μ ; in frog gut.

Genus **Tricercomitus** Kirby. Small; 3 anterior flagella; a long trailing flagellum, adhering to body; nucleus anterior, without endosome; blepharoplast large, with a parabasal body and an axial filament; parasitic.

T. termopsidis K. (Fig. 146, d, e). 4 – 12μ by 2 – 3μ ; anterior flagella 6 – 20μ long; trailing flagellum 19 – 65μ long; in gut of *Zootermopsis angusticollis*, *Z. nevadensis* and *Z. laticeps*; California and Arizona.

Genus **Pentatrichomonas** Mesnil. Similar to *Trichomonas*, but with 5 free anterior flagella.

P. bengalensis Chatterjee. 9 – 20μ by 7 – 14μ ; in human intestine. Kirby (1943) observed that of the five flagella, four arise from the end of a columnar (1 – 2μ long) extension, while the fifth flagellum is a little shorter and takes its origin about 1μ behind the extension.

Genus **Pentatrichomonoides** Kirby. Five anterior flagella and the undulating membrane; axostyle very slightly developed; fusiform parabasal body; nucleus separated from the anterior blepharoplast; in termite gut.

P. scroa K. (Fig. 146, f). 14 – 45μ by 6 – 15μ ; in *Cryptotermes dudleyi* and *Lobitermes longicollis*.

Genus **Pseudotrypanosoma** Grassi. Large, elongate; 3 anterior flagella; undulating membrane; slender axostyle; band-like structure between nucleus and blepharoplast; parabasal body long, narrow; in termite gut.

P. giganteum G. (Fig. 146, g). 55 – 111μ long (Grassi); 145 – 205μ by 20 – 40μ ; anterior flagella about 30μ long (Kirby); in gut of *Porotermes adamsoni* and *P. grandis*.

Suborder 2 Diplomonadina

The suborder consists of a number of binucleate flagellates possessing bilateral symmetry.

Family Hexamitidae Kent

Genus *Hexamita* Dujardin (*Octomitus* Prowazek). Pyriform; 2 nuclei near anterior end; 6 anterior and 2 posterior flagella; 2 axostyles; 1-2 contractile vacuoles in free-living forms; cytostome obscure; endoplasm with refractile granules; encystment; in stagnant water or parasitic.

FIG. 147. a, *Hexamita inflata*, $\times 600$ (Klebs); b, c, trophozoite and cyst of *H. intestinalis*, $\times 1600$ (Alexeieff); d, *H. salmonis*, $\times 2100$ (Davis); e, *H. cryptocerci*, $\times 1600$ (Cleveland); f, *Trepomonas agilis*, $\times 1070$ (Klebs); g, *T. rotans*, $\times 710$ (Lemmermann); h, *Gyromonas ambulans*, $\times 530$ (Seligo); i, *Trigonomonas compressa*, $\times 490$ (Klebs); j, *Urophagus rostratus*, $\times 800$ (Klebs).

H. inflata D. (Fig. 147, a). Broadly oval; posterior end truncate; $13\text{--}25\mu$ by $9\text{--}15\mu$; in stagnant water.

H. intestinalis D. (Fig. 147, b, c). $10\text{--}16\mu$ long; in intestine of

frogs, also in midgut of *Trutta fario* and in rectum of *Motella tricolorata* and *M. mustela* in European waters.

H. salmonis (Moore) (Fig. 147, d). 10–12 μ by 6–8 μ ; in intestine of various species of trout and salmon; schizogony in epithelium of pyloric caeca and intestine; cysts; pathogenic to young host fish (Davis, 1925).

H. periplanetae (Bělař). 5–8 μ long; in intestine of cockroaches.

H. cryptocerci Cleveland (Fig. 147, e). 8–13 μ by 4–5.5 μ ; in *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

H. meleagridis McNiel, Hinshaw and Kofoid. Body 6–12 μ by 2–5 μ . It causes a severe catarrhal enteritis in young turkeys. Experimentally it is transmitted to young quail, chicks, and duckling.

Genus **Giardia** Kunstler (*Lambli*a Blanchard). Pyriform to ellipsoid; anterior end broadly rounded, posterior end drawn out; bilaterally symmetrical; dorsal side convex, ventral side concave or flat, with a sucking disc in anterior half; 2 nuclei; 2 axostyles; 8 flagella in 4 pairs; cysts oval to ellipsoid; with 2 or 4 nuclei and fibrils; in the intestine of various vertebrates. Several species.

G. intestinalis (Lambl) (*G. lamblia* Stiles) (Fig. 148). When the flagella lash actively, the organism shows a slight forward movement with a sidewise rocking motion. The trophozoite is broadly pyriform, not plastic; 9–20 μ by 5–10 μ ; sucking disc acts as attachment organella; cytoplasm hyaline; 2 needle-like axostyles; 2 vesicular nuclei near anterior margin; 8 flagella in 4 pairs; two flagella originate near the anterior end of axostyles, cross each other and follow the anterolateral margin of the disc, becoming free; two originating in anterior part of axostyles, leave the body about 1/3 from the posterior tip; two (ventral) which are thicker than others, originate in axostyles at nuclear level and remain free; two (caudal) flagella arise from the posterior tips of axostyles; a deeply staining body may be found in cytoplasm.

The cysts are ovoid and refractile; 8–14 μ by 6–10 μ ; cyst wall thin; contents do not fill the wall; 2 or 4 nuclei, axostyles, fibrils and flagella are visible in stained specimens.

This flagellate inhabits the lumen of the duodenum and other parts of small intestine of man. Both trophozoites and cysts are ordinarily found in diarrhoeic faeces. In severe cases of infection, an enormous number of the organisms attach themselves to the mucous membrane of the intestine which may result in abnormal functions of the host tissues. In some cases, the flagellate has been reported from the gall bladder. The stools often contain unusual amount of mucus. But there is no evidence that *G. intestinalis* attacks the intestinal epithelium.

G. muris (Grassi). 7–13 μ by 5–10 μ ; in the intestine of mice and rats.

Genus **Trepomonas** Dujardin. Free-swimming; flattened; more or less rounded; cytostomal grooves on posterior half, one on each side; 8 flagella (one long and 3 short flagella on each side) arise from anterior margin of groove; near anterior margin there is a horseshoe-form structure, in which two nuclei are located; fresh water, parasitic, or coprozoic.

T. agilis D. (Fig. 147, f). More or less ovoid; 7–30 μ long; 1 long and 3 short flagella on each side; rotation movement; stagnant water; also reported from intestine of amphibians.

FIG. 148. *Giardia intestinalis*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, 2, living trophozoites in front and side views; 3, 4, stained trophozoites in front and side views; 5, a fresh cyst; 6, 7, stained cysts; 8, a stained cyst in an end view.

T. rotans Klebs (Fig. 147, g). Broadly oval; posterior half highly flattened; 2 long and 2 short flagella on each of 2 cytostomes; stagnant water.

Genus **Gyromonas** Seligo. Free-swimming; small; form constant, flattened; slightly spirally coiled; 4 flagella at anterior end; cytostome not observed; fresh water.

G. ambulans S. (Fig. 147, h). Rounded; 8–15 μ long; standing water.

Genus **Trigonomonas** Klebs. Free-swimming; pyriform, plastic; cytostome on either side, from anterior margin of which arise 3 flagella; flagella 6 in all; 2 nuclei situated near anterior end; movement rotation; holozoic; fresh water.

T. compressa K. (Fig. 147, *i*). 24–33 μ by 10–16 μ ; flagella of different lengths; standing water.

Genus **Urophagus** Klebs. Somewhat similar to *Hexamita*; but a single cytostome; 2 moveable posterior processes; holozoic; stagnant water.

U. rostratus (Stein) (Fig. 147, *j*). Spindle-form; 16–25 μ by 6–12 μ .

Suborder 3 Polymonadina

This group includes forms which inhabit the intestine of various species of termites, most probably as symbionts. The majority are multinucleate. Each nucleus gives rise to a basal body (from which flagella extend), a parabasal body, and an axial filament. Janicki called this complex *karyomastigont*, and the complex which does not contain a nucleus *akaryomastigont*.

Genus **Calonympha** Foà. Body rounded; large; numerous long flagella arise from anterior region; numerous nuclei; karyomastigonts and akaryomastigonts; axial filaments form a bundle; in termite gut.

C. grassii F. (Fig. 149, *a*). 69–90 μ long; in *Cryptotermes grassii*.

Genus **Stephanonympha** Janicki. Oval, but plastic; numerous nuclei spirally arranged around anterior end; karyomastigonts; axial filaments form a bundle; in termite gut.

S. nelumbium Kirby (Fig. 149, *b*). 45 μ by 27 μ ; in *Cryptotermes hermsi*.

Genus **Coronympha** Kirby. Pyriform with 8 or 16 nuclei, arranged in a single circle in anterior region; 8 or 16 karyomastigonts; axostyle distributed; in termite gut.

C. clevelandi K. (Fig. 149, *c*). 25–53 μ by 18–46 μ ; in *Kaloterme clevelandi*.

Genus **Metacoronympha** Kirby. Pyriform; one hundred or more karyomastigonts arranged in spiral rows meeting at the anterior end; each mastigont is composed of nucleus, blepharoplast, cresta, 3 anterior flagella, a trailing flagellum, and an axostyle; axostyle as in the last genus; in termite gut.

M. senta K. (Fig. 149, *d*). 22–92 μ by 15–67 μ ; karyomastigonts about 66–345 (average 150) in usually 6 spiral rows; in *Kaloterme emersoni* and four other species of the genus.

Genus **Snyderella** Kirby. Numerous nuclei scattered through the cytoplasm; akaryomastigonts close together and extend through the greater part of peripheral region; axial filaments in bundle; in termite gut.

S. tabogae K. (Fig. 149, e). Pyriform; rounded posteriorly; bluntly conical anteriorly; $77-172\mu$ by $53-97\mu$; in *Cryptotermes longicollis*.

FIG. 149. a, *Calonympha grassii*, $\times 900$ (Janicki); b, *Stephanonympha nelumbium*, $\times 400$ (Kirby); c, *Coronympha clevelandi*, $\times 1000$ (Kirby); d, *Metacoronympha senta*, $\times 485$ (Kirby); e, *Snyderella tabogae*, $\times 350$ (Kirby).

References

- CLEVELAND, L. R. et al. 1934 The wood-feeding roach, *Cryptocercus*, its Protozoa, and the symbiosis between Protozoa and roach. Mem. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sci., Vol. 17.
- DAVIS, H. S. 1943 A new polymastigine flagellate, *Costia pyri-formis*, parasitic on trout. Jour. Parasit., Vol. 29.
- DOBELL, C. 1934 Researches on the intestinal Protozoa of monkeys and man. VI. Parasitology, Vol. 26.

- 1935 VII. Parasitology, Vol. 27.
- 1939 The common flagellate of the human mouth, *Trichomonas tenax* (O.F.M.): its discovery and its nomenclature. *Ibid.*, Vol. 31.
- and F. W. O'CONNOR 1921 *The intestinal Protozoa of man*. London.
- FEO, L. G. 1944 The incidence and significance of *Trichomonas vaginalis* in the male. *Amer. Jour. Trop. Med.*, Vol. 24.
- GRASSÉ, P. P. 1926 Contribution à l'étude des Flagellés parasites. *Arch. zool. exp. gén.*, Vol. 65.
- HOGUE, Mary J. 1943 The effect of *Trichomonas vaginalis* on tissue-culture cells. *Amer. Jour. Hyg.*, Vol. 37.
- KIRBY, H. 1930, 1931 Trichomonad flagellates from termites. I, II. *Uni. Cal. Pub. Zool.*, Vols. 33, 36.
- 1941, 1942 Devescovinid flagellates of termites. I, II, III. *Ibid.*, Vol. 45.
- 1943 Observations on a trichomonad from the intestine of man. *Jour. Parasit.*, Vol. 29.
- KOFOID, C. A. and OLIVE SWEZY 1915 Mitosis and multiple fission in trichomonad flagellates. *Proc. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sci.*, Vol. 51.
- 1920 On the morphology and mitosis of *Chilomastix mesnili* (Wenyon), a common flagellate of the human intestine. *Uni. Cal. Pub. Zool.*, Vol. 20.
- 1922 Mitosis and fission in the active and encysted phases of *Giardia enterica* etc. *Ibid.*, Vol. 20.
- MCNEIL, E., W. R. HINSHAW and C. A. KOFOID 1941 *Hexamita meleagridis* sp. nov. from the turkey. *Amer. Jour. Hyg.*, Vol. 34.
- REES, C. W. 1938 Observations on bovine venereal trichomoniasis. *Veterin. Med.*, Vol. 33.
- STABLER, R. M., L. G. FEO and A. E. RAKOFF 1941 Implantation of intestinal trichomonads (*T. hominis*) into the human vagina. *Amer. Jour. Hyg.*, Vol. 34.
- SUTHERLAND, J. L. 1933 Protozoa from Australian termites. *Quart. Jour. Micr. Sci.*, Vol. 76.
- WENRICH, D. H. 1944 Comparative morphology of the trichomonad flagellates of man. *Amer. Jour. Trop. Med.*, Vol. 24.
- 1944a Morphology of the intestinal trichomonad flagellates in man and of similar forms in monkeys, cats, dogs, and rats. *Jour. Morph.*, Vol. 74.
- WENYON, C. M. 1926 *Protozoology*, Vol. 1. London.

CHAPTER 16

Order 4 **Hypermastigina** Grassi

ALL members of this order are inhabitants of the alimentary canal of termites, cockroaches, and woodroaches. The cytoplasmic organization is of high complexity, although there is only a single nucleus. Flagella are numerous and have their origin in the blepharoplasts located in the anterior region of body. In many species, there exists a true symbiotic relationship between the host termite and the protozoans (p. 25). Method of nutrition is either holozoic or saprozoic (parasitic). Bits of wood, starch grains, and other food material are taken in by means of pseudopodia.

Asexual reproduction is by longitudinal fission; multiple division has also been noted in some species under certain conditions, while sexual reproduction has not been observed. Encystment occurs in some genera of Lophomonadidae and certain species inhabiting woodroaches, in which moulting of the host insect leads to encystment. Because of the peculiarity and complexity of their structures and also of their common occurrence in termites, the Hypermastigina have been frequently studied.

Body without segmented appearance

Flagella in spiral rows Family 1 Holomastigotidae

Flagella not arranged in spiral rows

Flagella in one or more anterior tufts

1 tuft of flagella Family 2 Lophomonadidae (p. 320)

2 tufts of flagella Family 3 Hoplonymphidae (p. 322)

4 tufts of flagella Family 4 Staurojoeninidae (p. 324)

Several tufts (loriculae) Family 5 Kofoidiidae (p. 324)

Flagella not arranged in tufts

Posterior part without flagella

. Family 6 Trichonymphidae (p. 324)

Flagella over entire body Family 7 Eucomonymphidae (p. 326)

Body with segmented appearance Family 8 Teratonymphidae (p. 326)

Family 1 **Holomastigotidae** Janicki

Genus **Holomastigotes** Grassi. Body small; spindle-shaped; few spiral rows reach from anterior to posterior end; nucleus anterior, surrounded by a mass of dense cytoplasm; nutrition by absorption of fluid material; in termite gut.

H. elongatum G. (Fig. 150. a). In gut of *Reticulitermes lucifugus*, *R. speratus*, *R. flaviceps*, and *Macrohodotermes massambicus*; up to 70 μ by 24 μ (Grassi).

Genus **Holomastigotoides** Grassi and Foà. Large; Spindle-shaped; spiral rows of flagella as in the last genus, but more numerous (12–40 rows); a mass of dense cytoplasm surrounds ovoid nucleus; in termite gut.

FIG. 150. a, *Holomastigotes elongatum*, $\times 700$ (Koidzumi); b, *Holomastigotoides hartmanni*, $\times 250$ (Koidzumi); c, *Spirotrichonympha leidy*, $\times 400$ (Koidzumi); d, *S. pulchella*, $\times 900$ (Brown); e, *Microspirotrichonympha porteri*, $\times 250$ (Koidzumi); f, *M. ovalis*, $\times 600$ (Brown); g, *Macrospironympha xylopletha*, $\times 300$ (Cleveland et al.); h, *Leptospirotrichonympha eupora*, $\times 1050$ (Cleveland et al.).

H. hartmanni Koidzumi (Fig. 150, b). 50–140 μ long; in *Coptotermes formosanus*.

Genus **Spirotrichonympha** Grassi. Moderately large; elongate pyriform; flagella deeply embedded in cytoplasm in anterior region, arising from 1 to several spiral bands; mass of dense cytoplasm conical and its base indistinct; nucleus spherical; in termite gut.

S. leidy Koidzumi (Fig. 150, c). In *Coptotermes formosanus*; 15–50 μ by 8–30 μ .

S. pulchella Brown (Fig. 150, d). 36–42 μ by 14–16 μ ; in *Reticulitermes hageni*.

S. polygyra Cupp. (Fig. 61). In *Kaloterme simpliciornis*; 63–112 μ by 25–60 μ ; four flagellar bands.

Genus **Spirotrichonymphella** Grassi. Small; without spiral ridges; flagella longer; not wood-feeding; in termite gut.

S. pudibunda G. In *Porotermes adamsoni*; Australia. Multiple fusion (Sutherland).

Genus **Microspirotrichonympha** Koidzumi (*Spirotrichonympha* Koidzumi). Small, surface not ridged; spiral rows of flagella only on anterior half; a tubular structure between nucleus and anterior extremity; a mass of dense cytoplasm surrounds nucleus; with or without axial rod; in termite gut.

M. porteri K. (Fig. 150, e). In *Leucotermes* (*Reticulitermes*) *flaviceps*; 20–55 μ by 20–40 μ .

M. ovalis (Brown) (Fig. 150, f). 36–48 μ by about 40 μ ; in *Reticulitermes hesperus*.

Genus **Spirotrichosoma** Sutherland. Pyriform or elongate; below operculum, two deeply staining rods from which flagella arise and which extend posteriorly into 2 spiral flagellar bands; without axostyle; nucleus anterior, median; wood chips always present, but method of feeding unknown; in *Stolotermes victoriensis*; Australia.

S. capitata S. 87 μ by 38 μ ; flagellar bands closely spiral, reach posterior end.

Genus **Macrospironympha** Cleveland. Broadly conical; flagella on 2 broad flagellar bands which make 10–12 spiral turns, 2 inner bands; axostyles 36–50 or more; during mitosis nucleus migrates posteriorly; encystment, in which only nucleus and centrioles are retained, takes place at each ecdysis of host; in *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

M. xylopletha C. (Fig. 150, g). 112–154 μ by 72–127 μ .

Genus **Leptospironympha** Cleveland. Cylindrical; small; flagella on 2 bands winding spirally along body axis; axostyle single, hyaline; nucleus does not migrate posteriorly during division; encystment unknown; in *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

L. eupora C. (Fig. 150, h). 30–38 μ by 18–21 μ .

Family 2 Lophomonadidae Kent

Genus **Lophomonas** Stein. Ovoid or elongate; small; a vesicular nucleus anterior; axostyle composed of many filaments; cysts common; in colon of cockroaches.

L. blattarum S. (Figs. 23; 62; 69; 151, a–e). Small, pyriform, but plastic; bundle of axostylar filaments may project beyond posterior margin; active swimming movements; binary or multiple fission;

25–30 μ long; holozoic in colon of cockroaches; widely distributed.

L. striata Bütschli (Fig. 151, f–h). Elongate spindle; surface with obliquely arranged needle-like structures which some investigators believe to be a protophytan (to which Grassé gave the name, *Fusiformis lophomonadis*); bundle of axial filaments short, never protruding; movement sluggish; cyst spherical with needle-like structures; in same habitat as the last species.

FIG. 151. a–e, *Lophomonas blattarium* (a, b, in life, $\times 320$; c, d, stained specimens; e, cyst, $\times 1150$) (Kudo); f–h, *L. striata* (f, in life, $\times 320$; g, h, stained individuals, $\times 1150$) (Kudo); i, *Prolophomonas tocopola*, $\times 1200$ (Cleveland et al.); j, *Joenia annectens* (Grassi and Foà); k, *Microjoenia pyriformis*, $\times 920$ (Brown); l, *Torquenympha octoplus*, $\times 920$ (Brown).

Genus **Eulophomonas** Grassi and Foà. Similar to *Lophomonas*, but flagella vary from 5–15 or a little more in number; in termite gut.

E. kalotermitis Grassi. In *Kalotermes flavicollis*; this flagellate has not been observed by other workers.

Genus **Prolophomonas** Cleveland. Similar to *Eulophomonas*; established since *Eulophomonas* had not been seen by recent workers; would become synonym "if *Eulophomonas* can be found in *K. flavicollis*" (Cleveland).

P. tocopola C. (Fig. 151, i). 14–19 μ by 12–15 μ ; in *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

Genus **Joenia** Grassi. Ellipsoidal; anterior portion capable of forming pseudopodia; flagellar tufts in part directed posteriorly; surface covered by numerous immobile short filamentous processes, which some hold to be symbiotic bacteria; nucleus spherical, anterior; posterior to it a conspicuous axostyle composed of numerous axial filaments, a parabasal apparatus surrounding it; xylophagous; in termite gut.

J. annectens G. (Fig. 151, j). In *Kaloterms flavicollis*.

Genus **Joenina** Grassi. More complex in structure than that of *Joenia*; flagella inserted at anterior end in a semi-circle; parabasal bodies 2 elongated curved rods; feeding on wood fragments.

J. pulchella G. In *Porotermes adamsoni*.

Genus **Joenopsis** Cutler. Oval; large; a horseshoe-shaped pillar at anterior end, flagella arising from it; some directed anteriorly, others posteriorly; parabasal bodies long rods; a strong axostyle; feeding on bits of wood; in termite gut.

J. polytricha C. In *Archotermopsis wroughtoni*; 95–129 μ long.

Genus **Microjoenia** Grassi. Small, pyriform; anterior end flattened; flagella arranged in longitudinal rows; axostyle; parabasal body simple; in termite gut.

M. pyriformis Brown (Fig. 151, k). 44–52 μ by 24–30 μ ; in *Reticulitermes hageni*.

Genus **Mesojoenia** Grassi. Large; flagellar tuft spreads over a wide area; distinct axostyle, bent at posterior end; 2 parabasal bodies; in termite gut.

M. decipiens G. In *Kaloterms flavicollis*.

Genus **Torquenympha** Brown. Small; pyriform or top-form; axostyle; radially symmetrical; 8 radially arranged parabasal bodies; nucleus anterior; in termite gut.

T. octoplus B. (Fig. 151, l). 15–26 μ by 9–13 μ ; in *Reticulitermes hesperus*.

Family 3 Hoplonymphidae Light

Genus **Hoplonympha** Light. Slender fusiform, covered with thick, rigid pellicular armor; each of the two flagellar tufts arises from a plate connected with blepharoplast at anterior end; nucleus near anterior extremity, more or less triangular in form; in termite gut.

H. natator L. (Fig. 152, a, b). 60–120 μ by 5–12 μ ; in *Kalotermes simplicicornis*.

Genus **Barbulanympha** Cleveland. Acorn-shaped: small, narrow, nuclear sleeve between centrioles; number of rows of flagella greater

FIG. 152. a, b, *Hoplonympha natator*, $\times 450$ (Light); c, *Barbulanympha ufulula*, $\times 210$ (Cleveland et al.); d, *Urinympha talea*, $\times 350$ (Cleveland et al.); e, *Staurojoenina assimilis*, $\times 200$ (Kirby); f, *Idionympha perissa*, $\times 250$ (Cleveland et al.); g, *Teratonympha mirabilis*, $\times 200$ (Dogiel).

at base; large chromatin granules; numerous (80–350) parabasals; axostylar filaments 80–350; flagella 1500–13,000; different species show different number of chromosomes during mitosis; in gut of *Cryptocercus punctulatus*. Four species.

B. ufalula C. (Figs. 60; 152, c). 250–340 μ by 175–275 μ ; 50 chromosomes; flagellated area 36–41 μ long; centriole 28–35 μ long.

B. laurabuda C. 180–240 μ by 135–170 μ ; 40 chromosomes; flagellated area 29–33 μ long; centriole 24–28 μ long.

Genus **Rhynchonympha** Cleveland. Elongate; number of flagellar rows same throughout; axial filaments somewhat larger and longer, about 30; 30 parabasals; 2400 flagella; in *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

R. tarda C. (Fig. 153, f). 130–215 μ by 30–70 μ .

Genus **Urinympha** Cleveland. Narrow, slender; flagellated area, smaller than that of the two genera mentioned above; flagella move as a unit; about 24 axial filaments; 24 parabasals; 600 flagella; in gut of *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

U. talea C. (Fig. 152, d). 75–300 μ by 15–50 μ .

Family 4 Staurojoeninidae Grassi

Genus **Staurojoenina** Grassi. Pyriform to cylindrical; anterior region conical; nucleus spherical, central; 4 flagellar tufts from anterior end; ingest wood fragments; in termite gut.

S. assimilis Kirby (Fig. 152, e). 105–190 μ long; in *Kaloterms minor*.

Genus **Idionympha** Cleveland. Acorn-shaped; axostyles 8–18; fine parabasals grouped in 4 areas; pellicle non-striated; nucleus nearer anterior end than that of *Staurojoenina*; flagellated areas smaller; in gut of *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

I. perissa C. (Fig. 152, f). 169–275 μ by 98–155 μ .

Family 5 Kofoidiidae Light

Genus **Kofoidia** Light. Spherical; flagellar tufts composed of 8–16 *loriculae* (permanently fused bundles of flagella); without either axostyle or parabasal body; between oval nucleus and bases of flagellar tufts, there occurs a chromatin collar; in termite gut.

K. lorikulata L. (Fig. 153, a, b). 60–140 μ in diameter; in *Kaloterms simplicicornis*.

Family 6 Trichonymphidae Kent

Genus **Trichonympha** Leidy (*Leidyonella* Frenzel; *Gymnonympha* Dobell; ? *Leidyopsis* Kofoid and Swezy). Anterior portion consists of nipple and bell, both of which are composed of 2 layers; a distinct axial core; nucleus central; flagella located in longitudinal rows on bell; in termite gut. Many species. Cleveland and his associates (1934) observed that encystment takes place in species inhabiting the woodroach, *Cryptocercus punctulatus* and that it occurs only at the time of moulting of the host roach, namely once a year.

T. campanula Kofoid and Swezy (Figs. 59; 153, c). 144–313 μ by 57–144 μ ; wood particles are taken in by posterior region of the body; in *Zootermopsis angusticollis*, *Z. nevadensis* and *Z. laticeps*.

FIG. 153. a, b, *Kofoidia loriculata*, $\times 175$, $\times 300$ (Light); c, *Trichonympha campanula*, $\times 150$ (Kofoid and Swezy); d, *T. agilis*, $\times 410$ (Kirby); e, *Eucomonympha imla*, $\times 350$ (Cleveland et al.); f, *Rhynchonympha tarda*, $\times 350$ (Cleveland et al.).

T. agilis Leidy (Fig. 153, d). 55–115 μ by 22–45 μ ; in *Reticulitermes flavipes*, *R. lucifugus*, *R. speratus*, *R. flaviceps*, *R. hesperus*, *R. tibialis*.

T. grandis Cleveland. 190–205 μ by 79–88 μ ; in *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

Genus **Pseudotrichonympha** Grassi. 2 parts in anterior end as in *Trichonympha*; head organ with a spherical body at its tip and surrounded by a single layer of ectoplasm; bell covered by 2 layers of ectoplasm; nucleus lies freely; body covered by slightly oblique rows of short flagella; in termite gut.

P. grassii Koidzumi. In *Coptotermes formosanus*; spindle-form; 200–300 μ by 50–120 μ .

Genus **Deltotrichonympha** Sutherland. Triangular; with a small dome-shaped "head"; composed of 2 layers; head and neck with long active flagella; body flagella short, arranged in 5 longitudinal rows; flagella absent along posterior margin; nucleus large oval, located in anterior third; cytoplasm with wood chips; in termite gut. One species.

D. operculata S. Up to 230 μ long, 164 μ wide, and about 50 μ thick; in gut of *Mastotermes darwiniensis*; Australia.

Family 7 Eucomonymphidae Cleveland

Genus **Eucomonympha** Cleveland. Body covered with flagella arranged in 2 (longer rostral and shorter post-rostral) zones; rostral tube very broad, filled with hyaline material; nucleus at base of rostrum; in gut of *Cryptocercus punctulatus*.

E. imla C. (Fig. 153, e). 100–165 μ by 48–160 μ ; attached forms more elongate than free individuals.

Family 8 Teratonymphidae Koidzumi

Genus **Teratonympha** Koidzumi (*Cyclonympha* Dogiel). Large; and elongate; transversely ridged, and presents a metameric appearance; each ridge with a single row of flagella; anterior end complex, containing a nucleus; reproduction by longitudinal fission; in termite gut.

T. mirabilis K. (Fig. 152, g). 200–300 μ or longer by 40–50 μ ; in *Reticulitermes speratus*.

References

- CLEVELAND, L. R. 1925 The effects of oxygenation and starvation on the symbiosis between the termite, *Termopsis*, and its intestinal flagellates. Biol. Bull., Vol. 48.
 ——— and others 1934 The wood-feeding roach, *Cryptocercus*, its Protozoa, and the symbiosis between Protozoa and roach. Mem. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sci., Vol. 17.

- DOGIEL, V. 1922 Untersuchungen an parasitischen Protozoen aus dem Darmkanal der Termiten. III. Trichonymphidae. Arch. soc. Russe Protist., Vol. 1.
- JANICKI, D. v. 1910, 1915 Untersuchungen an parasitischen Flagellaten. I, II. Zeitschr. wiss. Zool., Vols. 95, 112.
- KIRBY, H. 1926 On *Staurojoenina assimilis* sp. nov., an intestinal flagellate from the termite, *Kaloterme minor* Hagen. Uni. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 29.
- 1932 Flagellates of the genus *Trichonympha* in termites. Ibid., Vol. 37.
- 1944 The structural characteristics and nuclear parasites of some species of *Trichonympha* in termites. Ibid., Vol. 49.
- KOFOID, C. A. and OLIVE SWEZY 1919, 1926 Studies on the parasites of termites. Ibid., Vols. 20, 28.
- KOIDZUMI, M. 1921 Studies on the intestinal Protozoa found in the termites of Japan. Parasit., Vol. 13.
- KUDO, R. R. 1926 Observations on *Lophomonas blattarum*, a flagellate inhabiting the colon of the cockroach, *Blatta orientalis*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 53.
- SUTHERLAND, J. L. 1933 Protozoa from Australian termites. Quart. Jour. Micr. Sci., Vol. 76.

Class 2 Sarcodina Bütschli

THE members of this class do not possess any definite pellicle and, therefore, are capable of forming pseudopodia (p. 41). The term 'amoeboid' is often used to describe their appearance. The pseudopodia serve ordinarily for both locomotion and food-capturing. The peripheral portion of the body shows no structural differentiation in Amoebina, Proteomyxa, and Mycetozoa. Internal and external skeletal structures are variously developed in other orders. Thus, in Testacea and Foraminifera, there is a well-developed test or shell that usually has an aperture, through which the pseudopodia are extruded; in Heliozoa and Radiolaria, skeletons of various forms and materials are developed.

The cytoplasm is, as a rule, differentiated into the ectoplasm and the endoplasm, but this differentiation is not constant. In Radiolaria, there is a perforated membranous central capsule which marks the border line between the two cytoplasmic regions. The endoplasm contains the nuclei, food vacuoles, various granules, and contractile vacuoles. The majority of Sarcodina are uninucleate, but numerous species of Foraminifera and Mycetozoa are multinucleate in certain phases during their development. In the family Paramoebidae, there occurs a peculiar secondary nucleus.

The Sarcodina are typically holozoic. Their food organisms are Protozoa, small Metazoa and Protophyta, which present themselves conspicuously in the cytoplasm. One or more contractile vacuoles are invariably present in forms inhabiting the fresh water, but absent in parasitic forms or in those which live in the salt water.

Asexual reproduction is usually by binary (or rarely multiple) fission, budding, or plasmotomy. Definite proof of sexual reproduction has been noted in a comparatively small number of species. Encystment is common in the majority of Sarcodina, but is unknown in a few species. The life-cycle has been worked out in some forms and seems to vary among different groups. The young stages are either amoeboid or flagellate, and on this account, it is sometimes very difficult to distinguish the Sarcodina and the Mastigophora. In some forms the mature trophic stage may show an amoeboid or flagellate phase, owing to differences in environmental conditions.

The Sarcodina are divided into two subclasses as follows:

With lobopodia, rhizopodia, or filopodia. . . Subclass 1 Rhizopoda (p. 329)
 With axopodia. Subclass 2 Actinopoda (p. 406)

Subclass 1 **Rhizopoda** Siebold

The name *Rhizopoda* has often been used to designate the entire class, but it is used here for one of the subclasses, which is further subdivided into five orders, as follows:

Without test or shell

With radiating pseudopodia Order 1 *Proteomyxa*

With rhizopodia; forming plasmodium . . . Order 2 *Mycetozoa* (p. 335)

With lobopodia Order 3 *Amoebina* (p. 343)

With test or shell

Test single-chambered; chitinous Order 4 *Testacea* (p. 374)

Test 1- to many-chambered; calcareous . . Order 5 *Foraminifera* (p. 394)

Order 1 **Proteomyxa** Lankester

A number of incompletely known *Rhizopods* are placed in this group. The pseudopodia are filopodia which often branch or anastomose with one another. In this respect the *Proteomyxa* show affinity to the *Mycetozoa*. Flagellate swimmers and encystment occur commonly. The majority of *Proteomyxa* lead parasitic life in algae or higher plants in fresh or salt water.

Pseudoplasmodium-formation Family 1 *Labyrinthulidae*
Solitary and Heliozoa-like

With flagellate swimmers Family 2 *Pseudosporidae* (p. 330)

Without flagellate swimmers Family 3 *Vampyrellidae* (p. 330)

Family 1 **Labyrinthulidae** Haeckel

Small fusiform protoplasmic masses are grouped in network of sparingly branched and anastomosing filopodia; individuals encyst independently; with or without flagellate stages.

Genus *Labyrinthula* Cienkowski. Minute forms feeding on various species of algae in fresh or salt water; often brightly colored due to the chlorophyll bodies taken in as food. Young (1943) made an extensive study of the genus and concluded that six known species should be grouped in three species and two varieties.

L. cienkowskii Zopf (Fig. 154, a). Attacks *Vaucheria* in fresh water.

L. macrocystis Cienkowski. Renn (1934, 1936) found a species in the diseased leaf-tissue of the 'spotting and darkening' eel-grass, *Zostera marina*, along the Atlantic coast of the United States. Young (1943) identified the organism which he studied as *L. macrocystis*, and noted that its hosts included various algae and three genera of Naiadaceae: *Zostera*, *Ruppia* and *Zannichellia*.

The 'net-plasmodium' contains fusiform cells which average in size 18μ by 4μ and which multiply by binary fission; many cells encyst

together within a tough, opaque membrane. The growth is the best at 14–24° C. and at 12–22 per cent chlorinity.

Genus **Labyrinthomyxa** Duboscq. Body fusiform; amoeboid and flagellate phases, variable in size; flagellate stage penetrates the host cell membrane; in plants.

L. sauvageaui D. (Fig. 154, b–e). Fusiform body 7–11 μ long; pseudoplasmodium-formation; amoeboid stage 2.5–14 μ long; flagellate stage 7–18 μ long; parasitic in *Laminaria lejolisi* at Roscoff, France.

Family 2 Pseudosporidae Berlese

Genus **Pseudospora** Cienkowski. Body minute; parasitic in algae and Mastigophora (including Volvocidae); organism nourishes itself on host protoplasm, grows and multiplies into a number of smaller individuals, by repeated division; the latter biflagellate, seek a new host, and transform themselves into amoeboid stage; encystment common.

P. volvocis C. (Fig. 154, f, g). Heliozoan form about 12–30 μ in diameter; pseudopodia radiating; cysts about 25 μ in diameter; in species of Volvox.

P. parasitica C. Attacks Spirogyra and allied algae.

P. eudorini Roskin. Heliozoan forms 10–12 μ in diameter; radiating pseudopodia 2–3 times longer; amoeboid within host colony; cysts 15 μ in diameter; in *Eudorina elegans*.

Genus **Protomonas** Cienkowski. Body irregularly rounded with radiating filopodia; food consists of starch grains; division into biflagellate swimmers which become amoeboid and unite to form pseudoplasmodium; fresh or salt water.

P. amyli C. (Fig. 154, h–j). In fresh water.

Family 3 Vampyrellidae Doflein

Filopodia radiate from all sides or formed from a limited area; flagellate swimmers do not occur; the organism is able to bore through the cellulose membrane of various algae and feeds on protoplasmic contents; body often reddish because of the presence of carotin; multinucleate; multiplication in encysted stage into uni- or multi-nucleate bodies; cysts often also reddish.

Genus **Vampyrella** Cienkowski. Heliozoa-like; endoplasm vacuolated or granulated, with carotin granules; numerous vesicular nuclei and contractile vacuoles; multinucleate cysts, sometimes with stalk; 50–700 μ in diameter. Several species.

V. lateritia (Fresenius) (Fig. 154, k, l). Spherical; orange-red except the hyaline ectoplasm; feeds on Spirogyra and other algae

in fresh water. On coming in contact with an alga, it often travels along it and sometimes breaks it at joints, or pierces individual cell and extracts chlorophyll bodies by means of pseudopodia; multiplication in encysted condition; $30-40\mu$ in diameter.

Genus *Nuclearia* Cienkowski. Subspherical, with sharply pointed fine radiating pseudopodia; actively moving forms vary in shape;

FIG. 154. a, *Labyrinthula cienkowskii*, $\times 200$ (Doflein); b-e, *Labyrinthomyxa sauvageaui* (b, c, flagellate forms, $\times 100$; d, e, amoeboid forms, $\times 500$) (Duboseq); f, g, *Pseudospora volvocis*, $\times 670$ (Robertson); h-j, *Protomonas amyli* (Zopf); k, l, *Vampyrella lateritia*, $\times 530$ (k (Leidy), l (Doflein)); m, n, *Nuclearia delicatula*, $\times 300$ (Cash).

with or without a mucous envelope; with one or many nuclei; fresh water.

N. delicatula C. (Fig. 154, m, n). Multinucleate; bacteria often adhering to gelatinous envelope; up to 60μ in diameter.

N. simplex C. Uninucleate; 30μ in diameter.

Genus **Arachnula** Cienkowski. Body irregularly chain-form with filopodia extending from ends of branches; numerous nuclei and

FIG. 155. a, *Arachnula impatiens*, $\times 670$ (Dobell); b, c, *Chalmydomyxa montana*: b, $\times 270$ (Cash); c, $\times 530$ (Penard); d, *Rhizoplasma kaiseri*, $\times 30?$ (Verworn); e, *Biomyxa vagans*, $\times 200$ (Cash); f, *Penardia mutabilis*, $\times 200$ (Cash); g, *Hyalodiscus rubicundus*, $\times 370$ (Penard).

contractile vacuoles; feeds on diatoms and other microorganisms.

A. impatiens C. (Fig. 155, *a*). 40–350 μ in diameter.

Genus **Chlamydomyxa** Archer. Body spheroidal; ectoplasm and endoplasm well differentiated; endoplasm often green-colored due to the presence of green spherules; numerous vesicular nuclei; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; secretion of an envelope around the body is followed by multiplication into numerous secondary cysts; cyst wall cellulose; in sphagnum swamp.

C. montana Lankester (Fig. 155, *b*, *c*). Rounded or ovoid; cytoplasm colored; about 50 μ in diameter; when moving, elongate with extremely fine pseudopodia which are straight or slightly curved and which are capable of movement from side to side; non-contractile vacuoles at bases of grouped pseudopods; in active individual there is a constant movement of minute fusiform bodies (function?); when extended 100–150 μ long; total length 300 μ or more; fresh water among vegetation.

Genus **Rhizoplasma** Verworn. Spherical or sausage-shaped; with anastomosing filopodia; orange-red; with a few nuclei.

R. kaiseri V. (Fig. 155, *d*). Contracted form 0.5–1 mm. in diameter; with 1–3 nuclei; pseudopodia up to 3 cm. long; extended body up to 10 mm. long; originally described from Red Sea.

Genus **Chondropus** Greeff. Spherical to oval; peripheral portion transparent but often yellowish; endoplasm filled with green, yellow, brown bodies; neither nucleus nor contractile vacuoles observed; pseudopods straight, fine, often branched; small pearl-like bodies on body surface and pseudopodia.

C. viridis G. Average diameter 35–45 μ ; fresh water among algae.

Genus **Biomyxa** Leidy (*Gymnophrys* Cienkowski). Body form inconstant; initial form spherical; cytoplasm colorless, finely granulated, capable of expanding and extending in any direction, with many filopodia which freely branch and anastomose; cytoplasmic movement active throughout; numerous small contractile vacuoles in body and pseudopodia; with one or more nuclei.

B. vagans L. (Fig. 155, *e*). Main part of body, of various forms; size varies greatly; in sphagnum swamps, bog-water, etc.

B. cometa (C.). Subspherical or irregularly ellipsoidal; pseudopodia small in number, formed from 2 or more points; body 35–40 μ , or up to 80 μ or more; pseudopodia 400 μ long or longer. Cienkowski maintained that this was a *moneran*.

Genus **Penardia** Cash. When inactive, rounded or ovoid; at other times expanded; exceedingly mobile during progression; endoplasm chlorophyll-green with a pale marginal zone; filopodia, branching

and anastomosing, colorless; nucleus inconspicuous; one or more contractile vacuoles, small; fresh water.

P. mutabilis C. (Fig. 155, *f*). Resting form 90–100 μ in diameter; extended forms (including pseudopodia) 300–400 μ long.

Genus **Hyalodiscus** Hertwig and Lesser. Discoid, though outline varies; endoplasm reddish, often vacuolated and sometimes shows filamentous projections reaching body surface; a single nucleus; ectoplasmic band of varying width surrounds the body completely; closely allied to *Vampyrella*; fresh water.

H. rubicundus H. and L. (Fig. 155, *g*). 50–80 μ by about 30 μ ; polymorphic; when its progress during movement is interrupted by an object, the body doubles back upon itself, and moves on in some other direction; freshwater ponds among surface vegetation.

References

- CASH, J. 1905 *The British freshwater Rhizopoda and Heliozoa*. Vol. 1. London.
- DOBELL, C. 1913 Observations on the life-history of Cienkowski's *Arachnula*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 31.
- DOFLEIN, F. and E. REICHNOW 1929 *Lehrbuch der Protozoenkunde*. Jena.
- DUBOSCQ, O. 1921 *Labyrinthomyxa sauvageau* n. g., n. sp., protéomyxée parasite de *Laminaria lejolisii* Sauvageau. C. r. soc. biol., Paris. Vol. 84.
- KÜHN, A. 1926 *Morphologie der Tiere in Bildern*. H. 2; T. 2. *Rhizopoden*.
- LEIDY, J. 1879 Freshwater Rhizopods of North America. Report U. S. Geol. Survey. Vol. 12.
- ROSKIN, G. 1927 Zur Kenntnis der Gattung *Pseudospora* Cienkowski. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 59.
- VALKANOV, A. 1940 Die Heliozoen und Proteomyxien. Ibid., Vol. 93.
- YOUNG, E. L. 1943 Studies on *Labyrinthula*, the etiologic agent of the wasting disease of eel-grass. Amer. Jour. Bot., Vol. 30.
- ZOPF, W. 1887 *Handbuch der Botanik* (A. Schenk). Vol. 3.

Order 2 Mycetozoa de Bary

THE Mycetozoa had been considered to be closely related to the fungi, being known as Myxomycetes, or Myxogasteres, the 'slime molds.' Through extended studies of their development, de Bary showed that they are more closely related to the Protozoa than to the Protophyta, although they stand undoubtedly on the border-line between these two groups of microorganisms. The Mycetozoa occur on dead wood or decaying vegetable matter of various kinds.

The most conspicuous part of a mycetozoan is its **plasmodium** which is formed by fusion of several **myxamoebae**, thus producing a large multinucleate body (Fig. 156, *a*). The greater part of the cytoplasm is granulated, although there is a thin layer of hyaline and homogeneous cytoplasm surrounding the whole body. The numerous vesicular nuclei are distributed throughout the granular cytoplasm. Many small contractile vacuoles are present in the peripheral portion of the plasmodium. The nuclei increase in number by division as the body grows; the division seems to be amitotic during the growth period of the plasmodium, but is mitotic prior to the spore-formation. The granulation of the cytoplasm is due to the presence of enormous numbers of granules which in some forms are made up of carbonate of lime. The plasmodium is usually colorless, but sometimes yellow, green, or reddish, because of the numerous droplets of fluid pigment present in the cytoplasm.

The food of Mycetozoa varies among different species. The great majority feed on decaying vegetable matter, but some, such as *Badhamia*, devour living fungi. Thus the Mycetozoa are holozoic or saprozoic in their mode of nutrition. Pepsin has been found in the plasmodium of *Fuligo* and is perhaps secreted into the food vacuoles, into which protein materials are taken. The plasmodium of *Badhamia* is said to possess the power of cellulose digestion.

When exposed to unfavorable conditions, such as desiccation, the protoplasmic movement ceases gradually, foreign bodies are extruded, and the whole plasmodium becomes divided into numerous **sclerotia** or cysts, each containing 10–20 nuclei and being surrounded by a resistant wall (*b*). These cysts may live as long as three years. Upon return of favorable conditions, the contents of the sclerotia germinate, fuse together, and thus again produce plasmodia (*c-e*).

When lack of food material occurs, the plasmodium undergoes changes and develops **sporangia**. The first indication of this process is the appearance of lobular masses of protoplasm in various parts of the body (*f, g*). These masses are at first connected with the streaming protoplasmic thickenings, but later become completely segregated into young sporangia. During the course of sporangium-formation, foreign bodies are thrown out of the body, and around each

FIG. 156. The life-cycle of the endosporous mycetozoan (de Bary, Lister, and others). a, plasmodium-formation by fusion of numerous myxamoebae; b, c, formation of sclerotium; d, e, germination of sclerotium and formation of plasmodium; f, portion of a plasmodium showing streaming protoplasmic thickenings; g, h, formation of sporangia; i, a sporangium opened, showing capillitium; j, a spore; k, germination of spore; l, myxamoeba; m, n, myxoflagellates; o-q, multiplication of myxoflagellate; r, microcyst; s, myxamoeba. Various magnified.

sporangium there is secreted a wall which, when mature, possesses a wrinkled appearance (*h*). The wall continues down to the substratum as a slender stalk of varying length, and in many genera the end of a stalk spreads into a network over the substratum, which forms

the base, **hypothallus**, for the stalk. With these changes the interior of the sporangium becomes penetrated by an anastomosing network, **capillitium**, of flat bands which are continuous with the outer covering (*i*). Soon after the differentiation of these protective and supporting structures, the nuclei divide simultaneously by mitosis and the cytoplasm breaks up into many small bodies. These uninucleate bodies are the **spores** which measure 3–20 μ in diameter and which soon become covered by a more or less thick cellulose membrane (*j*), variously colored in different species.

The mature sporangium breaks open sooner or later and the spores are carried, and scattered, by the wind. When a spore falls in water, its membrane ruptures, and the protoplasmic contents emerge as an amoebula (*k*, *l*). The amoebula possesses a single vesicular nucleus and contractile vacuoles, and undergoes a typical amoeboid movement. It presently assumes an elongate form and protrudes a flagellum from the nucleated end, thus developing into a **myxoflagellate** (zoospore or swarmer) (*m*, *n*) which undergoes a peculiar dancing movement and is able to form short, pointed pseudopodia from the posterior end. It feeds on bacteria, grows and multiplies by binary fission (*o*–*q*). After a series of division, the myxoflagellate may encyst and becomes a **microcyst** (*r*). When the microcyst germinates, the content develops into a myxamoeba (*s*) which, through fusion with many others, produces the plasmodium mentioned above. This is the life-cycle of a typical endosporous mycetozoon.

In the genus *Ceratiomyxa* in which spores are formed on the surface of **sporophores**, the development is briefly as follows: the plasmodium lives on or in decayed wood and presents a horn-like appearance. The body is covered by a gelatinous hyaline substance, within which the protoplasmic movements may be noted. The protoplasm soon leaves the interior and accumulates at the surface of the mass; at first as a close-set reticulum and then into a mosaic of polygonal cells, each containing a single nucleus. Each of these cells moves outward at right angles to the surface, still enveloped by the thin hyaline layer, which forms a stalk below. These cells are spores which become ellipsoid and covered by a membrane when fully formed. The spore is uninucleate at first, but soon becomes tetranucleate. When a spore reaches the water, its content emerges as an amoebula which divides three times, forming 8 small bodies, each of which develops a flagellum and becomes a myxoflagellate. The remaining part of the development is presumably similar to that of the endosporous form.

An enormous number of mycetozoan genera and species are known. The order is divided here into two suborders.

Spore develops into myxoflagellate; myxamoebae fuse completely and form plasmodium.....Suborder 1 Eumycetozoa

No flagellate stage; myxamoebae grouped prior to spore-formation, but do not fuse to form a true plasmodium.....
.....Suborder 2 Sorophora (p. 341)

Suborder 1 Eumycetozoa Zopf

Spores develop within sporangia

Spores violet or violet-brown

Sporangia with lime

Lime in small granular form.....Family 1 Physaridae

FIG. 157. a, b, *Badhamia utricularis* Berkeley (a, cluster of sporangia, $\times 4$; b, part of capillitium and spore-cluster, $\times 140$) (Lister); c, d, *Fuligo septica* Gmelin (c, a group of sporangia, $\times \frac{1}{3}$; d, part of capillitium and two spores, $\times 120$) (Lister); e, f, *Didymium effusum* Link (e, sporangium, $\times 12$; f, portion of capillitium and wall of sporangium showing the crystals of calcium carbonate and two spores, $\times 200$) (Lister); g, h, *Stemonitis splendens* Rostafinski (g, three sporangia, $\times 2$; h, columella and capillitium, $\times 42$) (Lister).

Genus **Badhamia** Berkeley (Fig. 157, a, b)

Capillitium, a coarse network with lime throughout.

Genus **Fuligo** Haller (Fig. 157, c, d)

Capillitium, a delicate network of threads with vesicular expansions filled with granules of lime.

Lime in crystalline form.....Family 2 Didymiidae

Genus *Didymium* Schrader (Fig. 157, e, f)

Lime crystals stellate, distributed over the wall of sporangium.

Sporangia without lime

Sporangia stalked.....Family 3 Stemonitidae

Genus *Stemonitis* Gleditsch (Fig. 157, g, h)

Sporangium-wall evanescent; capillitium arising from all parts of columella to form a network.

Sporangium combined into aethalium.....
.....Family 4 Amaurochaetidae

FIG. 158. a, b, *Amaurochaete fuliginosa* MacBride (a, group of sporangia, $\times \frac{1}{2}$; b, capillitium, $\times 10$) (Lister); c, empty sporangium of *Cribraria aurantiaca* Schrader, $\times 20$ (Lister); d, sporangium of *Orcadella operculata* Wingate, $\times 80$ (Lister); e, cluster of sporangia of *Tubulina fragiformis* Persoon, $\times 3$ (Lister); f, aethalium of *Reticularia lycoperdon* Bull., $\times 1$ (Lister); g, aethalium of *Lycogala miniatum* Persoon $\times 1$ (Lister); h-j, *Trichia affinis* de Bary (h, group of sporangia, $\times 2$; i, elater, $\times 250$; j, spore, $\times 400$) (Lister); k, l, *Arcyria punicea* Persoon (k, four sporangia, $\times 2$; l, part of capillitium, $\times 250$ and a spore, $\times 560$) (Lister); m, n, *Ceratiomyxa fruticulosa* MacBride (m, sporophore, $\times 40$; n, part of mature sporophore, showing two spores, $\times 480$) (Lister).

Genus *Amaurochaete* Rostafinski (Fig. 158, a, b)

With irregularly branching thread-like capillitium.

Spores variously colored, except violet

Capillitium absent or not forming a system of uniform threads.

Sporangium-wall membranous; with minute round granules.....
.....Family 5 Cribrariidae

Genus **Cribraria** Persoon (Fig. 158, *c*)

Sporangia stalked; wall thickened and forms a delicate persistent network expanded at the nodes.

Sporangia solitary; stalked.....Family 6 Liceidae

Genus **Orcadella** Wingate (Fig. 158, *d*)

Sporangia stalked, furnished with a lid of thinner substance.

Sporangium-wall membranous without granular deposits.....
.....Family 7 Tubulinidae

Genus **Tubulina** Persoon (Fig. 158, *e*)

Sporangia without tubular extensions.

Many sporangia more or less closely fused to form large bodies (aethalia); sporangium-wall incomplete and perforated.....
.....Family 8 Reticulariidae

Genus **Reticularia** Bulliard (Fig. 158, *f*)

Walls of convoluted sporangia incomplete, forming tubes and folds with numerous anastomosing threads.

Sporangia forming aethalium.....Family 9 Lycogalidae

Genus **Lycogala** Adanson (Fig. 158, *g*)

Capillitium a system of uniform threads

Capillitium threads with spiral or annular thickenings.....
.....Family 10 Trichiidae

Genus **Trichia** Haller (Fig. 158, *h-j*)

Capillitium abundant, consisting of free elasters with spiral thickenings.

Capillitium combined into an elastic network with thickenings in forms of cogs, half-rings, spines, or warts. Family 11 Arcyriidae

Genus **Arcyria** Wiggers (Fig. 158, *k, l*)

Sporangia stalked; sporangium-wall evanescent above, persistent and membranous in the lower third.

Capillitium abundant; sporangia normally sessile.....
.....Family 12 Margaritidae

Genus **Margarita** Lister

Capillitium profuse, long, coiled hair-like.

Spores develop on the surface of sporophores

Spores white; borne singly on filiform stalk.....
.....Family 13 Ceratiomyxidae

Genus **Ceratiomyxa** Schröter (Fig. 158, *m*, *n*)Suborder 2 **Sorophora** Lister

Pseudoplasmodium incomplete; myxamoeba of limax-form.....
Family 1 Guttuliniidae
 Pseudoplasmodium complete; myxamoeba with short pointed pseudo-
 podia.....Family 2 Dictyosteliidae

The Proteomyxa and the Mycetozoa as outlined above, are not distinctly defined groups. In reality, there are a number of forms which stand on the border line between them.

Phytomyxinea Poche

These organisms which possess a large multinucleate amoeboid body, are parasitic in various plants and also in a few animals.

FIG. 159. *Plasmodiophora brassicae*. a, root-hernia of cabbage; b, a spore, $\times 620$; c-e, stages in germination of spore, $\times 620$; f, myxamoeba, $\times 620$ (Woronin); g, a host cell with several young parasites, $\times 400$; h, an older parasite, $\times 400$ (Nawaschin).

Genus **Plasmodiophora** Woronin. Parasitic in the roots of cabbage and other cruciferous plants. The organism produces knotty enlargements, sometimes known as "root-hernia," or "fingers and toes" (Fig. 159, *a*). The small (haploid) spore (*b*) gives rise to a myxoflagellate (*c*-*f*) which penetrates the host cell. The organism grows in size and multiplies (*g*, *h*). The plasmodium divides into sporangia. Flagellated gametes that develop from them fuse in pairs, giving rise to diploid zygotes. These zygotes develop further into plasmodia in which haploid spores are produced.

P. brassicae W. (Fig. 159). In *Brassica* spp.

Genus **Sorosphaera** Schröter. Parasitic in *Veronica* spp.

Genus **Tetramyxa** Goebel. In *Ruppia*, *Zannichellia*, etc.

Genus **Octomyxa** Couch, Leitner and Whiffen. In *Achlya glomerata*.

Genus **Sorodiscus** Lagerheim and Winge. In *Chara*, *Callitriche*, etc.

Genus **Polymyxa** Ledingham. In *Triticum*, etc.

Genus **Membranosorus** Ostenfeld and Petersen. In *Heteranthera dubia*.

Genus **Spongospora** Brunchorst. Parasitic in *Solanum*; the diseased condition of potatoes is known as powdery or corky scab.

Genus **Ligniera** Maire and Tison. In *Alisma*, *Juncus*, etc.

References

- DE BARY 1864 *Die Mycetozoa*. Leipzig.
HAGELSTEIN, R. 1944 *The Mycelozoa of North America*. New York.
JAHN, E. 1901-1920 *Myxomycetenstudien*. I to X. Ber. Deutsch. Bot. Ges., Vols. 19, 20, 22-26, 29, 36 and 37.
JONES, P. M. 1928 Morphology and cultural study of *Plasmodiophora brassicae*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 62.
KARLING, J. S. 1942 *The Plasmodiophorales*. New York.
LISTER, A. 1925 *A monograph on the Mycetozoa*. 3rd ed. London.
MACBRIDE, T. H. 1922 *North American slime molds*. 2nd ed. New York.
——— and G. H. MARTIN 1934 *The Myxomycetes*. New York.

CHAPTER 19

Order 3 *Amoebina* Ehrenberg

THE *Amoebina* show a very little cortical differentiation. There is no pellicle or test, surrounding the body, although in some a delicate pellicle occurs. The cytoplasm is more or less distinctly differentiated into the ectoplasm and the endoplasm. The ectoplasm is hyaline and homogeneous, and appears tougher than the endoplasm. In the endoplasm, which is granulated or vacuolated, are found one or more nuclei, various food vacuoles, crystals, and other inclusions. In the freshwater forms, there is at least one distinctly visible contractile vacuole. The pseudopodia are lobopodia, and ordinarily both the ectoplasm and endoplasm are found in them. They are formed by streaming or fountain movements of the cytoplasm. In some members of this order, the formation of pseudopodia is eruptive or explosive, since the granules present in the endoplasm break through the border line between the two cytoplasmic layers and suddenly flow into the pseudopodia. Asexual reproduction is ordinarily by binary fission, although multiple fission may occasionally take place. Encystment is of common occurrence. Sexual reproduction, which has been reported in a few species, has not been confirmed.

The *Amoebina* inhabit all sorts of fresh, brackish, and salt waters. They are also found in moist soil and on ground covered with decaying leaves. Many are inhabitants of the digestive tract of various animals, and some are pathogenic to the hosts.

The taxonomic status of the group is highly uncertain and confusing, since their life-histories are mostly unknown and since numerous protozoans other than the members of this group often possess amoeboid stages. Forms such as *Rhizomastigina* (p. 263) may be considered as belonging to either the *Sarcodina* or the *Mastigophora*.

The order is subdivided into four families as follows:

- With amoeboid and flagellate stages.
- Family 1 *Dimastigamoebidae* (p. 344)
- Amoeboid stage only
- With one or more nuclei of one kind
- Free-living. Family 2 *Amoebidae* (p. 345)
- Parasitic. Family 3 *Endamoebidae* (p. 351)
- With a secondary nucleus. Family 4 *Paramoebidae* (p. 371)

Family 1 **Dimastigamoebidae** Wenyon

The members of the two genera placed in this family possess both amoeboid and flagellate phases (*diphasic*). In the former, the organism undergoes amoeboid movement by means of lobopodia and in the latter the body is more or less elongated. Binary fission seems to take place during the amoeboid phase only. Thus these are diphasic protozoans, in which the amoeboid stage predominates over the flagellate. The amoeboid phase resembles a 'limax' amoeba; under natural circumstances, it is often exceedingly difficult by observing the amoeboid stage only, to determine whether they belong to this family or the family Amoebidae.

FIG. 160. a-c, trophozoite, flagellate phase and cyst (all stained) of *Dimastigamoeba gruberi*, $\times 750$ (Alexeieff); d-f, similar stages of *D. bistadialis*, $\times 750$ (Kühn); g-j, trophozoite, flagellate phase, cyst and excystation of *Trimastigamoeba philippinensis* $\times 950$ (Whitmore).

Genus **Dimastigamoeba** Blochmann (*Naegleria* Alexeieff). Minute; flagellate stage with 2 flagella; amoeboid stage resembles Vahlkampfia (p. 350), with lobopodia; cytoplasm differentiated; vesicular nucleus with a large endosome; contractile vacuole conspicuous; food vacuoles contain bacteria; cysts uninucleate; free-living in stagnant water and often coprozoic.

D. gruberi (Schardinger) (Fig. 160, a-c). Amoeboid stage $10-50\mu$ long; cyst wall with several openings; flagellate stage $10-30\mu$ long; stagnant freshwater and often coprozoic.

D. bistadialis (Puschkarew) (Fig. 160, d-f). Similar in size; but cyst with a smoother wall.

Genus **Trimastigamoeba** Whitmore. Flagellate stage bears 3 flagella of nearly equal length; vesicular nucleus with a large endosome; amoeboid stage small, less than 20μ in diameter; uninucleate cysts with smooth wall; stagnant water. One species.

T. philippinensis W. (Fig. 160, *g-j*). Amoeboid stage 16–18 μ in diameter; oval cysts 13–14 μ by 8–12 μ ; flagellate stage 16–22 μ by 6–8 μ .

Family 2 Amoebidae Bronn

These amoebae do not have flagellate stage and are exclusively amoeboid (*monophasic*). They are free-living in fresh or salt water, in damp soil, moss, etc., and a few parasitic; 1, 2, or many nuclei; contractile vacuoles in freshwater forms; multiplication by binary or multiple fission or plasmotomy; encystment common.

Genus *Amoeba* Ehrenberg (*Proteus* Müller; *Amiba* Bory). Amoeboid; naked, in a few species there are indications that a delicate pellicle occurs; a single nucleus, vesicular or somewhat compact; contractile vacuoles; pseudopodia mainly lobopodia, never anastomosing with one another; some students have used the nuclear structure for specific differentiation, but unfortunately not always clear; holozoic; fresh, brackish or salt water. Numerous species.

A. proteus (Pallas) (Figs. 25; 32, *b, c*; 41, *f*; 43–45; 161, *a, b*). Up to 600 μ or longer in largest diameter; creeping with a few large lobopodia, showing longitudinal ridges; ectoplasm and endoplasm usually distinctly differentiated; typically uninucleate; nucleus discoidal but polymorphic; endoplasmic crystals truncate bipyramid, up to 4.5 μ long (Schaeffer); nuclear and cytosomic divisions show a distinct correlation (p. 143); fresh water.

A. discoides Schaeffer (Figs. 41, *g*; 161, *c*). About 400 μ long during locomotion; a few blunt, smooth pseudopodia; crystals abundant, truncate bipyramidal, about 2.5 μ long (Schaeffer); endoplasm with numerous coarse granules; fresh water.

A. dubia S. (Figs. 41, *h-l*; 161, *d*). About 400 μ long; numerous pseudopodia flattened and with smooth surface; crystals, few, large, up to 30 μ long and of various forms among which at least 4 types are said to be distinct (Schaeffer); contractile vacuole one or more; fresh water. Angerer (1942) studied the action of cupric chloride on the protoplasmic viscosity of this amoeba.

A. verrucosa Ehrenberg (Figs. 32, *a, d-h*; 42, *a*; 161, *e*). Ovoid in general outline with wart-like expansions; body surface usually wrinkled, with a definite pellicle; pseudopodia short, broad and blunt; nucleus ovoid, vesicular, with a large endosome; contractile vacuole; up to 200 μ in diameter; fresh water among algae.

A. striata Penard (Fig. 161, *f*). Somewhat similar to *A. verrucosa*, but small; body flattened; ovoid, narrowed and rounded posteriorly; nucleus vesicular; contractile vacuole comparatively large and often

not spherical; extremely delicate pellicle shows 3 or 4 fine longitudinal lines which appear and disappear with the movement of the body; $25-45\mu$ by $20-35\mu$; fresh water among vegetation.

A. guttula Dujardin (Fig. 161, *g*). Ovoid during locomotion, narrowed behind; often with a few minute, nipple-like dentations at

FIG. 161. a, b, *Amoeba proteus* (a, $\times 130$ (Schaeffer), b, cyst (Doflein)); c, *A. discoides*, $\times 130$ (Schaeffer); d, *A. dubia*, $\times 130$ (Schaeffer); e, *A. verrucosa*, $\times 200$ (Cash); f, *A. striata*, $\times 400$ (Penard); g, *A. guttula*, $\times 800$ (Penard); h, *A. limicola*, $\times 530$ (Penard).

the temporary posterior end; movement by wave-like expansions of ectoplasm; endoplasm granulated, with crystals; nucleus vesicular; a single contractile vacuole; $30-35\mu$ by $20-25\mu$; fresh water in vegetation.

A. limicola Rhumbler (Fig. 161, h). Somewhat similar to *A. guttula*; body more rounded; locomotion by eruption of cytoplasm through the body surface; $45-55\mu$ by 35μ ; nucleus vesicular; fresh water among vegetation.

FIG. 162. a, *Amoeba spumosa*, $\times 400$ (Penard); b, c, *A. vesperilio*, $\times 300$ (Penard); d-f, *A. gorgonia*, $\times 400$ (Penard); g, *A. radiosa*, $\times 500$ (Penard); h, *Dinamoeba mirabilis*, $\times 250$ (Leidy).

A. spumosa Gruber (Fig. 162, a). Somewhat fan-shaped; flattened; during locomotion broad pseudopodia with pointed end at

temporary anterior region; posterior region with nipple-like projections; a small number of striae become visible during movement, showing there is a very thin pellicle; endoplasm always vacuolated, the vacuoles varying in size (up to 30μ in diameter); vesicular nucleus with an endosome; $50\text{--}125\mu$ long during locomotion; fresh water.

A. vespertilio Penard (Fig. 162, *b, c.*) Pseudopodia conical, comparatively short, connected at base by web-like expansions of ectoplasm; endoplasm colorless, with numerous granules and food particles; a single vesicular nucleus with a large endosome; contractile vacuoles; $60\text{--}100\mu$ long; fresh water.

A. gorgonia P. (Fig. 162, *d-f*). Body globular when inactive with a variable number of radiating 'arms,' formed on all sides; locomotion by forming elongate pseudopodia, composed of both ectoplasm and endoplasm; nucleus, vesicular, with a large endosome; $40\text{--}50\mu$ in diameter; extended forms about 100μ long; fresh water among vegetation.

A. radiosa Ehrenberg (Fig. 162, *g*). Small, usually inactive; globular or oval in outline; with 3–10 radiating slender pseudopodia which vary in length and degree of rigidity; when pseudopods are withdrawn, the organism may be similar to *A. proteus* in general appearance; pseudopods straight, curved or spirally coiled; size varies, usually about 30μ in diameter, up to 120μ or more; fresh water.

Genus **Dinamoeba** Leidy. Essentially Amoeba, but the temporary posterior region of body with retractile papillae; body surface including pseudopods and papillae, bristling with minute spicules or motionless cils; often surrounded by a thick layer of delicate hyaline jelly, even during locomotion; fresh water.

D. mirabilis L. (Fig. 162, *h*). Oval to limaciform; spheroid when floating; pseudopodia numerous, conical; ectoplasm clear, usually with cils; endoplasm with food vacuoles, oil (?) spherules and large clear globules; nucleus and contractile vacuole obscure; spherical forms $64\text{--}160\mu$ in diameter; creeping forms $152\text{--}340\mu$ by $60\text{--}220\mu$; in sphagnum swamp.

Genus **Pelomyxa** Greeff. Large amoeboid organisms, ranging from 0.5 to 4 or 5 mm. in length when clavate and moving progressively; nuclei numerous, 100 to 1000 or more; many small contractile vacuoles; refringent bodies ("Glanzkörper") of various dimension and amount; with or without bacterial inclusions (which Penard and others consider as symbiotic); holozoic on plant or animal organisms; plasmotomy into 2 or more individuals; all in fresh water. Several species.

P. palustris G. (Fig. 163, *a*). Large; 2–3 mm. or larger in diameter;

with one broad pseudopodium by which the organism undergoes rolling movement; cytoplasm undifferentiated; numerous vacuoles and nuclei; various inclusions often color the body brown to black and make it appear opaque; symbiotic protophytan, *Cladophrix pelomyxae* Veley, occurs regularly; cysts with 2-3 envelopes (Stolc); feeds on plant matter; polysaprobic, in still stagnant water, creeping on the muddy bottom. Central Europe, Great Britain, North America.

FIG. 163. a, *Pelomyxa palustris*, $\times 130$ (Kühn); b, *P. villosa*, $\times 420$ (Leidy); c, *Vahlkampfia limax*, $\times 830$ (Kudo); d, *V. patuxent*, $\times 830$ (Hogue); e, f, *Acanthamoeba hyalina*, $\times 1170$ (Dobell); g, h, *A. castellanii*, $\times 1590$ (Hewitt).

P. villosa (Leidy) (Fig. 163, b). Similar to the last-named species, but somewhat smaller; with numerous short and papillary villi at posterior extremity; during locomotion, 120μ – 1.25 mm. long; in the ooze of freshwater bodies. Europe, North America.

P. carolinensis Wilson. Monopodial forms 1–5 mm. long; polypodial (feeding) forms 1–2 mm. in diameter; ectoplasm near the tips of expanding pseudopods; endoplasm contains up to 1000 or more nuclei which are circular in front view, 20μ in diameter, and ellipsoid in profile; fluid and food vacuoles, crystals, many contractile vacu-

oles; feeds on various Protozoa and also small invertebrates; may take 20 Paramecium within one food-cup; plasmotomy into 2-6 smaller individuals. North America (North Carolina (Wilson); Virginia (Kepner and Edwards); Tennessee and New Jersey (Schaeffer); Illinois (Kudo)) and Great Britain (McGuire).

Genus **Vahlkampfia** Chatton and Lalung-Bonnaire. Small amoebae; vesicular nucleus with a large endosome and peripheral chromatin; with polar caps during nuclear division; snail-like movement, with one broad pseudopodium; cysts with a perforated wall; fresh water or parasitic.

V. limax (Dujardin) (Fig. 163, *c*). 30-40 μ long; fresh water.

V. patuxent Hogue (Fig. 163, *d*). In the alimentary canal of the oyster; about 20 μ long during the first few days of artificial cultivation, but later reaching as long as 140 μ in diameter; ordinarily one large broad fan-shaped pseudopodium composed of the ectoplasm; in culture, pseudopodium-formation eruptive; holozoic on bacteria; multiplication by fission or budding; encystment rare; cysts uninucleate.

Genus **Hartmannella** Alexeieff. Small amoebae, with moderately or well-developed ectoplasm; vesicular nucleus with a large endosome; mitotic figure ellipsoidal or cylindrical, without polar caps. Cysts rounded; wall smooth or slightly wrinkled in one species. Several species. Volkonsky (1933) distinguishes four groups.

H. hyalina (Dangeard). 20-25 μ in diameter; ectoplasm well developed; endoplasm vacuolated; slender pseudopodia extend in different directions; Hartmann and Chagas observed a centriole in the endosome.

Genus **Acanthamoeba** Volkonsky. Small amoebae similar to *Hartmannella*; ectoplasm is not well developed; mitotic figure at the end of metaphase, a straight or concave spindle with sharply pointed poles. Cysts enveloped by two membranes, the outer envelope being highly wrinkled and mammillated. Several species.

A. castellanii (Douglas) (Fig. 163, *g, h*). In association with fungi and certain bacteria; Hewitt obtained the organism from agar cultures of sample soil taken from among the roots of white clover; co-existing with yeast-like fungi, *Flavobacterium trifolium* and *Rhizobium* sp.; 12-30 μ in diameter; some cysts are said to remain viable at 37°C. for 6 days.

A. hyalina (Dobell and O'Connor) (Fig. 163, *e, f*). According to Volkonsky, the organism described by Dobell and O'Connor as *Hartmannella hyalina*, is transferred to this genus. Small amoeba; 9-17 μ in diameter when rounded; a single contractile vacuole; binary

fission; mitotic figure a sharply pointed spindle. Cysts spherical; 10–15 μ in diameter; with a smooth inner and a much wrinkled outer wall; easily cultivated from old faeces of man and animals; also in soil and fresh water.

Genus **Sappinia** Dangeard. With two closely associated nuclei.

S. diploidea (Hartmann and Nägler). Coprozoic in the faeces of different animals; pseudopodia short, broad, and few; highly vacuolated endoplasm with 2 nuclei, food vacuoles, and a contractile vacuole; surface sometimes wrinkled; the nuclei divide simultaneously; during encystment, two individuals come together and secrete a common cyst wall; 2 nuclei fuse so that each individual possesses a single nucleus; finally cytoplasmic masses unite into one; each nucleus gives off reduction bodies (?) which degenerate; 2 nuclei now come in contact without fusion, thus producing a binucleate cyst (Hartmann and Nägler).

Family 3 Endamoebidae Calkins

Exclusively parasitic amoebae; the vegetative form is relatively small and occurs mostly in the alimentary canal of the hosts; con-

FIG. 164. Diagrams showing the nuclei of the trophozoites of 5 genera of parasitic amoebae. a, Endamoeba; b, Entamoeba; c, Iodamoeba; d, Endolimax; e, Dientamoeba.

tractile vacuoles absent, except in *Hydramoeba*; multiplication by binary fission; encystment common. The generic differentiation is based upon the morphological characteristics of the nucleus. Summary No. 99 of 'Opinions Rendered' by the International Commission of Zoological Nomenclature (1928) holds that *Entamoeba* is a synonym of *Endamoeba*; in the present work, however, *Endamoeba* and *Entamoeba* are separated, since the two groups of species placed under them possess different nuclear characteristics (Fig. 164) and since it is not advisable to establish another generic name in place of *Entamoeba* which has been so frequently and widely used throughout the world.

Genus **Endamoeba** Leidy (1879). Nucleus spheroidal to ovoid;

membrane thick; in life, filled with numerous granules of uniform dimensions along its peripheral region; upon fixation, a fine chromatic network becomes noticeable in their stead; central portion coarsely reticulated; with several endosomes between the two zones (Fig. 164, *a*); in some, cytoplasm becomes prominently striated during locomotion; in the intestine of invertebrates.

FIG. 165. *Endamoeba blattae*. a-c, trophozoites in life, $\times 530$; d, a stained binucleate amoeba; e, f, stained and fresh cysts, $\times 700$ (Kudo).

E. blattae (Bütschli) (Figs. 51; 165). In the colon of cockroaches; $10-150\mu$ in diameter; rounded individuals with broad pseudopodia, show a distinct differentiation of cytoplasm; elongated forms with a few pseudopodia, show ectoplasm only at the extremities of the pseudopods; endoplasm of actively motile trophozoites shows a distinct striation, a condition not seen in other amoebae; fluid-filled vacuoles occur in large numbers; amoebae feed on starch grains, yeast cells, bacteria and protozoans, all of which coexist in the host organ; cysts, $20-50\mu$ in diameter, commonly seen in the colon contents, with often more than 60 nuclei. The life-cycle of this amoeba

is still unknown. Mercier (1909) held that when the multinucleate cysts gain entrance to the host intestine through its mouth, each of the cyst-nuclei becomes the center of a gamete; when the cyst-membrane ruptures, the gametes are set free and anisogamy takes place, resulting in formation of numerous zygotes which develop into the habitual trophozoites. Among the more recent investigators, Morris (1936) is inclined to think that sexual reproduction brings about 'zygotic adults.' Meglitsch (1940) made an extensive cytological study of this amoeba.

FIG. 166. a, *Entamoeba majestas*, $\times 420$ (Kirby); b, *E. simulans*, $\times 420$ (Kirby); c, *Entamoeba brasiliensis* in *Zelleriella*, $\times 290$ (Stabler and Chen).

E. thomsoni Lucas. In colon of the cockroaches; $7-30\mu$ in diameter; very adhesive; 1-3 chromatin blocks on the nuclear membrane; cysts $8-16\mu$ in diameter, with 1-4 nuclei.

E. disparata Kirby. In colon of *Microtermes hispaniolae*; $20-40\mu$ long; active; xylophagous.

E. majestas K. (Fig. 166, a). In the same habitat; $65-165\mu$ in diameter; many short pseudopodia; cytoplasm filled with food particles.

E. simulans K. (Fig. 166, b). In the gut of *Microtermes panamaensis*; $50-150\mu$ in diameter.

E. sabulosa K. In the same habitat; small $19-35\mu$ in diameter.

Four additional species have recently been described by Henderson from the colon of *Cubitermes* sp. of Africa. They are *E. pellucida*, *E. granosa*, *E. lutea*, and *E. suggrandis*.

Genus *Entamoeba* Casagrandi and Barbagallo (1895). Nucleus vesicular, with a comparatively small endosome, located in or near the center and with varying number of peripheral chromatin

granules attached to the nuclear membrane (Fig. 164, *b*). It was established by the two Italian authors who were unaware of the existence of the genus *Entamoeba* (p. 351). Numerous species in vertebrates and invertebrates.

E. histolytica Schaudinn (Figs. 167; 168). The trophozoite is a very active amoeba and measures about 15–35 μ in diameter; cytoplasm

FIG. 167. *Entamoeba histolytica*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, a living trophozoite; 2–4, stained trophozoites; 5, a fresh cyst; 6–9, stained cysts.

usually well differentiated; eruptive formation of large lobopodia, composed largely of ectoplasm; when fresh, active monopodial progressive movement; the vesicular nucleus appears in life as a ring, difficult to recognize; food vacuoles contain erythrocytes, tissue cell fragments, leucocytes, etc.; stained nucleus shows a membrane, peripheral chromatin granules, a centrally located small endosome, and an indistinct network with a few scattered chromatin granules. The trophozoite multiplies by binary fission. The amoeba lives normally in the tissues of the intestinal wall of man and brings about characteristic ulceration of the colon which is often accompanied by symptoms of *amoebic dysentery*. Through the portal vein,

the amoeba may invade the liver in which it produces abscess, or other organs such as lung, brain, testis, etc. The infection in these organs is referred to as *amoebiasis*.

Under certain circumstances not well understood, the amoebae remain small after division. Such amoebae are sluggish and known as the precystic forms. The **precystic amoeba** secretes presently a resistant wall and becomes encysted. The highly refractile cyst is spherical and measures 5–20 μ in diameter. At first it contains a single nucleus which divides twice. The mature **cyst** contains four nuclei. In addition the cyst contains diffused glycogen and elongated refractile rod-like bodies with rounded extremities which stain deeply with haematoxylin (hence called *chromatoid bodies*). These inclusions are absorbed and disappear as the cyst matures. No further changes take place in the cyst as long as it remains outside the host's intestine. The trophozoites are found in dysenteric or diarrhoeic faeces, but formed faeces usually contain cysts only.

The life-cycle of *Entamoeba histolytica* in human host is unknown. The amoeba has, however, been cultivated in vitro by numerous investigators since the first successful cultivation by Boeck and Drbohlav (1924) (p. 717). The excystment of cysts and metacystic development have also been observed and studied especially by Dobell (1928) and Cleveland and Sanders (1930) in cultures. Snyder and Meleney (1941) found that bacteria-free cysts usually excyst when suspended in various media with living bacteria and in the absence of bacteria, excystment was observed only in the presence of the reducing agents, cysteine or neutralized thioglycollic acid or under conditions of reduced oxygen tension. According to Dobell, in the process of excystation, a single tetranucleate amoeba emerges from a cyst through a minute pore in the cyst wall. The tetranucleate metacystic amoeba produces a new generation of trophozoites by a complicated series of nuclear and cytoplasmic divisions (Fig. 168) which result in production of eight uninucleate amoebulae. These amoebulae are young trophozoites which grow into larger ones. No sexual phenomena have been observed during these changes. It is supposed that when viable cysts reach the lower portion of the small intestine or the colon, the changes stated above take place in the lumen and the young uninucleate amoebulae enter the intestinal wall, bringing about an infection.

While the description of *Entamoeba histolytica* given above apply in general, diversities in dimensions of trophozoites and cysts, and in pathogenicity in human host as well as in experimental animals have been reported. A number of observers are inclined to think

that there are several varieties or races of this amoeba, as has already been mentioned (p. 179).

Entamoeba histolytica, commonly known as “the dysentery amoeba,” was first definitely recognized by Lösch in Russia in 1875. It is now known to be widely distributed in tropical, subtropical and temperate regions alike, although it is more prevalent in warmer regions. The incidence of infection depends mainly on the sanitary

FIG. 168. Diagram showing excystation and a common way by which a metacystic amoeba of *Entamoeba histolytica* divides into 8 uninucleate amoebulae (Dobell).

conditions of the community, since the organism is voided from host in faeces. Faecal examinations which have been carried on by numerous investigators in different countries of the world, reveal that the incidence of infection is as high as over 50 per cent in some areas. According to Craig (1934), 49,336 examinations made by many observers in various parts of the United States show that the infec-

tion rate varied from 0.2 to 53 per cent, averaging 11.6 per cent, which justifies Craig's (1926) earlier estimate that about 10 per cent of the general population harbor this protozoan. An acute infection by *E. histolytica* is accompanied by dysentery, while in chronic cases or in convalescence, the host may void infectious cysts without suffering from the infection himself. Such a person is known as a **cyst-carrier** or **-passer**.

The trophozoite if voided in faeces perish in a comparatively short time. The dissemination of infection is exclusively carried on by the cyst. Viable cysts may be transmitted (1) by contamination of food through contact with contaminated water or through unsanitary habit of food handlers who are cyst-carriers; (2) by droppings of flies and cockroaches which, as noted below, contain viable cysts for a comparatively long time after feeding on faeces containing cysts and by soiled appendages of these insects which may directly transfer the cysts to food by walking on it; (3) by contaminated water in which the cysts live considerably longer than in faeces (p. 358); and (4) by cysts originating in faeces voided by animals such as dogs (in which spontaneous infections by apparently this amoeba have been reported to occur), rats, monkeys, etc.

The seriousness of water-borne infection in crowded areas is easily realized when one recalls the outbreak (some 1400 cases) of amoebic dysentery and amoebiasis which originated in Chicago in 1933, where defective plumbing in certain establishments contaminated the water system with the cysts of *Entamoeba histolytica* (Bundesen et al., 1936) and the development of some 100 cases of amoebic dysentery among firemen who drank the water contaminated by cyst-containing faeces in connection with the 1934 fire of the Union Stockyards in Chicago (Hardy and Spector).

The cysts remain viable for a considerable length of time outside the human intestine, if environmental conditions are favorable. Since information regarding the viability and longevity of the cyst is highly important from the epidemiological standpoint, many papers have dealt with it. In testing the viability of the cyst, the following two tests have been used by the majority of investigators.

(a) Eosin-staining test. Kuenen and Swellengrebel (1913) first used a dilute solution of eosin (1:1000). It has since been used by Wenyon and O'Connor, Root, Boeck, and many others. Solutions used vary from 1:10,000 (Root) to 1:100 (Boeck). A small amount of fresh cyst-containing material and a drop of eosin solution are mixed on a slide, then dead cysts will appear stained reddish under the microscope, while living cysts remain unstained. Whether or not

unstained cysts might be dead or uninfecious is unknown. But as Wenyon and O'Connor wrote, "if we accept the eosin test as a criterion and regard all unstained cysts as living, the error in judgment will be on the safe side." Root found neutral red in 1:10,000 dilution to give a slightly larger proportion of stained cysts than eosin. Frye and Meleney's (1936) comparative study leads one to look upon this method as a fairly dependable one.

(b) Cultivation test. Improved cultural technique now brings about easily excystment of viable cysts in a proper culture medium. For example, Yorke and Adams (1926) obtained in 24 hours "a plentiful growth of vegetative forms" from cysts in Locke-egg-serum medium (p. 717). Snyder and Meleney (1941) note recently that the excystation does not take place in various culture media unless living bacteria were added or oxygen concentration of the media was decreased. Animal infection method has not been used much, as experimental animals (cats) show individual difference in susceptibility. Some of the published results are summarized below. The testing method used is indicated by: *a* for eosin test or *b* for cultivation test and is given after the name of the investigators.

1. Cysts in faeces kept in a covered container. All cysts disappeared in 3 days at 37°C.; at 27–30°C. half of the cysts found dead by the 4th and all dead by the 9th day (Kuenen and Swellengrebel; *a*). Alive for 3 weeks (Thomson and Thomson; *a*). Remain unchanged for several weeks if kept "cool and moist" (Dobell). All dead within 10 days at 16–20° or 0°C. (Yorke and Adams; *b*).

2. Cysts kept in water emulsion. All alive on the 9th, but almost all dead on the 13th day (Kuenen and Swellengrebel; *a*). Viable for 25 days (Thomson and Thomson; *a*). Cysts in running water for 15 days, excysted in pancreatic juice (Penfield, Woodcock and Drew). Viable for 30 days (Wenyon and O'Connor; *a*); for 5 weeks (Dobell); for 153 days (Boeck; *a*). Alive for 10 and 17 days at 16–20° and 0°C. respectively (Yorke and Adams; *b*); for 3, 10, 30, and 90 days at 30°, 20°, 10° and 0°C. respectively (Chang and Fair; *b*).

3. Cysts in relation to high temperatures. Cysts are killed at 68°C. in 5 minutes (Boeck; *a*); at 50°C. in 5 minutes (Yorke and Adams; *b*). Dipping in boiling water for 5–10 seconds kills the cysts (Kessel; *a*).

4. Cysts in relation to desiccation. Desiccation kills cysts instantly (Kuenen and Swellengrebel; Wenyon and O'Connor, Dobell, etc.). Therefore, the cysts carried in dust are most probably not viable under ordinary circumstances.

5. Cysts in relation to chemicals.

Hg₂Cl. 0.1% solution kills cysts in 4 hours (Kuenen and Swellengrebel; *a*); kills readily (Lin; *b*). 1:2500 solution kills cysts in 30 minutes at 20–25°C. (Yorke and Adams; *b*).

Creolin. 1:250 solution kills cysts in 5–10 minutes (Kuenen and Swellengrebel; *a*).

Alcohol. 50% alcohol kills cysts immediately (Kuenen and Swellengrebel; *a*); in one hour (Kessel; *a*).

Formaldehyde. Cysts treated in 1% solution for 4 hours were apparently dead, though not stained with eosin (Wenyon and O'Connor). 0.5% solution kills cysts in 30 minutes at 20–25° or 37°C. (Yorke and Adams; *b*).

Cresol. 1:20, 1:30, and 1:100, killed the cysts immediately, in one minute and in 30 minutes respectively (Wenyon and O'Connor; *a*).

Phenol. 1:40 and 1:100 killed cysts in 15 minutes and 7 hours respectively (Wenyon and O'Connor; *a*). 1% solution of phenol or lysol kills cysts in 30 minutes at 20–25° or 37°C. (Yorke and Adams; *b*).

HCl. 7.5% solution at 20–25°C. and 5% at 37°C. kill the cysts in 30 minutes (Yorke and Adams; *b*).

NaOH. 2.5% solution kills cysts in 30 minutes at 20–25° or 37°C. (Yorke and Adams; *b*).

Chlorine. 1:10,000 solution did not have any effect on cysts after several hours (Wenyon and O'Connor; *a*). 0.2% and 0.5% solutions kill the cysts in 7 days and 72 hours respectively (Kessel; *a*). 0.5% and 1% solutions kill the cysts in 36–48 and 12–24 hours respectively (Lin; *b*). 1/64 of a saturated solution of chlorine (about 0.7 weight %) at 20–25°C. and 1/320 solution at 37°C. killed the cysts in 30 minutes (Yorke and Adams; *b*). Thus the cysts of *E. histolytica* are resistant to chlorinated water far above the concentration which is used ordinarily in water treatment.

Potassium permanganate. 2% solution kills the cysts in 3 days (Kessel; *a*). 1:500 solution kills cysts in 24–48 hours (Lin; *b*). 1% solution does not kill cysts at 20–25° or 37°C. in 30 minutes (Yorke and Adams; *b*).

Emetin hydrochloride and yatren. 5% solutions of the two drugs did not have any effects upon cysts at 20–25° or 37°C. in 30 minutes (Yorke and Adams; *b*).

Table 8.—Differential diagnosis of the intestinal amoebae of man

	<i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>	<i>Entamoeba coli</i>	<i>Iodamoeba bitschlii</i>	<i>Endolimax nana</i>	<i>Dientamoeba fragilis</i>
Trophozoite					
1. Living specimens					
a. Diameter	15-35 μ	15-40 μ	6-25 μ	6-18 μ	4-18 μ
b. Movement	Active progressive movement; eruptive formation of pseudopodia	Less active amoeboid movement	Less active amoeboid movement	Progressive movement	Progressive movement
c. Cytoplasm	Hyaline; erythrocytes, tissue cells, taken in as food	Granulated; bacteria, yeasts, faecal debris in food vacuoles	Granulated; bacteria in food vacuoles	Hyaline; bacteria in food vacuoles	Hyaline; bacteria in food vacuoles
d. Nucleus	Faintly visible ring	Ring of coarse granules	Faintly seen	Rarely seen	Faintly seen
2. Stained specimens					
a. Nucleus	Fig. 167, 2-4	Fig. 169, 2-5	Fig. 171, 2-5	Fig. 172, 2-4	Fig. 173, 3-5
b. Inclusions	Erythrocytes, fragments of tissue cells	Bacteria, faecal debris, etc.	Bacteria	Bacteria	Bacteria
Cyst					
1. Living specimens					
a. Form	Spherical; circular in outline	Circular, often oval	Of various forms	Often oval to ellipsoid	Unseen
b. Diameter	5-20 μ	10-30 μ	6-15 μ	5-12 μ	—
2. Lugol-treated specimens	Cytoplasm greenish yellow; glycogen diffused; 1, 2, or 4 nuclei	Cytoplasm yellowish brown; glycogen body often big; 1, 2, 4, or 8 nuclei	Cytoplasm yellowish; large glycogen body sharply outlined; 1 nucleus	Cytoplasm greenish yellow; glycogen scanty, diffused; 1, 2, or 4 nuclei	—
3. Stained specimens	1, 2, or 4 nuclei; chromatoid bodies with rounded ends	1, 2, 4, or 8 nuclei; chromatoid bodies few, acicular or irregular with pointed ends.	One nucleus; conspicuous glycogen vacuole; no chromatoid body	1, 2, or 4 nuclei; chromatoid bodies very small if present	—

6. Cysts in relation to passage through the intestine of insects. Wenyon and O'Connor found that the cysts of *E. histolytica* survived as long as 24 hours in the intestines of flies, *Musca domestica*, *Calliphora*, and *Lucilia*, and living cysts were voided for 16 hours after feeding on faecal material containing cysts. Roubaud using *Musca domestica*, found also unaltered cysts for over 24 hours (but rarely after 40 hours) after taking the cysts in its gut, and if a fly drowned in water, the cysts remained viable for about a week. Root (1921) using *Musca domestica*, *Calliphora erythrocephala* (and *Fannia canicularis*, *Lucilia caesar*, and *Chrysomya macellaria*) found that about half the cysts were dead after 15 hours and last living cysts were found after 49 hours in the intestines of these flies after feeding on cyst-containing material, and that when the flies which ingested cysts were drowned in water, about half the cysts were found dead in 3 days and last living cysts were noticed on the 7th day. Frye and Meleney (1932) found cysts in the intestines of flies which were caught in 4 of 12 houses where infected subjects lived.

Macfie (1922) reported that the cysts of *Entamoeba histolytica* he observed in the intestine of *Periplaneta americana* appeared unharmed. Tejera (1926) reports successful experimental infection in two kittens that were fed on the droppings of cockroaches (sp.?) caught in a kitchen, which contained cysts resembling those of *E. histolytica*. Frye and Meleney (1936) observed that the cysts passed through the intestine of *Periplaneta americana* in as early as 10–12 hours and remained in the intestine for as long as 72 hours, after feeding on experimental material. Cysts which stayed in the cockroach intestine for 48 hours gave good cultures of trophozoites in egg-horse-serum-Ringer medium.

In addition to *E. histolytica*, there are now known four other intestinal amoebae living in man. They are *E. coli*, *Endolimax nana*, *Iodamoeba bütschlii* and *Dientamoeba fragilis*. In Table 8 are given the characteristics necessary for distinguishing *E. histolytica* from the other four amoebae.

E. coli (Grassi) (Fig. 169). The trophozoite measures 15–40 μ in diameter; average individuals 20–35 μ ; cytoplasm not well differentiated; movement sluggish; endoplasm granulated, contains microorganisms and faecal debris of various sizes in food vacuoles; erythrocytes are not ingested, though in a few cases (Tyzzer and Geiman) and in culture (Dobell, etc.), they may be taken in as food particles; nucleus, 5–8 μ in diameter, seen in vivo; compared with *E. histolytica*, the endosome is somewhat large (about 1 μ in diameter) and located eccentrically; peripheral chromatin granules more conspicuous. The

precystic form, 8–20 μ in diameter, resembles that of *E. histolytica*. Separation of the two species of amoebae by this stage is ordinarily impossible.

The cyst is spherical or often ovoid, highly refractile; 10–30 μ in diameter; immature cyst contains 1, 2 or 4 nuclei, one or more large glycogen bodies with distinct outlines, but comparatively small number of acicular, filamentous or irregular chromatoid bodies with

FIG. 169. *Entamoeba coli*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, a living amoeba; 2–5, stained trophozoites; 3, an amoeba infected by *Sphaerita*; 6, a precystic amoeba; 7, a fresh cyst; 8, a stained young cyst with a large glycogen vacuole; 9, a stained mature cyst.

sharply pointed extremities; when mature the cyst contains 8 nuclei and a few or no chromatoid bodies. The trophozoites and small number of cysts occur in diarrhoeic or semiformed faeces and the formed faeces contain cysts only.

This amoeba lives in the lumen of the colon and does not enter the tissues of the wall. As noted above, it has been observed in a few instances to ingest erythrocytes, but there is no evidence to show that it takes them in from living tissues. This amoeba is therefore considered as a commensal. The abundant occurrence of the trophozoite in diarrhoeic faeces is to be looked upon as a result and not the cause of the intestinal disturbance. This amoeba is of common occurrence and widely distributed throughout the world.

Nothing is known about its life-cycle in the human intestine. Cultivation of cysts in vitro indicates, according to Dobell (1938), the following changes: The cyst content usually emerges as a single multinucleate amoeba through a large opening in the cyst wall. Prior to or during the emergence, the amoeba may divide. Normal mature cysts "frequently lose" 1-4 of their original 8 nuclei before germination, thus becoming "infranucleate" (with 4-7 nuclei). Unlike in *E. histolytica*, there is no nuclear division in the metacystic stages. By a series of binary divisions with random nuclear distribu-

FIG. 170. *Entamoeba gingivalis*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, 2, living amoebae; 3-7 stained amoebae.

tion, uninucleate amoebulae are finally produced. These are young amoebae which develop into large trophozoites. Here also, there is no sexual phenomenon in the life-cycle.

E. gingivalis (Gros) (*E. buccalis* Prowazek) (Fig. 170). This amoeba lives in carious teeth, in tartar and debris accumulated around the roots of teeth, and in abscesses of gums, tonsils, etc. The trophozoite is as active as that of *E. histolytica*; 8-30 μ (average 10-20 μ) in diameter; cytoplasm well differentiated; monopodial progressive movement in some individuals; endoplasm hyaline, but vacuolated, and contains ordinarily a large number of pale greenish bodies (which are probably nuclei of leucocytes, pus cells or other degenerating host cells) and bacteria in food vacuoles; nucleus, 2-4 μ in diameter, appears as a ring; when stained it shows a small central endosome and small peripheral chromatin granules closely attached to the membrane. Stabler (1940) observed 5 chromosomes during

binary division. Encysted forms have not been observed in this amoeba.

E. gingivalis is the very first parasitic amoeba that has become known to man. Gros (1849) found it in Russia in the tartar on the surface of the teeth. Some observers maintain that this amoeba is the cause of pyorrhoea alveolaris, but evidence for such an assumption seems to be still lacking. It has been found in the healthy gums and even in false teeth (Lynch). Therefore, it is generally considered as a commensal. It is widely distributed and of common occurrence.

In the absence of the encysted stage, it is supposed that the organism is transmitted in trophic forms. According to Koch (1927) who studied the effects of desiccation and temperatures upon the amoeba in culture, the amoeba is killed at 0°C. in 18 hours, at 5°C. in 24 hours, at 10°C. in 48 hours, at 45°C. in 20 minutes, at 50°C. in 15 minutes, and at 55°C. in 2 minutes. At 40°C., the survival is said to be for an indefinite length of time. Complete desiccation of the culture medium or immersion in water at 60°C. kills the amoeba. She considered that *E. gingivalis* may be disseminated both by direct contact and by intermediate contaminated articles.

E. gedoelsti Hsiung (*E. intestinalis* (Gedoelst)). In colon and caecum of horse; 6–13 μ by 6–11 μ ; endosome eccentric; bacteria-feeder.

E. equi Fantham. 40–50 μ by 23–29 μ ; nucleus oval; cysts tetranucleate, 15–24 μ in diameter; seen in the faeces of horse; Fantham reports that the endoplasm contained erythrocytes.

E. bovis Liebetanz. 5–20 μ in diameter; in stomach of cattle.

E. ovis Swellengrebel. Cyst uninucleate; in intestine of sheep.

E. caprae Fantham. In goat intestine.

E. polecki (Prowazek). In colon of pigs; 10–12 μ in diameter; cyst uninucleate.

E. deblickei Nieschulz. 5–10 μ in diameter; cyst uninucleate; in the intestine of pig. Hoare (1940) found it in goat also.

E. venaticum Darling. In colon of dog; similar to *E. histolytica*; since the dog is experimentally infected with the latter, this amoeba discovered from spontaneous amebic dysentery cases of dogs, in one of which were noted abscesses of liver, is probably *E. histolytica*.

E. cuniculi Brug. Similar to *E. coli* in both trophic and encysted stages; in intestine of rabbits.

E. cobayae Walker (*E. caviae* Chatton). Similar to *E. coli*; in intestine of guinea-pigs.

E. muris (Grassi). Similar to *E. coli*; in intestine of rats and mice.

E. gallinarum Tyzzer. In fowl's intestine; cysts octonucleate.

E. testudinis Hartmann. In intestine of turtles, *Testudo graeca*, *T. argentina*, *T. calcarata* and *Terrapene carolina*.

E. barreti Taliaferro and Holmes. In colon of snapping turtle, *Chelydra serpentina*.

E. terrapinae Sanders and Cleveland. Trophozoites 10–15 μ long; cysts 8–14 μ in diameter, tetranucleate when mature; in colon of *Chrysemys elegans*.

E. invadens Rodhain. Resembles *E. histolytica*. Trophozoites measure 15.9 μ in average diameter (9.2–38.6 μ by 9–30 μ); active locomotion; feed on leucocytes, liver cells, epithelial cell debris, bacteria, etc.; nucleus similar to that of *E. histolytica*. Cysts 13.9 μ (11–20 μ) in diameter; 1–4 nuclei; glycogen vacuole; chromatoid bodies acicular, rod-like or cylindrical.

Hosts include various reptiles: *Varanus salvator*, *V. varius*, *Tiliqua scincoides*, *Pseudoboa clelia*, *Lampropeltis getulus*, *Ancistrodon mokasen*, *Natrix rhombifer*, *N. sipedon*, *N. sipedon sipedon*, *N. cyclopion*, *Python sebae*, *Rachidelus brazili*, etc. Zoological Gardens in Philadelphia (Geiman and Ratcliffe) and Antwerp (Rodhain).

The amoeba produces lesions in the stomach, duodenum, ileum, colon and liver in host animals. Time for excystation in host's intestine 5–14 hours; time for metacystic development in host's intestine 7–24 hours; optimum temperature for cultural growth 20–30°C. (Geiman and Ratcliffe, 1936). Ratcliffe and Geiman (1938) observed spontaneous and experimental amoebiasis in 32 reptiles.

E. ranarum (Grassi). In colon of various species of frogs; resembles *E. histolytica*; 10–50 μ in diameter; cysts are usually tetranucleate, but some contain as many as 16 nuclei; amoebic abscess of the liver was reported in one frog.

E. minchini Mackinnon. In gut of tipulid larvae; 5–30 μ in diameter; cyst nuclei up to 10 in number.

E. apis Fantham and Porter. In *Apis mellifica*; similar to *E. coli*.

E. brasiliensis (Carini) (*Brumptina brasiliensis* C.) (Fig. 166, c). In the cytoplasm of many species of Protociliata; trophozoites 5.3–14.3 μ in diameter; cysts about 9.4 μ in diameter, uninucleate; no effect upon host ciliates even in case of heavy infection (Stabler and Chen, 1936). Carini and Reichenow (1935): trophozoites 8–14 μ in diameter; cysts 8–12 μ ; either identical with *E. ranarum* or a race derived from it.

Genus *Iodamoeba* Dobell. Vesicular nucleus, with a large endosome rich in chromatin, a layer of globules which surrounds the endosome and do not stain deeply, and achromatic strands between the endosome and membrane (Fig. 164, c); cysts ordinarily uninu-

cleate, contain a large glycogenous vacuole which stains conspicuously with iodine; in intestine of man or mammals.

I. bütschlii (Prowazek) (*I. williamsi* P.) (Fig. 171). The trophozoite is 6–25 μ (average 8–15 μ) in diameter; fairly active with progressive movement, when fresh; cytoplasm not well differentiated; endoplasm granulated, contains bacteria and yeasts in food vacuoles; the nucleus (3–4 μ in diameter) visible in vivo; the large endosome about $\frac{1}{2}$ the diameter of nucleus, surrounded by small spherules.

FIG. 171. *Iodamoeba bütschlii*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, a living amoeba; 2–5, stained trophozoites; 4, 5, somewhat degenerating trophozoites; 6, a fresh cyst; 7–10, stained cysts.

The cysts are spherical, ovoid, ellipsoid, triangular, pyriform or square; rounded cysts measure about 6–15 μ in the largest diameter; a large glycogen body which becomes conspicuously stained with Lugol's solution (hence formerly called "iodine cysts") persists; nucleus with a large, usually eccentric endosome.

The trophozoites and cysts are ordinarily present in diarrhoeic faeces, while the formed faeces contain cysts only. This amoeba apparently lives in the lumen of the colon and does not seem to attack host's tissues. It is recognized as a commensal. It does not appear to be as common as the other intestinal amoebae that have already been described above.

I. suis O'Connor. In colon of pig; widely distributed; indistinguishable from *I. bütschlii*; it is considered by some that pigs are probably reservoir host of *I. bütschlii*.

Genus **Endolimax** Kuenen and Swellengrebel. Small; vesicular

nucleus with a comparatively large irregularly shaped endosome, composed of chromatin granules embedded in an achromatic ground mass and several achromatic threads connecting the endosome with membrane (Fig. 164, *d*); commensal in hindgut in man and animals. Several species.

E. nana (Wenyon and O'Connor) (Fig. 172). The trophozoite measures 6–15 μ in diameter; fairly active monopodial movement by forming a broad pseudopodium; when stationary pseudopodia are formed at different points; endoplasm is granulated and contains bacteria as food particles; the vesicular nucleus, 1.5–3 μ in diameter, is composed of a delicate membrane with a few chromatin granules, and a large irregularly shaped endosome.

FIG. 172. *Endolimax nana*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, a living amoeba; 2–4, stained amoebae; 5, a fresh cyst; 6, a stained cyst.

The cyst is usually ovoid; young cyst contains 1 or 2 nuclei; mature cyst with 4 nuclei; indistinctly outlined glycogen body may be present while immature; dimensions 5–12 μ (majority 7–10 μ) in diameter.

The trophozoites are found in diarrhoeic or semifluid faeces together with the cysts, and formed faeces contain cysts only. This amoeba is coelozoic in the lumen of the upper portion of colon and is considered as a commensal.

E. gregariniformis (Tyzzer). In caecum of fowls; 4–12 μ in diameter; cysts uninucleate.

E. ranarum Epstein and Ilovaisky. In colon of frogs; cyst octonucleate, up to 25 μ in diameter.

E. blattae Lucas. In colon of cockroaches; 3–15 μ long; cyst with more than one nucleus.

Genus **Dientamoeba** Jepps and Dobell. Small amoeba; number of binucleate trophozoites often greater than that of uninucleate forms; nuclear membrane delicate; endosome consists of several chromatin granules embedded in plasmosomic substances and connected with the membrane by delicate strands (Fig. 164, *e*); in colon of man.

D. fragilis J. and D. (Fig. 173). The trophozoite is actively amoeboid; 4–18 μ (average 5–12 μ) in diameter; progressive movement; cytoplasm well differentiated; endoplasm granulated contains bacteria in food vacuoles; nucleus only faintly visible; 1 or 2 nuclei, the ratio is variable; in some material binucleate forms may be 80% or more, while in others uninucleate forms may predominate; nucleus is made up of a delicate membrane and a large endosome (more than one-half the diameter of nucleus) in which are embedded 4–8 chromatin granules along the periphery. According to Dobell (1940), the binucleate condition represents an arrested telophase stage of mitosis and the chromatin granules are in reality chromosomes, probably 6 in number. Comparison with *Histomonas meleagridis* (p. 266) led this author to think that this amoeba may be an aberrant flagellate closely related to *Histomonas*.

FIG. 173. *Dientamoeba fragilis*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, 2, living trophozoites; 3, a stained uninucleate amoeba; 4, 5, stained binucleate individuals.

Encysted stage has not been observed. Degenerating trophozoites often develop vacuoles which coalesce into a large one and the organisms may then resemble *Blastocystis hominis* (p. 721) which is very common in faeces. Transmission may be carried on by trophozoites. According to Wenrich (1940), this amoeba if left in the faeces remains alive up to 48 hours at room temperature, but disappears probably by disintegration in 2 hours at 3.5°C. Since all attempts to bring about experimental infection by mouth or by rectum failed, Dobell considered that the amoeba may be transmitted from host to host in the eggs of nematodes such as *Trichuris* or *Ascaris*, as in the case of *Histomonas* (p. 266).

The amoeba inhabits the lumen of the colon. There is no indication that it is histozoic or cytozoic. Some workers attribute certain intestinal disturbances to this amoeba, but no definite evidence for its pathogenicity is available at present. It seems to be widely distributed, but not as common as the other intestinal amoebae mentioned above, although in some areas it appears to be common.

Genus **Dobellina** Bishop and Tate. Trophozoite: small amoeba; ectoplasm and endoplasm differentiated; usually monopodial;

nucleus one to many; nucleus with a large central endosome and an achromatic nuclear membrane; nuclear divisions mitotic and simultaneous; no solid food vacuoles; no contractile vacuole; with refringent granules. Cysts: spherical; thin-walled; devoid of glycogen and of chromatoid bodies; 2 or more nuclei; parasitic. One species.

FIG. 174. a-f, *Dobellina mesnili* (Bishop and Tate): a, b, uni- and multi-nucleated stained amoebae, $\times 2200$; c, a trinucleate (stained) amoeba in which the nuclei are dividing, $\times 1760$; d-f, stained cysts with 2, 4, and 6 nuclei, $\times 1760$ (Bishop and Tate); g, h, stained trophozoite and cyst of *Schizamoeba salmonis*, $\times 1070$ (Davis); i, j, *Hydramoeba hydroxena* (Reynolds and Looper): i, a heavily infected *Hydra oligactis*, $\times 95$; j, part of a section of an infected host hydra, showing a trophozoite feeding on ectodermal cells, $\times 470$; k, a stained individual of *Paramoeba pigmentifera*, with its nucleus in the center, $\times 800$ (Janicki).

D. mesnili (Keilin) (Fig. 174, a-f). Uninucleate amoebae as small as 3.6μ in diameter; multinucleate forms $20-25\mu$ by $10-15\mu$; cysts

8–11 μ in diameter; in the space between the peritrophic membrane and the epithelium of the gut in the larvae of *Trichocera hiemalis*, *T. annulata*, and *T. regelationis* (winter gnats).

Genus **Schizamoeba** Davis. Nucleus vesicular, without endosome, but with chromatin granules arranged along nuclear membrane; 1 to many nuclei; cyst-nuclei formed by fragmentation of those of the trophozoite and possess a large rounded chromatic endosome, connected at one side with the nuclear membrane by achromatic strands to which chromatin granules are attached; in stomach of salmonoid fish. One species.

S. salmonis D. (Fig. 174, *g, h*). Sluggish amoeba; 10–25 μ in diameter; 1 to several nuclei; multiplication by binary fission; nuclear division amitotic. Cysts are said to be more abundant than trophozoites and their appearance seems to be correlated with the amount of available food; cysts spherical, 15–35 μ in diameter; cyst-membrane thin and nuclei vary from 3 to many; during encystment, chromatin bodies of trophozoite become collected in several masses which then break up and each chromatin grain becomes the endosome of newly formed nucleus; cyst contents divide sooner or later into 4–11 multinucleate bodies and the whole increases in size; finally cyst-membrane disintegrates and the multinucleate bodies become set free. Trophozoites are said to occur in the mucous covering of stomach of host fish; cysts occur in both stomach and intestine. Aside from the loss of certain amount of available food, no pathogenic effect of the amoeba upon the host fish was noticed by Davis.

Genus **Hydramoeba** Reynolds and Looper. Nucleus vesicular with a large central endosome composed of a centriole (?) and chromatin granules embedded in an achromatic mass, achromatic strands radiating from endosome to membrane; a ring made up of numerous rod-shaped chromatin bodies in the nuclear-sap zone; 1 or more contractile vacuoles; apparently the most primitive parasitic amoeba; parasitic on Hydra.

H. hydroxena (Entz) (Fig. 174, *i, j*). Parasitic in various species of Hydra; first observed by Entz; Wermel found 90 per cent of Hydra he studied in Russia were infected by the amoeba; Reynolds and Looper stated that infected Hydra die on an average in 6.8 days and that the amoebae disappear in 4–10 days if removed from a host Hydra. More or less spheroidal, with blunt pseudopods; 60–380 μ in diameter; nucleus shows some 20 refractile peripheral granules in life; contractile vacuoles; food vacuoles contain host cells; multiplication by binary fission; encystment has not been observed.

Family 4 **Paramoebidae** Poche

Genus **Paramoeba** Schaudinn. The amoeba possesses a nucleus and nucleus-like secondary cytoplasmic structure, both of which multiply by division simultaneously; free-living or parasitic.

P. pigmentifera (Grassi) (Fig. 174, *k*). About 30μ long; sluggish; cytoplasm distinctly differentiated; secondary body larger than the nucleus; flagellated swimmers are said to occur; parasitic in coelom of Chaetognatha such as *Sagitta claparedei*, *Spadella bipunctata*, *S. inflata*, and *S. serratodentata*.

P. schaudinni Faria, da Cunha and Pinto. About $7-22\mu$ in diameter; in salt water; Rio de Janeiro, Brazil.

References

- ANGERER, C. A. 1942 The action of cupric chloride on the protoplasmic viscosity of *Amoeba dubia*. *Physiol. Zool.*, Vol. 15.
- BISHOP, A. and P. TATE 1939 The morphology and systematic position of *Dobellina mesnili* nov. gen. (*Entamoeba mesnili* Keilin, 1917). *Parasitology*, Vol. 31.
- BOECK, W. C. and C. W. STILES 1923 Studies on various intestinal parasites (especially amoebae) of man. U. S. Public Health Service, Hyg. Lab. Bull., No. 133.
- BUNDESEN, H. N. et al. 1936 Epidemic amebic dysentery: the Chicago outbreak of 1933. *Nat. Inst. Health Bull.*, No. 166.
- CARINI, A. 1943 Novas observações em batráquios e ofídios, de Zelleriellas hiperparasitadas por entamebas. *Arqu. de Biolog.*, Vol. 27.
- CASH, J. 1905 *The British freshwater Rhizopoda and Heliozoa*. Vol. 1.
- CHALKLEY, H. W. and G. E. DANIEL 1933 The relation between the form of the living cell and the nuclear phases of division in *Amoeba proteus* (Leidy). *Physiol. Zool.*, Vol. 6.
- CLEVELAND, L. R. and E. P. SANDERS 1930 Encystation, multiple fission without encystment, excystation, metacystic development, and variation in a pure line and nine strains of *Entamoeba histolytica*. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 30.
- CRAIG, C. F. 1934 *Amebiasis and amebic dysentery*. Springfield, Ill.
- DANGEARD, P. A. 1900 Étude de la karyokinèse chez *l'Amoeba hyalina* sp. nov. *Le Botaniste*, Ser. 7.
- DOBELL, C. 1928 Researches on the intestinal Protozoa of monkeys and man. I and II. *Parasitology*, Vol. 20.
- 1938 IX. *Ibid.*, Vol. 30.
- 1940 X. *Ibid.*, Vol. 32.
- and F. W. O'CONNOR 1921 *The intestinal Protozoa of man*. London.
- GEIMAN, Q. M. and H. L. RATCLIFFE 1936 Morphology and life-cycle of an amoeba producing amoebiasis in reptiles. *Parasit.*, Vol. 28.

- HARTMANN, M. and C. CHAGAS 1910 Ueber die Kernteilung von *Amoeba hyalina* Dang. Mem. Inst. Oswaldo Cruz, Vol. 2.
- HENDERSON, J. C. 1941 Studies of some amoebae from a termite of the genus *Cubitermes*. Uni. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 43.
- KIRBY, H., JR. 1927 Studies on some amoebae from the termite *Microtermes*, with notes on some other Protozoa from the Termitidae. Quart. Jour. Micr. Sci., Vol. 71.
- KOCH, D. A. 1927 Relation of moisture and temperature to the viability of *Endamoeba gingivalis* (Gros) in vitro. Uni. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 31.
- KUDO, R. R. 1926 Observations on *Endamoeba blattae*. Amer. Jour. Hyg., Vol. 6.
- 1926a Observations on *Dientamoeba fragilis*. Amer. Jour. Trop. Med., Vol. 6.
- LEIDY, J. 1879 Freshwater Rhizopods of North America. Report U. S. Geol. Surv. Terr., Vol. 12.
- MAST, S. O., 1938 Amoeba and Pelomyxa vs Chaos. Turtox News, Vol. 16.
- and P. L. JOHNSON 1931 Concerning the scientific name of the common large amoeba, usually designated *Amoeba proteus* (Leidy). Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 75.
- MEGLITSCH, P. A. 1940 Cytological observations on *Endamoeba blattae*. Ill. Biol. Monogr., Vol. 17.
- MERCIER, L. 1909 Le cycle évolutif d'*Amoeba blattae* Bütschli. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 16.
- MORRIS, S. 1935 Studies of *Endamoeba blattae* (Bütschli). Jour. Morph., Vol. 59.
- PENARD, E. 1890 Etudes sur les rhizopodes d'eau douce. Mém. soc. phys. et l'hist. nat. Geneva, Vol. 31.
- 1902 *Faune rhizopodique du Bassin du Léman*. Geneva.
- RATCLIFFE, H. L. and Q. M. GEIMAN 1938 Spontaneous and experimental amebic infection in reptiles. Arch. Path., Vol. 25.
- ROOT, F. M. 1921 Experiments on the carriage of intestinal Protozoa of man by flies. Amer. Jour. Hyg., Vol. 1.
- SCHAEFFER, A. A. 1917 Notes on the specific and other characteristics of *Amoeba proteus* Pallas (Leidy), *A. discoides* spec. nov., and *A. dubia* spec. nov. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 37.
- 1926 Taxonomy of the amebas. Papers Dep't Mar. Biol. Carnegie Inst. Washington, Vol. 24.
- 1937, 1938 Turtox News, Vols. 15, 16.
- SNYDER, T. L. and H. E. MELENEY 1941 The excystation of *Endamoeba histolytica* in bacteriologically sterile media. Amer. Jour. Trop. Med., Vol. 21.
- STABLER, R. M. 1940 Binary fission in *Entamoeba gingivalis*. Jour. Morph., Vol. 66.
- VOLKONSKY, M. 1931 *Hartmannella castellanii* Douglas et classification des Hartmannelles. Arch. zool. exp. et gén., Vol. 72.
- WENRICH, D. H. 1936, 1937 Studies on *Dientamoeba fragilis* (Protozoa). Jour. Parasit., Vols. 22, 23.

- 1937a Studies on *Iodamoeba bütschlii* (Protozoa) with special reference to nuclear structure. Proc. Amer. Phil. Soc., Vol. 77.
- WENYON, C. M. 1926 *Protozoology*. Vol. 1. London.
- WILSON, H. V. 1900 Notes on a species of *Pelomyxa*. Amer. Nat., Vol. 34.
- YORKE, W. and A. R. D. ADAMS 1926 Observations on *Entamoeba histolytica*. Ann. Trop. Med. Paras., Vol. 20.

CHAPTER 20

Order 4 Testacea Schultze

THE Testacea or Thecamoeba comprise those amoeboid organisms which are enveloped by a simple shell or test, within which the body can completely be withdrawn. The shell has usually a single aperture through which pseudopodia protrude, and varies in shape and structure, although a chitinous or pseudochitinous membrane forms the basis of all. It may be thickened, as in *Arcella* and others, or composed of foreign bodies cemented together as in *Diffugia*, while in *Euglypha* siliceous platelets or scales are formed in the endoplasm and deposited in the shell.

The cytoplasm is ordinarily differentiated into the ectoplasm and endoplasm. The ectoplasm is conspicuously observable at the aperture of the shell where filopodia or slender ectoplasmic lobopodia are produced. The endoplasm is granulated or vacuolated and contains food vacuoles, contractile vacuoles and nuclei. In some forms there are present regularly in the cytoplasm numerous basophilic granules which are known as 'chromidia' (p. 37).

Asexual reproduction is either by longitudinal fission in the forms with soft tests, or by transverse division or budding, while in others multiple division occurs. Encystment is common. Sexual reproduction by amoeboid or flagellate gametes has been reported in some species.

The testaceans are mostly inhabitants of fresh water, but some live in salt water and others are semi-terrestrial, being found in moss or moist soil, especially peaty soil.

Shell simple and membranous

Filopodia, in some anastomosing Family 1 Gromiidae

Pseudopodia filose, simply branched Family 2 Arcellidae (p. 378)

Shell with foreign bodies, platelets, or scales

With foreign bodies Family 3 Diffugiidae (p. 384)

With platelets or scales Family 4 Euglyphidae (p. 389)

Family 1 Gromiidae Eimer and Fickert

These forms are frequently included in the Foraminifera by other authors.

Genus **Gromia** Dujardin (*Allogromia*, *Rhynchogromia*, *Diplogromia* Rhumbler). Thin test rigid or flexible, smooth or slightly coated with foreign bodies; spherical to elongate ellipsoid; aperture terminal; 1 or more nuclei; contractile vacuoles; many filopodia,

branching and anastomosing; cytoplasm with numerous motile granules; fresh or salt water. Many species.

FIG. 175. a, *Gromia fluvialis*, $\times 120$ (Dujardin); b, *G. ovoidea*, $\times 50$ (Schultze); c, *G. nigricans*, $\times 200$ (Cash and Wailes); d, *Microgromia socialis*, $\times 170$ (Cash); e, *Microcometes paludosa*, $\times 670?$ (Penard); f, *Artodiscus saltans*, $\times 670$ (Penard); g, *Schultzella diffluens*, $\times 120$ (Rhumbler).

G. fluvialis D. (Fig. 175, a). Test spherical to subspherical; smooth or sparsely covered with siliceous particles; yellowish cytoplasm fills the test; aperture not seen; a large nucleus and numerous contractile vacuoles; filopodia long, often enveloping test; 90–250 μ long; on aquatic plants, in moss or soil.

G. ovoidea (Rhumbler) (Fig. 175, b). In salt water.

G. nigricans (Penard) (Fig. 175, c). Test large, circular in cross-section; a single nucleus; 220–400 μ long; in pond water among vegetation.

Genus **Microgromia** Hertwig and Lesser. Test small, hyaline, spherical or pyriform, not compressed; aperture terminal, circular; filopodia long straight or anastomosing, arising from a peduncle; a single nucleus and contractile vacuole; solitary or grouped.

M. socialis (Archer) (Fig. 175, d). Cytoplasm bluish; contractile vacuole near aperture; filopodia arise from a peduncle, attenuate, branching, anastomosing; often numerous individuals are grouped; multiplication by fission and also by swarmers; 25–35 μ in diameter; among vegetation in fresh water.

Genus **Microcometes** Cienkowski. Body globular, enclosed within a transparent, delicate, light yellowish and pliable envelope with 3–5 apertures, through which long branching filopodia extend; body protoplasm occupies about 1/2 the space of envelope; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

M. paludosa C. (Fig. 175, e). About 16–17 μ in diameter; fresh water among algae.

Genus **Artodiscus** Penard. Body globular, plastic; covered by envelope containing small grains of various kinds; nucleus eccentric; a few pseudopodia extend through pores of the envelope; movement very rapid; fresh water.

A. saltans P. (Fig. 175, f). 18–23 μ in diameter; fresh water.

Genus **Lieberkühnia** Claparède and Lachmann. Test ovoidal or spherical, with or without attached foreign particles; aperture usually single, lateral or subterminal; one or more nuclei; many contractile vacuoles; pseudopodia formed from a long peduncle, reticulate, often enveloping test; fresh or salt water.

L. wagneri C. and L. (Fig. 176, a). Spheroidal; aperture subterminal, oblique, flexible; cytoplasm slightly yellowish, fills the test; 80–150 vesicular nuclei; many contractile vacuoles; pseudopodia long, anastomosing; 60–160 μ long; nuclei 6 μ in diameter; among algae in fresh and salt water.

Genus **Diplophrys** Barker. Test thin, spherical; 2 apertures, one at each pole; cytoplasm colorless; a single nucleus; several contractile vacuoles; filopodia radiating. One species.

D. archeri B. (Fig. 176, b). With 1–3 colored oil droplets; pseudopodia highly attenuate, radiating, straight or branched; multiplication into 2 or 4 daughter individuals; solitary or in groups; diameter 8–20 μ ; on submerged plants in fresh water.

FIG. 176. a, *Lieberkühnia wagneri*, $\times 160$ (Verworn); b, *Diplophrys archeri*, $\times 930$ (Hertwig and Lesser); c, *Lecythium hyalinum*, $\times 330$ (Cash and Wailes); d, *Myxotheca arenilega*, $\times 70$ (Schaudinn); e, *Dactylosaccus vermiformis*, $\times 15$ (Rhumbler); f, *Boderia turneri* (Wright).

Genus **Lecythium** Hertwig and Lesser. Test thin, flexible, colorless; aperture elastic, terminal; colorless cytoplasm fills the test; large nucleus posterior; numerous filopodia long, branching, not anastomosing; fresh water.

L. hyalinum (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 176, c). Spheroidal; aperture circular with a short flexible neck; a single contractile vacuole; diameter 20–45 μ ; in submerged vegetation.

Genus **Schultzella** Rhumbler. Test thin, delicate, difficult to recognize in life, easily broken at any point for formation of pseudopodia which branch and anastomose; irregularly rounded; without foreign material; salt water.

S. diffluens (Grubler) (Fig. 175, *g*). Cytoplasm finely granulated; opaque, colorless; with oil droplets, vacuoles and numerous small nuclei; up to 220μ in diameter.

Genus **Myxotheca** Schaudinn. Amoeboid; spherical or hemispherical, being flattened on the attached surface; a thin pseudochitinous test with foreign bodies, especially sand grains; pseudopodia anastomosing; salt water.

M. arenilega S. (Fig. 176, *d*). Test yellow, with loosely attached foreign bodies; cytoplasm bright red due to the presence of highly refractile granules; 1-2 nuclei, $39-75\mu$ in diameter; body diameter $160-560\mu$.

Genus **Dactylosaccus** Rhumbler. Test sausage-shape and variously twisted; pseudopodia filiform, anastomosing; salt water.

D. vermiformis R. (Fig. 176, *e*). Test smooth; pseudopodia rise from small finger-like projections; 1-2 nuclei; body 4 mm. by 340μ ; salt water.

Genus **Boderia** Wright. Body form changeable; often spherical, but usually flattened and angular; filopodia long; test extremely delicate, colorless; salt water.

B. turneri W. (Fig. 176, *f*). Body brown to orange; active cytoplasmic movement; 1-10 nuclei; multiple division(?); $1.56-6.25$ mm. in diameter; in shallow water.

Family 2 Arcellidae Schultze

Genus **Arcella** Ehrenberg. Test transparent, chitinous, densely punctated; colorless to brown (when old); in front view circular, angular, or stellate; in profile plano-convex or semicircular; variously ornamented; aperture circular, central, inverted like a funnel; protoplasmic body does not fill the test and connected with the latter by many ectoplasmic strands; slender lobopodia, few, digitate, simple or branched; 2 nuclei; several contractile vacuoles; fresh water. Numerous species.

A. vulgaris E. (Fig. 177, *a, b*). Height of test about $1/2$ the diameter; dome of hemispherical test evenly convex; aperture circular, central; colorless, yellow, or brown; protoplasmic body conforms with the shape of, but does not fill, the test; lobopodia hyaline; 2 vesicular nuclei; several contractile vacuoles; test $30-100\mu$ in diameter; in the ooze and vegetation in stagnant water and also in soil.

Of several varieties, two may here be mentioned; var. *angulosa* (Perty), test smaller, 30–40 μ in diameter, faceted, forming a 5- to 8-sided figure, with obtuse angles; var. *gibbosa* (Penard), test gibbous, surface pitted with circular depressions of uniform dimensions; 45–50 μ up to 100 μ in diameter.

A. discoides E. (Fig. 177, c). Test circular in front view, plano-convex in profile; diameter about 3–4 times the height; test coloration and body structure similar to those of *A. vulgaris*; test 70–260 μ in diameter; in fresh water.

FIG. 177. a, b, *Arcella vulgaris*, $\times 170$; $\times 230$ (Leidy); c, *A. discoides*, $\times 170$ (Leidy); d, *A. mitrata*, $\times 140$ (Leidy); e, f, *A. catinus*, $\times 170$ (Cash); g–i, *A. dentata*, $\times 170$ (Leidy); j, k, *A. artocrea*, $\times 170$ (Leidy).

A. mitrata Leidy (Fig. 177, d). Test balloon-shaped or polyhedral; height exceeds diameter of base; aperture circular, crenulated and usually evarted within inverted funnel; protoplasmic body spheroidal, with 'neck' to aperture and cytoplasmic strands to test; 6 or more slender lobopodia; test 100–145 μ high, 100–152 μ in diameter; in fresh water among vegetation.

A. catinus Penard (Fig. 177, e, f). Test oval or quadrate, not circular, in front view; aperture oval; dome compressed; lateral margin with 6 or 8 facets; test 100–120 μ in diameter and about 45 μ high; fresh water among vegetation.

A. dentata Ehrenberg (Fig. 177, g–i). Test circular and dentate

in front view, crown-like in profile; diameter more than twice the height; aperture circular, large; colorless to brown; about 95μ in diameter, aperture 30μ in diameter; 15–17 spines; in the ooze of freshwater ponds.

A. artocrea Leidy (Fig. 177, *j, k*). Height of test $1/4$ – $1/2$ the diameter; dome convex; surface mammillated or pitted; border of test everted and rising $1/4$ – $1/2$ the height of test; about 175μ in diameter; fresh water.

FIG. 178, *a, b*, *Pyxidicula operculata*, $\times 800$ (Penard); *c*, *Pseudochlamys patella*, $\times 330$ (Cash); *d, e*, *Difflugiella apiculata*, $\times 270$ (Cash); *f*, *Cryptodifflugia oviformis*, $\times 320$ (Cash); *g*, *Lesquereusia spiralis*, $\times 270$ (West); *h*, *Hyalosphenia papilio*, $\times 330$ (Leidy); *i*, *Corycia coronata*, $\times 170$ (Penard); *j*, *Pamphagus mutabilis*, $\times 330$ (Leidy); *k*, *Plagiophrys parvipunctata*, $\times 330$ (Penard).

Genus *Pyxidicula* Ehrenberg. Test patelliform; rigid, transparent, punctate; aperture circular, almost the entire diameter of test; cytoplasm similar to that of *Arcella*; a single nucleus; 1 or more contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

P. operculata (Agardh) (Fig. 178, *a, b*). Test smooth, colorless to

brown; a single vesicular nucleus; pseudopodia short, lobose or digitate; 20μ in diameter; on vegetation.

Genus **Pseudochlamys** Claparède and Lachmann. Test discoid, flexible when young; body with a central nucleus and several contractile vacuoles.

P. patella C. and L. (Fig. 178, c). Young test hyaline, older one rigid and brown; often rolled up like a scroll; a short finger-like pseudopodium between folds; $40\text{--}45\mu$ in diameter; in fresh water among vegetation, in moss and soil.

Genus **Diffugiella** Cash. Test ovoid, not compressed, flexible and transparent membrane; colorless cytoplasm fills the test, usually with chlorophyllous food material; median pseudopodia lobate or digitate with aciculate ends, while lateral pseudopods long, straight, and fine, tapering to a point; fresh water. One species.

D. apiculata C. (Fig. 178, d, e). About 40μ by 28μ ; among vegetation.

Genus **Cryptodiffugia** Penard. Small test yellowish to brownish; Diffugia-like in general appearance, compressed; with or without foreign bodies; pseudopodia long, acutely pointed; fresh water.

C. oviformis P. (Fig. 178, f). Test ovoid; without foreign bodies; crown hemispherical; aperture truncate; cytoplasm with chlorophyllous food particles; $16\text{--}20\mu$ by $12\text{--}15\mu$; in marshy soil.

Genus **Lesquereusia** Schlumberger. Test compressed, oval or globular in profile, narrowed at bent back; semispiral in appearance; with curved or comma-shaped rods or with sand-grains (in one species); body does not fill up the test; pseudopodia simple or branched; fresh water.

L. spiralis (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 178, g). Aperture circular; border distinct; cytoplasm appears pale yellow; a single nucleus; $96\text{--}188\mu$ by $68\text{--}114\mu$; in marsh water.

Genus **Hyalosphenia** Stein. Test ovoid or pyriform; aperture end convex; homogeneous and hyaline, mostly compressed; crown uniformly arched; protoplasm partly filling the test; several blunt pseudopodia simple or digitate. Several species.

H. papilio Leidy (Fig. 178, h). Test yellowish; transparent; pyriform or oblong in front view; a minute pore on each side of crown and sometimes one also in center; aperture convex; in narrow lateral view, elongate pyriform, aperture a shallow notch; with chlorophyllous particles and oil globules; $110\text{--}140\mu$ long; in fresh water among vegetation.

Genus **Corycia** Dujardin. Envelope extremely pliable, open at base, but when closed, sack-like; envelope changes its shape with

movement and contraction of body; with or without spinous projections.

C. coronata Penard (Fig. 178, *i*). 6–12 spines; 140μ in diameter; in moss.

Genus **Pamphagus** Bailey. Test hyaline membranous, flexible; aperture small; body fills the envelope completely; spherical nucleus large; contractile vacuoles; filopodia long, delicate, branching, but not anastomosing; fresh water.

P. mutabilis B. (Fig. 178, *j*). Envelope $40\text{--}100\mu$ by $28\text{--}68\mu$.

Genus **Plagiophrys** Claparède and Lachmann. Envelope thin, hyaline, changeable with body form; usually elongate-oval with rounded posterior end; narrowed at other half; envelope finely punctated with a few small plates; aperture round; cytoplasm clear; nucleus large; pseudopods straight filopodia, sometimes branching; fresh water.

P. parvipunctata Penard (Fig. 178, *k*). Envelope 50μ long.

Genus **Leptochlamys** West. Test ovoid, thin transparent chitinous membrane, circular in optical section; aperture end slightly expanded with a short neck; aperture circular, often oblique; body fills test; without vacuoles; pseudopodium short, broadly expanded and sometimes cordate; fresh water.

L. ampullacea W. (Fig. 179, *a*). Nucleus large, posterior; with green or brown food particles; test $45\text{--}55\mu$ by $36\text{--}40\mu$ in diameter; aperture $15\text{--}17\mu$; among algae.

Genus **Chlamydothrys** Cienkowski. Test rigid, circular in cross-section; aperture often on drawn-out neck; body fills the test; zonal differentiation of cytoplasm distinct; nucleus vesicular; refractile waste granules; pseudopodia branching; fresh water or coprozoic.

C. stercorea C. (Fig. 179, *k*). Test $18\text{--}20\mu$ by $12\text{--}15\mu$; mature cysts yellowish brown, $12\text{--}15\mu$ in diameter; multiplication by budding; coprozoic and fresh water.

Genus **Cochliopodium** Hertwig and Lesser. Test thin, flexible, expansible and contractile; with or without extremely fine hair-like processes; pseudopodia blunt or pointed, but not acicular. Several species.

C. bilimbosum (Auerbach) (Fig. 179, *b*). Test hemispherical; pseudopodia conical with pointed ends; test $24\text{--}56\mu$ in diameter; fresh water among algae.

Genus **Amphizonella** Greeff. Test membranous with a double marginal contour; inner membrane smooth, well-defined; outer serrulate; aperture inverted; a single nucleus; pseudopodia blunt, digitate, and divergent.

A. violacea G. (Fig. 179, c). Test patelliform, violet-tinted; with chlorophyllous corpuscles and grains; sluggish; average diameter 160μ ; fresh water.

Genus *Zonomyxa* Nüsslin. Test rounded pyriform, flexible, chitinous, violet-colored; endoplasm vacuolated, with chlorophyllous particles; several nuclei; pseudopodia simple, not digitate; fresh water.

FIG. 179. a, *Leptochlamys ampullacea*, $\times 330$ (West); b, *Cochliopodium bilimbosum*, $\times 670$ (Leidy); c, *Amphizonella violacea*, $\times 270$ (Greeff); d, *Zonomyxa violacea*, $\times 200$ (Penard); e, f, *Microcorycia flava*, $\times 240$ (Wailes); g, h, *Parmulina cyathus*, $\times 500$ (Penard); i, *Diplochlamys leidyi*, $\times 270$ (Brown); j, *Capsellina timida*, $\times 270$ (Wailes); k, *Chlamydomphrys stercorea*, $\times 670$ (Wenyon).

Z. violacea N. (Fig. 179, d). A single lobular pseudopodium with acuminate end; 4 nuclei; diameter $140\text{--}160\mu$; actively motile forms 250μ or longer; among sphagnum.

Genus **Microcorycia** Cockerell. Test discoidal or hemispherical, flexible, with a diaphanous continuation or fringe around periphery, being folded together or completely closed; crown of test with circular or radial ridges; body does not fill the test; 1-2 nuclei; pseudopodia lobular or digitate; fresh water. A few species.

M. flava (Greeff) (Fig. 179, *e, f*). Test yellowish brown; crown with few small foreign bodies; endoplasm with yellowish brown granules; 2 nuclei; contractile vacuoles; diameter 80-100 μ ; young individuals as small as 20 μ ; in moss.

Genus **Parmulina** Penard. Test ovoid, chitinoid with foreign bodies; aperture may be closed; a single nucleus; 1 or more contractile vacuoles; fresh water. A few species.

P. cyathus P. (Fig. 179, *g, h*). Test small, flexible; ovoid in aperture view, semicircular in profile; aperture a long, narrow slit when test is closed, but circular or elliptical when opened; 40-55 μ long; in moss.

Genus **Capsellina** Penard. Test hyaline, ovoid, membranous; with or without a second outer covering; aperture long slit; a single nucleus; 1 or more contractile vacuoles; filose pseudopodia; fresh water.

C. timida Brown (Fig. 179, *j*). Small, ovoid; elliptical in cross-section; with many oil (?) globules; filopodium; 34 μ by 25 μ ; in moss.

Genus **Diploclamys** Greeff. Test hemispherical or cup-shaped, flexible with a double envelope; inner envelope a membranous sack with an elastic aperture; outer envelope with loosely attached foreign bodies; aperture large; nuclei up to 100; pseudopodia few, short, digitate or pointed; fresh water. Several species.

D. leidyi G. (Fig. 179, *i*). Test dark gray; inner envelope projecting beyond outer aperture; nuclei up to 20 in number; diameter 80-100 μ .

Family 3 Diffugiidae Taránek

Genus **Diffugia** Leclerc. Test variable in shape, but generally circular in cross-section; composed of cemented quartz-sand, diatoms, and other foreign bodies; aperture terminal; often with zoochlorellae; cytoplasmic body almost fills the test; a single nucleus; many contractile vacuoles; pseudopodia cylindrical, simple or branching; end rounded or pointed; fresh water, woodland soil, etc.

D. oblonga Ehrenberg (*D. pyriformis* Perty) (Fig. 180, *a*). Test pyriform, flask-shaped, or ovoid; neck variable in length; fundus rounded, with occasionally 1-3 conical processes; aperture terminal,

typically circular; test composed of angular sand-grains, diatoms; bright green with chlorophyllous bodies; $60\text{--}580\mu$ by $40\text{--}240\mu$; in the ooze of fresh water ponds, ditches and bogs; also in moist soil. Several varieties.

D. urceolata Carter (Fig. 180, b). A large ovoid, rotund test, with a short neck and a rim around aperture; $200\text{--}230\mu$ by $150\text{--}200\mu$; in ditches, ponds, sphagnous swamps, etc.

FIG. 180. a, *Diffugia oblonga*, $\times 130$ (Cash); b, *D. urceolata*, $\times 130$ (Leidy); c, d, *D. arcula*, $\times 170$ (Leidy); e, *D. lobostoma*, $\times 130$ (Leidy); f, *D. constricta*, $\times 200$ (Cash); g, *Centropyxis aculeata*, $\times 200$ (Cash); h, *Campusus cornutus*, $\times 170$ (Leidy); i, *Cucurbitella mespiliformis*, $\times 200$ (Wailles).

D. arcula Leidy (Fig. 180, c, d). Test hemispherical, base slightly concave, but not invaginated; aperture triangular, central, trilobed; test yellowish with scattered sand-grains or diatoms; diameter $100\text{--}140\mu$; in sphagnous swamp, moss, soil, etc.

D. lobostoma L. (Fig. 180, e). Test ovoid to subspherical; aperture terminal; with 3–6 lobes; test usually composed of sand-grains, rarely with diatoms; endoplasm colorless or greenish; diameter $80\text{--}120\mu$; in fresh water.

D. constricta (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 180, f). Test laterally ovoid, fundus more or less prolonged obliquely upward, rounded, and simple or provided with spines; soil forms generally spineless; aperture antero-inferior, large, circular or oval and its edge inverted; test

composed of quartz grains; colorless to brown; cytoplasm colorless; 80–340 μ long; in the ooze of ponds and in soil.

D. corona Wallich. Test ovoid to spheroid, circular in cross-section; crown broadly rounded, with a variable number of spines, aperture more or less convex in profile, central and its border multidentate or multilobate; test with fine sand-grains, opaque; cytoplasm colorless; pseudopodia numerous, long, branching or bifurcating; 180–230 μ by about 150 μ ; in fresh water.

Genus **Centropyxis** Stein. Test circular, ovoid, or discoid; aperture eccentric, circular or ovoidal, often with a lobate border; with or without spines; cytoplasm colorless; pseudopodia digitate; fresh water.

C. aculeata S. (Fig. 180, *g*). Test variable in contour and size; with 4–6 spines; opaque or semitransparent; with fine sand-grains or diatom shells; pseudopodia sometimes knotted or branching; when encysted, the body assumes a spherical form in wider part of test; granulated, colorless or with green globules; diameter 100–150 μ ; aperture 50–60 μ in diameter.

Genus **Campascus** Leidy. Test retort-shaped with curved neck, rounded triangular in cross-section; aperture circular, oblique, with a thin transparent discoid collar; nucleus large; 1 or more contractile vacuoles; body does not fill the test; fresh water.

C. cornutus L. (Fig. 180, *h*). Test pale-yellow, retort-form; with a covering of small sand particles; triangular in cross-section; a single nucleus and contractile vacuole; filopodia straight; 110–140 μ long; aperture 24–28 μ in diameter; in the ooze of mountain lakes.

Genus **Cucurbitella** Penard. Test ovoid with sand-grains, not compressed; aperture terminal, circular, surrounded by a 4-lobed annular collar; cytoplasm grayish, with zoochlorellae; nucleus large; 1 to many contractile vacuoles; pseudopodia numerous, digitate; fresh water.

C. mespiliformis P. (Fig. 180, *i*). 115–140 μ long; diameter 80–105 μ ; in the ooze or on vegetation in ponds and ditches.

Genus **Plagiopyxis** Penard. Test subcircular in front view; ovoid in profile; aperture linear or lunate; cytoplasm gray, with a single nucleus and a contractile vacuole; fresh water.

P. callida P. (Fig. 181, *a*). Test gray, yellowish, or brown; large nucleus vesicular; pseudopodia numerous, radiating, short, pointed or palmate; diameter 55–135 μ ; in vegetation.

Genus **Pontigulasia** Rhumbler. Test similar to that of *Diffugia*, but with a constriction of neck and internally a diaphragm made of the same substances as those of the test.

P. vas (Leidy) (Fig. 181, b). Round or ovoid test; constriction deep and well-marked; with sand-grains and other particles; aperture terminal; 125–170 μ long; fresh water ponds. Stump (1943) made a study of the nuclear division of the organism. During metaphase 8–12 “chromosomes” form a well-defined equatorial plate; average time for completion of the division was found to be 80 minutes.

FIG. 181. a, *Plagiopyxis callida*, $\times 200$ (Wailes); b, *Pontigulasia vas* $\times 200$ (Cash); c, *Phryganella acropodia*, $\times 190$ (Cash); d, *Bullinula indica*, $\times 130$ (Wailes); e, f, *Heleopera petricola*, $\times 190$ (Cash); g, *Nadinella tenella*, $\times 400$ (Penard); h, *Frenzelina reniformis*, $\times 600$ (Penard); i, *Amphitrema flavum*, $\times 360$ (Cash and Wailes); j, *Pseudodifflugia gracilis*, $\times 330$ (Cash); k, *Diaphoropodon mobile*, $\times 270$ (Cash and Wailes); l, m, *Clypeolina marginata*, $\times 330$ (Cash and Wailes).

Genus **Phryganella** Penard. Test spheroidal or ovoid, with sand-grains and minute diatom shells; aperture terminal, round; pseudopodia drawn out to a point; fresh water.

P. acropodia (Hertwig and Lesser) (Fig. 181, c). Test circular in aperture view; hemispherical in profile; yellowish or brownish, semi-transparent, and covered with sand-grains and scales; in front view sharply pointed pseudopodia radiating; colorless endoplasm usually with chlorophyllous bodies; 30–50 μ in diameter.

Genus **Bullinula** Penard. Test ellipsoidal, flattened on one face, with silicious plates; on the flattened surface, ∞ -shaped aperture; a single nucleus; pseudopodia digitate or spatulate, simple or branched; fresh water.

B. indica P. (Fig. 181, d). Test dark brown; 120–250 μ in diameter.

Genus **Heleopera** Leidy. Test variously colored; fundus hemispherical, with sand-grains; surface covered with amorphous scales, often overlapping; aperture truncate, narrow, elliptic notched in narrow lateral view; a single nucleus; pseudopodia variable in number, thin digitate or branching; fresh water. Several species.

H. petricola L. (Fig. 181, e, f). Test variable in size and color, strongly compressed; fundus rough with sand-grains of various sizes; aperture linear or elliptic, convex in front view; pseudopodia slender, branching; 80–100 μ long; in boggy places.

Genus **Averintzia** Schouteden. Test similar to that of *Heleopera*, but small aperture elliptical; test thickened around aperture; fresh water.

A. cyclostoma (Penard). Test dark violet, with sand-grains of different sizes; elliptical in cross-section; pseudopodia unobserved; 135–180 μ long; in sphagnum and aquatic plants.

Genus **Nadinella** Penard. Test chitinous, thin, hyaline, with foreign bodies and collar around aperture; filopodia; fresh water.

N. tenella P. (Fig. 181, g). 50–55 μ long; fresh water lakes.

Genus **Frenzelina** Penard. Two envelopes, outer envelope hemispherical, thin, rigid, covered with siliceous particles; inner envelope round or ovoid, drawn out at aperture, thin, hyaline and covering the body closely; aperture round, through which a part of body with its often branching straight filopods extends; cytoplasm with diatoms, etc.; a nucleus and a contractile vacuole; fresh water.

F. reniformis P. (Fig. 181, h). Outer envelope 26–30 μ in diameter; fresh water lakes.

Genus **Amphitrema** Archer. Test ovoid, symmetrical, compressed; composed of a transparent membrane, with or without adherent foreign bodies; 2 apertures at opposite poles; with zoochlorellae; nucleus central; 1 to several contractile vacuoles; straight filopodia, sparsely branched, radiating; fresh water. Several species.

A. flavum A. (Fig. 181, i). Test brown, cylindrical with equally

rounded ends in front view; elliptical in profile; ovoid with a small central oval aperture in end view; $45\text{--}77\mu$ by $23\text{--}45\mu$; in sphagnum.

Genus **Pseudodifflugia** Schlumberger. Test ovoid, usually rigid, with foreign bodies; circular or elliptical in cross-section; aperture terminal; granulated cytoplasm colorless or greyish; nucleus posterior; a contractile vacuole; filopodia long, straight or branching; fresh water. Several species.

P. gracilis S. (Fig. 181, *j*). Test yellowish or brownish; subspherical, with sand-grains; aperture without neck; $20\text{--}65\mu$ long.

Genus **Diaphoropodon** Archer. Test ovoid, flexible, with minute foreign bodies and a thick covering of hyaline hair-like projections; pseudopodia long, filose, branching; fresh water.

D. mobile A. (Fig. 181, *k*). Test brown; of various shapes; aperture terminal; body does not fill the test; nucleus large; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; $60\text{--}120\mu$ long; projections $8\text{--}10\mu$ long; in vegetation.

Genus **Clypeolina** Penard. Test ovoid, compressed, formed of a double envelope; outer envelope composed of 2 valves with scales and particles; inner envelope a membranous sack; long filopodia, often branching; fresh water.

C. marginata P. (Fig. 181, *l, m*). Outer test-valves yellow to dark brown; lenticular in cross-section; wide terminal aperture; endoplasm with many small globules; a single nucleus and contractile vacuole; $80\text{--}150\mu$ long.

Family 4 Euglyphidae Wallich

Genus **Euglypha** Dujardin (*Pareuglypha* Penard). Test hyaline, ovoid, composed of circular, oval, or scutiform siliceous imbricated scales, arranged in longitudinal rows; aperture bordered with regularly arranged denticulate scales; usually with spines; 1–2 nuclei large, placed centrally; filopodia dichotomously branched; contractile vacuoles; fresh water. Numerous species.

E. acanthophora (Ehrenberg) (*E. alveolata* D.) (Fig. 70). Test ovoid, or slightly elongate; 3–7 scales protruding around the circular aperture; scales elliptical; body almost fills the test; $50\text{--}100\mu$ long.

E. cristata Leidy (Fig. 182, *a*). Test small, elongate with a long neck, fundus with 3–8 spines; scales oval; aperture circular, bordered by a single row of 5–6 denticulate scales; cytoplasm colorless; nucleus posterior; reserve scales are said to be collected around the exterior of aperture, unlike other species in which they are kept within the cytoplasm; $30\text{--}70\mu$ long; $12\text{--}23\mu$ in diameter; aperture $6\text{--}12\mu$; scales $4.5\text{--}9.5\mu$ by $2.5\text{--}6.5\mu$; spines $10\text{--}15\mu$ long.

E. mucronata L. (Fig. 182, *b*). Test large; fundus conical, with

1–2 terminal spines (12–44 μ long); aperture circular, bordered by a single row of 6–8 denticulate scales; 100–150 μ long, diameter 30–60 μ ; aperture 15–20 μ in diameter.

Genus **Paulinella** Lauterborn. Test small ovoid, not compressed; with siliceous scales in alternating transverse rows; aperture terminal; body does not fill the test completely; nucleus posterior; among vegetation in fresh or brackish water.

FIG. 182. a, *Euglypha cristata*, $\times 330$ (Wailles); b, *E. mucronata*, $\times 330$ (Wailles); c, *Paulinella chromatophora*, $\times 1000$ (Wailles); d, *Cyphoderia ampulla*, $\times 200$ (Cash); e, f, *Corythion pulchellum*, $\times 350$ (Wailles).

P. chromatophora L. (Fig. 182, c). Scales arranged in 11–12 rows; with 1–2 curved algal symbionts; no food particles; a single contractile vacuole; 20–32 μ long; 14–23 μ in diameter.

Genus **Cyphoderia** Schlumberger. Test retort-shaped; colorless to yellow; made up of a thin chitinous membrane, covered with discs or scales; aperture terminal, oblique, circular; body does not fill the test completely; nucleus large, posterior; pseudopodia, few, long filose, simple or branched; fresh water.

C. ampulla (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 182, d). Test usually yellow, translucent, composed of discs, arranged in diagonal rows; circular in cross-section; aperture circular; cytoplasm gray, with many granules

and food particles; 2 contractile vacuoles; 60–200 μ long; diameter 30–70 μ . Several varieties.

Genus **Trinema** Dujardin. Test small, hyaline, ovoid, compressed anteriorly, with circular siliceous scales; aperture circular, oblique, invaginate; nucleus posterior; filopodia not branched; fresh water in vegetation.

T. enchelys (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 183, *a*). 1–2 contractile vacuoles; pseudopodia attenuate, radiating; 30–100 μ long; 15–60 μ wide; scales 4–12 μ in diameter.

Genus **Corythion** Taránek. Test small, hyaline, composed of small oval siliceous plates; compressed; elliptical in cross-section; aperture subterminal, ventral or oblique, and circular or oval; numerous filopodia; fresh water.

C. pulchellum Penard (Fig. 182, *e, f*). Aperture lenticular; cytoplasm colorless; 2–3 contractile vacuoles; 25–35 μ by 15–20 μ ; aperture 7–10 μ by 3–4 μ .

Genus **Placocista** Leidy. Test ovoid, hyaline, compressed; lenticular in cross-section; with oval or subcircular siliceous scales; aperture wide, linear, with flexible undulate borders; nucleus large, posterior; often with zoochlorellae; filopodia branching and many, generally arising from a protruded portion of cytoplasm; fresh water.

P. spinosa (Carter) (Fig. 183, *b*). Margin of test with spines, either singly or in pairs; 116–174 μ by 70–100 μ ; in sphagnum.

Genus **Assulina** Ehrenberg. Test colorless or brown; ovoid; with elliptical scales, arranged in diagonal rows; aperture oval, terminal bordered by a thin chitinous dentate membrane; nucleus posterior; contractile vacuoles; filopodia divergent, sometimes branching; fresh water.

A. seminulum (E.) (Fig. 183, *c*). Body does not fill the test; with numerous food particles; pseudopodia few, straight, divergent, slender, seldom branched; 60–150 μ by 50–75 μ ; in sphagnum.

Genus **Nebela** Leidy. Test thin, ovate or pyriform; with circular or oval platelets of uniform or various sizes; highly irregular; endoplasm with oil globules; nucleus posterior; body does not fill the test, and is connected with the latter by many ectoplasmic strands at fundus end; pseudopodia blunt, rarely branched; fresh water. Numerous species.

N. collaris (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 183, *d*). Test pyriform, fundus obtuse in profile; aperture without any notch; endoplasm with chlorophyllous food particles; pseudopodia digitate, short, usually 3–6 in number; about 130 μ by 85–90 μ ; in marshes among sphagnum.

Genus **Quadrula** Schulze. Test pyriform, hemispherical, or discoidal; with quadrangular siliceous or calcareous platelets, arranged generally in oblique series, not overlapping; a single nucleus; body and pseudopodia similar to those of *Diffugia*; fresh water.

Q. symmetrica (Wallich) (Fig. 183, e). Compressed, smaller platelets near aperture; cytoplasm very clear, with chlorophyllous granules; 3–5 pseudopodia digitate; nucleus posterior; 80–140 μ by 40–96 μ ; in sphagnum.

FIG. 183. a, *Trinema enchelys*, $\times 330$ (Wailes); b, *Placocista spinosa*, $\times 200$ (Wailes); c, *Assulina seminulum*, $\times 400$ (Wailes); d, *Nebela collaris*, $\times 200$ (Cash); e, *Quadrula symmetrica*, $\times 200$ (Cash); f, *Sphenoderia lenta*, $\times 330$ (Leidy).

Genus **Sphenoderia** Schlumberger. Test globular or oval, sometimes slightly compressed; hyaline, membranous, with a short broad neck, and a wide elliptical aperture; scales circular, oval, or hexagonal, arranged in alternating series; cytoplasm colorless; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; filopodia, fine, branching; fresh water.

S. lenta S. (Fig. 183, f). Hyaline test ovoid or globular; scales circular or broadly oval; aperture terminal, surrounded by a thin chitinous collar, one side inclined inwards; nucleus large; cytoplasm colorless; 2 contractile vacuoles; 30–64 μ by 20–46 μ ; aperture 10–22 μ in diameter.

References

- CASH, J. 1905, 1909 *The British freshwater Rhizopoda and Heliozoa*. Vols. 1, 2.
 ——— and G. H. Wailes 1915, 1918 *The British freshwater Rhizopoda and Heliozoa*. Vols. 3, 4.

- DEFLANDRE, G. 1928 Le genre *Arcella* Ehrenberg. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 64.
- HEGNER, R. W. 1920 The relation between nuclear number, chromatin mass, cytoplasmic mass, and shell characteristics in four species of the genus *Arcella*. Jour. Exp. Zool., Vol. 30.
- LEIDY, J. 1879 Freshwater Rhizopods of North America. Rep. U. S. Geol. Surv., Vol. 12.
- PENARD, E. 1890 Études sur les rhizopodes d'eau douce. Mém. soc. phys. et d'hist. nat. Geneva, Vol. 31.
- 1902 *Faune rhizopodique du bassin du Léman*. Geneva.
- STUMP, A. B. 1943 Mitosis and cell division in *Pontigulasia vas* (Leidy) Schouteden. Jour. Elisha Mitchell Sci. Soc., Vol. 59.

CHAPTER 21

Order 5 Foraminifera d'Orbigny

THE Foraminifera are comparatively large Protozoa, living almost exclusively in the sea. They were very abundant in geologic times and the fossil forms are important in applied geology (p. 10). The majority live on ocean bottom, moving about sluggishly over the mud and ooze by means of their pseudopodia. Some are attached to various objects on the ocean floor, while others are pelagic.

The cytoplasm is ordinarily not differentiated into the two zones and streams out through the apertures, and in perforated forms through the numerous pores, of the shell, forming rhizopodia which are fine and often very long and which anastomose with one another to present a characteristic appearance (Fig. 5). The streaming movement of the cytoplasm in the pseudopodia are quite striking; the granules move toward the end of a pseudopodium and stream back along its periphery. The body cytoplasm is often loaded with brown granules which are apparently waste matter and in some forms such as *Peneroplis pertusus* these masses are extruded from the body from time to time, especially prior to the formation of a new chamber. Contractile vacuoles are usually not found in the Foraminifera.

The test of the Foraminifera varies greatly in form and structure. It may show various colorations—orange, red, brown, etc. The majority measure less than one millimeter, although larger forms may frequently reach several millimeters. The test may be siliceous or calcareous and in some forms, various foreign materials, such as sand-grains, sponge-spicules, etc. which are more or less abundantly found where these organisms live, are loosely or compactly cemented together by pseudochitinous or gelatinous substances. Certain forms show a specific tendency in the selection of foreign materials for the test (p. 40). Siliceous tests are comparatively rare, being found in some species of Miliolidae inhabiting either the brackish water or deep sea. Calcareous tests are sometimes imperforated, but even in such cases those of the young are always perforated. By far the majority of the Foraminifera possess perforated calcareous tests. The thickness of the shell varies considerably, as do also the size and number of apertures, among different species. Frequently the perforations are very small in the young and later become large and coarse, while in others the reverse may be the case.

The form of the shell varies greatly. In some there is only one chamber composed of a central body and radiating arms which represent the material collected around the pseudopodia, as in *Rhabdammina* (Fig. 185, *a*), or of a tubular body alone, as in *Hyperammina* (Fig. 185, *d*). The polythalamous forms possess shells of various spirals. The first chamber is called the **proloculum** which may be formed either by the union of two swarmerers or by asexual reproduction. The former is ordinarily small and known as the **microspheric** proloculum, while the latter, which is usually large, is called the **megalospheric** proloculum. To the proloculum are added many chambers which may be closely or loosely coiled or not coiled at all. These chambers are ordinarily undivided, but in many higher forms they are divided into chamberlets. The chambers are delimited by the suture on the exterior of the shell. The septa which divide the chambers are perforated by one or more foramina known as stolon canals, through which the protoplasm extends throughout the chambers. The last chamber has one or more apertures of variable sizes, through which the cytoplasm extends to the exterior as pseudopodia. The food of Foraminifera consists mostly of diatoms and algae, though pelagic forms are known to capture other Protozoa and microcrustaceans.

All species of Foraminifera manifest a more or less distinct tendency toward a dimorphism: the **megalospheric form** has a large proloculum, is uninucleate and is relatively small in size; while the **microspheric form** possesses a small proloculum, is multinucleate, and is large. In addition, there is a difference in the direction of rotation of spiral chambers of tests in some species (Myers). For example, in *Discorbis opercularis*, the microspheric form has clockwise rotation of the chambers, and the megalospheric form shows counterclockwise rotation. The megalospheric forms are said to be much more numerous than the microspheric forms, especially in pelagic species. It is possible that, as Myers (1938) pointed out, the flagellate gametes are set free in open water and have a minimum of opportunity for syngamy.

Lister (1895) observed the development of the megalospheric form in *Elphidium* by asexual reproduction from the microspheric form. He noticed flagellated swarmerers in megalospheric tests and considered them as gametes which through syngamy gave rise to microspheric individuals. Recent studies by Myers (1935–1940) confirm the correctness of this view, except that in some species the gametes are amoeboid. In *Spirillina vivipara* (Fig. 184, A, 1–5) the mature microspheric form (1) which measures 125–152 μ in diameter, becomes surrounded by an envelope composed of substrate debris

and viscous substance. Within the "multiple fission cyst," nuclear and cytoplasmic fissions form numerous small uninucleate megalospheric individuals which produce tests and emerge from the cyst

FIG. 184. Developmental cycles of Foraminifera (Myers). A, *Spirillina vivipara*; B, *Discorbis petalliformis*; C, *Elphidium crista*. 1, microspheric forms; 2, megalospheric forms, a-c, enlarged views of young megalospheric forms; 3, beginning of sexual reproduction; 4, gamete and zygote formation, a-c, gametes; 5, young microspheric forms, a-c, enlarged views of one in each species.

(2). They grow into mature megalospheric forms which measure $60\text{--}72\mu$ in diameter. Two to four such individuals become associated and transform into "fertilization cyst." (3). The nucleus in each individual divides twice or occasionally three times and thus formed multinucleate bodies escape from the tests within the cyst envelope where many gametocytes are produced by multiple fissions. Each gametocyte which contains 12 chromosomes divides into two amoeboid haploid gametes by meiosis. Gametes developed from different parents presumably undergo fusion in pairs and zygotes are pro-

FIG. 185. a, *Rhabdammina abyssorum*, $\times 5$ (Kühn); b, *Rhizammina algaiformis*, fragment of, $\times 14$ (Cushman); c, *Saccammina sphaerica*, $\times 8$ (Rhumbler); d, *Hyperammina subnodosa*, $\times 4$ (Brady); e, *Ammodiscus incertus*, $\times 20$ (Kühn); f, *Silicina limitata*, $\times 13$ (Cushman); g, *Reophax nodulosus*, $\times 3$ (Brady).

duced (4). Each zygote becomes proloculum in which the nucleus divides twice and when the coiled tubular chamber of test grows to about three-quarters of a whorl, young microspheric individuals escape from the cyst and lead independent existence (5). Myers reports the development of *Patellina corrugata* is similar to that of *Spirillina*, except the amoeboid gametes possess 12 haploid number of chromosomes.

In *Discorbis patelliformis* (Fig. 184, B, 1-5), the same investigator noticed no fertilization cyst during the sexual reproduction, but two megalospheric individuals come in contact and flagellate gametes are produced in them. The zygotes develop within the space formed by the dissolution of septa between chambers and tests; the zygote nucleus divides repeatedly within each zygote and forms about 40 nuclei before a test is secreted. In *Elphidium crista* (Fig. 184, C, 1-5), there is no direct association of megalospheric individuals dur-

ing sexual reproduction. The flagellated gametes produced in each, are set free in the water and the fusion of the gametes depends entirely upon the chance meeting.

More than 300 genera of extinct and living Foraminifera are now known. Cushman distinguished 45 families. The present work follows Cushman in recognizing and differentiating 44 families, and lists one genus as an example for each, but places *Gromia* and allied genera in the order Testacea (p. 374).

Test entirely or in part arenaceous

Test single-chambered or rarely an irregular group of similar chambers loosely attached

Test with a central chamber, 2 or more arms; fossil and recent. . . .
 Family 1 *Astrorhizidae*

Genus **Rhabdammina** Sars (Fig. 185, *a*)

Test without a central chamber, elongate, open at both ends; fossil and recent. Family 2 *Rhizamminidae*

Genus **Rhizammina** Brady (Fig. 185, *b*)

Test a chamber or rarely series of similar chambers loosely attached, with normally a single opening; fossil and recent.
 Family 3 *Saccamminidae*

Genus **Saccammina** Sars (Fig. 185, *c*)

Test 2-chambered, a proloculum and long undivided tubular second chamber

Test with the second chamber, simple or branching, not coiled; mostly recent and also fossil. Family 4 *Hyperamminidae*

Genus **Hyperammina** Brady (Fig. 185, *d*)

Test with the second chamber usually coiled at least in young
 Test of arenaceous material with much cement, usually yellowish or reddish brown; fossil and recent. Family 5 *Ammodiscidae*

Genus **Ammodiscus** Reuss (Fig. 185, *e*)

Test of siliceous material, second chamber partially divided; fossils only. Family 6 *Silicinidae*

Genus **Silicina** Bornemann (Fig. 185, *f*)

Test typically many-chambered

Test with all chambers in a rectilinear series; fossil and recent.
 Family 7 *Reophacidae*

Genus **Reophax** Montfort (Fig. 185, *g*)

Test planispirally coiled at least in young
 Axis of coil, short; many uncoiled forms; fossil and recent.
 Family 8 *Lituolidae*

Genus *Lituola* Lamarck (Fig. 186, a)

Axis of coil usually long, all close-coiled

Interior not labyrinthic; fossil only. Family 9 Fusulinidae

Genus *Fusulina* Fisher (Fig. 186, b)

Interior labyrinthic; fossil only. Family 10 Loftusiidae

Genus *Loftusia* Brady

Test typically biserial at least in young of microspheric form; fossil and recent. Family 11 Textulariidae

FIG. 186. a, *Lituola nautiloidea* (Cushman); b, section through a *Fusulina* (Carpenter); c, *Textularia agglutinans*, $\times 90$ (Rhumbler); d, *Verneuilingia propinqua*, $\times 8$ (Brady); e, *Valvulina triangularis*, (d'Orbigny); f, *Trochammina inflata*, $\times 32$ (Brady); g, *Placopsilina cenomana* (Reuss); h, *Tetrataxis palaeotrochus*, $\times 15$ (Brady); i, *Spiroloculina limbata*, $\times 20$ (Brady); j, *Triloculina trigonula*, $\times 15$ (Brady); k, *Fischerina helix*, $\times 32$ (Heron-Allen and Earland); l, *Vertebralina striata*, $\times 40$ (Kühn); m, *Alveolinella mello*, $\times 35$ (Brady).

Genus *Textularia* DeFrance (Fig. 186, c)

Test typically triserial at least in young of microspheric form

Aperture usually without a tooth, test becoming simpler in higher forms; fossil and recent. Family 12 Verneuilingiidae

Genus *Verneuilingia* d'Orbigny (Fig. 186, d)

Aperture typically with a tooth, test becoming conical in higher forms; fossil and recent. Family 13 Valvulinidae

Genus **Valvulina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 186, *e*)

Test with whole body labyrinthic, large, flattened, or cylindrical;
recent.....Family 14 Neusiniidae

Genus **Neusina** Goës

Test trochoid at least while young

Mostly free, typically trochoid throughout; fossil and recent..
.....Family 15 Trochamminidae

Genus **Trochammina** Parker and Jones (Fig. 186, *f*)

Attached; young trochoid, later stages variously formed; fossil and
recent.....Family 16 Placopsiliniidae

Genus **Placopsilina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 186, *g*)

Free; conical, mostly of large size; fossil only.....
.....Family 17 Orbitolinidae

Genus **Tetrataxis** Ehrenberg (Fig. 186, *h*)

Test coiled in varying planes, wall imperforate, with arenaceous
portion only on the exterior; fossil and recent.....
.....Family 18 Miliolidae (in part)

Genus **Spiroloculina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 186, *i*)

Test calcareous, imperforate, porcellaneous

Test with chambers coiled in varying planes, at least in young; aperture
large, toothed; fossil and recent..Family 18 Miliolidae (in part)

Genus **Triloculina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 186, *j*)

Test trochoid; fossil and recent.....Family 19 Fischeriniidae

Genus **Fischerina** Terquem (Fig. 186, *k*)

Test planispiral at least in young

Axis very short, chambers usually simple; fossil and recent.....
.....Family 20 Ophthalmitidae

Genus **Vertebralina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 186, *l*)

Axis short, test typically compressed and often discoid, chambers
mostly with many chamberlets; fossil and recent.....
.....Family 21 Peneroplidae

Genus **Peneroplis** Montfort (Figs. 4; 187)

Axis typically elongate, chamberlets developed; mainly fossil.....
.....Family 22 Alveolinellidae

Genus **Alveolinella** Douvillé (Fig. 186, *m*)

Test globular, aperture small, not toothed; recent only.....
.....Family 23 Keramosphaeridae

FIG. 187. Diagram illustrating the life-cycle of *Peneroplis pertusus* (Winter). a-f, megalospheric generation; g, gamete formation; h-k, isogamy; l-n, microspheric generation; o, multiple division.

Genus *Keramosphaera* Brady

Test calcareous, perforate

Test vitreous with a glassy lustre, aperture typically radiate, not trochoid

Test planispirally coiled or becoming straight, or single-chambered;
fossil and recent.....Family 24 Lagenidae .

Genus **Lagena** Walker and Jacob (Fig. 188, *a*)

Test biserial or elongate spiral; fossil and recent.
 Family 25 Polymorphinidae

Genus **Polymorphina** d'Orbigny

Test not vitreous; aperture not radiating

Test planispiral, occasionally trochoid, then usually with processes
 along the suture lines, septa single, no canal system; fossil and
 recent. Family 26 Nonionidae

FIG. 188. *a*, *Lagena striata*, $\times 50$ (Rhumbler); *b*, *Elphidium strigilata*, $\times 40$ (Kühn); *c*, *Operculina ammonoides*, $\times 50$ (Kühn); *d*, *Pavonina flabelliformis*, $\times 30$ (Brady); *e*, *Hantkenina alabamensis*, $\times 40$ (Cushman); *f*, *Bolivina punctata*, $\times 100$ (Kühn); *g*, *Rotalia beccarii*, $\times 40$ (Kühn); *h*, *Asterigerina carinata*, $\times 30$ (d'Orbigny from Kühn).

Genus **Elphidium** Montfort (Figs. 5; 184, C; 188, *b*)

(*Polystomella* Lamarek)

Test planispiral, at least in young, generally lenticular, septa double,
 canal system in higher forms; fossil and recent.
 Family 27 Camerinidae

Genus **Operculina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 188, *c*)

Test generally biserial in at least microspheric form, aperture usually
 large, without teeth; fossil and recent.
 Family 28 Heteroheliciidae

Genus **Pavonina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 188, *d*)

Test planispiral, bi- or tri-serial with elongate spines and lobed aperture; fossil and recent.....Family 29 Hantkeninidae

Genus **Hantkenina** Cushman (Fig. 188, *e*)

Test typically with an internal tube, elongate

Aperture generally loop-shaped or cribrate; fossil and recent. . .
.....Family 30 Buliminidae

Genus **Bolivina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 188, *f*)

Aperture narrow, curved, with an overhanging portion; mostly fossil, also recent.....Family 31 Ellipsoidinidae

Genus **Ellipsoidina** Seguenza

Test trochoid, at least in young of microspheric form, usually coarsely perforate; when lenticular, with equatorial and lateral chambers

Test trochoid throughout, simple; aperture ventral

No alternating supplementary chambers on ventral side; fossil and recent.....Family 32 Rotaliidae

Genus **Rotalia** Lamarck (Fig. 188, *g*)Genus **Spirillina** Ehrenberg (Fig. 184, *A*)Genus **Patellina** Williamson.Genus **Discorbis** Lamarck (Fig. 184, *B*)

Alternating supplementary chambers on ventral side; fossil and recent.....Family 33 Amphisteginidae

Genus **Asterigerina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 188, *h*)

Test trochoid and aperture ventral in young

With supplementary material and large spines, independent of chambers; fossil and recent.....Family 34 Calcarinidae

Genus **Calcarina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 189, *a*)

With later chambers in annular series or globose with multiple apertures, but not covering earlier ones; fossil and recent. . .

.....Family 35 Halkyardiidae

Genus **Halkyardia** Heron-Allen and Earland (Fig. 189, *b*)

With later chambers somewhat biserial; aperture elongate in the axis of coil; fossil and recent..Family 36 Cassidulinidae

Genus **Cassidulina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 189, c)

With later chambers becoming involute, very few making up the exterior in adult; aperture typically elongate, semicircular; in a few species circular; fossil and recent. Family 37 Chilostomellidae

Genus **Allomorphina** Reuss (Fig. 189, d)

With chambers mostly finely spinose and wall cancellated, adapted, for pelagic life, globular forms with the last chamber completely involute; aperture umbilicate or along the suture; fossil and recent. Family 38 Globigerinidae

FIG. 189. a, *Calcarina defrancei*, $\times 25$ (Brady); b, *Halkyardia radiata*, $\times 15$ (Cushman); c, *Cassidulina laevigata*, $\times 25$ (Brady); d, *Allomorphina trigona*, $\times 40$ (Brady); e, *Globigerina bulloides*, $\times 30$ (Kühn); f, *Anomalina punctulata* (d'Orbigny); g, *Rupertia stabilis*, $\times 50$ (Brady).

Genus **Globigerina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 189, e)

Early chambers globigerine, later ones spreading and compressed; fossil and recent. Family 39 Globorotaliidae

Genus **Globorotalia** Cushman

Test trochoid at least in young, aperture peripheral or becoming dorsal

Mostly attached, dorsal side usually flattened; fossil and recent Family 40 Anomalinidae

Genus **Anomalina** d'Orbigny (Fig. 189, f)

Later chambers in annular series; fossil and recent. Family 41 Planorbulinidae

Genus **Planorbulina** d'Orbigny

Test trochoid in very young, later growing upward

Later chambers in loose spiral; fossil and recent.
 Family 42 Rupertiidae

Genus **Rupertia** Wallich (Fig. 189, g)

Later chambers in masses or branching, highly colored; mostly
 recent, also fossil. Family 43 Homotremidae

Genus **Homotrema** Hickson

Test trochoid in the very young of microspheric form, chambers
 becoming annular later, with definite equatorial and lateral
 chambers, often with pillars; fossil only.
 Family 44 Orbitoididae

Genus **Orbitoides** d'Orbigny

References

- BRADY, B. H. 1884 Report on the Foraminifera dredged by H.M.S. *Challenger*, during the years 1873 to 1876. Rep. Voy. Challenger, Vol. 9.
- CUSHMAN, J. A. 1940 *Foraminifera: their classification and economic use*. Third edition. Cambridge, Mass.
- MYERS, E. H. 1935 The life history of *Patellina corrugata* Williamson, a foraminifer. Bull. Scripps Inst. Oceanogr. Uni. Calif., Tech. Ser., Vol. 3.
- 1936 The life-cycle of *Spirillina vivipara* Ehrenberg, with notes on morphogenesis, systematics and distribution of the Foraminifera. Jour. Roy. Micr. Soc., Vol. 56.
- 1938 The present state of our knowledge concerning the life cycle of the Foraminifera. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., Vol. 24.
- 1940 Observations on the origin and fate of flagellated gametes in multiple tests of *Discorbis* (Foraminifera). Jour. Marine Biol. Ass. United Kingdom, Vol. 24.
- RHUMBLER, L. 1904 Systematische Zusammenstellung der rezenten Reticulosa (Nuda u. Foraminifera). Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 3.

CHAPTER 22

Subclass 2 Actinopoda Calkins

THE Actinopoda are divided into two orders as follows:

- Without central capsule.....Order 1 Heliozoa
- With central capsule.....Order 2 Radiolaria (p. 417)

Order 1 **Heliozoa** Haeckel

The Heliozoa are, as a rule, spherical in form with many radiating axopodia. The cytoplasm is differentiated, distinctly in *Actinosphaerium*, or indistinctly in other species, into the coarsely vacuolated ectoplasm and the less transparent and vacuolated endoplasm. The food of Heliozoa consists of living Protozoa or Protophyta; thus their mode of obtaining nourishment is holozoic. A large organism may sometimes be captured by a group of Heliozoa which gather around the prey. When an active ciliate or a small rotifer comes in contact with an axopodium, it seems to become suddenly paralyzed and, therefore, it has been suggested that the pseudopodia contain some poisonous substances. The axial filaments of the axopodia disappear and the pseudopodia become enlarged and surround the food completely. Then the food matter is carried into the main part of the body and is digested. The ectoplasm contains several contractile vacuoles and numerous refractile granules which are scattered throughout. The endoplasm is denser and usually devoid of granules. In the axopodium, the cytoplasm undergoes streaming movements. The hyaline and homogeneous axial filament runs straight through both the ectoplasm and the endoplasm, and terminates in a point just outside the nuclear membrane. When the pseudopodium is withdrawn, its axial filament disappears completely, though the latter sometimes disappears without the withdrawal of the pseudopodium itself. In *Acanthocystis* the nucleus is eccentric (Fig. 192, *b*), but there is a central granule, or centroplast, in the center of the body from which radiate the axial filaments of the axopodia. In multinucleate *Actinosphaerium*, the axilia filaments terminate at the periphery of the endoplasm. In *Camptonema*, an axial filament arises from each of the nuclei (Fig. 190, *d*).

The skeletal structure of the Heliozoa varies among different species. The body may be naked, covered by a gelatinous mantle, or provided with a lattice-test with or without spicules. The spicules are variable in form and location and may be used for specific dif-

ferentiation. In some forms there occur colored bodies bearing chromatophores, which are considered as holophytic Mastigophora (p. 25) living in the heliozoans as symbionts.

The Heliozoa multiply by binary fission or budding. Incomplete division may result in the formation of colonies, as in Rhaphidiophrys. In Actinosphaerium, nuclear phenomena have been studied by several investigators (p. 164). In Acanthocystis and Oxnerella (Fig. 58), the central granule behaves somewhat like the centriole in a metazoan mitosis. Budding has been known in numerous species. In Acanthocystis the nucleus undergoes amitosis several times, thus forming several nuclei, one of which remains in place while the other migrates toward the body surface. Each peripheral nucleus becomes surrounded by a protruding cytoplasmic body which becomes covered by spicules and which is set free in the water as a bud. These small individuals are supposed to grow into larger forms, the central granules being produced from the nucleus during the growth. Formation of swarmers is known in a few genera and sexual reproduction occurs in some forms. The Heliozoa live chiefly in fresh water, although some inhabit the sea.

Without gelatinuous envelope

Without flagella

Pseudopodia arise from thick basal parts, branching. Family 1 Actinocomidae

Pseudopodia not branching, cytoplasm highly vacuolated. Family 2 Actinophryidae (p. 408)

With 1-2 flagella. Family 3 Ciliophryidae (p. 409)

With gelatinous envelope; with or without skeleton

Without flagella

Without chitinous capsule

Without definite skeleton. Family 4 Lithocollidae (p. 409)

With chitinous or siliceous spicules or scales

With chitinous spicules. . . . Family 5 Heterophryidae (p. 410)

With siliceous skeleton

Cup-like plates over body; 2-3 pseudopodia often grouped. Family 6 Clathrellidae (p. 412)

Scales flattened, not cup-like. Family 7 Acanthocystidae (p. 412)

With chitinous retiform capsule. . . . Family 8 Clathulinidae (p. 414)

With numerous flagella, among axopodia; siliceous scales. Family 9 Myriophryidae (p. 414)

Family 1 Actinocomidae Poche

Genus *Actinocoma* Penard. Body spherical; one or more contractile vacuoles; nucleus with a thick membrane, central; filopodia, not axopodia, simple or in brush-like groups; fresh water.

A. ramosa P. (Fig. 190, a). Average diameter 14–26 μ .

Family 2 Actinophyridae Claus

Genus **Actinophyrs** Ehrenberg. Spheroidal; cytoplasm highly vacuolated, especially ectoplasm; with often symbiotic zoochlorellae; nucleus central; 1 to many contractile vacuoles; axopodia straight,

FIG. 190. a, *Actinocoma ramosa*, $\times 630$ (Penard); b, *Actinophyrs sol*, $\times 400$ (Kudo); c, *Actinosphaerium eichhorni*, $\times 45$ (Kudo); d, *Campantonema nutans*, $\times 350$ (Schaudinn).

numerous, axial filaments terminate at surface of the nucleus; “sun animalcules”; fresh water.

A. sol E. (Figs. 82; 190, b). Spherical; ectoplasm vacuolated; endoplasm granulated with numerous small vacuoles; a large central nucleus; solitary but may be colonial when young; diameter variable, average being 40–50 μ ; among plants in still fresh water. Reproduc-

tion studied by Bělař (p. 164); Looper (1928) studied its food reactions.

A. vesiculata Penard. Ectoplasm with saccate secondary vesicles, extending out of body surface between axopodia; nucleus central, with many endosomes; $25-30\mu$ in average diameter; fresh water.

Genus **Actinosphaerium** Stein. Spherical; ectoplasm consists almost entirely of large vacuoles in one or several layers; endoplasm with numerous small vacuoles; numerous nuclei; axial filaments end in the inner zone of ectoplasm. 2 species.

A. eichhorni Ehrenberg (Figs. 6; 190, c). Numerous nuclei scattered in the periphery of endoplasm; 2 or more contractile vacuoles, large; axial filaments arise from a narrow zone of dense cytoplasm at the border line between endoplasm and ectoplasm; body large, diameter $200-300\mu$, sometimes up to 1 mm.; nuclei $12-20\mu$ in diameter; among vegetation in freshwater bodies.

A. arachnoideum Penard. Ectoplasm irregularly vacuolated; no distinct endoplasmic differentiation; nuclei smaller in number; pseudopodia of 2 kinds; one straight, very long and the other filiform, and anastomosing; $70-80\mu$ in diameter; fresh water.

Genus **Camptonema** Schaudinn. Spheroidal; axial filaments of axopodia end in nuclei about 50 in number; vacuoles numerous and small in size; salt water.

C. nutans S. (Fig. 190, d). About 150μ in diameter.

Genus **Oxnerella** Dobell. Spherical; cytoplasm indistinctly differentiated; eccentric nucleus with a large endosome; axial filaments take their origin in the central granule; no contractile vacuole; nuclear division typical mitosis (Fig. 58).

O. maritima D. (Fig. 58). Small, $10-22\mu$ in diameter; solitary, floating or creeping; salt water.

Family 3 Ciliophryidae Poche

Genus **Ciliophrys** Cienkowski. Spherical with extremely fine radiating filopodia, giving the appearance of a typical heliozoan, with a single flagellum which is difficult to distinguish from the numerous filopodia, but which becomes conspicuous when the pseudopodia are withdrawn; fresh or salt water.

C. infusionum C. (Fig. 191, a). $25-30\mu$ long; freshwater infusion.

C. marina Caullery. About 10μ in diameter; salt water.

Family 4 Lithocollidae Poche

Genus **Lithocolla** Schulze. Spherical body; outer envelope with usually one layer of sand-grains, diatoms, etc.; nucleus eccentric.

L. globosa S. (Fig. 191, b). Body reddish with numerous small colored granules; nucleus large; central granule unknown; envelope 35–50 μ in diameter; in lakes, ponds, and rivers; also in brackish water.

Genus **Astrodisculus** Greeff. Spherical with gelatinous envelope, free from inclusions, sometimes absent; no demarcation between 2 regions of the cytoplasm; pseudopodia fine without granules; fresh water.

A. radians G. (Fig. 191, c). Outer surface usually with adherent foreign bodies and bacteria; cytoplasm often loaded with green, yellow, or brown granules; nucleus eccentric; a contractile vacuole; diameter 25–30 μ including envelope; in pools and ditches.

Genus **Actinolophus** Schulze. Body pyriform, enveloped in a gelatinous mantle; stalked; stalk apparently hollow; axopodia long, numerous; nucleus eccentric; salt water.

A. pedunculatus S. (Fig. 191, d). Diameter about 30 μ ; stalk about 100 μ long.

Genus **Elaeorhanis** Greeff. Spherical; mucilaginous envelope with sand-grains and diatoms; cytoplasm with a large oil globule; nucleus eccentric; 1 or more contractile vacuoles; pseudopodia not granulated, sometimes forked; fresh water.

E. cincta G. (Fig. 191, e). Bluish with a large yellow oil globule; without any food particles; no central granule; pseudopodia rigid, but apparently without axial filaments, sometimes forked; young forms colonial; solitary when mature; outer diameter 50–60 μ ; body itself 25–30 μ ; in lakes and pools.

Genus **Sphaerastrum** Greeff. Somewhat flattened; greater part of axopodia and body covered by a thick gelatinous mantle; a central granule and an eccentric nucleus; fresh water.

S. fockei G. (Fig. 191, f). Diameter about 30 μ ; often colonial; in swamps.

Family 5 **Heterophryidae** Poche

Genus **Heterophrys** Archer. Spherical; mucilaginous envelope thick, with numerous radial, chitinous spicules which project beyond periphery; nucleus eccentric; axial filaments originate in a central granule; fresh or salt water.

H. myriopoda A. (Fig. 191, g). Nucleus eccentric; cytoplasm loaded with spherical algae, living probably as symbionts; contractile vacuoles indistinct; 50–80 μ in diameter; in pools and marshes; and also among marine algae.

H. glabrescens Penard. Spherical; gelatinous envelope poorly developed; chitinous needles indistinct; pseudopodia very long; 11–15 μ in diameter; fresh water.

FIG. 191. a, *Ciliophrys infusionum*, $\times 400$ (Bütschli); b, *Lithocolla globosa*, $\times 250$ (Penard); c, *Astrodisculus radians*, $\times 600$ (Penard); d, *Actinolophus pedunculatus*, $\times 400$ (Schultze); e, *Elaeorhanis cincta*, $\times 300$ (Penard); f, *Sphaerastrum fockei*, $\times 300$ (Stubenrauch); g, *Heterophrys myriopoda*, $\times 270$ (Penard).

Family 6 **Clathrellidae** Poche

Genus **Clathrella** Penard. Envelope distinct, polygonal; surface with uniform alveoli with intervalveolar portion extending out; envelope appears to be continuous, but in reality formed by a series of cup-like bodies; contractile vacuole large; voluminous nucleus eccentric; filopodia straight, some bifurcated, arising between "cups."

C. foreli P. (Fig. 192, *a*). Envelope about 40–55 μ in diameter; fresh water.

Family 7 **Acanthocystidae** Claus

Genus **Acanthocystis** Carter. Spherical; siliceous scales, arranged tangentially and radiating siliceous spines with pointed or bifurcated ends; nucleus and endoplasm eccentric; a distinct central granule in which the axial filaments terminate. Several species.

A. aculeata Hertwig and Lesser (Fig. 192, *b*). Tangential scales stout and pointed; spines curved and nail-headed; cytoplasm greyish; a single contractile vacuole; diameter 35–40 μ ; spines about 1/3 the body diameter; in fresh water.

Genus **Pompholyxophrys** Archer. Spherical; outer mucilaginous envelope with minute colorless spherical granules arranged in concentric layers; nucleus eccentric; contractile vacuoles; pseudopodia long, straight, acicular; fresh water.

P. punicea A. (Fig. 192, *c*). Body colorless or reddish, with usually many colored granules and green or brown food particles; nucleus large, eccentric; solitary, active; diameter 25–35 μ ; outer envelope 5–10 μ larger; in pools.

Genus **Raphidiophrys** Archer. Spherical; mucilaginous envelope with spindle-shaped or discoidal spicules which extend normally outwards along pseudopodia; nucleus and endoplasm eccentric; solitary or colonial; fresh water. Several species.

R. pallida Schulze (Fig. 192, *d*). Outer gelatinous envelope crowded with curved lenticular spicules, forming accumulations around pseudopodia; ectoplasm granulated; nucleus eccentric; contractile vacuoles; axial filaments arise from the central granule; solitary; diameter 50–60 μ ; nucleus 12–15 μ in diameter; spicules 20 μ long; among vegetation in still fresh water.

Genus **Raphidocystis** Penard. Spicules of various forms, but unlike those found in the last genus.

R. tubifera P. (Fig. 192, *e*). Spicules tubular with enlarged extremity; diameter about 18 μ ; envelope 25 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Wagnerella** Mereschowsky. Spherical, supported by a

cylindrical stalk with an enlarged base; small siliceous spicules; nucleus in the base of stalk; multiplication by budding.

FIG. 192. a, *Clathrella foreli*, $\times 250$ (Penard); b, *Acanthocystis aculeata*, $\times 300$ (Stern); c, *Pompholyxophrys punicea*, $\times 260$ (West); d, *Raphidio-phrys pallida*, $\times 300$ (Penard); e, *Raphidocystis tubifera*, $\times 500$ (Penard); f, *Wagnerella borealis*, $\times 75$ (Kühn); g, *Pinaciophora fluvialis*, $\times 250$ (Penard).

W. borealis M. (Fig. 192, f). About 180μ in diameter; stalk often up to 1.1 mm. long; salt water.

Genus **Pinaciophora** Greeff. Spherical; outer envelope composed of circular discs, each being perforated with 19 minute pores; cytoplasm reddish; fresh water.

P. fluviatilis G. (Fig. 192, *g*). Diameter 45–50 μ , but somewhat variable; in freshwater ponds.

Family 8 Clathrulinidae Claus

Genus **Clathrulina** Cienkowski. Envelope spherical, homogeneous, with numerous regularly arranged openings; with a stalk; protoplasm central, not filling the capsule; nucleus central; pseudopodia numerous, straight or forked, granulated; fresh water.

C. elegans C. (Fig. 193, *a*). Envelope colorless to brown, perforated by numerous comparatively large circular or polygonal openings; 1 or more contractile vacuoles; nucleus central; diameter 60–90 μ , openings 6–10 μ ; length of stalk 2–4 times the diameter of envelope, 3–4 μ wide; solitary or colonial; among vegetation in ponds.

Genus **Hedriocystis** Hertwig and Lesser. Envelope spherical, openings minute, surrounded by polyhedral facets or ridges; with stalk; solitary or colonial; fresh water.

H. reticulata Penard (Fig. 193, *b*). Envelope colorless or pale yellow, facets regularly polygonal with raised borders; stalk solid, straight; nucleus central; 1 contractile vacuole; each pseudopodium arises from a pore located in the center of a facet; solitary; capsule about 25 μ in diameter; body about 12 μ in diameter; stalk about 70 μ by 1.5 μ ; in marshy pools.

Genus **Elaster** Grimm. Envelope spherical, delicate, penetrated by numerous more or less large pores; without stalk; pseudopodia many, straight filose.

E. greeffi G. (Fig. 193, *c*). Diameter of envelope 20 μ ; envelope delicate, colorless; many pseudopodia; in peaty soil.

Genus **Choanocystis** Penard. Spherical envelope with perforations which possess conical borders; openings of cones provided with funnel-like expansions, edges of which nearly touch one another; fresh water.

C. lepidula P. (Fig. 193, *d*). Diameter 10–13 μ ; envelope delicate; 1 or more contractile vacuoles; pseudopodia very long.

Family 9 Myriophryidae Poche

Genus **Myriophrys** Penard. Spherical or ovoid, covered with a protoplasmic envelope containing scales (?), surrounded by numerous fine processes; endoplasm vesicular; a large nucleus eccentric; a

large contractile vacuole; long pseudopodia granulated and attenuated toward ends.

M. paradoxa P. (Fig. 193, e). Average diameter 40μ ; in fresh-water swamps.

FIG. 193. a, *Clathrulina elegans*, $\times 250$ (Leidy); b, *Hedriocystis reticulata*, $\times 500$ (Brown); c, *Elaster greeffi*, $\times 680$ (Penard); d, *Choanocystis lepidula*, $\times 690$ (Penard); e, *Myriophrys paradoxa*, $\times 300$ (Penard).

References

- BĚLAR, K. 1922 Untersuchungen an *Actinophrys sol* Ehrenberg. I, II. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vols. 46, 48.
- CASH, J. and G. H. WAILES 1921 *The British freshwater Rhizopoda and Heliozoa*. Vol. 5.
- LEIDY, J. 1879 Freshwater Rhizopods of North America. Rep. U. S. Geol. Survey. Vol. 12.
- PENARD, E. 1904 *Les Héliozaaires d'eau douce*. Geneva.
- 1904 *Les Sarcodinés des Grands Lacs*. Geneva.
- VALKANOV, A. 1940 Die Heliozoen und Proteomyxien. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 93.

CHAPTER 23

Order 2 Radiolaria Müller

THE Radiolaria are pelagic in various oceans. A vast area of the ocean floor is known to be covered with the ooze made up chiefly of radiolarian skeletons. They seem to have been equally abundant during former geologic ages, since rocks composed of their skeletons occur in various geological formations. Thus this group is the second group of Protozoa important to geologists.

The body is generally spherical, although radially or bilaterally symmetrical forms are also encountered. The cytoplasm is divided distinctly into two regions which are sharply delimited by a membranous structure known as the **central capsule**. This is a single or double perforated membrane of pseudochitinous or mucinoid nature. Although its thickness varies a great deal, the capsule is ordinarily very thin and only made visible after addition of reagents. Its shape varies according to the form of the organism; thus in spherical forms it is spherical, in discoidal or lenticular forms it is more or less ellipsoidal, while in a few cases it shows a number of protruding processes. The capsule is capable of extension as the organism grows and of dissolution at the time of multiplication. The cytoplasm on either side of the capsule communicates with the other side through pores which may be large and few or small and numerous. The intracapsular portion of the body is the seat of reproduction, while the extracapsular region is nutritive and hydrostatic in function. The intracapsular cytoplasm is granulated, often greatly vacuolated, and is stratified either radially or concentrically. It contains one or more nuclei, pigments, oil droplets, fat globules, and crystals. The nucleus is usually of vesicular type, but its form, size, and structure, vary among different species and also at different stages of development even in one and the same species.

A thin assimilative layer, or matrix, surrounds the central capsule. In Tripylea, waste material forms a brownish mass known as phaeodium, around the chief aperture (astropyle) of the capsule. Then there is a highly alveolated region, termed calymma, in which the alveoli are apparently filled with a mucilaginous secretion of the cytoplasm. Brandt showed that the vertical movement of some Radiolaria is due to the formation and expulsion of a fluid which consists of water saturated with carbon dioxide. Under ordinary weather and temperature conditions, the interchange between the alveoli

and the exterior is gradual and there is a balance of loss and gain of the fluid, so that the organisms float on the surface of the sea. Under rough weather conditions or at extraordinary high temperatures, the pseudopodia are withdrawn, the alveoli burst, and the organisms descend into deeper water, where the alveoli are reformed.

The Radiolaria feed on microplankton such as copepods, diatoms, and various Protozoa. The food is taken in through pseudopodia and passed down into the deeper region of calymma where it is digested in food vacuoles. The Radiolaria can, however, live under experimental conditions without solid food if kept under light. This is ordinarily attributed to the action of the yellow corpuscles which are present in various parts of the body, although they are, as a rule, located in the calymma. In Actipylea they are found only in intracapsular cytoplasm, and in Tripylea they are absent altogether. They are spherical bodies, about 15μ in diameter, with a cellulose wall, 2 chromatophores, a pyrenoid, starch, and a single nucleus. They appear to multiply by fission. These bodies are considered as zooxanthellae (p. 215). In the absence of organic food material, the Radiolaria live probably by utilizing the products of holophytic nutrition of these symbiotic organisms.

The axopodia arise from either the extracapsular or the intracapsular portion and radiate in spherical forms in all directions, as in Heliozoa. In Actipylea, myonemes are present in certain pseudopodia and produce circular groups of short, rod-like bodies clustered around each of the radial spines (Fig. 195, c). They connect the peripheral portion of the body with the pseudopodial covering of the spicule and possess a great contractile power, supposedly with hydrostatic function (p. 54).

The skeletal structure of Radiolaria varies considerably from simple to complex and has a taxonomic value. The chemical nature of the skeleton is used in distinguishing the major subdivisions of the order. In the Actipylea it seems to be made up of strontium sulphate, while in the three other groups, Peripylea, Monopylea, and Tripylea, it consists fundamentally of siliceous substances. The skeleton of the Actipylea is sharply marked from others in form and structure. The majority of this group possess 20 rods radiating from center. The rod-shaped skeletons emerge from the body in most cases along five circles, which are comparable to the equatorial, two tropical and two circumpolar circles of the globe, which arrangement is known as **Müller's law**, since J. Müller first noticed it in 1858.

The life-cycle of the Radiolaria is very incompletely known (Fig. 194). Binary or multiple fission or budding has been seen in some

Peripylea, Actipylea, and Tripylea. Multiple division is also known to occur in Thalassophysidae in which it is the sole known means of reproduction. The central capsule becomes very irregular in its outline and the nucleus breaks up into numerous chromatin globules. Finally the capsule and the intracapsular cytoplasm become trans-

FIG. 194. Diagram illustrating the life-cycle of *Actipylea* (Kühn). a, mature individual; b, c, binary fission; d, e, multiplication by budding; f, mature individual similar to a; g, formation of swarmer; h-j, supposed, but not observed, union of two swarmer producing a zygote; k, l, young individuals.

formed into numerous small bodies, each containing several nuclei. Further changes are unknown. Swarmer-formation is known in some forms. In *Thalassicolla*, the central capsule becomes separated from the remaining part of the body and the nuclei divide into a number of small nuclei, around each of which condenses a small avoidal mass

of cytoplasm. They soon develop flagella. In the meantime the capsule descends to a depth of several hundred meters, where its wall bursts and the flagellate swimmers are liberated (*g*). Both isoswarmers and anisoswarmers occur. The former often contain a crystal and a few fat globules. Of the latter, the macroswarmers possess a nucleus and refringent spherules in the cytoplasm. Some forms possess 2 flagella, one of which is coiled around the groove of the body, which makes them resemble certain dinoflagellates. Further development is unknown; it is supposed that the anisoswarmers are sexual and isoswarmers asexual generations.

Enormous numbers of species of Radiolaria are known. An outline of the classification is given below, together with a few examples, of the genera.

Skeleton composed of strontium sulphate. Suborder 1 Actipylea
 Skeleton composed of other substances

Central capsule uniformly perforated, skeleton either tangential to the capsule or radiating without reaching the intracapsular region. Suborder 2 Peripylea (p. 421)

Central capsule not uniformly perforated

Capsule monaxonic, bears at one pole a perforated plate forming the base of an inward-directed cone. Suborder 3 Monopylea (p. 423)

Capsule with 3 openings: 1 astropyle and 2 parapyles. Suborder 4 Tripylea (p. 424)

Suborder 1 Actipylea Hertwig

Radial spines, 10–200, not arranged according to Müller's law.

Spines radiate from a common center, ancestral forms (Haeckel). Family 1 Actineliidae

Genus *Actinelius* (Fig. 195, *a*)

10–16 spines irregularly set. Family 2 Acanthociasmidae

Genus *Acanthociasma* (Fig. 195, *b*)

Radial spines, few, arranged according to Müller's law

Without tangential skeletons

Spines more or less uniform in size

Spicules circular in cross-section. Family 3 Acanthometridae

Genus *Acanthometron* (Fig. 195, *c*)

Spicules cruciform in cross-section. Family 4 Acanthoniidae

Genus *Acanthonia* (Fig. 195, *d*)

2 opposite spines much larger. Family 5 Amphilonchidae

Genus **Amphilonche** (Fig. 195, e)

With tangential skeletons

20 radial spines of equal size, shell composed of small plates, each with one pore.....Family 6 Sphaerocapsidae

Genus **Sphaerocapsa**

2 or 6 larger spines

2 enormously large conical sheathed spines.....Family 7 Diploconidae

FIG. 195. a, *Actinelius primordialis*, $\times 25$ (Haeckel); b, *Acanthociasma planum*, $\times 65$ (Mielck); c, *Acanthometron elasticum* (Hertwig); d, *Acanthonia tetracopa*, $\times 40$ (Schewiakoff); e, *Amphilonche hydrometrica*, $\times 130$ (Haeckel); f, *Hexaconus serratus*, $\times 100$ (Haeckel).

Genus **Diploconus**

6 large spines.....Family 8 Hexalaspidae

Genus **Hexaconus** (Fig. 195, f)

Suborder 2 Peripylea Hertwig

Solitary, skeleton wanting or simple spicules; mostly spherical

Nucleus spherical with smooth membrane

Vacuoles intracapsular.....Family 1 Physematiidae

Genus **Lampoxanthium** (Fig. 196, a)

Vacuoles extracapsular.....Family 2 Thalassicollidae

Genus **Thalassicolla** (Fig. 196, b)

Nuclear membrane not smoothly contoured

Nuclear wall branching out into pouches, structure similar to the last.....Family 3 Thalassophysidae

Genus **Thalassophysa**

FIG. 196 a, *Lampoxanthium pandora*, $\times 20$ (Haeckel); b, *Thalassicolla nucleata*, $\times 15$ (Huth).

Nuclear wall erenate
Huge double spicule.....Family 4 Thalassothamnidae

Genus **Thalassothamnus**

A latticed skeleton, with branching and thorny spines.....
.....Family 5 Orosphaeridae

Genus **Orosphaera**

Solitary, skeleton complex, often concentric
Central capsule and skeleton spherical.....Family 6 Sphaeroidae

Genus **Hexacontium** (Fig. 197, a)

Central capsule and skeleton elliptical or cylindrical.....
.....Family 7 Prunoidae

FIG. 197. a, *Hexacontium asteracanthion*, $\times 130$; b, *Pipetta tuba*, $\times 100$; c, *Staurocycilia phacostaurus*, $\times 130$; d, *Cenolarus primordialis*, $\times 100$; e, *Sphaerozoum ovodimare*, $\times 30$ (Haeckel).

Genus *Pipetta* (Fig. 197, b)

Central capsule and skeleton discoidal or lenticular
 Family 8 Discoidae

Genus *Staurocycilia* (Fig. 197, c)

Similar to the above, but flattened Family 9 Larcoidae

Genus *Cenolarus* (Fig. 197, d)

Colonial, individuals with anastomosing extracapsular cytoplasm, embedded in a jelly mass

Without latticed skeleton, but with siliceous spicules arranged tangentially to central capsule Family 10 Sphaerzoidae

Genus *Sphaerzoum* (Fig. 197, e)

Central capsule of each individual enclosed in a latticed skeleton
 Family 11 Collosphaeridae

Genus *Collosphaera*

FIG. 198. a, *Cystidium princeps*, $\times 120$; b, *Triplagia primordialis*, $\times 25$; c, *Lithocircus magnificus*, $\times 100$; d, *Dictyophimus hertwigi*, $\times 80$ (Haeckel).

Suborder 3 *Monopylea* Hertwig

Without any skeleton Family 1 Nassoidae

Genus *Cystidium* (Fig. 198, a)

With skeleton

Without a complete latticed skeleton

Skeleton a basal tripod Family 2 Plectoidae

Genus *Triplagia* (Fig. 198, b)

Skeleton a simple or multiple sagittal ring . . . Family 3 Stephoidae

Genus *Lithocircus* (Fig. 198, c)

With a complete latticed skeleton

Lattice skeleton single, without constriction . . . Family 4 Cyrtoidae

Genus **Dictyophimus** (Fig. 198, *d*)

Lattice skeleton multiple.....Family 5 Botryoidae

Genus **Phormobothrys**

Suborder 4 **Triplylea** Hertwig

Without skeleton; with isolated spicules

Skeleton consists of radial hollow rods and fine tangential needles
.....Family 1 Aulacanthidae

Genus **Aulacantha** (Fig. 199, *a*)

With foreign skeletons covering body surface.....
.....Family 2 Caementellidae

FIG. 199. *a*, *Aulacantha scolymantha*, $\times 30$ (Kühn); *b*, *Caementella stapedia*, $\times 65$ (Haeckel); *c*, *Aulosphaera labradoriensis*, $\times 10$ (Haecker).

Genus **Caementella** (Fig. 199, *b*)

With skeleton

1-2 (concentric) usually spherical skeletons

Outer lattice skeleton with triangular or areolar meshes.....
.....Family 3 Sagosphaeridae

Genus **Sagenoscene**

One lattice skeleton with hollow radial bars.....
.....Family 4 Aulosphaeridae

Genus **Aulosphaera** (Fig. 199, *c*)

2 concentric lattice skeletons connected by radial bars.....
.....Family 5 Cannosphaeridae

Genus **Cannosphaera**

One skeleton, simple, but variable in shape; bilaterally symmetrical

Skeleton with fine diatomaceous graining..Family 6 Challengeridae

Genus **Challengeron** (Fig. 200, a)

Skeleton smooth or with small spines. Family 7 Medusettidae

Genus **Medusetta** (Fig. 200, b)

One skeleton; spherical or polyhedral, with an opening and with radiating spines

Skeleton spherical or polyhedral, with uniformly large round pores
 Family 8 Castanellidae

FIG. 200. a, *Challengeron wyvillei*, $\times 105$ (Haeckel); b, *Medusetta ansata*, $\times 230$ (Borgert); c, *Castanidium murrayi*, $\times 25$ (Haecker); d, *Circoporus octahedrus*, $\times 65$ (Haeckel); e, *Tuscarora murrayi*, $\times 7$ (Haeckel); f, *Coelodendrum ramosissimum*, $\times 10$ (Haecker).

•Genus **Castanidium** (Fig. 200, c)

Skeleton similar to the last, but the base of each radial spine surrounded by pores. Family 9 Circoporidae

Genus **Circoporus** (Fig. 200, d)

Skeleton flask-shaped with 1-2 groups of spines.
 Family 10 Tuscaroridae

Genus **Tuscarora** (Fig. 200, e)

Central portion of skeleton consists of 2 valves

Valves thin, each with a conical process which divides into branched tubes. Family 11 Coelodendridae

Genus **Coelodendrum** (Fig. 200, f)

References

- BRANDT, K. 1905 Zur Systematik der koloniebildenden Radiolarien. Zool. Jahrb. Suppl., Vol. 8.
- BORGERT, A. 1905-1913 Mehrere Arbeiten ueber Familien der Tripyleen. Ergebn. d. Planktonexpedition. Vol. 3.
- HAECKEL, E. 1862-1887 *Die Radiolarien*. Eine Monographie. I, II. 1887 Rep. on the Radiolaria collected by H.M.S. Challenger. Challenger Rep. Zool. Vol. 18.
- HAECKER, V. 1908 Tiefseeradiolarien. Wiss. Ergebn. Deutsch. Tiefsee-Exp. a.d. Dampfer "Valdivia." Vol. 14.
- HERTWIG, R. 1879 *Der Organismus der Radiolarien*. Jena.

CHAPTER 24

Class 3 Sporozoa Leuckart

THE Sporozoa are without exception parasitic and bear spores. Their hosts are distributed in every animal phylum, from Protozoa to Chordata. As a rule, they are incapable of locomotion, but some when immature may move about by means of pseudopodia. They possess neither cilia nor flagella, except as gametes. In the forms that are confined to one host, the **spore** is usually enveloped by a resistant membrane which would enable it to withstand unfavorable conditions while outside of the host body, but in those having two host animals, as in *Plasmodium*, the sporozoite is naked. The method of nutrition is saprozoic or parasitic, the food being dissolved cytoplasm, tissue fluid, body fluid, or dissolved food material of the host.

Both asexual and sexual reproductions are well known in many species. Asexual reproduction by repeated binary or multiple fission or budding of intracellular trophozoites or **schizonts** produces far greater number of individuals than that of protozoans belonging to other classes and often is referred to as **schizogony**. The sexual reproduction is by isogamous or anisogamous fusion or autogamy and marks in many cases the beginning of **sporogony** or spore-formation.

Schaudinn divided the Sporozoa into two groups, Telosporidia and Neosporidia, and this scheme has been followed by several authors. Some recent writers consider these two groups as separate classes. This, however, seems to be improper, as the basis of distinction between them is entirely different from that which is used for distinguishing the other four classes: Sarcodina, Mastigophora, Ciliata, and Suctoria. For this reason, the Sporozoa are placed in a single class and divided into three subclasses as follows:

Spore simple; without polar filament

Spore with or without membrane; with 1-many sporozoites.
.....Subclass 1 Telosporidia

Spore with membrane; with one sporozoite.
.....Subclass 2 Aenidosporidia (p. 507)

Spore with polar filament.Subclass 3 Cnidosporidia (p. 515)

Subclass 1 Telosporidia Schaudinn

The spore which contains neither a polar capsule nor a polar filament possesses one to several sporozoites and is formed at the end of the trophic life of the individual. In the forms which invade two host

animals to complete their development, there occur naked sporozoites instead of spores.

The infection of a new host begins with the entrance of mature spores through mouth, or with the introduction of the sporozoites by blood-sucking invertebrates directly into the blood stream. The sporozoites enter specific host cells and there grow at the expense of the latter. In the Coccidia and the Haemosporidia, the trophozoite continues its intracellular existence, but in the Gregarinida it leaves the host cell and grows in an organ cavity. Except Eugregarinina, the vegetative form undergoes schizogony and produces a large number of daughter individuals which invade new host cells, thus spreading the infection within the host body. The trophozoites finally develop into gametocytes. In the Coccidia and the Haemosporidia, anisogametes are, as a rule, produced. Each macrogametocyte develops into a single macrogamete and each microgametocyte, into several microgametes. Fusion of the gametes in pairs results in formation of a large number of zygotes, each of which develops either into one to many spores or into a number of naked sporozoites. In the Gregarinida, two fully mature trophozoites (or gametocytes) encyst together and the nucleus in each multiplies repeatedly to form numerous gametes, which fuse in pairs with those produced in the other individual within the common envelope. The zygotes develop into spores, each containing variable number of sporozoites. When these spores enter a new host, the changes outlined above are repeated. The Telosporidia are parasitic in vertebrates and higher invertebrates.

Three orders are distinguished in this subclass:

- Mature trophozoite extracellular, large; zygote not motile; sporozoites enveloped.....Order 1 Gregarinida
- Mature trophozoite intracellular, small
 - Zygote not motile; sporozoites enveloped...Order 2 Coccidia (p. 464)
 - Zygote motile; sporozoites naked...Order 3 Haemosporidia (p. 484)

Order 1 Gregarinida Lankester

The gregarines are chiefly coelozoic parasites in invertebrates, especially arthropods and annelids. They obtain their nourishment from the host organ-cavity through osmosis. The vast majority of gregarines do not undergo schizogony and an increase in number is carried on solely by sporogony. In a small group, however, schizogony takes place and this is used as the basis for grouping these protozoans into two suborders as follows:

- No schizogony.....Suborder 1 Eugregarinina (p. 429)
- Schizogony occurs.....Suborder 2 Schizogregarinaria (p. 457)

Suborder 1 **Eugregarinina** Doflein

This suborder includes the majority of the so-called **gregarines** which are common parasites of arthropods. When the spore gains entrance into a suitable host, it germinates and the sporozoites emerge and enter the epithelial cells of the digestive tract. There they grow at the expense of the host cells which they leave soon and to which they become attached by various organellae of attachment (Fig. 208). These trophozoites become detached later from the host cells and move about in the lumen of the gut. This stage, **sporadin**, is ordinarily most frequently recognized. It is usually large and vermiform.

FIG. 201. The life-cycle of *Lankesteria culicis*, $\times$ about 500 (Wenyon). a, entrance of sporozoites into the epithelial cell and growth stages of trophozoite; b, mature trophozoite; c, association of two trophozoites; d-f, gamete-formation; g, zygote-formation; h, development of spores from zygotes; i, a spore; j, germination of spore in host gut.

The body is covered by a definite pellicle and its cytoplasm is clearly differentiated into the ectoplasm and endoplasm. The former contains myonemes (p. 54) which enable the organisms to undergo gliding movements.

In one group, **Acephalina**, the body is of a single compartment, but in the other group, **Cephalina**, the body is divided into two compartments by an ectoplasmic septum. The smaller anterior part is the **protomerite** and the larger posterior part, the **deutomerite**, contains a single nucleus. In *Pileocephalus* the nucleus is said to be located in the protomerite and according to Goodrich (1938) both the protomerite and deutomerite of *Nina gracilis* contain

a nucleus. The endoplasm contains numerous spherical or ovoidal bodies which are called zooamylon or paraglycogen grains and which are apparently reserve food material (p. 99). The protomerite may possess an attaching process with hooks or other structures at its anterior border; this is called the **epimerite**. The epimerite is usually not found on detached sporadins. Goodrich observed recently that in *Nina* the protomerite is a knob-like part of the gregarine when contracted, but expands freely and used as a mobile sucker for attachment to the gut epithelium of the host *Scolopendra*. Presently multiple filiform epimerite grows at the free edge of the sucker and penetrates between the host cells. Epimerite bearing trophozoites are called **cephalins**.

Many gregarines are solitary, others are often found in an endwise association of two or more sporadins. This association is called **syzygy**. The anterior individual is known as the **primit** and the posterior, the **satellite**. Sporadins usually encyst in pairs and become gametocytes. Within the cyst-membrane, the nucleus in each individual undergoes repeated division, forming a large number of small nuclei which by a process of budding transform themselves into numerous gametes. The gametes may be isogamous or anisogamous. Each of the gametes in one gametocyte appears to unite with one formed in the other, so that a large number of zygotes are produced. In some species such as *Nina gracilis* the microgametes enter the individual in which macrogametes develop, and the development of zygotes takes place, thus producing the so-called **pseudocyst**. The zygote becomes surrounded by a resistant membrane and its content develops into the sporozoites, thus developing into a spore. The spores germinate when taken into the alimentary canal of a host animal and the life-cycle is repeated.

According to Wenyon, in a typical Eugregarinina, *Lankesteria culicis* (Fig. 201) of *Aedes aegypti*, the development in a new host begins when a larva of the latter ingests the spores which had been set free by infected adult mosquitoes in the water. From each spore are liberated 8 sporozoites (*j*), which enter the epithelial cells of the stomach and grow (*a*). These vegetative forms leave the host cells later and become mingled with the food material present in the stomach lumen of the host (*b*). When the larva pupates, the sporadins enter the Malpighian tubules, where they encyst (*c*). The repeated nuclear division is followed by formation of large numbers of gametes (*d-f*) which unite in pairs (*g*). The zygotes thus formed develop into spores, each possessing 8 sporozoites (*h*). Meanwhile the host pupa emerges as an adult mosquito, and the spores which

become set free in the lumen of the tubules pass into the intestine, from which they are discharged into water. Larvae swallow the spores and acquire infection.

Eugregarinina are divided into 2 tribes:

Trophozoite not septate..... Tribe 1 Acephalina
Trophozoite septate..... Tribe 2 Cephalina (p. 440)

Tribe 1 **Acephalina** Köl liker

The acephalines are mainly found in the body cavity and organs associated with it. The infection begins by the ingestion of mature spores by a host, in the digestive tract of which the sporozoites are set free and undergo development or make their way through the gut wall and reach the coelom or various organs such as seminal vesicles. Young trophozoites are intracellular, while more mature forms are either intracellular or extracellular.

Spores with similar extremities

Spores biconical

Sporadins solitary

Anterior end not differentiated..... Family 1 Monocystidae

Anterior end conical or cylindro-conical.....
..... Family 2 Rhynchocystidae (p. 433)

Sporadins in syzygy

Spores with thickenings at ends.. Family 3 Zygocystidae (p. 434)

Spores without thickenings.. Family 4 Aikinetocystidae (p. 434)

Spores not biconical

Spores navicular..... Family 5 Stomatophoridae (p. 434)

Spores round or oval

No encystment..... Family 6 Schaudinnellidae (p. 436)

2 sporadins encyst together.... Family 7 Diplocystidae (p. 437)

Spores with dissimilar ends

Spores with epispore..... Family 8 Urosporidae (p. 438)

Spores without epispore..... Family 9 Allantocystidae (p. 440)

Spores unobserved; grown trophozoites with cup-like depression at posterior end for syzygy..... Family 10 Ganymedidae (p. 440)

Family 1 **Monocystidae** Bütschli

Trophozoites spheroidal to cylindrical; anterior end not differentiated; solitary; spores biconical, without any spines, with 8 sporozoites.

Genus **Monocystis** Stein. Trophozoites variable in form; motile; incomplete sporulation in cyst; spore biconical, symmetrical; in coelom or seminal vesicles of oligochaetes. Numerous species.

M. ventrosa Berlin (Fig. 202, a-c). Sporadins 109–183 μ by 72–135 μ ; nucleus up to 43 μ by 20 μ ; cysts 185–223 μ by 154–182 μ ;

spores 17–25 μ by 8–19 μ ; in *Lumbricus rubellus*, *L. castaneus* and *Helodrilus foetidus*.

M. lumbrici Henle (Fig. 202, *d, e*). Sporadins about 200 μ by 60–70 μ ; cysts about 162 μ in diameter; in *Lumbricus terrestris*, *L. rubellus*, and *L. castaneus*.

Genus **Apolocystis** Cognetti. Trophozoites spherical; without principal axis marked by presence of any special peripheral organ; solitary; spore biconical; in seminal vesicles or coelom of various oligochaetes. Many species.

A. gigantea Troisi (Fig. 202, *f*). In seminal vesicles of *Helodrilus foetidus* and *Lumbricus rubellus*; late October to March only; fully grown trophozoites 250–800 μ in diameter; whitish to naked eyes; pellicle thickly covered by 10–15 μ long 'hairs'; endoplasm packed with spherical paraglycogen grains (3 μ in diameter); nucleus 35–43 μ in diameter; cysts 400–800 μ in diameter; spores 19 μ by 8.6 μ .

A. minuta Troisi (Fig. 202, *g*). In seminal vesicles of *Lumbricus terrestris*, *L. castaneus* and *L. rubellus*; mature trophozoites 40–46 μ in diameter; endoplasm yellowish brown, packed with spherical paraglycogen grains (5.3–7 μ in diameter); nucleus 10 μ in diameter; cysts 68–74 μ by 55–65 μ ; spores of 3 sizes, 11 μ by 5.5 μ , 18.8 μ by 7 μ and 21.6 μ by 9.8 μ .

Genus **Nematocystis** Hesse. Trophozoites elongate, cylindrical and shaped like a nematode; solitary. Many species.

N. vermicularis H. (Fig. 202, *h*). In seminal vesicles of *Lumbricus terrestris*, *L. rubellus*, *Helodrilus longus*, *Pheretima barbadensis*; trophozoites 1 mm. by 100 μ ; cylindrical, both ends with projections; nucleus oval; endoplasm alveolated, with paraglycogen grains; sporadins become paired lengthwise; cysts and spores unknown.

Genus **Rhabdocystis** Boldt. Trophozoites elongate, gently curved; anterior end swollen, club-shaped; posterior end attenuated; spores with sharply pointed ends. One species.

R. claviformis B. (Fig. 202, *i, j*). In seminal vesicles of *Octolasion complanatum*; sporadins extended, up to 300 μ by 30 μ ; pellicle distinctly longitudinally striated; zooamylon bodies 2–4 μ in diameter; cysts biscuit-form, 110 μ by 70 μ ; spores 16 μ by 8 μ .

Genus **Enterocystis** Zwetkow. Early stages of trophozoites in syzygy; sporadins in association ensiform; cysts spherical without ducts; spores elongate ovoid, with 8 sporozoites; in gut of ephemeropterid larvae.

E. ensis Z. (Fig. 202, *k, l*). Sporadins in syzygy 200–510 μ long; cysts 200–350 μ in diameter; spores elongate ovoid; in gut of larvae of *Caenis* sp.

Family 2 **Rhynchocystidae** Bhatia

Trophozoites ovoid, spherical or elongate, with a conical or cylindro-conical trunk at anterior end; solitary; spore biconical, with 8 sporozoites.

FIG. 202. a-c, *Monocystis ventrosa* (a, $\times 260$; b, $\times 150$; c, $\times 830$) (Berlin); d, e, *M. lumbrici*, $\times 280$ (Berlin); f, *Apolocystis gigantea*, $\times 90$ (Troisi); g, *A. minuta*, with attached phagocytes, $\times 770$ (Troisi); h, *Nematocystis vermicularis*, $\times 80$ (Hesse); i, j, *Rhabdocystis claviformis* (i, $\times 220$; j, $\times 270$) (Boldt); k, l, *Enterocystis ensis* (k, $\times 140$) (Zwetkow).

Genus **Rhynchocystis** Hesse. Trophozoites ovoid or cylindrical; plastic epimerite, conical or cylindro-conical trunk; in seminal vesicles of oligochaetes. Many species.

R. pilosa Cuénot (Fig. 203, a). In seminal vesicles of *Lumbricus terrestris*, *L. castaneus* and *Helodrilus foetidus*; 217μ by 25.5μ ; pellicle with close, longitudinal ridges from which arise 'hairs' up to 40μ in length; endoplasm viscous, packed with oval (3μ by 2μ)

zooamylon bodies; cysts ovoid, 95μ by 84μ ; spores 13.3μ by 5μ .

R. porrecta Schmidt (Fig. 203, b, c). In seminal vesicles of *Lumbricus rubellus* and *Helodrilus foetidus*; extremely long with an enlarged head; up to 2.5 mm. by $32\text{--}36\mu$; sluggish; endoplasm granulated, filled with oval (4μ by $2\text{--}3\mu$) paraglycogen grains; nucleus $17\text{--}25\mu$ in diameter; spores $27.7\text{--}28\mu$ by 12μ ; sporozoites $13\text{--}18\mu$ by $3\text{--}5\mu$.

Family 3 Zygcystidae Bhatia

Trophozoites in association; spores biconical, with peculiar thickenings at extremities; with 8 sporozoites; in seminal vesicles or coelom of oligochaetes.

Genus *Zygcystis* Stein. Sporadins pyriform, 2–3 in syzygy; in seminal vesicles or coelom of oligochaetes. Several species.

Z. wenrichi Troisi (Fig. 203, d, e). In seminal vesicles of *Lumbricus rubellus* and *Helodrilus foetidus*; sporadins up to 1.5 mm. by 250μ in diameter; pellicle with longitudinal ridges which become free and form a 'tuft of hairs' at the posterior end; cysts $500\text{--}800\mu$ by $300\text{--}500\mu$; spores 28μ by 13μ .

Genus *Pleurocystis* Hesse. Trophozoites in longitudinal or lateral association; spores biconical. One species.

P. cuenoti H. (Fig. 203, f). In the ciliated seminal horn of *Helodrilus longus* and *H. caliginosus*; 2 mm. by 300μ ; pellicle striated longitudinally, oblique near the posterior end; cysts 1.5–2 mm. in diameter; spores 28.5μ by 12μ .

Family 4 Aikinetocystidae Bhatia

Trophozoites solitary or in syzygy; branching dichotomously, branches with sucker-like organellae of attachment; spores biconical.

Genus *Aikinetocystis* Gates. Trophozoites cylindrical or columnar, with a characteristic, regular dichotomous branching at attached end, with sucker-like bodies borne on ultimate branches; solitary or 2 (3–8) individuals in association; spores biconical.

A. singularis G. (Fig. 203, g, h). In coelom of *Eutyphoeus foveatus*. *E. rarus*, *E. peguanus* and *E. spinulosus* (of Burma); trophozoites up to 4 mm. long; number of branches 8 or 16, each with an irregular sucker; ovoid nucleus near rounded end; spores of two sizes, $20\text{--}23\mu$ long and $7\text{--}8\mu$ long; a few cysts found, ovoid and about 600μ long.

Family 5 Stomatophoridae Bhatia

Trophozoites spherical to cylindrical or cup-shaped; with a sucker-like epimerite; solitary; spores navicular, ends truncate; 8 sporozoites; in seminal vesicles of *Pheretima* (Oligochaeta).

Genus **Stomatophora** Drzewecki. Trophozoites spherical or ovoid; anterior end with a sucker-like epimeritic organella with a central mucron; spores navicular. Several species.

FIG. 203. a, *Rhynchocystis pilosa*, $\times 200$ (Hesse); b, c, *R. porrecta*: b, $\times 170$ (Hesse); c, spore, $\times 1330$ (Troisi); d, e, *Zygocystis wenrichi* (d, $\times 45$; e, $\times 450$) (Troisi); f, *Pleurocystis cuenoti*, $\times 190$ (Hesse); g, h, *Aikinetocystis singularis* (h, $\times 320$) (Gates); i–k, *Stomatophora coronata* (i, j, $\times 430$; k, $\times 870$) (Hesse); l, *Astrocystella lobosa*, $\times 120$ (Cognetti); m, *Craterocystis papua*, $\times 65$ (Cognetti); n, *Choanocystella tentaculata*, $\times 570$ (Cognetti); o, *Choanocystoides costaricensis*, $\times 470$ (Cognetti).

S. coronata (Hesse) (Fig. 203, i–k). In seminal vesicles of *Pheretima rodericensis*, *P. hawayana* and *P. barbadensis*; trophozoites spherical, ovoid or elliptical, about 180μ by 130μ ; endoplasm with ovoid zooamylon grains; cysts ellipsoid or fusiform, $70\text{--}80\mu$ by

50–60 μ ; spores in 2 sizes, 11 μ by 6 μ and 7 μ by 3 μ and in chain.

Genus *Astrocystella* Cognetti. Trophozoites solitary; stellate with 5–9 lobes radiating from central part containing nucleus; anterior surface with a depression. One species.

A. lobosa C. (Fig. 203, *l*). In seminal vesicles of *Pheretima beaufortii* (New Guinea); diameter about 200 μ ; spores fusiform.

Genus *Craterocystis* Cognetti. Trophozoites solitary; rounded; a sucker-like depression on anterior end; myonemes well developed, running from concave to convex side. One species.

C. papua C. (Fig. 203, *m*). In prostate and lymphatic glands of *Pheretima wendessiana* (New Guinea); trophozoites about 360–390 μ in diameter.

Genus *Choanocystella* Cognetti (*Choanocystis* C.). Trophozoites solitary; rounded or ovate; anterior end with a mobile sucker and a tentacle bearing cytoplasmic hairs; myonemes. One species.

C. tentaculata C. (Fig. 203, *n*). In seminal vesicles of *Pheretima beaufortii* (New Guinea); trophozoites 50 μ by 36 μ .

Genus *Choanocystoides* Cognetti. Trophozoites solitary, rounded or cup-shaped; anterior end with a mobile sucker, bordered by cytoplasmic filaments. One species.

C. costaricensis C. (Fig. 203, *o*). In seminal vesicles of *Pheretima heterochaeta* (Costa Rica); trophozoites 40–45 μ in diameter; nucleus ovoid, large, 12 μ in diameter.

Genus *Beccaricystis* Cognetti. Mature trophozoites elongate, cylindrical, with a sucker-like depression at anterior end; nucleus at its bottom. One species.

B. lorlai C. (Fig. 204, *a*). In seminal vesicles of *Pheretima sermowaiana*; trophozoites cylindrical, with wart-like growths, myonemes run lengthwise with radially arranged transverse fibrils; about 100 μ long.

Genus *Albertisella* Cognetti. Mature trophozoites cup-shaped, with anterior sucker with a smooth wall; nucleus at its bottom. One species.

A. crater C. In seminal vesicles of *Pheretima sermowaiana*.

Family 6 Schaudinnellidae Poche

Parasitic in the digestive system of oligochaetes; spores spherical; trophozoites do not encyst; male trophozoites producing microgametes and female, macrogametes; zygotes or amphionts (spores) rounded.

Genus *Schaudinnella* Nusbaum. Trophozoites elongate spindle, free in lumen or attached to gut wall; sporadins male or female;

spherical macrogametes and fusiform microgametes; zygotes or amphionts encapsulated, passed out of host or enter gut epithelium, dividing to produce many sporozoites (autoinfection).

S. henleae N. (Fig. 204, b, c). In gut of *Henlea leptodera*; mature trophozoites about 70μ by 9μ ; attached trophozoite with a clear wart-like epimerite; female and male sporadins; macrogametes,

FIG. 204. a, *Beccaricystis lorai*, $\times 570$ (Cognetti); b, c, *Schaudinnella henleae* (b, $\times 885$; c, $\times 1000$) (Nusbaum); d, e, *Diplocystis schneideri* (d, $\times 14$; e, spore, $\times 2000$) (Kunstler); f, *Urospora chiridotae*, $\times 200$ (Pixell-Goodrich); g-i, *Gonospora minchini* (g, a young trophozoite in host egg; h, a mature trophozoite, $\times 330$; i, sporadins in association, $\times 80$) (Goodrich and Pixell-Goodrich).

$5-7.5\mu$ in diameter; microgametes, spindle-form, $1-1.25\mu$ long; sporozoites rounded oval, $2.5-3\mu$ in diameter.

Family 7 Diplocystidae Bhatia

Coelomic or gut parasites of insects; trophozoites solitary or associated early in pairs; spores round or oval, with 8 sporozoites.

Genus *Diplocystis* Kunstler. Trophozoites spherical to oval; association of 2 individuals begin early in spherical form; spores round or oval, with 8 sporozoites; in coelom of insects.

D. schneideri K. (Fig. 204, *d, e*). In general body cavity of *Periplaneta americana*; young stages in gut epithelium; cysts up to 2 mm. in diameter; spores 7–8 μ in diameter; sporozoites 16 μ long.

Genus **Lankesteria** Mingazzini. Trophozoites more or less spatulate; spherical cyst formed by 2 laterally associated sporadins in rotation; spores oval, with flattened ends, with 8 sporozoites; in gut of tunicates, flatworms and insects. Several species.

L. culicis (Ross) (Fig. 201). In gut and Malpighian tubules of *Aedes aegypti* and *A. albopictus*; mature trophozoites about 150–200 μ by 31–41 μ ; cysts spherical, in Malpighian tubules of host, about 30 μ in diameter; spores 10 μ by 6 μ .

Family 8 Urosporidae Woodcock

Coelomic parasites in various invertebrates; sporadins associative; spores with unequal ends; with or without episporos of various forms, with 8 sporozoites.

Genus **Urospora** Schneider. Large; frequently in lengthwise association of 2 individuals of unequal sizes; spores oval, with a long filamentous process at one end; in body cavity or blood vessel of Tubifex, Nemertinea, Sipunculus, Synapta, and Chiridota. Several species.

U. chiridotae (Dogiel) (Fig. 204, *f*). In blood vessel of *Chiridota laevis* (in Canada); paired trophozoites up to about 1 mm. long; with stiff 'hairs.'

Genus **Gonospora** Schneider. Trophozoites polymorphic, oval, pyriform or vermiform; cysts spherical; spore with a funnel at one end, rounded at the other; in gut, coelom or ova of polychaetes.

G. minchini Goodrich and Pixell-Goodrich (Figs. 204, *g-i*; 205, *g*). In coelom of *Arenicola ecaudata*; young trophozoites live in host eggs which float in the coelomic fluid; fully grown trophozoites leave eggs in which they grow up to 200 μ long, and encyst together in pairs; spores without well-developed funnel, 8–10 μ long.

Genus **Lithocystis** Giard. Trophozoites large, ovoid or cylindrical; attached for a long period to host tissue; pellicle with hairlike processes; endoplasm with calcium oxalate crystals; spores ovoid, with a long process at one end; in coelom of echinids.

L. brachycercus Pixell-Goodrich (Fig. 205, *a, b*). In coelom of *Chiridota laevis* (Canada); fully grown spherical trophozoites up to 200 μ in diameter; spore with a short projection at one end.

Genus **Pterospora** Racovitza and Labbé. Sporadins associative or solitary; free end drawn out into 4 bifurcated processes; cysts

spherical or oval; spores with episporium drawn out into 3 lateral processes; in coelom of polychaetes.

P. maldaneorum R. and L. (Fig. 205, c, d). In coelom of *Liocephalus liopygus*; trophozoites about 140μ long; cysts 288μ , by 214μ ; episporium 24μ in diameter; endospore $10-14\mu$ by $3-4\mu$.

Genus *Ceratospora* Léger. Sporadins elongate conical, head to

FIG. 205. a, b, *Lithocystis brachycercus*, $\times 1330$ (Pixell-Goodrich); c, d, *Pterospora maldaneorum* (c, $\times 40$; d, $\times 530$) (Labbé); e, f, *Ceratospora mirabilis* (e, $\times 45$; f, $\times 670$) (Léger); g, *Gonospora minchini*, $\times 2000$ (Goodrich); h, i, *Cystobia irregularis* (h, $\times 65$; i, $\times 770$) (Minchin); j-m, *Allantocystis dasyhelei* (j-l, $\times 500$; m, $\times 560$) (Keilin); n, *Ganymedes anaspides*, $\times 570$ (Huxley).

head association; without encystment; spores oval with a small collar at one end and 2 divergent elongate filaments at other. One species.

C. mirabilis L. (Fig. 205, e, f). Sporadins $500-600\mu$ long; spore 12μ by 8μ , filaments 34μ long; in general body cavity of *Glycera* sp.

Genus **Cystobia** Mingazzini. Trophozoites, large, irregular; fully grown forms always with 2 nuclei, due to early union of 2 individuals; spores oval, membrane drawn out and truncate at one end; in blood vessels and coelom of *Holothuria*.

C. irregularis (Minchin) (Fig. 205, *h, i*). Trophozoites irregular in form; up to 500μ long; endoplasm opaque, granulated; cysts in connective tissue of vessels; spore ovoid, epispore bottle-like, 25μ long; in blood vessel of *Holothuria nigra*.

Family 9 Allantocystidae Bhatia

Trophozoites elongate cylindrical; cysts elongate, sausage-like; spores fusiform, sides slightly dissimilar.

Genus **Allantocystis** Keilin. Sporadins, head to head association; cysts sausage-like; in dipterous insect. One species.

A. dasyhelei K. (Fig. 205, *j-m*). In gut of larval *Dasyhelea obscura*; full-grown sporadins $65-75\mu$ by $20-22\mu$; cysts $140-150\mu$ by 20μ ; spores 18μ by 6.5μ .

Family 10 Ganymedidae Huxley

Trophozoites only known; mature individuals biassociative; posterior end of primate with a cup-like depression to which the epimeritic organella of satellite fits; cysts spherical; spores unknown.

Genus **Ganymedes** Huxley. Characters of the family; Huxley considers it as an intermediate form between Acephalina and Cephalina.

G. anaspides H. (Fig. 205, *n*). In gut and liver-tube of the crustacean, *Anaspides tasmaniae* (of Tasmania); trophozoites in association, $70-300\mu$ by $60-130\mu$; cysts $85-115\mu$ in diameter.

Tribe 2 Cephalina Delage

The body of a trophozoite is divided into the protomerite and deutomerite by an ectoplasmic septum; inhabitants of the alimentary canal of invertebrates, especially arthropods.

One host species involved

None-septate; epimerite a knob. Family 1 Lecudinidae (p. 441)

Septate

Development intracellular

Sporadins associative. Family 2 Cephaloidophoridae (p. 442)

Sporadins solitary. Family 3 Stenophoridae (p. 442)

Development extracellular

Sporadins associative

Satellite non-septate. Family 4 Didymophyidae (p. 442)

Satellite septate. Family 5 Gregarinidae (p. 443)

Sporadins solitary

Epimerite simple knob-like

Cysts with several ducts. Family 6 Leidyanidae (p. 445)

Cysts without or with one duct.
..... Family 7 Monoductidae (p. 445)

Epimerite not simple knob-like

Epimerite cup-shaped or digitate

Epimerite cup-shaped. . . Family 8 Menosporidae (p. 448)

Epimerite digitate. . . . Family 9 Dactylophoridae (p. 448)

Epimerite otherwise

Spore hat-shaped. Family 10 Stylocephalidae (p. 450)

Spore of other shapes

Spore with spines. . . Family 11 Acanthosporidae (p. 451)

Spore without spines.
..... Family 12 Actinocephalidae (p. 452)

Two host species involved. Family 13 Porosporidae (p. 455)

Family 1 Lecudinidae Kamm

Epimerite simple, symmetrical; non-septate; spores ovoidal, thickened at one pole; solitary; in gut of polychaetes and termites. Undoubtedly intermediate forms between Acephalina and Cephalina.

Genus **Lecudina** Mingazzini. Epimerite simple, knob-like; in polychaetes.

L. pellucida (Kölliker) (Fig. 206, a). In *Nereis cultrifera* and *N. beaucourdrayi*; trophozoites ellipsoid; spores 7μ by 5μ .

Genus **Polyrhabdina** Mingazzini. Trophozoites flattened, ovoidal; epimerite with a corona of processes with split ends, deeply stainable; in polychaetes (Spionidae).

P. spionis (Kölliker) (Fig. 206, b). In *Scololepis fuligionosa*; 100μ by 35μ ; epimerite with a corona of 8–10 processes; cysts (?).

Genus **Kofoidina** Henry. Epimerite rudimentary; development intracellular; 2–14 sporadins in association; cysts and spores unknown.

K. ovata H. In midgut of *Zootermopsis angusticollis* and *Z. nevadensis*; syzygy 153 – 672μ long; sporadins 41 – 105μ long.

Genus **Sycia** Léger. Epimerite knobbed, bordered by a thick ring; protomerite subspherical; deutomerite conical, with navicular inclusions; in marine annelids.

S. inspinata L. (Fig. 206, c). In *Audouinia lamarcki*.

Genus **Zygosoma** Labbé. Trophozoites with wart-like projections; epimerite a simple knob; spores oval; in gut of marine annelids.

Z. globosum Noble (Fig. 206, d, e). Trophozoites 250 – 500μ by 200 – 380μ ; epimerite a large globule; cysts 400μ by 360μ , without

ducts; spores oval, with 4 sporozoites, 9μ by 7μ ; reduction zygotic, 6 chromosomes; in gut of *Urechis caupo* in California.

Genus **Ulivina** Mingazzini. Elongate ellipsoid; epimerite simple; spores unknown; in gut of polychaetes.

U. rhynchoboli (Crawley). Sporadins up to 700μ long; in *Rhynchobolus americanus*.

Family 2 Cephaloidophoridae Kamm

Development intracellular; early association; cysts without sporoducts; spores ovoidal, with equatorial line; in gut of Crustacea.

Genus **Cephaloidophora** Mawrodiadi. Sporadins biassociative, early; epimerite rudimentary; cysts without sporoducts; spores in chain, ovoidal.

C. olivia (Watson) (Fig. 206, *f*). Biassociated sporadins up to 218μ long; individuals up to 118μ by 36μ ; cysts spheroidal, 60μ in diameter; spores (?); in gut of *Libinia dubia*; Long Island.

C. nigrofusca (Watson). Sporadins, ovoid to rectangular, up to 125μ by 75μ ; cysts and spores (?); in gut of *Uca pugnax* and *U. pugilator*.

Family 3 Stenophoridae Léger and Duboseq

Development intracellular; sporadins solitary; with a simple epimerite or none; cysts open by rupture; spores ovoid, with or without equatorial line, not extruded in chain; in Diplopoda.

Genus **Stenophora** Labbé. With or without simple epimerite; spores ovoid with equatorial line, not in chain.

S. larvata (Leidy) (Fig. 206, *g*). Sporadins up to 800μ by 23μ ; protomerite small; in gut of *Spirobolus spinigerus* at Philadelphia.

S. robusta Ellis (Fig. 206, *h*). Sporadins 140 – 180μ by 67μ ; cysts and spores both unobserved; in gut of *Parajulus venustus*, *Orthomorpha gracilis* and *O. sp.*; Colorado.

Genus **Fonsecaia** Pinto. Spores elongate ovoid; without equatorial line; without endospore.

F. polymorpha Pinto (Fig. 206, *i, j*). Sporadins 170μ long; spores 18μ by 8μ ; in gut of *Orthomorpha gracilis*; Brazil.

Family 4 Didymophyidae Léger

Two to three sporadins in association; satellite without septum.

Genus **Didymophyes** Stein. Epimerite a small pointed papilla; cysts spherical, open by rupture; spores ellipsoidal.

D. gigantea S. Sporadins slender, 1 cm. by 80 – 100μ ; 2 deutomerites; cysts spherical, 600 – 700μ in diameter; spores oval, 6.5μ by

6 μ ; in gut of larvae of *Oryctes nasicornis*, *O. sp.*, and *Phyllognathus sp.*

Family 5 Gregarinidae Labbé

Sporadins in association; epimerite simple, symmetrical; cysts with or without ducts; spores symmetrical.

FIG. 206. a, *Lecudina pellucida* (Kölliker); b, *Polyrhabdina spionis*, $\times 800$ (Reichenow); c, *Sycia inspinata* (Léger); d, e, *Zygosome globosum* (d, $\times 60$; e, $\times 1260$) (Noble); f, *Cephaloidophora olivia*, $\times 190$ (Kamm); g, *Stenophora larvata*, $\times 50$ (Leidy); h, *S. robusta*, $\times 130$ (Ellis); i, j, *Fonsecaia polymorpha* (i, $\times 220$; j, $\times 430$) (Pinto); k, *Gregarina blattarum*, $\times 55$ (Kudo); l, *G. locustae*, $\times 65$ (Leidy); m, *G. oviceps*, $\times 30$ (Crawley); n, *Protomagalhaesia serpentula*, $\times 35$ (Pinto); o, *Gamocystis tenax* (Schneider).

Genus **Gregarina** Dufour. Sporadins biassociative; epimerite small, globular or cylindrical; spores dolioform to cylindrical; cysts

open by sporoducts; in gut of arthropods. Numerous species.

G. blattarum Siebold (Fig. 206, *k*). Sporadins in syzygy, 500–1100 μ by 160–400 μ ; cysts spherical or ovoidal; 8–10 sporoducts; spores cylindrical to dolioform, truncate at ends, 8–8.5 μ by 3.5–4 μ ; in gut of the cockroach. Sprague (1941) made an excellent study of this gregarine.

G. locustae Lankester (Fig. 206, *l*). Sporadins 150–350 μ long; syzygy; in *Dissosteria carolina*.

G. oviceps Diesing (Fig. 206, *m*). Sporadins up to 500 μ by 225 μ ; in syzygy; spherical cysts 250 μ in diameter; 2–5 sporoducts up to 1 mm. long; spores dolioform. 4.5 μ by 2.25 μ ; in *Gryllus abbreviatus* and *G. americanus*.

Genus **Protomagalhaesia** Pinto. Sporadins cylindrical; in syzygy, protomerite of satellite draws in the posterior end of primate; cysts without ducts; spores dolioform, with spines at ends.

P. serpentula (Magalhães) (Fig. 206, *n*). Sporadins up to 1.2 mm. by 180 μ ; in gut and coelom of *Blatta orientalis*.

Genus **Gamocystis** Schneider. Septate only in trophozoites; sporadins non-septate; in syzygy; spore formation partial; with sporoducts; spores cylindrical. A few species.

G. tenax S. (Fig. 206, *o*). Association head to head; spherical cysts with 15 or more ducts; spore cylindrical, with rounded ends; in gut of *Blattella lapponica*.

Genus **Hyalospora** Schneider. Sporadins in syzygy; cytoplasm yellowish orange; epimerite a simple knob; cysts open by rupture; spores fusiform.

H. affinis S. Trophozoites 300 μ long; cysts, yellow, 60 μ in diameter; spores 8.7 μ by 6 μ ; in gut of *Machilis cylindrica*.

Genus **Hirmocystis** Labbé. Sporadins associative, 2–12 or more; with a small cylindrical papilla-like epimerite; cysts without ducts; spores ovoidal.

H. harpali Watson (Fig. 207, *a*). Total length of association up to 1060 μ ; sporadins up to 560 μ by 80 μ ; cysts unknown; in gut of *Harpalus pennsylvanicus erythropus*.

H. termitis (Leidy) (Fig. 207, *b*). Association 614–803 μ long; epimerite simple sphere; cysts rare; spores (?); in *Zootermopsis angusticollis*, *Z. nevadensis*, etc.

Genus **Uradiophora** Mercier. Sporadins in syzygy; deutomerite with small process; epimerite an elongate papilla; cysts oval without ducts; spores spherical, in chains.

U. cuenoti M. 2–4 sporadins in syzygy; individuals up to 700 μ long; cysts ovoid, 44 μ long; spores 4 μ in diameter; in gut of *Atyaephyra desmaresti*.

Genus **Pyxinoides** Trégouboff. Sporadins biassociative; epimerite with 16 longitudinal furrows, small cone at end.

P. balani (Kölliker). Primita up to 130μ ; satellite 60μ long; in gut of *Balanus amphitrite* and *B. eburneus*.

Genus **Anisolobus** Vincent. Sporadins in syzygy; epimerite lacking; protomerite of primita expanded to form sucker-like organella; cysts ellipsoid, with thick envelope; with 6–8 sporoducts; spores barrel-shaped. One species.

A. dacnecola V. (Fig. 207, c). In midgut of *Dacne rufifrons*; 2 sporadins in syzygy $100\text{--}300\mu$ by $20\text{--}50\mu$; cysts without envelope, $130\text{--}150\mu$ by $80\text{--}90\mu$; sporoducts $40\text{--}50\mu$ long; spores in chain, dolioform, 6μ by 4μ .

Genus **Carcinoectes** Ball. Sporadins in syzygy of 2 or more individuals; epimerite rudimentary; cysts without sporoducts; spores round to ovoidal, not in chain; in gut of Crustacea.

C. hesperus B. (Fig. 207, d, e). 2–6 sporadins in association; sporadins up to 320μ by 9μ ; cysts about 140μ by 123μ , attached to the wall of hindgut; spores 8.6μ by 7.7μ , with 8 radially arranged sporozoites; in gut of *Pachygrapsus crassipes* in California.

Family 6 Leidyanidae

Similar to the last two families; but sporadins are solitary and epimerite simple knob-like; cysts with several sporoducts.

Genus **Leidyana** Watson. Solitary; epimerite a simple globular sessile knob; cysts with ducts; spores dolioform.

L. erratica (Crawley) (Fig. 207, f). Sporadins up to 500μ by 160μ ; cysts about 350μ in diameter; membrane about 30μ thick; 1–12 sporoducts; spores extruded in chains, 6μ by 3μ ; in gut of *Gryllus abbreviatus* and *G. pennsylvanicus*.

Family 7 Monoductidae Ray and Chakravatry

As in the last family solitary; but cyst with a single sporoduct or none; spore with 8 sporozoites.

Genus **Monoductus** R. and C. Sporadins solitary; epimerite a small elevation with prongs attached to its base; anisogamy; cyst with a single sporoduct; spores flattened fusiform, with dissimilar ends, each with 8 sporozoites. One species.

M. lunatus R. and C. (Fig. 207, m–o). Cephalins $225\text{--}445\mu$ by $33\text{--}47\mu$; epimerite with about 16 prongs; nucleus parachute-shaped, with myonemes attached at posterior margin; sporadins develop posterior pseudopodial processes before association; cysts spherical, $225\text{--}230\mu$ in diameter, voided by host; development completed in 3–4 days outside the host body, with one duct; spores 10.25μ by 4μ ,

truncate at one end, attenuated at other and discharged in a single chain; in gut of *Diplopoda* sp.

Genus *Sphaerocystis* Léger. Sporadins solitary; without protomerite; spherical.

FIG. 207. a, *Hirmocystis harpali*, $\times 50$ (Watson); b, *H. termitis*, $\times 85$ (Henry); c, *Anisolobus dacnecola*, $\times 270$ (Vincent); d, e, *Carcinocetes hesperus* (d, $\times 200$; e, $\times 780$) (Ball); f, *Leydiana erratica*, $\times 170$ (Watson); g-i, *Lepismatophila thermobiae* (g, h, $\times 85$; i, spores, $\times 200$) (Adams and Travis); j-l, *Colepismatophila watsonae* (j, k, $\times 85$; l, spores, $\times 200$) (Adams and Travis); m-o, *Monoductus lunatus* (m, cephalin, $\times 240$; n, cyst, $\times 120$; o, two views of spore, $\times 2330$) (Ray and Chakravatry).

S. simplex L. Sporadins $100\text{--}140\mu$ in diameter; protomerite in young trophozoites; spherical cysts in which individuals are not associative, 100μ in diameter; spores ovoid, 10.5μ by 7.5μ ; in gut of *Cyphon pallidulus*.

Genus *Lepismatophila* Adams and Travis. Epimerite a simple knob; cysts without ducts; spores ellipsoidal, smooth, in chain. One species.

L. thermobiae A. and T. (Fig. 207, *g-i*). Sporadins $67-390\mu$ by $30-174\mu$; cysts white to black, ellipsoidal to subspherical, $244-378\mu$ by $171-262\mu$; spores brown, 13.6μ by 6.8μ ; in ventriculus of *Thermobia domestica*.

Genus **Colepismatophila** Adams and Travis. Similar to the last genus; but larger; spores in wavy chains, hat-shaped, with 2 curved filamentous processes attached at opposite ends. One species.

C. watsonae A. and T. (Fig. 207, *j-l*). Sporadins $92-562\mu$ by $55-189\mu$; cysts $226-464\mu$ by $158-336\mu$; spores 16.5μ by 9.7μ , processes 21μ long; in ventriculus of *Thermobia domestica*.

Family 8 Menosporidae Léger

Sporadins solitary; epimerite a large cup, bordered with hooks, with a long neck; cysts without sporoducts; spores crescentic, smooth.

Genus **Menospora** Léger. With the characters of the family.

M. polyacantha L. (Fig. 208, *a, b*). Sporadins $600-700\mu$ long; cysts 200μ in diameter; spores 15μ by 4μ ; in gut of *Agrion puella*.

Family 9 Dactylophoridae Léger

Sporadins solitary; epimerite complex, digitate; cysts dehiscence by pseudocyst; spores cylindrical; in gut of chilopods.

Genus **Dactylophorus** Balbiani. Protomerite wide, bordered by digitiform processes; spores cylindrical.

D. robustus Léger (Fig. 208, *c, d*). Sporadins $700-800\mu$ long; cysts spherical, 200μ in diameter; spores 11μ by 4.3μ ; in gut of *Cryptops hortensis*.

Genus **Echinomera** Labbé. Epimerite an eccentric cone with 8 or more digitiform processes; cysts without sporoducts; spores cylindrical.

E. magalhaesi (Pinto) (Fig. 208, *e*). Sporadins up to 300μ by 70μ ; in gut of *Scolopendra* sp.

Genus **Rhopalonia** Léger. Epimerite spherical, with 10 or more digitiform processes; pseudocysts; spores cylindrical.

R. hispida (Schneider) (Fig. 208, *f, g*). Endoplasm yellowish orange; cysts $200-250\mu$ in diameter; spores 16μ by 6.5μ ; in gut of *Geophiles* sp. and *Stigmatogaster gracilis*.

Genus **Dendrorhynchus** Keilin. Elongate; epimerite a disc, surrounded by numerous ramified papillae; transverse fibrils conspicuous; cysts elliptical; spores fusiform.

D. systemi K. (Fig. 208, *h*). Sporadins 255μ by $18.5-20\mu$; spores

18–19 μ by 7 μ ; in midgut of larvae of *Systemus* sp., a dolichopodid fly, found in decomposed sap of elm tree.

Genus **Trichorhynchus** Schneider. Protomerite prolonged anteriorly into a long neck, dilated at tip; pseudocyst; spores cylindrical to ellipsoidal.

FIG. 208. a, b, *Menospora polyacantha* (Léger); c, d, *Dactylophorus robustus* (c, $\times 130$; d, $\times 900$) (Léger); e, *Echinomera magalhaesi*, $\times 130$ (Pinto); f, g, *Rhopalonina hispida* (g, $\times 830$) (Léger); h, *Dendrorhynchus systemi*, $\times 770$ (Keilin); i, *Trichorhynchus pulcher* (Schneider); j, k, *Nina gracilis* (j, $\times 10$) (Schneider); l, *Seticephalus elegans*, $\times 450$ (Pinto); m, *Acutispora macrocephala*, $\times 65$ (Crawley); n, *Metamera schubergi*, $\times 270$ (Duke); o, p, *Hentschelia thalassemae* (o, $\times 230$; p, $\times 620$) (Mackinnon and Ray); q, r, *Lecythion thalassemae* (q, $\times 270$; r, $\times 930$) (Mackinnon and Ray).

T. pulcher S. (Fig. 208, *i*). Cysts 303–316 μ in diameter; spores 9.7 μ by 5.8 μ ; in gut of *Scutigera* sp.

Genus **Nina** Grebneki (*Pterocephalus* Schneider). Protomerite made up of 2 long narrow horizontal lobes fused and upturned spirally at one end, peripheral portion with many teeth, from which project long filaments; spores in chain; in gut of myriapods.

N. gracilis G. (Fig. 208, *j, k*). 1.5–5 mm. long; cyst spherical; spores ellipsoidal; in the gut of *Scolopendra cingulata* and *S. subspini-pes*. Goodrich (1938) studied the organism recently.

Genus **Seticéphalus** Kamm. Protomerite with closely set brush-like bristles.

S. elegans (Pinto) (Fig. 208, *l*). Sporadins up to 75 μ by 35 μ ; cysts and spores unknown; in gut of *Scolopendra* sp.

Genus **Acutispora** Crawley. Solitary; pseudocyst; spore biconical, with a thick blunt endosporal rod at each end. One species.

A. macrocephala C. (Fig. 208, *m*). Sporadins up to 600 μ long; cysts spherical, 410 μ in diameter; spores navicular, slightly curved, 19 μ by 4 μ ; in gut of *Lithobius forficatus*.

Genus **Metamera** Duke. Epimerite eccentric, bordered with many branched digitiform processes; cysts without ducts; spores biconical.

M. schubergi D. (Fig. 208, *n*). Sporadins 150 μ by 45 μ ; spores 9 μ by 7 μ ; in gut of *Glossosiphonia complanata* and *Placobdella marginata*.

M. reynoldsi Jones. Sporadins with epimerite measure 280 μ by 50 μ ; cysts spherical; dehiscence by rupture; spore biconical, 5 μ by 3 μ , with 8 sporozoites; in the stomach diverticula and intestine of *Glossosiphonia complanata*.

Genus **Hentschelia** Mackinnon and Ray. Epimerite with a short neck, umbrella-like with its margin divided into 4–5 lobes, each fluted on anterior surface; 2 sporadins encyst together; gametes anisogamous; flagellate and non-flagellate; zygote gives rise to a spherical spore with 8 sporozoites. One species.

H. thalassemae M. and R. (Fig. 208, *o, p*). Cephalins 75–98 μ by 30–45 μ ; in gut of *Thalassema neptuni*.

Genus **Lecythion** Mackinnon and Ray. Epimerite a low cone, surrounded by 14–15 petal-shaped lobes, with a neck; cysts and spores unknown.

L. thalassemae M. and R. (Fig. 208, *q, r*). Cephalins 135 μ by 52 μ ; epimerite about 27 μ long; in gut of *Thalassema neptuni*.

Family 10 **Stylocephalidae** Ellis

Sporadins solitary; epimerite varied; pseudocysts; hat-shaped spores in chains.

Genus **Stylocephalus** Ellis. Epimerite nipple-like; cysts covered with papillae; in arthropods and molluscs.

FIG. 209. a, *Stylocephalus giganteus*, $\times 65$ (Ellis); b, *Bulbocephalus elongatus*, $\times 15$ (Watson); c, d, *Cystocephalus algerianus* (c, $\times 6$; d, $\times 930$) (Schneider); e, *Lophocephalus insignis* (Schneider); f, *Acanthospora polymorpha*, $\times 1670$ (Léger); g, h, *Corycella armata* (h, $\times 860$) (Léger); i, *Prismatospora evansi*, $\times 50$ (Ellis); j, k, *Ancyrophora gracilis* (k, $\times 1250$) (Léger); l, m, *Cometoides capitatus* (m, $\times 1330$) (Léger); n, o, *Actinocephalus acutispora* (Léger); p, *Amphoroides calverti*, $\times 130$ (Watson); q, *Asterophora philica*, $\times 65$ (Leidy); r, *Steinina rotunda*, $\times 130$ (Watson); s, *Pileocephalus striatus*, $\times 180$ (Léger and Duboscq); t, *Stylocystis praecox*, $\times 80$ (Léger).

S. giganteus E. (Fig. 209, a). Sporadins 1.2–1.8 mm. long; cysts spherical, 450μ in diameter; spores subspherical black, 11μ by 7μ ; in *Eleodes* sp., *Asida opaca*, *A. sp.*, and *Eusattus* sp. (Coleoptera).

Genus **Bulbocephalus** Watson. Epimerite a dilated papilla located in middle of a long neck.

B. elongatus W. (Fig. 209, *b*). Sporadins up to 1.6 mm. by 50μ ; nucleus diagonal; cysts and spores unknown; in gut of *Cucujus* larva (a coleopteran).

Genus **Sphaerorhynchus** Labbé. Epimerite a small sphere at end of a long neck.

S. ophioides (Schneider). Cephalins 1.3 mm. long; epimerite 220μ long; terminal part 8.5μ ; sporadins 3–4 mm. long; in gut of *Acis* sp.

Genus **Cystocephalus** Schneider. Epimerite a large lance-shaped papilla with a short neck; spore hat-shaped.

C. algerianus S. (Fig. 209, *c, d*). Sporadins 3–4 mm. long; spores $10\text{--}10.5\mu$ long; in gut of *Pimelia* sp.

Genus **Lophocephalus** Labbé. Epimerite sessile crateriform disc with crenulate periphery, surrounded by digitiform processes.

L. insignis (Schneider) (Fig. 209, *e*). Sporadins 1 mm. long; cysts rounded; 430μ by 330μ ; pseudocysts; spores 10μ long; in gut of *Helops striatus*.

Family 11 **Acanthosporidae** Léger

Sporadins solitary; epimerite complex; cysts without sporoducts; spores with equatorial and polar spines.

Genus **Acanthospora** Léger. Epimerite simple conical knob; spores with spines.

A. polymorpha L. (Fig. 209, *f*). Sporadins polymorphic; up to 1 mm. long; protomerite cylindro-conical; deutomerite ovoidal; endoplasm yellowish brown; cyst $500\text{--}700\mu$ in diameter; spore with 6 spines at each pole and at equatorial plane, 8μ by 4.4μ ; in gut of *Hydrous ceraboides*.

Genus **Corycella** Léger. Epimerite globular, with 8 hooks; spores biconical, with one row of polar spines.

C. armata L. (Fig. 209, *g, h*). Sporadins $280\text{--}300\mu$ long; cysts spherical, 250μ in diameter; spores 13μ by 6.5μ ; in gut of larva of *Gyrinus natator*.

Genus **Prismatospora** Ellis. Epimerite subglobular with 8 lateral hooks; spores hexagonal, with one row of spines at each pole.

P. evansi E. (Fig. 209, *i*). Sporadins broadly conical, 400μ long; cysts 370μ in diameter; without sporoducts; spores with 6 long spines at each pole, 11μ by 5.8μ ; in gut of *Tramea lacerta* and *Symphetrum rubicundulum*; Michigan.

Genus **Ancyrophora** Léger. Epimerite globular with 5–10 digitiform processes directed posteriorly; spores biconical, with spines.

A. gracilis L. (Fig. 209, *j, k*). Sporadins $200\mu\text{--}2$ mm. long; cysts spherical, 200μ in diameter; spores hexagonal in optical section,

with 4 polar and 6 equatorial spines, 8.5μ by 5μ ; in gut of larvae and adults of *Carabus auratus*, *C. violaceus*, *C. sp.*, and of larvae of *Silpha thoracica* (Coleoptera).

Genus **Cometoides** Labbé. Epimerite globular with 6–15 long filaments; spores with polar spines and 2 rows of equatorial spines.

C. capitatus (Léger) (Fig. 209, *l, m*). Sporadins up to 2 mm. long, active; epimerite with 12–15 filaments, $32\text{--}35\mu$ long; cysts 300μ in diameter; spores 5.1μ by 2.5μ ; in gut of larvae of *Hydrous* sp. (Coleoptera).

Family 12 Actinocephalidae Léger

Sporadins solitary; epimerite variously formed; cysts without sporoducts; spores irregular, biconical or cylindro-biconical; in gut of insects.

Genus **Actinocephalus** Stein. Epimerite sessile or with a short neck, with 8–10 simple digitiform processes at its apex; spores biconical.

A. acutispora Léger (Fig. 209, *n, o*). Sporadins 1–1.5 mm. long; cysts ovoid, $550\text{--}600\mu$ by 280μ ; spores, acutely pointed, of 2 sizes, 4.5μ by 2.8μ and 6.4μ by 3.6μ ; in gut of the coleopteran *Silpha laevigata*.

A. parvus Wellmer. Sporadins 180μ by 50μ ; cysts rounded, $62\text{--}112\mu$ in diameter; spores spindle-form, $6\text{--}7.5\mu$ by $3\text{--}3.8\mu$; 8 diploid chromosomes; the first division in the zygote is meiotic; in the gut of larvae of dog-flea, *Ctenocephalus canis*.

Genus **Amphoroides** Labbé. Epimerite a globular sessile papilla; protomerite cup-shaped; spores curved; in myriapods.

A. calverti (Crawley) (Fig. 209, *p*). Sporadins up to 1670μ by 120μ ; cysts spherical, 380μ in diameter; spores unknown; in gut of *Callipus lactarius*.

Genus **Asterophora** Léger. Epimerite a thick horizontal disc with a milled border and a stout style projecting from center; spore cylindrobiconical; in Neuroptera and Coleoptera.

A. philica (Leidy) (Fig. 209, *q*). Sporadins $300\mu\text{--}2$ mm. long; cysts and spores unknown; in gut of *Nyctobates pennsylvanica*.

Genus **Steinina** Léger and Duboscq. Solitary; epimerite a short motile digitiform process, changing into a flattened structure; spore biconical; in Coleoptera.

S. rotunda Watson (Fig. 209, *r*). Sporadins $180\text{--}250\mu$ long; in gut of *Amara augustata* (Coleoptera).

Genus **Pileocephalus** Schneider. Epimerite lance-shaped, with a short neck.

P. striatus Léger and Duboscq (Fig. 209, s). Sporadins 150μ long; nucleus in protomerite; cysts spherical; in gut of larvae of *Ptychop-tera contaminata*.

Genus **Stylocystis** Léger. Epimerite a sharply pointed, curved process; spores biconical.

S. praecox L. (Fig. 209, t). Sporadins up to 500μ long; cysts ovoidal, 200μ long; spores 8μ by 5μ in gut of larval *Tanytus* sp.

FIG. 210. a, b, *Discorhynchus truncatus* (a, $\times 130$) (Léger); c, d, *Anthorhynchus sophiae* (c, $\times 15$; d, $\times 1330$) (Schneider); e-g, *Sciadiophora phalangii* (g, spore, $\times 1040$) (Léger); h, *Amphorocephalus amphorellus* (Ellis); i, *Pyxinia bulbifera* (Watson); j, *Schneideria mucronata*, $\times 75$ (Léger); k, *Beloides firmus* (Léger); l, *Taeniocystis mira*, $\times 85$ (Léger); m, n, *Stictospora provincialis* (Léger); o, *Bothriopsis histrio* (Léger); p-r, *Coleorhynchus heros* (p, $\times 14$) (Schneider); s, *Legeria agilis* (Schneider); t-v, *Phialoides ornata* (t, $\times 45$; v, $\times 930$) (Léger); w, *Geneiorhynchus aeschnae*, $\times 60$ (Crawley).

Genus **Discorhynchus** Labbé. Epimerite a large spheroidal papilla with collar and short neck; spores biconical, slightly curved.

D. truncatus (Léger) (Fig. 210, a, b). Sporadins 300μ long; cysts spherical, 140μ in diameter; in gut of larvae of *Sericostoma* sp.

Genus **Anthorhynchus** Labbé. Epimerite a large flattened fluted disc; spores biconical, chained laterally.

A. sophiae (Schneider) (Fig. 210, *c, d*). Cephalins up to 2 mm. long, with 200 μ long epimerite; protomerite 150 μ long; endoplasm opaque; spores 7 μ by 5 μ ; in gut of *Phalangium opilio*.

Genus **Sciadiophora** Labbé. Epimerite a large sessile disc with crenulate border; protomerite with numerous vertical laminations; spores biconical.

S. phalangii (Léger) (Fig. 210, *e-g*). Sporadins 2–2.5 mm. long; protomerite with 15–16 plates; cysts 500 μ in diameter; spores 9 μ by 5 μ ; in gut of *Phalangium crassum* and *P. cornutum* (Arachnida).

Genus **Amphorocephalus** Ellis. Epimerite a sessile peripherally fluted disc set upon a short neck; protomerite constricted superficially; spores unknown.

A. amphorellus E. (Fig. 210, *h*). Sporadins 500–970 μ long; in gut of *Scolopendra heros*.

Genus **Pyxinia** Hammerschmidt. Epimerite flat crenulate crateriform disc; with a style in center; spores biconical.

P. bulbifera Watson (Fig. 210, *i*). Sporadins up to 850 μ long; in gut of *Dermestes lardarius*.

Genus **Schneideria** Léger. Epimerite sessile, a thick horizontal disc with milled border; a style arising from center; sporadins without protomerite; spores biconical.

S. mucronata L. (Fig. 210, *j*). Sporadins 700–800 μ long; agile; polymorphic; cysts 270 μ by 190 μ ; spores fusiform, 15 μ by 9 μ ; in intestinal caeca of larvae of *Bibio marci*.

Genus **Beloides** Labbé. Epimerite bordered by pointed lateral processes and apical style; spores biconical.

B. firmus (Léger) (Fig. 210, *k*). Style 80 μ long; cysts 180–200 μ in diameter; spores 14.5 μ by 6 μ ; in gut of larvae of *Dermestes lardarius*.

Genus **Taeniocystis** Léger. Epimerite sessile or with a short neck; 8–10 digitiform processes at its apex; deutomerite divided by septa into many chambers; spores biconical.

T. mira L. (Fig. 210, *l*). Sporadins tapeworm-like; 400–500 μ long; epimerite with 6–8 curved hooks; cysts spherical, 130 μ in diameter; spores 7 μ by 3 μ ; in gut of larval *Ceratopogon solstitialis*.

Genus **Stictospora** Léger. Epimerite with a short neck, a spherical crateriform ball with 12 posteriorly-directed laminations set close to neck; cysts with a gelatinous envelope; without ducts; spores biconical, slightly curved.

S. provincialis L. (Fig. 210, *m, n*). Sporadins 1–2 mm. long; cysts 800μ in diameter; in gut of larvae of *Melolontha* sp. and *Rhizotrogus* sp.

Genus **Bothriopsis** Schneider. Epimerite sessile, small, oval, with 6 or more filamentous processes directed upward; spores biconical; cysts spherical.

B. histrio S. (Fig. 210, *o*). Epimerite with 6 filaments, $80\text{--}90\mu$ long; cysts $400\text{--}500\mu$ long; spores 7.2μ by 5μ ; in gut of *Hydaticus* sp.

Genus **Coleorhynchus** Labbé. Epimerite discoid, lower border over deutomerite; spores biconical.

C. heros (Schneider) (Fig. 210, *p-r*). Sporadins 2–3 mm. long; in gut of *Nepa cinerea*.

Genus **Legeria** Labbé. Protomerite wider than deutomerite; epimerite unknown; cysts without duct; spores cylindro-biconical.

L. agilis (Schneider) (Fig. 210, *s*). In gut of the larvae of *Colymbetes* sp.

Genus **Phialoides** Labbé. Epimerite a cushion set peripherally with stout teeth, surrounded by a wider collar; with a long neck; cysts spherical, without ducts; spores biconical.

P. ornata (Léger) (Fig. 210, *t-v*). Sporadins 500μ long; cysts $300\text{--}400\mu$ in diameter; spores 10.5μ by 6.7μ ; in gut of larvae of *Hydrophilus piceus*.

Genus **Geneiorhynchus** Schneider. Epimerite a tuft of short bristles at end of neck; spores cylindrical.

G. aeschnae Crawley (Fig. 210, *w*). Sporadins 420μ long; cysts and spores unknown; in *Aeschna constricta*.

Family 13 Porosporidae Léger

When naked or well-protected sporozoites enter the stomach and midgut of a specific crustacean host, they develop into typical cephaline gregarines; 1, 2, or more sporadins become associated and encyst. Repeated nuclear and cytoplasmic division results in formation of an enormous number of **gymnospores** in hindgut. Some observers consider this change as schizogony, and hence include the family in the suborder Schizogregarinaria. When the gymnospores are voided in the faeces of crustaceans and come in contact with molluscan host, they enter, or are taken in by phagocytosis of, the epithelial cells of the gills, mantle or digestive system. These gymnospores are especially found in abundance in the lacunae of the gills. Presently they become paired and fuse (Hatt);

the zygotes develop into naked or encapsulated sporozoites within the phagocytes of the molluscan host, which when taken in by a crustacean host, develop into cephaline gregarines.

Genus *Porospora* Schneider. Sporozoites formed in molluscan phagocytes without any protective envelope (Hatt).

FIG. 211. a-f, *Porospora gigantea* (Hatt). a, a cephalin attached to *Homarus* gut, $\times 1250$; b, gymnosporos; c, d, developing sporozoites in mollusc; e, sporozoites enveloped by phagocyte; f, a sporozoite, $\times 2250$. g-n, *Nematopsis legeri* (Hatt). g, h, trophozoites in *Eriphia*; i, associated trophozoites attached to gut-epithelium, $\times 1250$; j, gymnosporos; k, gymnosporos after entering molluscan body; l, a young sporozoite, $\times 2250$; m, cyst in mollusc with six spores; n, germination of a spore in *Eriphia* gut, $\times 1250$.

P. gigantea (van Beneden) (Fig. 211, *a-f*). Sporadins in *Homarus gammarus*, up to 10 mm. long; cysts 3–4 mm. in diameter; gymnosporos spherical, 8μ in diameter (Hatt), containing some 1500 merozoites; in molluscan hosts, *Mytilus minimus* and *Trochocochlea mutabilis*, they develop into naked sporozoites (17μ long) which are usually grouped within phagocytes.

Genus **Nematopsis** Schneider. Development similar to that of *Porospora* (Hatt); but each sporozoite in a double envelope.

N. legeri (de Beauchamp) (*Porospora galloprovincialis* Léger and Duboscq; *N. ostrearum* Prytherch) (Fig. 211, *g-n*). Hatt (1931) carried on a very careful study of its development. Sporadins in a crustacean, *Eriphia spinifrons*, in linear or bifurcated syzygy $75\text{--}750\mu$ long; cysts about 80μ in diameter; gymnosporos 7μ in diameter, composed of fewer, but larger merozoites; permanent spores with a distinct one-piece shell (endospore) and a less conspicuous episporos, about $14\text{--}15\mu$ long and circular in cross-section, develop in numerous species of molluscan hosts: *Mytilus galloprovincialis*, *M. minimus*, *Lasea rubra*, *Cardita calyculata*, *Chiton caprearum*, *Trochocochlea turbinata*, *T. articulata*, *T. mutabilis*, *Phorcus richardi*, *Gibbula divaricata*, *G. rarilineata*, *G. adamsoni*, *Pisania maculosa*, *Cerithium rupestre*, *Columbella rustica*, and *Conus mediterraneus* in European waters.

The author found in *Ostrea virginica* and other molluscs in North Carolina, Virginia, and Maryland, this gregarine and was the first to demonstrate on this continent the germination of the spores taken from the infected oysters in the stomach and midgut of *Panopeus herbsti* and *Eurypanopeus depressus* at the Bureau of Fisheries Biological Laboratory at Beaufort, N. C. in July, 1936. The vermiform sporozoites emerge from the spores in the pyloric chamber of the stomach and more abundantly in the midgut of the mud crabs as early as thirty minutes after introduction of the infected tissues of the oyster into their mouths. In the brackish water of the middle Chesapeake Bay region of Maryland, the oyster and other molluscs are only slightly infected. The presence of the characteristic spores in oyster tissues is easily demonstrated by addition of 10 per cent sodium hydroxide solution to the material on slides.

Suborder 2 Schizogregarinaria Léger

The schizogregarines are intestinal parasites of arthropods, annelids, and tunicates. When the spore gains entrance to the di-

gestive tract of a specific host through mouth, it germinates and the sporozoites are set free (Fig. 212). These sporozoites develop into trophozoites either in the gut-lumen or within the host cells, and undergo schizogony (c), which may be binary or multiple fission or budding. The fully grown trophozoites become paired as in Eugregarinina and encyst, in which condition they undergo sexual reproduction. Each individual which is now a gametocyte

FIG. 212. The life-cycle of *Schizocystis gregarinoides*, $\times 1000$ (Léger). a, germinating spore; b, growth of schizonts; c, schizogony; d, two gametocytes and their association; e, stages in gamete formation, f, zygote formation, g, cyst containing zygotes, each of which develops into a spore shown in a.

produces gametes (d-e). Fusion of two gametes follows (f). The zygote develops into a spore containing 1-8 sporozoites (g, a).

- One spore from 2 gametocytes.....Family 1 Ophryocystidae (p. 459)
- Two or more spores from 2 gametocytes.....
-Family 2 Schizocystidae (p. 460)

Family 1 **Ophryocystidae** Léger and Duboscq

Two gametocytes produce one spore; in Malpighian tubules of Coleoptera, gut of Ascidia and coelom of Oligochaeta.

Genus **Ophryocystis** Schneider. Schizogony by binary or multiple division; extracellular; schizonts conical, attached to host cells by pseudopods; a single spore in a pair of spheroidal gametocytes; spore with 8 sporozoites; in Malpighian tubules of Coleoptera. Several species.

O. mesnili Léger (Fig. 213, a-e). In *Tenebrio molitor*; schizonts 1-4 nuclei; gametocytes 11μ in diameter; pairs $16-17\mu$ by 11μ ; spores biconical, 11μ by 7μ .

FIG. 213. a-e, *Ophryocystis mesnili* (a, trophozoite attached to Malpighian tubule; b-e, sporogony), $\times 1330$ (Léger); f, g, *Merogregarina amaroucii*, $\times 1000$ (Porter); h, i, *Spirocystis nidula* (h, $\times 770$; i, $\times 500$) (Léger and Duboscq); j, k, *Caulleryella pipientis* (j, gut of *Culex pipiens* with trophozoites, $\times 200$; k, a spore, $\times 1200$) (Buschkiel).

Genus **Merogregarina** Porter. Schizogony intracellular; trophozoites attached to gut epithelium by a proboscisiform organella; resembles somewhat *Selenidium*, but 2 gametocytes giving rise to one spore containing 8 sporozoites.

M. amaroucii P. (Fig. 213, f, g). In gut of the ascidian, *Amaroucium* sp.; extracellular; trophozoites with epimerite, $27-31\mu$ long; spore about 14μ long.

Genus **Spirocystis** Léger and Duboscq. Schizogony intracellular; schizonts curved, one end highly narrowed; mature schizonts

snail-like, with numerous nuclei; repeated schizogony (?); gametes in chloragogen cells, somatic and visceral peritonium; association of 2 gametes produces a spore. One species.

S. nidula L. and D. (Fig. 213, *h, i*). In coelom and gut epithelium of *Lumbricus variegatus*; multinucleate schizont about 35μ long; microgametes fusiform or ovoid, 7μ by 3μ ; macrogametes ovoid or spherical, 11μ in diameter; fusion of 2 gametes produces one spore which is thick-walled, 35μ long and contains one sporozoite, up to 40μ long.

Family 2 Schizocystidae Léger and Duboseq

Two or more spores are produced in a pair of gametocytes.

Genus **Schizocystis** Léger. Mature trophozoite multinucleate; ovoid or cylindrical with differentiated anterior end; schizogony by multiple division; trophozoites become associated, encyst, and produce numerous (up to 30) spores, each with 8 sporozoites; in Diptera, Annelida, and Sipunculoida.

S. gregarinoides L. (Fig. 212). In gut of larvae of *Ceratopogon solstitialis*; mature schizonts up to 400μ by 15μ ; curved or spirally coiled; gametocytes $30\text{--}50\mu$ long; cysts ovoid, $16\text{--}32\mu$ long; spores biconical, 8μ by 4μ .

Genus **Syncystis** Schneider. Schizogony and sporogony extracellular; young trophozoites elongate, amoeboid; mature schizonts more or less spheroidal, producing some 150 merozoites; cysts spherical, producing about 150 spores. One species.

S. mirabilis S. (Fig. 214, *k, l*). In coelomic fluid and fat bodies of *Nepa cinerea*; merozoites, 7μ long; cysts spherical; spores navicular, 3–4 spines at ends, 10μ by 6μ , with 8 sporozoites.

Genus **Mattesia** Naville. Schizogony in the adipose tissue cell; 2 spores produced by a pair of gametocytes. One species.

M. dispora N. (Fig. 214, *m*). In adipose tissue cells of larvae of the flour moth, *Ephestia kuhniella* and *Plodia interpunctella* (pupa and adult also); schizonts $2.5\text{--}12\mu$ long; cyst $8\text{--}12\mu$ in diameter, with 2 spores, each with 8 sporozoites; spores 14μ by 7.5μ (Naville); 11μ by 6μ (maximum 13.5μ by 8μ) (Musgrave and Mackinnon). Highly pathogenic according to Musgrave and Mackinnon.

Genus **Caulleryella** Keilin. Schizogony extracellular; each gametocyte gives rise to 8 gametes, a pair forming 8 zygotes or spores; spore with 8 sporozoites; in gut of dipterous larvae. Several species.

C. pipientis Buschkiel (Fig. 213, *j, k*). Average trophozoites

50–60 μ by 23–26 μ ; with paraglycogen grains; schizogony produces 30–38 merozoites; in gut of larvae of *Culex pipiens*.

Genus *Lipotropha* Keilin. Schizogony and sporogony intracellular; cyst contains 16 spores, each with 8 sporozoites; in fat body of *Systemus* larvae. One species.

L. macrospora K. (Fig. 214, n). Spores about 13.5 μ by 3 μ .

FIG. 214. a–c, *Selenidium potamillae* (a, $\times 420$; b, cyst with spores, $\times 330$; c, spore) (Mackinnon and Ray); d–f, *Meroselenidium keilini* (d, sporadin, $\times 670$; e, f, different views of spore, $\times 930$) (Mackinnon and Ray); g–j, *Machadoella triatomae* (g, a schizont, $\times 1420$; h, i, a single and associated sporadins, $\times 710$; j, spore, $\times 1920$) (Reichenow); k, l, *Syncystis mirabilis*: k, a cyst, $\times 470$ (Steopoe); l, spore (Schneider); m, *Mattesia dispora*, $\times 1480$ (Naville); n, *Lipotropha macrospora*, $\times 800$ (Keilin).

Genus *Selenidium* Giard. Schizogony intracellular; many spores produced by a pair of extracellular gametocytes; spore with 4 or more sporozoites; in gut of annelids.

S. potamillae Mackinnon and Ray (Fig. 214, a–c). Trophozoites euglenoid, average size 40 μ by 15 μ ; longitudinal striae; cysts oblong, producing many spores; spore, spherical with 4 (up to 10) sporozoites; in gut of the polychaete, *Potamilla reniformis*.

Genus **Meroselepidium** Mackinnon and Ray. Schizogony intracellular, initiated by formation of small masses which give rise to merozoites; about 20 spores from a pair of gametocytes; spores with numerous sporozoites. One species.

M. keilini M. and R. (Fig. 214, d-f). Large schizonts about 150μ by 30μ ; sporadins free in gut $200-300\mu$ by $40-70\mu$; paired gametocytes 85μ by 40μ ; spores $26-28\mu$ by $14-16\mu$, bivalve (?), transverse ridges, with many sporozoites; in gut of *Potomilla reniformis*.

Genus **Machadoella** Reichenow. Nematode-like, rigid; simple rounded anterior end; thick pellicle, longitudinally striated; schizogony in vermiform stage; head to head association of gametocytes; cysts with 3-6 spores, each with 8 sporozoites.

M. triatoma R. (Fig. 214, g-j). Schizonts about 55μ long; gametocytes $100-120\mu$ long; schizogony into 6-8 merozoites; cysts with 3-6 spores; spore $10-11\mu$ by $7-7.5\mu$; in Malpighian tubules of *Triatoma dimidiata* (of Guatemala).

References

- DOFLEIN, F. and E. REICHENOW 1929 *Lehrbuch der Protozoenkunde*, 5th edition. Jena.
- LABBÉ, A. 1899 *Sporozoa*. In *Das Tierreich*. Part 5.
- NAVILLE, A. 1931 Les Sporozoaires. *Mém. d'hist. nat. de Genève*, Vol. 41.
- WENYON, C. M. 1926 *Protozoology*. Vols. 1, 2.
- BHATIA, B. L. 1930 Synopsis of the genera and classification of haplocyte gregarines. *Parasitology*. Vol. 22.
- GOODRICH, H. P. 1938 Nina: a remarkable gregarine. *Quart. Jour. Micr. Sci. (N.S.)*, Vol. 81.
- HATT, P. 1931 L'évolution des Porosporides chez les mollusques. *Arch. zool. exp.*, Vol. 72.
- HESSE, E. 1909 Contribution à l'étude des Monocystidees des Oligochetes, *Ibid.*, Vol. 3.
- JONES, A. W. 1943 *Metamera reynoldsi* n. sp., a cephaline gregarine from the leech, *Glossosiphonia complanata*. *Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc.*, Vol. 62.
- KAMM, NINNIE WATSON 1922 Studies on gregarines. II. *Illinois Biol. Monogr.*, Vol. 7.
- 1922 A list of the new gregarines described from 1911 to 1920. *Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc.*, Vol. 41.
- LÉGER, L. 1907, 1909 Les schizogregarines des trachéates. I, II. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vols. 8, 18.
- and O. DUBOSCQ 1915 Étude sur *Spirocystis nidula* L. et D., schizogregarine du *Lumbricus variegatus* Müll. *Ibid.*, Vol. 35.
- NOBLE, E. R. 1938 The life-cycle of *Zygosoma globosum* sp. nov., a gregarine parasite of *Urechis caupo*. *Univ. Calif. Publ. Zool.*, Vol. 43.

- SPRAGUE, V. 1941 Studies on *Gregarina blattarum* with particular reference to the chromosome cycle. Illinois Biol. Monogr., Vol. 18.
- TROISI, R. A. 1933 Studies on the acephaline gregarines of some oligochaete annelids. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 52.
- WATSON, MINNIE 1916 Studies on Gregarines. I. Illinois Biol. Mongr., Vol. 2.
- WESCHENFELDER, R. 1938 Die Entwicklung von *Actinocephalus parvus* Wellmer. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 91.

Order 2 *Coccidia* Leuckart

THE *Coccidia* show a wide zoological distribution, attacking all vertebrates and higher invertebrates alike. The majority are parasites of the epithelium of the digestive tract and its associated glands. Asexual reproduction is by schizogony and sexual reproduction by anisogamy in the majority of species. Both kinds of reproduction take place in one and the same host body, with the exception of such forms as *Aggregata* in which alternation of generations and of hosts occurs.

Gametocytes similar; independent; a microgametocyte developing into many microgametes.....Suborder 1 *Eimeridea*
 Gametocytes dissimilar; association begins during the late trophic life; a few microgametes.....Suborder 2 *Adeleidea* (p. 477)

Suborder 1 *Eimeridia* Léger

These coccidians are, as a rule, intracellular parasites of the gut epithelium. Both asexual (schizogonic) and sexual (sporogonic) generations occur in one host, although in some there is also alternation of hosts. The life-cycle of *Eimeria schubergi*, a gut parasite of the centipede, *Lithobius forficatus*, as observed by Schaudinn, is as follows (Fig. 215). The infection begins when the mature oocysts of the coccidian gain entrance into the host through the mouth. The sporozoites escape from the spores and make their way through the micropyle of the oocyst into the gut lumen (*p*). By active movement they reach and enter the epithelial cells (*a*). These schizonts grow into large rounded bodies and their nuclei multiply in number. The newly formed nuclei move to the body surface, and each becomes surrounded by a small mass of cytoplasm, forming a merozoite. When the host cells rupture, the merozoites are set free in the gut lumen, make their way into new host cells and repeat the development (*b*). Instead of growing into schizonts, some merozoites transform themselves into macro- or micro-gametocytes (*c*). Each macrogametocyte contains refractile bodies, and becomes a mature macrogamete, after extruding a part of its nuclear material (*d, e*). In the microgametocyte, the nucleus divides several times and each division-product assumes a compact appearance (*f-h*). The biflagellate comma-shaped microgametes thus produced, show activity when freed from the host cells (*i*). A microgamete and a macrogamete unite to form a zygote which secretes a membrane around itself (*j*). This stage is known as the **oocyst**. The nucleus divides twice and produces four

nuclei (*k-m*). Each of the four nuclei becomes the center of a **sporoblast** which secretes a membrane and transforms itself into a **spore** (*n*). Its nucleus, in the meantime, undergoes a division, and

FIG. 215. The life-cycle of *Eimeria schubergi*, $\times 400$ (Schaudinn). a, entrance of a sporozoite in the gut epithelial cell of host and growth of schizont; b, schizogony; c, macro- and micro-gametocyte; d, e, formation of macrogamete; f-h, formation of microgametes; i, mature gametes prior to fusion, j, k, fertilization; l-n, spore-formation; o, oocyst containing four mature spores, each with two sporozoites; p, germination of spores in host's gut.

two **sporozoites** develop in the spore (*o*). Oocysts leave the host in the faecal matter and become the source of infection.

Body vermiform; schizogony in motile stage..... Family 1 Selenococcidiidae (p. 466)

Body not vermiform

Alternation of generations and of hosts.. Family 2 Aggregatidae (p. 466)

Only one host

Gametocytes become associated early; many microgametes.....

..... Family 3 Dobelliidae (p. 469)

Gametocytes independent..... Family 4 Eimeriidae (p. 470)

Family 1 *Selenococcidiidae* Poche

Vermiform body and gametic differentiation place this family on the borderline between the Coccidia and Gregarinida.

Genus *Selenococcidium* Léger and Duboscq. Nucleus of vermiform trophozoite divides 3 times, producing 8 nuclei; trophozoite becomes rounded after entering gut-epithelium and divides into 8 schizonts; this is apparently repeated; schizonts develop into gametocytes; microgametocyte produces numerous microgametes; gametic union and sporogony (?). One species.

FIG. 216. *Selenococcidium intermedium*, $\times 550$ (Léger and Duboscq). a, schizont in host gut; b, c, schizogony; d, microgametocyte; e, microgametes; f, macrogametocyte; g, macrogamete; h, zygote (oocyst).

S. intermedium L. and D. (Fig. 216). Octonucleate vermiform schizont 60–100 μ long, and divides into vermicular merozoites in gut cells; parasitic in gut lumen of European lobster.

Family 2 *Aggregatidae* Labbé

Anisogamy results in production of zygotes which become transformed into many spores, each with 2–30 sporozoites; in schizogony **cytomeres** first appear and then merozoites; alternation of generations and of hosts which are marine annelids, molluscs and crustaceans.

Genus *Aggregata* Frenzel. Schizogony in a crustacean and sporogony in a cephalopod; zygote produces many spores, each with 3 sporozoites. Many species.

A. eberthi (Labbé) (Fig. 217). Schizogony in *Portunus depurator* and sporogony in *Sepia officinalis*. Spores (a) germinate in the crab gut, each liberating 3 sporozoites (b) which grow and produce merozoites (10 μ by 2 μ) by schizogony in peri-intestinal connective tissue cells (6 chromosomes) (c–f); when host crab is eaten by

a cuttlefish, merozoites penetrate gut wall and develop into micro- and macro-gametocytes (*h, k*), and further into gametes (*j-l*); anisogamy (*m*) produces zygotes; zygote nucleus contains 12 chromosomes which become divided into 2 groups of 6 in the first

FIG. 217. The life-cycle of *Aggregata eberthi* (Dobell). a, a mature spore; b, germination of spore; c-f, schizogony; g, a merozoite, swallowed by *Sepia*; h-j, development of microgametes; k-l, development of macrogamete; m, fertilization; n, o, first zygotic division, chromosomes reduced in number from 12 to 6; p, q, development of sporoblasts, each of which develops into a spore with three sporozoites.

division (*n, o*); repeated nuclear division (*p*) forms many sporoblasts (*q*), each transforms itself into a spherical spore with 3 sporozoites (Dobell; Naville; Bělař).

Genus **Merocystis** Dakin. Sporogony in the kidney of the whelk, *Buccinum*; schizogony unknown, in another host (possibly a crab); microgametocytes produce first cytomerer which in turn form microgametes; anisogamy gives rise to zygotes, zygote forms many sporoblasts, each developing into a spore; spore spherical, with 2 sporozoites. One species.

M. kathae D. (Fig. 218, a, b). In the kidney of *Buccinum undatum*; spores spherical, about 14μ in diameter. Patten (1935) studied its life cycle and found that during microgametogenesis and sporogony, 6 chromosomes occur. She added that meiosis occurs in the zygote which is the only diploid stage as in *Aggregata eberthi*.

Genus **Pseudoklossia** Léger and Duboseq. Anisogamy and sporogony in the kidney of marine mussels; oocyst or zygote produces numerous spores; spore with 2 sporozoites; no residual body; schizogony unknown, in another host.

P. pectinis L. and D. (Fig. 218, c). In kidney of *Pecten maximus* in France; association of 2 sporozoites which are 3.5μ in diameter.

Genus **Caryotropha** Siedlecki. Both schizogony and sporogony take place in a host. One species.

C. mesnili S. In coelom (in floating bundles of spermatogonia) of the polychaete, *Polynnia nebulosa*; schizogony in bundle of spermatogonia, in which cytomerer with 10–16 nuclei and then merozoites are formed; schizogony repeated; gametocytes undergo development also in the same host cells; microgametes become set free in coelom, where union with macrogametes takes place; each oocyst forms about 16 spores; spore with usually 12 sporozoites; cysts are extruded with the reproductive cells of the host worm.

Genus **Myriospora** Lermantoff. Anisogamy and sporogony in marine snails; schizogony unknown; oocyst forms numerous spores each with 2 sporozoites. One species.

M. trophoniae L. In the polychaete, *Trophonia plumosa*; macrogametes, vermiform, up to 800μ long, later ovoid; microgametocyte forms first about 100 cytomerer, each with some 20 nuclei; microgametes comma-shaped; anisogamy; oocyst with several hundred spores, each with about 24 sporozoites.

Genus **Hyaloklossia** Labbé. Schizogony unknown; sporogony in the kidney of marine mussels; oocyst in the organ-cavity; spherical spores of 2 kinds: smaller one with 2 spirally coiled sporozoites and the other with 4–6 sporozoites. One species.

H. pelsenceri Léger. Spherical oocysts $75\text{--}80\mu$ in diameter; spores 8μ and $11\text{--}12\mu$ in diameter; in kidney of *Tellina* sp. and *Donax* sp.

Genus **Angeiocystis** Brasil. Schizogony unknown; sporogony in polychaetes; oocyst forms 4 spores; spore oval, with about 30 sporozoites and residual body at a pole. One species.

A. audouinii B. In the cardiac body of *Audouinia tentaculata*; macrogametes vermiform, up to 65μ long.

FIG. 218. a, b, *Merocystis kathae*, $\times 1000$ (Foulon); c, *Pseudoklossia pectinis*, two sporozoites of a spore, $\times 1470$ (Léger and Duboseq); d-k, *Eimeria stiedae*: d, a trophozoite; e, host cell with three trophozoites; f, g, schizogony; h, macrogametocyte, $\times 1270$ (Hartmann); i-k, oocysts, $\times 830$ (Wasilewski); l, m, *E. perforans*, $\times 750$ (Pérard); n, *E. faurei*, $\times 800$ (Wenyon).

Family 3 Dobelliidae Ikeda

Numerous microgametes develop from each microgametocyte; the union of gametocytes begins early.

Genus **Dobellia** Ikeda. Schizonts sexually differentiated: microschizonts and macroschizonts; young schizonts binucleate; association of 2 gametocytes begins early as in Adeleidea (p. 477), but many microgametes are formed in each microgametocyte. One species.

D. linulecata I. In the gut of *Petalostoma minutum*; mature cocyst $20-25\mu$ in diameter, with a thin wall, contains some 100 sporozoites without any spore membrane around them.

Family 4 **Eimeriidae** Léger

Macro- and micro-gametocytes develop independently; micro-gametocyte produces many gametes; an oocyst from a pair of anisogametes; oocyst with variable number of spores containing 1-many sporozoites, which condition is used as basis of generic differentiation. Oocysts found in the faeces of hosts are usually immature; time needed for completion of spore formation depends upon the species, temperature, moisture, etc. Becker (1934) recommends the following bactericidal solutions in which oocysts may develop to maturity: 1% formaldehyde, 1% chromic acid or 2-4% potassium dichromate.

Genus **Eimeria** Schneider (*Coccidium* Leuckart). Zygote or oocyst develops 4 spores, each with 2 sporozoites. Numerous species. A check list of known species has been prepared by Harcastle (1943).

E. schubergi (Schaudinn) (Fig. 215). In the gut of *Lithobius forficatus*; oocysts spherical, 22-25 μ in diameter.

E. stiedae (Lindemann) (*Coccidium oviforme* Leuckart) (Fig. 218, d-k). In the epithelium of the bile-duct and liver (with white nodules) of rabbits; heavy infection is believed to be the cause of death of young animals, which may occur in an epidemic form; schizonts ovoid or spherical, 15-18 μ in diameter; merozoite 8-10 μ long; oocysts ovoid to ellipsoid, often yellowish, micropylar end flattened; mature oocysts 28-40 μ by 16-25 μ ; sporulation in 60-70 hours.

E. perforans (Leuckart) (Fig. 218, l, m). In the gut of rabbits; pathogenic to host; oocysts with equally rounded ends, 24-30 μ by 14-20 μ ; sporulation in 30-48 hours.

E. zurni (Rivolta). In the gut of cattle; said to be the cause of diarrhoea; oocysts spherical to ellipsoidal, 12-28 μ by 10-20 μ ; sporulation in 48-72 hours.

E. smithi Yakimoff and Galouzo. In the gut of cattle; oocysts 25-32 μ by 20-29 μ ; sporulation in 3-5 days in shallow dishes, and 2 weeks in deep dishes (Becker).

E. ellipsoidal Becker and Frye. In the faeces of healthy calf; oocysts ellipsoidal, 20-26 μ by 13-17 μ ; sporulation in 18 days.

E. cylindrica Wilson. In the faeces of cattle; oocysts cylindrical, 19-27 μ by 12-15 μ ; sporulation in 2-10 days.

E. faurei Moussu and Morotel (Fig. 218, n). In the gut of sheep and goat; oocysts ovoid, 20-40 μ by 17-26 μ ; sporulation in 24-48 hours. Christensen (1938) recognized 7 species of *Eimeria* in the faeces of 96 of 100 North American sheep.

E. arloingi Marotel. In the gut of sheep and goat; oocysts with a cap, ovoid, 25-35 μ by 18-25 μ ; sporulation in 3 days.

E. intricata Spiegel. In gut of sheep and goat; oocysts with thick wall, with or without cap, ellipsoidal, $42\text{--}60\mu$ by $30\text{--}36\mu$; sporulation in about 9 days.

E. deblickei Douwes (Fig. 219, a). In the gut of pigs; 30–82 per cent infection in California (Henry); oocysts $12\text{--}29\mu$ by $12\text{--}20\mu$; sporulation in 7–9 days.

FIG. 219. a, *Eimeria deblickei*, $\times 1070$ (Wenyon); b, *E. canis*, $\times 650$ (Wenyon); c, *E. falciformis*, $\times 730$ (Wenyon); d, *E. tenella*, $\times 600$ (Tyzzer); e, *E. mitis*, $\times 430$ (Tyzzer); f, *E. acervulina*, $\times 430$ (Tyzzer); g, *E. maxima*, $\times 470$ (Tyzzer); h, *E. ranarum*, $\times 670$ (Laveran and Mesnil); i, *E. prevoti*, $\times 670$ (Laveran and Mesnil); j, *E. ranae*, $\times 670$ (Dobell); k, *E. sardinae*, $\times 600$ (Thomson and Robertson); l, *E. clupearum*, $\times 600$ (Thomson and Robertson); m, n, *Jarrina paludosa*, $\times 800$ (Léger and Hesse); o, p, *Wenyonella africana*, $\times 1330$ (Hoare); q, r, *Isospora hominis*, $\times 1400$ (Dobell); s, *I. bigemina*, $\times 930$ (Wenyon); t, *I. rivolta*, $\times 930$ (Wenyon).

E. scabra Henry. In the caecal contents of pigs; oocysts, brown, ellipsoidal, $22\text{--}36\mu$ by $16\text{--}26\mu$. Henry (1931) recognized 2 other species in California swine.

E. caviae Sheather. In the gut of guinea pigs; oocysts subspherical to ellipsoid, $13\text{--}26\mu$ by $13\text{--}22\mu$.

E. canis Wenyon (Fig. 219, *b*). In the gut of dogs; oocysts, ellipsoidal, $18\text{--}45\mu$ by $11\text{--}28\mu$; spores 9.5μ by 2.5μ ; sporulation in 24 hours.

E. felina Nieschulz. In the gut of cat; oocysts $21\text{--}26\mu$ by $13\text{--}17\mu$.

E. falciformis (Eimer) (Fig. 219, *c*). In the gut of mice; oocysts spherical to ovoid, $16\text{--}21\mu$ by $11\text{--}17\mu$; sporulation in 3 days.

E. nieschulzi Dieben. In the small intestine of rat; oocysts $16\text{--}26.4\mu$ by $13\text{--}21\mu$; sporulation in $65\text{--}72$ hours.

E. separata Becker and Hall. In the caecum and colon of rat; oocysts $13\text{--}19.5\mu$ by $11\text{--}17\mu$; sporulation in $27\text{--}36$ hours.

E. miyairii Ohira. In the small intestine of rat; oocysts $16.5\text{--}29\mu$ by $16\text{--}26\mu$; sporulation in $96\text{--}120$ hours.

E. tenella (Railliet and Lucet) (Fig. 219, *d*). In the caecum, colon and lower small intestine of chicken; cause of acute coccidiosis (Tyzzer); in caecal contents of California quail (Henry); schizogony in caecum; oocysts $19.5\text{--}26\mu$ by $16.5\text{--}23\mu$; sporulation in 48 hours; heavily infected caecum highly haemorrhagic.

E. mitis Tyzzer (Fig. 219, *e*). In anterior region of small intestine of chicken; oocysts subspherical, 16.2μ by 15.5μ ; sporulation in 48 hours.

E. acervulina T. (Fig. 219, *f*). In anterior region of small intestine of chicken; also in California quail (Henry); oocysts oval, $17.7\text{--}20.2\mu$ by $13.7\text{--}16.3\mu$; sporulation in 20 hours; associated with serious chronic coccidiosis (Tyzzer).

E. maxima T. (Fig. 219, *g*). In the mid-gut of chicken; oocysts oval, $21.5\text{--}42.5\mu$ by $16.5\text{--}29.8\mu$.

E. necatrix Johnson. In the small intestine (schizonts) and caecum (oocysts) of chicken; a cause of chronic coccidiosis; oocysts obovate, $13\text{--}23\mu$ by $11\text{--}18\mu$; sporulation in 48 hours.

E. praecox J. In the upper third of small intestine of chicken; oocysts ovoid, $20\text{--}25\mu$ by $15.5\text{--}20\mu$; sporulation in 48 hours.

E. meleagridis Tyzzer. In the caecum of turkey; apparently non-pathogenic; oocysts, ellipsoidal, $19\text{--}30\mu$ by $14.5\text{--}23\mu$.

E. meleagriditis T. In the lower small intestine in turkey; somewhat similar to *E. mitis*; oocysts, $16.5\text{--}20.5\mu$ by $13.2\text{--}17.2\mu$.

E. truncata (Railliet and Lucet). In the kidney of geese; oocysts truncate at one pole, ovoid, $14\text{--}23\mu$ by $13\text{--}18\mu$; some observers find that this coccidian is fatal to young geese.

E. anseris Kotlan. In the gut of geese; oocysts spherical or pyriform, $11\text{--}16\mu$ in diameter.

E. labbeana Pinto. In the gut of domestic pigeon; oocysts sometimes light brown, $15\text{--}26\mu$ by $14\text{--}24\mu$.

E. dispersa Tyzzer. In the small intestine of bob-white quail and pheasant; oocysts ovate, $18.8\text{--}22.8\mu$ (quail), smaller in pheasant, without polar inclusion; sporulation in about 24 hours.

E. ranarum (Labbé) (Fig. 219, *h*). In the gut epithelium (nuclei) of frogs; oocysts about 17μ by 12μ .

E. prevoti (Laveran and Mesnil) (Fig. 219, *i*). In the gut epithelium of frogs; oocysts about 17μ by 12μ ; when sporozoites are fully formed, the spore membranes dissolve.

E. ranae Dobell (Fig. 219, *j*). In gut of frogs; oocysts 22μ by 18μ .

E. sardinae (Thélohan) (*E. oxyphora* Dobell) (Fig. 219, *k*). In the testis of sardine; oocysts spherical $30\text{--}50\mu$.

E. clupearum (Thélohan) (*E. wenyoni* Dobell) (Fig. 219, *l*). In the liver of herrings, mackerels, and sprats; oocysts, spherical, $18\text{--}33\mu$ in diameter.

E. gadi Fiebiger. In the swim-bladder of *Gadus virens*, *G. morrhua*, and *G. aeglefinus*; schizogony and sporogony; germination of spores takes place in the bladder of the same host individual, bringing about a very heavy infection; oocysts $26\text{--}28\mu$; pathogenic (Fiebiger).

Genus **Jarrina** Léger and Hesse. Oocysts ovoid, one end rounded and the other drawn out into a short neck; 4 spores, each with 2 sporozoites.

J. paludosa L. and H. (Fig. 219, *m, n*). In the gut of *Fulica atra* and *Gallinula chloropus*; oocysts 15μ by 11μ ; sporulation in 15 days.

Genus **Wenyonella** Hoare. Oocysts with 4 spores, each with 4 sporozoites. Three species.

W. africana H. (Fig. 219, *o, p*). In the small intestine of *Boaedon lineatus* ("brown snake") in Uganda; oocysts ovoid or subspherical, $18.5\text{--}19.2\mu$ by $16\text{--}17.6\mu$; spores ovoid, 9.6μ by 8μ ; sporulation in 5–6 days.

Genus **Isospora** Schneider. Oocyst produces 2 spores, each containing 4 sporozoites.

I. hominis (Rivolta) (Figs. 219, *q, r*; 220). This is the sole coccidian parasite of man known up to the present time. Its life cycle is unknown, but most probably the schizogony, gametogenesis and sexual fusion occur in the intestinal epithelium. Oocysts have only been seen in the stools of infected persons.

The oocyst is asymmetrically fusiform; $20\text{--}33\mu$ by $10\text{--}16\mu$; wall is made up of two membranes which are highly resistant to chemicals; when voided in faeces, the contents either fill up the oocyst or appear as a spherical mass, composed of refractile granules of various sizes;

nucleus appears as a clear circular area; when the faecal specimen is kept in a covered container at the room temperature, the protoplasmic mass divides into 2 spherical sporoblasts in about 24 hours (Fig. 220, 3) each sporoblast develops in another 24 hours into a spore ($10\text{--}16\mu$ by $7\text{--}10\mu$) containing 4 sporozoites (4). Further changes take place when the oocyst finds its way into the human intestine in contaminated food or water.

I. hominis has been observed in widely separated regions, but appears not to be of common occurrence. Magath (1935) reviewed the reported cases up to 1935. As to its effect on the human host, very little is known. Connal (1922) described the course of an accidental oral infection by viable mature oocysts, as follows: The

FIG. 220. *Isospora hominis*, $\times 1150$ (Kudo). 1, a young oocyst; 2, an oocyst in which the protoplasmic mass has contracted; 3, an oocyst with 2 sporoblasts, one of which shows the division of content; 4, a mature oocyst with 2 tetrazoic spores.

incubation period was about six days, the onset sudden, and the duration over a month. The cure was spontaneous. The symptoms were diarrhoea, abdominal discomfort, flatulence, lassitude, and loss of weight. During the first three weeks of the illness no oocysts were found, but then oocysts appeared in the stools for nine days. On the 10th day they were not seen, but reappeared on the 11th and 12th days, after which they were not found again. The acute signs of illness abated within one week of the finding of the oocysts. The faeces contained a large amount of undigested material, particularly fat which gave it a thick oily consistency, showing signs of slow gaseous formation. *I. hominis* is to be considered as pathogenic to man (coccidiosis); but although it gives rise to illness in some cases, the coccidian causes no serious disturbances in most instances.

I. bigemina (Stiles) (Fig. 219, s). In the gut of cat and dog; oocysts $10\text{--}14\mu$ by $7\text{--}9\mu$.

I. rivolta (Grassi) (Fig. 219, *t*). In the gut of cat and dogs; oocysts 20–25 μ by 15–20 μ .

I. felis Wenyon (Fig. 221, *a*). In cat and dog; oocysts 39–48 μ by 26–37 μ .

I. suis Biester. In swine faeces; oocysts subspherical, about 22.5 μ by 19.4 μ ; sporulation in 4 days.

I. lacazei Labbé. In small intestine of passerine birds (sparrows, blackbirds, finches, etc.); oocysts subspherical, 18.5–30 μ by 18–29.2 μ ; heavily infected sparrow shows definite symptoms; sporulation in 4–5 days.

I. lieberkühni (Labbé) (Fig. 221, *b*). Oocyst about 40 μ long; in the kidney of frogs.

Genus **Cyclospora** Schneider. Development similar to that of *Eimeria*; oocyst with 2 spores, each with 2 sporozoites and covered by a bi-valve shell.

C. caryolytica Schaudinn (Fig. 221, *c*). In the gut of mole; sporozoites enter and develop in the nuclei of gut epithelial cells; oocyst oval, about 15 μ by 11.5 μ .

Genus **Dorisiella** Ray. Zygote develops (without becoming oocyst) into 2 spores, each with 8 sporozoites; macrogametocytes migratory.

D. scolelepidis R. (Fig. 221, *d*). In the gut of *Scolecopsis fuliginosa*; zygote contents divide into 2 oval spores, 12–16 μ by 6–10 μ ; spore with 8 sporozoites.

Genus **Caryospora** Léger. Oocyst develops into a single spore with 8 sporozoites and a residual mass; membrane thick and yellow. One species.

C. simplex L. (Fig. 221, *e, f*). In the gut-epithelium of *Vipera aspis*; oocyst thick-walled, 10–15 μ in diameter.

Genus **Cryptosporidium** Tyzzer. Lumen-dwelling minute organisms; oocyst with 4 sporozoites.

C. muris T. (Fig. 221, *g, i*). In the peptic glands of the mouse; both schizogony and sporogony in the mucoid material on surface of the epithelium; oocysts 7 μ by 5 μ ; 4 sporozoites, 12–14 μ long.

C. parvum T. In the glands of small intestine of the mouse; oocysts with 4 sporozoites, 4.5 μ in diameter.

Genus **Pfeifferinella** Wasielewski. Macrogamete with a "reception tubule" by which microgamete enters; oocyst produces directly 8 sporozoites.

P. ellipsoides W. (Fig. 221, *j*). In the liver of *Planorbis corneus*; oocysts oval, 13–15 μ long.

P. impudica Léger and Hollande (Fig. 221, *k*). In the liver of *Limax marginatus*; oocysts ovoid, 20 μ by 10 μ .

Genus **Lankesterella** Labbé. Oocyst produces 32 or more sporozoites directly without spore-formation; in endothelial cells of cold-blooded vertebrates; mature sporozoites enter erythrocytes in which they are transmitted to a new host individual by bloodsucking invertebrates.

L. minima (Chaussat) (Fig. 221, l). In frogs; transmitted by the leech (*Placobdella marginata*); frog acquires infection through introduction of sporozoites by a leech; sporozoites make their way

FIG. 221. a, *Isospora felis*, $\times 930$ (Wenyon); b, *I. lieberkuhni*, $\times 660$ (Laveran and Mesnil); c, *Cyclospora caryolytica*, $\times 1330$ (Schaudinn); d, *Dorisiella scolelepidis*, oocyst with two spores, $\times 1400$ (Ray); e, f, *Caryospora simplex*, $\times 800$ (Léger); g-i, *Cryptosporidium muris* (g, h, oocysts; i, emergence of four sporozoites), $\times 1030$ (Tyzzer); j, *Pfeifferinella ellipsoides*, $\times 1330$ (Wasielewski); k, *P. impudica*, $\times 800$ (Léger and Hollande); l, *Lankesterella minima*, a mature cyst in endothelial cell, $\times 1000$ (Nöller); m, *Barrouxia ornata*, $\times 1330$ (Schneider); n, *Echinospora labbei*, $\times 1000$ (Léger).

into the blood capillaries of various organs; there they enter endothelial cells; schizogony produces numerous merozoites which bring about infection of many host cells; finally macro- and micro-gametocytes are formed; anisogamy produces zygotes which transform into oocysts, in which a number of sporozoites develop; these sporozoites

are set free upon disintegration of cyst wall in the blood plasma and enter erythrocytes (Nöller); oocyst oval, about 33μ by 23μ .

Genus **Schellackia** Reichenow. Oocyst spherical with 8 sporozoites, without spore membrane; in gut of lizards.

S. bolivari R. In mid-gut of *Acanthodactylus vulgaris* and *Psammomodromus hispanicus*; development similar to *Eimeria schubergi* (Fig. 215); oocysts, spherical, $15-19\mu$ in diameter, with 8 sporozoites.

Genus **Barrouxia** Schneider. Oocyst with numerous spores, each with a single sporozoite; spore membrane uni- or bi-valve, with or without caudal prolongation.

B. ornata S. (Fig. 221, *m*). In gut of *Nepa cinerea*; oocysts spherical, $34-37\mu$ in diameter, with many spores; spore with one sporozoite and bivalve shell, $17-20\mu$ by $7-10\mu$.

Genus **Echinospora** Léger. Oocyst with 4-8 spores, each with a sporozoite; endospore with many small spinous projections.

E. labbei L. (Fig. 221, *n*). In the gut of *Lithobius mutabilis*; oocyst spherical, $30-40\mu$ in diameter; spores, 11μ by 9.4μ , with bi-valve shell; sporulation completed in about 20 days.

Suborder 2 Adeleidea Léger

The Adeleidea are on the whole similar to Eimeridea in their habitat and development, but the micro- and macro-gametocytes become attached to each other in pairs during the course of development into gametes (Fig. 222), and each microgametocyte produces a few microgametes. The zygote becomes oocyst which produces numerous sporoblasts, each of which develops into a spore with 2 or 4 sporozoites.

In epithelium of gut and its appended glands of chiefly invertebrates. . .

..... Family 1 Adeleidae

In cells of circulatory system of vertebrates.

..... Family 2 Haemogregarinidae (p. 480)

Family 1 Adeleidae Léger

Genus **Adelea** Schneider. Zygote develops into a thinly walled oocyst with numerous flattened spores, each with 2 sporozoites; in arthropods.

A. ovata S. (Fig. 222). In the gut of *Lithobius forficatus*; merozoites $17-22\mu$ long; spores $11-14\mu$ in diameter by 6μ thick; sporozoites 20μ by 4μ .

Genus **Adelina** Hesse. Oocyst thick-walled; spores spherical, comparatively small in number; in the gut or coelom of arthropods and oligochaetes.

FIG. 222. The life-cycle of *Adelea ovata*, $\times 600$ (Schellack and Reichenow). a, schizont entering the gut epithelium of the host centipede; b-d, schizogony; e, larger form of merozoite; f, microgametocyte (left) and macrogametocyte (right); g, association of gametocytes; h, i, fertilization; j, zygote; k, nuclear division in zygote; l, mature oocyst with many spores.

A. dimidiata (Schneider) (Fig. 223, a). In the gut of *Scolopendra cingulata* and other myriapods; oocysts with 3-17 spores.

A. octospora H. (Fig. 223, b). Spherical oocyst contains spores; in the coelom of *Slavina appendiculata*.

A. deronis Hauschka and Pennypacker. In peritoneum of *Dero limosa*; oocyst contains 12 (10–14) spores; meiosis at the first zygotic nuclear division; haploid chromosome number 10; the life cycle is completed in 18 days at room temperature (Hauschka, 1943).

Genus **Klossia** Schneider. Oocyst with numerous spherical spores, each with 3–10 sporozoites. Several species.

K. helicina S. In the kidneys of various land-snails, belonging to genera *Helix*, *Succinea*, and *Vitrina*; oocyst with a double envelope 120–180 μ in diameter; spores 12 μ in diameter, with 5–6 sporozoites.

FIG. 223. a, *Adelina dimidiata*, spore, $\times 1000$ (Schellack); b, *A. octospora*, oocyst, $\times 1000$ (Hesse); c, *Orcheobius herpobdellae*, $\times 550$ (Kunze); d, e, *Klossiella muris* (d, renal cell of host with 14 sporoblasts; e, spore), $\times 280$ (Smith and Johnson); f, *Legerella hydropori*, oocyst, $\times 1000$ (Vincent); g, h, *Haemogregarina* of frog, $\times 1400$ (Kudo); i–m, *H. simondi*, in the blood of the sole, *Solea vulgaris*, $\times 1300$ (Laveran and Mesnil); n, *Hepatozoon muris*, spore, $\times 420$ (Miller); o, *Karyolysus lacertarum*, $\times 700$ (Reichenow).

Genus **Orcheobius** Schuberg and Kunze. Macrogametes vermiform; oocyst with 25–30 spores, each with 4 (or 6) sporozoites.

O. herpobdellae S. and K. (Fig. 223, c). In the testis of *Herpobdella atomaria*; mature macrogametes 180 μ by 30 μ ; microgametes 50 μ by 12 μ ; schizogony in April and May; sporogony in June and July.

Genus **Klossiella** Smith and Johnson. Microgametocyte produces 2 microgametes; oocyst with many spores, each with numerous sporozoites; in the kidney of mammals.

K. muris S. and J. (Fig. 223, *d, e*). Oocyst with 12–16 spores; spore with about 25 sporozoites, discharged in the host's urine; in the kidney of mouse.

K. cobayae Seidelin. Oocyst with 8–20 spores; spore with about 30 sporozoites; in the kidney of guinea pig.

Genus **Legerella** Mesnil. Oocyst contains numerous sporozoites; spores entirely lacking; in arthropods.

L. hydropori Vincent (Fig. 223, *f*). In the epithelium of Malpighian tubules of *Hydroporus palustris*; oocysts ovoid, 20–25 μ long, with 16 sporozoites which measure 17 μ by 3 μ .

Genus **Chagasella** Machado. Oocyst with 3 spores, each with 4 or 6 (or more) sporozoites; in hemipterous insects.

C. hartmanni (Chagas). In the gut of *Dysdercus ruficollis*; oocysts with 3 spores about 45 μ in diameter; spore with 4 sporozoites, about 35 μ by 15 μ .

Family 2 **Haemogregarinidae** Léger

With 2 hosts: vertebrates (circulatory system) and invertebrates (digestive system).

Genus **Haemogregarina** Danilewsky. Schizogony takes place in blood cells of vertebrates; merozoites develop into gametocytes; when taken into gut of leech or other blood-sucking invertebrates, sexual reproduction takes place; microgametocyte develops 2 or 4 microgametes; sporozoites formed without production of spores.

H. stepanowi D. (Fig. 224). Schizogony in *Emys orbicularis* and sexual reproduction in *Placobdella catenigera*; sporozoites introduced into blood of the chelonian host by leech (*a*), and enter erythrocytes in which they grow (*d–g*); schizogony in bone-marrow, each schizont producing 12–24 merozoites (*h*); schizogony repeated (*i*); some merozoites produce only 6 merozoites (*j, k*) which become gametocytes (*l–o*); gametogony occurs in leech; 4 microgametes formed from each microgametocyte and become associated with macrogametocytes in gut of leech (*p–r*); zygote (*s*) divides three times, and develops into 8 sporozoites (*t–w*).

Haemogregarines are found commonly in various frogs (Fig. 223, *g, h*) and less commonly in fishes (Fig. 223, *i–m*).

Genus **Hepatozoon** Miller, Schizogony in the cells of liver, spleen, and other organs of vertebrates; merozoites enter erythrocytes or leucocytes and develop into gametocytes; in blood-sucking arthro-

FIG. 224. The life-cycle of *Haemogregarina stepanowi*, $\times 1200$ (Reichenow). a, sporozoite; b-i, schizogony; j-k, gametocyte-formation, l, m, microgametocytes; n, o, macrogametocytes; p, q, association of gametocytes; r, fertilization; s-w, division of the zygote nucleus to form eight sporozoites.

pods (ticks, mites), micro- and macro-gametes develop and unite in pairs; zygotes become oocysts which increase in size and produce sporoblasts, spores, and sporozoites.

H. muris (Balfour) (Fig. 223, *n*). In various species of rat; several specific names were proposed on the basis of difference in host, locality, and effect on the host, but they are so indistinctly defined that specific separation appears to be impossible. Schizogony in the liver of rat; young gametocytes invade mononuclear leucocytes and appear as haemogregarines; when blood is taken in by the mite, *Laelaps echidninus*, union of 2 gametes produces vermicular body which penetrates gut-epithelium and reaches peri-intestinal tissues and grows; becoming surrounded by a cyst-membrane, cyst content breaks up into a number of sporoblasts and then into spores, each of which contains a number of sporozoites; when a rat devours infected mites, it becomes infected.

Genus **Karyolysus** Labbé. Sporoblasts formed in the oocysts in gut-epithelium of a mite, vermiform sporokinetes, enter host ova and become mature; when young mites hatch, spores in gut-epithelium are cast off and discharged in faeces; a lizard swallows spores; liberated sporozoites enter endothelial cells in which schizogony takes place; merozoites enter erythrocytes as gametocytes which when taken in by a mite complete development in its gut.

K. lacertarum (Danilewsky) (Fig. 223, *o*). In *Lacerta muralis*; sexual reproduction in *Liponyssus saurorum*; sporokinetes 40–50 μ long; spores 20–25 μ in diameter.

References

- BECKER, E. R. 1934 *Coccidia and coccidiosis*. Ames, Iowa.
BOUGHTON, RUTH B. and J. VOLK 1938 Avian hosts of the genus *Isospora* (Coccidiida). Ohio. Jour. Sci., Vol. 38.
CHRISTENSEN, J. F. 1938 Species differentiation in the coccidia from the domestic sheep. Jour. Parasit., Vol. 24.
CONNAL, A. 1922 Observations on the pathogenicity of *Isospora hominis*, Rivolta, emend. Dobell, based on a second case of human coccidiosis in Nigeria, with remarks on the significance of the Charcot-Leyden crystals in the faeces. Trans. Roy. Soc. Trop. Med. Hyg., Vol. 16.
DOBELL, C. 1925 The life-history and chromosome cycle of *Aggregata eberthi*. Parasitology, Vol. 17.
HARDCASTLE, A. B. 1943 A check list and host index of the species of the protozoan genus *Eimeria*. Proc. Helm. Soc. Washington, Vol. 10.
HAUSCHKA, T. S. 1943 Life history and chromosome cycle of the coccidian *Adelina deronis*. Jour. Morph., Vol. 73.

- HENRY, DORA P. 1931 Species of Coccidia in chickens and quail in California. Uni. Cal. Publ. Zool., Vol. 36.
- LEVINE, H. D. and E. R. BECKER 1933 A catalog and host index of the species of the coccidian genus Eimeria. Iowa State Coll. Jour. Sci., Vol. 8.
- MILLER, W. W. 1908 *Hepatozoon perniciosum*. U. S. Publ. Health Service, Hyg. Lab. Bull., No. 46.
- PATTEN, R. 1935 The life history of *Merocystis kathae* in the whelk, *Buccinum undatum*. Parasitology, Vol. 27.
- SCHAUDINN, F. 1900 Untersuchungen über den Generationswechsel bei Coccidien. Zool. Jahrb. Abt. Morph., Vol. 13.
- TYZZER, E. E. 1929 Coccidiosis in gallinaceous birds. Amer. Jour. Hyg., Vol. 10.
- WENYON, C. M. 1926 *Protozoology*. Vol. 2. London.

Order 3 **Haemosporidia** Danilewsky

THE development of the Haemosporidia is, on the whole, similar to that of the Coccidia in that they undergo asexual reproduction or schizogony, and also sexual reproduction or sporozoite-formation; but the former takes place in the blood of vertebrates and the latter in the alimentary canal of some blood-sucking invertebrates. Thus one sees that the Haemosporidia remain always within the body of one of the two hosts; hence, the sporozoites do not possess any protective envelope.

The Haemosporidia are minute intracorpuseular parasites of vertebrates. The malarial parasites of man are typical members of this order. The development of *Plasmodium vivax* is briefly as follows (Fig. 225). An infected female anopheline mosquito introduces **sporozoites** into human blood when it feeds on it through skin (1). The sporozoites are fusiform and 6–15 μ long. They are capable of slight vibratory and gliding movement when seen under the microscope after removal from mosquitoes. After about 7–10 days the organisms are found in erythrocytes (2, 3) and are called **schizonts**. At the beginning the schizonts are small rings. They grow and finally divide into 12–24 or more **merozoites** (4, 5) which are presently set free in the blood plasma (6). This **schizogony** requires 48 hours. The freed merozoites will, if not ingested by leucocytes, enter and repeat schizogony in the erythrocytes. After repeated and simultaneous schizogony in geometric progression, large numbers of infected erythrocytes will be destroyed at intervals of 48 hours, setting free ever-increasing amounts of toxic substances into the blood. This is the cause of the regular occurrence of a characteristic **paroxysm** on every third day.

In the mean while, some of the merozoites develop into **gametocytes** instead of undergoing schizogony (7–10). When fully formed they are differentiated into **macro-** and **micro-gametocytes**, but remain as such while in the human blood. When a female anopheline mosquito takes in the blood containing gametocytes, the microgametocyte develops into 4–8 **microgametes** (10, 11), and the macrogametocyte into a **macrogamete** (8, 12) in its stomach. An **ookinete** (zygote) is formed when a microgamete fuses with a macrogamete (12, 13). The ookinetes are motile. As they come in contact with the stomach epithelium, they enter it and become rounded into **oocysts** which lie between the base of the epithelium and the outer membrane

of the stomach (14). Within the oocysts, repeated nuclear division produces numerous sporozoites (15). When fully mature, the oocyst ruptures and the sporozoites are set free in the haemolymph through which they migrate to the salivary glands (16, 17). The sporozoites make their way through the gland epithelium and finally to the duct

FIG. 225. The life-cycle of *Plasmodium vivax* (Kudo). 1, sporozoite entering human blood; 2, an organism entering an erythrocyte; 3, young schizont ("ring form"); 4-6, schizogony; 7, 8, macrogametocytes; 9, 10, microgametocytes; 11, microgamete-formation in the stomach of a mosquito; 12, union of gametes; 13, zygote or ookinete; 14, rounding up of an ookinete in the stomach wall; 15, oocyst in which sporozoites are developing; 16, mature oocyst ruptured and sporozoites are set free in the haemolymph; 17, sporozoites entering the salivary gland cells.

of hypopharynx. They are ready to infect a human victim when the mosquito pierces with its proboscis the skin for another blood meal. Thus the sexual reproduction occurs in the mosquito (primary host) and the asexual reproduction, in man (secondary host).

The Haemosporidia are divided into three families:

With pigment granules

Schizogony in peripheral blood of vertebrates. . . Family 1 Plasmodiidae

Gametocytes in peripheral blood; schizogony elsewhere.

. Family 2 Haemoproteidae (p. 499)

Without pigment granules; minute parasites of erythrocytes.

. Family 3 Babesiidae (p. 502)

Family 1 Plasmodiidae Mesnil

Genus **Plasmodium** Marchiafava and Celli. Schizogony in erythrocytes and also probably in endothelial cells of man, mammals, birds, and reptiles; sexual reproduction in blood-sucking insects; widely distributed. Numerous species.

Until recent years it had been generally believed that the sporozoites upon entering the blood vessel, penetrate and enter immediately the erythrocyte and begin intracorpuseular development, which process Schaudinn (1902-1903) reported to have seen in life. Although some authors still follow this view, there are increasing numbers of others who doubt Schaudinn's observation, since no one has up to the present time been able to duplicate the observation. James (1931) noticed the ineffectiveness of quinine as a causal prophylactic in malaria infection, and suggested the possibility that the sporozoites are carried away immediately from peripheral to visceral circulation and develop in the cells of reticulo-endothelial system.

Boyd and Stratman-Thomas (1934) found that the peripheral blood of a person who had been subjected to the bites of 15 anopheline mosquitoes infected by *Plasmodium vivax*, did not become infectious to other persons by subinoculation until the 9th day and that the parasites were not observed before the 11th day in the stained films of the peripheral blood. Warren and Coggeshall (1937) observed that when suspensions of the sporozoites of *P. cathemerium* obtained from infected *Culex pipiens*, were inoculated into canaries, the blood was not infectious for 72 hours, but emulsions made from the spleen, liver and bone marrow contained infectious parasites which brought about infection by subinoculations in other birds. These and many similar observations cannot be satisfactorily explained if one follows Schaudinn's view. The fact that *P. elongatum* is capable of undergoing schizogony in the leucocytes and reticulo-

endothelial cells in addition to erythrocytes of host birds had been observed by Raffaele (1934) and Huff and Bloom (1935).

As to the nature of development of *Plasmodium* during the prepatent period, James and Tate (1938) showed that there occur schizonts and schizogonic stages in the endothelial cells of the spleen, heart, liver, lung, and brain of the birds infected by *P. gallinaceum* (Fig. 226). They suggested the term **exoerythrocytic** to this schizogony in contrast to the well known **erythrocytic schizogony**. Similar schizogony has further been observed by several investigators in *P.*

FIG. 226. Exoerythrocytic schizogony in avian *Plasmodium*. a-f, *P. gallinaceum* in smears from chicks (James and Tate). a, monocyte from lung, infected by 2 young schizonts; b, monocyte from liver, with a growing trinucleate schizont; c, monocyte from lung, with a large multinucleate schizont; d, large mature schizont containing many mature merozoites, free in lung; e, portion of broken schizont from lung, showing the attached developing merozoites. ($\times 1660$). f, a capillary of brain blocked by 3 large schizonts ($\times 740$). g, h, *P. cathemerium* in sections of organs of canaries (Porter; $\times 1900$). g, capillary in the brain, showing an endothelial cell infected with a uninucleate and a multinucleate schizont; h, a multinucleate schizont and a group of merozoites found in a capillary of heart muscle.

cathemerium, *P. circumflexum*, *P. nucleophilum* and *P. relictum*. However, these reported exoerythrocytic stages are of varied appearances and their relation to erythrocytic schizogony is still un-

known. In addition, some authors are inclined to think that experimental birds may have been infected not only by *Plasmodium*, but also by other organisms such as *Haemoproteus*, *Leucocytozoon* or *Toxoplasma* and that consequently the developmental stages of the latter might have been confused with those of the former. Positive proof that the reported exoerythrocytic schizogony pertains to *Plasmodium* and further details of this change, depend upon future investigations (Fig. 227).

FIG. 227. Diagrammatical life-cycle of an avian *Plasmodium* (Several authors). Well established phases are connected by solid lines, while undetermined and recently suggested phases are indicated by broken lines. a, sporozoite injected into host bird by a mosquito; b-e, exoerythrocytic schizonts and schizogony in monocytes; f-i, commonly seen schizogony in erythrocytes; j, macrogametocyte; k, microgametocyte.

The incubation period of *Plasmodium* infections in man varies due to various factors such as the strain, vitality and number of the sporozoites injected by the mosquitoes, the varied susceptibility on the part of host, etc. Boyd and co-workers found that the incubation periods for the three species of human *Plasmodium* which they studied were, as follows: In *P. vivax*. 8-21 days (the majority 11-14 days) after the bites of infected mosquitoes, but in one case as long as 304

days; in *P. malariae*, 4–5 weeks, with the onset of fever lagging 3–12 days behind; and in two strains of *P. falciparum*, one, 6–25 days and the other, 9–13 days; in another observation, *P. falciparum* was observable in the peripheral blood in 5–9 days and the onset of fever in 7–12 days.

The paroxysm of malaria is usually divisible into three stages: chill or rigor stage, high temperature or febrile stage (104° F. or over) and sweating or defervescent stage. The time of paroxysm corresponds, as was stated already, with the time of liberation of merozoites from erythrocytes, and is believed to be due to extrusion of a toxic substance into the blood plasma. The nature of this toxic material is however unknown at present. In the grown schizonts as well as in gametocytes of *Plasmodium*, are found invariably yellowish brown to black pigment granules which vary in form, size and number among different species. They are usually called **haemozoin** granules and are apparently the catabolic products formed within the parasites. They possess certain taxonomic significance. The infected erythrocytes, if stained more or less deeply, may show a punctate appearance. These dots may be small and numerous in the erythrocytes infected by *P. vivax* or *P. ovale* (*Schüffner's dots*) or few and coarse in those infected by *P. falciparum* (*Maurer's dots*).

The condition which brings about the formation of gametocytes is not known at present. The gametocytes appear in the peripheral blood at various intervals after onset of fever, and remain inactive while in the human blood. The assumption that the macrogametocytes undergo parthenogenesis under certain conditions and develop into schizonts as advocated by Grassi, Schaudinn and others, does not seem to be supported by factual evidence. The initiation of further development appears to be correlated with a lower temperature. If living mature microgametocytes of human *Plasmodium* taken from an infected person are examined microscopically under a sealed cover glass at room temperature (18 – 22° C.), development takes place in a few hours and motile microgametes are produced ("exflagellation"). Similar changes take place when the gametocytes are taken into the stomach of mosquitoes belonging to genera other than *Anopheles*, but no sexual fusion between gametes occurs in them and all degenerate sooner or later. In the stomach of an anopheline mosquito, however, the sexual reproduction of human *Plasmodium* continues, as has been stated before.

All species are transmitted by adult female mosquitoes. The males are not concerned, since they do not take blood meal. The species of *Plasmodium* which attack man are transmitted only by the mosqui-

toes placed in genus *Anopheles*, while avian species of *Plasmodium* are transmitted by those which belong to genera *Culex*, *Aedes*, and *Theobaldia*. The chief vectors of the human malarial parasites in North America are *A. quadrimaculatus* (eastern, southern and middle-western States), *A. punctipennis* (widely distributed), *A. crucians* (southern and south-eastern coastal area), *A. walkeri* (eastern area), and *A. maculipennis* (Pacific coast). Boyd and coworkers observed that (1) *A. quadrimaculatus* and *A. punctipennis* were about equally susceptible to *Plasmodium vivax*; (2) *A. quadrimaculatus* was susceptible to several strains of *P. falciparum*, while *A. punctipennis* varied from highly susceptible to refractory to the same strains; (3) *A. quadrimaculatus* was more susceptible to all three species of *Plasmodium* than coastal or inland *A. crucians*. Thus *A. quadrimaculatus* is the most dangerous malaria vector in the United States as it shows high susceptibility to all human *Plasmodium*, it possesses house-frequenting habits and furthermore it prefers human blood to those of animals. *A. pseudopunctipennis* distributed from southwestern United States to Argentina, *A. albimanus* occurring in Central America, and *A. gambiae*, an African species, which suddenly appeared some ten years ago in the vicinity of Natal, Brazil, and which now seems to be under control, are but one or two out of many anopheline vectors of human *Plasmodium* in the areas indicated.

The time required for completion of sexual reproduction of *Plasmodium* in mosquitoes varies according to various conditions such as species and strain differences in both *Plasmodium* and *Anopheles*, temperature, etc. Boyd and co-workers showed that when the anophelines which fed on patients infected by *P. vivax* were allowed to feed on other persons, their infectivity was as follows: 1-10 days after infective feeding, 87.2%; 11-20 days, 93.8%; 21-30 days, 78%; 31-40 days, 66%; 41-50 days, 20%; and over 50 days, none. In a similar experiment with *P. falciparum*, during the first 10 days the infection rate was 84%, but thereafter the infectivity rapidly diminished until there was no infection after 40 days. It is generally known that the development of the parasites in mosquitoes depends a great deal on temperature. Although the organisms may survive freezing temperature in mosquitoes (Coggeshall), sporozoite-formation is said not to take place at temperatures below 16° C. or above 35° C. (James). According to Stratman-Thomas (1940), the development of *Plasmodium vivax* in *Anopheles quadrimaculatus* is completed within the temperature range of 15-17° to 30° C. It varies from 8 to 38 days after infective feeding. The optimum tem-

perature is said to be 28° C. at which the development is completed in the shortest time. A period of 24 hours at 37.5° C. will sterilize all but a very small per cent of *Anopheles quadrimaculatus* of their *Plasmodium vivax* infection. This has a bearing on the transmission of *Plasmodium vivax* in summer months. In certain localities co cysts may survive the winter and complete their development in the following spring.

There are three long-recognized species of human Plasmodium. They are *P. vivax*, *P. falciparum* and *P. malariae*. To these *P. ovale* is here added. Each species appears to be represented by numerous strains or races as judged by the differences in virulence, immunological responses, incubation period, susceptibility to quinine, etc.

Malaria has been, and still is, perhaps the most important protozoan disease of man. In India alone, malaria fever is held to be the direct cause of over a million deaths annually among nearly 100 million persons who suffer from it (Sinton, 1936). In the United States, the disease had been prevalent in places in south-eastern States. In malarious countries, the disease is a serious economic and social problem, since it affects the majority of population and brings about an immense number of persistent sickness, the loss of man power, and retardation of both mental and physical developments among children.

It must be added here that human ingenuity has been of late utilizing the malarial organism in combatting another disease; namely, naturally induced malaria (*P. vivax*) therapy has been successfully used in the treatment of patients suffering from general paresis and other forms of neuro-syphilis (Boyd and Stratman-Thomas, 1933).

P. vivax (Grassi and Feletti) (Fig. 228). The benign tertian malaria parasite; schizogony completed in 48 hours and paroxysm every third day. *Ring forms*: About $1/4$ – $1/3$ the diameter of erythrocytes; unevenly narrow cytoplasmic ring is stained light blue (in Giemsa) and encloses a vacuole; nucleus stained dark-red, conspicuous. *Growth period*: Irregular amoeboid forms; host cell slightly enlarged; Schüffner's dots begin to appear. *Grown schizonts*: In about 26 hours after paroxysm; occupy about $2/3$ of the enlarged erythrocytes, up to 12μ in diameter, which are distinctly paler than uninfected ones; Schüffner's dots more numerous; brownish haemozoin granules; a large nucleus. *Schizogonic stages*: Repeated nuclear division produces 12–24 or more merozoites; multinucleate schizonts about 8 – 9μ in diameter; haemozoin granules in loose masses; merozoites about 1.5μ long. *Gametocytes*: Time required for development of ringform into a

mature gametocyte is estimated to be about four days; smoothly rounded body, occupying almost whole of the enlarged erythrocytes; brown haemozoin granules numerous. Macrogametocytes are about $9-10\mu$ in diameter, stain more deeply and contain a small compact nucleus; microgametocytes are a little smaller ($7-8\mu$ in diameter), stain less deeply and contain a less deeply staining large nucleus.

The benign malaria fever is the commonest and the most widely distributed species in the tropical and subtropical regions as well as in the temperate zone. It has been reported as far north as the Great

FIG. 228. *Plasmodium vivax*, $\times 1535$ (Original). a, young ring-form; b, c, growing schizonts; d, two schizonts in an erythrocyte; e, f, large schizonts; g-i, schizogonic stages; j, fully developed merozoites; k, macrogametocyte; l, microgametocyte.

Lakes region in North America; England, southern Sweden and northern Russia in Europe; and as far south as Argentina, Australia, and Natal in the southern hemisphere. Generally speaking this species predominates in the spring and early summer over the other species.

P. falciparum (Welch) (*Laverania malariae* Grassi and Feletti; *P. tenax* Stevens) (Fig. 229). The subtertian, malignant tertian or aestivo-autumnal fever parasite; schizogonic cycle is somewhat irregular, though generally 36-48 hours. *Ring forms*: Much smaller than those of *P. vivax*; about 1μ in diameter; marginal forms and multiple (2-6) infection common; nucleus often rod-form or divided into two granules; in about 12 hours after paroxysm, all schizonts disappear from the peripheral blood. *Growth and schizogonic stages*: These are

almost exclusively found in the capillaries of internal organs; as schizonts mature Maurer's dots appear in the infected erythrocytes; when about 5μ in diameter, nucleus divides repeatedly and 8–24 or more small merozoites are produced; haemozoin granules dark brown or black and usually in a compact mass; infected erythrocytes are not enlarged. *Gametocytes*: Mature forms sausage-shaped ("crescent"), about $10\text{--}12\mu$ by $2\text{--}3\mu$; appear in the peripheral blood. Macrogametocytes stain blue and contain a compact nucleus and coarser granules, grouped around nucleus; microgametocytes stain less deeply blue or reddish, and contain a large lightly staining nucleus and scattered smaller haemozoin granules.

FIG. 229. *Plasmodium falciparum*, $\times 1535$ (Original). a, three ring-forms in an erythrocyte; b, a somewhat grown schizont in an erythrocyte with Maurer's dots; c–f, growing and schizogonic stages, g, h; merozoite formation; i, macrogametocyte; j, microgametocyte.

The subtertian fever is widely distributed in the tropics. In the subtropical region, it is more prevalent in late summer or early autumn. It is relatively uncommon in the temperate zone. The malignancy of the fever brought about by this parasite is attributed in part to decreased elasticity of the infected erythrocytes which become clumped together into masses and which adhere to the walls of the capillaries of internal organs especially brain, thus preventing the circulation of blood through these capillaries.

P. malariae (Laveran) (Fig. 230). The quartan malaria parasite; schizogony in 72 hours and paroxysm every fourth day. *Ring forms*: Similar to those of *P. vivax*. *Growth period*: Less amoeboid, rounded; in about 6–10 hours haemozoin granules begin to appear; granules are dark brown; in 24 hours, schizonts are about $1/2$ the diameter of erythrocytes which remain normal in size; schizonts often stretched into "band-form" across the erythrocytes; no dots comparable with Schüffner's or Maurer's dots. *Mature and segmenting*

schizonts: In about 48 hours, schizonts nearly fill the host cells; rounded; haemozoin granules begin to collect into a mass; nuclear divisions produce 6–12 merozoites which are the largest of the three species and may often be arranged in a circle around a haemozoin mass. *Gametocytes*: Circular; with haemozoin granules. Macrogametocytes stain more deeply and contain a small, more deeply staining

FIG. 230. *Plasmodium malariae*, $\times 1535$ (Original). a, ring-form; b–e, band-form schizonts; f–i, schizogonic stages; j, merozoite formation; k, macrogametocyte, l, microgametocyte.

nucleus and coarser granules; microgametocytes stain less deeply and contain a larger lightly stained nucleus and finer and numerous granules.

The quartan fever is distributed in the tropics and subtropics, though it is the rarest of the three species. As a rule, in an area where the three species of *Plasmodium* occur, this seems to appear later in the year than the other two.

P. ovale Stevens (Fig. 231). The *Ovale* or mild tertian fever parasite; schizogony in about 48 hours; its morphological characters resemble both *P. vivax* and *P. malariae*. *Ring forms*: Similar to those of the two species just mentioned; Schüffner's dots appear early. *Growth period*: Infected erythrocytes are more or less oval with irregular fimbriated margin; slightly enlarged; not actively amoeboid, sometimes in band-form; with dark brown haemozoin granules; Schüffner's dots abundant. *Schizogonic stages*: 6–12 mero-

zoites. *Gametocytes*: Resemble closely those of *P. malariae*; host cells with Schüffner's dots and slightly enlarged.

This organism appears to be confined to Africa and Asia (Philippine Islands and India). Several malariologists doubt the validity of the species.

The malarial parasites are ordinarily studied in stained blood films (p. 727). Table 9 will serve for differential diagnosis.

Several species of *Plasmodium* have been observed in primates and monkeys, some of which resemble the human species. Species are known to occur in various other mammals.

FIG. 231. *Plasmodium ovale*, $\times 1535$ (Original). a, ring-form; b, c, growing schizonts; d-f, schizogonic stages; g, macrogametocyte; h, microgametocyte.

Many species of *Plasmodium* have been reported from numerous species of birds in which are observed clinical symptoms and pathological changes similar to those which exist in man with malaria infection. In recent years the exoerythrocytic stages have been intensively studied in these forms. According to Hegner and co-workers the erythrocytes into which merozoites enter are often the most immature erythrocytes (polychromatophilic erythroblasts). Hewitt (1940) gave an excellent digest of available information on avian *Plasmodium*. The species of avian *Plasmodium* are transmitted by adult female mosquitoes belonging to *Culex*, *Aedes* or *Theobaldia*. More or less distinct species are here briefly described.

P. relictum Grassi and Feletti (*P. praecox* G. and F.; *P. inconstans* Hartman) (Fig. 232, a). In English sparrow (*Passer domesticus*) and other passerine birds; schizogony varies in different strains, in 12, 24, 30 or 36 hours; 8-15 or 16-32 merozoites from a schizont; gametocytes rounded, with small pigment granules; host-cell nucleus displaced; canaries (*Serinus canaria*) susceptible; many strains; transmitted by *Culex*, *Aedes* and *Theobaldia*; widely distributed.

TABLE 9.—*Differential diagnosis of three species of human Plasmodium*

	<i>P. vivax</i>	<i>P. falciparum</i>	<i>P. malariae</i>
Ring forms	About $\frac{1}{4}$ – $\frac{1}{3}$ the diameter of erythrocytes; a single granular nucleus.	About $\frac{1}{6}$ – $\frac{1}{5}$ the diameter of erythrocytes; marginal forms and multiple (2–6) infection common.	Similar to those of <i>P. vivax</i> ; cytoplasm slightly denser.
Infected erythrocytes	Much enlarged, up to 12μ in diameter, paler than normal (7.5μ in diameter) erythrocytes; Schüffner's dots.	Normal; some are distorted or contracted in later schizogonic period; Maurer's dots.	Not enlarged; sometimes slightly smaller than uninfected ones; no dots.
Growing schizonts	Irregularly amoeboid; vacuolated; paler; small yellowish brown haemozoin granules.	Partly grown ring forms often with rod-shaped or 2 granular nuclei; further development not seen in peripheral blood.	Not amoeboid; oval, rounded, band-form, rarely irregular; less vacuolated cytoplasm deeper blue; dark brown granules.
Fully grown schizonts	Irregular in form; about $\frac{2}{3}$ the enlarged erythrocytes; vacuolated; brown haemozoin granules.	Only in internal organs; $\frac{1}{2}$ – $\frac{2}{3}$ of erythrocytes; dark haemozoin in compact mass.	Nearly filling erythrocytes; rounded; cytoplasm deeper blue; dark brown pigment granules.
Schizogonic stages	12–24 or more merozoites; irregularly arranged in much enlarged host cells.	Only in internal organs; 8–24 or more small merozoites; irregularly arranged; dark pigment.	6–12 merozoites which are the largest of all, typically arranged in a circle.
Gametocytes	Almost filling enlarged erythrocytes; rounded or oval; with brown pigment granules.	Sausage-shaped; haemozoin dark brown; in the peripheral blood.	Filling normal-sized erythrocytes; round or ovoid, much smaller than those of <i>P. vivax</i> ; dark brown pigment.

P. vaughani Novy and McNeal (Fig. 232, *b*). In robin (*Turdus m. migratorius*) and starling (*Sturnus v. vulgaris*); 4–8 (usually 4) merozoites from a schizont, ordinarily with 2 pigment granules; schizogony in about 24 hours; gametocytes elongate; host-cell nucleus not displaced.

P. cathemerium Hartman (Fig. 232, c). In English sparrow, cowbird, red-winged blackbird, and other birds; schizogony in 24 hours; segmentation occurs at 6–10 p.m.; 6–24 merozoites from a schizont; mature schizonts and gametocytes about 7–8 μ in diameter; gametocytes rounded; haemozoin granules in microgametocytes longer and more pointed than those present in macrogametocytes; canaries susceptible; numerous strains; common; transmitted by many species of *Culex* and *Aedes*.

P. rouxi Sargent, Sargent and Catanei (Fig. 232, d). In English sparrow in Algeria; similar to *P. vaughani*; schizogony in 24 hours; 4 merozoites from a schizont; transmitted by *Culex*.

P. elongatum Huff (Fig. 232, e). In English sparrow; schizogony occurs mainly in the bone marrow, and completed in 24 hours; 8–12 merozoites from a schizont; gametocytes elongate, found in peripheral blood; transmitted by *Culex*. Chen (1944) made a study of its nucleus.

P. circumflexum Kikuth (Fig. 232, f). In red-winged blackbird, cowbird and several other birds; growing schizonts and gametocytes form broken rings around the host-cell nucleus; schizogony completed in 48 hours; 13–30 merozoites from a schizont; gametocytes elongate, with a few haemozoin granules; transmitted by *Culex* and *Theobaldia*.

P. polare Manwell (Fig. 232, g). In cliff swallow (*Petrochelidon l. lunifrons*); grown schizonts at one of the poles of host erythrocytes; 8–14 merozoites from a schizont; few in peripheral blood; gametocytes elongate.

P. nucleophilum M. (Fig. 232, h). In catbird (*Dumatella carolinensis*); schizogony in 24 hours; 3–10 merozoites from a schizont; mature schizonts usually not seen in the peripheral blood; gametocytes elongate, often seen closely applied to the host-cell nucleus; haemozoin granules at one end.

P. gallinaceum Brumpt (Fig. 232, i). In domestic fowl (*Gallus domesticus*) in India; schizogony in 36 hours; 20–36 merozoites from a schizont; gametocytes round, with few haemozoin granules; host-cell nucleus displaced; pheasants, geese, partridges and peacocks are susceptible, but canaries, ducks, guinea fowls, etc., are refractory; transmitted by *Aedes*.

P. hexamerium Huff (Fig. 232, j). In bluebird (*Sialia s. sialis*) and Maryland yellow-throats; schizogony in 48 or 72 hours; grown schizonts often elongate; 6 merozoites from a schizont; gametocytes elongate.

P. oti Wolfson (Fig. 232, k). In eastern screech owl (*Otus asio*

naevius); 8 merozoites from a schizont; body outlines irregular, rough; gametocytes elongate.

P. lophurae Coggeshall (Fig. 232, l). In fire-back pheasant (*Lophura i. igniti*) from Borneo, examined at New York Zoological Park; 8–18 merozoites from a schizont; gametocytes large, elongate; host-

FIG. 232. a, *Plasmodium relictum*; b, *P. vaughani*; c, *P. cathemerium*; d, *P. rouxi*; e, *P. elongatum*; f, *P. circumflexum*; g, *P. polare*; h, *P. nucleophilum*; i, *P. gallinaceum*; j, *P. hexamerium*; k, *P. oti*; l, *P. lophurae*. Columns 1, ring-forms; 2, growing schizonts; 3, segmenting schizonts; 4, macrogametocytes; and 5, microgametocytes. $\times$ about 1400 (Several authors; from Hewitt, modified).

cell nucleus not displaced; chicks are susceptible, but canaries refractory. Experimentally it developed up to the oocyst-stage in *Anopheles quadrimaculatus*, though the sporozoites did not develop (Coggeshall, 1941).

Family 2 Haemoproteidae Doflein

Schizogony occurs in the endothelial cells of vertebrates; merozoites penetrate into circulating blood cells and develop into gametocytes; if blood is taken up by specific blood-sucking insects, gametocytes develop into gametes which unite to form zygotes that undergo changes similar to those stated above for the family Plasmodiidae.

FIG. 233. The life-cycle of *Haemoproteus columbae*. (Several authors). a, a sporozoite entering an endothelial cell of the pigeon; b, growth of a schizont; c, segmentation of multinucleate schizont into uninucleate cytomeres; d-i, development of cytomeres to produce merozoites; j-m, development of microgametes; n-p, development of macrogamete; q, fertilization; r, s, ookinets; t, a young oocyst in the stomach wall of a fly; u, a ruptured mature oocyst with sporozoites. a-k, n, o, in the pigeon, l, m, p-u, in *Pseudolynchia maura*.

Genus **Haemoproteus** Kruse. Gametocytes in erythrocytes, with pigment granules, halter-shaped when fully formed (hence *Halteridium* Labbé); schizogony in endothelial cells of viscera of vertebrate hosts; sexual reproduction in blood-sucking insects; in birds and reptiles.

H. columbae Celli and Sanfelice (Fig. 233). In pigeons (*Columba livia*), etc.; widely distributed; young schizonts, minute and uninucleate, are in the endothelial cells of lungs and other organs, grow into large multinucleate bodies which divide into 15 or more uninucleate cytomeres (Aragão). Each cytomere now grows and its nucleus divides repeatedly. The host cell in which many cytomeres undergo enlargement, becomes highly hypertrophied and finally ruptures. The multinucleate cytomeres break up into numerous merozoites, some of which possibly repeat the schizogony by invading endothelial cells, while others enter erythrocytes and develop into gametocytes which are seen in the peripheral blood; sexual reproduction in, and transmitted by, the flies: *Lynchia brunea*, *L. lividicolor*, *L. capensis*, *Pseudolynchia maura*, and *Microlynchia fusilla*.

H. lophortyx O'Roke. In California valley quail, Gambel quail, and Catalina Island quail (*Lophortyx*); gametocytes in erythrocytes, also occasionally in leucocytes; young gametocytes, spherical to elongate, about 1μ long; more developed forms, cylindrical, about 8μ by 2μ , with 2-10 pigment granules; mature gametocytes, halter-shaped, encircling the nucleus of the host erythrocyte, 18μ by $1.5-2.5\mu$; numerous pigment granules; 4-8 microgametes, about 13.5μ long, from each microgametocyte; on slide in one instance, gametofertilization, fertilization and ookinete formation, completed in 52 minutes at room temperature; in nature sexual reproduction takes place in the fly, *Lynchia hirsuta*; sporozoites enter salivary glands and fill central tubules; schizonts present in lungs, liver and spleen of quail after infected flies sucked blood from the bird; merozoites found in endothelial cells of capillaries of lungs, in epithelial cells of liver and rarely in peripheral blood cells; how merozoites enter blood cells is unknown; schizonts seldom seen in circulating blood; infected birds show pigment deposits in spleen and lungs (O'Roke).

Several species of *Haemoproteus* have been described by Coatney and Roudabush (1937).

Genus **Leucocytozoon** Danilewsky. Schizogony in the endothelial cells as well as visceral cells of vertebrates; sexual reproduction in blood-sucking insects; gametocytes in spindle-shaped host cells. Several species.

L. simondi Mathis and Léger (*L. anatis* Wickware) (Fig. 234).

Mathis and Léger (1910) described this species from the teal duck (*Querquedula crecca*) in Tonkin, China. Wickware (1915) saw *L. anatis* in ducks in Canada. O'Roke (1934) carried on experimental studies on the developmental cycle with the form which he found in wild and domestic ducks in Michigan. Herman (1938) observed the

FIG. 234. The life-cycle of *Leucocytozoon simondi* (Brumpt, modified). a-c, development of macrogamete; d-f, development of microgametes; g, fertilization; h, ookinete; i, j, ookinete piercing through the stomach wall; k-m, development of sporozoites; n, sporozoites entering endothelial cells; o-r, schizogony.

organism in common black ducks (*Anas rubripes tristis*), red-breasted merganser (*Mergus serrator*), and blue-winged teal (*Querquedula discors*) and considered *L. anatis* as identical with *L. simondi*. Huff (1942) also maintained the species he studied in mallard ducks (*Anas p. platyrhynchos*) and domestic ducks from Wisconsin to be *L. simondi*.

According to O'Roke, the vector is a black fly, *Simulium venustum*, in which the sexual reproduction takes place. Gametocytes develop into mature gametes in 1-2 minutes after blood is obtained from an infected duck; macrogametes about 8μ in diameter; 4-8 microgametes, $15.7-24.1\mu$ long, from a single microgametocyte; zygotes are found in stomach contents of fly in 10-20 minutes after sucking in the infected blood of bird; motile cokinets abundant after 5 hours, measure 33.3μ by $3-4.6\mu$; 22 hours after sucking duck blood, oocysts are found on outer wall of stomach; sporozoites mature probably in 24-48 hours; 5 days after a duck has been bitten by infected black flies, schizogonic stages are noticed in endothelial cells of capillaries of lungs, liver, spleen; on about 7th day gametocytes appear in blood; liver and spleen become hypertrophied; the infection among ducklings is said to be highly fatal and appears often suddenly.

Mathis and Léger: Macrogametocytes, oval; $14-15\mu$ by $4.5-5.5\mu$; several vacuoles in darkly stained cytoplasm. Microgametocytes, oval; slightly smaller; cytoplasm stains less deeply. Infected host cells about 48μ long; nucleus elongate.

Huff found that (1) young schizonts are in macrophages of, and also extracellularly in, the spleen and liver; (2) two types of schizonts occur: one, "hepatic schizonts" in hepatic cells which cause no distortion or alteration of the host cell, and the other, "megalo-schizonts" in the blood vessels of, or extravascularly in, the heart, spleen, liver and intestine; (3) megaloschizonts become divided into many cytomeres which give rise to numerous merozoites; (4) young gametocytes occur in lymphocytes, monocytes, myelocytes and late polychromatophile erythroblasts; (5) the cells in which fully grown gametocytes occur, appear to be macrophages.

Family 3 Babesiidae Poche

Minute non-pigmented parasites of the erythrocytes of various mammals; transmission by ticks.

Genus *Babesia* Starcovici (*Piroplasma* Patton). In erythrocytes of cattle; pear-shaped, arranged in couples; sexual reproduction in female ticks in which developing ova, hence young ticks, become infected with ookinetes, producing sporozoites which enter salivary glands (Dennis).

B. bigemina (Smith and Kilbourne) (Figs. 235; 236, *a-d*). The causative organism of the haemoglobinuric fever, Texas fever or red-water fever of cattle; the very first demonstration that an arthropod plays an important rôle in the transmission of a protozoan parasite; the infected cattle contain in their erythrocytes oval or

pyriform bodies with a compact nucleus and vacuolated cytoplasm; the division is peculiar in that it appears as a budding process at the beginning. We owe Dennis (1932) for our knowledge of the development of the organism.

FIG. 235. The life-cycle of *Babesia bigemina* (Dennis). a-f, division in erythrocytes of cattle; g, h, gametocytes; i, isogametes; j, fertilization; k, zygote; l, ookinete penetrating through the gut wall; m, ookinete in host egg; n-p, sporoblast-formation; q, sporokinets in a large embryonic cell; r, sporozoites in salivary gland.

Sexual reproduction followed by sporozoite formation occurs in the tick, *Boophilus (Margaropus) annulatus*; when a tick takes in

injected blood into gut lumen, isogametes, $5.5\text{--}6\mu$ long, are produced; isogamy results in motile club-shaped ookinetes, $7\text{--}12\mu$ long, which pass through gut wall and invade larger ova (1–2, in one case about 50, ookinetes per egg); each ookinete rounds itself up into a sporont $7.5\text{--}12\mu$ in diameter, which grows in size and whose nucleus divides repeatedly; thus are produced multinucleated (4–32 nuclei) amoeboid sporokinetes, up to 15μ long, which now migrate throughout embryonic tissue cells of tick, many of which cells develop into

FIG. 236. a–d, *Babesia bigemina*, $\times 3000$ (Nuttall); e–h, *B. bovis*, $\times 3000$ (Nuttall); i–l, *Theileria parva*, $\times 3000$ (Nuttall); m–s, *Dactylosoma ranarum* (m–q, schizogony; r, s, gametocytes), $\times 2700$ (Nöller).

salivary gland cells; sporokinetes develop into sporozoites before or after hatching of host tick; sporozoites bring about an infection to cattle when they are inoculated by tick at the time of feeding. Texas fever once caused a considerable amount of damage to the cattle industry in the southern United States to which region the distribution of the tick is limited.

B. bovis Starcovici (Fig. 236, e–h). In European cattle; amoeboid form usually rounded, though sometimes stretched; $1\text{--}1.5\mu$ in diameter; paired pyriform bodies make a larger angle, $1.5\text{--}2\mu$ long; transmitted by *Ixodes ricinus*.

Babesia occur also in sheep, goats, pigs and horses.

B. canis (Piana and Galli-Valerio). Pyriform bodies $4.5\text{--}5\mu$ long; the organism causes malignant jaundice in dogs; widely distributed; transmitted by the ticks: *Haemaphysalis leachi*, *Rhipicephalus sanguineus*, and *Dermacentor reticulatus*.

Genus **Theileria** Bettencourt, França and Borges. Schizogony takes place in endothelial cells of capillaries of viscera of mammals; certain forms thus produced enter erythrocytes and appear in the peripheral circulation.

T. parva (Theiler) (Fig. 236, *i-l*). In the cattle in Africa, cause of African coast fever; intracorpuseular forms $1\text{--}2\mu$ in diameter; transmitted by the tick, *Rhipicephalus evertsi*.

FIG. 237. *Toxoplasma gondii*. $\times$ about 1750. (Chatton and Blanc) a, isolated organisms; b, 2 trophozoites; c, organisms undergoing binary fission; d, a host cell with many organisms which developed by repeated binary fission.

Genus **Dactylosoma** Labbé. In blood of reptiles and amphibians; schizogony and gametocytes in erythrocytes; invertebrate hosts unknown.

D. ranarum (Kruse) (Fig. 236, *m-s*). In European frogs; schizonts $4\text{--}9\mu$ in diameter; $4\text{--}16$ merozoites, $2\text{--}3\mu$ by $1\text{--}1.5\mu$; gametocytes $5\text{--}8\mu$ by $1.5\text{--}3\mu$.

Genus **Toxoplasma** Nicolle and Manceaux. Minute intracellular parasites in leucocytes and endothelial cells of various mammals, birds and reptiles; round or ovoid; ordinarily not common in peripheral blood; often abundant in the liver, spleen, bone marrow, lung, brain, etc.; reproduction by binary fission. The genus has been often mentioned in connection with exoerythrocytic schizogony of *Plasmodium*. Many "species" have been designated by various observers on the basis of the difference in host species.

T. gondii N. and M. (Fig. 237). In *Ctenodactylus gundi*, a rodent in North Africa; a variety of experimental animals susceptible to it; crescentic; $4\text{--}6\mu$ by $2\text{--}3\mu$; division occurs intra- or extra-cellularly.

Toxoplasma appears to be common in birds. For example, in a survey on the blood parasites of birds on Cape Cod, Herman (1938) found the organism in 11 species of birds examined by him. In the past ten years a considerable amount of information has accumulated on the organisms which attack and produce a disease (toxoplasmosis) in man. Sabin (1942) gives an excellent digest on it.

References

- BOYD, M. F. 1930 *An introduction to malariology*. Cambridge.
 ——— 1940 On strains or races of the malaria parasites. *Amer. Jour. Trop. Med.*, Vol. 20.
 ——— and W. K. STRATMAN-THOMAS 1933 A controlled technique for the employment of naturally induced malaria in the therapy of paresis. *Amer. Jour. Hyg.*, Vol. 17.
 CHEN, T. T. 1944 The nuclei in avian malaria parasites. I. The structure of nuclei in *Plasmodium elongatum*, with some considerations on technique. *Amer. Jour. Hyg.*, Vol. 40.
 COATNEY, G. R. and R. L. ROUDABUSH 1937 Some blood parasites from Nebraska birds. *Amer. Midl. Nat.*, Vol. 18.
 DENNIS, E. W. 1932 The life-cycle of *Babesia bigemina* (Smith and Kilbourne) of Texas cattle-fever in the tick, *Margaropus anulatus* (Say). *Uni. Calif. Publ. Zool.*, Vol. 36.
 HARTMAN, E. 1927 Three species of bird malaria. *Arch. f. Protistenk.*, Vol. 60.
 HEWITT, R. 1940 *Bird malaria*. *Amer. Jour. Hyg.*, Monogr. Ser., No. 15.
 HUFF, C. G. 1942 Schizogony and gametocyte development in *Leucocytozoon simondi*, and comparison with *Plasmodium* and *Haemoproteus*. *Jour. Infect. Dis.*, Vol. 71.
 JAMES, S. P. and P. TATE 1938 Exo-erythrocytic schizogony in *Plasmodium gallinaceum* Brumpt, 1935. *Parasitology*, Vol. 30.
 O'ROKE, E. C. 1934 A malaria-like disease of ducks caused by *Leucocytozoon anatis* Wickware. *Uni. Michigan Sch. Forest and Conservation, Bul.*, No. 4.
 PORTER, R. J. and C. G. HUFF 1940 Review of the literature on exo-erythrocytic schizogony in certain malarial parasites and its relation to the schizogonic cycle in *Plasmodium elongatum*. *Amer. Jour. Trop. Med.*, Vol. 20.
 ROSS, R. 1928 *Studies on malaria*. London.
 SABIN, A. B. Toxoplasmosis. A recently recognized disease of human beings. In: *Advances in pediatrics*, edited by A. G. De Sanctis. Vol. 1.
 SIMMONS, J. S. et al. 1939 *Malaria in Panama*. *Amer. Jour. Hyg.*, Monogr. Ser. No. 13.
 STRATMAN-THOMAS, W. K. 1940 The influence of temperature on *Plasmodium vivax*. *Amer. Jour. Trop. Med.*, Vol. 20.
 WENYON, C. M. 1926 *Protozoology*. Vol. 2. London and Baltimore.

CHAPTER 27

Subclass 2 Acnidosporidia Cépède

THE sporozoa which are provisionally grouped here are mostly incompletely known, although some of them are widely distributed among the higher vertebrates. They possess spores which are quite simple in their structure, while their development is so far as is known wholly different from that of the Telosporidia.

Muscle parasites of higher vertebrates.....Order 1 Sarcosporidia
Parasites of invertebrates and fish.....Order 2 Haplosporidia (p. 510)

Order 1 Sarcosporidia Balbiani

These sporozoans are characteristic muscle parasites of mammals, although reptiles and birds have also been found to harbor them.

FIG. 238. a, *Sarcocystis tenella* in the oesophagus of sheep; b, *S. miescheriana* in the muscle of pig; $\times 1$ (Schneidemühl from Doflein).

The spore which has been known as **Rainey's corpuscle**, is crescent-shaped (Fig. 239). One end is rounded and the other end is bluntly pointed. There is a single nucleus and the cytoplasm contains numerous granules. Infection of a new host begins with the entrance of spores into the digestive tract of a specific animal through mouth. The delicate spore membrane ruptures and the sporozoite is liberated, which enters the gut-epithelium. After undergoing certain development which is still unknown, the organism makes its way through blood stream (?) into the muscular tissue. At the beginning the trophozoite is a small uninucleate body, but develops, by division and growth, into an elongated multinucleate body which then ordinarily divide into many uninucleate bodies. These become the centers of infection in other muscle fibers. Some trophozoites grow in size and the body becomes divided into parts, in each of which spores are formed. Some authors believe that the spores themselves are capable of fission. The host muscle fiber harboring the trophozoite

may vary in size from microscopic to as large as 5 centimeters. They are cylindrical with more or less pointed extremities and with a somewhat lobulated surface, and appear opaque whitish. They were formerly called **Miescher's tubes** (Fig. 238). The envelope around the parasitic mass appears to rupture sooner or later and the spores are set free in the blood stream and into the alimentary canal. The spores find finally their way out of the host intestine and become the source of infection (Scott).

FIG. 239. Portion of a cyst of *Sarcocystis tenella* in sheep, $\times$ about 1000 (Alexeieff).

As to the pathogenic effect of the parasites upon the host animal, fatal cases are not uncommon. In heavily infected animals extensive muscular degeneration appears and the hosts die from the infection. One peculiarity of the Sarcosporidia is that these organisms contain certain toxin, sarcocystine which when injected is highly toxic to other animals (p. 28).

Genus **Sarcocystis** Lankester. In muscles of vertebrates; numerous species have been described from various animals on the basis of difference in host species and slight difference in dimensions of spores.

S. lindemanni (Rivolta) (Fig. 240). A few cases of Sarcocystis infection have been reported from man in muscle cells of larynx (Baraban and St. Remy), of biceps and tongue (Darling), of heart (Manifold), of breast (Vasudevan), etc. There seem to be dimensional discrepancies of organisms observed by different investigators. The dimensions of parasitic masses and of spores are as follows: Parasites 1.6 mm. by 170μ and banana-shaped spores $8-9\mu$ long (Baraban and

FIG. 240. *Sarcocystis lindemanni* in human muscle, $\times 1150$ (Kudo).

St. Remy); parasites 84μ by 27μ and spores 4.25μ by 1.75μ (Darling); parasites spherical, 500μ in diameter and spores over 10μ long (Manifold); parasites 5.3 cm. by 320μ and spores 8.33μ by 1.6μ (Vasudevan). The parasitic masses are oval to spindle in form and imbedded in the muscle cells which are distended, and may appear white-streaked to naked eye. Seen in sections, the body is divided into compartments. Gilmore, Kean and Posey (1942) have recently found three bodies in sectioned heart muscles of an eleven year old child who died from an unknown cause, and considered them as sarcosporidian bodies. They measured 25μ by 19μ , 57μ by 30μ , and

41 μ by 25 μ in cross-sections; there were no septa within the bodies; minute bodies present in the masses were mostly rounded and about 1 μ in diameter, though a few were crescentic. The questions such as what species infect man, how man becomes infected, etc., are unanswered at present.

S. tenella Railliet (Figs. 238, *a*; 239). In the muscles of tongue, pharynx, oesophagus, larynx, neck, heart, etc., of sheep; large parasites 40 μ –2 cm. long with a thin membrane; spores sickleform.

S. miescheriana (Kühn) (Fig. 238, *b*). In muscles of pig; parasitic mass up to 3–4 mm. by 3 mm; envelope striated; spores reniform, capable of division when young (Manz).

S. bertrami Doflein. In the muscles of horse; similar to *S. miescheriana*; parasitic mass up to 9–10 mm.; envelope striated.

S. muris Blanchard. In body muscles of rats and mice; parasitic masses up to 3 cm. long; spores 13–15 μ by 2.5–3 μ ; transmissible to guinea pig (Negri) which shows experimental infection in muscles in 50–100 days after feeding on infected muscles.

S. rileyi Stiles. In muscles of various species of ducks; parasites in muscles, opaque white in color and measure up to 5 mm. by 2 mm.; spores are sausage-shaped and 8–10 μ by about 3 μ .

Order 2 Haplosporidia Caullery and Mesnil

This order includes those sporozoans which produce simple spores. In some species the spores may resemble superficially those of Microsporidia, but do not possess any polar filament. The exact boundaries and affinities of this order to other groups are to be determined by future investigators.

The Haplosporidia are cytozoic, histozoic, or coelozoic parasites of invertebrates and lower vertebrates. The spore is spherical or ellipsoidal in form and covered by a resistant membrane which may possess ridges or may be prolonged into a more or less long tail-like projection. In a few species the spore membrane possesses a lid which, when opened, will enable the sporoplasm to emerge as an amoebula. The sporoplasm is uninucleate and fills the intrasporal cavity.

The development of a haplosporidian, *Ichthyosporidium giganteum*, as worked out by Swarczewsky, is as follows (Fig. 241): The spores germinate in the alimentary canal of the host fish and the sporoplasms make their way to the connective tissue of various organs (*a*). These amoebulae grow and their nuclei multiply in number, thus forming plasmodia. The plasmodia divide into smaller bodies, while the nuclei continue to divide (*b–e*). Presently the nuclei

become paired (*f, g*) and the nuclear membranes disappear (*h*). The plasmodia now break up into numerous small bodies, each of which contains one set of the paired nuclei (*i, j*). This is the sporont (*j*) which develops into 2 spores by further differentiation (*k-o*).

Genus **Haplosporidium** Caullery and Mesnil. After growing into a large form, plasmodium divides into uninucleate bodies, each of

FIG. 241. The development of *Ichthyosporidium giganteum* (Swarzewsky).
a-e, schizogony; f-n, sporogony; o, stained spore, $\times$ about 1280.

which develops into a spore; spore truncate with a lid at one end; envelope sometimes prolonged into processes; in aquatic annelids and molluscs.

H. chitonis (Lankester) (Fig. 242, *a, b*). In liver and connective tissue of *Craspidochilus cinereus*; spores oval, 10μ by 6μ ; envelope with 2 prolonged projections.

H. limnodrili Granata (Fig. 242, *c*). In gut epithelium of *Limnodrilus udekemianus*; spores $10-12\mu$ by $8-10\mu$.

H. nemertis Debaisieux (Fig. 242, d). In connective tissue of *Lineus bilineatus*; spores oval with a flat operculum, but without any projections of envelope, 7μ by 4μ .

H. heterocirri C. and M. (Fig. 242, e). In gut epithelium of *Heterocirrus viridis*; mature organisms $50-60\mu$ by $30-40\mu$; spores 6.5μ by 4μ .

H. scolopli C. and M. (Fig. 242, f). In *Scoloplos mülleri*; fully grown form $100-150\mu$ by $20-30\mu$; spores 10μ by 6.5μ .

FIG. 242. a, b, *Haplosporidium chitonis*, $\times 1000$ (Pixell-Goodrich); c, *H. limnodrili*, $\times 1000$ (Granata); d, *H. nemertis*, $\times 1000$ (Debaisieux); e, *H. heterocirri*, $\times 1000$ (Caullery and Mesnil); f, *H. scolopli*, $\times 1000$ (Caullery and Mesnil); g, *H. vej dovskii*, $\times 1000$ (Caullery and Mesnil); h, i, *Urosporidium fuliginosum*, $\times 1000$ (Caullery and Mesnil); j, k, *Bertramia asperospora* (j, cyst with spores; k, empty cyst), $\times 1040$ (Minchin); l, m, *Coelosporidium periplanetae* (l, trophozoite with spores and chromatoid bodies), $\times 2540$ (Sprague).

H. vej dovskii C. and M. (Fig. 242, g). In a freshwater oligochaete, *Mesenchytraeus flavus*; spores $10-12\mu$ long.

Genus **Urosporidium** Caullery and Mesnil. Similar to *Haplosporidium*, but spherical spore with a long projection.

U. fuliginosum C. and M. (Fig. 242, h, i). In the coelom of the polychaete, *Syllis gracilis*; rare.

Genus **Anurosporidium** Caullery and Chappellier. Similar to *Haplosporidium*, but operculate spore spherical.

A. pelseneeri C. and C. In sporocyst of a trematode parasitic in *Donax trunculus*; schizogony intracellular; cysts extracellular, with up to 200 spores; spores about 5μ long.

Genus **Bertramia** Caullery and Mesnil. Parasitic in aquatic worms and rotifers; sausage-shaped bodies in coelom of host; spherical spores which develop in them, possess a uninucleate sporoplasm and a well-developed membrane.

B. asperospora (Fritsch) (Fig. 242, *j, k*). In body cavity of rotifers: Brachionus, Asplanchna, Synchaeta, Hydatina, etc.; fully grown vermicular body $70-90\mu$ with $80-150$ spores.

B. capitellae C. and M. In the annelid *Capitella capitata*; spores 2.5μ in diameter.

B. euchlanis Konsuloff. In coelom of rotifers belonging to the genus Euchlanis.

Genus **Ichthyosporidium** Caullery and Mesnil. In fish; often looked upon as Microsporidia, as the organism develops into large bodies in body muscles, connective tissue, or gills, which appear as conspicuous "cysts," that are surrounded by a thick wall and contain numerous spores.

I. giganteum (Thélohan) (Fig. 241). In various organs of *Crenilabrus melops* and *C. ocellatus*; cysts $30\mu-2$ mm. in diameter; spores $5-8\mu$ long.

I. hertwigi Swarczewsky. In *Crenilabrus paro*; cysts $3-4$ mm. in diameter in gills; spores 6μ long.

Genus **Coelosporidium** Mesnil and Marchoux. In coelom of Cladocera or Malpighian tubules of cockroach; body small, forming cysts; spores resemble microsporidian spores; but without a polar filament.

C. periplanetae (Lutz and Splendore) (*C. blatellae* Crawley) (Fig. 242, *l, m*). In lumen of Malpighian tubules of cockroaches; common; spores $5.5-7.5\mu$ by $3-4\mu$.

References

- ALEXEIEFF, A. 1913 Recherches sur Sarcosporidies. Arch. zool. exper. gén., Vol. 51.
BARABAN, L. and G. ST. REMY 1894 Sur une cas de tubes psorospermiques observés chez l'homme. C. r. soc. biol., Vol. 10.
CAULLERY, M. and F. MESNIL 1905 Recherches sur les Haplosporidies. Arch. zool. exp. gén., Vol. 4.
CRAWLEY, H. 1914 The evolution of *Sarcocystis muris* in the intestinal cells of the mouse. Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci., Philadelphia, Vol. 66.

- DARLING, S. T. 1909 Sarcosporidiosis, with report of a case in man. Arch. Int. Med., Vol. 3.
- 1919 Sarcosporidiosis in an East Indian. Jour. Paras., Vol. 6.
- GILMORE, H. R. Jr., B. H. KEAN and F. M. POSEY 1942 A case of sarcosporidiosis with parasites found in heart. Amer. Jour. Trop. Med., Vol. 22.
- LAMBERT, S. W. JR. 1927 Sarcosporidian infection of the myocardium in man. Amer. Jour. Path., Vol. 3.
- SCOTT, J. W. 1943 Life history of Sarcosporidia, with particular reference to *Sarcocystis tenella*. Bull. Univ. of Wyoming Agr. Exp. Stat., No. 259.
- SPRAGUE, V. 1940 Observations on *Coelosporidium periplanetae* with special reference to the development of the spore. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 59.
- SWARCZEWSKY, R. 1914 Ueber den Lebenscyklus einiger Haplosporidien. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 33.
- TEICHMANN, E. 1912 *Sarcosporidia*. Prowazek's *Handbuch der Path. Protozoen.*, Vol. 1.
- WEISSENBERG, R. 1921 *Fischhaplosporidien*. Ibid., Vol. 3.

CHAPTER 28

Subclass 3 Cnidosporidia Doflein

THE members of this subclass possess without exception resistant **spores** which are of unique structure. Each spore possesses 1-4 **polar filaments** and one to many **sporoplasms**. The membrane which envelops these structures may be a single-piece or bi- or trivalved. The polar filament is typically coiled within a **polar capsule**.

In the order Myxosporidia and Actinomyxidial, there appear several cells during the process of sporulation. These cells give rise to one to many sporoplasms or generative cells, capsulogenous cells, and spore membrane. This condition is not observed in other groups of Protozoa and for this reason some writers recognize a close affinity between these two orders and the Mesozoa. The method of multiplication in the Cnidosporidia is schizogonic and sporogonic. The schizogony is binary or multiple fission, budding, or plasmodium. The nuclear division varies from amitosis to mitosis. Isogamous, anisogamous, and autogamous reproduction have been reported in a number of species. In many forms, the zygote is the sporont, in which one to many spores become differentiated.

No secondary or intermediate host has been found for any of the Cnidosporidia. They are exclusively parasites of the lower vertebrates and invertebrates. Since cnidosporidian infections occur frequently in epidemic forms among such economically important animals as the silkworm, honey bees, and commercial fishes, these organisms possess considerable practical significance.

The cnidosporidia are divided into the following four orders:

Spores comparatively large

Shell bivalve; 1, 2, or 4 polar capsules.....Order 1 Myxosporidia

Shell trivalve; 3 polar capsules.....Order 2 Actinomyxidial (p. 531)

Spores comparatively small

Shell one-piece; 1 (or 2) polar filament.. Order 3 Microsporidia (p. 535)

Barrel-shaped; a thick filament coiled beneath the shell; 3 sporoplasms
.....Order 4 Helicosporidia (p. 542)

Order 1 Myxosporidia Bütschli

The spore of a myxosporidian is of various shapes and dimensions. It is covered by a bivalve chitinous **spore membrane**, the two valves meeting in a **sutural plane** which is either twisted (in three genera) or more or less straight. The membrane may possess various markings or processes. The **polar capsule**, with its short coiled

filament, varies in number from one to four. Except in the family Myxidiidae, in which one polar capsule is situated near each of the poles of the spore, the polar capsules are always grouped at one end which is ordinarily designated as the anterior end of the spore. Below or between (in Myxidiidae) the polar capsules, there is almost always a **sporoplasm**. Ordinarily a young spore possesses two sporoplasm nuclei which fuse into one (autogamy) when the spore becomes mature. In Myxobolidae there is a glycogenous substance in a vacu-

FIG. 243. Sporogony in *Myxosoma catostomi*, $\times 2130$ (Kudo). a, sporont or pansporoblast; b-h, development of two sporoblasts within the sporont; i, a nearly mature spore; j-l, views of spore.

ole which stains mahogany red with iodine and is known as the **iodinophilous** (iodophile) **vacuole**.

The Myxosporidia are exclusively parasites of lower vertebrates, especially fishes. Both fresh and salt water fishes have been found to harbor, or to be infected by, Myxosporidia in various regions of the world. A few occur in Amphibia and Reptilia, but no species has been found to occur in either birds or mammals. When a spore gains entrance into the digestive tract of a specific host fish, the **sporoplasm** leaves the spore as an **amoebula** which penetrates through the gut-epithelium and, after a period of migration, enters

the tissues of certain organs, where it grows into a trophozoite at the expense of the host tissue cells, and the nucleus divides repeatedly. Some nuclei become surrounded by masses of dense cytoplasm and become the **sporonts** (Fig. 243). The sporonts grow and their nuclei divide several times, forming 6–18 daughter nuclei, each with a small mass of cytoplasm. The number of the nuclei thus produced depends upon the structure of the mature spore, and also upon whether 1 or 2 spores develop in a sporont. When the sporont develops into a single spore, it is called a monosporoblastic sporont, and if two spores are formed within a sporont, which is usually the case, the sporont is called disporoblastic, or **pansporoblast**. The spore-formation begins usually in the central area of the large trophozoite, which continues to grow. The surrounding host tissue becomes degenerated or modified and forms an envelope that is often large enough to be visible to the naked eye. This is ordinarily referred to as a **myxosporidian cyst**. If the site of infection is near the body surface, the large cyst breaks and the mature spores become set free in the water. In case the infection is confined to internal organs, the spores will not be set free while the host fish lives. Upon its death and disintegration of the body, however, the liberated spores become the source of new infection.

The more primitive Myxosporidia are coelozoic in the host's organs, such as the gall bladder, uriniferous tubules of the kidney, urinary bladder, etc. In these forms, the liberated amoebulae make their way into the specific organ and there grow into multinucleate amoeboid trophozoites which are capable of forming pseudopodia of various types. They multiply by exogenous or endogenous budding or plasmotomy. One to several spores are developed in the trophozoite.

Almost all observers agree in maintaining the view that the 2 nuclei of the sporoplasm or 2 uninucleate sporoplasms fuse into one (autogamy or paedogamy), but as to the nuclear as well as cytoplasmic changes prior to, and during, spore-formation, there is a diversity of opinions. To illustrate the views held by those who believe there is a sexual phase in the development of a myxosporidian, *Sphaeromyxa sabrazesi* (p. 528) may be taken as an example. De-baisieux's observation on this myxosporidian is in brief as follows (Fig. 244): Sporoplasms after finding their way into the gall bladder of host fish develop into large trophozoites containing many nuclei (*a*), 2 vegetative nuclei become surrounded by a cytoplasmic mass (*c*) and this develops into a primary propagative cell (*d*) which divides (3 chromosomes are noted)(*e*) and forms secondary propagative

cells (f). A binucleate **sporocyte** is formed from the latter by unequal nuclear division (g-i) and 2 sporocytes unite to form a tetranucleate pansporoblast (j) which develops into 2 spores (k, l). Sporoplasm shows first 2 nuclei, but later 4, of which 2 degenerate and the other 2 fuse into one nucleus. On the other hand, according to Naville (1930)

FIG. 244. The development of *Sphaeromyxa sabrazesi* (Debaisieux). a, vegetative nuclei; b, association of two vegetative nuclei; c, the same within a cell; d, primary propagative cell; e, its division; f, secondary propagative cells; g, their division; h, formation of sporocyte; i, two sporocytes; j, formation of pansporoblast; k, pansporoblast at later stages; l, pansporoblast with two spores, the sporoplasm of which contains two nuclei; m, four nuclei in sporoplasm; n, two nuclei remain functional, the other two degenerate, o, fusion of the two nuclei.

FIG. 245. The development of *Sphaeromyxa sabrazei* (Neville). a, uninnucleate amoeba enters the gall bladder; b, young multinucleate trophozoite; c, development of macrogametes; d, development of microgametes; e, f, plasmogamy; g-m, development of pansporoblast; n, fusion of the two nuclei in the sporoplasm.

uninucleate amoebula (Fig. 245, *a*) enters the gall bladder and develops into multinucleate trophozoite in which nuclear division reveals 4 chromosomes (*b*); within the trophozoite macrogametes and microgametes are independently formed, during which process, chromosome number is reduced into half (2) (*c*, *d*); plasogamy between a macrogamete and a microgamete results in production of a binucleate pansporoblast (*e*, *f*), from which repeated nuclear division (*g*–*l*) forms 2 spores (*m*); each of the 2 nuclei of the sporoplasm is haploid and the diploid number is restored when the 2 nuclei fuse into one (*n*).

The site of infection by Myxosporidia varies among different species. They have been found in almost all kinds of tissues and organs of host fish, although each myxosporidian has its special site of infection in one to several species of fish. The gills and gall bladder are most frequently parasitized by Myxosporidia in freshwater

FIG. 246. A channel cat, heavily infected with *Henneguya exilis*, $\times \frac{1}{2}$ (Kudo).

fishes, while the gall bladder and urinary bladder of marine fishes harbor one or more species of Myxosporidia. When the infection is concentrated in the fins or integument, the resulting changes are quite conspicuous (Fig. 246). The infection in the gills is usually manifest by whitish pustules which can be frequently detected with the unaided eye. When the wall of the alimentary canal, mesentery, liver, and other organs are attacked, one sees considerable changes in them. Heavy myxosporidian infection of the gall bladder or urinary bladder of the host fish may cause abnormal appearance and coloration or unusual enlargement of the organ, but under ordinary circumstances the infection is detected only by a microscopical examination of its contents. Certain histological changes in the host fish have been mentioned elsewhere (p. 27).

Severe epidemic diseases of fishes are frequently found to be due to myxosporidian infections. According to Davis, the "wormy" halibut of the Pacific coast of North America is due to the myxosporidian, *Uncapsula muscularis* (Fig. 248), which invades the muscular tissue of the host fish. The "boil disease" of the barbel, *Barbus barbus* and others, of European waters, is caused by *Myxobolus*

pfeifferi. *Myxosoma cerebralis* which attacks the supporting tissues of salmonoid fish, is known to be responsible for the so-called "twist disease," which is often fatal, especially to young fishes and which occurs in an epidemic form.

The Myxosporidia are divided into three suborders:

- Largest diameter of spore at right angles to sutural plane; with 1 polar capsule on each side; sporoplasm without iodophilous vacuole. Suborder 1 Eurysporea
- Spore spherical or subspherical with 1, 2, or 4 polar capsules; sporoplasm without iodophilous vacuole. . Suborder 2 Sphaerosporea (p. 523)
- Sutural plane coincides with, or is at an acute angle to, largest diameter of spore; 1, 2, or 4 polar capsules; sporoplasm with or without iodophilous vacuole. Suborder 3 Platysporea (p. 526)

Suborder 1 Eurysporea Kudo

- Spores laterally expanded; coelozoic in marine fish, except one species. Family 1 Ceratomyxidae
- Spores less laterally expanded; in freshwater fish; histozoic or coelozoic. Family 2 Wardiidae (p. 522)

Family 1 Ceratomyxidae Doflein

Spores are laterally prolonged and therefore sutural diameter is smaller than width; 2 polar capsules at anterior margin; one on each side of sutural plane.

Genus **Ceratomyxa** Thélohan. Shell-valves conical and hollow, attached on bases; sporoplasm usually not filling intrasporal cavity; in gall-bladder of marine fish. Numerous species.

C. mesospora Davis (Fig. 247, *a*). In the gall-bladder of *Cestracion zygæna*; spores 8μ in sutural diameter and $50-65\mu$ wide.

C. hopkinsi Jameson (Fig. 247, *b, c*). In the gall-bladder of *Parophrys vetulus*, *Microstomus pacificus* and *Citharichthys xanthostigmus*; trophozoites disporous; spores $5.7-7.5\mu$ in sutural diameter and $28.8-39\mu$ broad.

Genus **Leptotheca** Thélohan. Shell-valves hemispherical; in gall-bladder or urinary bladder of marine fish and one in amphibians. Numerous species.

L. ohlmacheri (Gurley) (Fig. 247, *d-j*). In the uriniferous tubules of kidney of frogs and toads; spores $9.5-12\mu$ in sutural diameter and $13-14.5\mu$ wide; with 2 uninucleate sporoplasms.

Genus **Myxoproteus** Doflein. Spores pyramidal with or without distinct processes at base of pyramid; in urinary bladder of marine fish. 3 species.

M. cordiformis Davis (Fig. 249, *a*). In the urinary bladder of *Chaetodipterus faber*; spores 12μ by $10-11\mu$.

FIG. 247. a, *Ceratomyxa mesospora*, $\times 1000$ (Davis); b, c, *C. hopkinsi*, $\times 1000$ (Jameson); d-j, *Leptotheca ohlmacheri* (d, section of a uriniferous tubule of *Rana pipiens*, with trophozoites and spores, $\times 800$; e, a trophozoite with a bud; f-h, disporous trophozoites; i, a spore with extruded polar filaments; j, surface view of spore, $\times 1500$) (Kudo).

Family 2 Wardiidae Kudo

Genus **Wardia** Kudo. Spores isosceles triangle with 2 convex sides; oval in profile; 2 large polar capsules; tissue parasites of freshwater fish. 2 species.

W. ovinocua K. (Fig. 249, b). In the ovary of *Lepomis humilis*; spores $9-11\mu$ in sutural diameter and $10-12\mu$ wide.

Genus **Mitraspora** Fujita. Spores circular or ovoidal in front view; somewhat flattened in profile; 2 polar capsules; shell striated; with or without posterior filaments; in kidneys of freshwater fishes. This genus apparently includes border-line forms between this and other suborders. 3 species.

FIG. 248. *Unicapsula muscularis* (Davis). a, b, infected muscle fibers, $\times 20$; c, cross-section of an infected muscle, $\times 190$; d, part of a section of an infected muscle, $\times 575$; e-h, spores, $\times 2500$.

M. elongata Kudo. In the kidney of *Apomotis cyanellus*; spores $15-17\mu$ by $5-6\mu$.

Suborder 2 Sphaerosporea Kudo

Spore with 1 polar capsule.....Family 1 Unicapsulidae (p. 524)
 Spore with 2 polar capsules.....Family 2 Sphaerosporidae (p. 524)
 Spore with 4 polar capsules.....Family 3 Chloromyxidae (p. 526)

Family 1 **Unicapsulidae** Kudo

Genus **Unicapsula** Davis. Spherical spore with 1 polar capsule; shell-valves asymmetrical; sutural line sinuous; histozoic in marine fish. One species.

U. muscularis D. (Fig. 248). Spore about 6μ in diameter; 2 uninucleate sporoplasms; in muscle fibers of halibut; Pacific coast of North America; the cause of the "wormy" halibut (Davis).

FIG. 249. a, *Myxoproteus cordiformis*, $\times 1000$ (Davis); b, *Wardia ovino-cua*, $\times 1330$ (Kudo); c, *Sphaerospora polymorpha*, $\times 1000$ (Davis); d-i, *Sinuolinea dimorpha* (d, external appearance of a heavily infected young tench; e, internal appearance, $\times \frac{2}{3}$; f, mature pansporoblast; g, h, two spores; i, germination of spore, $\times 1000$) (Léger); j, k, *Sinuolinea dimorpha* (j, trophozoite with three gemmules, $\times 420$; k, a spore, $\times 930$) (Davis); l, m, *Chloromyxum leydigi* (l, $\times 500$; m, $\times 1000$) (Thélohan); n, *C. trijugum*, $\times 1130$ (Kudo).

Family 2 **Sphaerosporidae** Davis

Genus **Sphaerospora** Thélohan. Spore spherical or subspherical; sutural line straight; 2 polar capsules at anterior end; coelozoic or histozoic in marine or freshwater fishes.

S. polymorpha Davis (Figs. 249, c; 250, a-e). In the urinary bladder of toadfish, *Opsanus tau* and *O. beta*. Trophozoites amoeboid with conical pseudopodia; up to 100μ long, the majority being $20-50\mu$ long; plasmotomy; disporoblastic; disporous or polysporous. Spores spheroidal; shell-valves finely striated; polar capsules divergent; fresh spores measure $7.5-9.5\mu$ by $7-8\mu$. The trophozoites suffer frequently infection by *Nosema notabilis* (p. 538).

S. tincae Plehn (Fig. 249, d-i). In the kidney and other viscera of *Tinca tinca* in France and Germany; cause of epidemic disease

FIG. 250. a-e, *Sphaerospora polymorpha* (Kudo). a, a trophozoite in life, $\times 1840$; b, a stage in a simple plasmotomy, $\times 850$; c, front view and d, anterior end view of fresh spores, $\times 1700$; e, a spore with the extruded polar filaments (one is shown only in part), $\times 1700$. f-h, *Myxidium serotinum*. f, a stained young trophozoite, $\times 1840$ (Kudo); g, h, two views of fresh spores showing the ridges on shell-valves, $\times 1100$ (Kudo and Sprague).

among young tench; disease is manifest by great distension of anterior portion of abdomen and up-turned mouth: infection fatal through rupture of abdominal wall; spores $7-8.75\mu$ in diameter.

Genus **Sinuolinea** Davis. Spherical or subspherical spores; sutural line sinuous; with or without lateral processes; 2 spherical polar capsules; in urinary bladder of marine fish.

S. dimorpha D. (Fig. 249, j, k). In *Cynoscion regalis*; spores 15μ in diameter.

Family 3 **Chloromyxidae** Thélohan

Genus **Chloromyxum** Mingazzini. Spore with 4 polar capsules, grouped at anterior end; shell surface often striated or ridged; sutural line frequently obscure; histozoic or coelozoic in freshwater or marine fish and also in amphibians. Numerous species.

C. leydigi M. (Figs. 68, *c, d*; 249, *l, m*). In the gall-bladder of various species of *Raja*, *Torpedo* and *Cestracion*; spores 6–9 μ by 5–6 μ ; widely distributed.

C. trijugum Kudo (Fig. 249, *n*). In the gall-bladder of *Xenotis megalotis* and *Pomoxis sparoides*; spores 8–10 μ by 5–7 μ .

FIG. 251. Scattered spores, young and sporulating trophozoites of *Myxidium serotinum*, as seen in the bile of a frog in life, $\times 64$ (Kudo).

Suborder 3 **Platysporea** Kudo

Without iodophilous vacuole

2 polar capsules, one at each pole.....Family 1 Myxidiidae

1 polar capsule.....Family 2 Coccomyxidae (p. 528)

2 or 4 polar capsules grouped.....Family 3 Myxosomatidae (p. 528)

With an iodophilous vacuole.....Family 4 Myxobolidae (p. 530)

Family 1 **Myxidiidae** Thélohan

Genus **Myxidium** Bütschli. Spores fusiform with pointed or rounded ends; polar filament comparatively long, fine; coelozoic or

histozoic in fishes, also in amphibians and reptiles. Numerous species.

M. lieberkühni Bütschli (Figs. 68, a, b; 252, a-d). In urinary bladder of *Esox* spp.; spores 18–20 μ by 5–6 μ ; widely distributed.

M. immersum (Lutz) (*Cystodiscus immersus* Lutz; *M. lindoyense* Carini). (Fig. 252, e, f). In the gall bladder of species of *Bufo*, *Leptodactylus*, *Atelopus*, etc.; in Brazil and Uruguay. Trophozoites

FIG. 252. a-d, *Myxidium lieberkühni* (a, a trophozoite, $\times 220$ (Lieberkühn); b, a small trophozoite, $\times 1000$; c, d, spores, $\times 1400$) (Kudo); e, f, *M. immersum*, $\times 1400$ (Kudo); g-i, *Sphaeromyxa balbianii* (g, $\times \frac{2}{3}$; h, a spore, $\times 1400$ (Davis); i, spore with extruded polar filaments, $\times 840$ (Thélohan)); j-l, *S. sabralesi* (j, trophozoite, $\times 10$; k, l, spores, $\times 1000$) (Schröder); m, n, *Zschokkella hildae* (m, $\times 600$; n, $\times 1060$) (Auerbach); o-t, *Cocomyxa morovi* (o, a young binucleate trophozoite; p-s, development of sporoblast; t, a spore with the extruded polar filament), $\times 665$ (Léger and Hesse).

circular to oval, and very thin; up to 4 mm. in diameter; disporoblastic; polysporous. Spores 11.8–13.3 μ by 7.5–8.6 μ ; shell-valves marked with 1 longitudinal and 7–9 transverse ridges.

M. serotinum Kudo and Sprague (Figs. 250, f-h; 251). In the gall

bladder of *Bufo terrestris*, *Rana pipiens*, *R. clamitans* and *R. sphenoccephala*; in the United States. Trophozoites up to 6.5 by 1.8 mm., extremely thin; cytoplasm highly alveolated; endogenous budding; disporoblastic; polysporous. Spores 16–18 μ by 9 μ ; shell-valve with 2–4 longitudinal and 10–13 transverse ridges.

M. kudo Meglitsch. In gall-bladder of *Ictalurus furcatus*; trophozoites large disc-like up to 1 mm. in diameter; spores 8.5–12 μ long by 4–6 μ .

Genus **Sphaeromyxa** Thélohan. Spore fusiform, but ends usually truncate; polar filament short, thick; trophozoites large, discoid; coelozoic in marine fish. Several species.

S. balbianii T. (Figs. 68, *e*; 252, *g-i*). In gall-bladder of *Motella* and other marine fish in Europe and of *Siphostoma* in the United States; spores 15–20 μ by 5–6 μ .

S. sabrazesi Laveran and Mesnil (Figs. 244; 245; 252, *j-l*). In gall-bladder of *Hippocampus*, *Motella*, etc.; spores 22–28 μ by 3–4 μ .

Genus **Zschokkella** Auerbach. Spore semi-circular in front view; fusiform in profile; circular in cross-section; ends pointed obliquely; polar capsules large, spherical; sutural line usually in S-form, coelozoic in fish or amphibians. A few species.

Z. hildae A. (Fig. 252, *m, n*). In urinary bladder of *Gadus* spp.; spores 16–29 μ by 13–18 μ .

Family 2 **Coccomyxidae** Léger and Hesse

Spore ellipsoidal; one polar capsule at one end; circular in cross-section; undoubtedly a border-line form between Myxosporidia and Microsporidia.

Genus **Coccomyxa** Léger and Hesse. Polar filament long, fine; coelozoic parasite in marine fish.

C. morovi L. and H. (Fig. 252, *o-t*). In the gall-bladder of *Clupea pilchardus*; spores 14 μ by 5–6 μ .

Family 3 **Myxosomatidae** Poche

Two or 4 polar capsules at anterior end; sporoplasm without any iodophilous vacuoles.

Genus **Myxosoma** Thélohan (*Lentospora* Plehn). Spore circular, oval or ellipsoid in front view, lenticular in profile; 2 polar capsules at anterior end; histozoic in marine or fresh water fish. Several species.

M. catostomi Kudo (Figs. 57; 243). In the muscle and connective tissue of *Catostomus commersonii*; spores 13–15 μ by 10–11.5 μ .

M. cerebralis (Hofer) (Fig. 253, a). In the cartilage and perichondrium of salmonoid fish; young fish are especially affected by infection, the disease being known as the "twist-disease" (Drehkrankheit); spores 6–10 μ in diameter.

FIG. 253. a, *Myxosoma cerebralis*, $\times 800$ (Plehn); b, *Agarella gracilis*, $\times 1660$ (Dunkerley); c, d, *Thelohanellus notatus*, $\times 1530$ (Kudo); e, f, *Myxobolus pfeifferi* (e, section of a cyst; f, spore treated with Lugol, $\times 1780$) (Keysseltz); g–i, *M. orbiculatus* (g, infected muscle, $\times 600$; h, a fresh spore; i, Lugol-treated spore, $\times 1000$) (Kudo); j, k, *M. conspicuus*, $\times 1530$ (Kudo); l–o, *M. squamosus* (l, a cyst under a scale, $\times 6.5$) (Kudo); p, *Henneguya psorospermica*, $\times 1330$ (Thélohan); q–s, *H. exilis*, $\times 1530$ (Kudo).

Genus *Agarella* Dunkerley. Spore elongate oval; 4 polar capsules at anterior end; shell prolonged posteriorly into long processes. One species.

A. gracilis D. (Fig. 253, b). In the testis of South American lung-fish, *Lepidosiren paradoxa*.

Family 4 **Myxobolidae** Thélohan

One, 2, or 4 polar capsules grouped at anterior end; sporoplasm with iodophilous vacuole.

Genus **Myxobolus** Bütschli. Spores ovoidal or ellipsoidal, flattened; 2 polar capsules at anterior end; sporoplasm with an iodophilous vacuole; sometimes with a posterior prolongation of shell; exclusively histozoic in freshwater fish or amphibians. Numerous species.

M. pfeifferi Thélohan (Fig. 253, *e, f*). In the muscle and connective tissue of body and various organs of *Barbus barbus*, *B. fluviatilis*, and *B. plebejus*; tumor up to a diameter of 7 cm; most of infected fish die from the effect (Keyssselitz); spores 12–12.5 μ by 10–10.5 μ .

M. orbiculatus Kudo (Fig. 253, *g-i*). In muscle of *Notropis gilberti*; spores 9–10 μ in diameter by 6.5–7 μ thick.

M. conspicuus K. (Fig. 253, *j, k*). In corium of head of *Moxostoma breviceps*; tumors 1/2–4 mm.; spores 9–11.5 μ by 6.5–8 μ .

M. intestinalis K. (Fig. 1, *a*). In the intestinal wall of *Pomoxis sparoides*; (fixed unstained) spores, 12–13 μ by 10–12.5 μ ; the histological changes brought about by this protozoan have been mentioned elsewhere (p. 27).

M. squamosus K. (Fig. 253, *l-o*). In connective tissue below scales of *Hybopsis kentuckiensis*; spore circular in front view, 8–9 μ in diameter, 4.5–5 μ thick.

Genus **Thelohanellus** Kudo. Pyriform spores, each with one polar capsule; sporoplasm with an iodophilous vacuole; histozoic in freshwater fish. 11 species.

T. notatus (Mavor) (Figs. 1, *b*; 253, *c, d*). In subdermal connective tissue of *Pimephales notatus*, *Cliola vigilax*, *Notropis cornutus*, *N. blennius*, and *Leuciscus rutilus*; tumor up to 7 mm. in diameter; spores 17–18 μ by 7.5–10 μ ; host tissue surrounding the organism becomes so greatly changed that it appears as an epithelium (p. 27).

Genus **Henneguya** Thélohan. Spore circular or ovoidal in front view; flattened; 2 polar capsules at anterior end; each shell-valve prolonged posteriorly into a long process; sporoplasm with an iodophilous vacuole; mostly histozoic in freshwater fish. Numerous species.

H. psorospermica T. (Fig. 253, *p*). In gills of *Esox* and *Perca*; cyst formation; total length of spores 35–40 μ .

H. exilis Kudo (Figs. 246; 253, *q-s*). In gills and integument of *Ictalurus punctatus*; cysts up to 3 mm. in diameter, conspicuous; spores, total length 60–70 μ , spore proper 18–20 μ long by 4–5 μ wide by 3–3.5 μ thick.

H. mictospora Kudo. In the urinary bladder of *Lepomis* spp. and *Micropterus salmoides*; spores 13.5–15 μ long, 8–9 μ wide, 6–7.5 μ thick; caudal prolongation 30–40 μ long.

Order 2 Actinomyxidia Stole

The Cnidosporidia placed in this order have been less frequently studied and, therefore, not so well known as the Myxosporidia. The spore is enveloped by a membrane, or shell composed of 3 valves which are sometimes drawn out into simple or bifurcated processes. There are also 3 polar capsules in the spore and the polar filaments are plainly visible *in vivo*. One to several sporoplasms occur in each spore. In the fully grown stage, the body is covered by a membrane and contains always 8 sporoplasts which develop in turn into 8 spores. Whether the pansporoblast is formed by the union of 2 cells or not, is yet to be confirmed. The nuclei and cytoplasm divide and isogamy takes place. The zygote thus formed is the sporont in which a single spore is produced by repeated nuclear division combined with cytoplasmic differentiation.

The Actinomyxidia inhabit the body cavity or the gut-epithelium of fresh or salt water annelids.

Spore with a double membrane; inner membrane a single piece, the outer trivalve; a single binucleate sporoplasm. Family 1 Tetractinomyxidae
 Spore membrane a single trivalve shell; a single octonucleate sporoplasm or 8 uninucleate sporoplasms. Family 2 Triactinomyxidae

Family 1 Tetractinomyxidae Poche

Genus **Tetractinomyxon** Ikeda. In the coelom of the sipunculid *Petalostoma minutum*; spores tetrahedron, without processes; trophozoite a rounded body, when mature; pansporoblast develops 8 spores. Seemingly borderline forms between the Myxosporidia and the Actinomyxidia.

T. intermedium I. (Fig. 254, *a*). Spherical pansporoblasts 20–25 μ in diameter; spores 7–8 μ in diameter; in coelom of the sipunculid, *Petalostoma minutum*.

Family 2 Triactinomyxidae

Genus **Triactinomyxon** Stole. Each of 3 shell-valves drawn out into a long process, the whole anchor-like; spore with 8 or more uninucleate sporoplasms; in the gut-epithelium of oligochaetes.

T. ignotum S. (Fig. 254, *d*). Spore with 8 sporoplasms; in *Tubifex tubifex*.

T. magnum Granata. Spore with 16 sporoplasms; in *Limnodrilus udekemianus*.

T. legeri Mackinnon and Adams. Spore with 24 sporoplasms; in *Tubifex tubifex*.

T. dubium G. Spore with 32 sporoplasms; in *Tubifex tubifex*.

FIG. 254. a, *Tetractinomyxon intermedium*, $\times 800$ (Ikeda) b,; *Sphaeractinomyxon stolci*, $\times 600$ (Caullery and Mesnil); c, *S. gigas*, $\times 665$ (Granata); d, *Triactinomyxon ignotum*, $\times 165$ (Léger); e, *Hexactinomyxon psammoryctis*, $\times 300$ (Stolc); f, g, *Synactinomyxon tubificis*, $\times 600$ (Stolc); h, *Neoactinomyxum globosum*, $\times 860$ (Granata); i, *Guyenotia sphaerulosa*, $\times 2095$ (Naville).

T. mrazeki M. and A. Spore with 50 sporoplasms; in *Tubifex tubifex*.

Genus **Sphaeractinomyxon** Caullery and Mesnil. In the coelom of oligochaetes; spores rounded, without any processes; in early stage of development, there are 2 uninucleate bodies surrounded by a bi-

nucleate envelope; 2 inner cells multiply into 16 cells which unite in pairs; nucleus of zygote of sporont divides first into 2; 1 of the nuclei divides into 6 which form 3 shell-valves and 3 polar capsules, while the other nucleus together with a portion of cytoplasm remains outside the envelope, and undergoes multiplication; multinucleate sporoplasm migrates into spore; sporoplasm later divides into a large number of uninucleate sporoplasms which, when spores gain entrance into a new host, begin development.

S. stolci C. and M. (Fig. 254, b). Spore spherical; in *Clitellis arenarius* and *Hemitubifex benedii*.

S. gigas Granata (Fig. 254, c). In the coelom of *Limnodrilus hoffmeisteri*.

Genus **Hexactinomyxon** Stole. Each of 3 shell-valves prolonged into 2 processes; spore appears as a 6-armed anchor.

H. psammoryctis S. (Fig. 254, e). In the gut-epithelium of *Psammoryctes barbatus*; sporoplasm multinucleate.

Genus **Synactinomyxon** Stole. Spore with 2 prolonged shell-valves and 1 conical valve.

S. tubificis S. (Fig. 254, f, g). In the gut-epithelium of *Tubifex tubifex*.

Genus **Neoactinomyxum** Granata. 3 shell-valves without any process, distended to hemisphere.

N. globosum G. (Fig. 254, h). In the gut-epithelium of *Limnodrilus udekemianus*; spore with numerous sporoplasms.

Genus **Guyenotia** Naville. Pansporoblast with 8 spores; spore spherical with 3 shell-valves, each drawn out posteriorly into digitiform process, longer than diameter of spore; sporoplasm with 32 nuclei.

G. sphaerulosa N. (Fig. 254, i). In the gut-epithelium of *Tubifex tubifex*; spores 15μ in diameter; appendages of mature spore 40μ long.

References

- AUERBACH, M. 1910 *Die Cnidosporidien*. Leipzig.
 CAULLERY, M. and F. MESNIL 1905 Recherches sur les Actinomyxidies. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 6.
 DAVIS, H. S. 1917 The Myxosporidia of the Beaufort region. Bull. U. S. Bureau Fish., Vol. 35.
 FANTHAM, H. B., A. PORTER and L. R. RICHARDSON 1939 Some Myxosporidia found in certain fresh-water fishes in Quebec Province, Canada. Parasitology, Vol. 31.
 ———— 1940 Some more Myxosporidia observed in Canadian fishes. Ibid., Vol. 32.
 GRANATA, L. 1924 Gli Attinomissidi. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 50.

- KUDO, R. R. 1920 Studies on Myxosporidia. Illinois Biol. Monogr., Vol. 5.
- 1933 A taxonomic consideration of Myxosporidia. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 52.
- 1934 Studies on some protozoan parasites of fishes of Illinois. Illinois Biol. Monogr., Vol. 32.
- 1943 Further observations on the protozoan, *Myxidium serotinum*, inhabiting the gall bladder of North American Salientia. Jour. Morph., Vol. 72.
- 1944 The morphology and development of *Nosema notabilis* Kudo, and of its host, *Sphaerospora polymorpha* Davis, parasitic in *Opsanus tau* and *O. beta*. Illinois Biol. Monogr., Vol. 20.
- NAVILLE, A. 1930 Le cycle chromosomique d'une nouvelle Actinomyxidie: *Guyenotia sphaerulosa* n. gen., n. sp. Quart. Jour. Micr. Sci., Vol. 73.

Order 3 Microsporidia Balbiani

THE Microsporidia are far more widely distributed as parasites among various animal phyla than are the Myxosporidia. They are, however, typically parasites of arthropods and fishes. Aside from 1 or 2 species, all Microsporidia invade and destroy host cells. Frequently these infected cells may show enormous hypertrophy of both the cytoplasmic body and the nuclei (Fig. 255), a characteristic feature of the host reaction toward this particular group of protozoan parasites.

FIG. 255. Effects of microsporidian infection upon hosts. a, the central nervous system of *Lophius piscatoris* infected by *Nosema lophii* (Doflein); b, a smelt infected by *Glugea hertwigi* (Schrader); c, larva of *Culex territans* infected by *Thelohania opacita*, $\times 10$ (Kudo); d, a *Simulium* larva infected by *T. multispora*, $\times 8$ (Strickland); e, part of testis of *Barbus barbus* infected by *Plistophora longifilis*, $\times 1$ (Schuberg); f, g, normal and hypertrophied nucleus of adipose tissue of larval *C. pipiens*, the latter due to infection by *Stempellia magna*, $\times 1000$ (Kudo).

The microsporidian **spore** is relatively small. In the vast majority it measures $3\text{--}6\mu$ long. The spore **membrane**, which is apparently of a single piece, envelops the **sporoplasm** and the **polar filament**, a very long and fine filament. The latter may directly be coiled in the spore or may be encased within a polar capsule which is similar to that of a myxosporidian or actinomyxidian spore in structure, but which is mostly obscure *in vivo*, because of the minuteness of the object.

When such spores are taken into the digestive tract of a specific

host (Fig. 256), the polar filaments are extruded and perhaps anchor the spores to the gut-epithelium (*a*). The sporoplasms emerge through the opening after the filaments become completely detached (*b*). By amoeboid movements they penetrate through the intestinal epithelium and enter the blood stream or body cavity and reach the specific site of infection (*c*). They then enter the host cells and undergo multiplication at the expense of the latter (*d-n*). The trophozoites become **sporonts**, each of which produces a number of

FIG. 256. The life-cycle of *Stempellia magna*, $\times 800$ (Kudo). *a*, *b*, germination of spore in the mid-gut of culicine larva; *c-k*, division stages; *l-p*, sporont formation; *q-t*, formation of 1, 2, 4, and 8 sporoblasts; *u*, sporoblast; *v-x*, development of sporoblast into spore.

spores (*p-x*) characteristic of each genus. Some spores seem to be capable of germinating in the same host body, and thus the number of infected cells increases. When heavily infected, the host animal dies as a result of the degeneration of enormous numbers of cells thus attacked. Such fatal infections may occur in an epidemic form, as is well known in the case of the pébrine disease of silkworms, the nosema-disease of honey bees, microsporidiosis of mosquito larvae, etc.

Spore with a single polar filament.....Suborder 1 Monocnidea (p. 537)
 Spore with 2 polar filaments.....Suborder 2 Dienidea (p. 542)

Suborder 1 **Monocnidea** Léger and Hesse

Spore oval, ovoid, or pyriform, if subcylindrical length less than 4 times breadth.....Family 1 Nosematidae
 Spore spherical or subspherical.....Family 2 Coccosporidae (p. 541)
 Spore tubular or cylindrical, width less than $1/5$ length, straight or curved.....Family 3 Mrazekiidae (p. 541)

Family 1 **Nosematidae** Labbé

The majority of Microsporidia belong to this family.

Genus **Nosema** Nägeli. Each sporont develops into a single spore. Numerous species.

N. bombycis N. (Fig. 257, a, b). In all tissues of embryo, larva, pupa and adult of *Bombyx mori*; spores $3-4\mu$ by $1.5-2\mu$, polar fila-

FIG. 257. a, b, *Nosema bombycis* (a, spore, $\times 1470$; b, an infected silkworm larva, $\times \frac{2}{3}$) (Kudo); c, d, *N. bryozoides* (c, infected funiculus, $\times 270$ (Braem); d, a spore, $\times 1200$ (Schröder)); e, f, *N. apis*, $\times 1560$ (Kudo); g-i, *N. cyclopis*, $\times 1560$ (Kudo); j, k, *N. anophelis*, $\times 1600$ (Kudo); l, m, *Glugea anomala* (l, section of an infected *Gasterosteus aculeatus* (Thélohan); m, a spore, $\times 1500$ (Stempell)); n, *G. hertwigi*, $\times 1670$ (Weissenberg); o, *Perezia mesnili*, $\times 800$ (Paillot); p, q, *Gurleya richardi* $\times 1200$ (Cépède).

ment $57-72\mu$ long; the causative organism of the pébrine disease of the silkworm.

N. bryozoides (Korotneff) (Fig. 257, c, d). In germ cells and cavity of *Plumatella fungosa* and *P. repens*; spores $7-10\mu$ by $5-6\mu$.

N. apis Zander (Fig. 257, e, f). In the gut of honey bees; spores $4-6\mu$ by $2-4\mu$.

N. cyclopis Kudo (Fig. 257, g-i). In *Cyclops fuscus*; spores 4.5μ by 3μ .

N. anophelis K. (Fig. 257, j, k). In *Anopheles quadrimaculatus* (larvae); spores $5-6\mu$ by $2-3\mu$.

N. notabilis K. (Fig. 258, a-c). In the trophozoite of a myxosporidian, *Sphaerospora polymorpha* (p. 525) which inhabits the urinary bladder of *Opsanus tau* and *O. beta*. The host fish remain free from the microsporidian infection. The entire development takes place in the cytoplasm of the host trophozoites. Trophozoites small binucleate, multiply by binary fission. Spores ovoid to ellipsoid; sporoplasm binucleate; fresh spores $2.9\text{--}4\mu$ by $1.4\text{--}2.5\mu$; extruded polar

FIG. 258. a-c, *Nosema notabilis*, $\times 1400$ (Kudo). a, a stained trophozoite of *Sphaerospora polymorpha*, infected by 6 trophozoites of *N. notabilis*; b, another stained host trophozoite in which 9 spores and 2 trophozoites of *N. notabilis* occur; c, 8 fresh spores of *N. notabilis*. d-g, *Duboscqia legeri* (Kudo). d, mid-intestine of *Reticulitermes flavipes*, to which are attached an (enlarged) infected and 2 uninfected fat bodies, $\times 57$; e, f, mature sporonts containing 16 spores as seen in life, $\times 1530$; g, portions of infected and normal fat bodies of the termite as seen in a section, $\times 1530$.

filament $45\text{--}62\mu$. When heavily infected, the host myxosporidian trophozoites degenerate and disintegrate. A unique example of hyperparasitism in which two cnidosporidians are involved.

Genus **Glugea** Thélohan. Each sporont develops into 2 spores; the infected host cells become extremely hypertrophied, and transform themselves into the so-called **Glugea cysts**. Many species.

G. anomala (Moniez) (Fig. 257, *l, m*). In the connective tissue of stickle backs; spores $4-6\mu$ by $2-3\mu$.

G. mülleri Pfeiffer. In muscles of Gammarus; spores $5-6\mu$ by $2-3\mu$.

G. hertwigi Weissenberg (Figs. 255, *b*; 257, *n*). In various tissue cells of Osmerus; spores $4-5.5\mu$ by $2-2.5\mu$.

Genus **Perezia** Léger and Duboscq. Each sporont produces 2 spores as in Glugea, but infected host cells are not hypertrophied. A few species.

P. mesnili Paillot (Fig. 257, *o*). In cells of silk glands and Malpighian tubules of larvae of *Pieris brassicae*; spores 3.4μ by $1.5-2\mu$.

Genus **Gurleya** Doflein. Each sporont develops into 4 sporoblasts and finally into 4 spores. Not common.

G. richardi Cépède (Fig. 257, *p, q*). In *Diaptomus castor*; spores $4-6\mu$ by 2.8μ .

Genus **Thelohan** Henneguy. Each sporont develops into 8 sporoblasts and ultimately into 8 spores; sporont membrane may degenerate at different times during spore formation. Numerous species.

T. legeri Hesse (Figs. 71; 259, *a-c*). In fat-bodies of anopheline larvae; spores $4-6\mu$ by $3-4\mu$; heavily infected larvae die without metamorphosing into adults; widely distributed.

T. opacita Kudo (Figs. 255, *c*; 259, *f-h*). In fat-bodies of culicine larvae; spores $5.5-6\mu$ by $3.5-4\mu$.

Genus **Stempellia** Léger and Hesse. Each sporont produces 1, 2, 4, or 8 sporoblasts and finally 1, 2, 4, or 8 spores. 2 species.

S. magna Kudo (Figs. 255, *f, g*; 256; 259, *i-l*). In fat-bodies of various culicine larvae; spores $12.5-16.5\mu$ by $4-5\mu$; polar capsule visible in life; polar filament when extruded under mechanical pressure, measures up to $350-400\mu$ long.

Genus **Duboscqia** Pérez. Sporont develops into 16 sporoblasts and finally 16 spores. Host-cell nuclei extremely hypertrophied. One species.

D. legeri P. (Fig. 258, *d-g*). In the fat-body cells of *Reticulitermes lucifugus* and *R. flavipes*. Trophozoites invade the peri-midintestinal adipose tissue cells which become enlarged into "cysts," up to 660μ by 300μ , because of active multiplication of the organisms; each binucleate schizont becomes a sporont which grows and produces 16 spores. Spores ovoid to ellipsoid; fresh spores are $4.3-5.9\mu$ by $2.2-3\mu$; sporoplasm uninucleate; extruded polar filament $80-95\mu$ long.

Genus **Trichoduboscqia** Léger. Similar to *Duboscqia* in number of

spores produced in each sporont; but sporont with 4 (or 3) rigid transparent prolongations, difficult to see in life. One species.

T. epeori L. (Fig. 259, m, n). In fat-bodies of nymphs of *Epeorus torrentium* and *Rhithrogena semicolorata*; sporonts spherical, 9–10 μ in diameter, with usually 16 spores; prolongations of membrane in sporont, 20–22 μ long; spores pyriform, 3.5–4 μ long.

Genus **Plistophora** Gurley. Sporont develops into variable number (often more than 16) of sporoblasts, each of which becomes a spore. Several species.

FIG. 259. a–e, *Thelohania legeri* (a, b, sporogony; c, d, mature sporonts; e, a fresh spore), $\times 1570$ (Kudo); f–h, *T. opacita* (f, g, octosporous and tetrasporous sporonts; h, a spore) $\times 1570$ (Kudo); i–l, *Stempellia magna* (i–k, spores; l, a spore with the extruded polar filament), $\times 1570$ (Kudo); m, n, *Trichoduboscqia epeori* (m, sporont with mature spores, $\times 1330$; n, a spore, $\times 2670$) (Léger); o, p, *Plistophora longifilis*, $\times 1280$ (Schuberg).

P. simulii (Lutz and Splendore). In larvae of *Simulium* spp.; spores 4.5–8 μ by 3.5 μ .

P. longifilis Schuberg (Figs. 255, e; 259, o, p). In the testis of *Barbus fluviatilis*; spores 3 μ by 2 μ to 12 μ by 6 μ ; extruded polar filaments up to 510 μ long.

Genus **Pyrotheca** Hesse. Schizogony and sporogony unknown; spores elongate pyriform, anterior end attenuated, posterior end rounded, slightly curved; sporoplasm in posterior region, with 1–2 nuclei; polar capsule large. One species.

P. incurvata H. (Fig. 260, a, b). In fat-bodies and haemocoel of *Megacylops viridis*; spores 14μ by 3μ ; polar filament 130μ long.

Family 2 Coccosporidae Kudo

Genus **Coccospora** Kudo (*Cocconema* Léger and Hesse). Spore spherical or subspherical. Several species.

C. slavinae (L. and H.) (Fig. 260, c, d). In gut-epithelium of *Slavina appendiculata*; spores about 3μ in diameter.

FIG. 260. a, b, *Pyrotheca incurvata*, $\times 2000$ (Hesse); c, d, *Coccospora slavinae* (d, with extruded polar filament), $\times 2000$ (Léger and Hesse); e, f, *Mrazekia caudata* (e, an infected host cell, $\times 700$ (Mrazek); f, a spore, $\times 1750$ (Léger and Hesse)); g, *Bacillidium limnodrili*, $\times 1400$ (Jírovec); h, i, *Cougourdella magna*, $\times 2000$ (Hesse); j, *Octosporea muscae-domesticae* $\times 2150$ (Chatton and Krempf); k, l, *Spiroglugea octospora* (k, $\times 1000$, l, $\times 3000$) (Léger and Hesse); m, n, *Toxoglugea vibrio* (m, $\times 1000$; n, $\times 3000$) (Léger and Hesse); o, p, *Telomyxa glugeiformis*, $\times 3000$ (Léger and Hesse).

Family 3 Mrazekiidae Léger and Hesse

Genus **Mrazekia** L. and H. Spore straight, tubular; a long or short process at one extremity.

M. caudata L. and H. (Fig. 260, e, f). In lymphocytes of *Limnodrilus* and *Tubifex*; spores $16\text{--}18\mu$ by $1.3\text{--}1.4\mu$.

Genus **Bacillidium** Janda. Spore cylindrical, without any process; one end narrowed in a few species. 8 species.

B. limnodrili Jírovec (Fig. 260, *g*). In lymphocytes within gonads of *Limnodrilus claparedeanus*; spores $22-24\mu$ by 1.5μ .

Genus **Cougourdella** Hesse. Spore cylindrical, with an enlarged extremity, resembling the fruit of *Lagenaria cougourda*. 3 species.

C. magna H. (Fig. 260, *h, i*). In haemocoel and fat body of *Megacyclops viridis*; spores 18μ by 3μ ; polar filament 110μ long; sporoplasm with 1-2 nuclei or 2 uninucleate sporoplasms.

Genus **Octosporea** Flu. Spore cylindrical; more or less curved; ends similar. 2 species.

O. muscae-domesticae F. (Fig. 260, *j*). In gut and germ cells of *Musca* and *Drosophila*; spores $5-8\mu$ long.

Genus **Spiroglugea** Léger and Hesse. Spore tubular and spirally curved; polar capsule large. One species.

S. octospora L. and H. (Fig. 260, *k, l*). In fat body of larvae of *Ceratopogon* sp.; spores $8-8.5\mu$ by 1μ .

Genus **Toxoglugea** Léger and Hesse. Minute spore curved or arched in semi-circle. One species.

T. vibrio L. and H. (Fig. 260, *m, n*). In the fat body of *Ceratopogon* sp.; spores 3.5μ by less than 0.3μ .

Suborder 2 Dicnidea Léger and Hesse

Family Telomyxidae Léger and Hesse

Genus **Telomyxa** Léger and Hesse. Spore with 2 polar capsules; sporont develops into 8, 16, or more sporoblasts and finally 8, 16, or more spores. One species.

T. glugeiformis L. and H. (Fig. 260, *o, p*). In the fat body of the larva of *Ephemera vulgata*; spores 6.5μ by 4μ .

Order 4 Helicosporidia Kudo

This order has been created to include the interesting organism, *Helicosporidium*, observed by Keilin. Although quite peculiar in the structure of its spore, the organism seems to be best placed in the Cnidosporidia.

The minute spore is composed of a thin membrane of one piece and of three uninucleate sporoplasms, around which is coiled a long thick filament. Young trophozoites are found in the host tissues or body cavity. They undergo schizogony, at the end of which uninu-

cleate sporonts become differentiated. A sporont divides apparently twice and thus forms four small cells which develop into a spore. The complete life-history is still unknown.

Genus **Helicosporidium** Keilin. Parasitic in arthropods; schizogony and sporogony; spore with central sporoplasms and a single thick coiled filament. One species.

FIG. 261. Diagram illustrating the probable development of Helicosporidia, $\times$ about 1600 (Keilin). a-c, schizont and schizogony; d, sporont(?); e, three stages in formation of four-celled stage; f, hypothetical stage; g, young spore before the spiral filament is formed; h, mature spore; i, j, opening of spore and liberation of sporoplasms. a-h, in living host larva; i, j, in dead host body.

H. parasiticum K. (Fig. 261). In body cavity, fat body, and nervous system of larvae of *Dasyhelea obscura* and *Mycetobia pallipes* (Diptera), and *Hericia hericia* (Acarina), all of which inhabit wounds of elm and horse-chestnut trees; schizonts minute; spores 5-6 μ in diameter; extruded filament 60-65 μ by 1 μ thick.

References

- DEBAISIEUX, P. 1928 Études cytologiques sur quelques Microsporidies. La Cellule, Vol. 38.
- FANTHAM, H. B., A. PORTER and L. R. RICHARDSON 1941 Some Microsporidia found in certain fishes and insects in eastern Canada. Parasitology, Vol. 33.
- HESSE, E. 1935 Sur quelques Microsporidies parasites de *Megacyclops viridis* Jurine. Arch. zool. exp. et gén., Vol. 75.
- JÍROVEC, O. 1936 Studien über Microsporidien. Mem. Soc. Zool. Tchécoslovaque de Prague. Vol. 4.
- KEILIN, D. 1921 On the life-history of *Helicosporidium parasiticum*. Parasitology, Vol. 13.
- KUDO, R. R. 1924 A biologic and taxonomic study of the Microsporidia. Illinois Biol. Monogr., Vol. 9.
- 1942 On the microsporidian, *Duboscqia legeri* Pérez 1908, parasitic in *Reticulitermes flavipes*. Jour. Morph., Vol. 71.
- 1944 The morphology and development of *Nosema notabilis* Kudo, and of its host, *Sphaerospora polymorpha* Davis, parasitic in *Opsanus tau* and *O. beta*. Illinois Biol. Monogr., Vol. 20.
- SCHRADER, F. 1921 A microsporidian occurring in the smelt. Jour. Parasit., Vol. 7.

CHAPTER 30

Subphylum 2 Ciliophora Doflein

THE Ciliophora possess cilia which serve as cell-organs of locomotion. In Suctoria the cilia are present only during early developmental stages. The members of this subphylum possess a unique organization not seen in the Plasmodroma; namely, except Proto-ciliata, the Ciliophora contain two kinds of nuclei: the macronucleus and the micronucleus. The former is large and massive, and controls the metabolic activities of the organism, while the latter is minute and usually vesicular or less compact, and is concerned with the reproductive processes. Nutrition is holozoic or parasitic; holophytic in *Cyclotrichium meunieri* (p. 565). Sexual reproduction is mainly by conjugation, and asexual reproduction is by binary fission or budding. The majority are free-living, but a number of parasitic forms also occur.

The Ciliophora are divided into two classes:

Cilia present throughout trophic life Class 1 Ciliata
Adult with tentacles; cilia only while young. . Class 2 Suctoria (p. 695)

Class 1 Ciliata Perty

The class Ciliata includes Protozoa of various habitats and body structures, though all possess cilia or cirri during the trophic stage. They inhabit all sorts of fresh and salt water bodies by free-swimming, creeping, or being attached to other objects; some are parasitic in other animals. Free-swimming forms are usually spherical to elliptical, while the creeping forms are, as a rule, flattened or compressed.

The cilia are extremely fine, comparatively short, and as a rule arranged in rows (p. 48). In some forms they diminish in number and are replaced by cirri (p. 50). The cilia are primarily cell-organs of locomotion, but secondarily through their movements bring the food matter into the cytostome. Moreover, certain cilia appear to be tactile organellae. The food of free-living ciliates consists of small plant and animal organisms which ordinarily abound in the water; thus their nutrition is holozoic. The ciliates vary in size from less than 10μ up to 2 mm. in large forms (as in an extended Spirostemum or Stentor). The cytoplasm is distinctly differentiated into the ectoplasm and the endoplasm. The ectoplasm gives rise to the cilia and trichocysts and is covered by a pellicle. The endoplasm contains nuclei.

food vacuoles, contractile vacuoles, pigment granules, crystals, etc. In the majority of ciliates, the anterior and posterior extremities are permanent and distinct; in all cytostome-possessing forms, the oral and aboral surfaces are distinguishable, while in numerous creeping forms the dorsal and ventral sides are differentiated.

The body is covered by a very thin yet definite membrane, the pellicle, which is ordinarily uniformly thin and covers the entire body surface so closely that it is not recognizable in life. In some forms, such as *Coleps*, it develops into numerous platelets and in others, such as *Trichodina*, into hook-like processes. The outer half of the ectoplasm may show alveolar structure which, in section, exhibits radiating and parallel lines. In this portion the myonemes (p. 53) are lodged. The deeper layer of the ectoplasm is structureless and free from granules. In the ectoplasm are embedded the basal granules of cilia, which are arranged in longitudinal, oblique, or spiral rows. In recent years complex fibrillar systems have been recognized in many ciliates (p. 54-61). The cilia may fuse to form cirri, membranellae, and undulating membranes (p. 50) which occur in certain groups. In many euciliates contractile vacuoles with one to several collecting canals are one of the prominent structures. The endoplasm is more fluid and the ground substance is finely granulated or reticulated; it undergoes rotation movement or cyclosis.

Two types of nuclei are present in all euciliates. The massive macronucleus is of various forms. The chromatin granules which may reach 20μ in diameter (p. 36) fill compactly the intranuclear space. The macronucleus multiplies by amitosis. The micronucleus is ordinarily so minute that it is difficult to see in a living specimen. It is vesicular in structure, although in some it appears to be compact, and consists of an endosome, the chromatin, the nucleoplasm, and the membrane. The number of micronuclei present in an individual varies among different species. At the time of reproduction it increases in size and divides mitotically; during conjugation it undergoes a characteristic meiotic division (p. 165).

The protociliates possess from two to many nuclei of a uniformly same structure and numerous ovoid or spindle-shaped bodies, endospherules, the nature of which is open to speculation. Some authors think that they are nuclei (micronuclei (after Hickson) or macronuclei (after Konsuloff)); others consider them as reserve food materials (Patten). Metcalf considers that each nucleus possesses both metabolic chromatin and reproductive chromatin, the former being seen as large flattened peripheral masses and the latter, as smaller spheroidal granules.

In all except protociliates and a comparatively small number of astomatous euciliates, there is a cytostome which in its simplest form is represented by a small opening on the pellicle, and may or may not be closed when the animal is not feeding. The cytostome opens into the cytopharynx (or gullet), a canal which ends in the deeper portion of the endoplasm. In the cytopharynx there may be present one or more undulating membranes to facilitate intaking of the food. Occasionally the cytostome is surrounded by trichites or trichocysts (p. 62). When the cytostome is not at the anterior region as, for instance, in *Paramecium*, there is a peristome (or oral groove) which starts at or near the anterior end and runs posteriorly. The peristome is ciliated so that food particles are thrown down along it and ultimately into the cytostome which is located at its posterior end. Solid waste particles are extruded from the cytopyge, or cell-anus, which is usually noticeable only at the time of actual defecation (p. 92).

Following Metcalf, Ciliata are here divided into 2 subclasses:

Two to many nuclei of one kind; sexual reproduction permanent fusion . . .	Subclass 1 Protociliata
Macronucleus and micronucleus; sexual reproduction conjugation	Subclass 2 Euciliata (p. 551)

Subclass 1 **Protociliata** Metcalf

The protociliates are almost exclusively inhabitants of the large intestine of Salientia; only a few species have been reported from urodeles, reptiles, and fish (Metcalf, 1923, 1940). The body is covered uniformly by cilia of equal length. There is no cytostome and the nutrition is parasitic (saprozoic). The number of nuclei varies from two to many, all of which are of one type. Asexual reproduction is by binary fission or plasmotomy. In a number of species sexual fusion of 2 gametes has been observed (Fig. 263, *a-d*). Encystment is common. One family.

Family **Opalinidae** Claus

Genus **Opalina** Purkinje and Valentin. Highly flattened; multinucleate; in amphibians. Numerous species.

O. hylaxena Metcalf (Fig. 262, *a*). In *Hyla versicolor*; larger individuals about 420 μ long, 125 μ wide, 28 μ thick. Several subspecies (Metcalf).

O. obtrigonoidea M. (Fig. 262, *b-f*). 400–840 μ long, 175–180 μ wide, 20–25 μ thick; in various species of frogs and toads (*Rana*, *Hyla*, *Bufo*, *Gastrophryne*, etc.), North America. Numerous subspecies (Metcalf).

O. carolinensis M. 90–400 μ by 32–170 μ ; in *Rana pipiens sphenoccephala*.

O. pickeringii M. 200–333 μ by 68–100 μ ; in *Hyla pickeringii*.

O. oregonensis M. 526 μ by 123 μ ; in *Hyla regilla*.

O. spiralis M. 300–355 μ long, 130–140 μ wide, 25–42 μ thick; in *Bufo compactilis*.

O. chorophili M. About 470 μ by 100 μ ; in *Chorophilus triseriatus*.

O. kennicotii M. About 240 μ by 85 μ ; in *Rana arcolata*.

FIG. 262. a, Three individuals of *Opalinea hylaxena*, $\times 230$; b–f, *O. obtrigonoidea*, $\times 60$ (b, c, from *Bufo fowleri*; d–f, from *Rana pipiens*); g, *Cepedea cantabrigensis*, $\times 230$; h, *Zelleriella scaphiopodos*, $\times 230$. (Metcalf.)

Genus **Cepedea** Metcalf. Cylindrical or pyriform; circular in cross-section; multinucleate; all in Amphibia. Numerous species.

C. cantabrigensis M. (Fig. 262, g). About 350 μ by 84 μ ; in *Rana cantabrigensis*.

C. hawaiiensis M. 170–200 μ by 43–60 μ ; in *Rana catesbeiana*; Hawaii.

C. obovoidea M. About 315 μ by 98 μ ; in *Bufo lentiginosus*.

C. floridensis M. About 230 μ by 89 μ ; in *Scaphiopus albus*.

Genus **Protoopalina** Metcalf. Cylindrical or spindle-shaped, circular in cross-section; 2 nuclei; in the colon of various species of Amphibia with one exception. Numerous species.

P. intestinalis (Stein) (Fig. 263, a-d). About 330μ by 68μ ; in *Bombina bombina*, and *B. pachypa*; Europe.

FIG. 263. a-d, stages in sexual reproduction in *Protoopalina intestinalis* (Metcalf); e, f, *P. saturnalis*, $\times 500$ (Léger and Duboscq); g, *P. mitotica*. $\times 380$ (Metcalf).

P. saturnalis Léger and Duboscq (Fig. 263, e, f). In the marine fish, *Box boops*; $100-152\mu$ by $22-60\mu$.

P. mitotica (M) (Fig. 263, g). 300μ by 37μ ; in *Ambystoma tigrinum*.

Genus *Zelleriella* Metcalf. Greatly flattened; 2 similar nuclei; all in Amphibia. Numerous species.

Z. scaphiopodos M. (Fig. 262, h). In *Scaphiopus solitarius*; about 150 μ long, 90 μ broad, 13 μ thick.

Z. antilliensis (M). About 180 μ long, 113 μ wide, 32 μ thick; in *Bufo marinus*.

Z. hirsuta M. About 113 μ long, 60 μ wide, 22 μ thick; in *Bufo cognatus*.

Z. intermedia M. (Fig. 64). About 94 μ by 50 μ by 16 μ ; in *Bufo intermedicus* and *B. valliceps*.

References

- BÜTSCHLI, O. 1887-1889 *Protozoa*. In: Bronn's *Klassen und Ordnungen des Thier-reichs*. Vol. 1.
- DOFLEIN, F. and E. REICHENOW 1929 *Lehrbuch der Protozoenkunde*. Jena.
- KAHL, A. 1930-1935 *Urtiere oder Protozoa I: Wimpertiere oder Ciliata (Infusoria)*. In Dahl: *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands und der angrenzenden Meeresteile nach ihren Merkmalen und nach ihrer Lebensweise*. Parts 18, 21, 25, 30.
- KENT, W. S. 1880 to 1882 *A manual of Infusoria*.
- STEIN, F. 1867 *Der Organismus der Infusionsthiere*. Vol. 2.
- STOKES, A. C. 1888 A preliminary contribution toward a history of the fresh-water Infusoria of the United States. Jour. Trenton. Natural Hist. Soc., Vol. 1.
-
- METCALF, M. M. 1923 The opalinid ciliate infusorians. Smithsonian Inst. U. S. Nat. Museum, Bull., No. 120.
- 1940 Further studies on the opalinid ciliate infusorians and their hosts. Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus., Vol. 87.

CHAPTER 31

Subclass 2 **Euciliata** Metcalf

THE most conspicuous group of Protozoa containing 2 nuclei; macronucleus and micronucleus. Sexual reproduction is through conjugation. We owe Kahl a great deal for his series of comprehensive taxonomic studies of free-living ciliates. The euciliates are grouped under the following four orders:

- Without adoral zone of membranellae.....Order 1 Holotricha
- With adoral zone of membranellae
 - Adoral zone winds clockwise to cytostome
 - Peristome not extending beyond general body surface.....
 -Order 2 Spirotricha (p. 636)
 - Peristome extending out like funnel....Order 3 Chonotricha (p. 681)
 - Adoral zone winds counter-clockwise to cytostome.....
 -Order 4 Peritricha (p. 683)

Order 1 **Holotricha** Stein

The members of this order show uniform ciliation over the entire body surface. Adoral zone does not occur. The majority possess a cytostome which varies among different forms. Nutrition is holozoic or saprozoic. Asexual reproduction is usually by transverse fission and sexual reproduction by conjugation. Encystment is common. The holotrichous ciliates are conspicuous free-living forms in all sorts of fresh, brackish, and salt waters, though some are parasitic.

The order is here divided into 6 suborders:

- Without cytostome.....Suborder 1 Astomata (p. 552)
- With cytostome
 - Cytostome not rosette-like
 - Without special thigmotactic ciliated field
 - Cytostome on body surface or in peristome, without strong cilia..
 -Suborder 2 Gymnostomata (p. 560)
 - Cystome in peristome, bearing special cilia or membranes
 - Peristome lined with rows of free cilia.....
 -Suborder 3 Trichostomata (p. 593)
 - Peristome with membrane; with or without free cilia.....
 -Suborder 4 Hymenostomata (p. 608)
 - With well-developed thigmotactic ciliated field; commensals in mussels.....Suborder 5 Thigmotricha (p. 623)
 - Cytostome small rosette-like aperture or obscure; parasitic.....
 -Suborder 6 Apostomea (p. 630)

Suborder 1 **Astomata** Schewiakoff

The ciliates placed in this suborder possess no cytostome, although there may occur a slit-like organella which has been looked upon as a vestigial cytostome. The body ciliation is usually uniform. Asexual division is carried on by transverse fission and often by budding which results in chain formation. Sexual reproduction is conjugation and in some encystment is known. These organisms are parasitic in various invertebrates living in fresh or salt water.

Without attaching organellae or skeletal structures

Macronucleus round to elongate.....Family 1 Anoplophryidae

Macronucleus irregular network.....Family 2 Opalinopsidae (p. 555)

With attaching organellae or skeletal structures

Contractile vacuole, a long dorsal canal; usually with a sucking organella.....Family 3 Haptophryidae (p. 555)

Contractile vacuoles not canal-like; with various attaching organellae or skeletal structures.....Family 4 Intoshellinidae (p. 557)

Family 1 **Anoplophryidae** Cépède

Genus **Anoplophrya** Stein (*Collinia* Cépède). Oval, elongate, ellipsoid or cylindrical; macronucleus ovoid to cylindrical; micronucleus small; one to several contractile vacuoles; ciliation dense and uniform; in coelom and gut of Annelida and Crustacea. Numerous species.

A. marylandensis Conklin (Fig. 264, *a*). 36–72 μ by 16–42 μ ; in the intestine of *Lumbricus terrestris* and *Helodrilus caliginosus*; Baltimore, Maryland.

A. orchestii Summers and Kidder (Fig. 264, *b*). Polymorphic according to size; pyriform to broadly ovoid; 7–45 ciliary rows meridional, unequally spaced, and more on one surface; macronucleus voluminous, a compact micronucleus; body 6–68 μ long; in the sand-flea, *Orchestia agilis*; Woods Hole, Massachusetts. Summers and Kidder (1936) made careful observation on its conjugation and reorganization.

Genus **Rhizocaryum** Caullery and Mesnil. With hollowed ventral surface which serves for attachment; macronucleus drawn out like a tree-root. One species.

R. concavum C. and M. (Fig. 264, *c*). In the gut of *Polydora caeca* and *P. flava* (polychaetes).

Genus **Metaphrya** Ikeda. Pyriform, anterior end bent slightly to one side; 12 longitudinal ciliary furrows; below ectoplasm, a layer of refringent materials; endoplasm sparse; macronucleus bas-

FIG. 264. a, *Anoplophrya marylandensis*, $\times 500$ (Conklin); b, *A. orchestii*, $\times 500$ (Summers and Kidder); c, *Rhizocaryum concavum*, $\times 670$ (Cépède); d, *Metaphrya sagittae*, $\times 120$ (Ikeda); e, *Perezella pelagica*, $\times 340$ (Cépède); f, *Dogielella sphaerii*, $\times 470$ (Poljansky); g, *D. minuta*, $\times 670$ (Poljansky); h, *D. virginia*, $\times 670$ (Kepner and Carroll); i, *Orchitophrya stellarum*, $\times 870$ (Cépède); j, *Kofoideella eleutheriae*, $\times 270$ (Cépède); k, *Bütschliella opheliae*, $\times 350$ (Cépède); l. m, *Protophrya ovicola* (m, a young *Littorina rudis* with the ciliate), $\times 80$ (Cépède).

ket-like, large, with a spacious hollow; a micronucleus; no contractile vacuoles. One species.

M. sagittae I. (Fig. 264, *d*). About 250μ by 130μ ; in the body cavity of *Sagitta* sp.

Genus **Perezella** Cépède. Ovoid; ventral surface concave, serves for attachment; macronucleus ellipsoid; contractile vacuole terminal; longitudinally, uniformly, ciliated. A few species.

P. pelagica C. (Fig. 264, *e*). In the coelom of copepods (*Ascartia*, *Clausia*, *Paracalanus*); about 48μ long.

Genus **Dogielella** Poljansky. Pyriform; longitudinal ciliary rows; contractile vacuole terminal; macronucleus spherical, with a spherical or elliptical micronucleus; in the parenchyma of flatworms or molluscs. 3 species.

D. sphaerii P. (Fig. 264, *f*). $40\text{--}100\mu$ by $25\text{--}54\mu$; in *Sphaerium corneum*.

D. minuta P. (Fig. 264, *g*). $12\text{--}28\mu$ by up to 20μ ; in *Stenostomum leucops* (Platyhelminthes).

D. virginia (Kepner and Carroll) (Fig. 264, *h*). $40\text{--}50\mu$ long; in the same host animal; Virginia.

Genus **Orchitophrya** Cépède. Elongate pyriform; ciliary rows oblique; macronucleus spherical, central. One species.

O. stellarum C. (Fig. 264, *i*). In gonads of the echinoderm, *Asteracanthion* (*Asterias*) *rubens*; $35\text{--}65\mu$ long.

Genus **Kofoidella** Cépède. Pyriform; macronucleus broadly oval; contractile vacuole, subterminal. One species.

K. eleutheriae C. (Fig. 264, *j*). In gastrovascular cavity of the medusa, *Eleutheria dichotoma*; $30\text{--}80\mu$ long.

Genus **Herpetophrya** Siedlecki. Ovoid; with a pointed, mobile, tactile, non-ciliated cone; macronucleus globular; without contractile vacuole. One species.

H. astomata S. In coelom of *Polymnia* (annelid).

Genus **Bütschliella** Awerinzew. Elongate with pointed anterior end, with non-ciliated retractile anterior cap; cilia in about 10 slightly spiral rows; macronucleus band-form; several contractile vacuoles in a longitudinal row. Several species.

B. opheliae A. (Fig. 264, *k*). In *Ophelia limacina*; $280\text{--}360\mu$ by $35\text{--}50\mu$.

B. chaetogastri Penard. Elongate lanceolate, slightly flattened; longitudinal rows of long cilia; cytoplasm colorless; macronucleus elongate; micronucleus voluminous, vesicular; without contractile vacuole; $60\text{--}120\mu$ long; in the oesophagus of *Chaetogaster* sp.

Genus **Cepedella** Poyarkoff. Pyriform with pointed anterior end,

where there is a depression for fixation of body, with longitudinal myonemes; macronucleus globular; without contractile vacuole. One species.

C. hepatica P. 16–26 μ long; intracellular parasite of the liver of the mollusc, *Sphaerium corneum*.

Genus **Protophrya** Kofoid (*Isselina* Cépède). Ellipsoid to pyriform; spheroidal macronucleus; contractile vacuole terminal. 2 species.

P. ovicola K. (Fig. 264, l, m). About 60 μ long; in the uterus of the mollusc, *Littorina rudis*.

Genus **Protanoplophrya** Miyashita. Similar to *Anoplophrya*; but with rudimentary oral apparatus, a long slit, an undulating membrane and cytopharynx in anterior region of body; macronucleus elongate band; numerous contractile vacuoles. One species.

P. stomata Miyashita (Fig. 265, a). Cylindrical; up to 1.5 mm. by about 70 μ ; in hind-gut of *Viviparus japonicus* and *V. malleatus*.

Family 2 Opalinopsidae Hartog

Genus **Opalinopsis** Foettinger. Oval or ellipsoid; macronucleus fragmented; ciliation uniform and close; parasite in the liver of cephalopods. A few species.

O. sepiolae F. (Fig. 265, b). 40–80 μ long; in the liver of *Sepiola rondelii* and *Octopus tetracirrhus*.

Genus **Chromidina** Gonder (*Benedenia* Foettinger). Elongate; anterior region broader, ends pointed; uniform ciliation; macronucleus in irregular network distributed throughout body; micronucleus obscure; budding and encystment; Cheissin holds that this is identical with *Opalinopsis*. One species.

C. elegans (Foettinger) (Fig. 265, c, d). 500–1500 μ by about 30–60 μ in kidney and gonad of cephalopods: *Sepia elegans*, *Loligo* sp., etc.

Family 3 Haptophryidae Cépède

Genus **Haptophrya** Stein. Elongate; uniformly ciliated; anterior end with a neck-like constriction; a circular sucker surrounded by 1–2 rows of cilia. A few species.

H. michiganensis Woodhead (Fig. 265, e). 1.1–1.6 mm. long; in the gut of the four-toed salamander, *Hemidactylium scutatum*; Michigan. MacLennan (1944) made a careful study of its contractile canal (p. 76).

H. virginensis Meyer. 354 μ by 95 μ ; macronucleus about one-third of the body length; in the intestine of *Rana palustris*.

Genus **Steinella** Cépède. Anterior end broad; sucker-like depression without encircling cilia, but with 2 chitinous hooks. One species.

S. uncinata (Schultze). Up to 200μ long; in gastrovascular cavity of *Planaria ulvae*, *Gunda segmentata* and *Proceros* sp.

Genus **Lachmannella** Cépède. With a chitinous hook at anterior end; elongate pyriform, anterior end curved; ciliation longitudinal and dense. One species.

FIG. 265. a, *Protanoplophrya stomata*, $\times 100$ (Miyashita); b, *Opalinopsis sepiolae*, $\times 670$ (Gonder); c, d, *Chromidina elegans* (c, $\times 330$ (Chatton and Lwoff); d, $\times 220$ (Wermel)); e, *Haptophrya michiganensis*, $\times 35$ (Woodhead); f, *Lachmannella recurva*, $\times 100$ (Cépède); g, *Sieboldiellina planarium*, $\times 100$ (Cépède); h, i, *Intoshellina poljanskyi* (h, $\times 300$; i, attaching organella seen from ventral side, $\times 870$) (Cheissin); j, k, *Monodontophrya kijenskiyi* (j, $\times 100$; k, anterior end in profile, $\times 870$) (Cheissin).

L. recurva (Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 265, f). In the gastrovascular cavity of *Planaria limacina*; about 200μ long.

Genus **Sieboldiellina** Collin Vermiform, with neck-like constriction; simple sucker at anterior end. One species.

S. planariarum (Siebold) (Fig. 265, *g*). Up to 700μ long; in gastro-vascular cavity of various fresh- and salt-water turbellarians, most frequently *Planaria torva*.

Family 4 Intoshellinidae Cépède

Genus **Intoshellina** Cépède. Elongate; ciliary rows slightly spiral; macronucleus voluminous, highly elongate; 5–7 contractile vacuoles scattered in posterior region; a complicated attaching organella at anterior end (Fig. 265, *i*); vestigial cytopharynx.

I. poljanskiji Cheissin (Fig. 265, *h, i*). $170\text{--}280\mu$ long; in the intestine of *Limnodrilus arenarius*.

Genus **Monodontophrya** Vejdowsky. Elongate; anterior end with thick ectoplasm; attaching organella at anterior end, with fibrils; macronucleus elongate; numerous contractile vacuoles in a longitudinal row.

M. kijenskiji Cheissin (Fig. 265, *j, k*). $400\text{--}800\mu$ long; in anterior portion of intestine of *Tubifex inflatus*.

Genus **Maupasella** Cépède. Ellipsoid; close longitudinal ciliary rows; with a spinous attaching organella at anterior end, with fibrils; contractile vacuoles in 2 irregular rows; macronucleus elongate. One species.

M. nova C. (Fig. 266, *a*). $70\text{--}130\mu$ long; in the intestine of *Allolobophora caliginosa* (annelid).

Genus **Schultzellina** Cépède. Similar to *Maupasella*; but with attaching organella set obliquely; macronucleus voluminous, reniform.

S. mucronata C. (Fig. 266, *b*). In the intestine of *Allurus tetraedurus* (annelid).

Genus **Hoplitophrya** Stein. Slender, elongate; elongated macronucleus; a micronucleus; a single longitudinal row of many contractile vacuoles on the dorsal side; a single median spicule with a small pointed tooth at its anterior end; in the intestine of oligochaetes. Several species.

H. secans S. Elongated; $160\text{--}500\mu$ by $20\text{--}35\mu$; 15–30 contractile vacuoles in a row; spicule $10\text{--}15\mu$ long; in the intestine of *Lumbricus variegatus*.

Genus **Radiophrya** Rossolimo. Elongate, often with satellites; attaching organella composed of an arrowhead, a tooth and ectoplasmic fibrils; macronucleus a narrow long band; a single row of many small contractile vacuoles, close to the nucleus. Many species.

R. hoplites R. (Fig. 266, d, e). 100–1000 μ long; in the intestine of *Lamprodrilus*, *Telescolex*, *Styloscolex*, and other oligochaetes.

Genus **Metaradiophrya** Heidenreich. Ovoid to ellipsoid; with 2 lateral rows of contractile vacuoles; with a hook attached to a long shaft; ectoplasmic fibers supporting the hook; in the intestine of oligochaetes. Several species.

FIG. 266. a, *Maupasella nova*, $\times 280$ (Cépède); b, *Schultzellina mucronata*, $\times 670$ (Cépède); c, *Metaradiophrya lumbrici*, $\times 140$ (Cépède); d, e, *Radiophrya hoplites* (d, $\times 130$; e, anterior end in profile, $\times 300$) (Cheissin); f, *Protoradiophrya fissispiculata*, $\times 330$ (Cheissin); g, *Mrazekiella intermedia*, $\times 210$ (Cheissin); h, *Mesnillella rostrata*, $\times 470$ (Cheissin); i, *M. clavata*, $\times 290$ (Penard).

M. lumbrici (Dujardin) (Fig. 266, c). 120–140 μ by 60–70 μ ; in the intestine of *Lumbricus terrestris*, *L. rubellus* and *Eisenia foetida*.

M. asymmetrica Beers. 115–150 μ by 55–70 μ ; hook 10 μ long; shaft 25–30 μ by 2 μ in antero-lateral margin in ectoplasm; 25–30 supporting fibrils; 2 rows of 4 vacuoles each, which do not contract regularly in vitro; in the intestine (middle third) of *Eisenia lönnbergi*.

Genus **Protoradiophrya** Rossolimo. Elongate; near anterior end a shallow depression along which is found a spicule which may be split posteriorly. A few species.

P. fissispiculata Cheissin (Fig. 266, f). 180–350 μ long; in the anterior portion of intestine of *Styloscolex* sp.

Genus **Mrazekiella** Kijenskij. Elongate; anterior portion broad with sucker-like depression, posterior region cylindrical; anterior end with attaching organella composed of arrowhead and skeletal ribs; macronucleus an elongate band; contractile vacuoles distributed. A few species.

M. intermedia Cheissin (Fig. 266, g). 180–260 μ long; in the anterior portion of intestine of *Branchiura coccinea*.

Genus **Mesnilella** Cépède. Elongate; with one or more long spicules imbedded in endoplasm; contractile vacuoles in 1–2 rows. Numerous species.

M. rostrata Rossolimo (Fig. 266, h). 100–1200 μ long; in the intestine of various oligochaetes (*Styloscolex*, *Teleuscolex*, *Lamprodrilus*, *Agriodrillus*, etc.).

M. clavata (Leidy) (Fig. 266, i). 100–200 μ long; in the intestine of *Lumbricus variegatus*.

References

- BEERS, C. D. 1938 Structure and division in the astomatous ciliate *Metaradiophrya asymmetrica* n. sp. Jour. E. Mitchell Sci. Soc., Vol. 54.
- CÉPÈDE, C. 1910 Recherches sur les Infusoires astomes. Arch. zool. exp., Vol. 3 (ser. 5).
- CHEISSIN, E. 1930 Morphologie und systematische Studien über Astomata aus dem Baikalsee. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 70.
- HEIDENREICH, E. 1935 Untersuchungen an parasitischen Ciliaten aus Anneliden. I, II. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 84.
- MACLENNAN, R. F. 1944 The pulsatory cycle of the contractile canal in the ciliate Haptophrya. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 63.
- ROSSOLIMO, L. L. 1926 Parasitische Infusorien aus dem Baikalsee. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 54.

CHAPTER 32

Order 1 Holotricha Stein (continued)

Suborder 2 Gymnostomata Bütschli

Cytostome at or near anterior end Tribe 1 Prostomata

Cytostome not at or near anterior end

Cytostome lateral, narrow or round . . . Tribe 2 Pleurostomata (p. 580)

Cytostome ventral, in anterior half . . . Tribe 3 Hypostomata (p. 585)

Tribe 1 Prostomata Schewiakoff

Free-living

Cytostomal region compressed; bearing trichites

. Family 1 Spathidiidae

Cytostomal region not compressed

Cytostome opens into anterior receptaculum; with lorica

. Family 2 Metacystidae (p. 563)

Cytostome at tip of apical cone Family 3 Didiniidae (p. 563)

Cytostome otherwise

Body covered with regularly arranged, perforated, ectoplasmic plates Family 4 Colepidae (p. 565)

Body not covered with plates

With radially arranged tentacles

. Family 5 Actinobolinidae (p. 566)

Without tentacles Family 6 Holophryidae (p. 567)

Parasitic in mammalian gut Family 7 Bütschliidae (p. 576)

Family 1 Spathidiidae Kahl

Genus **Spathidium** Dujardin. Flask- or sack-shaped; compressed; anterior region slightly narrowed into a neck, and truncate; ciliation uniform; cytostome occupies whole anterior end; contractile vacuole posterior; macronucleus elongate; several micronuclei; trichocysts around cytostome and scattered throughout; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

S. spathula Müller (Figs. 21; 267, *a*, *b*). Up to 250 μ long; fresh water. Woodruff and Spencer (1922) made a careful study of the organism.

Genus **Paraspathidium** Noland. Form resembles that of *Spathidium*; but cytostome an elongate slit, bordered on one side by strong cilia and on the other by weaker cilia and a shelf-like, nonundulatory membrane; 2 longer cilia on dorsal edge near anterior tip; anterior 1/3 compressed; posterior 2/3 nearly cylindrical; 2 oval macronuclei, each with a micronucleus; cytoplasm filled with numerous refractile granules; about 70 rows of cilia; contractile vacuole terminal; salt water. One species.

P. trichostomum N. (Fig. 267, c-e). About 220μ long; macronuclei 44μ long each; salt water; Florida.

Genus **Spathidioides** Brodsky (*Spathidiella* Kahl). Somewhat similar to *Spathidium*; but oral ridge highly flattened on ventral side and conspicuously developed into a wart-like swelling on dorsal side; this knob contains trichocysts; sapropelic.

FIG. 267. a, b, *Spathidium spathula*, $\times 200$ (Woodruff and Spencer); c-e, *Paraspathidium trichostomum* (c, $\times 130$; d, cytostomal region $\times 400$; e, part of pellicle, $\times 1000$) (Noland); f, *Spathidioides sulcata*, $\times 260$ (Brodsky); g, *Enchelydium fusidens*, $\times 240$ (Kahl); h, *Homalozoon vermiculare*, $\times 80$ (Stokes); i, *Cranotheridium taeniatum*, $\times 300$ (Schewiakoff); j, *Penardiella crassa*, $\times 210$ (Kahl); k, *Perispira strephosoma*, $\times 280$ (Kahl); l, *Legendrea bellerophon*, $\times 190$ (Penard).

S. sulcata B. (Fig. 267, f). $65-85\mu$ long; posterior end pointed, highly flattened; anterior end elevated at one side where cytostome and cytopharynx with 10 rods are located.

Genus **Enchelydium** Kahl. Somewhat similar to *Spathidium*; but oral ridge forms a swollen ring with trichocysts; the ridge circular or elongated in cross-section; when swimming, the organisms appear as if cytostome is opened; with dorsal bristle; fresh water.

E. fusidens K. (Fig. 267, *g*). Cylindrical, contractile; cilia dense and rather long; macronucleus reniform, often appears as composed of 2 spherical parts; contractile vacuole terminal; oral ring with spindle-like trichocysts; food vacuoles not seen; extended body 110 μ long; contracted 75 μ ; sapropelic.

Genus **Homalozoon** Stokes. Elongate; cilia conspicuous on flattened right side; left side swollen or keeled; fresh water.

H. vermiculare (S.) (Fig. 267, *h*). Extended body 450–850 μ long; vermiform; macronucleus band form; contractile vacuoles about 30 or more in a row; standing fresh water.

Genus **Cranotheridium** Schewiakoff. Spathidium-like organisms; anterior end obliquely truncate, near the extended side of which is located the cytostome; cytopharynx surrounded by a group of trichites; fresh water.

C. taeniatum S. (Fig. 267, *i*). Anterior end flattened; with a group of trichites; macronucleus long band-form; with many micronuclei; contractile vacuole terminal; ciliation and striation close; colorless; movement slow; about 170 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Penardiella** Kahl. Ellipsoid, somewhat compressed; oral ridge slightly oblique; a girdle with trichocysts encircling the body; fresh water.

P. crassa (Penard) (Fig. 267, *j*). Elongate ellipsoid, flattened; trichocysts in posterior portion of girdle are longer and those in the dorsal region are fewer in number and shorter; macronucleus sausage-form; contractile vacuole posterior, in front of the girdle; body 160 μ by 50 μ ; sapropelic.

Genus **Perispira** Stein. Ovoid or cylindrical; oral ridge turns right-spirally down to posterior end.

P. strephosoma Stokes (Fig. 267, *k*). Oval to cylindrical; about 85 μ long; standing water with sphagnum.

Genus **Legendrea** Fauré-Fremiet. Ellipsoid or ovoid; a peripheral zone with small tentacular processes bearing trichocysts.

L. bellerophon Penard (Fig. 267, *l*). 100–180 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Teuthophrys** Chatton and Beauchamp. Body rounded posteriorly, anterior end with 3 radially equidistant, spirally curved arms (counter-clockwise when viewed from posterior end); the depressions between arms form furrows; cytostome apical, at the inner bases of arms; contractile vacuole terminal; ciliation uniform, except the inner surfaces of arms where longer cilia as well as trichocysts are present; with zoochlorellae; macronucleus rope-shaped and wound; micronucleus unobserved. One species.

T. trisula C and B. (Fig. 268, *a*). 150–300 μ long; length: width 3:1–2:1; ponds in Pennsylvania and California (Wenrich).

Family 2 Metacystidae Kahl

Genus **Metacystis** Cohn. Oblong; ciliation general, except posterior end; ciliary circle around cytostome; usually one caudal cilium; with a large posterior vesicle containing turbid fluid.

M. truncata C. (Fig. 268, *b*). Elongate, not much difference in body width at different levels; with about 12 furrow rings; body length up to 30 μ ; salt water.

Genus **Vasicola** Tatem (*Pelamphora* Lauterborn). Ovoid with caudal cilia; lorica flask-shape, highly ringed; cytostome at anterior end, its lip with 4 rows of long cilia; body surface with shorter cilia; macronucleus round, central, with a micronucleus; contractile vacuole near macronucleus; fresh or salt water.

V. ciliata T. (*Pelamphora bütschlii* L.) (Fig. 268, *c*). Body about 100 μ long; sapropelic in fresh water.

Genus **Pelatractus** Kahl. Somewhat similar to *Vasicola*; but without lorica or caudal cilia; with a terminal vacuole; without lip of *Vasicola*; sapropelic.

P. (Vasicola) grandis (Penard) (Fig. 268, *d*). Free-swimming; elongated fusiform; numerous contractile vacuoles on one side; body 125–220 μ long; sapropelic in fresh water.

Family 3 Didiniidae Poche

Genus **Didinium** Stein (*Monodinium* Fabre-Domergue). Barrel-shaped; one to several girdles of cilia (pectinellae); expansible cytostome at tip of cone-like elevation at anterior end, containing long fibrils; macronucleus horseshoe-shaped; contractile vacuole posterior; feeds on other ciliates; fresh or salt water. Several species.

D. nasutum (Müller) (Fig. 268, *e–g*). 80–200 μ long; endoplasm highly granulated; with 2 girdles of pectinellae; feeds on Paramecium; fresh water.

D. balbianii (Fabre-Domergue) (Fig. 268, *h*). 60–100 μ long; a single girdle of pectinellae near anterior end; fresh water.

Genus **Mesodinium** Stein. Ovoid; an equatorial furrow marks conical anterior and spherical posterior parts; in the furrow are inserted 2 (or 1) rings of strong cilia; one directed anteriorly and the other posteriorly; with tentacle-like retractile processes around the cytostome; fresh and salt water.

M. pulex (Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 268, *i-k*). Oral tentacles with trifurcate tips; body 20–31 μ long; salt water; Florida. Noland states that the freshwater forms are 21–38 μ long.

FIG. 268. a, *Teuthophrys trisula*, $\times 330$ (Wenrich); b, *Metacystis truncata*, $\times 270$ (Cohn); c, *Vasicola ciliata*, $\times 250$ (Kahl); d, *Pelatractus grandis*, $\times 170$ (Penard); e–g, *Didinium nasutum*, $\times 170$ (Kudo); h, *D. balbianii*, $\times 290$ (Bütschli); i–k, *Mesodinium pulex* (i, $\times 670$; j, oral view; k, oral tentacles, $\times 1330$) (Noland); l, m, *M. acarus* (l, $\times 670$; m, oral tentacles, $\times 1330$) (Noland); n, *Askenasia faurei*, $\times 530$ (Fauré-Fremiet); o, *Cyclotrichium meunieri*, $\times 780$ (Powers).

M. acarus Stein (Fig. 268, *l, m*). Oral tentacles with capitate tip; 10–16 μ long; salt water, Florida (Noland).

Genus *Askenasia* Blochmann. Resembles *Didinium*; ovoid; with

2 closely arranged rings of long cilia; anterior ring made up of some 60 pectinelles which are directed anteriorly; posterior ring composed of about the same number of long cilia directed posteriorly and arranged parallel to body surface; fresh or salt water.

A. faurei Kahl (Fig. 268, *n*). Body oval, anterior end broadly rounded; posterior region conical; pectinelles about 13μ long; the second band (10μ) of long cilia; an ellipsoid macronucleus; a micronucleus; body about $58-60\mu$ long; fresh water.

Genus **Cyclotrichium** Meunier. Body spheroid to ellipsoid with a large non-ciliated oral field which is surrounded by a pectinelle-ring, the remaining part naked or slightly ciliated; macronucleus sausage-form; cytopharynx not recognized; endoplasm highly vacuolated; in marine plankton.

C. meunieri Powers (Fig. 268, *o*). Anterior end broadly rounded; posterior region conical; cytostome obscure; oral funnel at anterior end in a depression; broad ciliated band at about middle; ectoplasm with concave chromatophore (covered with haematochrome) plates on surface, below which numerous pyrenoids occur in vacuoles; endoplasm with numerous granules; $25-42\mu$ by $18-34\mu$; Powers (1932) found that the 'red water' in Frenchman Bay in Maine was caused by the swarming of this organism.

Family 4 Colepidae Claparède and Lachmann

Genus **Coleps** Nitzsch. Body-form constant, barrel-shaped; with regularly arranged ectoplasmic plates; cytostome at anterior end, surrounded by slightly longer cilia; often spinous projections at or near posterior end; 1 or more long caudal cilia, often overlooked; fresh or salt water. Many species.

C. hirtus (Müller) (Fig. 269, *a*). $40-65\mu$ long; 15-20 rows of platelets; 3 posterior processes; fresh water.

C. elongatus Ehrenberg (Fig. 269, *b*). $40-55\mu$ long; slender; about 13 rows (Noland) or 14-17 rows (Kahl) of platelets; 3 posterior processes; fresh water.

C. bicuspis Noland (Fig. 269, *c*). About 55μ long; 16 rows of platelets; 2 posterior processes; fresh water.

C. octospinus N. (Fig. 269, *d*). $80-110\mu$ long; 8 posterior spines; about 24 rows of platelets; Geiman (1931) found this organism in an acid marsh pond and noted variation in number and location of accessory spines; fresh water.

C. spiralis N. (Fig. 269, *e*). About 23 longitudinal rows of platelets slightly spirally twisted; posterior spines drawn together; a long caudal cilium; about 50μ long; salt water; Florida.

C. heteracanthus N. (Fig. 269, f). Anterior processes only on one side; posterior spines; caudal cilium; about 90μ by 35μ ; salt water; Florida.

Genus *Tiarina* Bergh. Somewhat similar to *Coleps*, but posterior end tapering to a point; salt water.

T. fusus (Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 269, g). $85\text{--}135\mu$ long.

FIG. 269. a, *Coleps hirtus*, $\times 530$ (Noland); b, *C. elongatus*, $\times 530$ (Noland); c, *C. bicuspis*, $\times 530$ (Noland); d, *C. octospinus*, $\times 530$ (Noland); e, *C. spiralis*, $\times 400$ (Noland); f, *C. heteracanthus*, $\times 400$ (Noland); g, *Tiarina fusus*, $\times 530$ (Fauré-Fremiet); h, *Actinobolina vorax*, $\times 300$ (Wenrich); i, *Dactylochlamys pisciformis*, $\times 330$ (Kahl); j, *Enchelyomorpha vermicularis*, $\times 670$ (Kahl).

Family 5 Actinobolinidae Kent

Genus *Actinobolina* Strand (*Actinobolus* Stein). Ovate or spherical; ciliation uniform; extensible tentacles among cilia; contractile vacuole terminal; macronucleus curved band; fresh water.

A. vorax (Wenrich) (Fig. 269, *h*). 100–200 μ long; elongate oval to spheroid; light yellowish brown in color; Wenrich (1929) found this ciliate in pond water and studied its behavior.

Genus **Dactylochlamys** Lauterborn. Body spindle-form, though variable; posterior end drawn out into tail; pellicle with 8–12 undulating spiral ridges on which tentacle-like processes and long cilia are alternately situated; these processes are retractile (Kahl) and similar in structure to those of Suctoria; cytostome has not been detected; possibly allied to Suctoria; fresh water. One species.

D. pisciformis L. (Fig. 269, *i*). Body 80–120 μ long.

Genus **Enchelyomorpha** Kahl. Conical, compressed; posterior end broadly rounded; anterior portion narrow; cilia on ring-furrows; anterior half with unretractile short tentacles; cytostome not noted; macronucleus with a central endosome surrounded by spherules; contractile vacuole terminal, large.

E. vermicularis (Smith) (Fig. 269, *j*). Body 30–45 μ ; fresh and brackish water.

Family 6 Holophryidae Schouteden

Genus **Holophrya** Ehrenberg. Oval, globose or ellipsoidal; ciliation uniform; sometimes longer cilia at the anterior or posterior region; systostome circular, simple, without any ciliary ring around it; cytopharynx with or without trichites or trichocysts; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

H. simplex Schewiakoff (Fig. 271, *a*). Ellipsoidal; 18–20 ciliary rows; cilia uniformly long; cytostome small; cytopharynx without trichocysts or trichites; contractile vacuole and cytophyge posterior; macronucleus large, round; 34 μ by 18 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Lagynophrya** Kahl. Resembles *Holophrya*; small elongate ovoid to short cylindrical; one side convex, the other more or less flattened; cytopharynx terminates anteriorly in a small cone-like process which may or may not be distinct; stagnant fresh or salt water. Several species.

L. mutans K. (Fig. 271, *b*). Body plastic; oval to cylindrical; colorless; narrowly striated; oval cone hemispherical without any trichocysts; body about 90 μ long, when contracted about 65 μ in diameter; among decaying leaves in fresh water.

Genus **Ichthyophthirius** Fouquet. Body oval; ciliation uniform; pellicle longitudinally striated; cytostome at anterior end, with a short cytopharynx with cilia; horseshoe-shaped macronucleus; micronucleus adhering to macronucleus; macronucleus undergoes reorganization by discarding small chromatin masses (Haas); no

division within the host body; multiplication within cyst which is formed after dropping off the fish skin and in which numerous (up to 1000) ciliated bodies ($30\text{--}45\mu$ in diameter) are produced; conjugation has been reported; parasitic in the integument of freshwater fishes; in aquarium, host fish may suffer death; widely distributed.

FIG. 270. *Ichthyophthirius multifiliis*. a, free-swimming individual, $\times 75$ (Bütschli); b-e, development within cyst; f, a young individual, $\times 400$ (Fouquet); g, section through a fin of infected carp showing numerous parasites, $\times 10$ (Kudo); h, a catfish, *Ameiurus albidus*, heavily infected by the ciliate (Stiles).

I. multifiliis F. (Fig. 270). $100\text{--}1000\mu$ long; ovoid; produces pustules in the epidermis or gills; cytostome is large, $30\text{--}40\mu$ in diameter. Pearson (1932) and Kudo (1934) reported extensive infections in large open ponds in Indiana and Illinois. MacLennan (1935, 1937) observed that the grown trophozoites leave the host epithelium and

encyst on the bottom of aquarium; the cytostome is absorbed; the body protoplasm divides into 100–1000 small spherical ciliated cells, 18–22 μ in diameter, which presently metamorphose into elongated forms, measuring about 40 μ by 10 μ . These young ciliates break through the cyst wall and seek new host fish by active swimming. The young ciliates are able to attack the fish integument for at least 96 hours, though their infectivity decreases markedly after 48 hours.

Genus **Bursella** Schmidt. Oval; anterior end broadly and obliquely truncate where a large ciliated groove-like pit occurs; ridges of pit contractile; cilia short; macronucleus, spherical to ellipsoidal; several micronuclei; endoplasm reticulated; with symbiotic algae; ectoplasm with trichocysts; fresh water.

B. spumosa S. 240–560 μ long; freshwater pond.

Genus **Spasmotoma** Kahl. Somewhat similar to *Holophrya*; cytostome with flaps which beat alternately; ciliation uniform.

S. viride K. (Fig. 271, c). Spherical or oval; always with green food vacuoles containing *Euglena* and allied flagellates; cytostome at anterior end; cytopharynx with trichocysts, which are extensible at the time when food is taken in; cilia on about 20 rows, near cytostome somewhat longer; macronucleus round; body 50–75 μ long; sapropelic.

Genus **Urotricha** Claraparède and Lachmann (*Balanitozoon* Stokes). Body oval to ellipsoidal or conical; with 1 or more longer caudal cilia; ciliation uniform, except in posterior region which may be without cilia; cytostome at or near anterior end, surrounded by ring of heavier cilia; contractile vacuole, posterior; macronucleus spherical; fresh water.

U. agilis (Stokes) (Fig. 271, d). Body small; about 15–20 μ long; swimming as well as leaping movement; standing fresh water with sphagnum.

U. farcta C. and L. (Fig. 271, e). Body 20–30 μ long; fresh water. Kahl considers *U. parvula* Penard and *Balanitozoon gyrans* Stokes are identical with this species.

Genus **Plagiocampa** Schewiakoff. Ovoid, spindle-form or cylindrical; slightly asymmetrical; cytostome at anterior end in a slit; right ridge thickened and lip-like, with about 8 long cilia; with or without long caudal cilium; fresh or salt water. Several species.

P. marina Kahl (Fig. 271, f, g). Cylindrical; oval macronucleus central; contractile vacuole terminal; a caudal cilium; 55–90 μ long; salt water; Florida (Noland).

Genus **Chilophrya** Kahl. Ovoid or ellipsoid; cytostome at anterior

end, surrounded by protrusible rods; on one side there is a lip-like ectoplasmic projection; fresh or salt water.

C. (Prorodon) utahensis (Pack) (Fig. 271, *h*). Body ellipsoid, somewhat asymmetrical; comparatively small number of furrows; ciliation uniform; a finger-like process in front of cytostome; macro-

FIG. 271. a, *Holophrya simplex*, $\times 800$ (Roux); b, *Lagynophrya mutans*, $\times 380$ (Kahl); c, *Spasmostoma viride*, $\times 330$ (Kahl); d, *Urotricha agilis*, $\times 530$ (Stokes); e, *U. farcta*, $\times 470$ (Lieberkühn); f, g, *Plagiocampa marina* (f, $\times 400$; g, anterior end, $\times 670$) (Noland); h, *Chilophrya utahensis*, $\times 840$ (Pack); i, *C. labiata*, $\times 500$ (Edmondson); j, *Platyophrya lata*, $\times 280$ (Kahl); k, *Stephanopogon colpoda*, non-ciliated side, $\times 500$ (Kahl); l, *Prorodon discolor*, $\times 330$ (Bütschli); m, *Pseudoprorodon farctus*, $\times 270$ (Roux); n, o, *Placus socialis* (o, anterior end view), $\times 530$ (Noland).

nucleus small, central; contractile vacuole terminal; endoplasm with zoochlorellae; encystment common; cysts highly sensitive to light; 50μ long; Great Salt Lake, Utah (Pack).

C. (Urotricha) labiata (Edmondson) (Fig. 271, *i*). Body ovoid; a lip-like process in front of cytostome; macronucleus oblong, central; contractile vacuole terminal; 30μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Platyophrya** Kahl. Compressed; flask-like or elongate ovoid; asymmetrical; dorsal surface convex, ventral surface flat or partly concave; spiral striation; position and direction of cytostome variable; macronucleus round; contractile vacuole terminal; fresh water.

P. lata K. (Fig. 271, *j*). Highly compressed; colorless; many striae; on left edge of cytostome 5–6 cirrus-like projections and on right edge many short bristles; 105μ long; fresh water with sphagnum.

Genus **Stephanopogon** Entz. Somewhat resembles *Platyophrya*; compressed; cytostome at anterior extremity which is drawn out; cytostome surrounded by lobed membranous structures; salt water.

S. colpoda E. (Fig. 271, *k*). Longitudinal striae on 'neck' 4–8 in number; 2 contractile vacuoles; $50\text{--}70\mu$ long; creeping movement; salt water among algae.

Genus **Prorodon** Ehrenberg (*Rhagadostoma* Kahl). Ovoid to cylindrical; ciliation uniform, with sometimes longer caudal cilia; oral basket made up of double trichites which end deep in ectoplasm, oval in cross-section; contractile vacuole terminal; macronucleus massive, spherical or oval; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

P. discolor (E.) (Fig. 271, *l*). Ovoidal; 45–55 ciliary rows; macronucleus ellipsoid; micronucleus hemispherical; contractile vacuole terminal; $100\text{--}130\mu$ long; fresh water; Kahl (1930) states that it occurs also in brackish water containing 2.5 per cent salt; sapropelic form in salt water is said to possess often long caudal cilia.

P. griseus Claparède and Lachmann. Oblong; $165\text{--}200\mu$ long; fresh water.

Genus **Pseudoprorodon** Blochmann. Similar to *Prorodon*; usually flattened; one side convex, the other concave; ectoplasm conspicuously alveolated; trichocysts grouped; 1 or more contractile vacuoles posterior-lateral or distributed, with many pores; macronucleus elongate; cytopharynx with trichites; fresh or salt water.

P. farctus (Claparède and Lachmann) (Figs. 21, *b*; 271, *m*). Ellipsoid; cytostome surrounded by long trichites; contractile vacuole posterior, with secondary vacuoles; macronucleus elongate; body $150\text{--}200\mu$ long; fresh water.

Genus **Placus** Cohn (*Spathidiopsis* Fabre-Domergue; *Thoracophrya* Kahl). Body small; ellipsoid or ovoid; somewhat compressed; pellicle with conspicuous spiral furrows; cytostome a narrow slit at anterior extremity; with strong cilia on right margin of slit; cytopyge

a long narrow slit with cilia on both sides; macronucleus ellipsoid to sausage-form; contractile vacuole posterior; salt, brackish or fresh water.

P. socialis (Fabre-Domergue) (Fig. 271, *n, o*). 40–50 μ by 28–32 μ , about 22 μ thick; salt water; Florida (Noland).

Genus **Lacrymaria** Ehrenberg. Polymorphic; cylindrical, spindle- or flask-shaped; with a long contractile proboscis; cytostome round; ciliary rows meridional or spiral to right; near cytostome a ring-like constriction with a circle of longer cilia; cytopharynx usually distinct; contractile vacuole terminal; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

L. olor (Müller) (Fig. 272, *a*). Elongate; highly contractile; 2 macronuclei; 2 contractile vacuoles; extended forms 400–500 μ up to 1.2 mm. long; when dividing, long neck is formed sidewise so that it appears as oblique division (Penard); fresh and salt water.

L. lagenula Claparède and Lachmann (Fig. 272, *b*). Body flask-shape; neck highly extensible; striation distinct, spiral when contracted; macronucleus short sausage-like or horseshoe-shape; endoplasm granulated; body 70 μ long, up to 150 μ (Kahl); salt water.

L. coronata C. and L. (Fig. 272, *c*). Large; neck extensible; body form variable, but usually with bluntly rounded posterior end; endoplasm appears dark; striae spiral; 85–100 μ long; salt and brackish water.

Genus **Enchelys** Hill. Flask-shape; anterior end obliquely truncate; cytostome slit-like, rarely round; fresh or salt water. Several species.

E. curvilata (Smith) (Fig. 272, *d*). Elongate ovoid; posterior end rounded; longitudinal striation; macronucleus band-form; contractile vacuole terminal; endoplasm yellowish, granulated; about 150 μ long; fresh water among algae.

Genus **Crobylura** André. Body when extended spindle-form, with truncate ends; when contracted, thimble-form; cilia short and thick; several long caudal cilia; slit-like cytostome at anterior end; no apparent cytopharynx; macronucleus irregularly rounded, hard to stain; micronucleus not observed; contractile vacuole latero-posterior; fresh water. One species.

C. pelagica A. (Fig. 272, *e*). Body 65–95 μ long; in freshwater plankton.

Genus **Microregma** Kahl. Small, ovoid; dorsal side convex; ventral side flat; with a small slit-like cytostome near anterior end; with or without caudal bristle; fresh or salt water.

M. (Enchelys) auduboni (Smith) (Fig. 272, *f*). Body plastic;

coarsely ciliated; caudal bristle thin; cytostome at anterior end, surrounded by longer cilia; cytopharynx small with trichocysts; round macronucleus central; contractile vacuole near posterior end; $40\text{--}55\mu$; fresh water.

Genus *Chaenea* Quennerstedt. Elongate; anterior end drawn out into a narrow truncated 'head'; but without any ring furrow;

FIG. 272. a, *Lacrymaria olor*, $\times 170$ (Roux); b, *L. lagenula*, $\times 400$ (Calkins); c, *L. coronata*, $\times 530$ (Calkins); d, *Enchelys curvilata*, $\times 200$ (Smith); e, *Crobylura pelagica*, $\times 500$ (André); f, *Microregma auduboni*, $\times 500$ (Smith); g, *Chaenea limicola*, $\times 310$ (Penard); h, *Pithothorax ovatus*, $\times 550$ (Kahl); i, *Trachelophyllum clavatum*, $\times 100$ (Stokes).

'head' spirally or longitudinally furrowed; often with longer cilia directed anteriorly; cytostome terminal, not lateral; cytopharynx with trichocysts; body striation meridional, or slightly right spiral; macronucleus often distributed; fresh or salt water.

C. limicola Lauterborn (Fig. 272, g). Anterior half of body broad; posterior end drawn out into a point; contractile; cytopharynx with trichocysts; many trichocysts in endoplasm; contractile vacuoles in a row; $130\text{--}150\mu$ long; stagnant fresh water.

Genus **Pithothorax** Kahl. Slender, barrel-shaped; with firm pellicle; a fairly long caudal bristle; contractile vacuole in posterior half; ciliation coarse and not over entire body surface; resembles somewhat *Coleps*; fresh water.

P. ovatus K. (Fig. 272, *h*). Caudal bristle breaks off easily; body 30μ long; fresh water among decaying vegetation.

Genus **Rhopalophrya** Kahl. Cylindrical; furrows widely separated; slightly asymmetrical; curved ventrally; dorsal surface convex; ventral surface flat or slightly concave; anterior end with 'neck'; 2 spherical macronuclei; fresh or salt water; sapropelic.

R. salina Kirby (Fig. 273, *a*). Cylindrical, tapering gradually to a truncated anterior end, slightly curved ventrally; cilia ($6\text{--}10\mu$ long) sparsely distributed; 2 macronuclei, spherical; $29\text{--}55\mu$ long; $16\text{--}21\mu$ in diameter; in concentrated brine (salts "34.8 per cent"; pH 9.48) from Searles Lake; California.

Genus **Enchelyodon** Claparède and Lachmann. Elongated; cylindrical, ovoid or flask-shaped; some with head-like prolongation; cytopharynx with trichites; cilia long at anterior end; fresh or salt water. Several species.

E. californicus Kahl. $120\text{--}130\mu$ long; elongate ovoid to nearly cylindrical; not distinctly flattened; macronucleus horseshoe-like, with a large micronucleus; in mosses; California.

Genus **Trachelophyllum** Claparède and Lachmann. Elongate; flattened; flexible, ribbon-like; anterior end neck-like and tip truncate; cytopharynx narrow, round in cross-section, with trichocysts; ciliary rows widely apart; 2 macronuclei, each with a micronucleus; contractile vacuole terminal; fresh or salt water. Several species.

T. clavatum Stokes (Fig. 272, *i*). About 200μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Ileonema** Stokes (*Monomastix* Roux). Body flattened; flask-shaped; somewhat similar to *Trachelophyllum*, but differs by the fact that there is a remarkable flagellum-like process extending from anterior end; cytopharynx with trichocysts; fresh water.

I. dispar S. (Fig. 273, *b*). Highly contractile; anterior flagellum half body length, whose basal portion spirally furrowed; cytostome at base of the flagellum; cytopharynx spindle-form with trichites; 2 contractile vacuoles and cytopyge posterior; ovoid macronucleus; movement slow creeping; about 120μ long; fresh water among algae.

I. ciliata (Roux) (Fig. 273, *c*). 75μ by 14μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Trachelocerca** Ehrenberg. Elongate, vermiform or flask-shaped; more or less extensible, with drawn-out anterior end; without any ring-furrow which marks the 'head' of *Lacrymaria*, and when

contracted pellicular striae not spiral and no neck as is the case with *Chaenea*; salt water. Many species.

T. phoenicopter Cohn (Fig. 273, d, e). Elongate; extensible and contractile; neck and tail distinct when contracted; cytostome at anterior end, surrounded by a ridge containing indistinctly visible short trichocysts, cytopharynx with trichocysts; macronuclei made up of 4 radially arranged endosomes suspended in the nucleoplasm (Gruber, Kahl); micronucleus difficult to make out; contractile

FIG. 273. a, *Rhopalophrya salina*, $\times 870$ (Kirby); b, *Ileonema dispar*, $\times 160$ (Stokes); c, *I. ciliata*, $\times 670$ (Roux); d, e, *Trachelocerca phaeinopter* (d, $\times 100$; e, anterior end, $\times 220$) (Kahl); f, g, *T. subviridis* (f, $\times 130$; g, nucleus, $\times 400$) (Noland); h, *Parachaenia myae*, $\times 670$ (Kofoid and Bush).

vacuoles apparently in a row, rarely seen; salt water; Woods Hole (Calkins).

T. subviridis Sauerbrey (Fig. 273, f, g). Highly extensible and contractile; nucleus contains peculiar crystal-like bodies; size variable; when extended $320\text{--}480\mu$ long; salt water. Noland observed the organism in a salt spring in Florida.

Genus **Parachaenia** Kofoid and Bush. Small; compressed; ventral surface slightly concave; dorsal surface greatly convex; cilia long,

differentiated into 2 areas, a ventral area consisting of close-set rows and a dorso-lateral area consisting of 7 rows; cytostome circular or slightly oval, at anterior tip; cytopharynx long, narrow; without contractile vacuole. One species.

P. myae K. and B. (Fig. 273, h). 40–100 μ long; 7 rows of long cilia on dorso-lateral surfaces, 8 rows of shorter cilia on ventral surface; cytopharynx half body length; in pericardial cavity and siphon of *Mya arenaria*; San Francisco Bay.

FIG. 274. a, *Bütschlia parva*, $\times 670$ (Schuberg); b, *Blepharoprosthium pireum*, $\times 470$ (Hsiung); c, *Didesmis quadrata*, $\times 270$ (Hsiung); d, *Blepharosphaera intestinalis*, $\times 600$ (Hsiung); e, *Blepharoconus cervicalis*, $\times 360$ (Hsiung); f, *Bundleia postciliata*, $\times 530$ (Hsiung); g, *Blepharozoum zonatum*, $\times 200$ (Gassovsky).

Family 7 Bütschliidae Poche

This family includes species that are intestinal parasites of mammals; circular cytostome at anterior end, cytopyge usually located at posterior end; ciliation uniform or in a few zones; with refractile concrement vacuole (Fig. 30, d) in anterior portion; one or more contractile vacuoles.

Genus *Bütschlia* Schuberg. Ovoid, anterior end truncate, posterior

end rounded; cytostome at anterior end, surrounded by long cilia; thick ectoplasm at anterior end; macronucleus spherical micronucleus(?); concretion vacuole; ciliation uniform; in stomach of cattle.

B. parva S. (Fig. 274, a). 30–50 μ by 20–30 μ .

Genus **Blepharoprosthium** Bundle. Pyriform, anterior half contractile, ciliated; caudal cilia; macronucleus reniform; in the caecum and colon of horse.

B. pireum B. (Fig. 274, b). 54–86 μ by 34–52 μ .

Genus **Didesmis** Fiorentini. Anterior end neck-like, with large cytostome; anterior and posterior ends ciliated; macronucleus ellipsoid; in the caecum and colon of horse.

D. quadrata F. (Fig. 274, c). 50–90 μ by 33–68 μ ; with a deep dorsal groove.

Genus **Blepharosphaera** Bundle. Spherical or ellipsoidal; ciliation uniform except in posterior region; caudal cilia; in the caecum and colon of horse.

B. intestinalis B. (Fig. 274, d). 38–74 μ in diameter.

Genus **Blepharoconus** Gassovsky. Oval; small cytostome; cilia on anterior 1/3–1/2; caudal cilia; macronucleus ovoid; 3 contractile vacuoles; cytopharynx with rods; in the colon of horse.

B. cervicalis Hsiung (Fig. 274, e). 56–83 μ by 48–70 μ ; Iowa.

Genus **Bundleia** da Cunha and Muniz. Ellipsoid; cytostome small; cilia at anterior and posterior ends, posterior cilia much less numerous; in the caecum and colon of horse.

B. postciliata (Bundle) (Fig. 274, f). 30–56 μ by 17–32 μ .

Genus **Polymorpha** Dogiel. Flask-shaped; ciliation on anterior region, a few caudal cilia; macronucleus disc-shaped; contractile vacuole terminal; in the caecum and colon of horse.

P. ampulla D. (Fig. 275, a). 22–36 μ by 13–21 μ .

Genus **Holophryoides** Gassovsky. Oval, with comparatively large cytostome at anterior end; ciliation uniform; macronucleus small, ellipsoid; contractile vacuole subterminal; in the colon and caecum of horse.

H. ovalis (Fiorentini) (Fig. 275, b). 95–140 μ by 65–90 μ .

Genus **Blepharozoum** Gassovsky. Ellipsoid, with attenuated posterior end; ciliation uniform; cytostome near anterior tip; 2 contractile vacuoles; macronucleus small, reniform; in caecum of horse.

B. zonatum G. (Fig. 274, g). 230–245 μ by 115–122 μ .

Genus **Prorodonopsis** Gassovsky. Pyriform; ciliation uniform; 3 contractile vacuoles; macronucleus sausage-shaped; in the colon of horse.

P. coli G. (Fig. 275, c). 55–67 μ by 38–45 μ .

Genus **Paraisotrichopsis** Gassovsky. Body uniformly ciliated; spiral groove from anterior to posterior end; in the caecum of horse.

P. composita G. (Fig. 275, d). 43–56 μ by 31–40 μ .

Genus **Sulcoarcus** Hsiung. Ovoid, compressed; a short spiral groove at anterior end; cytostome at ventral end of the groove; cytophyge terminal; concretion vacuole mid-ventral, contractile vacuole posterior to it; cilia on groove, posterior end and mid-ventral region.

FIG. 275. a, *Polymorpha ampulla*, $\times 1170$ (Hsiung); b, *Holophryoides ovalis*, $\times 410$ (Gassovsky); c, *Prorodonopsis coli*, $\times 700$ (Gassovsky); d, *Paraisotrichopsis composita*, $\times 450$ (Hsiung); e, *Sulcoarcus pellucidulus*, $\times 410$ (Hsiung); f, *Alloiozona trizona*, $\times 450$ (Hsiung).

S. pellucidulus H. (Fig. 275, e). 33–56 μ by 30–40 μ ; in faeces of mule.

Genus **Alloiozona** Hsiung. Cilia in 3 (anterior, equatorial and posterior) zones; in the caecum and colon of horse.

A. trizona H. (Fig. 275, f). 50–90 μ by 30–60 μ .

Genus **Ampullacua** Hsiung. Flask-shaped; posterior half bearing fine, short cilia; neck with longer cilia; in the caecum of horse.

A. ampulla (Fiorentini). About 110 μ by 40 μ .

References

- HSIUNG, T. S. 1930 A monograph on the Protozoa of the large intestine of the horse. Iowa St. Coll. Jour. Sci., Vol. 4.
- KAHL, A. 1930 In Dahl's *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands*. Part 18.
- KIRBY JR., H. 1934 Some ciliates from salt marshes in California. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 82.
- MACLENNAN, R. F. 1935 Observations on the life cycle of Ichthyophthirius, a ciliate parasitic on fish. Northwest Science, Vol. 9.
- 1937 Growth in the ciliate Ichthyophthirius. I. Maturity and encystment. Jour. Exper. Zool., Vol. 76.
- NOLAND, L. E. 1925 A review of the genus Coleps with descriptions of two new species. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 44.
- 1937 Observations on marine ciliates of the Gulf coast of Florida. Ibid., Vol. 56.
- PENARD, E. 1922 *Etudes sur les Infusoires d'eau douce*. Genève.
- ROUX, J. 1901 Faune infusorienne des eaux stagnantes de environs de Genève. Mém. cour. fac. sci. l'Uni. Genève.
- STOKES, A. C. 1888 A preliminary contribution toward a history of the freshwater Infusoria of the United States. Jour. Trenton Nat. Hist. Soc., Vol. 1.
- WENRICH, D. H. 1929 The structure and behavior of *Actinobolus vorax*. Biol. Bull., Vol. 56.

CHAPTER 33

Order 1 **Holotricha** Stein (continued)

Suborder 2 **Gymnostomata** Bütschli (continued)

Tribe 2 **Pleurostomata** Schewiakoff

Cytostome on convex ventral surface.

Cytostome a long slit..... Family 1 **Amphileptidae**

Cytostome round, at base of trichocyst-bearing neck.....
..... Family 2 **Tracheliidae** (p. 582)

Cytostome on concave ventral side..... Family 3 **Loxodidae** (p. 584)

Family 1 **Amphileptidae** Schouteden

Genus **Amphileptus** Ehrenberg. Flask-shaped; somewhat compressed; ciliation uniform and complete; slit-like cytostome not reaching the middle of body, without trichocyst-borders; many contractile vacuoles; 2 or more macronuclei; fresh or salt water.

A. claparedei Stein (*A. meleagris* Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 276, a). Slightly flattened; broadly flask-shaped; with bluntly pointed posterior and neck-like anterior end; cytostome about 2/5 from ventral margin; trichocysts indistinct; dorsal ciliary rows also not distinct; contractile vacuoles irregularly distributed; 120–150 μ long; fresh and salt water, on stalks of *Zoothamnium*, *Carchesium*, *Epistylis*, etc.

A. branchiarum Wenrich (Fig. 276, b). On the integument and gills of frog tadpoles; swimming individuals killed with iodine, 100–135 μ by 40–60 μ .

Genus **Lionotus** Wrzesniowski (*Hemiophrys* W.). Flask-shape; elongate, flattened; anterior region neck-like; cilia only on right side; without trichocyst-borders; cytostome with trichocysts; 1 (terminal) or many (in 1–2 rows) contractile vacuoles; 2 macronuclei; 1 micronucleus; fresh or salt water.

L. fasciola (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 276, c). Elongate flask in form; hyaline; with flattened neck and tail, both of which are moderately contractile; posterior end bluntly rounded; without trichocysts; neck stout, bent toward the dorsal side; cytostome a long slit; contractile vacuole posterior; 2 spherical macronuclei between which a micronucleus is located; 100 μ long; fresh water and probably also in salt water.

Genus **Loxophyllum** Dujardin (*Opisthodon* Stein). Generally similar to *Lionotus* in appearance; but ventral side with a hyaline border,

reaching posterior end and bearing trichocysts; dorsal side with either similar trichocyst-border or with trichocyst-warts; macronucleus a single mass or in many parts; contractile vacuole, one to many; fresh or salt water. Many species.

L. meleagris D. (Fig. 276, d). Form and size highly variable;

FIG. 276. a, *Amphileptus claparedei*, $\times 370$ (Roux); b, *A. branchiarum*, flattened, $\times 490$ (Wenrich); c, *Lionotus fasciola*, $\times 540$ (Kahl); d, *Loxophyllum meleagris*, $\times 120$ (Penard); e, *L. setigerum*, $\times 570$ (Sauerbrey); f, *Bryophyllum vorax*, $\times 360$ (Stokes); g, h, *Kentrophoros fasciolatum* (g, $\times 50$; h, $\times 110$) (Noland).

flask-shape to broad leaf-like; broad ventral seam with trichocysts and often undulating; dorsal seam narrow and near its edge, groups of trichocysts in wart-like protuberances; macronucleus moniliform; micronuclei, of the same number (Penard); contractile vacuole ter-

minal, with a long canal; 300–400 μ long, up to 700 μ (Penard); feeds mainly on rotifers; fresh water.

L. setigerum Quennerstedt (Fig. 276, e). 100–350 μ long; average 150 μ by 60 μ ; form variable; 1–4 macronuclei; several contractile vacuoles in a row; salt and brackish water.

Genus **Bryophyllum** Kahl. Similar to *Loxophyllum*; but uniformly ciliated on both broad surfaces; ventral ridge with closely arranged trichocysts, extends to the posterior extremity and ends there or may continue on to the opposite side for some distance; macronucleus ovoid to coiled bandform; in mosses.

B. vorax (Stokes) (Fig. 276, f). Elongate; trichocyst-bearing ventral ridge turns up a little on dorsal side; contractile vacuole posterior; macronucleus oval; 130 μ long; in fresh water among sphagnum and mosses.

Genus **Kentrophoros** Sauerbrey. Extremely elongate, nematode-like; anterior end greatly attenuated; posterior end pointed; body surface longitudinally striated; ciliation uniform; 1–3 macronuclei; numerous contractile vacuoles in 2 rows; cytostome not observed.

K. fasciolatum S. (Fig. 276, g, h). About 270 μ by 38 μ . Noland (1937) observed 2 specimens in sediment taken from sandy bottom in Florida; contracted 650 μ long; extended 1 mm. long.

Family 2 Tracheliidae Kent

Genus **Trachelius** Schrank. Oval to spherical; anterior end drawn out into a relatively short finger-like process or a snout; posterior end rounded; round cytostome at base of neck; cytopharynx with trichites; contractile vacuoles many; macronucleus simple or bandform; fresh water.

T. ovum Ehrenberg (Fig. 277, a). Spheroidal to ellipsoid; right side flattened and with a longitudinal groove; left side convex; proboscis about 1/4–1/2 the body length; cilia short and closely set; numerous contractile vacuoles; macronucleus short sausage-form, often divided into spherules; endoplasm penetrated by branching cytoplasmic skeins or bands and often with numerous small brown excretion granules; 200–400 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Dileptus** Dujardin. Elongate; snout or neck-like prolongation conspicuous; somewhat bent dorsally; along convex ventral side of neck many rows of trichocysts; a row of strong cilia; dorsal surface with 3 rows of short bristles; cytostome surrounded by a ring; cytopharynx with long trichocysts; posterior end drawn out into a tail; contractile vacuoles, 2 or more; body ciliation uniform; macronu-

cleus bandform, moniliform or divided into numerous independent bodies; fresh or salt water. Many species.

D. americanus Kahl (Fig. 277, b). Proboscis bent dorsally sickle-like; macronucleus made up of 2 sausage-shaped or often horseshoe-

FIG. 277. a, *Trachelius ovum*, $\times 130$ (Roux); b, *Dileptus americanus*, $\times 250$ (Kahl); c, *D. anser*, $\times 310$ (Hayes); d, *Paradileptus conicus*, $\times 340$ (Wenrich); e, *P. robustus*, $\times 340$ (Wenrich); f, *Branchioecetes gammari* $\times 200$ (Penard); g, *Loxodes vorax*, $\times 190$ (Stokes); h, *L. magnus*, $\times 80$ (Kahl); i, j, *Remanella rugosa* (i, dorsal side, $\times 130$; j, anterior part showing the endoskeleton) (Kahl).

shaped parts; 2 contractile vacuoles on dorsal side; 200 μ long; in mosses.

D. anser (Müller) (Figs. 22, *c, d*; 277, *c*). Proboscis slightly flattened; macronucleus divided into numerous bodies; contractile vacuoles in a row on dorsal side with 2–3 contractile vacuoles in proboscis; 250–400 μ , sometimes up to 600 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Paradileptus** Wenrich (*Tentaculifera* Sokoloff). Body broader at the level of cytostome; with a wide peristomal field that bears the cytostome and is surrounded for 2/3–3/4 its circumference by a raised rim which is continuous anteriorly with the spirally wound proboscis; trichocyst-zone traversing the rim and anterior edge of proboscis; contractile vacuoles small, numerous, distributed; macronucleus segmented; fresh water.

P. conicus W. (Fig. 277, *d*). 100–200 μ by 50–100 μ .

P. robustus W. (Fig. 277, *e*). 180–450 μ long.

Genus **Branchioecetes** Kahl. Preoral part somewhat like that of *Amphileptus*, and bent dorsally; ventral side of neck with 2 rows of trichocysts; cytostome at posterior end of neck; cytopharynx with trichocysts; ectocommensals on Asellus or Gammarus.

B. gammari (Penard) (Fig. 277, *f*). 130–200 μ long; on Gammarus.

Family 3 Loxodidae Bütschli

Genus **Loxodes** Ehrenberg. Lancet-like; strongly compressed; anterior end curved ventrally, and usually pointed; right side slightly convex; uniform ciliation on about 12 longitudinal rows; ectoplasm appears brownish, because of closely arranged brownish protrichocysts; endoplasm reticulated; 2 or more vesicular macronuclei; one or more micronuclei; 5–25 Müller's vesicles (p. 76; Fig. 30, *a, b*) in dorsal region; fresh water.

L. vorax Stokes (Fig. 277, *g*). 125–140 μ long; yellowish brown, a row of slightly longer cilia; sapropelic in standing fresh water.

L. magnus S. (Fig. 277, *h*). Extended about 700 μ long; dark brown; 12–20 or more Müller's vesicles in a row along dorsal border; standing pond water.

Genus **Remanella** Kahl. Similar to *Loxodes* in general appearance; but with endoskeleton consisting of 12–20 μ long spindle-form needles lying below broad ciliated surface in 3–5 longitudinal strings connected with fibrils; Müller's vesicles (Fig. 30, *c*) in some, said to be different from those of *Loxodes* (Kahl); sandy shore of sea.

R. rugosa K. (Fig. 277, *i, j*). 200–300 μ long.

Tribe 3 **Hypostomata** Schewiakoff

- Without furrow; free-living; conspicuous oral or pharyngeal basket
 Ciliation complete; dorsal cilia usually less dense than those on ventral surface.....Family 1 Nassulidae
 Ciliation incomplete; dorsal surface without cilia or with a few sensory bristles
 Posterior ventral surface with a style.. Family 2 Dysteriidae (p. 586)
 Without a style..... Family 3 Chlamydodontidae (p. 588)
 Furrow from anterior end of cytostome; parasitic.....
Family 4 Pycnothricidae (p. 590)

Family 1 **Nassulidae** Schouteden

Genus **Nassula** Ehrenberg. Oval to elongate; ventral surface flat, dorsal surface convex; usually brightly colored, due to food material; cytostome $1/3$ – $1/4$ from anterior end; body often bent to left near cytostome; opening of oral basket deep, in a vestibule with a membrane; macronucleus spherical or ovoid, central; a single micronucleus; contractile vacuole large, with accessory vacuoles and opens ventrally through a tubule-pore; fresh or salt water. Many species.

N. aurea E. (Fig. 278, *a*). 200–250 μ long; fresh and brackish water (Kahl).

Genus **Paranassula** Kahl. Similar in general appearance to *Nassula*; but with preoral and dorsal suture line; longer caudal cilia on dorsal suture; pharyngeal basket not funnel-like, with 16–18 trichites; about 75 ciliary rows; trichocysts especially in anterior region.

P. microstoma (Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 278, *b*). Pellicle roughened by a criss-cross of longitudinal and circular furrows; macronucleus elongate oval, posterior; contractile vacuole near middle and right-dorsal; about 80–95 μ long; salt water; Florida (Noland).

Genus **Cyclogramma** Perty. Somewhat resembling *Nassula*; but conspicuous oral basket in pyriform depression and opens toward left on ventral surface; depression with a short row of small membranes at its anterior edge; trichocysts usually better developed than in *Nassula*; fresh water.

C. trichocystis (Stokes) (Fig. 278, *c*). Body colorless or slightly rose-colored; trichocysts thick and obliquely arranged; one contractile vacuole; usually full of blue-green food vacuoles; actively motile; about 60 μ long; in fresh water among algae.

Genus **Chilodontopsis** Blochmann. Elongate ellipsoid; colorless; ventral surface flattened, dorsal surface slightly convex; both sides ciliated; oral basket without vestibule; cytostome with a membranous ring; usually with a postoral ciliary furrow; fresh water.

C. vorax (Stokes) (Fig. 278, *d*). Elongate ellipsoid; anterior region slightly curved to left; snout fairly distinct; oral basket with about 16 rods; several contractile vacuoles distributed, a large one terminal; macronucleus large, lenticular, granulated; with a closely attached micronucleus; 50–160 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Eucamptocerca** da Cunha. Elongate; posterior part drawn out into a caudal prolongation; dorso-ventrally flattened; ciliation on both sides; round cytostome with oral basket in anterior ventral surface. One species.

E. longa da C. (Fig. 278, *e*). 300 μ by 25 μ ; macronucleus ovoid, with a micronucleus; contractile vacuole(?); in brackish water (salt content 3 per cent); Brazil.

Genus **Orthodon** Gruber. Oval; contractile; colorless; much flattened; anterior region curved toward left; striation on both dorsal and ventral sides; cytostome toward right border; oral basket long; macronucleus oval; contractile vacuole terminal; fresh or salt water.

O. hamatus G. (Fig. 278, *f*). Extended 200–260 μ long, contracted 90–150 μ long; flask-shaped; oral basket with 16 trichites; salt water.

Family 2 Dysteriidae Kent

Genus **Dysteria** Huxley (*Ervilia* Dujardin; *Iduna*, *Aegyria* Claparède and Lachmann; *Cypridium* Kent). Ovate, dorsal surface convex, ventral surface flat or concave; left ventral side with nonciliated ventral plate; postoral ciliation is continuation of preoral to right of cytostome and parallel to right margin; cytostome in a furrow near right side; posterior style or spine conspicuous; macronucleus spheroid or ovoid, central; with a micronucleus; usually 2 contractile vacuoles; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

D. calkinsi Kahl (*D. lanceolata* Calkins) (Fig. 278, *g*). About 45 μ by 27 μ ; salt water; Woods Hole.

Genus **Trochilia** Dujardin. Similar to *Dysteria*; but ciliated right ventral side free; fresh or salt water. Several species.

T. palustris Stein (Fig. 278, *h*). 25 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Trochilioides** Kahl. Rounded at anterior end, narrowed posteriorly; right side more convex than left; cytostome anterior with cytopharynx and preoral membrane; conspicuous longitudinal bands on right half with longitudinal striae, becoming shorter toward left; fresh or salt water.

T. recta K. (Fig. 278, *i*). 40–50 μ long; sapropelic in fresh and brackish water.

Genus **Hartmannula** Poche (*Onychodactylus* Entz). Ventral surface uniformly ciliated; cytopharynx with short rods; in salt water.

H. entzi Kahl (Fig. 278, j). 80–140 μ long; salt water.

FIG. 278. a, *Nassula aurea*, $\times 190$ (Schewiakoff); b, *Paranassula microstoma*, $\times 400$ (Noland); c, *Cyclogramma trichocystis*, $\times 510$ (Stokes); d, *Chilodontopsis vorax*, $\times 200$ (Stokes); e, *Eucamplocerca longa*, $\times 320$ (da Cunha); f, *Orthodon hamatus*, $\times 160$ (Entz); g, *Dysteria calkinsi*, $\times 540$ (Calkins); h, *Trochilia palustris*, $\times 1070$ (Roux); i, *Trochilioides recta*, $\times 740$ (Kahl); j, *Hartmannula entzi*, $\times 220$ (Entz); k, *Chlamydodon mnemosyne*, $\times 520$ (MacDougall); l, *Phascolodon vorticella*, $\times 340$ (Stein).

Family 3 **Chlamydodontidae** Claus

Genus **Chlamydodon** Ehrenberg. Ellipsoid, reniform, elongate triangular, etc.; cilia only on ventral surface, anterior cilia longer; cytostome elongate oval and covered with a membrane bearing a slit; oral basket made up of closely arranged rods with apical processes; along lateral margin, there is a characteristic striped band which is a canalicule of unknown function; fresh or salt water.

C. mnemosyne E. (Fig. 278, *k*). Ellipsoid or reniform; right side convex, left side concave; ventral side flat, dorsal side greatly convex; a band of trichites, 'railroad track,' parallel to body outline; oral basket with 8–10 rods; macronucleus oval; 4–5 contractile vacuoles distributed; 60–90 μ long; salt water. MacDougall (1928) observed it in the brackish water at Woods Hole and studied its neuromotor system.

Genus **Phascolodon** Stein. Ovoid; with broad anterior end and bluntly pointed posterior end; ventral side concave or flat, dorsal side convex; ciliated field on ventral surface narrowed laterally behind cytostome, forming V-shaped ciliated area (about 12 rows); cytostome ellipsoid with oral basket; macronucleus oval with a micronucleus; 2 contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

P. vorticella S. (Fig. 278, *l*). 80–110 μ long; cytostome covered by a slit-bearing membrane; with 2 preoral membranes; macronucleus ovoid; fresh water.

Genus **Cryptopharynx** Kahl. Ellipsoid, anterior third bent to left; ventral surface flat, dorsal surface with hump; spiral interciliary furrows ridged; oval cytostome at anterior end; no cryptopharynx; dorsal hump yellowish, granulated with gelatinous cover; 2 macronuclei; 1 micronucleus; 2 contractile vacuoles, one posterior and the other toward left side at the bend of body. One species.

C. setigerus K. (Fig. 279, *a*, *b*). Elongate ellipsoid; anterior region bent to left; ventral surface flat, dorsal surface with a hump; about 15 ventral ciliary rows; 2 vesicular macronuclei and 1 micronucleus dorso-central; 33–96 μ by 21–45 μ (Kirby). Kirby found the organism in salt marsh pools (salinity 1.2–9.7 per cent) with purple bacteria; California.

Genus **Chilodonella** Strand (*Chilodon* Ehrenberg). Ovoid; dorso-ventrally flattened; dorsal surface convex, ventral surface flat; ventral surface with ciliary rows; anteriorly flattened dorsal surface with a cross-row of bristles; cytostome round; oral basket conspicuous, protrusible; macronucleus rounded; contractile vacuoles variable in number; fresh or salt water or ectocommensal on fish and amphipods. Many species.

C. cucullulus (Müller) (*Chilodon steini* Blochmann) (Figs. 52; 279, c-e). 19-20 ventral ciliary rows; oral basket with about 12 rods and with 3 preoral membranes; macronucleus oval, a characteristic concentric structure; micronucleus small; body 100-300 μ long, most often 130-150 μ long; fresh and brackish water.

FIG. 279. a, b, *Cryptopharynx setigerus*, $\times 650$ (Kirby); c-e, *Chilodonella cucullulus* (c, $\times 270$ (Stein); d, oral region; e, nucleus (Penard)); f, *C. caudata*, $\times 1000$ (Stokes); g, *C. fluviatilis*, $\times 800$ (Stokes); h, *C. cyprini*, $\times 670$ (Moroff); i, *Allosphaerium palustris*, $\times 1000$ (Kidder and Summers).

C. caudata (Stokes) (Fig. 279, f). About 42 μ long; standing water.

C. fluviatilis (S.) (Fig. 279, g). About 50 μ long; fresh water.

C. uncinata (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 86). 50-90 μ long; about 11 ventral

ciliary rows; some 7 dorsal bristles; widely distributed in various freshwater bodies; several varieties.

C. cyprini (Moroff) (Fig. 279, *h*). 50–70 μ by 30–40 μ ; in the integument and gills of cyprinoid fishes; the organism, if freed from the host body, dies in 12–24 hours.

C. longipharynx Kidder and Summers. 17–21 μ (average 19 μ) long; cytopharynx long, reaches posterior end; ectocommensal on amphipods, *Talorchestia longicornis* and *Orchestia palustris*; Woods Hole.

C. hyalina K. and S. 40 μ (36–47 μ) long; ectocommensal on *Orchestia agilis*; Woods Hole.

C. rotunda K. and S. 29 μ (27–34 μ) long; ectocommensal on *Orchestia agilis*; Woods Hole.

Genus **Allosphaerium** Kidder and Summers. Oval; right side concave, left side more or less flat; body highly flattened; arched dorsal surface devoid of cilia; ventral surface slightly concave with 12–27 ciliary rows; right and left margin of ventral surface with a pellicular fold; cytostome anterior-ventral, oval or irregular, surrounded by ridge on posterior border, extending to left margin; 3 groups of ciliary membranes extending out of cytostome; macronucleus oval, central or anterior; a micronucleus; 2 (or 1) contractile vacuoles; a refractile spherule regularly present in posterior portion of endoplasm; ectocommensal on the carapace and gills of amphipods.

A. palustris K. and S. (Fig. 279, *i*). 46–59 μ long; 27 ventral ciliary rows; on *Orchestia palustris* and *Talorchestia longicornis*; Woods Hole.

A. sulcatum K. and S. 24–32 μ long; 12 ciliary rows; on the carapace of *Orchestia agilis* and *O. palustris*; Woods Hole.

A. granulosum K. and S. 32–42 μ long; rotund; 17 ciliary rows; cytoplasm granulated; on carapace of *Orchestia agilis* and *O. palustris*; Woods Hole.

A. caudatum K. and S. Resembles *A. palustris*; 35–45 μ long; 14 ciliary rows; 1 contractile vacuole; ectoplasm at posterior end, drawn out into a shelf; on *Orchestia agilis*; Woods Hole.

A. convexa K. and S. 24–36 μ long; 17 ciliary rows; on the carapace and gill lamellae of *Talorchestia longicornis*; Woods Hole.

Family 4 Pycnothricidae Poche

Ciliation uniform; ectoplasm thick and conspicuous; a furrow or groove connects the cytostome with the anterior end; parasitic in the alimentary canal of mammals.

Genus **Pycnothrix** Schubotz. Large, elongate; with broadly rounded anterior and narrowed posterior end; somewhat flattened;

short thick cilia throughout; ectoplasm thick; macronucleus spherical, in anterior $1/6$; micronucleus(?); 2 longitudinal grooves, one beginning on each side near anterior end, united at the notched posterior end; a series of apertures in grooves considered as cytostomes; at posterior $1/3$, an aperture gives rise to branching canals running through endoplasm, and is considered as excretory in function; in the colon of *Procavia capensis* and *P. brucei*. One species.

FIG. 280. a, *Pycnothrix monocystoides*, $\times 50$; b, *Nicollella ctenodactyli*, $\times 170$; c, *Collinella gundi*, $\times 170$ (Chatton and Pérard); d, *Buxtonella sulcata*, $\times 400$ (Jameson).

P. monocystoides S. (Fig. 280, a). 300μ –2 mm. long.

Genus **Nicollella** Chatton and Pérard. Elongate; a narrow groove extends from the anterior end to cytostome, located at the middle of body; bilobed posteriorly; contractile vacuole terminal; macronucleus ellipsoid, anterior; a micronucleus; ectoplasm thick anteriorly; ciliation uniform; in the colon of *Ctenodactylus gundi*. One species.

N. ctenodactyli C. and P. (Fig. 280, b). 70–550 μ by 40–150 μ .

Genus **Collinella** Chatton and Pérard. More elongate than *Nicollella*; uniform ciliation; a groove extends from end to end; cytostome at posterior end of the groove; contractile vacuole terminal; macronucleus much elongated, central or posterior; in the colon of *Ctenodactylus gundi*.

C. gundi C. and P. (Fig. 280, c). 550–600 μ by 100 μ .

Genus **Buxtonella** Jameson. Ovoid; a prominent curved groove bordered by 2 ridges from end to end; cytostome at anterior end; ciliation uniform; in the caecum of cattle. One species.

B. sulcata J. (Fig. 280, d). 55–124 μ by 40–72 μ .

References

- CHATTON, E. and C. PÉRARD 1921 Les Nicollellidae, infusoires intestinaux des gondis et des damans, et le 'cycle évolutif des ciliés.' Bull. biol. Fr. et Bel., Vol. 55.
- KAHL, A. 1931 *Urtiere oder Protozoa*. Dahl's *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands*. Part 21.
- KENT, W. S. 1880–1882 *A manual of Infusoria*.
- STEIN, F. 1867 *Der Organismus der Infusionstiere*. Vol. 2.
- STOKES, A. C. 1888 A preliminary contribution toward a history of the freshwater Infusoria of the United States. Jour. Trenton Nat. Hist. Soc., Vol. 1.
- WENRICH, D. H. 1929 Observations on some freshwater ciliates. II. *Paradileptus*, n.g. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 48.

CHAPTER 34

Order 1 *Holotricha* Stein (continued)

Suborder 3 *Trichostomata* Bütschli

With gelatinous lorica; swimming backward.....
.....Family 1 Marynidae (p. 594)

Without lorica

Compressed, armor-like pellicle; ciliation sparse, mainly on flat right side in 2-9 broken rows on semicircular or crescentic keel; cytostome on flattened ventral surface, with an obscure membrane.
.....Family 2 Trichopelmidae (p. 595)

Body form and ciliation otherwise

With a long caudal cilium; cilia in 3-4 spiral rows on anterior half, very small forms.....Family 3 Trimyemidae (p. 595)

Without a caudal cilium; form and ciliation otherwise

With a spiral zone of special cilia, from cytostome to posterior end
Spiral zone extends from anterior right to posterior left.....
.....Family 4 Spirozonidae (p. 596)

Spiral zone extends from anterior left to posterior right.....
.....Family 5 Trichospiridae (p. 596)

Without a spiral zone of special cilia

Ciliated cross-furrow in anterior 1/5 on ventral surface, leads to cytostome.....Family 6 Plagiopylidae (p. 596)

Without ciliated cross-furrow

Cytostome in flat oval groove with heavily ciliated ridge in anterior 1/4.....Family 7 Clathrostomidae (p. 598)

Cytostome funnel-like, deeply situated

Cytostomal funnel with strong cilia; peristome from anterior left to posterior right.....
.....Family 8 Parameciidae (p. 598)

Without such a peristome

Free-living; oral funnel deep; cilia at bottom and top..
.....Family 9 Colpodidae (p. 601)

Endozoic

Commensal in vertebrates.....
.....Family 10 Entorhipidiidae (p. 603)

Parasitic in vertebrates

Ciliation uniform

With concreted vacuoles.....
.....Family 11 Paraisotrichidae (p. 605)

Without such vacuoles.....
.....Family 12 Isotrichidae (p. 605)

Ciliation not uniform

Cytostome occupies the entire anterior end; cilia only in anterior region.....
.....Family 13 Cyathodiniidae (p. 606)

Cytostome not terminal; tufts of cilia above and below cytostome and in posterior region....
.....Family 14 Blepharocoridae (p. 607)

Family 1 Marynidae Poche

Genus **Maryna** Gruber. Peristome makes a complete circle, thus the cone is entirely separated from anterior edge of body; cytostome left ventral, elongate slit; ridge also with a slit; gelatinous lorica dichotomous.

FIG. 281. a, b, *Maryna socialis* (a, $\times 40$; b, $\times 160$) (Gruber); c, *Mycterothrix erlangeri*, $\times 310$ (Kahl); d, *Trichopelma sphagnetorum*, $\times 570$ (Kahl); e, f, *Pseudomicrothorax agilis* (e, $\times 340$; f, $\times 670$) (Kahl); g, *Drepanomonas dentata*, $\times 540$ (Penard); h, *Microthorax simulans*, $\times 620$ (Kahl); i, *Trimyema compressum*, $\times 410$ (Lackey); j, *Spirozona caudata*, $\times 370$ (Kahl); k, *Trichospira inversa*, $\times 360$ (Kahl).

M. socialis G. (Fig. 281, a, b). About 150μ long; in infusion made from long-dried mud.

Genus **Mycterothrix** Lauterborn (*Trichorhynchus* Balbiani). Anterior cone continuous on dorsal side with body ridge; hence free edge of body only on ventral side; no ventral slit.

M. erlangeri L. (Fig. 281, c). Nearly spherical with zoochlorellae; 50–55 μ by 40–50 μ ; fresh water.

Family 2 Trichopelmidae Kahl

Genus **Trichopelma** Levander (*Leptopharynx* Mermod). Compressed; surface with longitudinal furrows, seen as lines in end-view; coarse ciliation throughout; cytostome toward left edge about 1/3 from the anterior end; cytopharynx tubular; macronucleus spheroid, central; 2 contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

T. sphagnetorum (L.) (Fig. 281, d). 25–40 μ long; in fresh water.

Genus **Pseudomicrothorax** Mermod (*Craspedothorax* Sondheim). More or less compressed; cytostome opens in anterior half toward left side, in a depression surrounded by ciliary rows; body surface marked with a broad longitudinal ridge with cross striation; furrows canal-like; cilia on ventral side; cytopharynx tubular, with elastic rods; fresh water.

P. agilis M. (Fig. 281, e, f). Ellipsoid; 48–58 μ long; in fresh water.

Genus **Drepanomonas** Fresenius (*Drepanoceras* Stein). Highly flattened; aboral surface convex; oral surface flat or concave; with a few deep longitudinal furrows; ciliation sparse; cytostome and a small cytopharynx simple, near the middle of body; fresh water. Several species.

D. dentata F. (Fig. 281, g). With a small process near cytostome; 2 rows of ciliary furrows on both oral and aboral surfaces; cilia on both ends of oral surface; 40–65 μ long; in fresh water.

Genus **Microthorax** Engelmann (*Kreyella* Kahl). Small, flattened; with delicate keeled armor which is more or less pointed anteriorly and rounded posteriorly; ventral armor with 3 ciliary rows; oral depression posterior-ventral, with a stiff ectoplasmic lip on right side, below which there is a small membrane, and with a small tooth on left margin; no cytopharynx; macronucleus spherical; 2 contractile vacuoles; in fresh water. Many species.

M. simulans Kahl (Fig. 281, h). 30–35 μ long; decaying plant infusion, also in moss.

Family 3 Trimyemidae Kahl

Genus **Trimyema** Lackey (*Sciadostoma* Kahl). Ovoid, more or less flattened; anterior end bluntly pointed, posterior end similar or rounded; with a long caudal cilium; cilia on 3–4 spiral rows which are usually located in the anterior half of body; round cytostome near anterior end with a small cytopharynx; spherical macronucleus cen-

tral with a small micronucleus; one contractile vacuole; active swimmer; fresh or salt water.

T. compressum L. (Fig. 281, *i*). About 65μ by 35μ ; Lackey found it in Imhoff tank; fresh and salt water (Kahl). Klein (1930) studied its silverline system.

Family 4 Spirozonidae Kahl

Genus **Spirozona** Kahl. Short spindle-form; anterior end truncate, posterior region drawn out to a rounded end, with a group of longer cilia; spiral ciliation; beginning near right posterior third the central ciliary row runs over ridge to left and then reaches the cytostome; other rows are parallel to it; cytostome in anterior $1/4$, with cytopharynx; ellipsoid macronucleus nearly central; contractile vacuole terminal; fresh water, sapropelic.

S. caudata K. (Fig. 281, *j*). $80-100\mu$ long.

Family 5 Trichospiridae Kahl

Genus **Trichospira** Roux. Body cylindrical; posterior end rounded, anterior end conical in profile, where the cytostome surrounded by 2 spiral rows of cilia, is located; a special ciliary band beginning in the cytostomal region runs down on ventral side, turns spirally to left and circles partially posterior region of body; ciliary rows parallel to it; macronucleus oval, with a micronucleus; contractile vacuole posterior; fresh water, sapropelic.

T. inversa (Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 281, *k*). $70-100\mu$ long.

Family 6 Plagiopylidae Schewiakoff

Genus **Plagiopyla** Stein. Peristome a broad ventrally opened groove from which body ciliation begins; peristomal cilia short, except a zone of longer cilia at anterior end; cytostome near median line at the end of the peristome; cytopharynx long; a peculiar 'stripe band' located on dorsal surface has usually its origin in the peristomal groove, after taking an anterior course for a short distance, curves back and runs down posteriorly near right edge and terminates about $1/3$ the body length from posterior end; macronucleus rounded; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole terminal; free-living or endozoic.

P. nasuta S. (Fig. 282, *a*). Ovoid; tapering anteriorly; peristome at right angles or slightly oblique to the edge; trichocysts at right angles to body surface; macronucleus round to irregular in shape; body about 100μ ($80-180\mu$) long; sapropelic in brackish water. Lynch (1930) observed this ciliate in salt water cultures in California and found it to be $70-114\mu$ by $31-56\mu$ by $22-37\mu$.

P. minuta Powers (Fig. 282, b). 50–75 μ by 36–46 μ ; in the intestine of *Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis*; the Bay of Fundy.

Genus *Lechriopyla* Lynch. Similar to *Plagiopyla*; but with a large internal organella, *furcula*, embracing the vestibule from right, and a large crescentic motorium at left end of peristome; in the intestine of sea-urchins.

FIG. 282. a, *Plagiopyla nasuta*, $\times 340$ (Kahl); b, *P. minuta*, $\times 400$ (Powers); c, *Lechriopyla mystax*, $\times 340$ (Lynch); d, *Sonderia pharyngea*, $\times 590$ (Kirby); e, *S. vorax*, $\times 310$ (Kahl); f, *Clathrostoma viminale*, $\times 220$ (Penard); g, *Physalophrya spumosa*, $\times 160$ (Penard).

L. mystax L. (Fig. 282, c). 113–174 μ long; in the gut of *Strongylocentrotus purpuratus* and *S. franciscanus*; California.

Genus *Sonderia* Kahl. Similar to *Plagiopyla* in general appearance; ellipsoid; flattened; peristome small and varied; body covered by 2–4 μ thick gelatinous envelope which regulates osmosis, since no contractile vacuole occurs (Kahl); with or without a striped band; trichocysts slanting posteriorly; in salt or brackish water. Kirby (1934) showed that several species of the genus are common in the

pools and ditches in salt marshes of California, salinities of which range 3.5–10 per cent or even up to 15–20 per cent.

S. pharyngea Kirby (Fig. 282, *d*). Ovoid to ellipsoid; flattened; 84–110 μ by 48–65 μ ; gelatinous layer about 2 μ thick, with bacteria; about 60 longitudinal ciliary rows, each with 2 borders; peristome about 35 μ long, at anterior end, oblique; with closely set cilia from the opposite inner surfaces; cytopharynx conspicuous; spherical macronucleus anterior, with a micronucleus; trichocysts (7–9 μ long) distributed sparsely and unevenly, oblique to body surface; a group of bristle-like cilia at posterior end; often brightly colored because of food material; in salt marsh, California.

S. vorax Kahl (Fig. 282, *e*). Broadly ellipsoid; size variable, 70–180 μ long; ventral surface flattened; posterior border of peristomal cavity extending anteriorly; in salt marsh; California (Kirby).

Family 7 Clathrostomidae Kahl

Genus **Clathrostoma** Penard. Ellipsoid; with an oval pit in anterior half of the flattened ventral surface, in which occur 3–5 concentric rows of shorter cilia; cytostome a long slit located at the bottom of this pit; with a basket composed of long fibrils on the outer edge of the pit; in fresh water.

C. viminale P. (Fig. 282, *f*). Resembles a small *Frontonia leucas*; macronucleus short sausage-form; 4 micronuclei in a compact group; endoplasm with excretion crystals; 5 preoral ciliary rows; 130–180 μ long; in fresh water.

Family 8 Parameciidae Grobben

Genus **Paramecium** Hill (*Paramaccium* Müller). Cigar- or foot-shaped; circular or ellipsoid in cross section; with a single macronucleus and 1 to several vesicular or compact micronuclei; peristome long, broad, and slightly oblique; in fresh or brackish water. Several species.

P. caudatum Ehrenberg (Figs. 22, *e*; 36; 41, *a–e*; 50; 77; 283, *a*). 180–300 μ long; with a compact micronucleus, a massive macronucleus; 2 contractile vacuoles on aboral surface; posterior end bluntly pointed; in fresh water. The most widely distributed species.

P. aurelia E. (Figs. 81; 56; 283, *b*). 120–180 μ long; 2 small vesicular micronuclei, a massive macronucleus; 2 contractile vacuoles on aboral surface; posterior end more rounded than *P. caudatum*; in fresh water.

P. multimicronucleatum Powers and Mitchell (Figs. 19; 20; 28; 29; 283, *c*). Slightly larger than *P. caudatum*; 3–7 contractile vacuoles; 4

or more vesicular micronuclei; a single macronucleus; in fresh water.

P. bursaria (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 283, d). Foot-shaped, somewhat compressed; about $100\text{--}150\mu$ by $50\text{--}60\mu$; green, with zoochlorellae as symbionts; micronucleus compact; 2 contractile vacuoles; in fresh water.

FIG. 283. Semi-diagrammatic drawings of nine species of *Paramecium* in oral surface view, showing distinguishing characteristics taken from fresh and stained specimens, $\times 230$ (several authors). a, *P. caudatum*; b, *P. aurelia*; c, *P. multimicronucleatum*; d, *P. bursaria*; e, *P. putrinum*; f, *P. calkinsi*; g, *P. trichium*; h, *P. polycaryum*; i, *P. woodruffi*.

P. putrinum Claparède and Lachmann (Fig. 283, e). Similar to *P. bursaria*, but a single contractile vacuole and an elongated macronucleus; no zoochlorellae; $80\text{--}150\mu$ long; in fresh water.

P. calkinsi Woodruff (Fig. 283, f). Foot-shaped; posterior end broadly rounded; $100\text{--}150\mu$ by 50μ ; 2 vesicular micronuclei; 2 contractile vacuoles; rotation of body clockwise when viewed from posterior end; in fresh and brackish water

P. trichium Stokes (Fig. 283, g). Oblong; somewhat compressed; $60\text{--}120\mu$ long; micronucleus compact; 2 contractile vacuoles deeply situated, each with a convoluted outlet; in fresh water.

P. polycaryum Woodruff and Spencer (Fig. 283, h). Form similar to *P. bursaria*; $70\text{--}110\mu$ long; 2 contractile vacuoles; 3–8 vesicular micronuclei; in fresh water.

FIG. 284. a–c, encystment in a species of *Paramecium* (Curtis and Guthrie); d–f, encystment of *P. caudatum*, $\times 380$ (Michelson).

P. woodruffi Wenrich (Fig. 283, i). Similar to *P. polycaryum*; $150\text{--}210\mu$ long; 2 contractile vacuoles; 3–4 vesicular micronuclei; brackish water.

Although *Paramecium* occurs widely in various freshwater bodies throughout the world and has been studied extensively by numerous investigators by mass or pedigree culture method, there are only a few observations concerning the process of encystment. Bütschli considered that *Paramecium* was one of the Protozoa in which encystment did not occur. Stages in encystment were however observed in *P. bursaria* (by Prowazek) and in *P. putrinum* (by Lindner). In recent years, four observers recorded their findings on the encystment of *Paramecium*. Curtis and Guthrie (1927) give figures in their textbook of zoology, showing the process (in *P. caudatum*?) (Fig. 284, a–c),

while Cleveland (1927) injected *Paramecium* culture into the rectum of frogs and observed that the ciliate encysted within a thin membrane. Michelson (1928) found that if *P. caudatum* is kept in Knop-agar medium, the organism becomes ellipsoidal under certain conditions, later spherical to oval, losing all organellae except the nuclei, and develops a thick membrane; the fully formed cyst is elongated and angular, and resembles a sand particle (Fig. 284, *f*). Michelson considers its resemblance to a sand grain as the chief cause of the cyst having been overlooked by workers. In all these cases, it may however be added that excystment has not been established.

Genus **Physalophrya** Kahl. Without peristome; but cytostome located near the anterior half of body, resembles much that of *Paramecium*; although there is no membrane, a ciliary row occurs in the left dorsal wall of cytopharynx; in fresh water. Taxonomic status is not clear; but because of its general resemblance to *Paramecium*, the genus with only one species is mentioned here.

P. spumosa (Penard) (Fig. 282, *g*). Oval to cylindrical; highly plastic; cytoplasm reticulated; numerous contractile vacuoles; 150–320 μ long; in fresh water.

Family 9 Colpodidae Poche

Genus **Colpoda** Müller. Reniform; flattened; right border semicircular; posterior half of left border often convex; oral funnel in the middle of flattened ventral side, but toward left border where depression occurs, which leads into peristome cavity and gives rise dorsally to a diagonal groove; left edge of cytostome bears a cross-striped ciliated area, but no protruding membrane as in *Bryophrya* (p. 602); macronucleus spherical or oval, central; contractile vacuole terminal; in fresh water. Many species.

C. cucullus M. (Fig. 285, *a, b*). About 80 μ (50–120 μ) long; anterior keel with 8–10 indentations; macronucleus with a stellate endosome; trichocysts rod-form; food vacuoles dark; in fresh water with decaying plants and infusion.

C. inflata (Stokes) (Fig. 285, *c*). 40–80 μ long; anterior keel with 6–8 indentations; in fresh water in vegetation.

C. californica Kahl (Fig. 285, *d*). About 30 μ long; highly flattened; cytostome small; protrichocysts very granular; cilia delicate, long, in a few rows; macronucleus with a stellate endosome; in moss; California.

C. steini Maupas. 30–50 μ long; 5–6 preoral ridges; in fresh water. Reynolds (1936) found that it adopts itself to various organs of the land slug, *Agriolimax agrestis*.

C. duodenaria Taylor and Furgason. 20–40 μ (9–60 μ) long; 12 longitudinal ciliary rows; 3 postoral rows; 2 long cilia at the posterior end; long cilia project out from the cytostome along its posterior margin, forming a “beard”; a contractile vacuole terminal; macronucleus ovoid, with crescentic micronucleus; division into 2–8 individuals in division cyst; but no division in trophozoite stage; bacteria-feeder; fresh water. Taylor and Strickland (1939) find that crowding causes encystment.

Genus **Tillina** Gruber. Similar to *Colpoda* in general appearance and structure; but cytopharynx a long curved, ciliated tube; in fresh water.

FIG. 285. a, b. *Colpoda cucullus* (a, $\times 340$; b, oral region) (Kahl); c, *C. inflata*, $\times 540$ (Stokes); d, *C. californica*, $\times 670$ (Kahl); e, f, *Tillina magna*, $\times 100$ (Bresslau); g, *Bresslaia vorax*, $\times 100$ (Kahl); h, *Bryophrya bavariensis*, $\times 280$ (Kahl); i, *Woodruffia rostrata*, $\times 190$ (Kahl).

T. magna G. (Fig. 285, e, f). 180–200 μ long (Gruber); up to 400 μ long (Bresslau); macronucleus oval, with 6 micronuclei; contractile vacuole terminal, with 6 long collecting canals; in stagnant water and also coprozoic.

Genus **Bresslaia** Kahl. General body form resembles *Colpoda*; but cytopharynx large and occupies the entire anterior half.

B. vorax K. (Fig. 285, g). 80–250 μ long; in fresh water.

Genus **Bryophrya** Kahl. Ovoid to ellipsoid; anterior end more or less bent toward left side; cytostome median, about 1/3 from anterior end, its right edge continues in horseshoe form around the posterior end and half of the left edge; anterior portion of left edge of

the cytostome with posteriorly directed membrane; macronucleus oval or spherical; micronuclei; in fresh water.

B. bavariensis K. (Fig. 285, *h*). 50–120 μ long.

Genus **Woodruffia** Kahl. Form similar to *Chilodonella* (p. 588); highly flattened snout bent toward left; cytostome, a narrow diagonal slit, its left edge with a membranous structure and its right edge with densely standing short cilia; macronucleus spherical; several (?) micronuclei; contractile vacuole flattened, terminal; in salt water.

W. rostrata K. (Fig. 285, *i*). 120–180 μ long; salt water culture with *Oscillatoria*.

W. metabolica Johnson and Larson. 85–400 μ long; division cysts 85–155 μ in diameter; resting cysts 40–62 μ in diameter; in freshwater ponds. Johnson and Evans (1939, 1940) find two types of protective cysts in this ciliate: "stable" and "unstable" cysts, formation of both of which depends upon the absence of food. These cysts have three membranes: a thin innermost endocyst, a rigid mesocyst and a gelatinous outer ectocyst. The protoplasmic mass of the stable cyst is smaller, and free from vacuoles, and its ectocyst is thick, while that of the unstable cyst is larger, contains at least one fluid vacuole and its ectocyst is very thin. Crowding, feeding on starved *Paramecium*, increasing the temperature, and increasing the salt concentration of the medium, are said to influence the formation of unstable cysts. The two authors (1941) further reported that when free-swimming individuals were subjected, in the absence of food, to extremes of temperature, high concentrations of hydrogen-ions, and low oxygen tensions, unstable cysts were formed; when the oxygen tension decreased, the tendency to encyst increased, even when ample food was present. The unstable cysts are said to remain viable for six months.

Family 10 **Entorhipidiidae** Madsen

Genus **Entorhipidium** Lynch. Triangular in general outline; colorless; large, 155–350 μ long; flattened; posterior end drawn out, with a bristle; anterior end bent to left; cytostome in depression close to left anterior border, with long cilia; with or without a cross-groove from preoral region; cytopharynx inconspicuous; trichocysts; macronucleus oval to sausage-form; one to several micronuclei; several (excretory) vacuoles left-ventral; in intestine of the starfish, *Strongylocentrotus purpuratus*. Four species.

E. echini L. (Fig. 286, *a*). About 253 μ by 125 μ ; California.

Genus **Entodiscus** Madsen. Broadly or narrowly lancet-like, without narrowed posterior portion; cytostome small on left narrow side,

about $2/5$ the body length from anterior end; without trichocysts; macronucleus central, with a micronucleus; contractile vacuole sub-terminal; swimming movement rapid without interruption. Two species.

E. indomitus M. (Fig. 286, b). $80-117\mu$ by $20-23\mu$; in the intestine of *Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis*.

FIG. 286. a, *Entorhipidium echini*, $\times 270$ (Lynch); b, *Entodiscus indomitus*, $\times 380$ (Madsen); c, *E. borealis*, $\times 380$ (Powers); d, *Biggaria bermudense*, $\times 380$ (Powers); e, *B. echinometris*, $\times 380$ (Powers); f, *Anophrys elongata*, $\times 390$ (Powers); g, *A. aglycus*, $\times 390$ (Powers).

E. borealis (Hentschel) (Fig. 286, c). Oval; cytostome nearer anterior end; $105-170\mu$ by $60-115\mu$; in the gut of *Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis* and *Echinus esculentus*; Powers (1933) studied this species in the first-named host from Maine, and found a supporting

rod which is imbedded in the margin along the right wall of the oral cavity and which he named *stomatostyle*.

Genus **Biggaria** Kahl. Scoop-like form; anterior $2/3$ thin, posterior region thickened, terminating in a rudder-like style; cilia in longitudinal rows; longer cilia on caudal prolongation; cytostome in the posterior half, opening into a vestibule, into which long cilia project from the roof; aperture to cytopharynx with 2 membranes; contractile vacuole subterminal; in the intestine of sea-urchins.

B. bermudense (Biggar) (Fig. 286, d). $90\text{--}185\mu$ by $48\text{--}82\mu$; in *Lytechinus variegatus*; Bermuda (Biggar), North Carolina (Powers). Powers (1935) found the organism at Tortugas in *Lytechinus variegatus*, *Centrechinus antillarum*, *Echinometra lucunter*, *Tripneustes esculentus* and *Astrophyga magnifica*.

B. echinometris (B.) (Fig. 286, e). $80\text{--}195\mu$ by $33\text{--}70\mu$; in *Echinometris subangularis* (Bermuda) and *Lytechinus variegatus* (North Carolina).

Genus **Anophrys** Cohn. Cigar-shaped; flexible; longitudinal ciliary rows; peristome begins near the anterior end, parallel to body axis and about $1/3$ the body length; a row of free cilia on right edge of peristome; cytostome inconspicuous; spherical macronucleus central; contractile vacuole terminal; in the intestine of sea-urchins.

A. elongata Biggar (Fig. 286, f). About 96μ long (Powers); 166μ long (Biggar); in the gut of *Lytechinus variegatus* and *Echinometris subangularis*; Bermuda (Biggar); Powers (1935) found this species also in the hosts mentioned for *Biggaria bermudense*.

A. aglycus Powers (Fig. 286, g). $56\text{--}120\mu$ by $16\text{--}35\mu$; in the gut of *Centrechinus antillarum* and *Echinometra lucunter*; Tortugas.

Family 11 Paraisotrichidae da Cunha

Genus **Paraisotricha** Fiorentini. Uniformly ciliated in more or less spiral longitudinal rows; longer cilia at anterior end; cytostome near anterior tip; contractile vacuole posterior; in the caecum and colon of horse.

P. colpoidea F. (Fig. 287, a). $70\text{--}100\mu$ by $42\text{--}60\mu$.

P. beckeri Hsiung (Fig. 287, b). $52\text{--}98\mu$ by $30\text{--}52\mu$.

Family 12 Isotrichidae Bütschli

Genus **Isotricha** Stein. Ovoid; flattened; dense longitudinal ciliary rows; cytostome at or near anterior end; several contractile vacuoles; reniform macronucleus and a micronucleus connected with, and suspended by, fibrils, **karyophore**; locomotion with posterior end directed forward; in the stomach of cattle and sheep.

I. prostoma S. (Fig. 287, c). 80–195 μ by 53–85 μ .

I. intestinalis S. (Fig. 287, d). 97–130 μ by 68–88 μ .

Genus *Dasytricha* Schuberg. Oval, flattened; cilia in longitudinal spiral rows; no karyophore; in the stomach of cattle.

D. ruminantium S. (Fig. 287, e). 50–75 μ by 30–40 μ .

FIG. 287. a, *Paraisotricha colpoidea*, $\times 270$ (Hsiung); b, *P. beckeri*, $\times 360$ (Hsiung); c, *Isotricha prostoma*, $\times 500$ (Becker and Talbott); d, *I. intestinalis*, $\times 500$ (Becker and Talbott); e, *Dasytricha ruminantium*, $\times 330$ (Becker and Talbott); f, *Cyathodinium piriforme*, $\times 1290$ (Lucas); g, *Blepharocorys uncinata*, $\times 540$ (Reichenow); h, *B. bovis*, $\times 850$ (Dogiel); i, *Charon equi*, $\times 570$ (Hsiung).

Family 13 *Cyathodiniidae* da Cunha

Genus *Cyathodinium* da Cunha. Conical or pyriform; broad cytostome occupies the entire anterior end and extends posteriorly 1/4–3/4 the body length; deep with prominent ridges; oral cilia in a single row on left ridge; body cilia comparatively long, confined to anterior half; macronucleus round or ellipsoid; a micronucleus; one to several contractile vacuoles; in the caecum and colon of guinea pigs.

C. conicum da C. Inverted cone; 50–80 μ by 20–30 μ ; in the caecum of *Cavia aperea* and *C. porcella*.

C. piriforme da C. (Fig. 287, *f*). Typical form inverted pyriform; second form conical with tapering anterior end; contractile vacuole posterior; $30-40\mu$ by $20-30\mu$; in the caecum of *Cavia aperea* and *C. porcella*. Lucas (1932) who made a cytological study of the organism, found some 52 per cent of guinea pigs which she examined in Philadelphia and St. Louis harboring this ciliate.

Family 14 Blepharocoridae Hsiung

Genus **Blepharocorys** Bundle. Oral groove deep, near anterior end; 3 (oral, dorsal and ventral) ciliary zones at anterior end; a caudal ciliary zone; in the caecum and colon of horse or stomach of cattle. Many species.

B. uncinata (Fiorentini) (*B. equi* Schumacher) (Fig. 287, *g*). With a screw-like anterior process; $55-74\mu$ by $22-30\mu$; in the caecum and colon of horse.

B. bovis Dogiel (Fig. 287, *h*). $23-37\mu$ by $10-17\mu$; in the stomach of cattle.

Genus **Charon** Jameson. Two caudal ciliary zones; in the colon of horse or in stomach of ruminants.

C. equi Hsiung (Fig. 287, *i*). $30-48\mu$ by $10-14\mu$; in the colon of horse.

References

- JOHNSON, W. H. and F. R. EVANS 1939 A study of encystment in the ciliate, *Woodruffia metabolica*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 92.
 ———— 1940 Environmental factors affecting cystment in *Woodruffia metabolica*. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 13.
 ———— 1941 A further study of environmental factors affecting cystment in *Woodruffia metabolica*. Ibid., Vol. 14.
 LACKEY, J. B. 1925 The fauna of Imhoff tanks. Bull. N. J. Agr. Exp. Stat., No. 417.
 LUCAS, MIRIAM S. 1932 A study of *Cyathodinium piriforme*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 77.
 LYNCH, J. 1929 Studies on the ciliates from the intestine of *Strongylocentrotus*. I. Univ. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 33.
 ———— 1930 II. Ibid., Vol. 33.
 POWERS, P. B. A. 1933 Studies on the ciliates from sea urchins. I, II. Biol. Bull., Vol. 65.
 ———— 1935 Studies on the ciliates of sea urchins. Papers from Tortugas Lab., Vol. 29.
 TAYLOR, C. V. and W. H. FERGASON 1938 Structural analysis of *Colpoda duodenaria* sp. nov. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 90.
 ———— and A. G. R. STRICKLAND 1939 Reactions of *Colpoda duodenaria* to environmental factors. II. Factors influencing the formation of resting cysts. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 12.
 WENRICH, D. H. 1928 Eight well-defined species of *Paramecium*. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 47.

CHAPTER 35

Order 1 Holotricha Stein (continued)

Suborder 4 Hymenostomata Hickson

Cytostome not connected with peristome. Family 1 Frontoniidae

Cytostome at end or bottom of peristome

Peristome sickle-form, ciliated slit; sunk at right angles to body surface
. Family 2 Ophryoglenidae (p. 617)

Peristome long, begins at anterior end of body

Peristome with a one-layered membrane which forms a pocket surrounding cytostome on right edge and a row of cilia or membrane on left. Family 3 Pleuronematidae (p. 618)

Peristome otherwise

Peristome with 2 one-layered membranes; no distinct ectoplasmic pocket around cytostome. . Family 4 Cohnilembidae (p. 620)

Peristome furrow either covered densely with cilia, besides an undulating membrane on right edge, or with only a thick undulating membrane on the right edge.
. Family 5 Philasteridae (p. 621)

Family 1 Frontoniidae Kahl

Genus **Frontonia** Ehrenberg. Ovoid to ellipsoid; anterior end more broadly rounded than posterior end; flattened; oral groove lies in anterior third or more or less flattened ventral surface, to right of median line; lancet-like with pointed anterior and truncate posterior end; left edge is more curved than right edge, and posteriorly becomes a prominent ectoplasmic lip; cytostome with a complex organization (on left edge a large undulating membrane composed of 3 layers, each being made up of 4 rows of cilia; on right, semi-membranous groups of cilia; 3 outer rows of cilia from the postoral suture; along this suture ectoplasm is discontinuous so that large food matter is taken in; with a small triangular ciliated field posterior to cytostome and left of suture); a long narrow postoral groove which is ordinarily nearly closed; cytopharynx with numerous strong fibrils; ciliary rows close and uniform; ectoplasm with numerous fusiform trichocysts; macronucleus oval; one to several micronuclei; 1-2 contractile vacuoles, with collecting canals and an external pore; fresh or salt water. Bullington (1939) recognizes 14 species.

F. leucas E. (Figs. 22, a, b; 288, a). 150-600 μ long; fresh water.

F. branchiostomae Codreanu (Fig. 288, b). 75-100 μ by 55-95 μ ; commensal in the branchial cavity of Amphioxus.

Genus **Disematostoma** Lauterborn. Somewhat similar to *Frontonia*; pyriform; with broadly rounded, truncate or concave anterior

end and bluntly pointed narrow posterior end; preoral canal wide; a dorsal ridge in posterior region of body; macronucleus sausage-form; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole in middle of body, with long collecting canals; in fresh water.

FIG. 288. a, *Frontonia leucus*, $\times 110$ (Kahl); b, *F. branchiostomae*, $\times 490$ (Codreanu); c, *Disematostoma bütschlii*, $\times 340$ (Kahl); d, *Lembadion bulbinum*, $\times 170$ (Kahl); e, *Tetrhymena geleii*, $\times 950$ (Furgason); f, *Leucophrys patula*, $\times 280$ (Maupas); g, *Colpidium colpoda*, $\times 180$ (Kahl); h, i, *Lambornella stegomyiae*, $\times 340$ (Keilin); j, *Paraglaucoma rostrata*, $\times 400$ (Kahl); k, *Malacophrys rotans*, $\times 500$ (Kahl).

D. bütschlii L. (Fig. 288, c). 135–155 μ long; with or without zoochlorellae; in fresh water.

Genus **Lembadion** Perty. Oval; dorsal side convex, ventral side concave; cytostome $3/4$ – $4/5$ the body length; on its left with a large membrane composed of many ciliary rows and on its right, numerous narrow rows of short free cilia; an undulating membrane and ciliary rows near posterior end; contractile vacuole in mid-dorsal region with a long tubule opening at posterior-right side; close ciliation uniform; macronucleus ellipsoid, subterminal; a micronucleus; long caudal cilia; in fresh water.

L. bullinum P. (Fig. 288, d). 120–200 μ long; posterior cilia 40–50 μ long.

Genus **Tetrahymena** Furgason. Pyriform; small forms; uniform ciliation; ciliary rows or meridians less than 20; 2 postoral meridians; preoral suture straight; cytostome small, close to anterior end, pyriform; its axis parallel to body axis; inconspicuous ectoplasmic ridge or flange on the left margin of mouth; an undulating membrane on right side and 3 membranellae on left of the cytostome; a single contractile vacuole; macronucleus ovoid; micronucleus absent (?) in one species; conjugation unobserved; fresh water. Furgason (1940) established this genus after making a comparative study with *Leucophrys*, *Glaucoma* and *Colipidium*, as the most primitive genus of the group.

T. geleii F. (Figs. 288, e; 289, a, e, f). Pear to cucumber in shape; 40–60 μ long; 17–19 ciliary meridians; pyriform cytostome about $1/10$ the body length; macronucleus irregularly ovoid; micronucleus unobserved; bacteria-feeder, but may be cultured in sterile media; pond water.

T. vorax (Kidder, Lilly and Claff) (*Glaucoma vorax* K. L. and C.) (Fig. 38). Form and size vary; bacteria-feeders elongate pyriform, 50–75 μ long; saprozoic forms fusiform, 30–70 μ long, decreasing in size with the age of culture; sterile particle-feeders, 60–80 μ long; carnivores and cannibals broadly pyriform, 100–250 μ long; 19–21 ciliary meridians; macronucleus ovoid, central; in carnivores, outline irregular; a single micronucleus; pond water.

Genus **Leucophrys** Ehrenberg. Broadly pyriform; cytostome large, pyriform, with its axis parallel to body axis; ectoplasmic flange along left margin; undulating membrane on right and 3 membranellae on left of mouth; 5 postoral ciliary meridians; macronucleus ovoid; a micronucleus; fresh water.

L. patula E. (Figs. 288, f; 289, b, g). Broadly pyriform; 80–160 μ long; occasionally small forms occur; cytostome pyriform, about $1/3$

the body length; 40–45 ciliary meridians; macronucleus irregularly ovoid; a micronucleus attached to macronucleus; carnivorous, but may be cultured in sterile media (Kidder); fresh water.

Genus **Glaucoma** Ehrenberg (*Dallasia* Stokes). Ovoid or ellipsoid; cytostome about one-fourth the body length, near anterior end, ellipsoid; cytostome with an inconspicuous undulating membrane on right and 3 membranellae on left; ectoplasmic ridge on right border of mouth; ciliation uniform; 30–40 ciliary meridians; 7 postoral meridians; macronucleus rounded; a micronucleus; a contractile vacuole; with or without 1 or more caudal bristles; fresh water.

FIG. 289. Diagrammatic oral views and oral apparatus of four genera. Ciliary meridians of: a, *Tetrhymena geleii*; b, *Leucophrys patula*; c, *Glaucoma scintillans*; and d, *Colpidium campylum*. All $\times$ about 535. e, cytostome of *Tetrhymena geleii*, showing the ectoplasmic ridge and 3 membranellae on left and a large undulating membrane on right. Diagrams of cytostome of: f, *T. geleii*; g, *Leucophrys patula*; h, *Glaucoma scintillans*; and i, *Colpidium colpoda*. (a, c, d, modified after Kidder; b, e–i, modified after Furgason.)

G. scintillans E. (Fig. 289, c, h). Ovate with rounded ends; 45–75 μ long; U-shaped cytostome, about one-fourth the body length, oblique; ectoplasmic flange and 3 membranellae conspicuous; a contractile vacuole in posterior one-third; macronucleus oval, central; a micronucleus; bacteria-feeder, but cultivable in bacteria-free culture media (Kidder); fresh water.

Genus **Colpidium** Stein. Elongate reniform; ciliary meridians variable in number, but typically one postoral meridian; small tri-

angular cytostome one-fourth from anterior end toward right side; a small ectoplasmic flange along right border of cytostome which shows an undulating membrane on right and 3 membranellae on left; rounded macronucleus; a micronucleus; a contractile vacuole; fresh or salt water.

C. colpoda (Ehrenberg) (*Tillina helia* Stokes) (Figs. 10; 288, *g*; 289, *i*). Elongate reniform; 90–150 μ long; cytostome about one-tenth the body length; 55–60 ciliary meridians; preoral suture curved to left; macronucleus oval, central; a micronucleus; fresh water. Burbank (1942) recently examined the effect of various food bacteria on the division rate of this ciliate.

C. campylum (Stokes) (Fig. 289, *d*). Elongate reniform; 27–30 ciliary meridians; preoral suture curved to right; 50–70 μ long; Kidder cultured the organism bacteria-free; in fresh and brackish water.

C. striatum S. Similar to the last species; contractile vacuole further posterior; 50 μ long; in standing water.

Genus **Lambornella** Keilin. Ellipsoid; densely ciliated; close longitudinal striation; small oral pit in anterior half; macronucleus spherical; a micronucleus; cyst hemispherical; parasitic. One species.

L. stegomyiae K. (Fig. 288, *h, i*). 50–70 μ long; cysts 30–40 μ in diameter; in the haemocoel of *Stegomyia scutellaris*.

Genus **Paraglaucoma** Kahl. Somewhat similar to *Glaucoma*; but without perioral ectoplasmic ridge; a membrane on right ridge of the cytostome; anterior end drawn out to a point in profile, posterior end rounded; a stiff posterior bristle; a contractile vacuole; rapid zig-zag movement. One species.

P. rostrata K. (Fig. 288, *j*). 60–80 μ long; in fresh water (often in dead rotiferan body); California, Wisconsin (Kahl).

Genus **Malacophrys** Kahl. Ellipsoid or cylindrical; plastic; cilia uniformly close-set in longitudinal rows; slit-like cytostome at anterior extremity; in fresh water.

M. rotans K. (Fig. 288, *k*). Oval; close and dense ciliation; spherical macronucleus central; a micronucleus; a single contractile vacuole; body 40–50 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Espejoia** Bürger (*Balantiophorus* Penard). Ellipsoid; anterior end obliquely truncate; large cytostome at anterior end; post-oral groove on ventral side, 1/4–1/3 the body length; a conspicuous membrane on the left edge of groove; in gelatinous envelope of eggs of insects and molluscs.

E. musicola (P.) (Fig. 290, *a*). Elongate; right side flat, left side convex; 80–100 μ long.

Genus **Cryptochilidium** Schouteden. Ellipsoid; with rounded anterior end, posterior end pointed in profile; highly compressed; uniform and close ciliation; cytostome near middle; one or more longer cilia at posterior end; contractile vacuole posterior; macronucleus round; a micronucleus; commensal.

C. echini (Maupas) (Fig. 290, b). 70–140 μ long; in the gut of *Echinus lividus*.

Genus **Eurychilum** André. Elongate ellipsoid; anterior end somewhat narrowed; cilia short; dense ciliation not in rows; contractile vacuole terminal; macronucleus band-form; cytostome about 2/5 from anterior end and toward right, with a strong undulating membrane on left; no cytopharynx; actively swimming. One species.

E. actinae A. (Fig. 290, c). About 155 μ long; in gastrovascular cavity of *Sagartia parasitica*.

Genus **Monochilum** Schewiakoff. Ovoid to ellipsoid; medium large; uniform and dense ciliation in rows; oblong cytostome left of median line, in about 1/4 the body length from anterior end; short cytopharynx conical, with an undulating membrane; contractile vacuole near middle; in fresh water.

M. frontatum S. (Fig. 290, d). Anterior end broader; ventrally flattened, dorsally somewhat convex; macronucleus ellipsoid; a micronucleus; feeds on algae; 80 μ by 30 μ .

Genus **Dichilum** Schewiakoff. Similar to *Monochilum*; but membrane on both edges of the cytostome; in fresh or salt water.

D. cuneiforme S. (Fig. 290, e). Ellipsoid; cytostome about 1/5 the body length from anterior end; right membrane larger than left; small cytopharynx; macronucleus ellipsoid; about 40 μ by 24 μ ; in fresh water.

Genus **Loxocephalus** Eberhard. Ovoid to cylindrical; sometimes compressed; crescentic cytostome on slightly flattened area near anterior end, with 2 membranes; often a zone of cilia around body; usually 1 (or more) long caudal cilium; endoplasm granulated, yellowish to dark brown; macronucleus ovoid; a single contractile vacuole; in fresh or brackish water. Many species.

L. plagius (Stokes) (Fig. 290, f). 50–65 μ long; nearly cylindrical; 15–16 ciliary rows; endoplasm usually darkly colored; in fresh water among decaying vegetation.

Genus **Balanonema** Kahl. Similar to *Loxocephalus*; but with plug-like ends; cytostome difficult to see; a caudal cilium; macronucleus oval; contractile-vacuole; ciliation uniform or broken in the middle zone; fresh water.

B. biceps (Penard) (Fig. 290, g). Ellipsoid; no cilia in the middle

region; contractile vacuole central; macronucleus posterior to it; $42\text{--}50\mu$ long.

Genus **Platynematum** Kahl. Ovoid or ellipsoid; highly flattened; with a long caudal cilium; contractile vacuole posterior-right; small cytostome more or less toward right side, with 2 outer membranes; ciliary furrows horseshoe-shaped; in fresh or salt water.

P. sociale (Penard) (Fig. 290, *h*). Anterior half more flattened; ventral side concave; cytostome in the anterior third; yellowish and granulated; $30\text{--}50\mu$ long; sapropelic in fresh and brackish water.

FIG. 290. a, *Espejoia musicola*, $\times 300$ (Penard); b, *Cryptochilidium echini*, $\times 380$ (Powers); c, *Eurychilum actinae*, $\times 360$ (André); d, *Monochilum frontatum*, $\times 440$ (Schewiakoff); e, *Dichilum cuneiforme*, $\times 700$ (Schewiakoff); f, *Loxocephalus plagius*, $\times 380$ (Stokes); g, *Balanonema biceps*, $\times 600$ (Penard); h, *Platynematum sociale*, $\times 500$ (Kahl); i, *Saprophilus agitatus*, $\times 450$ (Stokes); j, *S. muscorum*, $\times 440$ (Kahl); k, *Cinetochilum margaritaceum*, $\times 440$ (Kahl).

Genus **Saprophilus** Stokes. Ovoid or pyriform; compressed, cytostome in anterior $1/4\text{--}1/3$ near right edge, with two membranes; macronucleus spherical; contractile vacuole posterior; in fresh water.

S. agitatus S. (Fig. 290, *i*). Ellipsoid; ends bluntly pointed; compressed; plastic; close striation; about 40μ long; in fresh water in decomposing animal matter such as Gammarus.

S. muscorum Kahl (Fig. 290, *j*). Cytostome large, with a large membrane; trichocysts; contractile vacuole with a distinct canal; body about 35μ long; in fresh water.

Genus **Cinetochilum** Perty. Oval to ellipsoid; highly flattened; cilia on flat ventral surface only; cytostome right of median line in posterior half, with a membrane on both edges which form a pocket; oblique non-ciliated postoral field leads to left posterior end; with 3-4 caudal cilia; macronucleus spherical, central; contractile vacuole terminal; in fresh or salt water.

C. margaritaceum P. (Fig. 290, *k*). $15-45\mu$ long; in fresh and brackish water.

Genus **Dexiotrichides** Kahl (*Dexiotricha* Stokes). Reniform; compressed; cytostome near middle, with two membranes; long cilia sparse; a special oblique row of cilia; a single caudal cilium; contractile vacuole terminal; spheroidal macronucleus anterior; a micronucleus; in fresh water. One species.

D. centralis (Stokes) (Fig. 291, *a*). About $30-45\mu$ long; in decaying vegetable matter.

Genus **Cyrtolophosis** Stokes. Ovoid or ellipsoid; with a mucilaginous envelope in which it lives, but from which it emerges freely; cytostome near anterior end with a pocket-forming membrane; on right side a short row of special stiff cilia, bent ventrally; sparse ciliation spiral to posterior-left; spherical macronucleus central; a contractile vacuole; in fresh water.

C. mucicola S. (Fig. 291, *b*). $25-28\mu$ long; in infusion of leaves.

Genus **Urocentrum** Nitzsch. Short cocoon-shaped, constricted behind the middle; ventral surface flat; 2 broad girdles of cilia; fused cilia at posterior end; with a zone of short cilia in the constricted area; cytopharynx with a stiff ectoplasmic membrane which separates 2 undulating membranes (on left) and ciliated zone (on right); macronucleus, horseshoe-shape, posterior; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole terminal, with 8 long canals which reach the middle of body; in fresh water.

U. turbo (Müller) (Fig. 291, *c*). $50-80\mu$ long. Kidder and Diller (1934) studied its fission.

Genus **Urozona** Schewiakoff. Ovoid, both ends broadly rounded; a distinct constriction in the ciliated middle region; ciliary band composed of 5-6 rows of cilia, directed anteriorly and arranged longitudinally; cytostome with a membrane; rounded macronucleus and a micronucleus posterior; contractile vacuole subterminal; in fresh water.

U. bütschlii S. (Fig. 291, *d*). $20-25\mu$ long (Kahl); $30-40\mu$ (Schewiakoff); in stagnant water.

Genus *Uronema* Dujardin (*Cryptochilum* Maupas). Oval to elongate ovoid; slightly flattened; anterior region not ciliated; inconspicuous peristome with ciliated right edge; cytostome on the ven-

FIG. 291. a, *Dextrotrichides centralis*, $\times 500$ (Kahl); b, *Cyrtolophosis mucicola*, $\times 670$ (Kahl); c, *Urocentrum turbo*, $\times 200$ (Bütschli); d, *Urozona bütschlii*, $\times 440$ (Kahl); e, *Uronema marina*, $\times 490$ (Kahl); f, g, *U. pluricaudatum*, $\times 940$ (Noland); h, *Homalogastra setosa*, $\times 450$ (Kahl); i, j, *Stokesia vernalis*, $\times 340$ (Wenrich); k, *Ophryoglena collini*, $\times 150$ (Lichtenstein); l, *O. pyriformis*, $\times 180$ (Rossolimo); m, *O. intestinalis*, $\times 55$ (Rossolimo).

tral side close to left border in the anterior half, with a small tongue-like membrane; cytopharynx indistinct; macronucleus spherical, central; contractile vacuole terminal; in salt or fresh water.

U. marina D. (Fig. 291, e). 30–50 μ long; in salt water in decaying algae.

U. pluricaudatum Noland (Fig. 291, f, g). Body appears to be twisted in dorsal view, due to a spiral depression that runs obliquely down toward cytostome; with about 8 caudal cilia; in salt water; Florida.

Genus **Homalogastra** Kahl. Broad fusiform; furrows spiral to left; a long caudal cilium; a group of cilia on right and left side of it; macronucleus spherical, anterior; contractile vacuole posterior; in fresh water.

H. setosa K. (Fig. 291, h). About 30 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Stokesia** Wenrich. Oblique cone with rounded angles; flat anterior surface uniformly ciliated; with peristome bearing zones of longer cilia, at the bottom of which is located the cytostome; a girdle of longer cilia around the organism in the region of its greatest diameter; pellicle finely striated; with zoochlorellae; trichocysts; free-swimming; in freshwater pond. One species.

S. vernalis W. (Fig. 291, i, j). 100–160 μ in diameter; macronucleus; 2–4 micronuclei; fresh water.

Family 2 Ophryoglenidae Kent

Genus **Ophryoglena** Ehrenberg. Ellipsoidal to cylindrical; ends rounded or attenuated; preoral depression in form of '6' due to an ectoplasmic membrane extending from the left edge, cilia on the right edge; cytostome deep-seated; 1 (or 2) contractile vacuole with long radiating canals, opens through pores on right ventral side; macronucleus of various forms with several endosomes; a micronucleus; fresh or salt water or parasitic. Many species.

O. collini Lichtenstein (Fig. 291, k). Pyriform; macronucleus horseshoe-shape; 200–300 μ by 120–230 μ ; in the caecum of Baetis larvae.

O. parasitica André. Ovoid; dark; micronucleus (?); 170–350 μ by 180–200 μ ; in the gastrovascular cavity of *Dendrocoelum lacteum*.

O. pyriformis Rossolimo (Fig. 291, l). Flask-shape; 240–300 μ long; in the gastrovascular cavity of various Turbellaria.

O. intestinalis R. (Fig. 291, m). Up to 1.5 mm. by 450–500 μ ; smallest 60 μ long; in the gastrovascular cavity of *Dicotylus* sp.

O. atra Lieberkühn. Oval, posterior end broadly rounded; 300–500 μ long; grayish; filled with globules; cytostome near anterior end; macronucleus elongated; a contractile vacuole; trichocysts; stagnant fresh water.

Family 3 **Pleuronematidae** Kent

Genus **Pleuronema** Dujardin. Ovoid to ellipsoid; peristome begins at anterior end and extends for $2/3$ the body length; a conspicuous membrane at both edges; semicircular swelling to left near oral area; no cytopharynx; close striation longitudinal; one to many posterior sensory stiff cilia; macronucleus round or oval; a micronucleus; a contractile vacuole; trichocysts in some species; fresh or salt water, also commensal in freshwater mussels.

P. crassum D. (Fig. 292, a). 70–120 μ long; somewhat compressed; Woods Hole (Calkins).

FIG. 292. a, *Pleuronema crassum*, $\times 240$ (Kahl); b, *P. anodontae*, $\times 290$ (Kahl); c, d, *P. setigerum*, $\times 540$ (Noland); e, *P. coronatum*, $\times 540$ (Noland); f, *P. marinum*, $\times 400$ (Noland); g, *Cyclidium litomesum*, $\times 300$ (Stokes); h, *Cristigera phoenix*, $\times 500$ (Penard); i, *C. media*, $\times 400$ (Kahl).

P. anodontae Kahl (Fig. 292, b). About 55 μ long; posterior cilium about $1/2$ the body length; in Sphaerium, Anodonta.

P. setigerum Calkins (Fig. 292, c, d). Ellipsoid; flattened; ventral surface slightly concave; about 25 ciliary rows; 38–50 μ long (Noland); in salt water; Massachusetts, Florida.

P. coronatum Kent (Fig. 292, e). Elongate ovoid; both ends equally rounded; caudal cilia long; about 40 ciliary rows; 47–75 μ long (Noland); in fresh and salt water; Florida.

P. marinum D. (Fig. 292, *f*). Elongate ovoid; trichocysts distinct; caudal cilia medium long; about 50 ciliary rows; 51–126 μ long (Noland); in salt water; Florida.

Genus **Cyclidium** Müller. Small, 15–60 μ long; ovoid; usually with refractile pellicle; with a caudal cilium; peristome near right side; on its right edge occurs a membrane which forms a pocket around cytostomal groove and on its left edge either free cilia or a membrane which unites with that on right; no semicircular swelling on left of oral region; round macronucleus with a micronucleus; contractile vacuole posterior; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

C. litomesum Stokes (Fig. 292, *g*). About 40 μ long; dorsal surface slightly convex with a depression in middle; ventral surface more or less concave; cilia long; in fresh water.

Genus **Cristigera** Roux. Similar to *Cyclidium*; much compressed; with a postoral depression; peristome closer to mid-ventral line; fresh or salt water. Several species.

C. phoenix Penard (Fig. 292, *h*). 35–50 μ long; fresh water.

C. media Kahl (Fig. 292, *i*). 45–50 μ long; in salt water.

Genus **Ctedoctema** Stokes. Similar to *Cyclidium* in body form; peristome nearer median line, diagonally right to left; right peristomal ridge with a sail-like membrane which surrounds the cytostome at its posterior end; trichocysts throughout; fresh water.

C. acanthocrypta S. (Fig. 293, *a*). Ovoid; anterior end truncate; macronucleus round, anterior; about 35 μ long; in fresh water among vegetation.

Genus **Calypotricha** Phillips. Somewhat resembles *Pleuronema* or *Cyclidium*; but dwelling in a lorica which is opened at both ends; with zoochlorellae; fresh water.

C. pleuronemoides P. (Fig. 293, *b*). Lorica about 85 μ high; body about 50 μ long; Kellicott's (1885) form is more elongated; in fresh water.

Genus **Histiobalantium** Stokes. Ovoid; ventral side flattened; ciliation uniform; long stiff cilia distributed over the body surface; peristome deep; both anterior and posterior regions with a well-developed membrane, connected with the undulating membrane; macronucleus in 2 parts; 1–2 micronuclei; several contractile vacuoles distributed; fresh water.

H. natans (Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 293, *c*). 70–110 μ long.

H. semisetatum Noland (Fig. 293, *d*). Elongate ellipsoid; posterior end bluntly rounded; macronucleus spherical; longer cilia on posterior half only; contractile vacuoles on dorsal side; 126–205 μ long; salt water; Florida.

Genus **Pleurocoptes** Wallengren. Ovoid, dorsal side hemispherical, ventral side flattened; peristome large, reaching the posterior 1/3; cytopharynx indistinct; longer cilia along peristome; macronucleus spherical; several micronuclei; contractile vacuole terminal; ectocommensal.

P. hydractinae W. (Fig. 293, e). 60–70 μ long; on *Hydractinia echinata*.

FIG. 293. a, *Ctedoctema acanthocrypta*, $\times 840$ (Kahl); b, *Calyptotricha pleuronemoides*, $\times 180$ (Kahl); c, *Histiobalantium natans*, $\times 420$ (Kahl); d, *H. semisetatum*, $\times 270$ (Noland); e, *Pleurocoptes hydractinae*, $\times 470$ (Wallengren); f, *Cohnilembus fusiformis*, $\times 560$ (Kahl); g, *C. caeci*, $\times 390$ (Powers); h, *Philaster digitiformis*, $\times 220$ (Kahl); i, *P. armata*, $\times 240$ (Kahl); j, *Helicostoma buddenbrocki*, $\times 190$ (Kahl).

Family 4 Cohnilembidae Kahl

Genus **Cohnilembus** Kahl (*Lembus* Cohn). Slender spindle-form; flexible; peristome from anterior end to the middle of body or longer, curved to right, with 2 membranes on right edge; a caudal cilium or a few longer cilia at posterior end; macronucleus oval, central; in salt or fresh water, some parasitic.

C. fusiformis (C.) (Fig. 293, *f*). Striation spiral; peristome about $1/6$ the body length; a few cilia at posterior end; oval macronucleus central; contractile vacuole posterior; about 60μ long; in fresh water.

C. cacci Powers (Fig. 293, *g*). About $32\text{--}92\mu$ long; in the intestine of *Tripneustes esculentus* and other echinoids; Tortugas.

Family 5 Philasteridae Kahl

Genus **Philaster** Fabre-Domergue (*Philasterides* Kahl). Body cylindrical; peristome about $1/3\text{--}2/5$ the body length, broader near cytostome and with a series of longer cilia; cytostome with a triangular membrane; cytopharynx (?); ciliation uniform; a caudal cilium; trichocysts; oval macronucleus with a micronucleus, central; contractile vacuole terminal or central; in salt or fresh water.

P. digitiformis F-D. (Fig. 293, *h*). Anterior region bent dorsally; contractile vacuole terminal; $100\text{--}150\mu$ long; salt water.

P. armata (K.) (Fig. 293, *i*). Anterior end more or less straight; peristome difficult to see; contractile vacuole central; $70\text{--}80\mu$ long; fresh water.

Genus **Helicostoma** Cohn. Similar to *Philaster* in general appearance; preoral side-pouch curved around posterior edge of peristome and separated from it by a refractile curved band; with or without a pigment spot near cytostome; macronucleus oval or band-form; contractile vacuole terminal; in salt water.

H. buddenbrocki Kahl (Fig. 293, *j*). $130\text{--}200\mu$ long; in salt and brackish water.

References

- BULLINGTON, W. E. 1939 A study of spiraling in the ciliate *Frontonia* with a review of the genus and a description of two new species. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 92.
- BURBANK, W. D. 1942 Physiology of the ciliate *Colpidium colpoda*. I. The effect of various bacteria as food on the division rate of *Colpidium colpoda*. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 15.
- FURGASON, W. H. 1940 The significant cytostomal pattern of the "Glaucoma-Colpidium group," and a proposed new genus and species, *Tetrahymena geleii*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 94.
- KAHL, A. 1931 *Urtiere oder Protozoa*. In: Dahl's *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands*, Part 21.
- KIDDER, G. W. 1941 Growth studies on ciliates. VII. Biol. Bull., Vol. 80.
- D. M. LILLY and C. L. CLAFF 1940 Growth studies on ciliates. IV. Ibid., Vol. 78.
- NOLAND, L. E. 1937 Observations on marine ciliates of the Gulf coast of Florida. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 56.

- PÁRDUCZ, B. 1940 Verwandtschaftliche Beziehungen zwischen den Gattungen Uronema und Cyclidium. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 93.
- WENRICH, D. H. 1929 Observation on some freshwater ciliates. I. *Teutophrys trisula* Chatton and de Beauchamp and *Stokesia vernalis* n. sp. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 48.

CHAPTER 36

Order 1 **Holotricha** Stein (continued)

Suborder 5 **Thigmotricha** Chatton and Lwoff

THE majority of the ciliates placed in this suborder inhabit the mantle cavity of mussels. They possess thigmotactic cilia with which they attach themselves to the host body. Though appearing heterogeneous, Chatton and Lwoff hold that there is a phylogenetic unity among them, which has been brought about by the degenerative influence because of the similar conditions of habitat.

Without tentacles

Ciliation uniform; ciliary rows meridional, close; peristome does not begin near the anterior end

Thigmotactic cilia on entire broad side; with large peristome..... Family 1 **Conchophthiridae**

Thigmotactic cilia only on a small field of left broad side; peristome small..... Family 2 **Thigmophryidae** (p. 624)

Long cilia only on posterior margin where cytostome is located; sucker at anterior end..... Family 3 **Hysteroecinetidae** (p. 624)

Ciliation unequal on 2 broad sides or spirally arranged, or highly rudimentary

Cytostome with conspicuous peristome bearing long cilia..... Family 4 **Ancistrumidae** (p. 626)

Cytostome rudimentary..... Family 5 **Sphenophryidae** (p. 628)

With tentacular attaching organella... Family 6 **Hypocomidae** (p. 629)

Family 1 **Conchophthiridae** Reichenow

Genus **Conchophthirus** Stein. Oval to ellipsoid; flattened; right margin concave at cytostomal region, left margin convex; ventral surface somewhat flattened, dorsal surface convex; cytostome on right side near middle in a depression with an undulating membrane; macronucleus; micronucleus; contractile vacuole opens through a canal to right side; in the mantle cavity and gills of various mussels. Kidder made careful studies of several species.

C. anodontae (Ehrenberg) (Figs. 63; 294, *a*). Ovoid; cytostome in anterior third, with an overhanging projection in front; cytopharynx, surrounded by circular fibrils, continues down as a fine, distensible tubule, to near the macronucleus; with peristomal basket; ciliary grooves originate in a wide ventral suture near anterior end; anterior region filled with refractile granules; macronucleus posterior; contractile vacuole between nuclei and peristome, with a slit-like aperture (Fig. 27); 65–125 μ by 47–86 μ ; in the mantle

cavity, gills and on non-ciliated surface of palps of *Elliptio complanatus*; Woods Hole.

C. curtus Engelmann. Somewhat broader; 60–125 μ by 50–90 μ ; peristomal field smaller; cytopharynx less conspicuous, but longer; ciliation dense; endoplasmic granules are more closely packed and do not extend as far out toward anterior end; macronucleus central. Kidder found this ciliate in the mantle cavity of *Anodonta marginata*, *A. implicata*, *A. catarecta*, *Lampsilis radiata*, *L. cariosa* and *Alasmidonta undulata* which were obtained from the freshwater lakes of Massachusetts and New York.

C. magna Kidder. Much larger; 123–204 μ by 63–116 μ ; closer ciliation; anterior 1/3 filled with smaller granules; irregularly outlined macronucleus, 25–30 μ in diameter, central; 2 (or 1) micronuclei; aperture for contractile vacuole large; mantle cavity of *Elliptio complanatus*; Massachusetts.

C. caryoclada K. (Fig. 294, b). Oval; extremely flattened; leaf-like; cytostome small, in posterior fourth; macronucleus conspicuously branched; 2 (or 1) micronuclei; 140–250 μ by 90–160 μ ; mantle cavity of the edible clam, *Siliqua patula*; Oregon.

C. mytili de Morgan (Fig. 55). Reniform; 130–220 μ by 76–161 μ ; peristomal groove on the right side; trichocysts conspicuous along frontal margin; macronucleus oval; 2 micronuclei. Kidder (1933) found the organism on the foot of the common mussel, *Mytilus edulis*, in New York and studied its division and conjugation.

Genus **Myxophyllum** Raabe. Oval or spheroid; pellicle elastic and flexible; peristome on posterior right, without undulating membrane; 7 macronuclei; a micronucleus; ciliation uniform; in the slime covering land pulmonates.

M. steenstrupi (Stein) (Fig. 294, c). 120 μ by 100–120 μ ; on *Succinea putris*, etc.

Family 2 Thigmophryidae Chatton and Lwoff

Genus **Thigmophrya** Chatton and Lwoff. Elongate; round or oblong in cross section; cytostome in posterior third; contractile vacuole opens in cytopharynx; on the gills or palps of lamelibranchs.

T. macomae C. and L. Elongate ovoid; flattened; ventral surface slightly concave; oral funnel opened; contractile vacuole opens at the bottom of cytopharynx; numerous ciliary rows; about 110 μ by 40 μ ; on the gills of *Macoma (Tellina) balthica*.

Family 3 Hysterocinetidae Diesing

Inclusion of this family in the present suborder is provisional,

since its affinity to other forms is not yet clear. Beers who placed it in Hymenostomata, in agreement with Cheissin states that the nutrition in two genera is in part saprozoic, and that the organisms are in the process of acquiring the saprozoic habit and the astomatous condition.

FIG. 294. a, *Conchophthirus anodontae*, $\times 300$ (Kidder); b, *C. caryoclada*, $\times 200$ (Kidder); c, *Myxophyllum steenstrupi*, $\times 280$ (Raabe); d, *Hysterozineta eiseniae*, $\times 190$ (Beers); e, *Ptychostomum bacteriophilum*, $\times 375$ (Miyashita); f, g, dorsal and side views of *Ancistruma mytili*, $\times 500$ (Kidder); h, *A. isseli*, $\times 500$ (Kidder).

Genus **Hysterozineta** Diesing (*Ladopsis* Cheissen). Elongate; flattened; flexible, an inverted V- or U-shaped sucker conspicuously present in antero-ventral margin; ciliation uniform; cytostome and cytopharynx at the posterior end; an undulating membrane along peristome which borders the posterior margin of body; macronucleus elongate; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole posterior; in the intestine of gastropods and oligochaetes. 4 species (Beers, 1938).

H. eiseniae Beers (Fig. 294, d). $190\text{--}210\mu$ by $35\text{--}40\mu$; cytostome not functional; endoplasm with small granules; macronucleus $45\text{--}50\mu$ long; sucker inverted V, about $25\text{--}30\mu$ long; in the intestine of *Eisenia lönnbergi*.

Genus **Ptychostomum** Stein (*Lada* Vejdovsky). Sucker circular or ovoid; macronucleus ovoid or reniform, not elongate; in oligochaetes. Several species.

P. bacteriophilum Miyashita (Fig. 294, *e*). Elongate oval; 70–130 μ by 30–45 μ ; sucker oval and large, about 50 μ in diameter; macronucleus ellipsoid; endoplasm with numerous rods (symbiotic bacteria?); in *Criodrilus* sp. (Oligochaeta).

Family 4 **Ancistrumidae** Issel

Genus **Ancistruma** Strand (*Ancistrum* Maupas). Ovoid, pyriform or somewhat irregular; flattened; right side with more numerous large cilia than the left; peristome on right side; cytostome near posterior extremity; macronucleus round or sausage-shape, central; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole posterior; commensal in the mantle cavity of various marine mussels. Many species.

A. mytili (Quennerstedt) (Figs. 18; 294, *f*, *g*). Oval; dorsal surface convex, ventral surface concave; dorsal edge of peristome curves around the cytostome; peristomal floor folded and protruding; longitudinal ciliary rows on both surfaces; three rows of long cilia on peristomal edges; macronucleus sausage-form; a compact micronucleus anterior; 52–74 μ by 20–38 μ . Kidder (1933) found it in abundance in the mantle cavity of *Mytilus edulis* at Woods Hole and New York.

A. isseli Kahl (Fig. 294, *h*). Bluntly pointed at both ends; 70–88 μ by 31–54 μ . Kidder (1933) observed it abundantly in the mantle cavity of the solitary mussel, *Modiola modiolus*, Massachusetts and New York, and studied its conjugation and nuclear reorganization.

Genus **Eupoterion** MacLennan and Connell. Small ovoid; slightly compressed; cilia short, in longitudinal rows; rows of long cilia in peristome on mid-ventral surface and extend posteriorly, making a half turn to left around cytostome; small conical cytostome lies in postero-ventral margin of body; contractile vacuole terminal; large round macronucleus anterior; a micronucleus; commensal.

E. pernix M. and C. (Fig. 295, *a*). 46–48 ciliary rows; 6 rows of heavy peristomal cilia; 38–56 μ long; in the intestinal contents of the mask limpet, *Acmaea persona*; California.

Genus **Ancistrina** Cheissin. Ovoid; anterior end attenuated; peristomal field along narrow right side; 15–18 ciliary rows parallel to peristomal ridges; cytostome right-posterior, marked with oral ring, with a membrane and a zone of membranellae; right ridge of peristome marked by two adoral ciliary rows; macronucleus anterior, spheroidal; a micronucleus; commensal.

A. ovata C. (Fig. 295, b). 38–48 μ by 15–20 μ ; in the mantle cavity of molluscs: *Benedictia biacalensis*, *B. limneoides* and *Choanomphalus* sp.

FIG. 295. a, *Eupoterion pernix*, $\times 670$ (MacLennan and Connell); b, *Ancistrina ovata*, $\times 840$ (Cheissin); c, *Ancistrella choanomphali*, $\times 840$ (Cheissin); d, *Boveria teredinidi*, $\times 550$ (Pickard); e, *Plagiospira crinita*, $\times 740$ (Issel); f, *Hemispeira asteriasi*, $\times 940$ (Wallengren); g, h, *Hypocomacinetarum*, $\times 400$ (Collin); i–k, *H. patellarum* (i, j, $\times 820$; k, $\times 670$) (Lichtenstein).

Genus **Ancistrella** Cheissin. Elongate; ends rounded; ventral surface less convex than dorsal surface; 16–17 longitudinal ciliary rows; ciliation uniform, except anterior-dorsal region, bearing bristle-like

longer cilia; 2 adoral ciliary rows on right of peristome, curved dorsally behind cytostome; contractile vacuole posterior; macronucleus single or divided into as many as 7 parts; micronucleus; commensal.

A. choanomphali C. (Fig. 295, c). 55–90 μ by 18–20 μ ; in the mantle cavity of *Choanomphalus* sp.

Genus **Ancistrospira** Chatton and Lwoff. Ciliation meridional to spiral; peristome right spiral; commensal.

A. veneris C. and L. 50–60 μ by 22–28 μ ; ovoid, anterior end pointed; ciliary rows meridional; thigmotactic field on the left side, sharply marked from body ciliation; on the gills of *Venus fasciata*.

Genus **Boveria** Stevens (*Tiarella* Cheissin). Conical; cytostome at posterior end; peristome spiral posteriorly; macronucleus oval, in anterior half; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole posterior; ecto-commensal on gills of various marine animals such as *Teredo*, *Bankia*, *Tellina*, *Capsa* and *Holothuria*. Several species.

B. teredinidi Pickard (Fig. 295, d). 27–173 μ by 12–31 μ ; on gills of *Teredo navalis*; California.

Genus **Plagiospira** Issel. Conical; anterior end attenuated; peristome runs spirally from middle of body to cytostome, with long cilia; macronucleus oval, anterior; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole near middle of body; somewhat spirally arranged striae widely apart on right side; commensal.

P. crinita I. (Fig. 295, e). 32–58 μ by 18–34 μ ; in *Cardita calyculata* and *Loripes lacteus*.

Genus **Hemispeira** Fabre-Domergue. Nearly spherical; flattened; longitudinal non-ciliated furrow on ventral surface, which encircles thigmotactic posterior cilia; 4–5 cross-furrows of cilia; a huge adoral membrane at anterior end; macronucleus, micronucleus large; contractile vacuole, anterior-right; commensal.

H. asteriasi F.–D (Fig. 295, f). 20–30 μ long; ecto-commensal on *Asterias glacialis*.

Genus **Hemispeiropsis** König. Oval; body surface not ciliated, except the adoral end which bears 1–2 cross-rows of cilia and thigmotactic cilia; adoral membrane double; macronucleus large, spherical, with an imbedded micronucleus; contractile vacuole central; ecto-commensal.

H. comatulae K. About 23–27 μ long, excluding membrane; on *Comatula mediterranea*.

Family 5 **Sphenophryidae** Chatton and Lwoff

Genus **Sphenophrya** Chatton and Lwoff. Triangular to crescentic; in mature state, basal rows of cilia distinct on the broad side, con-

verging toward middle, from which budding takes place sidewise; in the gills of mussels.

S. dosinia C. and L. 120μ by $15-20\mu$; fixed to the interfilamental space of gills of *Dosinia exoleta*.

Family 6 Hypocomidae Bütschli

Genus **Hypocoma** Gruber. Cilia confined, or reduced, to hold-fast organella at anterior end, arranged in longitudinal rows; with a sucking tentacle which serves probably for obtaining nourishment; cytostome apparently vestigial; commensal. The genus had been placed in Suctoria; but Chatton and Lwoff showed that ciliation is lengthwise and not crosswise as in Suctoria.

H. acinetarum Collin (Fig. 295, *g, h*). On *Acineta papillifera*.

H. patellarum Lichtenstein (Fig. 295, *i-k*). On the gills of *Patella caerulea*; about 30μ long.

H. cardii Chatton and Lwoff. On *Cardium edule*.

Genus **Hypocomides** Chatton and Lwoff. Ovate; slightly flattened; anterior end attenuated, a few meridional striae; adoral rows of cilia reduced; commensal in mussels.

H. zyrphaeae C. and L. $25-30\mu$ by $12-15\mu$; in the gills of *Zyrphaea crispata*.

References

- BEERS, C. D. 1938 *Hysterocinetia eiseniae* n.sp., an endoparasitic ciliate from the earthworm *Eisenia lönnbergi*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 91.
- CHATTON, E. and A. LWOFF 1926 Diagnoses de ciliés thigmotriches nouveaux. Bull. soc. zool. Fr., Vol. 51.
- CHEISSIN, E. 1931 Infusorien Ancistridae und Boveriidae aus dem Baikalsee. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 73.
- KAHL, A. 1931, 1935 Dahl's *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands*. Parts 21, 30.
- KIDDER, G. W. 1933 Studies on *Conchophthirus mytili* de Morgan. I, II. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 79.
- 1933 On the genus *Ancistruma* Strand (*Ancistrum* Mau-pas). I. Biol. Bull. Vol. 64; II. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 81.
- 1934 Studies on the ciliates from freshwater mussels. I, II. Biol. Bull., Vol. 66.
- MACLENNAN, R. F. and F. H. CONNELL 1931 The morphology of *Eupoterion pernix* gen. nov., sp. nov. Uni. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 36.
- MIYASHITA, Y. 1933 Drei neue parasitische Infusorien aus dem Darne einer Japanischen Süßwasseroligochaete. Annot. Zool. Japon., Vol. 14.
- STEVENS, N. M. 1903 Further studies on the ciliate Infusoria, Lichenophora and Boveria. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 3.

CHAPTER 37

Order 1 **Holotricha** Stein (continued)

Suborder 6 **Apostomea** Chatton and Lwoff

ASYMMETRICAL forms with a rosette-like cytostome through which liquid or small solid particles are taken into the body; sparse ciliary rows spiral; adoral rows short; macronucleus oval to band-form; a micronucleus; a single contractile vacuole.

The life-cycle of the ciliates grouped here appears to be highly complex and Chatton and Lwoff (1935) distinguished several developmental phases (Fig. 296), as follows: (1) **Trophont** or vegetative phase: right-spiral ciliary rows; nucleus pushed aside by food bodies; body grows, but does not divide. (2) **Protomont**: transitory stage between 1 and 3 in which the organism does not nourish itself, but produces "vitelloid" reserve plates; nucleus central, condensed; ciliary rows become straight. (3) **Tomont**: the body undergoes division usually in encysted condition into more or less a large number of small ciliated individuals. (4) **Protomite**: a stage in which a renewed torsion begins, and which leads to tomite stage. (5) **Tomite**: small free-swimming and non-feeding stage, but serves for distribution. (6) **Phoront**: a stage which is produced by a tomite when it becomes attached to a crustacean and encysts; within the cyst a complete transformation to trophont takes place.

Family **Foettingeriidae** Chatton

Genus **Foettingeria** Caullery and Mesnil. Trophonts large, up to 1 mm. long; sublenticular, anterior end attenuated; dorsal surface convex, ventral surface concave; right side less convex than left side; 9 spiral ciliary rows nearly evenly arranged; in gastrovascular cavity of various actinozoans; tomont on outer surface of host body, gives rise to numerous tomites with meridional ciliary rows; each tomite becomes a phoront by encysting on a crustacean, and develops into a trophont when taken into gastrovascular cavity of an actinozoan. One species.

F. actiniarum (Claparède) (Fig. 297, *a*). Phoronts on Copepoda, Ostracoda, Amphipoda, Isopoda and Decapoda; trophonts in *Actinia messembryanthemum*, *A. equina*, *Anemonia sulcata* and other actinozoans in European waters; Chatton and Lwoff found *Metridium marginatum*, *Sagartia leucolena* and *Astrangia danae* of Woods Hole free from this ciliate.

Genus **Spirophrya** Chatton and Lwoff. Trophonts ovoid, pointed anteriorly; 16 uninterrupted ciliary rows of which striae 1 and 2 approach each other in posterior-dorsal region; phoronts attached to a

FIG. 296. Diagram illustrating the life-cycle of *Spirophrya subparasitica* (Chatton and Lwoff).

crustacean; when eaten by *Cladonema*, trophonts enter the crustacean body and complete growth; protomonts upon leaving the host body encyst and each divides into 4–82 tomites (Fig. 296). One species.

S. subparasitica C. and L. (Figs. 296; 297, b). Phoronts attached to *Idyaea furcata*; ovoid trophonts enter the copepod when eaten by *Cladnema radiatum*.

FIG. 297. a, *Foettingeria actiniarum*, a trophont; b, *Spirophrya subparasitica*, a trophont, $\times 1000$; c, *Phoretrophrya nebaliae*, $\times 1180$; d, *Synophrya hypertrophica* (Chatton and Lwoff).

Genus **Gymnodinioides** Minkiewicz (*Physophaga* Percy; *Oospira* Chatton and Lwoff). Trophonts twisted along equatorial plane; generally 9 ciliary rows, in some a rudimentary row between striae 5 and 6 at anterior end. Many species.

G. calkinsi Chatton and Lwoff. Phoronts on gills and trophonts in the moult of *Palaemonetes* sp.; Woods Hole.

Genus **Phoretrophrya** Chatton and Lwoff. Trophonts generally with 9 ciliary rows; striae 1, 2, and 3, close to one another. One species.

FIG. 298, a, *Ophiurespira weilli*; b, *Photorophrya insidiosa*, a trophont in a phoront of *Gymnodinioides*, $\times 800$; c, *Vampyrophrya pelagica*, a trophont, $\times 740$; d, *Pericaryon cesticola*, a trophont (Chatton and Lwoff).

P. nebaliae C. and L. (Fig. 297, c). Phoronts and tomonts on appendages, and trophonts in the moult, of *Nebalia geoffroyi*.

Genus **Synophrya** Chatton and Lwoff. Trophonts and tomonts

similar to those of *Gymnodinioides*; but development highly complicated. One species.

S. hypertrophica C. and L. (Fig. 297, d). Phoronts in branchial lamellae, and trophonts in the moult, of *Portunus depurator*, etc.

FIG. 299. a, *Polyspira delagei*; b, *Calospira minkiewiczi*, a trophont, $\times 1300$; c, *Vampyrophrya pelagica*, d, *Traumatophthora punctata*, $\times 1300$ (Chatton and Lwoff).

Genus **Ophiurespira** Chatton and Lwoff. Trophonts ovoid; 10 ciliary rows; striae 9 and 10 interrupted. One species.

O. weilli C. and L. (Fig. 298, a). Trophonts in the intestine of *Ophiothrix fragilis* and *Amphiura squamata* (Ophiuroidea).

Genus **Photorphrya** Chatton and Lwoff. Trophonts small; ciliation

approximately that of *Ophiurespira*; massive macronucleus; with peculiar trichocysts comparable with the nematocysts of Polykrikos (p. 257); ecto- or endo-parasitic in encysted stages of other apostomeans. Several species.

P. insidiosa C. and L. (Fig. 298, b). Phoronts, trophonts and tomites in phoronts of *Gymnodinioides*.

Genus **Polyspira** Minkiewicz. Trophonts reniform; 9 rows and several extra rows; striae 1-4 and 5-9 with 2 others in 2 bands.

P. delagei M. (Fig. 299, a). Phoronts on gills and trophonts in the moult of *Eupagurus berhardus*.

Genus **Pericaryon** Chatton. Trophonts ellipsoid; 14 ciliary rows.

P. cesticola C. (Fig. 298, d). Trophonts in the gastrovascular cavity of the ctenophore, *Cestus veneris*; other stages unknown.

Genus **Calospira** Chatton and Lwoff. Trophonts resemble those of *Spirophrya*; 20 ciliary rows; macronucleus twisted band-form; a micronucleus.

C. minkiewiczi C. and L. (Fig. 299, b). Phoronts attached to integument of *Harpacticus gracilis* (copepod); trophonts in its fresh carcass; tomites and tomites in water.

Genus **Vampyrophrya** Chatton and Lwoff. Trophonts ovoid; 10 ciliary rows, of which striae 308 are uninterrupted. One species.

V. pelagica C. and L. (Fig. 298, c; 299, c). Phoronts on *Paracalanus parvus*, *Clausocalanus furcatus*, etc., and trophonts in their fresh carcasses.

Genus **Traumatophthora** Chatton and Lwoff. Trophonts oval; 11 ciliary rows. One species.

T. punctata C. and L. (Fig. 299, d). Trophonts in fresh carcass of *Acartia clausi*.

Genus **Hyalospira** Miyashita. Trophonts in the moult of a freshwater crustacean, with a contractile vacuole and a long accessory canal, and with a band-shaped macronucleus; protomont encysts in narrow crevices; tomont divides into 2-16 tomites; tomite with a tubular macronucleus, two ciliated grooves on ventral side, and 9 ciliary rows; phoront cysts occur on the body hairs of *Xiphocaridina* to metamorphose into trophont.

H. caridinae M. Fully grown trophonts 80-120 μ long; phoronts and phoront cysts present in fresh moults and body hairs respectively of *Xiphocaridina compressa*.

References

- CHATTON, E. and A. LWOFF 1935 Les ciliés apostomes. Arch. zool. exp. et gén., Vol. 77.
MIYASHITA, Y. 1933 Studies on a freshwater foettingeriid ciliate, *Hyalospira caridinae* n.g., n.sp. Japan. Jour. Zool., Vol. 4.

CHAPTER 38

Order 2 Spirotricha Bütschli

- With free cilia only; exceptionally with small groups of cirrus-like projections in addition to cilia
- Uniformly ciliated; in Peritromidae dorsal surface without or with a few cilia; in Licnophoridae cilia only on edge of attaching disk; peristome usually extended; peristomal field mostly ciliated. Suborder 1 Heterotricha
- Ciliation much reduced or none at all
- Rounded in cross-section; cilia usually much reduced; adoral zone encloses a non-ciliated peristomal field in spiral form. Suborder 2 Oligotricha (p. 652)
- Compressed; carapaced; peristomal zone reduced to 8 membranellae which lie in an oval hollow. . Suborder 3 Ctenostomata (p. 665)
- Cirri only, on ventral side; dorsal side usually with rows of short bristles. Suborder 4 Hypotricha (p. 668)

Suborder 1 *Heterotricha* Stein

- Body ciliation complete and uniformly the same
- Peristome sunk in a funnel-like hollow at anterior end, thus mostly covered. Family 1 Bursariidae (p. 637)
- Peristome lies almost completely free, leading to a short and narrow oral funnel (absent in one family)
- Peristome in anterior region
- A narrow non-ciliated zone on right of adoral zone; usually an undulating membrane or ciliary row to right of this non-ciliated zone and anterior to cytostome; a small peristomal field between the membrane and adoral zone
- Adoral zone extends diagonally to posterior-right on ventral surface; highly developed forms, with a long zone twisting spirally around body. Family 2 Metopidae (p. 640)
- Adoral zone parallel to body axis on flat ventral surface, turns somewhat to right in front of cytostome; oral funnel distinct; typically an undulating membrane or a double ciliated furrow in front of cytostome. Family 3 Spirostomidae (p. 641)
- Without the non-ciliated zone; a large peristomal field with a half or completely spiral adoral zone
- Peristomal field not ciliated; with a large undulating membrane on its right edge. Family 4 Condyllostomidae (p. 645)
- Peristomal field ciliated; without undulating membrane
- Peristomal field not drawn out in 2 wings; free-swimming or secretes gelatinous lorica. Family 5 Stentoridae (p. 645)
- Peristomal field drawn out into 2 wings; with flask-shaped, thin pseudochitinous lorica. . Family 6 Folliculinidae (p. 647)

- Peristome at posterior end; cytopharynx directed anteriorly.....
Family 7 Clevelandellidae (p. 648)
- Body ciliation either confined to ventral side or lacking
- Free-living; flattened; cilia only on ventral surface; adoral zone surrounds anterior region of ventral surface; cytostome on left edge near the middle of body.....Family 8 Peritromidae (p. 649)
- Ectocommensal; extremities discoid; body narrowed; anterior disk surrounded spirally by adoral zone; posterior disk bears membranous cilia.....Family 9 Lienophoridae (p. 649)

Family 1 Bursariidae Perty

Genus **Bursaria** Müller. Ovoid; anterior end truncate, posterior end broadly rounded; dorsal surface convex, ventral surface flattened; deep peristome begins at anterior end and reaches about

FIG. 300. a, *Bursaria truncatella*, $\times 60$ (Kahl); b, *Thylacidium truncatum*, $\times 440$ (Schewiakoff); c, *Bursaridium difficile*, $\times 210$ (Kahl); d, *Balantidium duodeni*, $\times 170$ (Stein); e, *B. praenucleatum*, $\times 950$ (Kudo and Meglitsch).

central part of body, where it gives rise to cytostome and cytopharynx, which is bent to left; lengthwise fold divides peristome into 2 chambers; striation longitudinal; ciliation complete and uniform; macronucleus band-form; several micronuclei; many contractile vacuoles distributed along lateral and posterior borders; cysts with a double envelope; fresh water. One species.

B. truncatella M. (Fig. 300, a). 500–1000 μ long.

Genus **Thylacidium** Schewiakoff. Similar to *Bursaria* in general appearance; but smaller in size; peristome simple in structure without longitudinal fold; with zoochlorellae; fresh water. One species.

T. truncatum S. (Fig. 300, b). 60–100 μ long.

Genus **Bursaridium** Lauterborn. Similar to *Bursaria*; peristome funnel turns to right; fresh water.

B. difficile Kahl (Fig. 300, c). Anterior end truncate, cytopharynx slanting toward right; about 130 μ long.

Genus **Balantidium** Claparède and Lachmann (*Balantidiopsis* Bütschli; *Balantiodoides* Alexeieff). Oval, ellipsoid to subcylindrical; peristome begins at or near anterior end; cytopharynx not well developed; longitudinal ciliation uniform; macronucleus elongated; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole and cytopyge terminal; in the gut of vertebrates and invertebrates. Numerous species. Hegner (1934) states that the size and shape of body and macronucleus could be made a satisfactory basis for specific identification.

B. coli (Malmsten) (Fig. 301). Ovoid; 40–80 μ by 30–60 μ , but length varies 30–150 μ ; body covered by many slightly obliquely longitudinal rows of cilia; peristome small near anterior tip, lined with coarser cilia; inconspicuous cytostome and cytopharynx are located at the end of peristome; 2 contractile vacuoles, one terminal, the other near the middle of body; macronucleus sausage-shape and a vesicular micronucleus; cytopyge near the posterior tip; food particles are of various kinds, including erythrocytes and other host cell fragments, starch grains, faecal debris, etc. The trophozoite multiplies by binary fission. Conjugation was reported by Brumpt.

The cysts are circular to ovoid in outline; slightly yellowish or greenish and refractile; 40–60 μ in diameter; cyst wall made up of 2 membranes; cytoplasm hyaline; macronucleus and a contractile vacuole are usually seen.

This ciliate lives in the colon and caecum of man and causes balantidiosis or balantidial dysentery. Strong (1904) made the first histological study of the infection. The organisms invade the tissues and blood vessels of the mucosa and submucosa. At the beginning there is hyperaemia with punctiform haemorrhages, and later vascular dilatation, round cell infiltration, eosinophilia, etc., develop in the infected area. Finally deep-seated ulcers are produced. The balantidial dysentery is usually of chronic type. It has a wide geographical distribution. In the United States a few cases of infections have been observed in recent years. In the Philippine Islands, more cases have been noticed than anywhere else.

Balantidium coli is a very common parasite in the intestine of pigs, and also in chimpanzee and orang-outang. In pigs, the ciliate ordinarily confines itself to the lumen of the intestine, but according to Ratcliffe (1934), when the host animals become infected by an organism belonging to *Salmonella*, it invades and ulcerates the intestinal wall. The cysts developing in pigs appear to become the

FIG. 301. *Balantidium coli*, $\times 530$ (Kudo). 1, a living trophozoite; 2, a stained trophozoite; 3, a fresh cyst; 4, stained cyst.

chief source of infection, since balantidial dysentery is more commonly found among those who come in contact with pigs or pig intestine. The cysts remain viable for weeks in pig faeces in moist and dark places, though they are easily killed by desiccation or exposure to sun light. The cysts may reach human mouth in food or in water contaminated with them, through unclean hands of persons who come in contact with faeces or intestine of pigs, and in some cases perhaps through uncooked sausage.

B. suis McDonald. Ellipsoid; $35\text{--}120\mu$ by $20\text{--}60\mu$; macronucleus more elongate than that of *B. coli*; in the intestine of pigs. Levine (1940) through a series of culture studies, has come to consider that *B. coli* and *B. suis* are only morphological variations due to the nutritional condition and that *B. suis* is synonymous with *B. coli*.

Other domestic and wild animals harbor various species of *Balantidium*.

B. duodeni Stein (Fig. 300, *d*). 70–80 μ by 55–60 μ ; in the intestine of the frog.

B. praenucleatum Kudo and Meglitsch (Fig. 300, *e*). 42–127 μ long, 32–102 μ thick, 25–80 μ wide; macronucleus close to anterior end; in the colon of *Blatta orientalis*.

Family 2 Metopidae Kahl

Genus **Metopus** Claparède and Lachmann. Body form changeable; when extended oblong or fusiform; peristome conspicuous, slightly spirally diagonal, beginning at the anterior end and reaching the middle of body; when contracted, peristome much spirally coiled; cytopharynx short; body ciliation uniform, longitudinal or in some, spiral; longer cilia at ends; conspicuous contractile vacuole terminal; macronucleus ovoid to elongate; fresh or salt water (sapropelic), some parasitic. Numerous species.

M. es Müller (*M. sigmoides* C. and L.) (Figs. 80; 302, *a*). 120–200 μ long; sapropelic. Noland's (1927) study on its conjugation has been described (p. 161).

M. striatus McMurrich (Fig. 302, *b*). 80–120 μ long; fresh water.

M. fuscus Kahl (Fig. 302, *c*). 180–300 μ long by 60 μ wide and 40 μ thick; fresh water.

M. circumlabens Biggar (Fig. 302, *d*). 70–165 μ by 50–75 μ ; in the digestive tract of sea urchins, *Diadema setosum* and *Echinometris subangularis*; Bermuda (Biggar). Powers observed it in *Centrechinus antillarum*, etc., at Tortugas.

Genus **Spirorhynchus** da Cunha. Fusiform; somewhat flattened; anterior end drawn out and curved toward left; posterior end also drawn out; spiral peristome; cytopharynx small with an undulating membrane; cilia uniformly long; contractile vacuole posterior; longitudinally striated; body surface with closely adhering bacteria (Kirby); three spherical macronuclei; micronucleus (?); in brackish water.

S. verrucosus da C. (Fig. 302, *e*). 122–140 μ by 20–22 μ . Kirby observed it in salt marsh with 3 per cent salinity; California.

Genus **Caenomorpha** Perty (*Gyrocoris* Stein). Bell-shaped; carapaced ectoplasm in some species bears protrichocysts; strong marginal zone of about 8 rows of cilia; 1–2 dorsal rows of longer cilia and a dense spiral field around caudal prolongation; peristome long; cytostome posterior; cytopharynx directed anteriorly; a single elongate or two spherical macronuclei; a micronucleus; fresh or salt water (sapropelic). Several species.

C. medusula P. (Fig. 302, f). 150μ by 130μ ; fresh and brackish water. Several varieties.

FIG. 302. a, *Metopus es*, $\times 260$ (Kahl); b, *M. striatus*, $\times 220$ (Kahl); c, *M. fuscus*, $\times 150$ (Kahl); d, *M. circumlabens*, $\times 370$ (Powers); e, *Spiro-rhynchus verrucosus*, $\times 360$ (Kirby); f, *Caenomorpha medusula*, $\times 200$ (Blochmann); g, *Blepharisma lateritium*, $\times 160$ (Penard); h, *B. persicinum*, $\times 290$ (Penard); i, *B. steini*, $\times 340$ (Penard); j, *Protocruzia pigerima*, $\times 390$ (Faria, da Cunha and Pinto); k, *Phacodinium metschnikoffi*, $\times 270$ (Kahl).

Family 3 Spirostomidae Kent.

Genus **Spirostomum** Ehrenberg. Elongated; cylindrical; somewhat compressed; ectoplasm with highly developed myonemes which are arranged lengthwise independent of ciliary rows, hence highly contractile; yellowish to brown; excretory vacuole terminal large, with a long dorsal canal; macronucleus either ovoid or chain form; cilia short; rows longitudinal; caudal cilia are thigmotactic, secrete

mucous threads (Jennings); peristome closely lined with short membranellae; fresh or salt water. Several species.

S. ambiguum E. (Figs. 37; 303, a). 1–3 mm. long (length: width,

FIG. 303. a, *Spirostomum ambiguum*, $\times 65$ (Kahl); b, *S. minus*, $\times 140$ (Kahl); c, *S. loxodes*, $\times 240$ (Stokes); d, *S. intermedium*, $\times 140$ (Kahl); e, *S. teres*, $\times 200$ (Kahl); f, *S. filum*, $\times 190$ (Penard); g, *Gruberia calkinsi*, $\times 140$ (Bertran); h, *Pseudoblepharisma tenuis*, $\times 310$ (Kahl); i, *Parablepharisma pellitum*, $\times 340$ (Kahl).

10:1); macronucleus chain-form; peristome $2/3$ the body length; fresh water.

S. minus Roux (Fig. 303, *b*). 500–800 μ long; macronucleus chain-form; in fresh and salt water (Kahl).

S. loxodes Stokes (Fig. 303, *c*). About 300 μ long (length: width, 6–7:1); peristome about $1/3$ the body length; oblique striation; longer cilia at ends; macronucleus chain-form; fresh water.

S. intermedium Kahl (Fig. 303, *d*). Slender; 400–600 μ long; macronucleus chain-form; fresh water.

S. teres Claparède and Lachmann (Fig. 303, *e*). 150–400 μ long; macronucleus oval; in fresh water and also reported from salt water.

S. filum (E.) (Fig. 303, *f*). Peristome $1/4$ the body length; posterior end drawn out; 200–300 μ up to 700 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Gruberia** Kahl. Similar to *Spirostomum* in general appearance; but posterior end drawn out; slightly contractile; contractile vacuole posterior; macronucleus compact or beaded; salt water.

G. calkinsi Beltran (Fig. 303, *g*). 200–800 μ long; peristome $2/3$ the body length; many (contractile?) vacuoles distributed; Woods Hole.

Genus **Blepharisma** Perty. Pyriform, spindle-form or ellipsoid; somewhat narrowed anteriorly; compressed; peristome on the left border, which is twisted to right at posterior end and connected with oral funnel with membrane; in front of cytostome a 2-layered undulating membrane on right edge; ciliary rows longitudinal; ciliation dense; contractile vacuole and cytopyge terminal; macronucleus one or divided into several parts; several species rose-colored; fresh or salt water. Many species.

B. lateritium (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 302, *g*). 130–200 μ long; pyriform; macronucleus oval; a micronucleus; rose-colored; fresh water among decaying leaves.

B. persicinum P. (Fig. 302, *h*). 80–120 μ long; elongate oval; posterior end pointed; left peristomal edge sigmoid; preoral membrane large; macronucleus in 3–7 parts; rose-colored; fresh water among decaying vegetation.

B. steini Kahl (Fig. 302, *i*). 80–200 μ long; macronucleus ovoid; reddish to colorless; fresh water in sphagnum.

B. undulans Stein. 150–300 μ long; macronucleus in 2 parts; undulating membrane long; cytopharynx directed posteriorly; fresh water among decaying vegetation. Moore (1934) studied its contractile vacuole and Giese (1938) observed the influence of light upon its coloration (p. 38). Since gigantism has been noticed by Penard it has been studied by several observers. Giese (1938) found that the

giants are carnivorous individuals feeding on small bacteria-fed individuals or other ciliates and remain large (with larger macronucleus and undulating membrane) after division, as long as appropriate diet is supplied.

Genus **Protocruzia** Faria, da Cunha and Pinto. Peristome does not turn right, leads directly into cytostome; convex left side not ciliated, but bears bristles; flat right side with 3–5 faintly marked ciliary rows; peristome begins at pointed anterior end and extends $1/4$ – $1/3$ the body length; cytopharynx (?); macronucleus simple; contractile vacuole subterminal; salt water.

P. pigerrima (Cohn) (Fig. 302, *j*). About 20μ (da Cunha); 50 – 60μ long (Kahl); peristome $1/4$ – $1/3$ the body length; salt water.

Genus **Phacodinium** Prowazek. Oval; marked grooves on body surface; cilia in cirrus-like fused groups; peristome long on left margin; cytostome posterior; contractile vacuole terminal; macronucleus horseshoe-shape; 5–9 micronuclei; fresh water. One species.

P. metschnikoffi (Certes) (Fig. 302, *k*). About 100μ long.

Genus **Pseudoblepharisma** Kahl. Body form intermediate between *Spirostomum* and *Blepharisma*; right peristomal edge with 2 rows of cilia; fresh water.

P. tenuis K. (Fig. 303, *h*). 100 – 200μ long.

Genus **Parablepharisma** Kahl. Similar to *Blepharisma*; but peristome-bearing anterior half, narrowed neck-like and pointed; ectoplasm covered with gelatinous layer in which symbiotic bacteria are imbedded; salt water.

P. pellitum K. (Fig. 303, *i*). 120 – 180μ long.

Genus **Nyctotherus** Leidy. Oval or reniform; compressed; peristome begins at anterior end, turns slightly to right and ends in cytostome located midway between the ends; cytopharynx runs dorsally and posteriorly, a long tube with undulating membrane; ciliary rows longitudinal and close-set; massive macronucleus in anterior half with a micronucleus; in some, nuclei are suspended by a karyophore; endoplasm with discoid glycogen bodies, especially in anterior region, hence yellowish to brown; contractile vacuole and cytopyge terminal; in the colon of Amphibia and various invertebrates. Numerous species.

N. ovalis L. (Figs. 3; 304, *a*, *b*). Ovoid; anterior half compressed; macronucleus elongate, at right angles to dorso-ventral axis at anterior $1/3$; micronucleus in front of macronucleus; distinct karyophore; glycogen bodies; 90 – 185μ by 62 – 95μ ; giant forms up to 360μ by 240μ ; cysts 72 – 106μ by 58 – 80μ ; in the colon of cockroaches. The chromatin spherules of the macronucleus are often very large (p. 36).

N. cordiformis (Ehrenberg) (Figs. 79; 304, c). 60–200 μ by 40–140 μ ; ovoid; micronucleus behind macronucleus; no karyophore; in the colon of frogs and toads. Wichterman (1936) studied its life-cycle in *Hyla versicolor* (p. 160).

Family 4 Condylostomidae Kahl

Genus **Condylostoma** Bory. Ellipsoid; anterior end truncate, posterior end rounded or bluntly pointed; slightly flattened; peristome wide at anterior end and V-shaped, peristomal field not ciliated; a large membrane on right edge and adoral zone on left; macronucleus moniliform; one to several contractile vacuoles often with canal; cytopyge posterior; fresh or salt water. Many species.

C. vorticella (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 304, d). 100–200 μ long; fresh water.

C. patens (Müller). 250–550 μ long; salt water; Woods Hole (Calkins).

Family 5 Stentoridae Carus

Genus **Stentor** Oken. When extended, trumpet-shaped or cylindrical; highly contractile; some with mucilaginous lorica; usually oval to pyriform while swimming; conspicuous peristomal field frontal; adoral zone encircles peristome in a spiral form, leaving a narrow gap on ventral side; the zone and field sink toward cytostome and the former continues into cytopharynx; macronucleus round, oval or elongated, in a single mass or moniliform; contractile vacuole anterior-left; free-swimming or attached; fresh water.

S. coeruleus Ehrenberg (Figs. 14; 304, e). Fully extended body 1–2 mm. long; anterior end greatly expanded; the beautiful blue color is due to a pigment, stentorin, lodged in interstriation granules; macronucleus beaded. Burnside (1929) studied its body and nuclear sizes (p. 171).

S. striatus Barraud-Maskell. Dark bluish green; funnel-shaped; peristomal edge irregularly undulating; striation conspicuous; macronucleus beaded; up to 2.2 mm. long.

S. polymorphus (Müller) (Fig. 304, f). Colorless; with zoochlorellae; 1–2 mm. long when extended; macronucleus beaded; anterior end expanded.

S. mülleri (Bory) (Fig. 304, g). Colorless; with zoochlorellae; 2–3 mm. long; anterior end expanded; posterior portion drawn out into stalk, often housed in a gelatinous tube; on body surface 3–4 longer and stiff cilia grouped among cilia; macronucleus moniliform.

S. roeseli Ehrenberg (Fig. 304, h). 0.5–1 mm. long; anterior end expanded; body surface with groups of longer cilia; posterior por-

FIG. 304. a, b, *Nyctotherus ovalis*, $\times 340$ (Kudo); c, *N. cordiformis* $\times 170$ (Stein); d, *Condyllostoma vorticella*, $\times 120$ (Penard); e, *Stentor coerules*, somewhat contracted, $\times 70$ (Roux); f, *S. polymorphus*, $\times 60$ (Roux); g, *S. mülleri*, $\times 50$ (Kahl); h, *S. roeseli*, $\times 75$ (Roux); i, *S. igneus*, $\times 160$ (Kahl); j, *S. amethystinus*, $\times 100$ (Kahl).

tion drawn out and often housed in a gelatinous tube; macronucleus long band-form.

S. igneus E. (Fig. 304, i). Rose-colored or colorless; 200–400 μ long; macronucleus oval; ciliation uniform.

S. niger (Müller). Yellowish or brown; macronucleus oval; 200–300 μ long.

S. multiformis (M.) Dark blue to bluish green; anterior end not expanded; 150–200 μ long; macronucleus oval.

S. amethystinus Leidy (Fig. 394, *j*). Habitually pyriform (contracted); amethyst-blue; with zoochlorellae; 300–600 μ long; macronucleus oval.

S. pyriformis Johnson. When extended 500 μ long; anterior end 200 μ in diameter.

Genus **Fabrea** Henneguy. Pyriform; posterior end broadly rounded, anterior end bluntly pointed; peristome extends down from anterior end $2/5$ or more the body length, its posterior portion closely wound; peculiar black spot beneath membranellae in anterior portion of spiral adoral zone, composed of numerous pigment granules; without contractile vacuole; macronucleus, a sausage-shaped body or in 4 parts; in salt water.

F. salina H. (Fig. 306, *a, b*). 120–220 μ by 67–125 μ (Kirby); 130–450 μ by 70–200 μ (Henneguy); cysts ovoidal, with gelatinous envelope; 89–111 μ by 72–105 μ . Kirby (1934) found the organism in ditches and pools in salt marshes, showing salinities 7.5–20.1 per cent in California.

Genus **Climacostomum** Stein. Oval; flattened; right edge of peristome without membrane, left edge, semicircular or spiral with a strong adoral zone; peristomal field ciliated; cytopharynx a long curved tube with a longitudinal row of cilia; macronucleus band-form; contractile vacuole terminal, with two long canals; fresh or brackish water.

C. virens (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 306, *c*). 100–300 μ long; with or without zoochlorellae; fresh and brackish water.

Family 6 Folliculinidae Dons

Genus **Folliculina** Lamarck. Lorica attached on broad surface; neck oblique to perpendicular; sometimes with a collar or spiral ridge; neck uniform in diameter; salt water.

F. moebiusi Kahl (Fig. 306, *d*). Lorica about 500 μ long.

F. producta (Wright) (Fig. 306, *e*). Lorica yellowish brown; 250 μ long; neck often long; Atlantic coast.

Genus **Microfolliculina** Dons. Posterior end or sides of lorica with sack-like protuberances.

M. limnoriae (Giard). Lorica dark blue; pellicle faintly striated; salt water.

Genus **Pseudofolliculina** Dons. Lorica attached with its posterior

end; more or less vertical; without ring-furrow in middle; with or without style; salt water.

P. arctica D. (Fig. 306, *f*). Lorica about 430μ high, with spiral ridge; off Norwegian coast 15–28 m. deep.

Genus **Parafolliculina** Dons. Neck of lorica with a basal swelling; attached either with posterior end or on a lateral surface; salt water.

P. violacea (Giard) (Fig. 306, *g*). $175\text{--}310\mu$ long; salt water; widely distributed (Andrews, 1942).

Family 7 Clevelandellidae Kidder

Genus **Clevelandella** Kidder (*Clevelandia* K.). Elongate pyriform or spear-shaped; posterior region drawn out, at the end of which

FIG. 305. *a*, *b*, ventral (outline) and dorsal views of *Clevelandella panesthiae*, $\times 300$; *c*, ventral view (in outline) of *Paraclevelandia brevis*, $\times 300$; *d*, a ventral view of *P. brevis*, $\times 760$; *e*, cyst of *P. brevis*, $\times 740$. (Kidder.)

peristome and cytostome are located; body more or less flexible; completely ciliated; one macronucleus supported by a karyophore; a micronucleus; a contractile vacuole at posterior left, near cytopyge; endocommensals in the colon of wood-feeding roaches, *Panesthia javanica* and *P. spadica*. Several species.

C. panesthiae K. (Fig. 305, *a*, *b*). Broadly fusiform with bluntly pointed anterior end and truncate posterior end; $87\text{--}156(123)\mu$ by $53\text{--}78(62)\mu$; peristomal projection about one-fifth the body length; peristome is nearly enclosed; macronucleus massive; a vesicular micronucleus on its anterior border; karyophore separates the endoplasm into 2 parts: anterior part with glycogenous platelets, posterior part with numerous food particles; often parasitized by *Sphaerita* (p. 722); in the colon of *Panesthia javanica* and *P. spadica*.

Genus **Paraclevelandia** Kidder. Elongate pyriform; body rigid;

posterior end truncated obliquely to left; no peristomal projection; one macronucleus and one micronucleus; at anterior end, there is a sac connected with the karyophore, which is said to be a "macronuclear reservoir"; endocommensals in the colon of *Panesthia javanica* and *P. spadica*. 2 species.

P. brevis K. (Fig. 305, c-e). Conical in shape; 16-38 (38) μ by 9-21 (19) μ ; macronucleus spherical to elongate ellipsoid; micronucleus comparatively large, retains nuclear stains longer than macronucleus; anterior sac may sometimes be absent; cysts, 14-19 μ long; ovoid; with a spherical macronucleus and a micronucleus; in the colon of *Panesthia javanica* and *P. spadica*.

Family 8 Peritromidae Stein

Genus **Peritromus** Stein. Ovoid; ventral surface flattened, dorsal surface with hump of irregular outline bearing a few stiff cilia; ciliary rows only on ventral surface; a small undulating membrane at posterior end of peristome; short marginal spines; 2 macro- and 2 micro-nuclei; salt water.

P. californicus Kirby (Fig. 306, h). Peristome short; left margin slightly concave; dorsal hump with wart-like protuberances, bearing spines (about 12 μ long); 16-19 or more ventral ciliary rows; 2 spherical macronuclei, one anterior right and the other posterior left of hump; micronuclei 4 (2-5); 89-165 μ by 60-96 μ ; salt marsh pools with salinity "1.2-6 per cent" in California.

P. emmae S. 90-100 μ long; creeping on bottom; Woods Hole.

Family 9 Licnophoridae Stevens

Genus **Licnophora** Claparède. Discoid; body roughly divisible into basal disc, neck and oral disc; basal disc for attachment, with several concentric ciliary coronas; neck flattened, contractile narrowed part with or without a ventral furrow and fibril-bundles (both running from oral groove to basal disc); oral disc highly flattened, round or ovoid; edge with membranelle zone which extends to pharyngeal funnel; macronucleus long chain-form; without contractile vacuole; free-swimming or commensal in fresh or salt water animals.

L. macfarlandi Stevens (Fig. 306, i). Average 90-110 μ by 45-60 μ ; diameter of basal disc 40-45 μ ; basal disc circular; macronuclei in 25-35 parts in 4 groups; commensal in the respiratory tree of *Stichopus californicus*. Balamuth (1941, 1942) made excellent studies on its morphology, fission and regeneration.

L. conklini S. (Fig. 306, j). 100–135 μ long; commensal in *Crepidula plana* of Atlantic coast.

FIG. 306. a, b, *Fabrea salina* (a, $\times 170$; b, $\times 330$) (Kirby); c, *Climacostomum virens*, $\times 100$ (Stein); d, *Folliculina moebiusi*, $\times 170$ (Stein); e, *F. producta*, $\times 110$ (Wright); f, *Pseudofolliculina arctica*, $\times 50$ (Dons); g, *Parafolliculina violacea*, $\times 100$ (Dons); h, *Peritromus californicus*, $\times 360$ (Kirby); i, *Lichnophora macfarlandi*, $\times 420$ (Stevens); j, *L. conklini*, $\times 340$ (Stevens).

References

- ANDREWS, E. A. 1921 American Folliculinas: taxonomic notes. Amer. Nat., Vol. 55.
- 1942 A folliculinid at Beaufort, North Carolina. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 61.
- 1944 Folliculinid Protozoa on North American coasts. Amer. Midland Natural., Vol. 31.
- BALAMUTH, W. Studies on the organization of ciliate Protozoa. 1941, Jour. Morph., Vol. 68; 1942, Jour. Exper. Zool., Vol. 91.
- HEGNER, R. 1934 Specificity in the genus *Balantidium* based on size and shape of body and macronucleus, with description of six new species. Amer. Jour. Hyg., Vol. 19.
- KAHL, A. 1932 *Urtiere oder Protozoa*. In Dahl's *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands*. Part 15.
- KIDDER, G. W. 1937 The intestinal Protozoa of the wood-feeding roach *Panesthia*. Parasitology, Vol. 29.
- KIRBY JR., H. 1934 Some ciliates from salt marshes in California. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 82.
- KUDO, R. R. 1936 Studies on *Nyctotherus ovalis* Leidy, with special reference to its nuclear structure. Ibid., Vol. 87.
- and P. A. MEGLITSCH 1938 On *Balantidium praenucleatum* n.sp., inhabiting the colon of *Blatta orientalis*. Ibid., Vol. 91.
- LEVINE, N. D. 1940 The effect of food intake upon the dimensions of *Balantidium* from swine in culture. Amer. Jour. Hyg., Vol. 32.
- MCDONALD, J. D. 1922 On *Balantidium coli* (Malmsten) and *B. suis* (sp. nov.). Uni. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 22.
- POWERS, P. B. A. 1935 Studies on the ciliates of sea urchins. Papers from Tortugas Lab., Vol. 29.
- SCHMÄHL, O. 1926 Die Neubildung des Peristoms bei den Teilung von *Bursaria truncatella*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 54.
- STEVENS, N. M. 1903 Further studies on the ciliate Infusoria, Licnophora and Boveria. Ibid., Vol. 3.
- STRONG, R. P. 1904 The clinical and pathological significance of *Balantidium coli*. Bur. Gov. Labs. Manila, Biol. Lab., Bull. No. 26.

CHAPTER 39

Order 2 *Spirotricha* Bütschli (continued)

Suborder 2 *Oligotricha* Bütschli

THE cilia are greatly reduced in number in the *Oligotricha* and the adoral zone encloses a non-ciliated spiral peristomal field.

Free-living

Oral portion of peristome lies free on ventral surface.....
.....Family 1 *Halteriidae*

Adoral zone encloses frontal peristomal field

Without lorica.....Family 2 *Strobilidiidae* (p. 653)

With lorica or test.....Family 3 *Tintinnidae* (p. 654)

Parasitic

Adoral and dorsal zones, both directed anteriorly and retractile; no other cilia.....Family 4 *Ophryoscolecidae* (p. 654)

In addition to adoral and dorsal zones, groups of cirri in posterior half of body, directed posteriorly and nonretractile.....
.....Family 5 *Cycloposthiidae* (p. 659)

Family 1 *Halteriidae* Claparède and Lachmann

Genus **Halteria** Dujardin. Spherical or broadly fusiform; anterior border bears conspicuous adoral zone; oral part of peristome with a small membrane on right edge and cirri on left; with an equatorial zone of small oblique grooves, each bearing 3 long cirri or bristles; macronucleus oval; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole left of cyto-stome; fresh water. A few species.

H. grandinella (Müller) (Fig. 307, *a*). About 7 bristle-bearing grooves; 15 frontal and 7 adoral membranellae; 20–40 μ long. Kahl (1932) distinguishes 2 varieties: var. *cirrifera* (Fig. 307, *b*), 25–50 μ long, with huge cirri instead of fine body cirri; and var. *chlorelligera* (Fig. 307, *c*), 40–50 μ long, with bristles and large zoochlorellae; fresh water.

Genus **Strombidium** Claparède and Lachmann. Ovoid to spherical; adoral zone very conspicuous (2–4 conspicuous sickle-form frontal membranellae and adoral membranellae extend down cytopharynx, the first section surrounding an apical process); no body bristles or cirri; trichocysts; macronucleus oval or band-form; a micronucleus; a contractile vacuole; salt or fresh water. Numerous species.

S. calkinsi Fauré-Fremiet (Fig. 307, *d*). 35–60 μ long; brackish and salt water; Calkins (1902) first observed it at Woods Hole.

Genus **Tontonia** Fauré-Fremiet. With well-developed apical collar; a long cytoplasmic (contractile) caudal process; salt water.

T. gracillima F.-F. (Fig. 307, e). 48–52 μ long; caudal process 250–300 μ long; macronucleus moniliform; with zoochlorellae.

FIG. 307. a, *Halteria grandinella*, $\times 490$ (Kahl); b, *H. g.* var. *cirrifera*, $\times 370$ (Kahl); c, *H. g.* var. *chlorelligera*, $\times 260$ (Kahl); d, *Strombidium calkinsi*, $\times 900$ (Calkins); e, *Tontonia gracillima*, $\times 540$ (Fauré-Fremiet); f, *Strobilidium gyrans*, $\times 340$ (Kahl); g, *Tintinnidium fluviatile*, $\times 140$ (Kent); h, i, *T. semiciliatum*, $\times 140$ (Sterki); j, *Strombidinopsis gyrans*, $\times 270$ (Kent); k, *Tintinnopsis cylindrata*, $\times 440$ (Daday); l, *T. illinoisensis*, $\times 420$ (Hempel); m, *Codonella cratera*, $\times 540$ (Fauré-Fremiet).

Family 2 Strobilidiidae Kahl

Genus **Strobilidium** Schewiakoff. Pyriform or turnip-shaped; cytostome at anterior end; without cytopharynx; horseshoe-shaped

macronucleus anterior; a micronucleus; a contractile vacuole; fresh or salt water. Several species.

S. gyrans (Stokes) (Fig. 307, *f*). Lateral border with rounded elevation near anterior end, posterior end truncate; 40–70 μ long; in standing fresh water.

Family 3 **Tintinnidae** Claparède and Lachmann

Conical or trumpet-like, attached inside a lorica of various forms, composed of gelatinous or pseudochitinous substances; with longitudinal rows of cilia, and 2 (1–4) macro- and a micro-nuclei; mostly pelagic, a few inhabiting fresh or brackish water. Kofoid and Campbell (1929) distinguished more than 300 species and placed them in 12 families and 51 genera, of which 23 genera were created by them. A few genera and species are mentioned here.

Genus **Tintinnidium** Stein. Elongated lorica, highly irregular in form; soft; aboral end closed or with a minute opening; wall viscous and freely agglomerates foreign bodies; salt or fresh water.

T. fluviatile Stein (Fig. 307, *g*). Lorica 100–200 μ by 45 μ ; on vegetation in fresh water.

T. semiciliatum Sterki (Fig. 307, *h, i*). 40–60 μ long; on plants in fresh water.

Genus **Strombidinopsis** Kent. Lorica often absent; ovate or pyriform; frontal border with numerous long cirrus-like cilia; body covered by fine cilia; contractile vacuole posterior; fresh water.

S. gyrans K. (Fig. 307, *j*). 30–80 μ long; fresh water pond.

Genus **Tintinnopsis** Stein. Lorica bowl-shaped; always with a broad aperture; aboral end closed; wall thin and covered with foreign bodies; salt or fresh water.

T. cylindrata Kofoid and Campbell (Fig. 307, *k*). Lorica 40–50 μ long; in lakes.

T. illinoisensis Hempel (Fig. 307, *l*). Lorica 59 μ long; in rivers.

Genus **Codonella** Haeckel. Lorica urn- to pot-shaped; sharply divided externally and internally into a collar and bowl; collar without spiral structure; in fresh water.

C. cratera (Leidy) (Fig. 307, *m*). Lorica 60–70 μ by 40 μ ; a number of varieties are often mentioned.

Family 4 **Ophryoscolecidae** Stein

Elongate oval, asymmetrical; with 1 or 2 (adoral and dorsal) zones of membranellae; in digestive tract of mammals. Sharp (1914) employed "forma" to distinguish forms in *Entodinium* with common characteristics, differing in certain others, which scheme was

extended to the whole family by Dogiel (1927). It is most probable that many species are varieties of a single species as judged by the work of Poljansky and Strelkow (1934); but since information is still incomplete, the present work ranks various formae with species, in agreement with Kofoid and MacLennan (1930).

Genus **Ophryoscolex** Stein. Ovoid; with adoral and dorsal zones of membranellae; dorsal zone some distance behind anterior end, encircling $3/4$ the body circumference at middle, broken on right ventral side; 3 skeletal plates extend over the body length on right-ventral side; 9–15 contractile vacuoles in 2 (anterior and posterior) circles; macronucleus simple, elongate; in the stomach of cattle, sheep, goat and wild sheep (*Ovis orientalis cycloceros*). Several species. Dogiel (1927) designated the following species as 3 formae of *O. caudatus* Eberlein.

O. bicoronatus Dogiel (Fig. 308, a). 120–170 μ by 81–90 μ ; primary spine 38–58 μ long; in sheep.

O. caudatus Eberlein (Fig. 308, b). 137–162 μ by 80–98 μ ; preanal spines 47–60 μ long; in sheep, goat, and cattle.

O. quadricoronatus Dogiel (Fig. 308, c). 128–180 μ by 86–100 μ ; preanal spines 48–63 μ long; in sheep and *Ovis orientalis cycloceros*.

Genus **Caloscolex** Dogiel. Ovoid; anterior end truncate, posterior end rounded with or without processes; 2 zones of membranellae; dorsal zone encircles the body completely; 3 skeletal plates variously modified; 7 contractile vacuoles in a single circle; nucleus elongate; in the stomach of *Camelus dromedarius*. Several species.

C. cuspidatus D. (Fig. 308, d). 130–160 μ by 73–90 μ .

Genus **Entodinium** Stein. Without dorsal zone; adoral zone at truncate anterior end; without skeleton; contractile vacuole anterior; macronucleus, cylindrical or sausage-form, dorsal; micronucleus anterior to middle and on left-ventral side of macronucleus; in cattle and sheep. Numerous species.

E. caudatum S. (Fig. 308, e). 50–80 μ long; in cattle and sheep.

E. bursa S. (Fig. 308, f). 55–114 μ by 37–78 μ (Schuberg); 80 μ by 60 μ (Becker and Talbott); in the stomach of cattle.

Genus **Amphacanthus** Dogiel. Similar to *Entodinium*; but spinous processes at both anterior and posterior ends; in stomach of *Camelus dromedarius*. One species.

A. ovum-rajae D. (Fig. 308, g). 46–55 μ by 32–48 μ .

Genus **Eodinium** Kofoid and MacLennan. Dorsal zone on the same level as adoral zone; without skeleton; macronucleus a straight, rod-like body beneath dorsal surface; 2 contractile vacuoles; in cattle and sheep. Several species.

E. lobatum K. and M. (Fig. 309, a). 44–60 μ by 29–37 μ ; in *Bos indicus*.

Genus **Diplodinium** Schuberg. Adoral and dorsal zones at the same level; without skeletal plates; macronucleus beneath right side, its anterior third bent ventrally at an angle of 30°–90°; 2 contractile

FIG. 308. a, *Ophryoscolex bircoronatus*, $\times 340$ (Dogiel); b, *O. caudatus*, $\times 310$ (Dogiel); c, *O. quadricoronatus*, $\times 340$ (Dogiel); d, *Caloscolex cuspidatus*, $\times 310$ (Dogiel); e, *Entodinium caudatum*, $\times 500$ (Becker and Talbott); f, *E. bursa*, $\times 390$ (Schuberg); g, *Amphacanthus ovum-rajae*, $\times 350$ (Dogiel).

vacuoles; in cattle, antelope, *Camelus dromedarius*, reindeer, goat. Numerous species.

D. dentatum (Stein) (Fig. 309, b). 65–82 μ by 40–50 μ ; in cattle (including *Bos indicus*).

Genus **Eremoplastron** Kofoid and MacLennan. Adoral and dorsal zones at anterior end; a single narrow skeletal plate beneath right surface; triangular or rod-like macronucleus, anterior end of which is often bent ventrally; 2 contractile vacuoles; in cattle, antelope, sheep, reindeer. Numerous species.

E. bovis (Dogiel) (Fig. 309, c). 52–100 μ by 34–50 μ ; in cattle and sheep.

Genus **Eudiplodinium** Dogiel. Adoral and dorsal zones at anterior end; a single, narrow, skeletal plate beneath right surface; rod-like macronucleus with its anterior end enlarged to form a hook opening dorsally; pellicle and ectoplasm thick; 2 contractile vacuoles with heavy membranes and prominent pores; in cattle.

E. maggi (Fiorentini) (Fig. 309, d). 104–255 μ by 63–170 μ ; in cattle, sheep and reindeer.

Genus **Diploplastron** Kofoid and MacLennan. Adoral and dorsal zones at anterior end; 2 skeletal plates beneath right surface; macronucleus narrow; rod-like; 2 contractile vacuoles below dorsal surface, separated from macronucleus. One species.

D. affine (Dogiel and Fedorowa) (Fig. 309, e). 88–120 μ by 47–65 μ ; in the stomach of cattle, sheep, and goat.

Genus **Metadinium** Awerinzew and Mutafova. Adoral and dorsal zones at anterior end; 2 skeletal plates beneath right surface sometimes fused posteriorly; macronucleus with 2–3 dorsal lobes; 2 contractile vacuoles; pellicle and ectoplasm thick; conspicuous oesophageal fibrils beneath dorsal and right sides; in the stomach of cattle, sheep, goat, and reindeer.

M. medium A. and M. (Fig. 309, f). 180–272 μ by 111–175 μ ; in cattle.

Genus **Polyplastron** Dogiel. Adoral and dorsal zones at anterior end; 2 skeletal plates beneath right surface, separate or fused; 3 longitudinal plates beneath left surface, with anterior ends connected by cross bars; contractile vacuoles beneath dorsal surface in a longitudinal row, also with additional vacuoles; in the stomach of cattle and sheep.

P. multivesiculatum (D. and Fedorowa) (Fig. 310, a). 120–190 μ by 78–140 μ ; in cattle and sheep. MacLennan (1934) found that the skeletal plates are made up of small, roughly prismatic blocks of glycogen, each with a central granule.

Genus **Elytroplastron** Kofoid and MacLennan. 2 zones at anterior end, 2 skeletal plates beneath right surface, a small plate beneath ventral surface, and a long plate below left side; pellicle and ecto-

plasm thick; conspicuous fibrils beneath dorsal-right side. One species.

E. bubali (Dogiel) (Fig. 310, b). 110–160 μ by 67–97 μ ; in cattle, sheep, *Buffelus bubalus* and *Bos indicus*.

FIG. 309. a, *Eodinium lobatum*, $\times 540$ (Kofoid and MacLennan); b, *Diplocladus dentatum*, $\times 250$ (Kofoid and MacLennan); c, *Eremoplastron bovis*, $\times 550$ (Kofoid and MacLennan); d, *Eudiplodinium maggi*, $\times 500$ (Dogiel); e, *Diploplastron affine*, $\times 320$ (Dogiel); f, *Metadinium medium*, $\times 320$ (Dogiel).

Genus *Ostracodinium* Dogiel. 2 zones at anterior end; broad skeletal plate beneath right side; 2–6 contractile vacuoles in a dorsal row;

cytopharyngeal fibrils thick, extend to posterior end; in cattle, sheep, antelope, steenbok, and reindeer. Numerous species.

O. dentatum (Fiorentini) (Fig. 310, c). $52\text{--}110\mu$ by $31\text{--}68\mu$; in the stomach of cattle.

Genus **Enoploplastron** Kofoid and MacLennan. 2 zones near anterior end; 3 skeletal plates beneath right-ventral side, either separate or partly fused; 2 contractile vacuoles; heavy pharyngeal fibrils; in cattle, reindeer and antelope.

E. triloricatum (Dogiel) (Fig. 310, d). Dogiel (1927) mentions size differences among those occurring in different host species, as follows: in cattle, $85\text{--}112\mu$ by $51\text{--}70\mu$; in reindeer, $75\text{--}103\mu$ by $40\text{--}58\mu$; in antelope (*Rhaphiceros* sp.), $60\text{--}110\mu$ by $37\text{--}56\mu$.

Genus **Epidinium** Crawley. Elongate; twisted around the main axis; 2 zones; dorsal zone not at anterior end; 3 skeletal plates, with secondary plates; simple macronucleus club-shaped; 2 contractile vacuoles; in cattle, sheep, reindeer, camels, etc.

E. caudatum (Fiorentini) (Fig. 310, e). $113\text{--}151\mu$ by $45\text{--}61\mu$; in cattle, camels, *Cervus canadensis* and reindeer.

E. (Diplodinium) ecaudatum (F.) (Figs. 16; 310, f). $112\text{--}140\mu$ by $40\text{--}60\mu$ (Becker and Talbott); in cattle, sheep, and reindeer. The classical observation of Sharp (1914) on its neuromotor system has been described elsewhere (p. 54).

Genus **Epiplastron** Kofoid and MacLennan. Elongate; 2 zones; dorsal zone not at anterior end; 5 skeletal plates, with secondary plates; macronucleus simple, elongate; 2 contractile vacuoles; in antelopes.

E. africanum (Dogiel) (Fig. 310, g). $90\text{--}140\mu$ by $30\text{--}55\mu$; in *Rhaphiceros* sp.

Genus **Ophistotrichum** Buisson. 2 zones; dorsal zone at middle or near posterior end of body; one-piece skeletal plate well developed; 2 contractile vacuoles posterior; conjugation (Dogiel); in many African antelopes. One species.

O. janus (Dogiel) (*O. thomasi* B.) (Fig. 311, a). $90\text{--}150\mu$ by $42\text{--}60\mu$.

Genus **Cunhaia** Hasselmann. Cytostome near anterior end, with adoral zone; dorsal zone on $1/3$ of anterior-dorsal surface; 2 contractile vacuoles; skeleton (?); in the caecum of guinea pig, *Cavia aperea*. One species.

C. curvata H. (Fig. 311, b). $60\text{--}80\mu$ by $30\text{--}40\mu$; in Brazil.

Family 5 Cycloposthiidae Poche

Pellicle firm and body rigid; zones of membranellae at anterior and posterior ends; more or less compressed; cytopharynx short

and wide; macronucleus elongate; a single micronucleus; 2 or more contractile vacuoles; in horse and anthropoid apes.

Genus **Cycloposthium** Bundle. Large, elongate barrel-shaped; cytostome in center of a retractile conical elevation at anterior end; adoral zone conspicuous; an open ring-zone of membranellae near posterior end on both dorsal and ventral sides; pellicle ridged; skele-

FIG. 310. a, *Polyplastron multivesiculatum*, $\times 360$ (Dogiel); b, *Elytroplastron bubali*, $\times 340$ (Dogiel); c, *Ostracodinium dentatum*, $\times 440$ (Dogiel); d, *Enoploplastron triloricatum*, $\times 370$ (Dogiel); e, *Epidinium caudatum*, $\times 340$ (Becker and Talbott); f, *E. ecaudatum*, $\times 340$ (Becker and Talbott); g, *Epiplastron africanum*, $\times 300$ (Dogiel).

ton club-shaped; several contractile vacuoles in a row along band-form macronucleus; in the caecum and colon of horse. Many species.

C. bipalmatum (Fiorentini) (Fig. 311, c). $80\text{--}127\mu$ by $35\text{--}57\mu$.

C. dentiferum Gassovsky (Fig. 311, d). $140\text{--}222\mu$ by $80\text{--}110\mu$.

Genus **Spirodinium** Fiorentini. Elongate, more or less fusiform; adoral zone at anterior end, zone making at least one complete spiral

near anterior end; posterior zone only half-spiral; in the caecum and colon of horse. One species.

S. equi F. (Fig. 311, e). 77–180 μ by 30–74 μ ; widely distributed.

Genus **Triadinium** Fiorentini. More or less helmet-shaped; compressed; adoral zone at anterior end; 2 posterior (ventral and dorsal)

FIG. 311. a, *Ophisthotrichum janus*, $\times 370$ (Dogiel); b, *Cunhaia curvata*, $\times 670$ (Hasseltmann); c, *Cycloposthium bipalmatum*, $\times 300$ (Bundle); d, *C. dentiferum*, $\times 270$ (Hsiung); e, *Spirodinium equi*, $\times 270$ (Hsiung); f, *Triadinium caudatum*, $\times 300$ (Hsiung); g, *T. minimum*, $\times 440$ (Hsiung); h, *Tetratoxum unifasciculatum*, $\times 280$ (Hsiung).

zones; with or without a caudal projection; in the caecum and colon of horse.

T. caudatum F. (Fig. 311, f). 59–86 μ by 50–68 μ .

T. galea Gassovsky. 59–78 μ by 50–60 μ .

T. minimum G. (Fig. 311, g). 35–58 μ by 30–40 μ .

FIG. 312. a, *Tripalmaria dogieli*, $\times 180$ (Gassovsky); b, *Cochliatoxum periactum*, $\times 270$ (Hsiung); c, *Ditoxum funinucleum*, $\times 270$ (Hsiung); d-f, *Troglodytella abressarti* (d, $\times 670$ (Swezey); e, ventral and f, dorsal view, $\times 210$ (Brumpt and Joyeux)).

Genus **Tetratoxum** Gassovsky. Slightly compressed; 2 anterior and 2 posterior zones of membranellae; in the colon of horse.

P. unifasciculatum (Fiorentini) (Fig. 311, *h*). 104–168 μ by 62–100 μ ; widely distributed.

T. escavatum Hsiung. 95–135 μ by 55–90 μ .

T. parvum H. 67–98 μ by 39–52 μ .

Genus **Tripalmaria** Gassovsky (*Tricaudalia* Buisson). Adoral zone at anterior end; 2 dorsal and 1 ventral-posterior zones in tuft-form; macronucleus inverted U-shape; in the colon of horse.

T. dogieli G. (Fig. 312, *a*). 77–123 μ by 47–62 μ .

Genus **Triplumaria** Hoare. Adoral zone; 2 dorsal and 1 ventral cirrose tufts (caudals); skeleton, composed of polygonal plates arranged in a single layer, surrounds the body except the dorsal surface; dorsal groove supported by rod-like skeleton; macronucleus elongate sausage-form, with a micronucleus attached to its dorsal surface near middle; about 6 contractile vacuoles arranged in line along dorsal surface of body; in the intestine of Indian rhinoceros.

T. hamertoni H. 129–207 μ long, 65–82 μ thick, 4–39 μ broad; endo-commensal in the intestine of *Rhinoceros unicornis* in Zoological Garden in London.

Genus **Cochliatoxum** Gassovsky. Adoral zone near anterior end; 3 additional zones, 1 antero-dorsal, 1 postero-dorsal and 1 postero-ventral; macronucleus with curved anterior end; in the colon of horse. One species.

C. periactum G. (Fig. 312, *b*). 210–370 μ by 130–210 μ .

Genus **Ditoxum** Gassovsky. Large adoral zone near anterior end; 2 dorsal (anterior and posterior) zones; macronucleus curved club-shaped; in the colon of horse.

D. funinucleum G. (Fig. 312, *c*). 135–203 μ by 70–101 μ .

Genus **Troglodytella** Brumpt and Joyeux. Ellipsoid; flattened; adoral zone; 3 additional zones (anterior zone continuous or not continuous on ventral surface; posterior zone continuous on dorsal surface; between them a small zone on each side); skeletal plates in anterior region; macronucleus L-form; contractile vacuoles in 2 circles; in the colon of anthropoid apes.

T. abressarti B. and J. (Fig. 312, *d–f*). About 145–220 μ by 120–160 μ ; in the colon of chimpanzees. Reichenow (1927) distinguished var. *acuminata* on the basis of drawn-out posterior end, which was found by Swezey (1932) to be a variant of *T. abressarti*.

T. gorillae Reichenow. 200–280 μ by 120–160 μ ; in the colon of gorilla; with anterior zone not reaching the right side.

References

- BECKER, E. R. and MARY TALBOTT 1927 The protozoan fauna of the rumen and reticulum of American cattle. Iowa St. Coll. Jour. Sci., Vol. 1.
- DOGIEL, V. 1927 Monographie der Familie Ophryoscolecidae. I. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 59.
- HSIUNG, T. S. 1930 A monograph on the Protozoa of the large intestine of the horse. Iowa St. Coll. Jour. Sci., Vol. 4.
- KAHL, A. 1932 Dahl's *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands*. Part 25.
- KOFOID, C. A. and A. S. CAMPBELL 1929 A conspectus of the marine and freshwater Ciliata, belonging to the suborder Tintinninea, etc. Uni. Calif. Publ. Zool., Vol. 34.
- and J. F. CHRISTENSON 1934 Ciliates from *Bos gaurus* H. Smith. Ibid., Vol. 39.
- and R. F. MACLENNAN 1930, 1932, 1933 Ciliates from *Bos indicus* Linn. I, II, III. Ibid., Vols. 33, 37, 39.
- SWEZEY, W. W. 1934 Cytology of *Troglodytella abressarti*, an intestinal ciliate of the chimpanzee. Jour. Morph., Vol. 56.

CHAPTER 40

Order 2 *Spirotricha* Bütschli (continued)

Suborder 3 *Ctenostomata* Lauterborn

THE ciliates placed in this group are carapaced and compressed forms with a very sparse ciliation. The adoral zone is also reduced to about 8 membranellae. These organisms are exclusively free living and sapropelic in fresh, brackish, or salt water.

Posterior half of carapace with 4 ciliated rows on left and at least 2 rows on right; with anterior row of cilia on left side. . Family 1 Epalcidae
Posterior half of carapace with cirrus-like groups on left only, none on right; without frontal cilia

Long ciliated band extends over both broad sides. Family 2 Discomorphidae
Short ciliated band ventral, extending equally on both broad sides. Family 3 Mylestomidae (p. 666)

Family 1 *Epalcidae* Wetzel

Genus **Epalxis** Roux. Rounded triangular; anterior end pointed toward ventral surface, posterior end irregularly truncate; dorsal surface more convex; right carapace with 1 dorsal and 1 ventral ciliary row in posterior region; usually 4 (2–3) median teeth; all anal teeth without spine; with comb-like structures posterior to oral aperture; 1–2 oval macronuclei dorsal; contractile vacuole posterior-ventral; sapropelic in fresh or salt water. Many species.

E. mirabilis R. (Fig. 313, *a*). 38–45 μ by 27–30 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Saprodinium** Lauterborn. Similar to *Epalxis*; but some (left and right) of anal teeth with spines; sapropelic in fresh or salt water. Several species.

S. dentatum L. (Fig. 313, *b*). 60–80 μ long; fresh water.

S. putrinium Lackey (Fig. 313, *c*). 50 μ long, 40 μ wide, about 15 μ thick; in Imhoff tanks.

Genus **Pelodinium** Lauterborn. Right carapace with 2 median rows of cilia, its median anal teeth fused into one so that there are only three teeth. One species.

P. reniforme L. (Fig. 313, *d*). 40–50 μ long; sapropelic.

Family 2 *Discomorphidae* Poche

Genus **Discomorpha** Levander. Oval; ventrally directed anterior spine long; posterior end without teeth or ridges; ciliated bands on

both lateral surfaces; 2 spines on right side; 2 cirrus-like groups on posterior-left; sapropelic. A few species.

D. pectinata L. (Fig. 313, e, f). 70–90 μ long; sapropelic.

FIG. 313. a, *Epalxis mirabilis*, $\times 1200$ (Roux); b, *Saprodinium dentatum*, $\times 430$ (Kahl); c, *S. putrinum*, $\times 470$ (Lackey); d, *Pelodinium reniforme*, $\times 600$ (Lauterborn); e, f, *Discomorpha pectinata*, (e, $\times 500$; f, $\times 220$) (Kahl); g, *Mylestoma bipartitum*, $\times 470$ (Kahl); h, *Atopodinium fibulatum*, $\times 520$ (Kahl).

Family 3 Mylestomidae Kahl

Genus *Mylestoma* Kahl. Posterior margin without any indentation, though sometimes a small one on right side, but none on left;

3 often long ribbon-like cirri on peristome; fresh or salt water. Several species.

M. bipartitum (Gourret and Roesner) (Fig. 313, *g*). 35–50 μ long; two caudal processes; salt water.

Genus **Atopodinium** Kahl. Posterior left side with one large, and right side with 2 indentations; macronucleus spherical; sapropelic.

A. fibulatum K. (Fig. 313, *h*). 40–50 μ long.

References

- KAHL, A. 1932 Ctenostomata (Lauterborn) n. subord. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 77.
——— 1932 *Ürtiere oder Protozoa*. In Dahl's *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands*. Part 25.

CHAPTER 41

Order 2 *Spirotricha* Bütschli (continued)

Suborder 4 *Hypotricha* Stein

THE members of this suborder are, as a rule, flattened and strong cilia or cirri are restricted to the ventral surface. Except the family Aspidiscidae, the dorsal surface possesses rows of short slightly moveable tactile bristles. The peristome is very large with a well-developed adoral zone. The cirri on the ventral surface are called, according to their location, frontals, ventrals, marginals, anals (transversals), and caudals, as was mentioned before (Fig. 11, *b*). Asexual reproduction is by binary fission and sexual reproduction by conjugation. Encystment is common. Mostly free-living in fresh, brackish or salt water; a few parasitic.

Adoral zone fully formed

Cirri on ventral surface

Ventrals in rows, though in some reduced; 2 rows of marginals. . . .
Family 1 Oxytrichidae

Ventrals and marginals not in longitudinal rows.
Family 2 Euplotidae (p. 676)

No ventral cirri; caudal cirri. Family 3 Paraeuplotidae (p. 677)

Adoral zone reduced. Family 4 Aspidiscidae (p. 679)

Family 1 *Oxytrichidae* Kent

Genus *Oxytricha* Ehrenberg (*Histrio* Sterki; *Opisthotricha* Kent; *Steinia* Diesing). Ellipsoid; flexible; ventral surface flattened, dorsal surface convex; 8 frontals; 5 ventrals; 5 anals; short caudals; marginals may or may not be continuous along posterior border; macronucleus in 2 parts, rarely single or in 4 parts; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

O. fallax Stein (Fig. 314, *a*). Posterior region broadly rounded; about 150 μ long; fresh water.

O. bifaria Stokes (Fig. 314, *b*). Right side convex; left side flattened; posterior end pointed; about 250 μ long; fresh water infusion.

O. ludibunda S. (Fig. 314, *c*). Ellipsoid; flexible; 100 μ long; fresh water among sphagnum.

O. setigera S. (Fig. 314, *d*). Elongate ellipsoid; 5 frontals; ventrals shifted anteriorly; 50 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Tachysoma** Stokes (*Actinotricha* Cohn). Flexible; frontals 8–10, of which anterior three are usually the largest; 5 ventrals scattered; 5 anals; marginals at some distance from lateral borders, interrupted posteriorly; fresh or salt water.

T. parvistyla S. (Fig. 314, e). 10 frontals scattered; about 63μ long; in shallow freshwater pools.

FIG. 314. a, *Oxytricha fallax*, $\times 230$ (Stein); b, *O. bifaria*, $\times 180$ (Stokes); c, *O. ludibunda*, $\times 400$ (Stokes); d, *O. setigera*, $\times 870$ (Stokes); e, *Tachysoma parvistyla*, $\times 490$ (Stokes); f, *Urosoma caudata*, $\times 250$ (Stokes); g, *Amphisiella thiophaga*, $\times 380$ (Kahl); h, *Eschaneustyla brachytoma*, $\times 240$ (Stokes); i, *Gonostomum strenuum*, $\times 160$ (Engelmann); j, *Hemicycliostyla sphagni*, $\times 100$ (Stokes); k, l, *Cladotricha koltzowii* (k, $\times 170$; l, $\times 300$) (Kahl).

Genus **Urosoma** Kowalewski. Similar to *Oxytricha*; but posterior portion drawn out and much narrowed; fresh water.

U. caudata (Stokes) (Fig. 314, f). 200–250 μ long; pond water.

Genus **Amphisiella** Gourret and Roeser. With a single row of ventrals and 2 marginal rows; salt or fresh water. Several species.

A. thiophaga (Kahl) (Fig. 314, *g*). 70–100 μ long; salt water.

Genus **Eschaneustyla** Stokes. Elliptical or ovate; narrow peristome $1/3$ the body length; frontals numerous, about 22 in addition to 2 at anterior margin; ventrals small and numerous in 3 oblique rows; no anals; marginals uninterrupted; contractile vacuole a long canal near left border; fresh water. One species.

E. brachytona S. (Fig. 314, *h*). 170–220 μ long.

Genus **Gonostomum** Sterki (*Plagiotricha* Kent). Flexible; 8 or more frontals; 1–2 oblique ventral rows of short cirri; 4 or 5 anals; 2 marginal rows; fresh water.

G. strenuum (Engelmann) (Fig. 314, *i*). Elongate; with caudal bristles; about 150 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Hemicycliostyla** Stokes. Elongate oval; flexible; ends rounded; 20 or more frontals, arranged in 2 semicircular rows; adoral row begins near center on right side of peristomal field; ventral surface entirely covered with fine cilia; no anals; one or more contractile vacuoles; nucleus distributed; fresh water.

H. sphagni S. (Fig. 314, *j*). About 400–500 μ long; marsh water with sphagnum.

Genus **Hypotrichidium** Ilowaisky. Two ventral and marginal rows of cirri spirally arranged; peristome large, extends $1/2$ the body length, with a large undulating membrane; 2 macro- and micro-nuclei; contractile vacuole anterior-left; fresh water.

H. conicum I. (Fig. 315, *a*). 90–150 μ long.

Genus **Cladotricha** Gajevskaja. Elongate band-form; anterior end rounded, posterior end rounded or attenuated; frontals only 2 feathery cirri; macronucleus spheroidal; micronucleus; without contractile vacuole; salt water, with 5–20 per cent salt content. One species.

C. koltzowii G. (Fig. 314, *k, l*). Band-form up to about 200 μ long; posteriorly attenuated forms up to about 100 μ long.

Genus **Psilotricha** Stein. Oval to ellipsoid; frontals and anals undifferentiated; ventrals and marginals long cirri, few; ventrals in 2 rows and a rudimentary row toward left; with or without zoochlorellae; fresh water. A few species.

P. acuminata S. (Fig. 315, *b*). 80–100 μ long.

Genus **Kahlia** Horvath. Frontal margin with 3–4 strong cirri; 5–8 ventral longitudinal rows; marginals; sapropelic in fresh water.

K. acrobates H. (Fig. 315, *c*). 100–200 μ long; soil infusion.

Genus *Uroleptus* Ehrenberg. Elongate body drawn out into a tail-like portion; 3 frontals; 2-4 rows of ventral cirri; marginals; no anals; sometimes rose- or violet-colored; fresh or salt water. Many species.

FIG. 315. a, *Hypotrichidium conicum*, $\times 200$ (Kahl); b, *Psilotrichia acuminata*, $\times 230$ (Stein); c, *Kahlia acrobates*, $\times 240$ (Kahl); d, *Uroleptus limnetis*, $\times 240$ (Stokes); e, *U. longicaudatus*, $\times 240$ (Stokes); f, *U. dispar*, $\times 240$ (Stokes); g, *Uroleptopsis citrina*, $\times 260$ (Kahl); h, *Strongylidium californicum*, $\times 200$ (Kahl); i, *Stichotricha secunda*, $\times 340$ (Kahl); j, *Urostyla grandis*, $\times 140$ (Stein); k, *U. trichogaster*, $\times 150$ (Kahl).

U. limnetis Stokes (Fig. 315, d). About 200μ long; fresh water among vegetation.

U. longicaudatus S. (Fig. 315, e). About 200μ long; marsh water with sphagnum.

U. dispar S. (Fig. 315, f). $150\text{--}170\mu$ long; fresh water.

U. halseyi Calkins (Fig. 317, a). About 160μ by 20μ ; peristome $1/6\text{--}1/7$ the body length; 3 ventrals; macronucleus divided into

many (up to 26) parts; 2 (1-3) micronuclei; fresh water.

Genus **Uroleptopsis** Kahl. Ventrals in 2 uninterrupted rows; salt water. A few species.

U. citrina K. (Fig. 315, *g*). Elongate; flexible; ectoplasm with pale-yellow ringed bodies which give the organism yellowish color; marginals discontinuous posteriorly; 2 contractile vacuoles near left border; 150-250 μ long; salt water.

Genus **Strongylidium** Sterki. 2-5 ventral rows of cirri; marginals spirally arranged; 3-6 frontals; 2 or more macronuclei; fresh or salt water. Many species.

S. californicum Kahl (Fig. 315, *h*). 4-5 frontals; macronuclei about 30 in number; 4 micronuclei; contractile vacuole with short canals; about 250 μ long; fresh water among vegetation.

Genus **Stichotricha** Perty. Slender ovoid or fusiform; peristome-bearing part narrowed; not flexible; usually 4 spiral rows of cirri; sometimes tube-dwelling, and then in groups; fresh or salt water. Many species.

S. secunda P. (Fig. 315, *i*). 130-200 μ long; in fresh water.

Genus **Chaetospira** Lachmann. Similar to *Stichotricha*; but peristome-bearing part flexible; fresh or salt water.

C. mülleri L. 150-250 μ long; in lorica; fresh water.

Genus **Urostyla** Ehrenberg. Ellipsoid; flexible; ends rounded; flattened ventral surface with 4-10 rows of small cirri and 2 marginal rows; 3 or more frontals; 5-12 anals; macronucleus a single body or in many parts; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

U. grandis E. (Figs. 47; 315, *j*). 300-400 μ long; macronucleus in 100 or more parts; 6-8 micronuclei; fresh water.

U. trichogaster Stokes (Fig. 315, *k*). 250-330 μ long; fresh water.

U. caudata S. (Fig. 316, *a*). Elongate ellipsoid; flexible; narrowed anterior part bent to left; peristome 1/3 the body length; macronucleus in many parts; contractile vacuoles near left margin; about 600 μ long; fresh water with sphagnum.

Genus **Kerona** Ehrenberg. Reniform; no caudals; 6 oblique rows of ventral cirri; commensal. One species.

K. polyporum E. (Fig. 316, *b*). 120-200 μ long; commensal on Hydra.

Genus **Keronopsis** Penard. Two ventral rows of cirri reaching frontal field; caudals variable; macronucleus usually in several (rarely 2) parts; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

K. rubra (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 316, *c*). Reddish; 200-300 μ long; salt water.

Genus **Epiclintes** Stein. Elongate; spoon-shaped; flattened ventral surface with more than 2 rows of cirri; 2 marginal rows; frontals undifferentiated; anals; no caudals; salt or fresh water. A few species.

E. pluvialis Smith (Fig. 316, d). About 375μ long; fresh water.

FIG. 316. a, *Urostyla caudata*, $\times 90$ (Stokes); b, *Kerona polyporum*, $\times 200$ (Stein); c, *Keronopsis rubra*, $\times 270$ (Entz); d, *Epiclintes pluvialis*, $\times 100$ (Smith); e, *Holosticha vernalis*, $\times 220$ (Stokes); f, *H. hymenophora*, $\times 180$ (Stokes); g, *Paraholosticha herbicola*, $\times 200$ (Kahl); h, *Trichotaxis stagnatilis*, $\times 190$ (Stokes); i, *Balladyna elongata*, $\times 800$ (Roux); j, *Pleurotricha lanceolata*, $\times 250$ (Stein); k, *Gastrostyla muscorum*, $\times 200$ (Kahl).

Genus **Holosticha** Wrzesniowski. Three frontals along anterior margin; 2 ventral and 2 marginal rows of cirri; anals; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

H. vernalis Stokes (Fig. 316, e). 7 anals; about 180μ long; shallow pools with algae.

H. hymenophora S. (Fig. 316, f). 5 anals; 2 contractile vacuoles; $160\text{--}200\mu$ long; shallow pools.

Genus **Paraholosticha** Kahl. Elongate-oval; flexible; ventral cirri in 2 parallel oblique rows; with a row of stiff cirri along frontal margin, posterior to it 2 short rows of cirri; marginals continuous or interrupted at posterior border; fresh water.

P. herbicola K. (Fig. 316, *g*). 150–190 μ long; fresh water among algae.

Genus **Trichotaxis** Stokes. Similar to *Holosticha*; but with 3 rows of ventral cirri; fresh or salt water.

T. stagnatilis S. (Fig. 316, *h*). About 160 μ long; ellipsoid; in fresh water among decaying vegetation.

Genus **Balladyna** Kowalewski. Ellipsoid; frontals not well developed or lacking; 1 ventral and 2 marginal rows of cirri; long dorsal and lateral stiff cirri; fresh water.

B. elongata Roux (Fig. 316, *i*). 32–35 μ by 11–12 μ ; fresh water among plants and detritus.

Genus **Pleurotricha** Stein. Oblong to ellipsoid; marginals continuous; 8 frontals; 3–4 ventrals; 7 anals of which 2 are more posterior; 2 rows of ventral cirri; between ventrals and marginals 1–3 rows of few coarse cilia; fresh water.

P. lanceolata (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 316, *j*). 100–165 μ long; 2 macro- and 2 micro-nuclei. Manwell (1928) studied its conjugation, division, encystment and nuclear variation.

Genus **Gastrostyla** Engelmann. Frontals distributed except 3 along the frontal margin; ventrals irregular; 5 anals; macronucleus divided into 2–8 parts; fresh or salt water.

G. muscorum Kahl (Fig. 316, *k*). 130–200 μ long; macronucleus in 8 parts; fresh water in vegetation.

Genus **Stylonychia** Ehrenberg. Ovoid to reniform; not flexible; ventral surface flat, dorsal surface convex; 8 frontals; 5 ventrals; 5 anals; marginals; 3 caudals; with short dorsal bristles; fresh or salt water. Many species.

S. mytilus (Müller) (Fig. 317, *b*). 100–300 μ long; fresh, brackish and salt water.

S. pustulata E. (Figs. 84; 317, *c*). About 150 μ long; fresh water; nuclear changes were studied by Summers (1935).

S. putrina Stokes (Fig. 317, *d*). 125–150 μ long; fresh water.

S. notophora S. (Fig. 317, *e*). About 125 μ long; standing water.

Genus **Onychodromus** Stein. Not flexible; somewhat rectangular; anterior end truncate, posterior end rounded; ventral surface flat, dorsal surface convex; peristome broadly triangular in ventral view; 3 frontals; 3 rows of cirri parallel to the right edge of peristome; 5–6

FIG. 317. a, *Uroleptus halseyi*, $\times 470$ (Calkins); b, *Stylonychia mytilus*, $\times 200$ (Stein); c, *S. pustulata*, $\times 400$ (Roux); d, *S. putrina*, $\times 200$ (Stokes); e, *S. notophora*, $\times 200$ (Stokes); f, *Onychodromus grandis*, $\times 230$ (Stein); g, *Onychodromopsis flexilis*, $\times 240$ (Stokes); h, *Euplores patella*, $\times 420$; i, *E. eurystomus*, $\times 330$; j, *E. woodruffi*, $\times 310$; k, *E. aediculatus*, $\times 290$ (h-k, Pierson, modified).

anals; marginals uninterrupted; 4–8 macronuclei; contractile vacuole; fresh water. One species.

O. grandis S. (Fig. 317, *f*). 100–300 μ long.

Genus *Onychodromopsis* Stokes. Similar to *Onychodromus*; but flexible; 6 frontals of which the anterior three are the largest; fresh water. One species.

O. flexilis S. (Fig. 317, *g*). 90–125 μ long; standing pond water.

Family 2 Euplotidae Claus

Genus *Euplotes* Ehrenberg. Inflexible body ovoid; ventral surface flattened, dorsal surface convex; longitudinally ridged; peristome broadly triangular; frontal part of adoral zone lies in flat furrow; 9 or more frontal-ventrals; 5 anals; 4 scattered caudals; macronucleus band-like; a micronucleus; contractile vacuole posterior; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

E. patella (Müller) (Fig. 317, *h*). Subcircular to elliptical; average dimensions 91 μ by 52 μ ; 9 frontal-ventrals; aboral surface with 6 prominent ridges with rows of bristles embedded in rosettes of granules; peristome narrow; peristomal plate small triangle; macronucleus simple C-form band; micronucleus near anterior-left end; membranellae straight; posterior end of cytopharynx anterior to, and to left of, the fifth anal cirrus; post-pharyngeal sac; fresh and brackish water.

E. eurystomus Wrzesniowski (Fig. 317, *i*). Elongated ellipsoid; length 100–195 μ ; average dimensions 138 μ by 78 μ ; 9 frontal-ventrals; no aboral ridges, but 7 rows of bristles; peristome wide, deep; peristomal depression sigmoid; membranellae forming sigmoid curve; end of cytopharynx far to left and anterior to the fifth anal cirrus; post-pharyngeal sac; macronucleus 3-shaped; micronucleus near flattened anterior corner of macronucleus; fresh and brackish water.

E. woodruffi Gaw (Fig. 317, *j*). Oval; length 120–165 μ ; average dimensions 140 μ by 90 μ ; 9 frontal-ventrals; aboral surface often with 8 low ridges; peristome wide, with a small peristomal plate; end of cytopharynx almost below the median ridge; 4th ridge between anal cirri often extends to anterior end of body; post-pharyngeal sac; macronucleus consistently T-shaped; micronucleus anterior-right; brackish (with salinity 2.30 parts of salt per 1000) and fresh water.

E. aediculatus Pierson (Fig. 317, *k*). Elliptical; length 110–165 μ ; average dimensions 132 μ by 84 μ ; 9 frontal-ventrals; aboral surface usually without ridges, but with about 6 rows of bristles; peristome narrow; peristomal plate long triangular, drawn out posteriorly; a niche midway on the right border of peristome; anal cirri often form

a straight transverse line; 4th ridge between anals may reach anterior end of body; macronucleus C-shape with a flattened part in the left-anterior region; micronucleus some distance from macronucleus at anterior-left region; post-pharyngeal sac; fresh and brackish (salinity 2.30 parts of salt per 1000) water.

E. plumipes Stokes. Similar to *E. eurystomus*. About 125 μ long; fresh water.

E. carinatus S. (Fig. 318, a). About 70 μ by 50 μ ; fresh water.

E. charon (Müller) (Fig. 318, b). 70–90 μ long; salt water.

Genus **Euplotidium** Noland. Cylindrical; 9 frontal-ventrals in 2 rows toward right; 5 anals; a groove extends backward from oral region to ventral side, in which the left-most anal cirrus lies; peristome opened widely at anterior end, but covered posteriorly by a transparent, curved, flap-like membrane; adoral zone made up of about 80 membranellae; longitudinal ridges (carinae), 3 dorsal and 2 lateral; a row of protrichocysts under each carina; a broad zone of protrichocysts in antero-dorsal region; cytoplasm densely granulated; salt water. One species.

E. agitatum N. (Fig. 318, c, d). 65–95 μ long; erratic movement rapid; observed in half-dead sponges in Florida.

Genus **Certesia** Fabre-Domergue. Ellipsoid; flattened; dorsal surface slightly convex, ventral surface flat or concave; 5 frontals at anterior border; 7 ventrals; 5 anals; no caudals; marginals small in number; 4 macronuclei; salt water. One species.

C. quadrinucleata F.-D. (Fig. 318, e). 70–100 μ by about 45 μ .

Genus **Diophrys** Dujardin. Peristome relatively large, often reaching anals; 7–9 frontal-ventrals; 5 anals; 3 strong cirri right-dorsal near posterior margin; salt water.

D. appendiculata (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 318, f). 60–100 μ long; salt water; Woods Hole (Calkins).

Genus **Uronychia** Stein. Without frontals and ventrals; 5 anals; 3 right-dorsal cirri (as in *Diophrys*); 2 left-ventral cirri near posterior margin; peristome, oval with a large undulating membrane on right edge; salt water. Several species.

U. setigera Calkins (Fig. 318, g). 40 μ by 25 μ ; salt water; Woods Hole.

Family 3 **Paraeuplotidae** Wichterman

Genus **Paraeuplotes** Wichterman. Ovoid; ventral surface slightly concave, dorsal surface highly convex and bare, but with one ridge; frontal and adoral zones well developed; ventral surface with a semi-circular ciliary ring on the right half, posterior half of which is

FIG. 318. a, *Euplores carinatus*, $\times 430$ (Stokes); b, *E. charon*, $\times 440$ (Kahl); c, d, *Euplotidium agitatedum*, $\times 540$ (Noland); e, *Certesiea quadrinucleata*, $\times 670$ (Sauerbrey); f, *Diophrys appendiculata*, $\times 570$ (Wallengren); g, *Uronychia setigera*, $\times 870$ (Calkins); h, *Aspidisca lynceus*, $\times 300$ (Stein); i, *A. polystyla*, $\times 290$ (Kahl).

marked by a plate and with two ciliary tufts, near the middle of anterior half; 5-6 caudal cirri; macronucleus curved band-form; a terminal contractile vacuole; zooxanthellae, but no food vacuole in cytoplasm; marine, on the coral.

P. tortugensis W. (Fig. 319). Subcircular to ovoid; average individuals 85μ by 75μ ; ciliary plate 37μ long, with longer cilia; adoral zone reaches nearly the posterior end; "micronucleus not clearly differentiated" (Wichterman); 5-6 caudal cirri about 13μ long; zooxanthellae yellowish brown, about 12μ in diameter, fill the body; found on *Eunicea crassa* (coral); Tortugas, Florida.

FIG. 319. a, b, dorsal and ventral views of *Paraeuplotes tortugensis* in life (Wichterman). avc, anterior ventral cilia; cp, ciliary plate; cpc, ciliary plate cilia; cv, contractile vacuole; ds, dorsal swelling; fm, frontal membranellae; om, adoral membranellae; sp, caudal cirri; tc, tufts of cilia; zo, zooxanthellae. $\times$ about 470.

Family 4 Aspidiscidae Claus

Genus *Aspidisca* Ehrenberg. Small; ovoid; inflexible; right and dorsal side convex, ventral side flattened; dorsal surface conspicuously ridged; adoral zone reduced or rudimentary; 7 frontal-ventrals; 5-12 anals; macronucleus horseshoe-shaped or occasionally in 2 rounded parts; contractile vacuole posterior; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

A. lynceus E. (Figs. 54; 318, h). $30-50\mu$ long; fresh water. Division was studied by Summers (1935).

A. polystyla Stein (Fig. 318, i). About 50μ long; salt water; Woods Hole (Calkins).

References

- CALKINS, G. N. 1902 Marine Protozoa from Woods Hole. Bull. U. S. Fish. Comm., Vol. 21.
- KENT, S. 1881-1882 *A manual of Infusoria*. London.
- NOLAND, L. E. 1937 Observations on marine ciliates of the Gulf coast of Florida. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 56.
- PIERSON, BERNICE F. 1943 A comparative morphological study of several species of Euplotes closely related to *Euplotes patella*. Jour. Morph., Vol. 72.
- ROUX, J. 1901 Faune infusorienne des eaux stagnantes des environs de Genève. Mém. fac. sci. l'Univ. Genève.
- STEIN, F. 1867 *Der Organismus der Infusionstiere*. Vol. 2.
- STOKES, A. C. 1888 A preliminary contribution toward a history of the freshwater Infusoria of the United States. Jour. Trenton N. H. Soc., Vol. 1.
- WICHTERMAN, R. 1942 A new ciliate from a coral of Tortugas and its symbiotic zooxanthellae. Carnegie Inst. Washington, Papers Tortugas Lab., Vol. 33.

CHAPTER 42

Order 3 Chonotricha Wallengren

THESE ciliates live attached to aquatic animals, especially crustaceans and have developed a peculiar organization. The body is, as a rule, vase-form with an apical peristome, around which extends a more or less complicated ectoplasmic collar or funnel and along which are found ciliary rows that lead to the deeply located cytostome and cytopharynx. The macronucleus is oval and situated centrally; there is a contractile vacuole usually near the cytopharynx. Asexual reproduction is by lateral budding, and conjugation has been observed in a few species.

Family Spirochonidae Stein

Genus **Spirochona** Stein. Peristome funnel spirally wound; ciliary zone on floor of the spiral furrow; attached to *Gammarus* in fresh

FIG. 320. a, *Spirochona gemmipara*, $\times 300$ (Hertwig); b, *Stylochona coronata*, $\times 400$ (Kent); c, *Kentrochona nebaliae*, $\times 970$ (Rompel); d, *Heliochona scheuteni*, $\times 550$ (Wallengren); e, *H. sessilis*, $\times 510$ (Wallengren); f, *Chilodochona quennerstedti*, $\times 400$ (Wallengren).

water. Several species. Swarczewsky (1928) described several species from Lake Baikal in Siberia.

S. gemmipara S. (Fig. 320, *a*). 80–120 μ long; attached to the gill-plates of *Gammarus pulex* and other species.

Genus **Stylochona** Kent. Peristomal funnel with an inner funnel. One species.

S. coronata K. (Fig. 320, *b*). About 60 μ long; on marine *Gammarus*.

Genus **Kentrochona** Rompel (*Kentrochonopsis* Doflein). Peristomal funnel wide, simple, membranous; with or without a few (2) spines.

K. nebaliae R. (Fig. 320, *c*). About 40 μ long; much flattened, with its broad side attached by means of gelatinous substance to epi- and exo-podite of *Nebalia geoffroyi*; salt water.

Genus **Heliochona** Plate. Peristomal funnel with numerous needle-like spines.

H. scheuteni (Stein) (Fig. 320, *d*). About 80–90 μ long; on appendages of *Gammarus locusta*; salt water.

H. sessilis P. (Fig. 320, *e*). About 60 μ long; on *Gammarus locusta*; salt water.

Genus **Chilodochona** Wallengren. Peristome drawn out into two lips; with a long stalk.

C. quennerstedti W. (Fig. 320, *f*). 60–115 μ long; stalk, 40–160 μ ; on *Ebalia turnefacta* and *Portunus depurator*; salt water.

Reference

KAHL, A. 1935 *Urtiere oder Protozoa*. In Dahl's *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands*. Part 30.

CHAPTER 43

Order 4 Peritricha Stein

THE peritrichous ciliates possess a much enlarged disk-like anterior region which is conspicuously ciliated. The adoral zone is counter-clockwise to the cytostome viewed from the anterior end. The body ciliation is more or less limited. The stalked forms produce free-swimming individuals, **telotrochs**. Asexual reproduction is by binary fission; and conjugation occurs commonly. The majority are free-living or attached to various aquatic animals and plants, although a few are parasitic.

Attached to submerged objects; usually no body cilia, though telotroch possesses a posterior ring of cilia.....Suborder 1 Sessilia
Free-swimming; but with highly developed attaching organellae on aboral end.....Suborder 2 Mobilia (p. 692)

Suborder 1 Sessilia Kahl

Without lorica, although some with a gelatinous or mucilaginous envelope.....Tribe 1 Aloricata
With definite pseudochitinous lorica.....Tribe 2 Loricata (p. 690)

Tribe 1 Aloricata Kahl

Posterior end with 1-2 short spines; swimming with peristome-bearing end forward.....Family 1 Astylozoonidae
Posterior end, directly or indirectly through stalk, attached to submerged objects

Anterior region a long cylindrical, highly contractile neck; contractile vacuole posterior, connected with vestibule by a long canal; reservoir of contractile vacuole distinct; with or without a thin stalk.....Family 2 Ophryidiidae (p. 685)

Anterior portion not drawn out into a neck

Without stalk.....Family 3 Scyphidiidae (p. 685)

With stalk

Stalk non-contractile.....Family 4 Epistylidae (p. 686)

Stalk contractile.....Family 5 Vorticellidae (p. 687)

Family 1 Astylozoonidae Kahl

Genus **Astylozoon** Engelmann (*Gelerella* Stiller). Free-swimming; pyriform or conical; aboral end attenuated, with 1-2 thigmotactic stiff cilia; pellicle smooth or furrowed; with or without gelatinous envelope; in fresh water. A few species.

A. fallax E. (Fig. 321, a). 70-100 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Hastatella** Erlanger. Free-swimming; body surface with 2-4 rings of long conical ectoplasmic processes; fresh water.

H. aesculacantha Jarocki and Jacobowska (Fig. 321, b). 30–52 μ by 24–40 μ ; in stagnant water.

FIG. 321. a, *Astylozoon fallax*, $\times 170$ (Engelmann); b, *Hastatella aesculacantha*, $\times 580$ (Jarocki); c, *Opisthionecta henneguyi*, $\times 500$ (Lynch and Noble); d, e, *Ophridium sessile* (d, $\times 1.5$; e, $\times 65$) (Kent); f, *O. vernalis*, $\times 160$ (Stokes); g, *Scyphidia constricta*, $\times 360$ (Stokes); h, *Paravorticella clymenellae*, $\times 65$ (Shumway).

Genus **Opisthionecta** Faurè-Fremiet. Conical; ends broadly rounded; a ring of long cilia close to aboral end; adoral zone about

1.1 turns, composed of 2 parallel rows; a papilla with about 12 long cilia, just above the opening into vestibule; macronucleus sausage-form; micronucleus; 3 contractile vacuoles connected with cytopharynx; fresh water. One species.

O. henneguyi F.-F. (Fig. 321, c). 148–170 μ long. The organisms studied by Lynch and Noble (1931) were infected by endoparasitic suctorian, *Endosphaera engelmanni* (p. 705).

Family 2 Ophryidiidae Kent

Genus *Ophrydium* Ehrenberg (*Gerda* Claparède and Lachmann). Cylindrical with a contractile neck; posterior end pointed or rounded; variable number of individuals in a common mucilaginous mass; pellicle usually cross-striated; fresh water.

O. sessile Kent (Fig. 321, d, e). Fully extended body up to 300 μ long; colorless or slightly brownish; ovoid colony up to 5 mm. by 3 mm.; attached to freshwater plants.

O. vernalis (Stokes) (Fig. 321, f). About 250 μ long; highly contractile; in shallow freshwater ponds in early spring (Stokes).

O. ectatum Mast. 225–400 μ long; with numerous zoochlorellae. In a creek near Falmouth, Mass.

Family 3 Scyphidiidae Kahl

Genus *Scyphidia* Dujardin. Cylindrical; posterior end attached to submerged object by an attaching disk; cross-striated; fresh or salt water.

S. constricta Stokes (Fig. 321, g). About 55–60 μ long; pond water.

Genus *Paravorticella* Kahl. Similar to *Scyphidia*; but posterior portion is much elongated and contractile; salt water, attached or parasitic.

P. clymenellae (Shumway) (Fig. 321, h). 100 μ long; in the colon of the annelid, *Clymenella troquata*; Woods Hole.

Genus *Glossatella* Bütschli. With a large adoral membrane; often attached to fish and amphibian larvae.

G. tintinnabulum (Kent) (Fig. 322, a). 30–43 μ long; attached to the epidermis and gills of young Triton.

Genus *Ellobiophrya* Chatton and Lwoff. Posterior end drawn out into 2 arm-like processes by means of which the organism holds fast to the gill bars of the mussel, *Donax vittatus*. One species.

E. donacis C. and L. (Fig. 322, b). 50 μ by 40 μ , excluding the processes.

Family 4 Epistylidae Kent

Genus *Epistylis* Ehrenberg. Inverted bell-form; individuals usually on dichotomous non-contractile stalk, forming large colonies; attached to fresh or salt water animals. Numerous species.

FIG. 322. a, *Glossatella tintinnabulum*, $\times 610$ (Penard); b, *Ellobiophrya donacis*, $\times 900$ (Chatton and Lwoff); c, *Epistylis plicatilis*, $\times 200$ (Stein); d, *E. fugitans*, $\times 260$ (Kellicott); e, f, *E. cambari* (e, $\times 140$; f, $\times 340$) (Kellicott); g, *Rhabdostyla vernalis*, $\times 320$ (Stokes); h, *Opisthostyla annulata*, $\times 440$ (Stokes); i, *Campanella umbellaria*, $\times 180$ (Schröder); j, *Pyxidium vernale*, $\times 240$ (Stokes); k, *P. urceolatum*, $\times 140$ (Stokes); l, *Opercularia stenostoma*, $\times 140$ (d'Udekem); m, n, *O. plicatilis* (m, $\times 40$; n, $\times 60$) (Stokes).

E. plicatilis E. (Fig. 322, c). 90–100 μ long; colony often up to 3 mm. in height; fresh water.

E. fugitans Kellicott (Fig. 322, *d*). 50–60 μ long; attached to *Sida* in early spring.

E. cambari K. (Fig. 322, *e, f*). About 50 μ long; attached to the gills of *Cambarus*.

Genus **Rhabdostyla** Kent. Similar to *Epistylis*; but solitary with a non-contractile stalk; attached to aquatic animals in fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

R. vernalis Stokes (Fig. 322, *g*). About 50 μ long; attached to Cyclops and Cypris in pools in early spring.

Genus **Opisthostyla** Stokes. Similar to *Rhabdostyla*; but stalk long, is bent at its point of attachment to submerged object, and acts like a spring; fresh or salt water.

O. annulata S. (Fig. 322, *h*). Body about 23 μ long; fresh water.

Genus **Campanella** Goldfuss. Similar to *Epistylis*; but adoral double zone turns 4–6 times; fresh water.

C. umbellaria (Linnaeus) (Fig. 322, *i*). Colony may reach several millimeters in height; individuals 130–250 μ long (Kent).

Genus **Pyxidium** Kent. Stalk simple, not branching; peristome even when fully opened, not constricted from the body proper; frontal disk small, oblique, supported by style-like slender process arising from peristome; attached to freshwater animals and in vegetation.

P. vernale Stokes (Fig. 322, *j*). Solitary or few together; 70–85 μ long; fresh water among algae.

P. urceolatum S. (Fig. 322, *k*). About 90 μ long; fresh water on plants.

Genus **Opercularia** Stein. Individuals similar to *Pyxidium*; but short stalk dichotomous; peristome border like a band.

O. stenostoma S. (Fig. 322, *l*). When extended up to 125 μ long; attached to *Asellus aquaticus* and others.

O. plicatilis Stokes (Fig. 322, *m, n*). About 254 μ long; colony 1.25–2.5 mm. high; pond water.

Family 5 Vorticellidae Fromental

Genus **Vorticella** Linnaeus. Inverted bell-form; colorless, yellowish, or greenish; peristome more or less outwardly extended; pellicle sometimes annulated; with a contractile stalk, macronucleus band-form; micronucleus; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; solitary; in fresh or salt water, attached to submerged objects. Noland and Finley (1931) gave a taxonomic consideration of the genus. Numerous species.

V. campanula Ehrenberg (Fig. 323, *a–c*). Usually in groups; endoplasm filled with refractile reserve granules; vestibule very large

with an outer pharyngeal membrane; $50\text{--}157\mu$ by $35\text{--}99\mu$; peristome $60\text{--}125\mu$ wide; stalk $50\text{--}4150\mu$ by $5.6\text{--}12\mu$ fresh water.

V. convallaria (L.) (Fig. 323, d, e). Resembles the last-named species; but anterior end somewhat narrow; usually without refractile granules in endoplasm; $50\text{--}95\mu$ by $35\text{--}53\mu$; peristome $55\text{--}75\mu$ wide; stalk $25\text{--}460\mu$ by $4\text{--}6.5\mu$; fresh water.

FIG. 323. a-c, *Vorticella campanula* (a, $\times 400$; b, part of stalk, $\times 800$; c, telotroch, $\times 200$); d, e, *V. convallaria* (d, $\times 400$; e, $\times 800$); f-p, *V. microstoma* (f, g, $\times 400$; h, $\times 840$; i, telotroch, $\times 400$; j-p, telotroch-formation *in vitro*, $\times 270$); q, r, *V. picta* (q, $\times 400$; r, $\times 800$); s, t, *V. monilata* (s, $\times 400$; t, $\times 800$) (Noland and Finley).

V. microstoma Ehrenberg (Fig. 323, f-p). $35\text{--}83\mu$ by $22\text{--}50\mu$; peristome $12\text{--}25\mu$ wide; stalk $20\text{--}385\mu$ by $1.5\text{--}4\mu$; common in fresh-water infusion.

V. picta (E.) (Fig. 323, *q, r*). 41–63 μ by 20–37 μ ; peristome 35–50 μ ; stalk 205–550 μ by 4–7 μ ; 2 contractile vacuoles; with refractile granules in stalk; fresh water.

V. monilata Tatem (Fig. 323, *s, t*). Body with pellicular tubercles; 2 contractile vacuoles; 50–78 μ by 35–57 μ ; peristome 35–63 μ wide; stalk 50–200 μ by 5–6.5 μ ; fresh water.

Genus **Carchesium** Ehrenberg. Similar to *Vorticella*; but colonial; myonemes in stalk not continuous, and therefore individual stalks contract independently; attached to fresh or salt water animals or plants; occasionally colonies up to 4 mm. high. Several species.

FIG. 324. a, *Carchesium polypinum*, $\times 200$ (Stein); b, *C. granulatum*, $\times 220$ (Kellicott); c, *Zoothamnium arbuscula*, $\times 200$ (Stein); d, *Z. adamsi*, $\times 150$ (Stokes).

C. polypinum (Linnaeus) (Figs. 35; 324, *a*). 100–125 μ long; fresh water.

C. granulatum Kellicott (Fig. 324, *b*). About 100 μ long; 2 contractile vacuoles anterior; on *Cambarus* and aquatic plants.

Genus **Zoothamnium** Bory. Similar to *Carchesium*; but myonemes (Fig. 15) of all stalks of a colony are continuous with one another, so that the entire colony contracts or expands simultaneously; fresh or salt water; colonies sometimes several millimeters high. Numerous species.

Z. arbuscula Ehrenberg (Fig. 324, *c*). 40–60 μ long; colony up to more than 6 mm. high; fresh water.

Z. adamsi Stokes (Fig. 324, *d*). About 60 μ long; colony about 250 μ high; attached to *Cladophora*.

Tribe 2 Loricata Kahl

Peristomal margin not connected with lorica; body attached only at posterior end, and extends, out of lorica. . Family 1 Vaginicolidae
 Peristomal margin connected with inner margin of aperture of lorica; stalked disk only extends out of lorica. Family 2 Lagenophryidae (p. 691)

FIG. 325. a, *Vaginicola leptosoma*, $\times 130$ (Stokes); b, *V. annulata*, $\times 170$ (Stokes); c, *Cothurnia canthocampti*, $\times 150$ (Stokes); d, *C. annulata*, $\times 340$ (Stokes); e, *Thuricola folliculata*, $\times 110$ (Kahl); f, *Thuricolopsis kellicottiana*, $\times 110$ (Stokes); g, *Caulicola valvata*, $\times 760$ (Stokes); h, i, *Pyxicola affinis*, $\times 170$ (Kent); j, *P. socialis*, $\times 170$ (Kent); k, *Platycola longicollis*, $\times 200$ (De Fromentel); l, *Lagenophrys vaginicola*, $\times 380$ (Penard); m, *L. patina*, $\times 150$ (Stokes); n, *L. labiata*, $\times 340$ (Penard).

Family 1 Vaginicolidae Kent

Genus *Vaginicola* Lamarck. Lorica without stalk, attached to substratum directly with its posterior end; body elongate and cylindrical; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

V. leptosoma Stokes (Fig. 325, a). Lorica about 160μ high; when extended, about $1/3$ of body protruding; on algae in pond water.

V. annulata S. (Fig. 325, b). Lorica about 120μ high; below middle, a ring-like elevation; anterior $1/3$ of body protruding, when extended; pond water.

Genus **Cothurnia** Ehrenberg. Similar to *Vaginicola*; but lorica stands on a short stalk; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

C. canthocampti Stokes (Fig. 325, c). Lorica about 80μ high; on *Canthocamptus minutus*.

C. annulata S. (Fig. 325, d). Lorica about 55μ high; fresh water.

Genus **Thuricola** Kent. Body and lorica as in *Vaginicola*; but lorica with a simple or complex valve-like apparatus which closes obliquely after the manner of a door when protoplasmic body contracts; salt or fresh water.

T. folliculata (Müller) (Fig. 325, e). Lorica $127\text{--}170\mu$ high (Kent); $160\text{--}200\mu$ high (Kahl); salt and fresh water.

Genus **Thuricolopsis** Stokes. Lorica with an internal, narrow, flexible valve-rest, adherent to lorica wall and projecting across cavity to receive and support the descended valve; protoplasmic body attached to lorica by a pedicel; on freshwater plants.

T. kellicottiana S. (Fig. 325, f). Lorica about 220μ long.

Genus **Caulicola** Stokes. Similar to *Thuricola*; but lorica-lid attached to aperture; fresh or brackish water. 2 species.

C. valvata S. (Fig. 325, g). Lorica about 50μ high; stalk about $1/2$; body protrudes about $1/3$ when extended; brackish water.

Genus **Pyxicola** Kent. Body attached posteriorly to a corneous lorica; lorica colorless to brown, erect, on a pedicel; a discoidal corneous operculum developed beneath border of peristome, which closes lorica when organism contracts; fresh or salt water. Many species.

P. affinis K. (Fig. 325, h, i). Lorica about 85μ long; in marsh water.

P. socialis (Gruber) (Fig. 325, j). Lorica about 100μ long; often in groups; salt water.

Genus **Platycola** Kent. Body similar to that of *Vaginicola*; but lorica always decumbent and attached throughout one side to its fulcrum of support; fresh or salt water. Many species.

P. longicollis K. (Fig. 325, k). Lorica yellow to brown when older; about 126μ long; fresh water.

Family 2 Lagenophryidae Bütschli

Genus **Lagenophrys** Stein. Lorica with flattened adhering surface, short neck and convex surface; "striped body" connects body with lorica near aperture; attached to fresh or salt water animals. Many species.

L. vaginicola S. (Fig. 325, l). Lorica 70μ by 48μ ; attached to caudal bristles and appendages of *Cyclops minutus* and *Canthocamptus* sp.

L. patina Stokes (Fig. 325, m). Lorica 55μ by 50μ ; on Gammarus.

L. labiata S. (Fig. 325, n). Lorica 60μ by 55μ ; on Gammarus.

Suborder 2 Mobilia Kahl

Family Urceolariidae Stein

Genus **Urceolaria** Lamarck. Peristome more or less obliquely placed; external ciliary ring difficult to see; horny corona of attaching disk with obliquely arranged simple teeth without radial processes; commensal. A few species.

U. mitra (Siebold) (Fig. 326, a). $80\text{--}140\mu$ long; on planarians.

U. paradoxa (Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 326, b). $70\text{--}80\mu$ in diameter; colonial forms; in the respiratory cavity of *Cyclostoma elegans*.

Genus **Trichodina** Ehrenberg. Low barrel-shaped; with a row of posterior cilia; horny ring of attaching disk with radially arranged hooked teeth; commensal on, or parasitic in, aquatic animals. Several species.

T. pediculus (Müller) (Fig. 326, c). A shallow constriction in middle of body; $50\text{--}70\mu$ in diameter; on Hydra, amphibian larvae and probably fish. Those found on Hydra and gills of Necturus and Triturus larvae are probably identical (Fulton, 1923).

T. urinicola Fulton (Fig. 326, d). $50\text{--}90\mu$ long; teeth 28–36; in urinary bladder of a moribund *Bufo* sp. and Triturus.

T. sp. Diller (Fig. 326, e). $30\text{--}40\mu$ in diameter; on the skin and gills of frog and toad tadpoles.

Genus **Cyclochaeta** Jackson. Saucer-form; peristomal surface parallel to the basal disc; upper surface with numerous flat wrinkles; basal disc composed of cuticular rings, velum, cirri, and membranelles; commensal on, or parasitic in, fresh or salt water animals. Several species. MacLennan (1939) made a careful study of two species.

C. spongillae J. (Fig. 326, f). About 60μ in diameter; in interstices of *Spongilla fluviatilis*.

C. domerguei Wallengren (Fig. 326, g, h). $23\text{--}56\mu$ in diameter; about one-fifth high; 18–25 denticles, each with a narrow slightly curved spine; outer cuticular ring more finely striated than inner ring; cirri longer than membranelles (MacLennan); on fresh water fishes.

FIG. 326. a, *Urceolaria mitra*, $\times 340$ (Wallengren); b, *U. paradoxa*, $\times 270$ (Claparède and Lachmann); c, *Trichodina pediculus*, $\times 530$ (James-Clark); d, *T. urinicola*, $\times 590$ (Fulton); e, *T. sp.*, $\times 600$ (Diller); f, *Cyclochaeta spongillae*, $\times 600$ (Jackson); g, h, front and side views of *C. domerguei*, $\times 670$ (MacLennan).

References

- FULTON, JR., J. F. 1923 *Trichodina pediculus* and a new closely related species. Proc. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., Vol. 37.
- KAHL, A. 1935 Dahl's *Die Tierwelt Deutschlands*. Part 30.
- KENT, S. 1881-1882 *A manual of Infusoria*.
- MACLENNAN, R. F. 1939 The morphology and locomotor activities of *Cyclochaeta domerguei* Wallengren. Jour. Morph., Vol. 65.
- MAST, S. O. 1944 A new peritrich belonging to the genus *Ophrydium*. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 63.
- NOLAND, L. E. and H. E. FINLEY 1931 Studies on the taxonomy of the genus *Vorticella*. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 50.
- PENARD, E. 1922 *Études sur les Infusoires d'eau douce*. Geneva.
- STILLER, J. 1939 Die Peritrichenfauna der Nordsee bei Helgoland. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 92.
- STOKES, A. C. 1888 A preliminary contribution toward a history of the freshwater Infusoria of the United States. Jour. Trenton Nat. Hist. Soc., Vol. 1.

Class 2 Suctoria Claparède and Lachmann

THE Suctoria which have been also known as Acinetaria, Tentaculifera, etc., do not possess any cilia or any other cell-organs of locomotion in the mature stage. The cilia are present only on young individuals which are capable of free-swimming, and lost with the development of a stalk or attaching disk, and of tentacles. Therefore, an adult suctorian is incapable of active movement. The body may be spheroidal, elliptical, or dendritic; and is covered with a pellicle and occasionally possesses a lorica. There is no cytostome, and the food-capturing is carried on exclusively by the tentacles. Tentacles are of two kinds: one is suctorial in function and bears a rounded knob on the extremity and the other is for piercing through the body of a prey and more or less sharply pointed. The tentacles may be confined to limited areas or may be distributed over the entire body surface. The food organisms are usually small ciliates and nutrition is thus holozoic.

Asexual reproduction is by binary fission or by budding. The buds which are formed by either exogenous or endogenous gemmation are ciliated, and swim around actively after leaving the parent individual. Finally becoming attached to a suitable object, the buds metamorphose into adult forms. Sexual reproduction is through a complete fusion of conjugants.

The Suctoria live attached to animals, plants or non-living matter submerged in fresh or salt water, although a few are parasitic.

With only suctorial tentacles

Body irregular or branching

Without proboscis or special arms; sometimes with stolon; without stalk.....Family 1 Dendrosomidae (p. 696)

With proboscis or special arms

With retractile processes bearing tentacles.....Family 2 Ophryodendridae (p. 698)

With branched arms.....Family 3 Dendrocometidae (p. 699)

Body more or less bilaterally symmetrical

Exogenous budding and division..Family 4 Podophryidae (p. 699)

Endogenous budding

Pellicle thin; within or without lorica; with or without stalk....Family 5 Acinetidae (p. 700)

Pellicle thick; without lorica; a few tentacles, variable in form; stalk short, stout.....Family 6 Discophryidae (p. 706)

With suctorial and prehensile tentacles; with or without lorica; exogenous budding; commensals on marine hydroids.....Family 7 Ephelotidae (p. 709)

Family 1 **Dendrosomidae** Bütschli

Genus **Dendrosoma** Ehrenberg. Dendritic; often large; nucleus band-form, branched; numerous contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

D. radians E. (Fig. 327, *a*). Brownish; 1.2–2.5 mm. high; on vegetation.

Genus **Trichophrya** Claparède and Lachmann. Body small; rounded or elongate, but variable; without stalk; tentacles in fascicles, not branching; endogenous multiple budding; fresh or salt water.

T. epistylidis C. and L. (*T. sinuosa* Stokes) (Fig. 327, *b*). Form irregular; with many fascicles of tentacles; nucleus band-form, curved; numerous vacuoles; up to 240μ long; on *Epistylis*, etc., in fresh water.

T. salparum Entz (Fig. 327, *c*). On various tunicates such as *Molgula manhattensis*; $40\text{--}60\mu$ long; tentacles in 2 groups; salt water; Woods Hole (Calkins).

T. columbiae Wailes (Fig. 327, *d*). $60\text{--}75\mu$ by $40\text{--}48\mu$ in diameter; cylindrical; tentacles at ends; nucleus spherical; in marine plankton; Vancouver (Wailes).

T. micropteri Davis. Body elongate, irregular or rounded; up to $30\text{--}40\mu$ long by $10\text{--}12\mu$; fully extended tentacles $10\text{--}12\mu$ long; cytoplasm often filled with yellow to orange spherules; a single micronucleus; a single contractile vacuole; attached to the gill of small mouth black bass, *Micropterus dolomieu*. Davis (1942) states that when abundantly present, the suctorian may cause serious injury to the host.

Genus **Astrophrya** Awerinzew. Stellate; central portion drawn out into 8 elongate processes, each with a fascicle of tentacles; body covered by sand grains and other objects. One species.

A. arenaria A. (Fig. 327, *e*). $145\text{--}188\mu$ in diameter; processes $80\text{--}190\mu$ long; in Volga river plankton.

Genus **Lernaeophrya** Pérez. Body large; with numerous short prolongations, bearing very long multifasciculate tentacles; nucleus branched; brackish water. One species.

L. capitata P. (Fig. 327, *f*). Attached to the hydrozoan, *Cordylophora lacustris* in brackish water; $400\text{--}500\mu$ long; tentacles 400μ long.

Genus **Dendrosomides** Collin. Branched body similar to *Dendrosoma*, but with a peduncle; reproduction by budding of vermicular form; salt water. One species.

D. paguri C. (Fig. 327, *g*). $200\text{--}300\mu$ long; vermicular forms 350μ long; on the crabs, *Eupagurus excavatus* and *E. cuanensis*.

Genus **Rhabdophrya** Chatton and Collin. Elongate, rod-form; with short peduncle, not branched; tentacles distributed over entire surface; macronucleus ellipsoid; micronucleus small; 2-3 contractile vacuoles; salt or brackish water. Several species.

FIG. 327. a, *Dendrosoma radians*, $\times 35$ (Kent); b, *Trichophrya epistylidis*, $\times 250$ (Stokes); c, *T. salparum*, $\times 170$ (Collin); d, *T. columbiae*, $\times 200$ (Wailles); e, *Astrophrya arenaria*, $\times 65$ (Awerinzew); f, *Lernaophrya capitata*, $\times 35$ (Pérez); g, *Dendrosomides paguri*, $\times 200$ (Collin).

R. trimorpha C. and C. (Fig. 328, a). Up to 150μ long; on the copepod, *Cletodes longicaudatus*.

Genus **Staurophrya** Zacharias. Rounded body drawn out into 6 processes.

S. elegans Z. (Fig. 328, b). Tentacles not capitate; macronucleus

round; 1-2 contractile vacuoles; about 50μ in diameter; in fresh water.

Family 2 Ophryodendridae Stein

Genus *Ophryodendron* Claparède and Lachmann. With one long

FIG. 328. a, *Rhabdophrya trimorpha*, $\times 650$ (Collin); b, *Staurophrya elegans*, $\times 300$ (Zacharias); c, *Ophryodendron porcellanum*, $\times 330$ (Collin); d, *O. belgicum*, $\times 270$ (Fraipont); e, *Dendrocometes paradoxus*, $\times 270$ (Wrzesnowski); f, g, *Podophrya fixa* (f, $\times 600$ (Wales); g, $\times 330$ (Collin)); h, *P. gracilis*, $\times 1000$ (Collin); i, *P. elongata*, $\times 240$ (Wailles).

or 3-6 shorter retractile processes, bearing suctorial tentacles; on Crustacea, Annelida, etc.; salt water. Several species.

O. porcellanum Kent (Fig. 328, c). 60–100 μ long; on *Porcellana platycheles*, etc.

O. belgicum Fraipont (Fig. 328, d). 38–114 μ long; vermicular form 100 μ ; on Bryozoa and hydrozoans; Vancouver (Wailes).

Family 3 Dendrocometidae Stein

Genus **Dendrocometes** Stein. Body rounded; with variable number of branched arms; fresh water.

D. paradoxus S. (Fig. 328, e). Up to 100 μ long; on *Gammarus pulex*, *G. puteanus*, etc.

Genus **Stylocometes** Stein. Arms not branched; tentacles finger-like; fresh water.

S. digitatus (Claparède and Lachmann). Up to 110 μ long; on the gills of *Asellus aquaticus* and on *Aphrydium versatile*.

Family 4 Podophryidae Bütschli

Genus **Podophrya** Ehrenberg. Subspherical; normally with a rigid stalk; suctorial tentacles in fascicles or distributed on entire body surface; encystment common; fresh or salt water. Many species.

P. fixa Müller (Fig. 328, f, g). Spherical; tentacles of various lengths; stalked; nucleus spheroid; one contractile vacuole; 10–28 μ long; fresh water.

P. collini Root. Ovoid; stalked; 30–60 capitate tentacles, distributed; nucleus spherical; one contractile vacuole; 40–50 μ in diameter; in swamp.

P. gracilis Calkins (Fig. 328, h). Small; spherical; long filiform stalk; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; nucleus near attachment of stalk; 8 μ in diameter; stalk 40 μ long; salt water; Woods Hole.

P. elongata Wailes (Fig. 328, i). Elongate; flattened; with a pedicel; tentacles distributed; nucleus cylindrical; 95–105 μ long; stalk 65–85 μ by 7–9 μ ; on the marine copepod, *Euchaeta japonica*; Vancouver.

Genus **Parapodophrya** Kahl. Spherical; tentacles radiating, a few long, more or less conical at proximal portion; stalk thin; salt water.

P. typha K. (Fig. 329, a). 50–60 μ in diameter; salt water.

Genus **Sphaerophrya** Claparède and Lachmann. Spherical, without stalk; with or without distributed tentacles; multiplication by binary fission or exogenous budding; fresh water, free-living or parasitic.

S. soliformis Lauterborn (Fig. 329, b). Spherical; numerous tentacles about 1/4–1/3 the body diameter; a contractile vacuole; nucleus oval; diameter about 100 μ ; sapropelic.

S. magna Maupas. Spherical; about 50μ in diameter; numerous tentacles of different length; nucleus spheroid; standing fresh water with decaying vegetation.

S. stentoris M. Parasitic in Stentor; swarmers ciliated on posterior end; the other end with capitate tentacles; nucleus spheroid; 2 contractile vacuoles; about 50μ long.

Genus **Paracineta** Collin. Spherical to ellipsoidal; tentacles distributed; mostly in salt water, a few in fresh water.

P. limbata (Maupas) (Fig. 329, *c, d*). With or without gelatinous envelope; $20\text{--}50\mu$ in diameter; swarmer with many ciliated bands, contractile; on plants and animals in salt water.

Genus **Metacineta** Bütschli. Lorica funnel-shaped, lower end drawn out for attachment; tentacles grouped at anterior end; nucleus spherical; one contractile vacuole. One species.

M. mystacina (Ehrenberg) (Fig. 329, *e*). Lorica up to 700μ long; in fresh and salt water.

Genus **Urnula** Claparède and Lachmann. Lorica colorless; lower end pointed, attached; aperture narrowed, round or triangular; body more or less filling lorica; 1–2 (up to 5) long active tentacles; nucleus central, oval; one or more contractile vacuoles; fresh water.

U. epistylidis C. and L. (Fig. 329, *f*). Up to 80μ long; on Epistylis, Dendrosoma, etc.

Genus **Lecanophrya** Kahl. Body rounded rectangular in cross section; anterior region bowl-shaped; somewhat rigid tentacles located on the inner surface of bowl; salt water.

L. drosera K. (Fig. 329, *g*). $40\text{--}70\mu$ high; hollow stalk; tentacles in 3–5 indistinct rows; attached to the antennae of the copepod, *Nitocra typica*.

Genus **Ophryocephalus** Wailes. Spheroidal, stalked; a single long mobile, capitate tentacle; multiplication by multiple exogenous budding from apical region; on *Ephelota gemmipara* and *E. coronata* (p. 709); salt water. One species.

O. capitatum W. (Fig. 329, *h*). About 55μ long; tentacle up to 100μ by $1.5\text{--}5\mu$; Vancouver.

Family 5 Acinetidae Bütschli

Genus **Acineta** Ehrenberg. Lorica more or less flattened; usually with stalk; tentacles in 2 (1 or 3) fascicles; body completely or partly filling lorica; swarmer with ciliated band or completely ciliated; fresh or salt water. Numerous species.

A. tuberosa E. (Fig. 330, *a*). Lorica $50\text{--}100\mu$ high; with stalk; salt and brackish water.

A. cuspidata Stokes (Fig. 330, b). Lorica cup-shaped; front end with 2 opposing sharp points; lorica 32–42 μ high; on Oedogonium in fresh water.

FIG. 329. a, *Parapodophrya typha*, $\times 270$ (Kahl); b, *Sphaerophrya soliformis*, $\times 200$ (Lauterborn); c, d, *Paracineta limbata* (c, a bud is ready to leave; d, basal part of stalk), $\times 460$ (Collin); e, *Metacineta mystacina*, capturing *Halteria*, $\times 400$ (Collin); f, *Urnula epistylidis*, $\times 140$ (Claparède and Lachmann); g, *Lecanophrya drosera*, $\times 390$ (Kahl); h, *Ophryocephalus capitatum*, $\times 200$ (Wailles); i, *Acineta lacustris*, $\times 200$ (Stokes).

A. lacustris S. (Fig. 329, i). Lorica elongate ovoid; flattened; 75–185 μ high; on *Anacharis* in pond.

Genus **Tokophrya** Bütschli. Pyriform or pyramidal; without lo-

rica; tentacles in 1-4 fascicles on anterior surface; stalk not rigid; swarmers oval, with several ciliary bands and long cilia; fresh water. Several species.

FIG. 330. a, *Acineta tuberosa*, $\times 670$ (Calkins); b, *A. cuspidata*, $\times 670$ (Stokes); c-e, *Tokophrya infusionum* (c, $\times 400$; d, a free-swimming bud; e, a young attached form, $\times 800$) (Collin); f, *T. cyclopum*, a young individual, $\times 500$ (Collin).

T. infusionum (Stein) (Fig. 330, c-e). Inverted pyramid; stalk with or without attaching disk; macronucleus oval; 2 contractile vacuoles; about 60μ long.

T. cyclopum (Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 330, f). Oval or

spherical; stalk short; tentacles in 2–5 bundles; macronucleus spherical; 1–2 contractile vacuoles; about 50μ long; on Cyclops, etc.

Genus **Thecacineta** Collin. Lorica with free margin; body usually attached to bottom of lorica, more or less long; tentacles from anterior end; salt water. Several species.

T. cothurnioides C. (Fig. 331, a). Lorica about 50μ high; stalk knobbed; on *Cletodes longicaudatus*.

T. gracilis (Wailes) (Fig. 331, b). Lorica 110μ by 35μ ; stalk 200μ by 4μ ; on hydrozoans.

Genus **Periacineta** Collin. Elongate lorica; attached with its drawn-out posterior end; tentacles from the opposite surface in bundles; fresh water.

P. buckei (Kent) (Fig. 331, c). Attached end of lorica with basal plate; 3 contractile vacuoles; up to 125μ long; on *Lymnaea stagnalis* and *Ranatra linearis*.

Genus **Hallezia** Sand. Without lorica; with or without a short stalk; tentacles in bundles; fresh water.

H. brachypoda (Stokes) (Fig. 331, d). $34\text{--}42\mu$ in diameter; in standing water among leaves.

Genus **Solenophrya** Claparède and Lachmann. Lorica attached directly with its under side; body usually not filling lorica; tentacles in fascicles; fresh water.

S. inclusa Stokes (Fig. 331, e). Lorica subspherical; about 44μ in diameter; standing fresh water.

S. pera S. (Fig. 331, f). Lorica satchel-form; about $40\text{--}45\mu$ high; body about 35μ long; standing fresh water.

Genus **Acinetopsis** Robin. Lorica in close contact with body on sides; stalked; 1–6 large retractile tentacles and numerous small tentacles from apical end; mainly salt water.

A. tentaculata Root (Fig. 331, g, h). Lorica 187μ high; stalk 287μ long; large tentacles up to 500μ long; body about 138μ by 100μ ; on *Obelia commissuralis* and *O. geniculata*; Woods Hole.

Genus **Tachyblaston** Martin. Lorica with short stalk; tentacles distributed on anterior surface; nucleus oval; salt water. One species.

T. ephelotensis M. (Fig. 331, i, j). Lorica $30\text{--}93\mu$ high; stalk $20\text{--}30\mu$ long; attached to *Ephelota gemmipara*.

Genus **Dactylophrya** Collin. Cup-like lorica, filled with the protoplasmic body; with a short stalk; 12–15 arm-like tentacles from anterior surface; salt water. One species.

D. roscovita C. (Fig. 331, k). About 40μ long excluding stalk; on the hydrozoan, *Diphasia attenuata*.

Genus **Pseudogemma** Collin. Attached with a short stalk to larger

suctorians; without tentacles; endogenous budding; swarmer with 4 ciliary bands; salt water.

P. pachystyla C. (Fig. 333, a). About 30μ long; stalk $3-4\mu$ wide; swarmer 15μ by 9μ ; on *Acineta tuberosa*.

FIG. 331. a, *Thecacineta cothurnioides*, $\times 400$ (Collin); b, *T. gracilis*, $\times 270$ (Wailles); c, *Periacineta buckei*, feeding on *Chilodonella*, $\times 530$ (Collin); d, *Hallezia brachypoda*, $\times 200$ (Stokes); e, *Solenophrya inclusa*, $\times 230$ (Stokes); f, *S. pera*, $\times 230$ (Stokes); g, h, *Acinetopsis tentaculata* (g, $\times 130$; h, $\times 230$) (Root); i, j, *Tachyblaston ephelotensis* (i, a young individual in *Ephelota*, $\times 260$; j, mature form, $\times 500$) (Martin); k, *Dactylophrya roscovita*, $\times 830$ (Collin).

Genus **Endosphaera** Engelmann. Spherical without lorica; without tentacles; budding endogenous; swarmer with 3 equatorial ciliary bands; parasitic in Peritricha; fresh and salt water.

E. engelmanni Entz (Fig. 333, *b*). 15–41 μ in diameter; imbedded in the host's cytoplasm; swarmer 13–19 μ in diameter; in *Opisthonecta henneguyi* (p. 685), and other peritrichs.

Genus **Allantosoma** Gassovsky. With neither lorica nor stalk; elongate; one or more tentacles at ends; macronucleus oval or spherical; compact micronucleus; a single contractile vacuole; cytoplasm often filled with small spheroidal bodies; development unknown; in mammalian intestine.

A. intestinalis G. (Fig. 333, *c*). 33–60 μ by 18–37 μ ; attached to various ciliates living in the caecum and colon of horse.

A. dicorniger Hsiung (Fig. 333, *d*). 20–33 μ by 10–20 μ ; unattached; in the colon of horse.

A. brevicorniger H. (Fig. 333, *e*). 23–36 μ by 7–11 μ ; attached to various ciliates in the caecum and colon of horse.

Genus **Anarma** Goodrich and Jahn. Radially or somewhat bilaterally symmetrical; without stalk or lorica; attached directly or by a short protoplasmic process to substratum; 1–2 fascicles of capitate tentacles; multiplication by external budding near base or by a single internal ciliated bud; conjugation; ectocommensal on *Chrysemys picta bellii*.

A. multiruga G. and J. (Fig. 332, *a-d*). Body cylindrical, 70–150 μ by 35–70 μ ; body surface with 7 or 8 longitudinal folds; pellicle thin; cytoplasm granulated; nucleus ribbon-form; 2–6 contractile vacuoles, each with a permanent canal and a pore; attached directly or indirectly to the carapace and plastron of the turtle.

Genus **Squalorophrya** Goodrich and Jahn. Elongate; radially symmetrical; lorica, rigid, close-fitting, covered with debris; with a stalk; capitate tentacles at distal end; ectocommensal on *Chrysemys picta bellii*.

S. macrostyla G. and J. (Fig. 332, *e, f*). Cylindrical, with 4 longitudinal grooves; body about 90 μ by 40 μ ; striated stalk, short and thick, about 30 μ long; lorica highly viscous with debris; nucleus ovoid to elongate, sometimes Y-shaped; 2 contractile vacuoles, each with a permanent canal and a pore; on *Chrysemys picta bellii*.

Genus **Multifasciculatum** Goodrich and Jahn. Radially or bilaterally symmetrical; stalked; without lorica; pellicle thin; several fascicles of tentacles on distal, lateral and proximal regions of body; ectocommensal on *Chrysemys picta bellii*.

M. elegans G. and J. (Fig. 332, *g*). Body ovoid; 50–90 μ by 20–50 μ ;

stalk striated, about $150\text{--}270\mu$ long; tentacles in 4 groups; nucleus ovoid; 1-3 contractile vacuoles; attached to the plastron of the turtle.

Family 6. Discophryidae Collin

Genus **Discophrya** Lachmann. Elongate; a short stout pedicel with a plate; tentacles evenly distributed on anterior surface or in fascicle-

FIG. 332. a-d, *Anarma multiruga*, $\times$ about 230; b, budding individual; c, cross-section; d, with an internal ciliated bud; e, f, *Squalorophrya macrostyla*, $\times$ about 670; f, cross-section; g, *Multifasciculatum elegans*, $\times$ about 660 (Goodrich and Jahn).

cles; contractile vacuoles, each with a canalicule leading to body surface; mainly fresh water. Several species.

D. elongata (Claparède and L.) (Fig. 333, f). Cylindrical; tentacles on anterior end and in 2 posterior fascicles; stalk striated; about 80μ long; on the shell of *Paldina vivipara* in fresh water.

Genus **Thaumatophrya** Collin. Spherical; long stalk; tentacles distributed, tapering toward distal end; salt water. One species.

T. troid (Claparède and Lachmann) (Fig. 333, g). About 75μ in diameter.

Genus **Rhynchophrya** Collin. Oblong; bilaterally symmetrical; a short striated stalk; 1 main long and a few shorter tentacles; 6–10 contractile vacuoles, each with a canalicule leading to outside; fresh water. One species.

FIG. 333. a, *Pseudogemma pachystyla*, $\times 400$ (Collin); b, *Endosphaera engelmanni*, $\times 500$ (Lynch and Noble); c, *Allantosoma intestinalis*, $\times 1050$ (Hsiung); d, *A. dicorniger*, $\times 1300$ (Hsiung); e, *A. brevicorniger*, $\times 1400$ (Hsiung); f, *Discophrya elongata*, $\times 440$ (Collin); g, *Thaumtophrya troid*, $\times 1150$ (Claparède and Lachmann); h, *Rhynchophrya palpens*, $\times 440$ (Collin).

R. palpens C. (Fig. 333, h). 85μ by 50μ ; tentacles retractile, 10–200 μ long; stalk 20μ by 10μ ; on *Hydrophilus piceus*.

Genus **Choanophrya** Hartog. Spheroidal to oval; stalked; 10–12 tentacles; tubular, expansible at distal end to engulf voluminous food particles; macronucleus oval to spherical; a micronucleus; fresh water. One species.

C. infundibulifera H. (Fig. 334, a). 65μ by 60μ ; fully extended tentacles 200μ long; on *Cyclops ornatus*.

FIG. 334. a, *Choanophrya infundibulifera*, feeding on disintegrating part of a *Cyclops*, $\times 400$ (Collin); b, c, *Rhyncheta cyclopum* (b, $\times 100$; c, end of tentacle, $\times 400$) (Zenker); d, *Ephelota gemmipara*, $\times 200$ (Hertwig); e, *E. coronata*, $\times 140$ (Kent); f, *E. plana*, front view, with two attached *Ophryocephalus*, $\times 35$ (Wailes); g, *Podocyathus diadema*, $\times 200$ (Kent).

Genus **Rhyncheta** Zenker. Protoplasmic body attached directly to an aquatic animal; with a long mobile tentacle bearing a sucker at its end.

R. cyclopum Z. (Fig. 334, b, c). About 170μ long; on *Cyclops*.

Family 7 Ephelotidae Sand

Genus **Ephelota** Wright. Without lorica; stalk stout, often striated; suctorial and prehensile tentacles distributed; macronucleus usually elongate, curved; on hydroids, bryozoans, algae, etc.; salt water. Numerous species.

E. gemmipara Hertwig (Fig. 334, *d*). About 250μ by 220μ ; stalk up to 1.5 mm. long; on hydroids, bryozoans, etc.

E. coronata Kent (Fig. 334, *e*). Flattened; $90\text{--}200\mu$ long; stalk longitudinally striated (Kent); on hydroids, bryozoans, algae, etc.

E. plana Wailes (Fig. 334, *f*). $150\text{--}320\mu$ by $100\text{--}150\mu$; stalk $100\mu\text{--}1$ mm. long; on bryozoans; Vancouver.

Genus **Podocyathus** Kent. It differs from *Ephelota* in having a conspicuous lorica; salt water. One species.

P. diadema K. (Fig. 334, *g*). Lorica about 42μ long; on bryozoans, hydrozoans, etc.

References

- COLLIN, B. 1912 Études monographique sur les Acinétiens. Arch. zool. expér. et gén., Vol. 51.
- DAVIS, H. S. 1942 A suctorian parasite of the small mouth black bass, with remarks on other suctorian parasites of fishes. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 61.
- GOODRICH, J. P. and T. L. JAHN 1943 Epizoid Suctoria (Protozoa) from turtles. Trans. Amer. Micr. Soc., Vol. 62.
- KAHL, A. 1934 Suctoria. Grimpe's *Die Tierwelt der Nord- und Ostsee*. Part 26. Leipzig.
- KENT, S. 1881-1882 *A manual of the Infusoria*. Vol. 2.
- WAILES, G. H. 1928 Dinoflagellates and Protozoa from British Columbia. Vancouver Museum Notes, Vol. 3.

Collection, Cultivation, and Observation of Protozoa

Collection

IN THE foregoing chapters it has been pointed out that various species of Protozoa have characteristic habitats and that many of free-living forms are widely distributed in bodies of water: fresh, brackish, and salt; while the parasitic forms are confined to specific host animals. Of free-living Protozoa many species may occur in large numbers within a small area under favorable conditions, but the majority are present in comparatively small numbers. If one who has become acquainted with the representative forms, intends to make collection, it is well to carry a compound microscope in order to avoid bringing back numerous jars containing much water, but few organisms. Submerged plants, decaying leaves, surface scum, ooze, etc., should be examined under the microscope. When desired forms are found, they should be collected together with a quantity of water in which they occur.

When the material is brought into the laboratory, it is often necessary to concentrate the organisms in a relatively small volume of water. For this purpose the water may partly be filtered rapidly through a fine milling cloth and the residue quickly poured back into a suitable container before filtration is completed. The container should be placed in a cool moderately lighted room to allow the organisms to become established in the new environment. Stigma-bearing *Phytomastigina* will then be collected in a few hours on the side of the container, facing the strongest light, and the members of *Sarcodina* will be found among the debris on the bottom. Many forms will not only live long, but also multiply in such a container.

For obtaining large freshwater amoebae, fill several finger bowls with the collected material and water, and place one or two rice grains to each. After a few days, examine the bottom surface of the bowls under a binocular dissecting microscope. If amoebae were included in the collection, they will be found particularly around the rice grains. Pipette them off and begin separate cultures (p. 712).

In order to collect parasitic Protozoa, one must, of course, find the host organisms that harbor them. Various species of tadpoles, frogs, cockroaches, termites, etc., which are of common occurrence or easily obtained and which are hosts to numerous species of Protozoa, are useful material for class work.

Intestinal Protozoa of man are usually studied in the faeces of an infected person. Natural movement should be collected. Do not use oily purgatives in obtaining faecal specimens, as they make the microscopical examination difficult by the presence of numerous oil droplets. The receptacle must be thoroughly cleaned and dry, and provided with a cover. Urine or water must be excluded completely. The faeces must be examined as soon as possible, since the active trophozoites degenerate quickly once leaving the human intestine. If dysenteric or diarrhoeic stools are to be examined, they must not be older than one hour or two. In case this is not possible, wrap the container with woolen cloth while transporting and keep it in an incubator at 37°C. The organisms may live for several hours. Care must however be exercised during the microscopical examination, as there will be present unavoidably a large number of degenerating forms. If the stool is formed and normal, it would contain usually encysted forms and no trophozoites if the host is infected by a protozoan, unless mucus, puss, or blood is present in it. Examination of such faeces can be delayed, as the cysts are quite resistant.

Cultivation

For extensive study or for class work, a large number of certain species of Protozoa are frequently needed. Detection and diagnosis of human Protozoa are often more satisfactorily made by culture method than by microscopical examination of the collected material. Success in culturing Protozoa depends upon several factors. First an abundant supply of proper food material must be made available. For example, several species of *Paramecium* live almost exclusively on bacterial organisms, while *Didinium* and allied ciliates depend upon other ciliates as sources of food supply. For cultivating chromatophore-bearing forms successfully, good light and proper kinds and amount of inorganic substances are necessary. In the second place, the temperature and chemical constituents of the culture medium must be adjusted to suit individual species. As a rule, lower temperatures seem to be much more favorable for culture than higher temperatures, although this is naturally not the case with those parasitic in homoiothermal animals. Furthermore, proper hydrogen ion concentration of the culture must be maintained. In the third place, both Protozoa and Metazoa which prey upon the forms under cultivation must be excluded from the culture. For instance, it is necessary to remove *Didinium nasutum* in order to obtain a rich culture of *Paramecium*. For successful culture of *Amoeba proteus*, *Aeolosoma*, *Daphnia*, *Cyclops*, etc., must be excluded from the culture.

Mixed cultures of many free-living Protozoa are easily maintained by adding from time to time a small amount of ripe hay-infusion or dried lettuce powder to the collected water mentioned before. *Chilomonas*, *Peranema*, *Bodo*, *Arcella*, *Amoeba*, *Paramecium*, *Colpoda*, *Stylonychia*, *Euplotes*, etc., often multiply in such cultures. To obtain a large number of a single species, individuals are taken out under a binocular dissecting microscope by means of a finely drawn-out pipette and transferred to a suitable culture medium.

Aside from the cultures of blood-inhabiting Protozoa, the so-called protozoan cultures are by no means "pure" cultures in the bacteriological sense, even if only one species of Protozoa is present, since bacteria and other microorganisms are invariably abundantly present in them. However in recent years, many holophytic or saprozoic Protozoa have been cultivated in vitro free from bacteria. Glaser and Coria (1930) by using a V-tube and utilizing negative geotropic movement of organisms succeeded in obtaining bacteria-free several species of flagellates and ciliates. Claff (1940) also using the same response of certain rapidly swimming ciliates set up a "migration-dilution" apparatus by which he obtained organisms free from bacteria. Taylor and Van Wagtendonk (1941) used a sterile viscous agar medium in sterilizing *Colpoda duodenaria*.

A. Free-living Protozoa

To deal with all the culture media employed by numerous workers for various free-living Protozoa is beyond the scope of the present work. Here only a few examples will be given. For further information, the reader is referred to Bělař (1928), Needham *et al.* (1937), etc.

Chromatophore-bearing flagellates.—There are a number of culture fluids. Two examples:

(a)	Peptone or tryptone	2.0 gm.
	KH ₂ PO ₄	0.25 gm.
	MgSO ₄	0.25 gm.
	KCl	0.25 gm.
	FeCl ₃	trace
	Sodium acetate	2.0 gm.
	Pyrex distilled water	1000 cc.
(b)	Peptone or tryptone	2.5 gm.
	KNO ₃	0.5 gm.
	KH ₂ PO ₄	0.5 gm.

MgSO ₄	0.1 gm.
NaCl	0.1 gm.
Sodium acetate	2.5 gm.
Dextrose	2.0 gm.
Glass distilled water	1000 cc.

Peranema, *Chilomonas*, *Astacia* and other colorless flagellates.—A number of culture fluids have been advocated. A simple yet satisfactory one is as follows: Fill a finger bowl with about 150 cc. of glass distilled water and place 4 rice grains on the bottom. Let the dish stand for a few days, and then introduce with a pipette a number of desired flagellates from a mass culture into it. Cover the bowl and keep it at about 20°C.

Mast (1939) used the following media for *Chilomonas paramecium*.

(a) Glucose-peptone solution:

Peptone	8 gm.
Glucose	2 gm.
Water	1000 cc.

(b) Acetate-ammonium solution:

Sodium acetate	1.5 gm.
Ammonium chloride	0.46 gm.
Ammonium sulphate	0.1 gm.
Dipotassium hydrogen phosphate	0.2 gm.
Magnesium chloride	0.01 gm.
Calcium chloride	0.012 gm.
Water	1000 cc.

Amoeba proteus and other freshwater amoebae.—Fill a finger bowl with 200 cc. of glass distilled water, and place 4 rice grains. After a few days seed with amoebae (p. 710), add about 5 cc. of *Chilomonas* culture, and cover the bowl with a glass cover. In about two weeks a ring of amoebae will be found around each rice grain, and if *Chilomonas* do not overmultiply, the amoebae will be found abundantly in another two weeks. If properly maintained, subcultures may be made every 4–6 weeks. Chalkley (1930) advocates substitution of the plain water with a salt solution which is composed of

NaCl	0.1 gm.
KCl	0.004 gm.
CaCl ₂	0.006 gm.
Glass distilled water	1000 cc.

If the culture water becomes turbid, make subcultures or pour off the water and fill with fresh distilled water or the solution. Culture should be kept at 18–22°C.

Hahnert (1932) used the following culture solution:

KCl	0.004 gm.
CaCl ₂	0.004 gm.
CaH ₄ (PO ₄) ₂	0.002 gm.
Mg ₃ (PO ₄) ₂	0.002 gm.
Ca ₃ (PO ₄) ₂	0.002 gm.
Pyrex water	1000 cc.

Pelomyxa carolinensis.—These amoebae grow well in a finger bowl with 150 cc. of redistilled water to which large numbers of *Paramecium* are added daily. Pace and Belda (1944) advocate the following solution instead of distilled water:

K ₂ HPO ₄	0.08 gm.
KH ₂ PO ₄	0.08 gm.
CaCl ₂	0.104 gm.
Mg ₃ (PO ₄) ₂ ·4H ₂ O	0.002 gm.
Pyrex water	1000 cc.

Small mono- or di-phasic amoebae.—Musgrave and Clegg's medium, modified by Walker, is as follows:

Agar	2.5 gm.
NaCl	0.05 gm.
Liebig's beef-extract	0.05 gm.
Normal NaOH	2 cc.
Distilled water	100 cc.

Arcella and other Testacea.—The testaceans commonly multiply in a mixed culture for several weeks after the collection was made. Hegner's method for *Arcella*: Pond water with weeds is shaken up violently and filtered through eight thicknesses of cheese cloth, which prevents the passage of coarse particles. The filtrate is distributed among Petri dishes, and when suspended particles have settled down to the bottom, specimens of *Arcella* are introduced. This will serve also for *Diffugia* and other testaceans. Hay or rice infusion is also a good culture medium for these organisms.

Actinophrys and Actinosphaerium.—Bělař cultivated these heliozoans successfully in Knop's solution:

Magnesium sulphate	0.25 gm.
Calcium nitrate	1 gm.
Potassium phosphate	0.25 gm.
Potassium chloride	0.12 gm.
Iron chloride	trace
Distilled water	1000 cc.

Freshwater ciliates.—They are easily cultivated in a weak infusion of hay, bread, cracker, lettuce leaf, etc. The battery jars containing the infusions should be left standing uncovered for a few days to allow a rich bacterial growth in them. Seed them with material such as submerged leaves or surface scum containing the ciliates. If desired, culture may be started with a single individual in a watch glass. For bacteria-free cultures, various culture media have been used by recent investigators. For example, Glaser and Coria (1933) cultured *Paramecium caudatum* bacteria-free in a medium composed of Lily liver extract, killed yeast and rabbit kidney, for a period of six months. Kidder (1941) used the following basic medium for bacteria-free culture of *Glaucoma* and *Colpidium*: 10 grams of Brewers yeast and 1000 cc. of Pyrex distilled water are brought to a boil and filtered, through cotton and then through Schleicher and Schüll No. 595 filter paper. After adding 20 grams of Difco proteose peptone, the whole is autoclaved at 15 pounds pressure for 20 minutes.

B. Parasitic Protozoa

Intestinal flagellates of man.—There are numerous media which have been used successfully by several investigators.

(a) Ovo-mucoid medium (Hogue, 1921). White of two eggs are broken in a sterile flask with beads. Add 200 cc. of 0.7 % NaCl solution and cook the whole for 30 minutes over a boiling water bath, shaking the mixture constantly. Filter through a coarse cheese cloth and through cotton-wool with the aid of a suction pump. Put 6 cc. of the filtrate in each test tube. Autoclave the tubes for 20 minutes under 15 pounds pressure. After cooling, a small amount of fresh faecal material containing the flagellates is introduced into the tubes. Incubate at 37°C.

(b) Sodium chloride sheep serum water (Hogue, 1922). Composed of 100 cc. of sterile 0.95% NaCl and 10–15 cc. of sterile sheep serum water (dilution 1:3). 15 cc. to each tube. *Trichomonas hominis*, *T. elongata*, and *Retortamonas intestinalis* grow well.

Trichomonas vaginalis.—Bland *et al.* (1932) used the following me-

dium: 5 cc. of Bacto nutrient agar dissolved in boiling water, is tubed and the tubes are autoclaved for 15 minutes at 15 pounds pressure and slanted. After cooling, a modified Ringer's solution is added to the agar slants to a height of 2-3 inches. The composition of Ringer's solution used, is as follows:

Sodium chloride	6 gm.
Potassium chloride	0.1 gm.
Sodium bicarbonate	0.1 gm.
Calcium chloride	0.1 gm.
Glass distilled water	1000 cc.
Loeffler's dried blood serum	2.5 gm.

The tubes are inoculated with vaginal material and incubated at 36-37°C. Transfers are made every 3 or 4 days.

Lophomonas blattarum and *L. striata*.—A mixture of one sterile egg-white and 100 cc. of sterile Ringer's solution, to which a small amount of yeast cake is added, is an excellent culture medium. Incubation at room temperature; subcultures every 4-6 days.

Trypanosoma and *Leishmania*.—Novy, MacNeal and Nicolle (NNN) medium: 14 gm. of agar and 6 gm. of NaCl are dissolved by heating in 900 cc. of distilled water. When the mixture cools to about 50°C., 50-100 cc. of sterile defibrinated rabbit blood is gently added and carefully mixed so as to prevent the formation of bubbles. The blood agar is now distributed among sterile test tubes to the height of about 3 cm., and the tubes are left slanted until the medium becomes solid. The tubes are then incubated at 37°C. for 24 hours to determine sterility and further to hasten the formation of condensation water (pH 7.6). Sterile blood or splenic puncture containing *Trypanosoma cruzi* or *Leishmania* is introduced by a sterile pipette to the condensation water in which organisms multiply. Incubation at 37°C. for trypanosomes and at 20-24°C. for *Leishmania*.

Entamoeba barreti.—Barret and Smith (1924) used a mixture of 9 parts of 0.5% NaCl and 1 part of human blood serum. Incubation at 10-15°C.

E. invadens.—Ratcliffe and Geiman (1938) used a mixture of gastric mucin 0.3 gm., "ground alum" salt 0.5 gm., and distilled water 100 cc. About 2 mg. of sterile rice starch is added to each culture tube at the time of inoculation. Culture at 20-30° C. and subculture every 7 days.

E. histolytica and other amoebae of man.—The first successful cul-

ture was made by Boeck and Drbohlav (1925) who used the following media.

(a) Locke-egg-serum (LES) medium. The contents of 4 eggs (washed and dipped in alcohol) are mixed with, and broken in, 50 cc. of Locke's solution in a sterile flask with beads. The solution is made up as follows:

NaCl	9 gm.
CaCl ₂	0.2 gm.
KCl	0.4 gm.
NaHCO ₃	0.2 gm.
Glucose	2.5 gm.
Distilled water	1000 cc.

The emulsion is now tubed so that when coagulated by heat, there is 1-1.5 inches of slant. These tubes are now slanted and heated at 70°C. until the medium becomes solidified. They are then autoclaved for 20 minutes at 15 pounds pressure (temperature must be raised and lowered slowly). After cooling the slant is covered with a mixture of 8 parts of sterile Locke's solution and 1 part of sterile, inactivated human blood serum. The tubes are next incubated to determine sterility. The culture tubes are inoculated with a small amount of faecal matter containing active trophozoites. Incubation at 37°C. Yorke and Adams (1926) obtained rich cultures by inoculating this medium with washed and concentrated cysts of *E. histolytica* in 24 hours.

(b) Locke-egg-albumin (LEA) medium. The serum in LES medium is replaced by 1% solution of crystallized egg albumin in Locke's solution which has been sterilized by passage through a Berkefeld filter.

Dobell and Laidlaw (1926) used Ringer's solution instead of Locke's.

(c) Ringer-egg-serum (RES) or Ringer-egg-albumin (REA) medium. Solid medium is the same as that of (a) or (b), but made up in Ringer's solution which is composed of

NaCl	9 gm.
KCl	0.2 gm.
CaCl ₂	0.2 gm.
Distilled water	1000 cc.

The covering liquid is serum-Ringer or egg-albumin. The latter is prepared by breaking one egg white in 250 cc. of Ringer's solution

which is passed through a Seitz filter. Before inoculating with amoe-bae, a small amount of sterile solid rice-starch (dry-heated at 180°C. for 1 hour) is added to the culture tube.

(d) Horse-serum-serum (HSS) or Horse-serum-egg-albumin (HSA) medium. Whole horse-serum, sterilized by filtration, is tubed and slanted at 80°C. for about 60–70 minutes (do not heat longer). When the slants have cooled, they are covered with diluted serum or egg-albumin given for (c). The tubes are incubated for sterility and sterile rice-starch is added immediately before inoculation. Frye and Meleny (1939) substituted the liquid portion of this medium by 0.5% solution of Lily liver extract No. 343 in 0.85% NaCl.

(e) Liver-agar-serum (LAS) medium. Cleveland and Sanders (1930) used the following medium:

Liver infusion agar	
(Difco dehydrated)	30 gm.
Glass distilled water	1000 cc.

The medium is tubed, autoclaved, and slanted. The slants are covered with a 1:6 dilution of sterile fresh horse serum in 0.85% NaCl solution. A 5 mm. loop of sterile rice flour or powdered unpolished rice is added to each tube. In making subculture, remove 2 or 3 drops of the rice flour debris from the bottom with a sterile pipette.

Plasmodium.—Bass and John's (1912) culture is as follows: 10 cc. of defibrinated human blood containing Plasmodium and 0.1 cc. of 50% sterile dextrose solution are mixed in test tubes and incubated at 37–39°C. In the culture, the organisms develop in the upper layer of erythrocytes. Although several attempts have since been made by several workers, Plasmodium has not been cultivated in vitro for more than a few generations.

Balantidium coli.—Barret and Yarbrough (1921) first cultivated this ciliate in a medium consisting of 16 parts of 0.5% NaCl and 1 part of inactivated human blood serum. The medium is tubed. Inoculation of a small amount of the faecal matter containing the trophozoites is made into the bottom of the tubes. Incubation at 37°C. Maximum development is reached in 48–72 hours. Subcultures are made every second day. Reese used a mixture of 16 parts of Ringer's solution and 1 part of Loeffler's dehydrated blood serum.

Atchley (1935) employed a medium composed of 4 parts of Ringer's solution and 1 part of faeces, which is filtered after 24 hours, centrifuged and sterilized by passage through a Seitz filter. Nelson (1940) also used 1 part of caecal contents of pig in 9 parts of Ringer's solu-

tion, which mixture is passed through a sieve and then filtered through a thick absorbent cotton. *Balantidium* which shows positive geotropism, is freed of faecal debris by passage downward through cotton in V-tube. The ciliates are introduced into the culture tubes. Incubation at 37°C. Subcultures are made every 7–22 days. Nelson found that autoclaved medium is unsuitable until a living bacterial population has been established. *Balantidium* can also be cultivated in the media given for the intestinal amoebae.

Microscopical examination

Protozoa should be studied as far as possible in life. Permanent preparations while indispensable in revealing many intracellular structures, cannot replace fresh preparations. The microscopic slides of standard size, 3" by 1", should be of white glass and preferably thin. The so-called No. 1 slides measure about 0.75 mm. in thickness. For darkfield illumination thin slides are essential. No. 1 coverglasses should be used for both fresh and permanent preparations. They are about 130–170 μ thick. The most convenient size of the coverglass is about 7/8 square inch which many prefer to circular ones.

The slides and coverglasses must be thoroughly cleaned before being used. Immerse them in concentrated mineral acids (nitric acid is best fitted) for 10 minutes. Pour off the acid, wash the slides and coverglasses for about 10 minutes in running water, rinse in distilled water, and keep them in 95% alcohol. When needed they are dried one by one with clean cheese cloth. Handle slides and covers with a pair of forceps. If thumb and fingers are used, hold them edgewise.

A. Fresh preparations

In making fresh preparations with large Protozoa care must be exercised to avoid pressure of the coverglass on the organisms as this will cause deformities. If small bits of detritus or debris are included in the preparation, the coverglass will be supported by them and the organisms will not be subjected to any pressure. Although ordinary slides are used most frequently, it is sometimes advisable to use a depression slide especially for prolonged observation. To make a preparation with this slide, a small drop of water containing specimens is placed in the center of a coverglass, and is covered by a small circular coverglass (about 1 cm. in diameter), which in turn is covered by a depression slide with a thin coat of vaseline along the edge of the depression, so as to make an air-tight compartment. In turning over the whole, care must be taken to prevent the smaller circular

cover from touching any part of the slide, as this would cause the water to run down into the depression. Nemeczek (1926) seems to have been the first one who used the second coverglass for this preparation. If the Protozoa to be examined are large and observation can be made under a low power objective, the small coverglass should be omitted.

As far as possible examine fresh preparations with low power objectives. The lower the magnification, the brighter and the larger the field. The microscopical objects can quickly and easily be measured, if an ocular micrometer division has been calculated in combination with different objectives.

For observation of cilia, flagella, extruded polar filament of Microsporidia, etc., the so-called changeable condenser is useful, since it gives both bright and **dark fields** under dry objectives. The ordinary dark field condenser is used almost exclusively in conjunction with an oil immersion objective and therefore for very active organisms a great deal of time is often lost before satisfactory observation is made.

When treated with highly diluted solutions of certain dyes, living Protozoa exhibit some of their organelles or inclusions stained without apparent injury to the organisms. These **vital stains** are usually prepared in absolute alcohol solutions. A small amount is uniformly applied to the slide and allowed to dry, before water containing Protozoa is placed on it. Congo red (1:1,000) is used as an indicator, as its red color of the salt changes blue in weak acids. Janus Green B (1:10,000–20,000) stains chondriosomes. Methylene blue (1:10,000 or more) stains cytoplasmic granules, nucleus, cytoplasmic processes, etc., Neutral red (1:3,000–30,000) is an indicator: yellowish red (alkaline), cherry red (weak acid), and blue (strong acid). It also stains nucleus slightly. Golgi bodies are studied in it, though its specificity for this structure is not clear.

Parasitic Protozoa should be studied in the tissue or body fluids in which they occur. When they are too small in amount to make a suitable preparation, one of the following solutions may be used.

Physiological salt solution. Widely used concentrations of NaCl solutions are 0.5–0.7% for cold-blooded animals and 0.8–0.9% for warm-blooded animals.

Ringer's solution. The one Dobell advocated has been given already (p. 717). Another frequently used solution consists of

NaCl	0.8 gm.
KCl	0.02 gm.
CaCl ₂	0.02 gm.

(NaHCO ₃	0.02 gm.)
Glass distilled water	100 cc.

For demonstrating organellae, the following reagents which kill the Protozoa upon application, may be used on living Protozoa.

Lugol's solution. This is made up of potassium iodide 1.5 gm., water 25 cc., and iodine 1 gm. The solution deteriorates easily. Flagella and cilia stain clearly. Glycogen bodies stain ordinarily reddish brown. Cysts of intestinal Protozoa are more easily studied in Lugol's solution.

Sudan III and IV. 2% absolute alcohol solution diluted before use with the same amount of 45% alcohol. Neutral fats are stained red.

Methyl green. 1% solution in 1% acetic acid solution makes an excellent nuclear stain.

Nigrosin. 10% solution if used in smears and air-dried makes the pellicular patterns of flagellates and ciliates stand out clearly.

In the case of **faecal examination** if the stool is dysenteric, a small portion is placed by a tooth-pick or platinum loop on a slide and covered with a cover glass. Before placing the cover, all large particles must be removed quickly so that the smear will be uniformly thin. Smears of diarrhoeic stools can be made in a similar way. But if the faecal material is formed or semiformed, a small drop of warm (37°C.) 0.85% NaCl solution is first placed on the slide, and a small portion of the faeces, particularly mucus, pus or blood, is emulsified in it. The whole is covered by a coverglass. The faecal smear should not be too thick or too thin for a satisfactory observation. If the smear is too thick, it will be impossible to distinguish objects clearly, and on the other hand, if it is too thin, there will be much time lost in observing widely scattered Protozoa. The optimum thickness of the smear is one through which the print of this page can be read.

The success in faecal examination for intestinal Protozoa depends almost entirely on continued practice, since the faecal matter contains myriads of objects which may resemble Protozoa. Aside from certain coprozoic Protozoa (p. 21) which appear in old faeces, *Blastocystis hominis* (Fig. 335, 3-6) occur in almost all faeces. This organism which is considered to be a fungus and harmless to its host, is usually spherical and measures about 5-25 μ in diameter. Within a very thin membrane, there is a narrow peripheral cytoplasmic layer in which 1 or 2 nuclei and several refractile granules are present. The cytoplasmic ring encloses a large homogeneous body which is somewhat eosinophile, but not iodophile. In some the cytoplasm may be

more abundant and the inclusion body smaller. Dividing forms appear peanut-shaped.

In a number of parasitic Protozoa, there occur foreign organisms which may be mistaken for food inclusions or chromatin. They are vegetable organisms which were named by Dangeard as *Sphaerita* and *Nucleophaga* (Fig. 335, 1, 2). The former occurs in the cytoplasm and the latter in the nucleus of the host protozoan. These parasites are spherical and about $0.5\text{--}1\mu$ in diameter; they are found most frequently in spherical masses composed of varying numbers of individuals. *Nucleophaga* appears to destroy the host nucleus. Degenerating epithelial cells or leucocytes (Fig. 335, 7, 8) may simulate parasitic amoebae. Fishes and birds are often infected by *Coccidia* and when they are consumed as food, the oocysts pass the alimentary canal unchanged and appear in the stools.

The cysts of intestinal Protozoa are, as a rule, distributed throughout the formed faeces and difficult to detect in small portions of the voided specimens. Flecks of mucus in the fluid stool obtained by use of a saline purge may contain more numerous cysts than naturally passed one. Several methods for concentrating cysts for microscopical examination are known. The simplest one is to emulsify thoroughly a small mass of faeces about the size of a lump sugar in a mortar by adding a small amount of once-boiled tap water. Add to it about 500 cc. of water and pour the whole emulsion into a glass cylinder, and let it stand for about 15 minutes. Remove the scum floating on the surface and draw off the turbid fluid into another cylinder, leaving the sediment and a little fluid just above it untouched. The majority of cysts are suspended in the drawn-off portion of the emulsion. Centrifuge the fluid, pour off the supernatant fluid and add water. Centrifuge again. Repeat this three times until the supernatant fluid becomes clear. The sediment will be found to contain more numerous cysts than small sample specimens.

B. Permanent preparations

Permanent preparations are employed, as was stated before, to supplement, and not to supplant, fresh preparations. Smear preparations are more frequently studied, while section preparations are indispensable in extensive studies of Protozoa.

a. Smear preparations

Smears are made either on coverglasses or slides. However, coverglass-smears are more properly fixed and require smaller amount of reagents than slide-smears. Greater care must be exercised in han-

dling coverglasses, as they are easily broken. Large free-living Protozoa do not frequently adhere to the glass, since there is not enough albuminous substance in the culture fluid. If a small drop of fresh egg-white emulsified in sterile distilled water is smeared on the coverglass very thinly with the tip of a clean finger, before mounting material for smear, more specimens will adhere to and remain on the

FIG. 335. 1, Sphaerita in a stained trophozoite of *Entamoeba coli*; 2, Nucleophaga in a stained trophozoite of *Iodamoeba bütschlii*; 3, 4, fresh specimens of *Blastocystis hominis*; 5, 6, stained *Blastocystis hominis*; 7, an epithelial cell found in faeces; 8, a polymorphonuclear with three ingested erythrocytes. $\times 1150$ (Kudo).

coverglass upon the completion of the preparation. Let the smear lie horizontally for 5–10 minutes or longer.

Parasitic Protozoa live in media rich in albuminous substances, and therefore, easily adhere to the coverglass in smear. Make uniformly thin smears on coverglasses. If the smears are made from dysenteric or fluid stools, they should be fixed almost immediately. Smears made from diarrhoeic or formed stools by emulsifying in warm salt solution, should be left for a few minutes. In any case, do not let the smear become dry except a narrow marginal zone.

The smears are fixed next. The most commonly used fixative for Protozoa is **Schaudinn's** fluid. This is made up as follows:

Cold saturated mercuric	
bichloride (6–7%)	66 cc.
Absolute or 95% alcohol	33 cc.
Glacial acetic acid	1 cc.

The first two can be kept mixed without deterioration, but the acid must be added just before fixation. Fix at room temperature or

warmed to 50°C. The fixative is placed in a square Petri dish and the smear is gently dropped on it with the smeared surface facing downward. With a little experience, air bubbles can be avoided and make the smear float on the surface of the fixative. After about one minute, turn it around and let it stay on the bottom of the dish for 5 to 10 more minutes. In case the smear is too thick, a thin coat of vaseline on the upper side of the coverglass will make it to float. About six coverglass-smears may be fixed in the dish simultaneously.

The coverglass-smears are now transferred to a Columbia staining jar for coverglasses, containing 50% alcohol for 10 minutes, followed by two changes for similar length of time. Transfer the smears next to 30% alcohol for 5 minutes, and then to a jar with water, which is now placed under gently running tap water for 15 minutes. Rinse them in distilled water and stain.

Other fixatives frequently used for Protozoa are as follows:

Bouin's fluid

Picric acid (saturated)	75 cc.
Formaldehyde	25 cc.
Glacial acetic acid	5 cc.

Fixation for 5-30 minutes; wash with 70% alcohol until picric acid is completely washed away from the smears.

Sublimate-acetic

Saturated sublimate solution	100 cc.
Glacial acetic acid	2 cc.

This is the original fixative for Feulgen's nucleal reaction (p. 726). Fixation and after-treatment similar to Schaudinn's fluid.

Carnoy's fluid

Absolute alcohol	30 cc.
Glacial acetic acid	10 cc.

Fixation for 5-30 minutes; wash in 95% alcohol.

Osmium tetroxide

The vapor from or the solution itself of 1% Osmium tetroxide may be used. Fixation in 2-5 minutes; wash in running water.

Flemming's fluid

1% chromic acid	30 cc.
2% osmium tetroxide	8 cc.
Glacial acetic acid	2 cc.

Fixation for 10–50 minutes; wash for one hour or longer in running water.

The most commonly used stain is **Heidenhain's** iron haematoxylin, as it is dependable and gives a clear nuclear picture, although it is unsatisfactory for voluminous organisms or smears of uneven thickness. It requires a mordant, ammonio-ferric sulphate (iron alum) and a dye, haematoxylin. Crystals of iron alum become yellow and opaque very easily. Select clear violet crystals and prepare 2% aqueous solution. Haematoxylin solution must be well "ripe." The most convenient way of preparing it is to make 10% absolute alcohol solution. By diluting this stock solution with distilled water, prepare 0.5 or 1% slightly alcoholic solution which will be ready for immediate and repeated use. Smears are left in the mordant in a jar for 1–3 hours or longer. Wash them with running water for 5 minutes and rinse in distilled water. Place the smears now in haematoxylin for 1–3 hours or longer. After brief washing in water, the smears are decolorized in Petri dish in a diluted iron alum, 0.5% HCl in water or 50% alcohol, or saturated aqueous solution of picric acid under the microscope. Upon completion, the smears are washed thoroughly in running water for about 30 minutes. Rinse them in distilled water. Transfer them through ascending series of alcohol (50 to 95%). If counter-staining with eosin is desired, dip the smears which were taken out from 70% alcohol, in 1% eosin in 95% alcohol for a few seconds, and then in 95% plain alcohol. After two passages through absolute alcohol and through xylol, the smears are mounted one by one on a slide in a small drop of mixture of Canada balsam and xylol. The finished preparations are placed in a drying oven at about 60°C. for a few days.

Other stains that are often used are as follows:

Delafield's haematoxylin. If the stock solution is diluted to 1:5–10, a slow, but progressive staining which requires no decolorization may be made; but if stock solution is used, stain for 1–16 hours, and decolorize in 0.5% HCl water or alcohol. If mounted in a neutral mounting medium, the staining remains true for a long time.

Mayer's paracarmine. In slightly acidified 70% alcohol solution, it is excellent for staining large Protozoa. If over-stained, decolorize with 0.5% HCl alcohol.

Giemsa's stain. Shake the stock solution bottle well. By means of a stopper-pipette dilute the stock with neutral distilled water (5–10 drops to 10 cc.). Smears fixed in Schaudinn's fluid and washed in neutral distilled water are stained in this solution for 10 minutes to

6 hours to overnight. Rinse them thoroughly in neutral distilled water and transfer them through the following jars in order (about 5 minutes in each): (a) acetone alone; (b) acetone:xylol, 8:2; (c) acetone:xylol, 5:5; (d) acetone:xylol, 2:8; (e) two changes of xylol. The smears are now mounted in cedar wood oil (which is used for immersion objectives) and the preparations should be placed in a drying oven for a longer time than the balsam-mounted preparations.

Feulgen's nucleal reaction. The following solutions are needed.

(a) HCl solution. This is prepared by mixing 82.5 cc. of HCl (specific gravity 1.19) and 1000 cc. of distilled water.

(b) Fuchsin-sodium bisulphite. Dissolve 1 gm. of powdered fuchsin (basic fuchsin, diamant fuchsin or parafuchsin) in 200 cc. of distilled water which has been brought to boiling point. After frequent shaking for about 5 minutes, filter the solution when cooled down to 50°C. into a bottle and add 20 cc. HCl solution. Cool the solution further down to about 25°C. and add 1 gm. of anhydrous sodium bisulphite. Apply stopper tightly. Decolorization of the solution will be completed in a few hours, but keep the bottle in a dark place for at least 24 hours before using it.

(c) Sulphurous water.

Distilled or tap water	200 cc.
10% anhydrous sodium bisulphite	10 cc.
HCl solution (a)	10 cc.

Feulgen's reaction is used to detect thymonucleic acid, a constituent of chromatin. By a partial hydrolysis, certain purin-bodies in the acid are split into aldehydes which show a sharp Schiff's reaction upon coming in contact with fuchsin-sodium bisulphite. Thus this is a reaction, and not a staining method. Smears fixed in sublimate-acetic or Schaudinn's fluid are brought down to running water, after being placed for about 24 hours in 95% alcohol. Immerse them in cold HCl for one minute, then place them in HCl kept at 60°C. (over a microburner or in an incubator) for 5 minutes, quickly immerse in cold HCl. After rapidly rinsing in distilled water, place the smears in solution (b) for 30-minutes to 3 hours. There is no overstaining. The smears are then washed in three changes (at least 2 minutes in each) of solution (c). Wash them in running water for 30 minutes. If counterstaining is desired, dip in 0.1% light green solution and rinse again in water. The smears are now dehydrated through a series of alcohol in the usual manner and mounted in Canada balsam.

Silver-impregnation methods. Since Klein (1926) applied silver nitrate in demonstrating the silver-line system of ciliates, various modifications have been proposed.

Dry silver method (Klein, 1926). Air-dried cover glass smears are placed for 6–8 minutes in a 2 per cent solution of silver nitrate and thoroughly washed. The smears are exposed to sunlight for 2–8 hours in distilled water in a white porcelain dish, with occasional control under the microscope. The smears are then washed thoroughly and air-dried; finally mounted in Canada balsam.

Wet silver method (modified after Gelei and Horváth, 1931). The ciliates are fixed in a centrifuge tube for 5–10 minutes in sublimate-formaldehyde solution, composed of saturated corrosive sublimate 95 cc. and formaldehyde 5 cc. The specimens are now washed twice in nonchlorinated water and once in distilled water; they are then treated in 1.5–2 per cent solution of silver nitrate for 5–20 minutes. Without washing, the specimens in the tube are exposed to direct sunlight for 10–60 minutes in distilled water, after which the specimens are washed 4–6 times in distilled water, one minute each. Passing through a gradually ascending alcohol series and xylol, the specimens are mounted in Canada balsam.

Fontana's method. For staining filamentous structures such as the extruded polar filament of microsporidian spores, this method is the most satisfactory one. After air-drying the smears are fixed for 5 minutes in a mixture of formaldehyde, 20 cc.; glacial acetic acid, 1 cc.; and distilled water, 100 cc. After washing in running water, the smears are placed in the following mordant composed of equal parts of 5 per cent tannic acid and 1 per cent carbolic acid, for about 2 minutes at about 60°C. Wash the smears in water and place them for 3–5 minutes in 0.25 per cent solution of silver nitrate warmed to 60°C., to which ammonia has been added drop by drop until a grayish brown cloud appeared. Wash thoroughly and air-dry. After passing through 95 per cent and absolute alcohol, and xylol, the smears are mounted in Canada balsam.

b. Blood film preparations

Thin film. The finger tip or ear lobe is cleaned with 70% alcohol. Prick it with an aseptic blood lancet or a sterilized needle. Wipe off the first drop with gauze and receive the second drop on a clean slide about half an inch from one end (Fig. 336, 1). Use care not to let the slide touch the finger or ear-lobe itself. Quickly bring a second slide, one corner of which had been cut away, to the inner margin of the blood drop (1), and let the blood spread along the edge of the second

slide. Next push the second slide over the surface of the first slide at an angle of about 45° toward the other end (2). Thus a thin film of blood is spread over the slide (3). Let the slide lie horizontally and dry, under a cover to prevent dust particles falling on it and to keep away flies or other insects. If properly made, the film is made up of a single layer of blood cells.

Thick films. Often parasites are so few that to find them in a thin film involves a great deal of time. In such cases, a thick film is advo-

FIG. 336. Diagrams showing how a thin blood film is made on a slide.

cated. For this, 4 to 6 drops of blood are placed in the central half-inch square area, and spread them into an even layer with a needle or with a corner of a slide. Let the film dry. With a little practice, a satisfactory thick smear can be made. It will take two hours or more to dry. Do not dry by heat, but placing it in an incubator at 37°C . will hasten the drying. When thoroughly dry, immerse it in water and dehaemoglobinize it. Air dry again.

Thin and thick film. Often it is time-saving if thin and thick films are made on a single slide. Place a single drop of blood near the center

and make a thin film of it toward one end of the slide. Make a small thick smear in the center of the other half of the slide. Dry. When thoroughly dry, immerse the thick film part in distilled water and de-haemoglobinize it. Let the slide dry.

Blood smears must be stained as soon as possible to insure a proper staining, as lapse of time or summer heat will often cause poor staining especially of thick films. Of several blood stains, Giemsa's and Wright's stains are used here. For staining with **Giemsa's** stain, the thin film is fixed in absolute methyl alcohol for 5 minutes. Rinse well the slide in neutral distilled water. After shaking the stock bottle (obtained from reliable makers) well, dilute it with neutral distilled water in a ratio of one drop of stain to 1-2 cc. of water. Mix the solution and the blood film is placed in it for 0.5-2 hours or longer if needed. Rinse the slide thoroughly in neutral distilled water and wipe off water with a tissue paper from the underside and edges of the slide. Let the slide stand on end to dry. When thoroughly dry, place a drop of xylol and a drop of cedar wood oil (used for immersion objectives) and cover with a coverglass. The mounting medium should be absolutely neutral. Do not use Canada balsam for mounting, as acid in it promptly spoils the staining.

For **Wright's** stain, fixation is not necessary. With a medicine dropper, cover the dried blood film with drops of undiluted Wright's stain, and let the film stand horizontally for 3-5 minutes; then the same number of drops of neutral distilled water is added to the stain and the whole is left for 10-30 minutes. The stain is then poured off and the film is rinsed in neutral distilled water. Dry. Mount in xylol and cedar wood oil.

Use of coverglass on a stained blood film is advocated, since a cedar wood oil mounted slide allows the use of dry objectives which in the hand of an experienced worker would give enough magnification for species determination of Plasmodium, and which will very clearly reveal any trypanosomes present in the film. Furthermore, the film is protected against scratches, and contamination by many objects which may bring about confusion in detecting looked-for organisms.

Films made from splenic punctures for Leishmania or Trypanosoma are similarly treated and prepared.

c. Section preparations

Paraffin sections should be made according to usual histological technique. Fixatives and stains are the same as those mentioned for smear preparations.

References

- BĚLAŘ, K. 1928 Untersuchung der Protozoen. Methodik d. wiss. Biologie, Vol. 1.
- BLAND, P. B., L. GOLDSTEIN, D. H. WENRICH and E. WEINER 1932 Studies on the biology of *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Amer. Jour. Hyg., Vol. 16.
- BOECK, W. C. and J. DRBOHLAV 1925 The cultivation of *Entamoeba histolytica*. Amer. Jour. Hyg., Vol. 5.
- CLAFF, C. L. 1940 A migration-dilution apparatus for the sterilization of Protozoa. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 13.
- CLEVELAND, L. R. and ELIZABETH P. SANDERS 1930 Encystation, multiple fission without encystment, excystation, metacystic development, and variation in a pure line and nine strains of *Entamoeba histolytica*. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 70.
- DOBELL, C. and P. P. LAIDLAW 1926 On the cultivation of *Entamoeba histolytica* and some other entozoic amoebae. Parasitology, Vol. 18.
- GATENBY, J. B. and T. S. PAINTER 1937 The microtometist's vademecum (Bolles Lee). London.
- GLASER, R. W. and N. A. CORIA 1930 Methods for the pure culture of certain Protozoa. Jour. Exp. Med., Vol. 51.
- HAHNERT, W. F. 1932 Studies on the chemical needs of *Amoeba proteus*: a cultural method. Biol. Bull., Vol. 62.
- KIDDER, G. W. 1941 Growth studies on ciliates. VII. Biol. Bull., Vol. 80.
- KUDO, R. R. 1944 *Manual of human Protozoa*. Springfield, Illinois.
- NEEDHAM, J. G., P. S. GALTSOFF, F. E. LUTZ and P. S. WELCH 1937 *Culture methods for invertebrate animals*. Ithaca, New York.
- RATCLIFFE, H. L., and Q. M. GEIMAN 1938 Spontaneous and experimental amebic infection in reptiles. Arch. Path., Vol. 25.
- REYER, W. 1939 Ueber die Vermehrung von Blastocystis in der Kultur. Arch. f. Protistenk., Vol. 92.
- TAYLOR, C. V. and W. J. VAN WAGTENDONK 1941 Growth studies of *Colpoda duodenaria*. I. Sterilization of the ciliates. Physiol. Zool., Vol. 14.
- WENYON, C. M. 1926 *Protozoology*. Vol. 2.

Author and Subject Index

Numbers in bold-face type indicate pages on which are given the definitions, explanations, or discussions of technical terms; the characterizations or differentiations of taxonomic subdivisions; or the descriptions of genera and species.

Numbers in italics indicate pages on which appear those illustrations that could not be placed on the same pages as the related text matter.

A

- Abderhalden, 94
 Abiogenesis, 11
 Acanthamoeba, 350
 castellanii, 349, 350
 hyalina, 21, 349, 350-351
 Acanthociasma, 420
 planum, 421
 Acanthociasmiidae, 420
 Acanthocystidae, 407, **412-414**
 Acanthocystis, 22, 42, 136, 145, **412**
 aculeata, 23, 131, **412**, 413
 Acanthodactylus vulgaris, 477
 Acanthometridae, 420
 Acanthometron, 420
 elasticum, 54, 421
 Acanthonia, 420
 tetracopa, 421
 Acanthoniidae, 420
 Acanthospora, 451
 polymorpha, 450, 451
 Acanthosporidae, 441, **451-452**
 Acartia clausi, 256, 636
 Acephalina, 431-440
 Achlya glomerata, 341
 Achromatic figure, 35, 133, 134, 135, 141
 Acidified methylgreen on nucleus, 35
 Acineta, 700
 caspidata, 701, 702
 lacustris, 701
 papillifera, 629
 tuberosa, 700, 702, 704
 Acinetaria, 695
 Acinetidae, 695, **700-706**
 Acinetopsis, 703
 tentaculata, 703, 704
 Acis, 451
 Acmaea persona, 626
 Acnidosporidia, 196, 427, **507-513**
 Actineliidae, 420
 Actinelius, 420
 primordialis, 421
 Actinia equina, 630
 mesembryanthemum, 630
 Actinobolina, 566
 borax, 566, 567
 Actinobolinidae, 560, **566-567**
 Actinobolus, 566
 Actinocephalidae, 441, **452-455**
 Actinocephalus, 452
 acutispora, 450, 452
 parvus, 140, **452**
 Actinocoma, 407
 ramosa, 408
 Actinocomidae, 407-408
 Actinolophus, 410
 pedunculatus, 410, 411
 Actinomonas, 44, 195, **265**
 mirabilis, 265
 Actinomyxididae, 65, 515, **531-533**
 Actinophryidae, 407, **408-409**
 Actinophrys, 19, 42, 86, 135, **408**, 714
 sol, 140, 164, 166, 168, **408-409**
 vesiculata, 409
 Actinopoda, 328, **406-425**
 Actinosphaerium, 11, 34, 37, 42, 86, 90, 99, **409**, 714
 arachnoideum, 409
 eichhorni, 37, 44, 164, 170, **408**, **409**
 Actinotricha, 669
 Actinozoa, 631
 Actipylea, 418, 419, **420-421**
 Acutispora, 449
 macrocephala, 448, 449
 Adams, 358, 359, 717
 Adaptability of Protozoa, 18, 29-30
 Adelea, 70, **477**
 ovata, 140, 152, **477**, 478
 Adeleidae, 477-480
 Adeleidea, 464, **477-482**
 Adelina, 477
 deronis, 140, 166, **479**
 dimidiata, 478, 479
 octospora, 478, 479
 Adler, 282
 Adoral membranellae, **51**, 54
 zone, 49, 51
 Aedes, 490, 495, 497
 aegypti, 430, 438
 albopictus, 438
 Aegyria, 586
 Aeschna constricta, 455
 Aethalium septicum, 91
 African Coast fever, 505
 Agarella, 529
 gracilis, 529
 Aggregata, 70, 131, 145, **146**
 eberthi, 140, 152, 166, **466-467**

- Aggregatidae, 465, **466-469**
 Aging in Protozoa, 166-170
 Agriodrilus, 559
Agriolimax agrestis, 30, 601
Agrion puella, 447
 Ahlstrom, 228
 Aikinetocystidae, 431, **434**
Aikinetocystis, 434
 singularis, 434, 435
 Akaryomastigont, 315
Alasmidonta undulata, 624
Albertisella, 436
 crater, 436
 Alexieff, 130
 Algae, 91, 92, 329, 330, 331, 333, 709
 Alisma, 342
 Allantocystidae, 431, **440**
Allantocystis, 440
 dasyhelei, 439, 440
 Allantosoma, 705
 brevicorniger, 705, 707
 dicorniger, 705, 707
 intestinalis, 705, 707
 Allegre, 236
 Allman, 65
 Allogromia, 374
 Alloiozona, 578
 trizona, 578
Allolobophora caliginosa, 557
 Allomorphina, 404
 trigona, 404
 Allosphaerium, 590
 caudatum, 590
 convexa, 127, 590
 granulosum, 590
 palustris, 589, 590
 sulcatum, 590
Allurus tetraedurus, 557
 Aloricatea, 683-689
Alveolinella, 400
 mello, 399
 Alveolinellidae, 400
Amara augustata, 452
Amaroucium, 459
Amaurochaete, 339
 fuliginosa, 339
 Amaurochaetidae, 339
 Amberson, 102
Ambystoma tigrinum, 549
Ameiurus albidus, 568
 Amiba, 345
 Amitosis, 122-130
 Ammodiscidae, 398
 Ammodiscus, 398
 incertus, 397, 398
 Amoeba, 6, 18, 19, 90, 91, 114, 115, 116, 117, 176, **345**, 713
 discoides, 105, **345**, 346
 dofleini, 87
 dubia, 44, 87, 90, 91, 105, **345**, 346
 gorgonia, 347, 348
 guttula, 42, 346
 Amoeba—continued
 limicola, 346, 347
 meleagridis, 266
 mira, 104
 proteus, 24, 42, 44, 52, 69, 70, 72, 87, 88, 90, 92, 94, 103, 105, 107, 108, 109, 110, 141, 142, 143, 170, **345**, 346, 713
 radiosa, 18, 42, 87, 347, **348**
 spumosa, 347-348
 striata, 39, 42, 73, 345-346
 verrucosa, 18, 21, 22, 39, 103, 105, 106, 107, 170, **345**, 346
 vespertilio, 347, 348
 Amoebiasis, 355, 357, 365
 Amoebic dysentery, 354, 357, 364
 Amoebidae, 343, 344, **345-351**
 Amoebina, 195, 329, **343-371**
 Amoebodiatase, 91
 Amoeboid movements, 106-110, 114, 328
 Amphacanthus, 655
 ovum-rajae, 655, 656
 Amphibia, 25, 239, 267, 279, 299, 301, 313, 365, 367, 473, 475, 476, 480, 505, 521, 527, 547, 548, 549, 550, 555, 685, 692
 Amphidinium, 253
 fusiforme, 253
 lacustre, 21, 252, **253**
 scissum, 252, 253
 Amphileptidae, 580-582
 Amphileptus, 23, 65, **580**
 branchiarum, 580, 581
 claparedei, 21, 580, 581
 meleagris, 580
 Amphilonche, 421
 hydrometrica, 421
 Amphilonchidae, 420
 Amphimonadidae, 268, **285-287**
 Amphimonas, 285
 globosa, 285, 286
 Amphimixis, 161
 Amphionts, 436
 Amphioxus, 608
 Amphipoda, 630
 Amphisiella, 670
 thiophaga, 669, 670
 Amphisteginidae, 403
 Amphitrema, 388
 flavum, 387, 388-389
Amphiura squamata, 634
 Amphizonella, 382
 violacea, 382
 Amphorocephalus, 454
 amphorellus, 453, 454
 Amphoroides, 452
 calverti, 450, 452
 Ampullacula, 578
 ampulla, 578
 Anabolic products, 98-101
 Anacharis, 701
 Anal cirri, 49, 50, 51

- Anarma*, 705
multiruga, 705, 706
Anas p. platyrhynchos, 501
rubripes tristis, 501
Anaspides tasmaniae, 440
Ancistrella, 627
choanomphali 627, 628
Ancistrina, 626
ovata, 627
Ancistrodon mokasen, 365
Ancistrospira, 628
veneris, 628
Ancistrum, 626
Ancistruma, 56, 626
isseli, 141, 625, 626
mytili, 58, 625, 626
Ancistrumidae, 623, 626-628
Ancyromonas, 272
contorta, 272
Ancyrophora, 451
gracilis, 450, 451-452
Anderson, 283
Andertermone, 151
Andrews, 648
Anemonia sulcata, 630
Angeiocystis, 469
audouinii, 469
Angerer, 345
Anguilla vulgaris, 280
Anisogametes, 150, 154
Anisogamy, 150, 151, 152, 153, 464, 467
Anisobolus, 445
dacnecola, 445, 446
Anisonema, 241
acinus, 240, 241
emarginatum, 240, 241
truncatum, 240, 241
Anisonemidae 230, 241-243
Annelida, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 441, 442, 460, 461, 462, 468, 469, 478, 479, 511, 512, 513, 531, 532, 533, 541, 542, 552, 554, 557, 558, 559, 625, 626, 685, 698
Annulus, 245
Anodonta, 618
catarecta, 624
implicata, 624
marginata, 624
Anomalina, 404
punctulata, 404
Anomaliniidae, 404
Anopheles, 7, 8, 490, 539
albimanus, 490
crucians, 490
gambiae, 490
maculipennis, 490
pseudopunctipennis, 490
punctipennis, 490
quadrifaculatus, 490, 491, 499, 537
walkeri, 490
Anophrys, 196, 605
aglycus, 604, 605
elongata, 604, 605
Anoplophrya, 552
marylandensis, 552, 553
orchestii, 552, 553
Anoplophryidae, 552-559
Antelope, 656, 657, 659
Anthophysa, 288
Anthophysis, 11, 65, 146, 287, 288-289
vegetans, 139, 288, 289
Anthropoid apes, 495, 639, 660, 663
Anthorhynchus, 454
sophiae, 453, 454
Anurosporidium, 513
pelseneeri, 513
Aphrydium versatile, 699
Apis mellifica, 365, 537
Apocynaceae, 281
Apodinium, 255-256
mycetoides, 255, 256
Apolocystis, 432
gigantea, 432, 433
minuta, 432, 433
Apomotis cyanellus, 523
Apostomea, 57, 551, 630-635
Arachnida, 454, 482
Arachnula, 332-333
impatiens, 332, 333
Aragão, 500
Arboroid colony, 146
Arcella, 21, 40, 44, 143, 170, 378, 714
artocrea, 379, 380
catinus, 379
dentata, 178, 379-380
discooides, 379
mitrata, 379
polypora, 178
vulgaris, 37, 38, 378-379
var. angulosa, 379
gibbosa, 379
Arcellidae, 374, 378-384
Archotermopsis wroughtoni, 310, 322
Arcichovskij, 38
Arcyria, 340
punicea, 339
Arcyriidae, 340
Arenicola ecaudata, 438
Argentophilous substance, 48, 69
Armadillos, 277
Arndt, 131
Arsenic acid, 180
Artificial digestion, 35
Artodiscus, 376
saltans, 375, 376
Ascaris, 368
Ascartia, 554
Ascidian, 459
Asclepiadaceae, 281
Ascoglena, 237
vaginicola, 237, 238
Ascorbic acid, 98
Asellus aquaticus, 687, 699

- Asexual reproduction, 147-149
 Asida, 450
 opaca, 450
 Askenasia, 564-565
 faurei, 564, 565
 Asparagin, 96
 Aspidisca, 21, 679
 lynceus, 126, 678, 679
 polystyla, 678, 679
 Aspidiscidae, 668, 679
 Asplanchna, 513
 Assulina, 391
 seminulum, 391, 392
 Astasia, 11, 38, 47, 70, 194, 239, 713
 klebsi, 239, 240
 laevis, 138
 Astasiidae, 232, 239-241
Asteracanthion rubens, 554
Asterias glacialis, 628
 rubens, 554
 Asterigerina, 403
 carinata, 402
 Asterophora, 452
 philica, 450, 452
 Astomata, 65, 93, 145, 146, 551, 552-559
 Astral rays, 133, 134
Astrangia danae, 630
 Astrocystella, 436
 lobosa, 435, 436
 Astrodisculus, 410
 radians, 410, 411
 Astrophrya, 696
 arenaria, 696, 697
Astrophyga magnifica, 605
 Astropyle, 417
 Astrorhizidae, 398
 Astrosiga, 269
 Astylozoon, 683
 fallax, 683, 684
 Astylozoonidae, 683-685
 Atchley, 718
 Atelopus, 527
Athene noctua, 279
 Atopodinium, 667
 fibulatum, 666, 667
Atyaephyra desmaresti, 444
Audouinia lamarcki, 441
 tentaculata, 469
 Aulacantha, 136, 424
 scolymantha, 140, 424
 Aulacanthidae, 424
 Aulosphaera, 424
 labradoriensis, 424
 Aulosphaeridae, 424
 Autogamy, 129, 161, 162-164, 169, 516, 517
 Automixis, 161-165
 Autotrophic nutrition, 92-93
 Auxin, 98
 Averintzia, 388
 cyclostoma, 388
 Axial fibrils, 42
 filament, 45, 46, 48
 rod, 42, 43, 44
 Axolotls, 267, 301
 Axopodia, 42-43, 44, 86, 195, 406, 418
 Axostylar filaments, 61-62, 66, 293
 Axostyle, 61, 293, 303
- ## B
- Babesia, 14, 502
 bigemina, 502-504
 bovis, 504
 canis, 505
 Babesiidae, 486, 502-506
 Bacillidium, 542
 limnodrili, 541, 542
 Bacteria and Protozoa, 5, 9, 24
 Badhamia, 335, 338
 utricularis, 338
 Baetis, 617
 Baker, 11, 97
 Balamuth, 649
 Balanitozoon, 569
 gyrans, 569
 Balanonema, 613
 biceps, 613-614
 Balantidiopsis, 638
 Balantidiosis, 638
 Balantidium, 54, 56, 74, 99, 638
 coli, 8, 9, 14, 15, 26, 91, 93, 638-639, 718
 duodeni, 637, 640
 praenucleatum, 637, 640
 suis, 639
 Balantiodoides, 638
 Balantiophorus, 612
Balanus amphitrite, 445
 eburneus, 445
 Balbiani, 13, 14
 Ball, 96
 Balladyna, 674
 elongata, 673, 674
 Bankia, 628
 Baraban, 509
 Barbel, 520
 Barbulanympha, 35, 133, 134, 323
 laurabuda, 139, 324
 ufalula, 139, 323, 324
Barbus barbatus, 520, 530
 fluvialis, 530, 540
 plebejus, 530
 Barret, 15, 716, 718
 Barrouxia, 477
 ornata, 476, 477
 Basal granule, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 52, 54, 59, 67
 plate, 49
 Bass, 15, 718
 Bat, 277
 Beccaricystis, 436
 loriai, 436, 437

- Becker, 98, 470, 659
 Bed bug, 277
 Beers, 625
 Behrend, 127
 Bělař, 37, 131, 135, 136, 138, 164, 166,
 168, 409, 467, 712, 714
 Belkin, 91
 Beloides, 454
 firmus, 453, 454
 Benedenia, 555
Benedictia biacalensis, 627
 limneoides, 627
 Ber, 282
 Bernstein, 103
 Berthold, 106
 Bertramia, 513
 asperospora, 512, 513
 capitellae, 513
 euchlanis, 513
Bibio marci, 454
 Bicosoeca, 147, 270
 socialis, 270, 271
 Bicosoecidae, 268, 270-271
 Biggar, 605, 640
 Biggaria, 605
 bermudense, 604, 605
 echinometris, 604, 605
 Binary fission, 143-144
 Biomyxa, 333
 cometa, 333
 vagans, 332, 333
 Bird malaria, 495-499
 Birds, 266, 364, 475, 495, 496, 497,
 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 506
 Bishop, 266
 Black birds, 475
 Black duck, 501
 Black flies, 502
 Black-head of turkey, 9, 266
 Blättner, 117
 Bland, 715
Blastocystis hominis, 368, 721-722,
 723
 Blastodiniidae, 248, 254-256
 Blastodinium, 254
 spinulosum, 254, 255
 Blastula, 6
Blatta orientalis, 444, 640
Blattella lapponica, 444
 Blattidae, 8
 Blepharisma, 21, 38, 65, 92, 643
 lateritium, 641, 643
 persicinum, 641, 643
 steini, 641, 643
 undulans, 23, 70, 643-644
 Blepharoconus, 577
 cervicalis, 576, 577
 Blepharocoridae, 593, 607
 Blepharocorys, 607
 bovis, 606, 607
 equi, 607
 uncinata, 606, 607
 Blepharoplast, 47, 66, 67-68, 131, 180
 Blepharoprosthium, 77, 577
 pireum, 576, 577
 Blepharosphaera, 577
 intestinalis, 576, 577
 Blepharozoum, 577
 zonatum, 576, 577
 Blood-films, 727-729
 Bloom, 487
 Blue bird, 497
Boaedon lineatus, 473
 Boderia, 42, 378
 turneri, 377, 378
 Bodo, 20, 289
 caudatus, 289, 290
 edax, 289, 290
 uncinatus, 21
 Bodonidae, 196, 268, 289-292
 Boeck, 15, 355, 357, 358, 717
 Boell, 157
 Boil-disease of fish, 520, 530
 Bold, 222, 223, 225
 Bolivina, 403
 punctata, 402
Bombina bombina, 549
 pachypa, 549
Bombyx mori, 537
 Bonanni, 11
Boophilus annulatus, 503
 Borgert, 136
Bos indicus, 656, 658
 Bothriopsis, 455
 histrion, 453, 455
 Botryoidae, 424
 Boveria, 56, 628
 teredinidi, 627, 628
 Bowling, 166
 Boyd, 28, 179, 486, 488, 490, 491
Box boops, 301, 549
 Brachiomonas, 218
 westiana, 219
 Brachionus, 513
 Branchioecetes, 584
 gammari, 583, 584
Brachiura coccinea, 559
 Brand, 26
 Brandt, 88, 170, 417
 Brassica, 341
 Braun, 28
 Bresslau, 602
 Bresslaui, 90, 602
 vorax, 602
 Brodsky, 64
 Brown, 56, 69, 138
 Bruce, 14
 Brug, 87
 Brumpt, 638
Brumptina brasiliensis, 365
 Bryophyllum, 582
 vorax, 581, 582
 Bryophrya, 602-603
 bavariensis, 602, 603
 Bryozoa, 537, 699, 709
 Bubos, 284

Buccinum, 468
undatum, 468
 Budding, 145
 Budington, 95
Buffelus bubalus, 658
 Bufo, 547, 692
compactilis, 548
cognatus, 550
intermedius, 550
lentiginosus, 548
marinus, 550
terrestris, 528
valiceps, 550

Bulbocephalus, 450
elongatus, 450, 451

Buliminidae, 403

Bullanympa, 306
silvestrii, 306, 307

Bullington, 608

Bullinula, 388

indica, 387, 388

Bundleia, 577
postciliata, 576, 577

Bundesen, 357

Bunting, 296

Burbank, 612

Burnside, 171, 645

Bursaria, 33, 100, 144, 637
truncatella, 637, 638

Bursariidae, 636, 637-640

Bursaridium, 638
difficile, 637, 638

Bursella, 569
spumosa, 569

Bütschli, 13, 14, 106, 110, 111, 600

Bütschlia, 576-577
parva, 576, 577

Bütschliella, 554
chaetogastri, 554
opheliae, 553, 554

Bütschliidae, 77, 560, 576-578

Buxtonella, 592
sulcata, 591, 592

C

Cabbage, 341

Caduceia, 306
bugnioni, 306, 307

Caementella, 424
stapedia, 424

Caementellidae, 424

Caenis, 432

Caenomorpha, 640
medusula, 21, 641

Cailleau, 98

Calanus finmarchicus, 256

Calcarina, 403
defrancei, 404

Calcarinidae, 403

Calkins, 6, 13, 37, 38, 72, 84, 123, 126,
 135, 166, 167, 171, 180, 575, 618,
 645, 652, 679, 696

Callimastigidae, 293, 299

Callimastix, 299

cyclopis, 299

equi, 299, 300

frontalis, 299, 300

Calliphora, 282, 361

erythrocephala, 361

Callipus lactarius, 452

Callitriche, 341

Calonympha, 315

grassii, 139, 315, 316

Caloscolex, 655

cuspidatus, 655, 656

Calospira, 635

minkiewiczii, 634, 635

Calymma, 417

Calyx, 134

Calypotricha, 619

pleuronemoides, 619, 620

Cambarus, 687, 689

Cambell, 654

Camel, 278, 655, 656, 659

Camelus dromedarius, 655, 656

Camerinidae, 402

Campanella, 687

umbellaria, 686, 687

Campascus, 386

cornutus, 385, 386

Campbell, 56

Camptonema, 42, 85, 409

nulans, 408, 409

Canary, 495

Cannosphaera, 424

Cannosphaeridae, 424

Canthocamptus, 692

minutus, 691

Capillitium, 337

Capitella capitata, 513

Capsa, 628

Capsellina, 384

limida, 383, 384

Carabus, 452

auratus, 452

violaceus, 452

Carbohydrate metabolism, 26, 91

Carbon dioxide, 103

Carchesium, 11, 33, 88, 89, 580, 689

granulatum, 39, 689

polypinum, 88, 141, 166, 689

Carcinoectes, 445

hesperus, 445, 446

Cardita calyculata, 457, 628

Cardium edule, 629

Carini, 365

Carotin, 78

Carp, 280, 285

Carteria, 222

cordiformis, 222, 223

ellipsoidalis, 222

obtusula, 23

Carteriidae, 217, 222-224

Caryospora, 475

simplex, 475, 476

- Caryotropha, 468
 mesnili, 468
 Cassidulina, 404
 laevigata, 404
 Cassidulinidae, 403
 Castanellidae, 425
 Castanidium, 425
 murrayi, 425
 Cat, 277, 358, 472, 474, 475
 Catabolic products, 103-106
 Cat-bird 497
 Catenoid colony, 146
 Catfish, 568
 Catostomus, 285
 commersonii, 528
 Cattle, 278, 299, 310, 364, 470, 502,
 504, 505, 577, 591, 605, 606, 607,
 655, 656, 657, 658, 659
 Caudal cirri, 49, 50
 Caulicola, 691
 vulvata, 690, 691
 Caulleryella, 460
 pipientis, 459, 460-461
 Causey, 71
Cavia aperea, 606, 607, 659
 porcella, 606, 607
 Cell, 5
 Cell-aggregates, Protozoa as, 6
 Cell-anus, 74, 92
 Cell-organs, 50
 Cellobiase, 91
 Cellulase, 91
 Cellulose, 25, 38, 91, 148
 Cenolarius, 423
 primordialis, 422
 Central capsule, 61, 171, 417
 motor mass, 54, 55, 56, 60
 spindle, 134
Centrechinus antillarum, 605, 640
 Centriole, 67, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134
 Centrodosome, 131
 Centropyxis, 386
 aculeata, 178, 385, 386
 Centrosome, 133
 Centrosphere, 135
 Cepedea, 34, 548
 cantabrigensis, 548
 floridensis, 548
 hawaiensis, 548
 obovoidea, 548
 Cepedella, 554-555
 hepatica, 555
 Cephalin, 430
 Cephalina, 431, 440-462
 Cephaloidophora, 442
 nigrofusca, 442
 olivia, 442, 443
 Cephaloidophoridae, 440, 442
 Cephalothamnium, 288
 cyclopum, 288
 Ceratiomyxa 341
 fruticulosa, 339
 Ceratiomyxidae, 340
 Ceratium, 11, 100, 144, 146, 259
 fuzus, 258, 259
 hirundinella, 21, 176, 177, 258, 259
 longipes, 258, 259
 trapos, 258, 259
 var. *atlantica*, 259
 Ceratodinium, 254
 asymmetricum, 252, 254
 Ceratomyxa, 521
 hopkinsi, 521, 522
 mesospora, 521, 522
 Ceratomyxidae, 521-522
Ceratophyllus fasciatus, 274, 279
 Ceratopogon, 542
 solstitialis, 454, 460
 Ceratospora, 439
 mirabilis, 439
Cercaria tenax, 13
 Cercomonas, 20, 291
 crassicauda, 21, 46, 290, 292
 longicauda, 21, 139, 290, 291
Cerithium rupestre, 457
 Certesia, 677
 quadrinucleata, 677, 678
Cervus canadensis, 659
Cestracion zygaena, 521
Cestus veneris, 635
 Cetonia, 299
 Chaenea, 573
 limicola, 573
Chaetodipterus faber, 521
 Chaetogaster, 554
 Chaetognatha, 371, 554
 Chaetospira, 672
 mülleri, 671, 672
 Chagas, 138, 350
 Chagas' disease, 277
 Chagasella, 480
 hartmanni, 480
 Chalkley, 17, 141, 143, 713
 Challengeridae, 424
 Challengeron, 425
 wyvillei, 425
 Chambers, 19
 Chang, 358
Chaos chaos, 11
 Chara, 341
 Charon, 607
 equi, 606, 607
 Chatton, 57, 66, 130, 180, 254, 623,
 630
 Cheissin, 555, 625
Chelydra serpentina, 365
 Chemical composition of water on
 Protozoa, 20-22
 stimuli, 116
 Chemicals on cysts, 359
 Chen, 137, 365, 497
 Chicken, 266, 313, 364, 367, 472, 497
 Chill and fever, 484, 489
 Chilodinium, 254
 cruciatum, 252, 254

- Chilodochona, 682
 quennerstedti, 681, 682
 Chilodon, 588
 steini, 589
 Chilodonella, 11, 18, 37, 69, 70, 117, 588
 caudata, 589
 cucullulus, 21, 62, 104, 122, 123, 124, 589
 cyprini, 589, 590
 fluvialis, 589
 hyalina, 590
 longipharynx, 590
 rotunda, 590
 uncinata, 122, 129, 141, 166, 181, 182, 589-590
 Chilodontopsis, 585
 vorax, 586, 587
 Chilomastigidae, 293, 298-299
 Chilomastix, 14, 298
 bettencourtii, 299
 caprae, 299
 cuniculi, 299
 gallinarum, 139, 299
 intestinalis, 299
 mesnili, 15, 25, 298-299
 Chilomonas, 65, 70, 88, 118, 136, 194, 214
 oblonga, 215
 paramesium, 23, 94, 96, 97, 103, 176, 214, 713
 Chilophrya, 569-570
 labiata, 570, 571
 utahensis, 570
 Chilostomellidae, 404
 Chimpanzee, 639
 Chiridota, 438
 laevis, 438
 Chironomus plumosus, 30
 Chitin, 40, 41, 65, 148
 Chiton caprearum, 457
 Chlamydoblepharis, 222
 Chlamydobotrys, 228
 stellata, 229
 Chlamydococcus, 218
 Chlamydodon, 56, 588
 mnemosyne, 587, 588
 Chlamyodontidae, 585, 588-590
 Chlamydomonadidae, 217-222
 Chlamydomonas, 38, 46, 78, 79, 80, 139, 150, 151, 182, 194, 217-218, 220
 angulosa, 218
 debaryana, 176, 178
 epiphytica, 218, 219
 eugametos, 184
 globosa, 218, 219
 gracilis, 218, 219
 monadina, 218, 219
 paradoxa, 184
 paupera, 184
 pseudoparadoxa, 184
 Chlamydomyxa, 333
 montana, 332, 333
 Chlamydrophtys, 382
 stercorea, 21, 382, 383
 Chloraster, 224
 gyrans, 223, 224
 Chlorasteridae, 217, 224
 Chlorella, 25
 Chlorine on cysts, 359
 Chlorogonium, 194, 220
 elongatum, 23
 euchlorum, 23, 220, 221
 teragamum, 23
 Chloromonadina, 78, 200, 243-244
 Chloromyxidae, 523, 526
 Chloromyxum, 526
 leydigi, 140, 145, 146, 524, 526
 trijugum, 524, 526
 Chlorophyll, 78, 92, 194
 Chloroplast, 78
 Choanocystis, 414
 lepidula, 414, 415
 Choanocystella, 436
 tentaculata, 435, 436
 Choanocystoides, 436
 costaricensis, 435, 436
 Choanomphalus, 627, 628
 Choanophrya, 86, 708
 infundibulifera, 708
 Chondriosomes, 70-72, 99
 Chondropus, 333
 viridis, 333
 Chonotricha, 24, 145, 196, 551, 681-682
 Chorophilus triseriatus, 548
 Christensen, 470
 Chromatin, 34, 35, 36, 37, 122, 123, 124, 546
 Idio-, 37
 Tropho-, 37
 Chromatin test, 35
 Chromatoid body, 355
 Chromatophore, 6, 38, 78-79, 92, 194, 195
 Chromidia, 37-38, 374
 Chromidina, 555
 elegans, 555, 556
 Chromomeres, 123
 Chromosomes, 131, 132, 133, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139-142, 165, 166, 467
 Chromulina, 47, 70, 201, 202
 pascheri, 202, 203
 Chromulinidae, 201-205
 Chrysamoeba, 194, 203
 radians, 203, 204
 Chrysopsis, 203
 sagene, 202, 203
 Chrysarachnion, 194, 210
 insidians, 210, 211
 Chrysemys elegans, 365
 picta bellii, 705, 706

- Chrysidella, 25, 215
 schauinslandi, 214, 215
 Chrysidiastrium, 210
 catenatum, 210
 Chrysocapsa, 212
 paludosa, 209, 212
 Chrysocapsina, 201, 210–212
 Chrysococcus, 203
 ornatus, 202, 203
Chrysomya macellaria, 361
 Chrysomonadina, 78, 100, 194, 195,
 200–212
 Chrysopyxis, 203
 cyathus, 202, 203
 Chrysophaerella, 204
 longispina, 202, 204
 Chrysothylakion, 195, 210
 vorax, 210, 211
 Chytridium, 256
 parasiticum, 255, 256
 Cienkowski, 333
 Cilia, 41, 47–52, 111–113, 193, 545
 Ciliary field, 50
 flagella, 45, 46
 movement, 111–113
 zone, 50
 Ciliata, 5, 12, 20, 193, 196, 545–693,
 715
 Cilioflagellata, 245
 Ciliophora, 38, 47, 65, 73, 101, 122,
 144, 193, 545–709
 Ciliophryidae, 407, 409
 Ciliophrys, 409
 infusionum, 409, 411
 marina, 409
 Cinetochilum, 615
 margaritaceum, 21, 614, 615
 Cingulum, 257
 Circoporidae, 425
 Circoporus, 425
 octahedrus, 425
 Circular cytotomal fibrils, 59
 Circum-oesophageal ring, 54
 -pharyngeal ring, 54, 55
 Cirri, 49, 56, 57, 668
 Cirrus fiber, 49, 50, 56
Citharichthys xanthostigmus, 521
 Cladomonas, 146, 286
 fruticulosa, 286
Cladonema radiatum, 631
 Cladophora, 689
Cladothrix pelomyxae, 349
 Cladotricha, 670
 koltzowii, 669, 670
 Claff, 90, 94, 148, 712
 Claparède, 12
 Clark, 103, 170
 Clathrella, 412
 foreli, 412, 413
 Clathrellidae, 407, 412
 Clathrostoma, 598
 viminale, 597, 598
 Clathrostomidae, 593, 598
 Clathrulina, 44, 414
 elegans, 414, 415
 Clathruliniidae, 407, 414
 Clausia, 554
Clausocalanus arcuicornis, 254
 furcatus, 254, 635
 Cleaning glass-ware, 719
 Clegg, 15
Cleodes longicaudatus, 697, 703
 Cleveland, 8, 25, 30, 35, 66, 91, 103,
 131, 134, 144, 311, 324, 355, 601,
 718
 Clevelandella, 648
 panesthiae, 648
 Clevelandellidae, 636, 648–649
 Clevelandia, 648
 Cliff swallow, 497
 Climacostomum, 75, 647
 virens, 21, 647, 650
Clitella vigilax, 530
Clitellus arenarius, 533
Clupea pilchardus, 528
Clymenella torquata, 256, 685
 Clypeolina, 389
 marginata, 387, 389
 Cnidosporidia, 64, 93, 196, 427, 515–
 543
 Coatney, 500
 Coccidia, 15, 196, 428, 464–482
 Coccidiosis, 9, 471, 472, 474
 Coccidium, 470
 oviforme, 470
 Coccolith, 41
 Coccolithidae, 40, 201, 208–209
 Coccoomonas, 220
 orbicularis, 220, 221
 Cocomyxa, 528
 morovi, 527, 528
 Cocomyxidae, 526, 528
 Cocconema, 541
 Coccozoa, 541
 slavinae, 541
 Coccozooidae, 537, 541
 Cochliatoxum, 663
 periaetum, 662, 663
 Cochliopodium, 143, 144, 382
 bilimbosum, 382, 383
 Cochlodinium, 253
 atromaculatum, 252, 253
 Cockroaches, 290, 313, 320, 321, 352,
 353, 357, 361, 367, 438, 444, 513,
 640, 644
 Codonella, 654
 cratera, 653, 654
 Codonocladium, 269
 Codonoeca, 271
 inclinata, 271
 Codonosigopsis, 270
 Codosiga, 269
 disjuncta, 269
 utriculus, 269
 Codosigidae, 268–270

- Coelenterata, 285, 370, 554, 613, 620,
630, 631, 632, 679, 692, 696, 699,
703, 709
- Coelodendridae, 425
- Coelodendrum, 425
ramosissimum, 425
- Coelosporidium, 513
blattellae, 513
periplanetae, 512, 513
- Coelozoic Protozoa, 26, 93
- Coenobium, 225
- Coggeshall, 19, 29, 490
- Cohn, 12
- Cohnilembidae, 608, 620–621
- Cohnilembus, 620
caeci, 620, 621
fusiformis, 620, 621
- Colacium, 146, 237
vesiculosum, 136, 238
- Coleorhynchus, 455
heros, 453, 455
- Colepismatophila, 447
watsonae, 446, 447
- Colepidae, 560, 565–566
- Coleps, 11, 38, 50, 86, 196, 565
bicuspis, 565, 566
elongatus, 565, 566
heteracanthus, 566
hirtus, 565, 566
octospinus, 565, 566
spiralis, 565, 566
- Collared Protozoa, 41, 270, 271
- Collecting canals, 74–76
- Collection of Protozoa, 710–711
- Collin, 51, 145, 197
- Collinella, 592
gundii, 591, 592
- Collinia, 552
- Collodictyon, 296–297
triciliatum, 139, 296, 297
- Collosphaera, 423
- Collosphaeridae, 423
- Colonial Protozoa, 6, 33, 145–147
- Colony, 145–147
arboroid, 146
catenoid, 146
dendritic, 146
discoid, 146–147
gregaloid, 147
linear, 146
spheroid, 147
- Color of Protozoa, 38, 235
water due to Protozoa, 247,
253, 260, 565
- Colpidium, 23, 128, 611–612
campylum, 21, 23, 95, 98, 127, 611,
612
colpoda, 19, 48, 86, 127, 168, 609,
611, 612
striatum, 91, 97, 98, 612
- Colpoda, 11, 37, 601
aspera, 21
californica, 601, 602
- Colpoda—continued
cucullus, 21, 23, 148, 601, 602
duodenaria, 602
inflata, 601, 602
steini, 30, 601
- Colpodidae, 593, 601–603
- Colponema, 291
loxodes, 290, 291
- Columba livia*, 500
- Columbella rustica*, 457
- Colymbetes, 455
- Comatula mediterranea*, 628
- Cometoides, 452
capitatus, 450, 452
- Commensal, 24–25
- Commensalism, 24–25
- Compact nucleus, 35–37
- Concentration of cysts, 722
- Conchophthiridae, 623–624
- Conchophthirus, 56, 73, 74, 623
anodontae, 127, 136, 137, 141, 623–
624, 625
caryoclada, 624, 625
curtus, 127, 624
magna, 127, 624
mytili, 65, 127, 128, 141, 624
- Concrement vacuole, 77, 576
- Condyllostoma, 645
patens, 645
vorticella, 645, 646
- Condylostomidae, 636, 645
- Cone-nosed bug, 277
- Congo red, 90, 720
- Conjugation, 13, 129, 154–161, 162,
163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 169, 181,
184, 185, 186, 187, 188
- Connal, 474
- Connell, 56, 127
- Contractile canal, 76, 96
vacuole, 69, 73–76, 102,
103–104, 108
- Conus mediterraneus*, 457
- Copepoda, 254, 256, 299, 537, 539,
541, 542, 554, 630, 697, 700, 708
- Copromastix, 298
provaezki, 296, 298
- Copromonas, 241
subtilis, 151, 241
- Coprozoic Protozoa, 21, 298
- Coplotermes formosanus*, 319, 326
- Corbierea, 222
- Cordylophora lacustris*, 696
- Coria, 18, 95, 712, 715
- Corky scab of potatoes, 342
- Coronympha, 315
clevelandi, 315, 316
- Corycaeus venustus*, 256
- Corycella, 451
armata, 450, 451
- Corycia, 381–382
coronata, 380, 382
- Corythion, 391
pulchellum, 390, 391

- Costa, 62, 293
 Costia, 29, 297
 necatrix, 26, 296, 297
 pyriformis, 297
 Cothurnia, 691
 annulata, 690, 691
 canthocampti, 690, 691
 Cougourdella, 542
 magna, 541, 542
 Coverglasses, 719
 Cow bird, 497
 Craig, 356, 357
 Cranotheridium, 562
 taeniatum, 561, 562
 Crappie, 27
 Craspedotella *pileolus*, 261, 262
 Craspedothorax, 595
 Craspidochilus *cinereus*, 511
 Craterocystis, 436
 papua, 435, 436
 Crenilabrus *melops*, 513
 ocellatus, 513
 paro, 513
 Crepidula *plana*, 650
 Crescent, 493
 Cresta, 293, 303, 304
 Cribraria, 340
 aurantiaca, 339
 Cribariidae, 339
 Crickets, 290
 Criodrilus, 626
 Cristigera, 619
 media, 618, 619
 phoenix, 618, 619
 Crithidia, 273, 280, 281
 euryophthalmi, 280
 gerridis, 281
 hyalommae, 281
 Crobylura, 572
 pelagica, 572, 573
 Cross-striation in cilia, 48
 Crossing over, 183-184
 Cruciferous plants, 341
 Crucinympha, 304
 Crumenula, 236
 ova, 237, 238
 Crustacea, 440, 442, 444, 445, 455,
 456, 457, 466, 468, 539, 552, 590,
 630, 632, 633, 634, 635, 682, 689,
 691, 692, 696, 698, 699, 700, 708
 Cruzella, 289
 Cryptobia, 284-285
 borreli, 285
 cyprini, 285
 grobbei, 285
 helicis, 285
 Cryptobiidae, 268, 284-285
 Cryptocercus *punctulatus*, 25, 303,
 313, 320, 323, 324, 326
 Cryptochilidium, 613
 echi, 613, 614
 Cryptochilum, 616
 Cryptochrysis, 215
 commutata, 214, 215
 Cryptodiffugia, 381
 oviformis, 380, 381
 Cryptoglena, 237
 pigra, 237, 238
 Cryptomonadina, 65, 78, 194, 200,
 213-216, 245
 Cryptomonadidae, 213, 214-215
 Cryptomonas, 100, 118, 136, 194,
 214, 215
 ovata, 214
 Cryptopharynx, 588
 setigerus, 588, 589
 Cryptops *hortensis*, 447
 Cryptosporidium, 475
 muris, 475, 476
 parvum, 475
 Cryptotermes *dudleyi*, 302, 311
 grassii, 315
 hermsi, 304, 306, 315
 longicollis, 316
 Crystals, 96, 104-105, 345
 Ctedoctema, 619
 acanthocrypta, 619, 620
 Ctenocephalus *canis*, 281, 452
 Ctenodactylus *gundi*, 505, 591
 Ctenophores, 635
 Ctenostomata, 20, 636, 665-667
 Cubitermes, 353
 Cucujus, 451
 Cueurbitella, 386
 mespiliformis, 385, 386
 Culex, 7, 8, 490, 495, 496, 497, 539
 fatigans, 15
 pipiens, 461, 486
 Cultivation of
 Free-living Protozoa, 711-715
 Parasitic Protozoa, 15, 283-284,
 355, 715-719
 Cultures,
 Bacteria-free, 712
 Mixed, 712
 Cunhaia, 659
 curvata, 659, 611
 Current and Protozoa, 115
 Curtis, 600
 Cushman, 40, 398
 Cutler, 15
 Cyathodiniidae, 593, 606-607
 Cyathodinium, 606
 conicum, 606
 piriformis, 606, 607
 Cyathomonas, 65, 215
 truncata, 214, 215
 Cyclidium, 21, 619
 glaucoma, 48
 litomesum, 618, 619
 Cyclochaeta, 692
 domergui, 692, 693
 spongillae, 692, 693
 Cyclogramma, 64, 585
 trichocystis, 585, 587

- Cyclonexis*, 33, 147, 208
annularis, 207, 208
Cyclonympha, 326
Cycloposthiidae, 652, 659-663
Cycloposthium, 61, 660
bipalmatum, 660, 661
dentiferum, 660, 661
Cyclops, 288, 299, 687, 703, 708
fuscus, 537
minutus, 692
ornatus, 708
Cyclosis, 11, 87-89
Cyclospora, 475
caryolytica, 475, 476
Cyclostoma elegans, 692
Cyclotrichium, 565
meunieri, 92, 545, 564, 565
Cynoscion regalis, 525
Cyphoderia, 21, 390
ampulla, 176, 390-391
Cyphon pallidulus, 446
Cypridium, 586
Cyprinus, 285, 590
Cypris, 687
Cyrtoidae, 423
Cyrtolophosis, 615
mucicola, 615, 616
Cyrtophora, 195, 203-204
pedicellata, 202, 204
Cyst, 147-149, 355, 358-359, 361, 721
 -carrier, 357
 -passer 357
Cystidium, 423
princeps, 423
Cystobia, 440
irregularis, 439, 440
Cystocephalus, 451
algerianus, 450, 451
Cystodiniidae, 248-249
Cystodinium, 248
steini, 247, 248
Cystodiscus immersus, 527
Cystoflagellata, 246, 261-262
Cytogamy, 163
Cytomere, 500, 502
Cytopharynx, 51, 54, 62, 86
Cytoplasm, 38-41, 186
Cytopyge, 74, 92
Cytosome, 33, 38-41
Cytosomic division, 143-145
 binary fission, 143-144
 budding, 145
 multiple division, 144-145
 plasmotomy, 145
 schizogony, 145, 147
Cytostome, 51, 86-87
Cytozoic Protozoa, 26, 28, 93
Czurda, 79

D

- Da Cunha, 644
 Da Fonseca, 297

- Dacne rufifrons*, 445
Dactylochlamys, 20, 567
pisciformis, 566, 567
Dactylophoridae, 441, 447-449
Dactylophorus, 447
robustus, 447, 448
Dactylophrya, 703
roscovita, 703, 704
Dactylosaccus, 378
vermiformis, 377, 378
Dactylosoma, 505
ranarum, 504, 505
Dallasia, 611
Dallinger, 18
Dallingeria, 294
drysdali, 294
Daniel, 141, 143
Darkfield microscope, 720
Darling, 509
Dasyhelea obscura, 440, 543
Dasytis novemcinctus, 277
Dasytricha, 606
ruminantium, 606
Davaine 14
Davis, 297, 313, 520, 524, 696
Dawson, 91, 168
De Bary, 335
De Garis, 186
Debaisieux, 130, 517
Deer mouse, Canadian, 279
Defecation process, 92
Degeneration, 39
Dellinger, 107
Deltotrichonympha, 326
operculata, 326
Dembowski, 115
Dendritic colony, 146
Dencrocoelum lacteum, 617
Dendrocometes, 699
paradoxus, 698, 699
Dendrocometidae, 695, 699
Dendromonas, 288
virgaria, 288
Dendrorhynchus, 447
systemi, 447-448
Dendrosoma, 696, 700
radians, 696, 697
Dendrosomidae, 695
Dendrosomides, 696
paguri, 696, 697
Dennis, 503
Derepyxis, 205
amphora, 205, 206
ollula, 206
Dermacenter reticulatus, 505
Dermestes lardarius, 454
Dero limosa, 479
Deschiens, 19
Desmarella, 269
irregularis, 270
moniliformis, 269
Desmose, 131, 134
Deutomerite, 429

- Devescovina, 66, 303
 lemniscata, 304, 305
 Devescovinidae, 293, 303-307
 Dewey, 90
 Dexiotricha, 615
 Dexiotrichides, 615
 centralis, 615, 616
Diadema setosum, 640
 Diaphoropodon, 389
 mobile, 387, 389
Diaptomus castor, 539
 Diastole, 73, 74
 Diatom, 333
 Dichilum, 613
 cuneiforme, 613, 614
 Dicnidea, 536, 542
 Dicotylus, 617
 Dictyophimus, 424
 hertwigi, 423
 Dictyosteliidae, 341
Didelphys virginiana, 277
 Didesmis, 577
 quadrata, 576, 577
 Didiniidae, 560, 563-565
 Didinium, 54, 65, 87, 104, 563
 balbianii, 563, 564
 nasutum, 24, 129, 141, 165, 563, 564
 Didymiidae, 338
 Didymium, 339
 effusum, 338
 Didymophyes, 442
 gigantea, 442-443
 Didymophyidae, 440, 442-443
 Dientamoeba, 367
 fragilis, 25, 140, 266, 360, 361, 368
 Diesing, 12
 Diffugia, 37, 170, 384
 arcula, 385
 constricta, 385-386
 corona, 178, 386
 lobostoma, 385
 oblonga, 384-385
 pyriformis, 384
 spiralis, 107
 urceolata, 385
 Diffugiella, 381
 apiculata, 380, 381
 Diffugiidae, 374, 384-389
 Digestion, 90-92
 Dileptus, 56, 63, 582-583
 americanus, 583-584
 anser, 37, 63, 64, 123, 171, 583, 485
 Diller, 127, 163, 165, 615
 Dimastigamoeba, 344
 bistadialis, 139, 344
 gruberi, 21, 344
 Dimastigamoebidae, 51, 343, 344-345
 Dimorpha, 136, 195, 265
 mutans, 265
 Dimorphism, 395
 Dinamoeba, 348
 mirabilis, 347, 348
 Dinenumpha, 69, 70, 136, 302
 fimbriata, 139, 302, 303
 gracilis, 302, 303
 Dinenumphidae, 294, 302-303
 Dinobryon, 47, 100, 146, 208
 divergens, 208
 sertularia, 207, 208
 Dinoflagellata, 47, 78, 196, 200, 245-262
 Dinomonas, 287
 vorax, 286, 287
 Dinophysidae, 257, 261
 Dinophysis, 261
 acuta, 260, 261
 Diophrys, 677
 appendiculata, 126, 677, 678
Diphasia attenuata, 703
 Diphasic amoebae, 344, 714
 Diplocllamys, 384
 leidyi, 383, 384
 Diploconidae, 421
 Diploconus, 421
 Diplocystidae, 431, 437-438
 Diplocystis, 437
 schneideri, 140, 166, 437, 438
 Diplodinium, 656
 dentatum, 656, 658
 ecaadatum, 54, 659
 Diplogromia, 374
 Diploid, 139-141, 165-166
 Diplomita, 286
 socialis, 286, 287
 Diplomonadina, 33, 34, 293, 311-315
 Diophrys, 377
 archeri, 377
 Dioploplastron, 657
 affine, 657, 658
 Diplopoda, 442, 446
 Diplosiga, 270
 francei, 269, 270
 socialis, 269, 270
 Diplosigopsis, 270
 affinis, 270, 271
 Diplostauron, 220
 pentagonium, 219, 220
 Direct nuclear division, 122-130
 Discoid colony, 146-147
 Discoidae, 423
 Discolith, 208
 Discomorpha, 665-666
 pectinata, 666
 Discomorphidae, 665-666
 Discophrya, 706
 elongata, 706, 707
 Discophryidae, 695, 706-708
 Discorbis, 403
 opercularis, 395
 petalliformis, 396, 397
 Discorhynchus, 453
 truncatus, 453
Discosphaera tubifer, 209
 Disematostoma, 74, 608-609
 bütschlii, 609, 610

Dissodinium, 261
 lunula, 260, 261
Dissosteria carolina, 444
Distephanus speculum, 195, 209
 Distigma, 47, 242
 proteus, 240, 242
 Ditoxum, 663
 funinucleum, 662, 663
 Ditrichomonas, 308
 Division, 5, 122-147
 cytosomic, 143-147
 nuclear, 122-142
Dixippus morosus, 30
 Dobell, 5, 11, 13, 29, 130, 131, 151,
 166, 179, 266, 297, 308, 309, 310,
 355, 358, 361, 363, 368, 467, 717
 Dobellia, 469
 binucleata, 469
 Dobelliidae, 465, 469
 Dobellina, 368-369
 mesnili, 369-370
 Doflein, 13, 42, 101, 136, 143, 145
 Dog, 277, 278, 282, 357, 364, 472, 474,
 475, 505
 Dogiel, 61, 77, 655
 Dogiella, 69, 70, 554
 minuta, 553, 554
 sphaerii, 553, 554
 virginia, 553, 554
 Dolichodinium, 259
 lineatum, 258, 259
 Donax, 468
 trunculus, 513
 vittatus, 685
 Donkey, 277, 278
 Donovan, 15
 d'Orbigny, 12
 Dorisiella, 475
 scolecipidis, 475, 476
 Dorsal motor strand, 54
Dosinia exoleta, 629
 Doudoroff, 18
 Dourine, 9, 278
 Doyle, 72, 84, 87, 105
 Drbohlav, 15, 355, 717
 Drehkrankheit, 521, 529
 Drepanoceras, 595
 Drepanomonas, 595
 dentata, 594, 595
 Drew, 28, 358
 Drosophila, 542
 confusa, 282
 Duboseq, 67, 70, 131, 196
 Duboseqia, 539
 legeri, 538, 539
Duboscqella, 256
 tintinnicola, 255, 256
 Ducks, 313, 501, 510
 Dufour, 14
 Dujardin, 11, 12
Dumatella carolinensis, 497
 Dunkerley, 144
 Dusi, 96, 97

Dutton, 15
Dysdercus ruficollis, 480
 Dysentery amoeba, 356
 Dysmorphococcus, 225
 variabilis, 223, 225
 Dysteria, 586
 calkinsi, 586, 587
 lanceolata, 586
 Dysteriidae, 585, 586-587

E

Earthworm, 432, 433, 434, 460, 552,
 557, 558, 559, 625
 Eaton, 29
Ebalia turnefacta, 682
 Echinodermata, 439, 440, 554, 597,
 603, 604, 605, 613, 621, 628, 634,
 640, 649
 Echinomera, 447
 magalhaesi, 447, 448
Echinometra lucunter, 605
Echinometris subangularis, 605, 640
 Echinospira, 477
 labbei, 476, 477
Echinus esculentus, 604
 lividus, 613
 Ecology, 17-31
 Ectocommensals, 24, 29
 Ectoparasites, 25-26, 29
 Ectoplasm, 38, 39
 Edgar, 99
 Edwards, 87, 350
 Eel-grass, 329
 Eels, 280
 Effect of parasites on hosts, 25-29
 Efimoff, 19
 Ehrenberg, 12
 Eichhorn, 11
 Eimer, 14
 Eimeria, 870
 acervulina, 471, 472
 anseris, 472
 arloingi, 470
 canis, 471, 472
 caviae, 472
 clupearum, 471, 473
 cylindrica, 470
 deblickei, 471
 dispersa, 473
 ellipsoidalis, 470
 falciformis, 471, 472
 faurei, 469, 470
 felina, 472
 gadi, 100, 473
 intricata, 471
 labbeana, 473
 maxima, 471, 472
 meleagridis, 472
 meleagrimitis, 472
 mitis, 471, 472
 miyairii, 472
 necatrix, 472
 nieschulzi, 98, 472

- Eimeria*—continued
oxyzoora, 473
perforans, 469, 470
praecox, 472
prevoti, 471, 473
ranae, 471, 473
ranarum, 471, 473
sardinae, 471, 473
scabra, 471
schubergi, 136, 152, 464, 465, 470
separata, 472
smithi, 470
stiedae, 13, 14, 469, 470
tenella, 99, 471, 472
truncata, 472
wenyoni, 473
zurni, 470
Eimeridea, 464–477
Eimeriidae, 465, 470–477
Eisenia foetida, 558
lönnerbergi, 558, 625
Elaeorhanis, 44, 410
cincla, 410, 411
Elaſter, 414
greeffii, 414, 415
 Electrical stimuli, 118
Eleodes, 450
Elephant, 278
Eleutheria dichotoma, 554
 Elliott, 96, 97, 98, 218
Ellipsoidina, 403
Ellipsoidinidae, 403
Elliptio complanatus, 624
 Ellis, 11, 65
Ellobiophrya, 685
donacis, 685, 686
Ellobiopsis, 256
chattoni, 255, 256
Elphidium, 11, 42, 86, 402
crispa, 396, 397–398
strigilata, 43
Elytroplastron, 657–658
bubali, 658, 660
Embadomonas, 290
Emetin hydrochloride, 359
Emys orbicularis, 480
Enchelydium, 561
fusidens, 561, 562
Enchelyodon, 574
californicus, 574
Enchelyomorpha, 567
vermicularis, 566, 567
Enchelys, 572
auduboni, 572
curvilata, 572, 573
 Encystment 147–149, 324, 355, 430, 458, 600–601, 603
Endamoeba, 30, 351–352, 354
blattae, 25, 70, 122, 124, 127, 154, 352–353
disperata, 140, 353
granosa, 353
lutea, 353
Endamoeba—continued
majestus, 353
pellucida, 353
sabulosa, 353
simulans, 353
suggrandis, 353
thomsoni, 353
 vs *Entamoeba*, 351
Endamoebidae, 343, 351–370
 Endocommensalism, 25, 30
 Endocrines and Protozoa, 94–96
Endolimax, 366–367
blattae, 367
gregariniiformis, 367
nana, 25, 360, 361, 367
ranarum, 367
Endomixis, 128–129, 169
 Endoparasites, 26–29, 30
 Endoplasm, 38, 39, 87
 Endoskeleton, 55, 61, 62, 64, 65
 Endosome, 34, 36, 37, 123, 136
 Endosphaera, 705
engelmanni, 21, 685, 705, 707
 Engelmann, 56, 62, 88
 English sparrow, 475, 495, 497
 Enoploplastron, 659
triloricatum, 659, 660
 Enrique, 166
Entamoeba, 90, 179, 351, 353
apis, 365
barreti, 365, 716
bovis, 364
brasiliensis, 353, 365
buccalis, 363
caprae, 364
caviae, 364
cobayae, 364
coli, 14, 25, 140, 360, 361–363, 723
cuniculi, 364
deblickei, 364
equi, 364
gallinarum, 364
gingivalis, 14, 70, 140, 363–364
gedoelsti, 364
histolytica, 8, 14, 15, 19, 26, 87, 93, 140, 179, 354–361, 716, 717
intestinalis, 364
invadens, 365, 716
minchini, 365
muris, 364
ovis, 364
polecki, 364
ranarum, 365
terrapinae, 365
testudinis, 365
venaticum, 364
Enterocystis, 432
ensis, 432, 433
Enteromonas, 297–298
hominis, 296, 297, 298
Entodinium, 654, 655
bursa, 655, 656
caudatum, 655, 656

- Entodiscus, 603–604
 borealis, 604–605
 indomit, 604
 Entorhipidiidae, 593, 603
 Entorhipidium, 56, 603
 echini, 603, 604
 Entosiphon, 242
 ovatum, 242
 sulcatum, 138, 240, 242
 Entz, 296, 370
 Envelope, 39–40
 Enzymes in Protozoa, 70, 72, 90, 93, 335
 Eodinium, 655
 lobatum, 656, 658
 Eosin test, 357, 358
 Epalcidae, 665
 Epalxis, 665
 mirabilis, 665, 666
Epeorus torrentium, 540
 Ephelota, 709
 coronata, 700, 708, 709
 gemma, 700, 703, 708, 709
 plana, 708, 709
 Ephelotidae, 86, 695, 709
Ephemera vulgata, 542
Ephesia kuhniella, 460
 Epiclintes, 673
 pluvialis, 673
 Epicone, 245
 Epidinium, 659
 caudatum, 659, 660
 ecaudatum, 54, 55, 659, 660
 Epimerite, 65, 430
 Epiplastron, 659
 africanum, 659, 660
 Epistylidae, 683, 686–687
 Epistylis, 580, 686, 696, 700
 cambari, 686, 687
 fugitans, 686, 687
 plicatilis, 686
 Epitheca, 245
 Erdmann, 128
 Eremoplastron, 657
 bovis, 657, 658
Eriphia spinifrons, 457
 Ervilia, 586
 Erythroblast, 495, 502
 Erythrocytic schizogony, 485, 487, 488
 Erythropsis, 249–251
 cornuta, 250, 251
 Eschaneustyla, 75, 670
 brachytona, 669, 670
 Esox, 527, 530
 lucius, 280
 reticulatus, 280
 Espejoia, 612
 mucicola, 612, 614
 Espundia, 284
 Eucamptocerca, 586
 longa, 586, 587
Euchaeta japonica, 699
 Euchlanis, 513
 Euchrysomonadina, 201–209
 Euciliata, 34, 100, 136, 196, 547, 551–693
 Eucomonympha, 326
 imla, 325, 326
 Eucomonymphidae, 326
 Eucryptomonadina, 213–216
 Eudiplodinium, 657
 maggii, 657, 658
 Eudorina, 80, 1, 00147, 220, 230
 elegans, 117, 151, 153, 168, 229, 230, 330
 Euglena, 11, 18, 21, 38, 46, 47, 80, 117, 194, 233–235
 acus, 68, 233, 234, 235
 deses, 23, 68, 234–235
 gracilis, 23, 70, 91, 94, 96, 98, 99, 138, 194, 234, 235
 oxyuris, 234
 pisciformis, 23, 96, 139, 233, 234
 rubra, 78, 79, 235
 sanguinea, 78, 99, 233, 234
 spirogyra, 68, 233–234
 vermiformis, 235
 viridis, 136, 139, 233, 234
 Euglenamorphia, 239
 hegneri, 238, 239
 Euglenidae, 232–239
 Euglenoid, 232
 Euglenoidina, 36, 70, 78, 200, 232–243
 Euglypha, 40, 42, 131, 136, 143, 389
 acanthophora, 148, 389
 alveolata, 20, 389
 cristata, 389, 390
 mucronata, 389–390
 Euglyphidae, 374, 389–392
 Eugregarinina, 428, 429–457
 Eulophomonas, 321
 kalotermitis, 321
 Eumycetozoa, 338–341
Eunica crassa, 679
Eupagurus berhardus, 635
 cuanensis, 696
 excavatus, 696
 Euphorbia, 281
 Euphorbiaceae, 281
 Euplotes, 21, 37, 56, 123, 676
 aediculatus, 676–677
 carinatus, 677, 678
 charon, 104, 677, 678
 eurystomus, 49, 50, 57, 125, 126, 675, 676
 longipes, 129
 patella, 22, 56, 57, 58, 104, 141, 156, 157, 159, 186, 675, 676
 plumipes, 677
 woodruffi, 125, 675, 676
 Euplotidae, 668, 676–677
 Euplotidium, 677
 agitatum, 677, 678
 Eupoterion, 56, 127, 626
 pernix, 626, 627

Eurychilum, 613
 actiniae, 613, 614
Euryophthalmus convivus, 280, 281
Eurypanopeus depressus, 457
 Euryphagous Protozoa, 24
 Eurysporea, 521-523
 Eusattus, 450
 Eutaenia, 299
 Eutreptia, 238-239
 marina, 238, 239
 viridis, 238, 239
 Eutreptiella, 238
 Eutrichomastix, 299
 axostylis, 300
 batrachorum, 300
 serpentis, 139, 299, 300
Eutyphoeus foveatus, 434
 peguanus, 434
 rarus, 434
 spinulosus, 434
 Evans, 603
 Evolution, 5, 193-197
 Excretion, 103-106
 Excystment, 218, 355, 356, 363
 Exflagellation, 489
 Exoerythrocytic schizogony, 487
 Exoskeleton, 10, 39-41, 61
 Exuviaella, 247
 apora, 248
 marina, 247
 Eye-spot, 79, 80

F

Fabrea, 647
 salina, 92, 647, 650
 Factors for distribution, 17, 148
 encystment, 147-148
 excystment, 218
 Faeces, collection of, 711
 Faecal examination, 721-722
 Fair, 358
Fannia canicularis, 361
 Fantham, 364
 Fat, 91, 100
 Fauré-Fremiet, 72
 Feo, 309
 Ferments, 70, 72, 90, 93, 335
 Feulgen's nuclear reaction, 35, 37, 38,
 68, 122, 726
 Fibrillar structures, 52-61
 Fiebigger, 473
 Filopodia, 42, 44
 Finch, 475
 Fingers and toes, 341
 Finley, 21, 22, 103
 Fischerina, 400
 helix, 399
 Fischerinidae, 400
 Fish, 280, 285, 297, 301, 313, 370, 473,
 480, 510, 513, 521, 523, 524, 525,
 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 535,
 538, 539, 540, 549, 568, 590, 685,
 692, 696

Fixatives
 Acetic-formaldehyde, 727
 Bouin, 724
 Carnoy, 724
 Flemming, 724
 Osmium tetroxide, 724
 Schaudinn, 723-724
 Sublimate-acetic, 724
 Flagellata, 12
 Flagella, 41, 45-47, 51, 86, 110-111,
 193
 ciliary, 45, 46
 whip, 45, 46
 Flather, 95
Flavobacterium trifolium, 350
 Fleas, 274, 279, 281, 452
 Flies, 357, 361, 448, 500, 542
 Foaina, 304
 nana, 304-306
 Foettingeria, 630
 actiniarum, 630, 632
 Foettingeriidae, 630-635
 Folliculina, 647
 moebiusi, 647, 650
 producta, 647, 650
 Folliculinidae, 636, 647-648
 Fonsecaia, 442
 polymorpha, 442, 443
 Fontana's staining, 727
 Food capture, 42, 47, 51, 84-87
 vacuoles, 24, 77-78, 87-90
 Foraminifera, 10, 12, 25, 33, 40, 90,
 91, 106, 145, 171, 176, 193, 215,
 329, 374, 394-405
 Forde, 15
 Forma, 654
 Fossil Protozoa, 10, 193, 394, 417
 Fowls, 266, 299, 364, 367, 472, 473,
 510
 Fox, 277
 Free-living Protozoa, 17-24
 Frenzelina, 388
 reniformis, 387, 388
 Fresh preparations, 719-722
 Frisch, 22
Fritillaria pellucida, 256
 Frogs, 25, 239, 279, 299, 301, 313,
 365, 367, 473, 475, 476, 480, 505,
 521, 527, 528, 547, 548, 555, 640,
 645, 692
 Frontal cirri, 49, 50, 51
 membrane, 51
 Frontonia, 20, 74, 608
 branchiostomae, 608, 609
 leucas, 63, 64, 598, 608, 609
 Frontoniidae, 608-617
 Frye, 179, 358, 361, 718
Fulica atra, 473
 Fuligo, 338
 septica, 338
 Fulton, 692
 Fureilla, 221
 lobosa, 221

- Furcula, 61
 Furgason, 178, 610
Fusiformis lophomonadis, 321
 Fusulina, 399
 Fusulinidae, 399
- G**
- Gadus, 528
 aeglefinis, 473
 morrhua, 473
 virens, 473
Galleria mellonella, 30
Gallinula chloropus, 473
Gallus domesticus, 497
 Gametes, 150, 182, 465, 467, 478, 481, 484
 Gametocytes, 465, 467, 478, 481, 484, 489
 Gammarus, 539, 584, 681, 682, 692
 locusta, 682
 pulex, 682, 699
 puleanus, 699
 Gamocystis, 444
 tenax, 443, 444
 Ganymedes, 440
 anaspides, 439, 440
 Ganymedidae, 431, 440
 Gastrophryne, 547
Gastrosteus aculeatus, 539
Gastrostyla, 23, 674
 muscorum, 673, 674
 Gastrula, 6
 Gaylord, 18
 Geese, 472
 Geiman, 361, 365, 716
 Geitler, 223
 Gelatinous substance, 40, 41
 Gelei, 48, 57, 727
 Geleiella, 683
 Gemmules, 145, 522, 524
Geneciorhynchus, 455
 aeschnae, 453, 455
 Genes, 34, 182, 183, 184, 185
 Genetics, 176-188
 Genotypes, 179
 Geographical distribution of Protozoa, 17, 24
 Geophiles, 448
 Gerda, 685
 Gerris, 281
 Giardia, 313
 intestinalis, 13, 139, 313, 314
 lamblia, 313
 muris, 139, 314
Gibbula adamsoni, 457
 divaricata, 457
 rarilineata, 457
 Giese, 38, 643
 Gigantism, 94, 95, 643
 Gigantochloris, 220
 permaxima, 219, 220
Gigantomonas, 61, 306-307
 herculea, 307
 Gilmore, 509
 Glaser, 18, 712, 715
Glaucoma, 30, 99, 128, 180, 611
 ficaria, 23
 pyriformis, 29, 91, 97
 scintillans, 23, 127, 611
 vorax, 610
Glenodiniopsis, 248
Glenodinium, 100, 248
 cinctum, 247, 249
 edax, 247, 249
 neglectum, 247, 249
 pulvisculum, 247, 249
 uliginosum, 247, 249
Globigerina, 404
 bulloides, 404
Globigerinidae, 404
Globorotalia, 404
Globorotaliidae, 404
Gloeomonas, 220
 ovalis, 219, 220
Glossatella, 685
 tintinnabulum, 685, 686
Glossina morsitans, 276
 palpalis, 274, 275
 tachinoides, 274, 275
Glossosiphonia complanata, 449
 Gluge, 14
 Glugea, 539
 anomala, 537, 539
 hertwigi, 535, 537, 539
 mülleri, 539
 Glugea cyst, 28, 535, 537, 539
 Glycera, 439
 Glycogenous substance, 25, 26, 37, 98-99, 355, 366, 721
 Glyptotermes, 304, 306
 parvulus, 306
 Gnats, 370
 Goat, 299, 364, 470, 471, 655, 656, 657
 Goebel, 151
 Goethard, 251
 Goldfish, 280, 285
 Goldfuss, 11
 Golgi, 14, 57
 Golgi apparatus, 67, 68-70, 71, 720
Goniodoma, 259
 acuminata, 259, 260
Gonium, 33, 147, 228
 formosum, 227, 228
 pectorale, 227, 228
 sociale, 227, 228
 Gonocyte, 254
Gonospora, 438
 minchini, 437, 438, 439
Gonostomum, 670
 strenuum, 669, 670
Gonyaulax, 100, 259-260
 apiculata, 260, 261
 polyedra, 260
Gonyostomum, 243
 semen, 243
 Goodrich, 429, 449

- Gorilla, 663
 Granata, 136
 Grassé, 67, 70, 131, 321
 Grassi, 489
 Gravity on Protozoa, 115
 Gray, 111
 Greeley, 19
 Greenwood, 88, 89
 Gregaloid colony, 147
 Gregarina, 53, 70, **443-444**
 blattarum, 140, 166, *443*, **444**
 locustae, *443*, *444*
 oviceps, *443*, *444*
 Gregarines, 14, 65, 70, **429**
 Gregarinida, 54, 99, 145, **428-462**, 466
 Gregarinidae, 440, **443-445**
 Gregory, 165
 Gromia, 85, 86, **374-375**, 398
 fluvialis, *375*, *376*
 nigricans, *375*, *376*
 ovoidea, *375*, *376*
 Gromiidae, 374-378
 Gros, 14, 364
 Gross, 251
 Grosse-Allerman, 170
 Grouse, 266
 Growth factors, 98
 Growth stimulants, 98
 Gruber, 170, 575, 602
 Gruberia, 643
 calkinsi, *642*, *643*
 Gruby, 14
 Gruithuisen, 11
 Guinea pig, 299, 364, 480, 606, 607, 659
Gryllotalpa gryllotalpa, 290
Gryllus abbreviatus, 444, 445
 americanus, 444
 pennsylvanicus, 445
Gunda segmentata, 556
 Gurleya, 539
 richardi, *537*, *539*
 Guthrie, 600
 Guttuliniidae, 341
 Guyenotia, 533
 sphaerulosa, *532*, *533*
 Gymnodiniidae, 248, **251-254**
 Gymnodinioidae, 248-257
 Gymnodinioides, 632, 635
 calkinsi, 633
 Gymnodinium, 78, 100, 249, **251**
 aeruginosum, *252*, *253*
 agile, *252*, *253*
 palustre, *252*, *253*
 rotundatum, *252*, *253*
 Gymnonympha, 324
 Gymnophrys, 333
 Gymnospore, 455
 Gymnostomata, 62, 551, **560-592**
 Gynotermone, 151
Gyrinus natalor, 451
 Gyrocoris, 640
 Gyrodinium, 249, **253**
 biconicum, *252*, *253*
 hyalinum, *252*, *253*
 Gyromonas, 314
 ambulans, *312*, *314*

H

 Haas, 567
 Habitats of Protozoa, 17-31
 free-living, 17-24
 coprozoic, 20-21
 katharobic, 20
 mesosaprobic, 20
 oligosaprobic, 20
 polysaprobic, 20
 sapropelic, 20
 Haeckel, 5, 12, 33, 53
Haemaphysalis leachi, 503
 Haematin, 98
 Haematochrome, 78-79, 80, 218
 Haematococcus, 11, 218
 pluvialis, 78, 98, *101*, 139, **218**, *219*
 Haemoglobinuric fever, 502, 504
 Haemogregarina, 480
 stepanowi, 480, *481*
 Haemogregarinidae, 196, **477**, 480-482
 Haemoproteidae, **486**, 499-502
 Haemoproteus, 15, 488, 500
 columbae, *499*, *500*
 lophortyx, 500
 Haemosporidia, 196, **428**, 484-506
 Haemozoin, 105-106, 489
 Hahnert, 714
 Hake, 14
 Hakansson, 179
 Halberstaedter, 117
 Hale, 19
 Halibut, 520, 524
 wormy, 520, 524
 Halkyardia, 403
 radiata, 404
 Halkyardiidae, 403
 Hall, 24, 71, 93, 97, 98, 136, 138, 144, 241
 Hallezia, 703
 brachypoda, 703, *704*
 Halteria, 21, **652**
 grandinella, *652*, *653*
 var. *chlorelligera*, *652*, *653*
 cirrifera, *652*, *653*
 Halteriidae, 652-653
 Halteridium, 500
 Hanging-drop preparation, 719-720
 Hantkenina, 403
 alabamensis, 402
 Hantkeninidae, 403
 Haploid, 139-141, 154, 165-166
 Haplosporidia, 507, **510-513**
 Haplosporidian cyst, 513
 Haplosporidium, 511
 chitonis, *511*, *512*
 heterocirri, 512

- Haplosporidium*—*continued*
limnodrili, 136, 511, 512
nemertis, 512
scolopli, 512
vejvodskii, 512
Haplozoon, 146, 256
clymenellae, 255, 256
Haptophrya, 65, 555
michiganensis, 76, 555, 556
virginiensis, 555
Haptophryidae, 552, 555–557
Hardcastle, 470
Hardin, 22, 272
Hardy, 357
Harpacticus gracilis, 635
Harpalus pennsylvanicus erythropus, 444
Harris, 11
Harting, 11
Hartmann, M., 138, 161, 168, 350, 351
Hartmannella, 131, 350
hyalina, 350
Hartmannula, 587
entzi, 587
Harvey, 95
Hastatella, 683
aesculacantha, 684
Hatt, 455, 456, 457
Hauschka, 166, 479
Hayes, 37, 64, 125
Hedriocystis, 414
reticulata, 414, 415
Hegner, 8, 170, 178, 495, 638, 714
Heidenhain, 37
Heidt, 99
Heinsius, 251
Heleopera, 388
petricola, 387, 388
Helicosporidia, 515, 542–543
Helicosporidium, 543
parasiticum, 543
Helicostoma, 621
buddenbrocki, 620, 621
Heliochona, 682
scheuteni, 681, 682
sessilis, 681, 682
Heliozoa, 12, 20, 33, 40, 42, 73, 406–415
Helix, 14, 285, 479
Helodrilus caliginosus, 434, 552
foetidus, 432, 433, 434
longus, 432, 434
Helops striatus, 451
Hemicycliostylis, 670
sphagni, 669, 670
Hemidactylum scutatum, 555
Hemidinium, 253
nasutum, 252, 253
Hemiophrys, 580
Hemispeira, 628
asteriasi, 627, 628
Hemispeiropsis, 628
comatulae, 628
Hemitubifex benedii, 533
Hemixis, 165
Henderson, 353
Henlea leptodera, 437
Henneguy, 647
Henneguya, 530
exilis, 520, 529, 530
mictospora, 531
psorospermica, 529, 530
Henry, 471, 472
Henschelia, 449
thalassemiae, 448, 449
Hepatozoon, 480–482
muris, 479, 482
Heredity, 176–188
Herf, 103
Hericia hericia, 543
Herman, 501, 506
Herpetomonas, 273, 282
drosophilae, 281, 282
muscae-domesticae, 282
muscarum, 281, 282
Herpetophrya, 554
astomata, 554
Herpobdella atomaria, 479
Herrings, 473
Hertel, 117
Hertwig, 37, 164
Heterakis gallinae, 266
Heteranthera dubia, 342
Heterocirrus viridis, 512
Heterodinium, 259
scrippsi, 258, 259
Heterohelicidae, 402
Heteronema, 242
acus, 20, 240, 242
mutabile, 240, 242
Heterophrys, 410
glabrescens, 411
myriopoda, 410, 411
Heterophryidae, 407, 410–411
Heterotricha, 636–650
Heterotrophic nutrition, 84–92
Hewer, 72
Hewitt, 495
Hexacantium, 422
asteracanthion, 422
Hexaconus, 421
serratus, 421
Hexactinomyxon, 533
psammoryctis, 532, 533
Hexalaspidae, 421
Hexamastix, 300
batrachorum, 300, 301
termopsis, 300
Hexamita, 312
cryptocerci, 312, 313
inflata, 20, 46, 312
intestinalis, 312–313
meleagridis, 313
periplanetae, 313
salmonis, 139, 312, 313
Hexamitidae, 312–315

- Hickson, 546
 Hieronymus, 151
 Hill, 11
 Hippocampus, 528
 Hirmocystis, 444
 harpali, 444, 446
 termitis, 444, 446
 Histiobalantium, 619
 nalans, 619, 620
 semisetatum, 619, 620
 Histiona, 270
 zachariasii, 271
 Histological changes, 26, 27, 28
 Histomonas, 266
 meleagridis, 265, 266, 368
 History of Protozoology, 10-16
 Histozioc Protozoa, 26
 Histrio, 668
 Hoare, 179, 364
Hodotermes mossambicus, 307
 Hogue, 309, 715
 Hold-fast organellae, 65-66
 Holmes, 282
 Holomastigotes, 70, 318
 elongatum, 318, 319
 Holomastigotidae, 318-320
 Holomastigotoides, 319
 hartmanni, 319
 Holophrya, 23, 567
 simplex, 567, 570
 Holophryidae, 560, 567-576
 Holophryoides, 577
 ovalis, 577, 578
 Holophytic nutrition, 5, 84, 92-93,
 99, 194
 Holosticha, 673
 hymenophora, 673
 vernalis, 673
 Holothuria, 440, 628
 nigra, 440
 Holotricha, 47, 196, 551-635
 Holozioc nutrition, 5, 84-92, 194
 Homalogastra, 617
 setosa, 616, 617
 Homalozoon, 562
 vermiculare, 561, 562
Homarus gammarus, 457
 Homotrema, 405
 Homotremidae, 405
 Honey bees, 365, 537
 Hopkins, 104
 Hoplonympha, 322
 natalor, 322
 Hoplonymphidae, 322-324
 Hoplitophrya, 557
 secans, 558
 Hormones in Protozoa, 151
 Horning, 71, 72
 Horse, 277, 278, 299, 364, 510, 577,
 578, 605, 607, 660, 661, 663, 705
 Horuváth, 729
 Hosts, 25
 Howland, 38, 90, 103
 Huff, 487, 501, 502
 Hulpieu, 103
 Human Protozoa, *see* Man
 Hutchinson, 9
 Huygens, 11
 Hyaline cap, 39, 108, 110
 layer, 39, 110
 Hyalobryon, 22, 146, 208
 ramosum, 207, 208
 Hyalodiscus, 334
 rubicundus, 332, 334
 Hyalogonium, 194, 221-222
 klebsii, 221, 222
 Hyaloklossia, 468
 pelsenieri, 468
Hyalomma aegyptium, 281
 Hyalosphenia, 44, 381
 papilio, 380, 381
 Hyalospira, 635
 caridinae, 635
 Hyalospira, 444
 affinis, 444
Hybopsis kentuckiensis, 530
 Hybridization, 182-184, 185-186
 Hydaticus, 455
 Hydatina, 513
 Hydra, 25-26, 370, 672
Hydractinia echinata, 620
 Hydramoeba, 29, 30, 351, 370
 hydroxena, 25, 140, 369, 370
 Hydrogen-ion concentration, 22-24,
 90, 98, 102, 252
Hydrophilus piceus, 455, 707
Hydroporus palustris, 480
 Hydrostatic organellae, 54, 87, 100
 Hydrous, 452
 ceraboides, 451
 Hydrurus, 146, 210-211
 foetidus, 79, 209, 212
 Hyla, 547, 692
 pickeringi, 548
 regilla, 548
 versicolor, 160, 547, 645
 Hyman, 109
 Hymenomonas, 205
 roseola, 205, 206
 Hymenostomata, 551, 608-621
 Hyperammia, 395, 398
 subnodosa, 397, 398
 Hyperamminidae, 398
 Hypermastigina, 25, 45, 61, 85, 91,
 103, 131, 195, 263, 318-326
 Hyperparasitism, 538
 Hypocoma, 629
 acinetarum, 627, 629
 cardii, 629
 patellarum, 627, 629
 Hypocomididae, 623, 629
 Hypocomides, 629
 zyrphaeae, 629
 Hypocone, 245
 Hypostomata, 560, 585-592
 Hypothallus, 337

Hypotheca, 245
 Hypotricha, 50, 636, 668-679
 Hypotrichidium, 670
 conicum, 670, 671
 Hysteroconeta, 625
 eiseniae, 625
 Hysteroconetidae, 623, 624-626

I

Ichthyophthirius, 29, 54, 99, 567-568
 multifiliis, 26, 568-569
 Ichthyosporidium, 513
 giganteum, 510-511, 513
 hertwigi, 513
Ictalurus furcatus, 528
 punctatus, 520, 530
 Idiochromatin, 37
 Idionympha, 324
 perissa, 323, 324
 Iduna, 586
Idyaea furcata, 631
 Ileonema, 52, 196, 574
 ciliata, 574, 575
 disper, 574, 575
 Immortality, 167
 Immunity, 28-29, 491
 Incidence of *Entamoeba histolytica*,
 356-357
 Incubation period of malaria, 488-
 489
 Independent assortment, 182, 183
 Indirect nuclear division, 130-142
 Infusoria, 11
 Inman, 117
 Insects, 267, 280, 282, 290, 299, 361,
 365, 370, 430, 432, 438, 440, 443,
 444, 445, 446, 447, 450, 451, 452,
 453, 454, 455, 459, 460, 461, 462,
 477, 480, 537, 539, 540, 542, 543,
 617
 Intoshellina, 65, 557
 poljanskii, 556, 557
 Intoshellinidae, 552, 557-559
 Iodamoeba, 99, 365-366
 bütschlii, 25, 360, 361, 366, 723
 suis, 366
 williamsi, 366
 Iodine cyst, 366
 Iodinophilous vacuole, 99, 516
 Irritability, 113-118
 Isogametes, 150, 154
 Isogamy, 150, 151
 Isolation pedigree cultures, 167, 168,
 178
 Isopoda, 630
 Isoptera, 8
 Isospora, 473
 bigemina, 471, 474
 felis, 475, 476
 hominis, 471, 473-474
 lacazei, 475
 lieberkühni, 475, 476

Isospora—continued
 revolta, 471, 475
 suis, 475
 Isotricha, 605
 intestinalis, 54, 606
 prostoma, 54, 606
 Isotrichidae, 593, 605-606
 Isselina, 555
 Ivanic, 122
Ixodes ricinus, 504

J

Jacobson, 57
 Jahn, 18, 93, 103, 235, 236
 James, 29, 486, 487, 490
 Jameson, 166
 Janda, 30
 Janicki, 66, 315
 Janickiella, 304
 Janus green B, 71, 104, 720
 red, 71
 Jarrina, 473
 paludosa, 471, 473
 Jennings, 7, 106, 114, 115, 116, 117,
 118, 154, 157, 169, 170, 178, 181,
 184, 187, 642
 Jensen, 115
 Jepps, 179
 Jirovec, 30, 57
 Joblot, 11
 Joenia, 322
 annectens, 321, 322
 Joenina, 322
 pulchella, 322
 Joenopsis, 322
 polytricha, 322
 John, 718
 Johnson, D. F., 79
 Johnson, L. P., 24, 233, 235
 Johnson, W. H., 97, 603
 Jollos, 37, 179
 Joseph, 117
 Joyet-Lavergne, 70, 72
 Juncus, 342

K

Kahl, 51, 64, 65, 569, 571, 572, 575,
 585, 597, 615, 643, 644, 652, 691
 Kahlia, 670
 acrobates, 670, 671
 Kala azar, 15, 282, 283
 Kalmus, 103
 Kalotermes, 304
 brevicollis, 310
 clevelandi, 315
 emersoni, 315
 flavicollis, 321, 322
 hubbardi, 306
 insularis, 306
 minor, 324
 simplicicornis, 320, 323, 324
 Karyolysus, 482
 lacertarum, 479, 482

Karyomastigont, 302, 315
 Karyophore, 54, 605, 648
 Karyosome, 34
 Katharobic Protozoa, 20
 Kean, 509
 Keilin, 542
 Kent, 687, 691
 Kentrochona, 682
 nebaliae, 681, 682
 Kentrochonopsis, 682
 Kentrophoros, 582
 fasciolatum, 581, 582
 Kephyrion, 203
 ovum, 202, 203
 Kepner, 350
 Kerona, 11, 672
 polyporum, 25, 672, 673
 Keronopsis, 672
 rubra, 672, 673
 Keramosphaera, 401
 Keramosphaeridae, 400
 Kessel, 358, 359
 Khainsky, 89
 Khawkina, 80, 194, 236
 halli, 98, 236
 ocellata, 236
 Kidder, 56, 57, 65, 74, 90, 94, 127,
 129, 136, 148, 168, 552, 611, 612,
 615, 624, 626, 715
 Kilbourne, 14
 Kimball, 7, 123, 156, 157, 184, 186,
 187
 Kinetonucleus, 67
 King, 76
 Kingsbury, 72
 Kinoplasm, 53, 54
 Kirby, 62, 67, 87, 92, 131, 136, 293,
 296, 303, 304, 306, 307, 311, 588,
 597, 598, 640, 647
 Kirbyella, 302
 Kissing bug, 277
 Kitching, 103
 Kite, 38
 Klebs, 18, 194
 Klein, 48, 50, 57, 65, 729
 Kloss, 14
 Klossia, 479
 helicina, 14, 479
 Klossiella, 480
 cobayae, 480
 muris, 479, 480
 Knop's solution, 714
 Kœh, 364
 Kofoid, 38, 47, 66, 67, 130, 131, 132,
 144, 246, 251, 260, 261, 277, 654,
 655
 Kofoidella, 554
 eleutheriae, 553, 554
 Kofoidia, 324
 loriculata, 324, 325
 Kofoidiidae, 324
 Kofoidina, 441
 ovata, 441

Kolkwitz, 20
 Kölliker, 14
 Koltzoff, 53
 Konsuloff, 546
 Korschikoffia, 221
 guttula, 221
 Kreyella, 595
 Krijgsman, 111, 287
 Krüger, 64, 65
 Kudo, 8, 36, 54, 123, 127, 144, 350,
 457, 568
 Kuenen, 357, 358, 359
 Kühn, 19
 Kumm, 29
 Kunstler, 62, 293
 Kusch, 29
 Kylin, 78

L

Labyrinthomyxa, 330
 sauvageaui, 330, 331
 Labyrinthula, 329
 cienkowski, 329, 331
 macrocystis, 329-330
 Labyrinthulidae, 329-330
 Lacerta, 290
 muralis, 482
 Lachmann, 12
 Lachmannella, 65, 556
 recurva, 556
 Lackey, 20, 138
 Lacrymaria, 20, 572
 coronata, 572, 573
 lagenula, 572, 573
 olor, 21, 572, 573
 Lada, 626
 Ladopsis, 625
 Laelaps echidninus, 482
 Lagena, 402
 striata, 402
 Lagenaria cougourda, 542
 Lagenidae, 401
 Lagenoeca, 271
 ovata, 271
 Lagenophryidae, 690, 691-692
 Lagenophrys, 691
 labiata, 690, 692
 patina, 690, 692
 vaginicola, 690, 692
 Lagynophrya, 567
 mutans, 567, 570
 Laidlaw, 717
 Lambliia, 313
 Lambornella, 612
 stegomyiae, 609, 612
 Laminaria lejolisii, 330
 Lampoxanthium, 421
 pandora, 421, 422
 Lamprodrilus, 558, 559
 Lampropeltis getulus, 365
 Lampsilis cariosa, 624
 radiata, 624
 Landacre, 218

- Lankester, 38
 Lankesterella, 476
 minima, 476-477
 Lankesteria, 438
 culicis, 429, 430-431, 438
 Larcoidae, 423
Lasea rubra, 457
 Lauterborn, 20
 Laveran, 14, 28, 180
Laverania malariae, 492
 Lebour, 248
 Lecanophrya, 700
 drosera, 700, 701
 Lechriopyla, 56, 61, 597
 mystax, 597
 Lecudina, 441
 pellucida, 441, 443
 Lecudinidae, 440, 441-442
 Lecythion, 449
 thalassemiae, 448, 449
 Lecythium, 42, 377
 hyalinum, 377
 Leeches, 279, 449, 476, 479, 480
 Leewenhoek, 10-11, 13
 Legendrea, 562
 bellerophon, 561, 562
 Léger, 196, 501, 502
 Legerella, 480
 hydropori, 479, 480
 Legeria, 455
 agilis, 453, 455
 Leidy, 12
 Leidyana, 445
 erratica, 445, 446
 Leidyaniidae, 441, 445
 Leidyonella, 324
 Leidyopsis, 324
 Leishman, 15
 Leishmania, 8, 15, 26, 28, 33, 273,
 282-283, 716
 brasiliensis, 71, 284
 donovani, 26, 98, 283-284
 infantum, 283
 tropica, 98, 102, 282, 284
 Leishmaniasis, 28, 282, 283, 284
 Lembadion, 610
 bullinum, 609, 610
 Lembus, 620
 Lentospora, 528
Lepidosiren paradoxa, 529
 Lepismatophila, 446
 thermobiae, 446, 447
 Lepocinclis, 236
 Lepomis, 531
 humilis, 523
 Leptochlamys, 382
 ampullacea, 382, 383
 Leptodactylidae, 8
 Leptodactylus, 527
Leptodiscus medusoides, 261, 262
 Leptomonas, 273, 281
 ctenocephalis, 281
 Leptopharynx, 595
 Leptospirolympha, 320
 eupora, 319, 320
 Leptotheca, 521
 ohlmacheri, 164, 521, 522
Lepus cuniculus, 279
 domesticus, 279
 Lernaephrya, 696
 capitata, 696, 697
 Lesquereusia, 44, 381
 spiralis, 380, 381
 Leucine, 105
Leuciscus rutilus, 530
 Leuckart, 14
 Leucocytozoon, 488, 500
 anatis, 500, 501
 simondi, 500-502
 Leucophrys, 610
 patella, 157, 609, 610-611
 Leucosin, 100
Leucotermes flaviceps, 320
 Levine, 639
 Levinsohn, 90
 Lewis, 14
Libinia dubia, 442
 Liceidae, 340
 Licnophora, 649
 conklini, 650
 macfarlandi, 649, 650
 Lichnophoridae, 636, 649-650
 Lieberkühn, 53
 Lieberkühnia, 42, 85, 86, 376
 wagneri, 21, 376, 377
 Liesche, 142
 Life-cycle of
 Actipylea, 418, 419
 Adelea ovata, 478
 Aggregata eberthi, 466-467
 Apostomea, 630, 631
 Avian Plasmodium, 488
 Babesia bigemina, 503-504
 Chromulina, 201
 Chrysomonadina, 201
 Coccidia, 464-465, 466-467, 478,
 481
 Discorbis petalliformis, 396, 397
 Eimeria schubergi, 464-465
 Elphidium crista, 396, 397-398
 Entamoeba histolytica, 355
 Eudorina elegans, 151, 153
 Eugregarinina, 429, 430-431
 Foraminifera, 395-398, 401
 Gregarinida, 429, 430-431, 457-458
 Haemogregarina stepanowi, 480,
 481
 Haemoproteus columbae, 499
 Haemosporidia, 484-486, 499, 501,
 503
 Haplosporidia, 510-511
 Helicosporidia, 542-543
 Ichthiosporidium giganteum, 510-
 511
 Lankesteria culicis, 429, 430-431
 Leucocytozoon simondi, 501

- Life-cycle of—*continued*
 Microsporidia, 149, 535–536
 Mycetozoa, 335–337
 Myxosporidia, 517–520
Nyctotherus cordiformis, 160, 161
Pandorina morum, 151, 153
Peneroptis pertusus, 401
 Phytomonadina, 151, 152, 153
 Plasmodium of bird, 488
Plasmodium vivax, 484–486
 Radiolaria, 418–419
Schizocystis gregarinoides, 457–458
Schizogregarinaria, 457–458
Sphaeromyxa sabrazesi, 517–520
Spirillina vivipara, 395–396
Spirophrya subparasitica, 631
Stempellia magna, 535–536
Stephanosphaera pluvialis, 151, 152
Tetramitus rostratus, 295
Thelohania legeri, 149
Trypanosoma gambiense, 274–275
 lewisii, 274
- Light stimuli, 117
 Light on Protozoa, 19–20, 38
 Ligniera, 342
 Lillie, 171
 Lilly, 94, 97
Limax amoebae, 29, 44, 45, 109
Limax marginatus, 475
Limnodrilus, 541
 arenarius, 557
 claparedeanus, 542
 hoffmeisteri, 533
 udekermanianus, 511, 532, 533
- Lin, 359
 Lindner, 600
 Linear colony, 146
Lineus bilineatus, 512
 Linkage, 183
Liocephalus liopygus, 439
Lionotus, 21, 70, 580
 fasciola, 18, 21, 157, 580, 581
 Lipoid substance, 48, 69, 71
Liponyssus saurarum, 482
Lipotropha, 461
 macrospora, 461
 Lister, 395
Lithobius forficatus, 449, 464, 470, 477
 mutabilis, 477
- Lithocircus*, 423
 magnificus, 423
Lithocolla, 409
 globosa, 410, 411
Lithocollidae, 407, 409–410
Lithocystis, 438
 brachycercus, 438, 439
Littorina rudis, 555
 Litmus, 88, 90
Lituola, 399
 nautiloidea, 399
Lituolidae, 398
 Lizard, 477, 482
Lobitermes longicollis, 311
- Lobomonas*, 219
 rostrata, 219, 220
Lobopodia, 42, 44
Lobster, 459, 466
 Locke's solution, 717
 Locomotor organellae, 41–52
 Loefer, 22, 24, 93
 Löhner, 102
 Lösch, 14, 356
Loftusia, 399
Loftusiidae, 399
Loligo, 555
 Longitudinal body fibrils, 58–61
 flagellum, 245, 246
 Long-lasting modification, 180–181
 Looper, 25, 370, 409
Lophius piscatoris, 535
Lophocephalus, 451
 insignis, 450, 451
Lophomonadidae, 320–322
Lophomonas, 62, 320
 blattarum, 25, 66, 67, 134, 139, 148,
 320–321, 716
 striata, 25, 139, 144, 321, 716
Lophortyx, 500
Lophura i. igniti, 498
 Lorica, 39–40, 41, 65
 Loricata, 683, 690–692
Loripes lacteus, 628
 Louttit, 179
Loxocephalus, 127, 613
 plagiatus, 613, 614
Loxodes, 77, 584
 magnus, 583, 584
 vorax, 583, 584
Loxodidae, 76, 580, 584
Loxophyllum, 580–581
 meleagris, 581–582
 setigerum, 581, 582
- Lucas, 56, 607
 Luce, 105
Lucilia, 282, 361
 caesar, 361
 Lugol's solution, 45, 99, 366, 721
Lumbricus castaneus, 432, 433
 rubellus, 432, 434, 558
 terrestris, 432, 433, 552,
 558
 variegatus, 460, 557, 559
- Luminescence, 100, 251
 Lund, E. E., 56, 57, 58
 Lund, E. J., 102, 144
 Lung-fish, 529
 Luntz, 117
 Lwoff, 30, 57, 94, 96, 97, 98, 623, 630
Lycogala, 340
 miniaturum, 339
Lycogalidae, 340
Lymnaea stagnalis, 703
 Lynch, J. E., 56, 61, 596
 Lynch, R. S., 364

- Lynchia brunea*, 500
 capensis, 500
 hirsuta, 500
 lividicolor, 500
Lytechinus variegatus, 605
- M**
- Macacus nemestrinus*, 308
 rhesus, 19, 309, 310
 MacArthur, 30
 MacBride, 72
 MacCallum, 15
 MacDougall, 56, 117, 166, 181, 588
 Macfie, 361
 Machadoella, 462
 triatomae, 461, 462
Machilis cylindrica, 444
 Mackerel, 473
 Mackinnon, 460
 MacLennan, 56, 61, 76, 99, 127, 568,
 655, 657, 692
Macoma balthica, 624
 Macrogamete, 150, 465, 467, 478,
 481, 484
 Macrogametocyte, 465, 467, 478, 481,
 484
Macrohodotermes massambicus, 318
 Macromastix, 294
 lapsa, 294
 Macronucleus, 34, 37, 122-130, 545
 Macrospironympha, 320
 xylopletha, 319, 320
 Macrotrichomonas, 306
 pulchra, 305, 306
 Magath, 474
 Mal de Caderas, 278
 Malacophrys, 612
 rotans, 609, 612
 Malacostraca, 256
 Malaria, 27, 486-495
 aestivo-autumnal, 492-493
 benign tertian, 491-492
 malignant tertian, 492-493
 mild tertian, 494-495
 Ovale tertian, 494-495
 quartan, 493-494
 subtertian, 492-493
 tertian, 491-492
 Malarial organisms, 14, 484-499
 Mallard duck, 501
 Malomonas, 47, 100, 203
 litmosa, 202, 203
 Malmsten, 14
 Man, Protozoa in,
 Balantidium coli, 638-639
 Chilomastix mesnili, 298-299
 Dientamoeba fragilis, 368
 Endolimax nana, 367
 Entamoeba coli, 361-363
 gingivalis, 363-364
 histolytica, 354-361
 Enteromonas hominis, 298
 Giardia intestinalis, 313
 Man, Protozoa in—continued
 Iodamoeba bütschlii, 365-366
 Isospora hominis, 473-474
 Leishmania brasiliensis, 284
 donovani, 283-284
 tropica, 284
 Plasmodium falciparum, 492-493
 malariae, 493-494
 ovale, 494-495
 vivax, 491-492
 Retortamonas intestinalis, 291
 Sarcocystis lindemanni, 509-510
 Trichomonas elongata, 309
 hominis, 308-309
 vaginalis, 309
 Trypanosoma cruzi, 276-277
 gambiense, 273-275
 rhodesiense, 275-276
 Manifold, 509
 Manwell, 674
 Manz, 510
 Margarita, 340
 Margaritidae, 340
Margaropus annulatus, 503
 Marginal cirri, 49, 50
 Marsson, 20
 Marsupiogaster, 242
 picta, 240, 243
 striata, 240, 242
 Martin, 247, 248, 253, 257, 259
 Martini, 170
 Maryna, 65, 594
 socialis, 594
 Marynidae, 593, 594-595
 Massive nucleus, 35-37, 546
 Massartia, 254
 nieuportensis, 252, 254
 Mast, 11, 39, 44, 65, 72, 76, 80, 87,
 90, 91, 94, 105, 109, 110, 117, 713
 Mastigamoeba, 20, 264
 aspera, 264
 hylae, 265
 longifilum, 264
 setosa, 264, 265
 Mastigamoebidae, 263-267
 Mastigella, 265
 vitrea, 264, 265
 Mastigina, 264
 Mastigophora, 6, 12, 38, 73, 117, 193,
 198-316, 330
 Mastigosphaera, 65, 225, 230
 gobii, 230
Mastotermes darwiniensis, 295, 326
 Mathis, 501, 502
 Mating behavior, 156
 types, 7, 122, 155-156, 157,
 158, 166, 184, 185, 186
 Mattesia, 460
 dispora, 460, 461
 Maupas, 13, 157, 161, 167
 Maupasella, 65, 557
 nova, 557, 558
 Maurer's dots, 489

- McDonald, 56
 McGuire, 350
 McNeal, 15, 716
 Mechanical stimuli, 114-115
 Media, culture, 283, 358, 712-719
 Medusetta, 425
 ansata, 425
 Medusettidae, 425
 Medusochloris, 224
 phiale, 224
Megacyclops viridis, 541, 542
 Megalospheric generation, 395
 proloculum, 395
 Meglitsch, 353
 Meiosis, 165-166, 467, 468
 Melanin, 105
 Melanosome, 80, 249
 Meleney, 179, 355, 358, 361, 718
 Melolontha, 299, 455
Melophagus ovinus, 278
 Membrane,
 cell, 39
 nuclear, 34
 Membranella, 50, 51, 57
 basal plate, 50
 fiber, 50, 56, 57
 fiber plate, 50, 56, 57
 Membranosorus, 342
 Mendelian inheritance, 182-186
 Menoidium, 241
 incurvum, 68, 139, 144, 240, 241
 tortuosum, 241
 Menospora, 447
 polyacantha, 447, 448
 Menosporidae, 441, 447
 Mercier, 154, 353
 Merganser, red-breasted, 501
Mergus serrator, 501
 Merocystis, 468
 kathae, 140, 468, 469
 Merogregarina, 459
 amaroucii, 459
 Meroselenidium, 462
 keilini, 461, 462
 Merozoite, 464, 484
Mesenchytraeus flavus, 512
 Mesnil, 28
 Mesnilella, 559
 clavata, 558, 559
 rostrata, 558, 559
 Mesodinium, 563
 acarus, 564
 pulex, 21, 564
 Mesojoenia, 322
 decipiens, 322
 Mesosaprobic Protozoa, 20
 Mesozoa, 515
 Metabolism, 33-34
 Metachromatic granules, 101
 Metacineta, 700
 mystacina, 21, 700, 701
 Metacoronympha, 315
 senta, 315, 316
 Metacystidae, 560, 563
 Metacystis, 563
 truncata, 563, 564
 Metadevescovina, 306
 debilis, 66, 139, 305, 306
 Metadinium, 657
 medium, 657, 658
 Metalnikoff, 89
 Metalnikov, 168
 Metamera, 449
 reynoldsi, 449
 schubergi, 448, 449
 Metaphrya, 552-554
 sagittae, 553, 554
 Metaradiophrya, 558
 asymmetrica, 558
 lumbrici, 558
 Metazoa, compared with Protozoa,
 5, 6
 Metcalf, 8, 546, 547
 Methyl green, 35, 721
 Methylene blue, 720
 Metopidae, 636, 640-641
 Metopus, 56, 65, 640
 circumlakens, 640, 641
 es, 102, 161, 162, 640, 641
 fuscus, 640, 641
 sigmoides, 640
 straitus, 640, 641
Metridium marginatum, 630
 Metschnikoff, 89
 Metzner, 117
 Meyer, 101
 Michelson, 601
 Microcometes, 376
 paludosa, 375, 376
 Microcorycia, 384
 flava, 383, 384
 Microcyst, 337
 Microfolliculina, 647
 limnoriae, 647
 Microgamete, 150, 196, 465, 467, 478,
 481, 484
 Microgametocyte, 465, 467, 478, 481,
 484
 Microgromia, 376
 socialis, 375, 376
 Microjoenia, 322
 pyriformis, 322
Microlynchia fusilla, 500
 Micron, 33
 Micronucleus, 34, 122, 129, 136, 546
Micropterus dolomieu, 696
 salmoideus, 531
 Microregma, 196, 572
 auduboni, 572-573
 Microrhopalodina, 302
 Microscopical examination, 719-729
 Microspheric generation, 395
 proloculum, 395
 Microspirotrichonympha, 320
 ovalis, 319, 320
 porteri, 319, 320

- Microsporidia, 10, 14, 28, 34, 66, 515,
 535-542
 Microsporidian cyst, 28
 Microsporidiosis, 10
Microstomus pacificus, 521
Microtermes hispaniolae, 353
 panamaensis, 353
 Microthorax, 595
 simulans, 594, 595
 Microvelia, 281
 Miescher's tube, 507, 508
 Milam, 29
 Miliolidae, 400
 Milk weeds, 281, 282
 Minchin, 34, 67
 Minnows, 27
 Mites, 482, 543
 Mitosis, 122, **130-142**
 Mitrastora, 523
 elongata, 523
 Mixotricha, 295
 paradoxa, 295
 Mixotrophic nutrition, 93-94
 Mobilia, 683, **692-693**
 Modifications, long-lasting, 180-181
Modiola modiolus, 626
 Moewus, 150, 151, 166, 176, 182, 183
 Mole, 475
Molgula manhattensis, 696
 Molisch, 19
 Mollusca, 285, 350, 457, 466, 467,
 475, 479, 511, 513, 555, 576, 601,
 618, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628,
 629, 650, 685
 Monadidae, 268, **287-289**
 Monas, 21, 47, 111, **112, 287**
 elongata, 287, 288
 guttula, 287, 288
 socialis, 46, **287, 288**
 sociabilis, 287
 vestita, 287, 288
 Monera, **33, 333**
 Monkeys, 277, 308, 309, 357, 495
 Monocercomonas, 301
 bufonis, 300, 301
 Monochilum, 613
 frontatum, 613, 614
 Monocnidea, 536, **537-542**
 Monocystidae, 431-432
 Monocystis, 70, 72, 131, 136, 166, **431**
 lumbrici, 432, 433
 rostrata, 166
 ventrosa, 431-432, 433
 Monodinium, 563
 Monodontophrya, 557
 kijenskiji, 556, 557
 Monoductidae, 441, **445-447**
 Monoductus, 445
 lunatus, 445-446
 Monomastix, 574
 Monomonadina, 293
 Monophasic amoebae, 345, 714
 Monopylea, 420, **423-424**
 Monosiga, 269
 ovata, 269
 robusta, 269
 Monster formation, 94, 95, 643-644
 Moore, 205, 643
 Morgan, 171
 Morphology of Protozoa, 33-80
 Morphonemes, 54
 Morris, 353
 Mosquitoes, 430, 438, 461, 484, 486,
 487, 488, 489, 537, 539, 554, 612
 Motella, 528
 mustela, 313
 tricirrata, 313
 Motorium, 54, 55, 56, 60
 Mouse, 279, 299, 314, 364, 472, 475,
 480, 510
 Movement, 106-113
 by cilia, 111-113
 flagella, 110-111
 myonemes, 113
 pseudopodia, 106-110
Moxostoma breviceps, 530
 Mrazekia, 541
 caudata, 541
 Mrazekiella, 559
 intermedia, 558, 559
 Mrazekiidae, 537, **541-542**
 Mule, 277, 278, 578
 Müller, J., 12
 Müller, O. F., 11, 13, 309
 Müller's law, 418
 vesicle, **76-77, 584**
 Mulrow, 166
 Multicilia, 263
 lacustris, 263, 264
 marina, 263, 264
 Multiciliidae, 263
 Multifasciculatum, 705
 elegans, 705-706
 Multiple division, 144-145
Munia oryzivora, 279
Mus musculus, 277
 Musca, 282, 582
 domestica, 361
 Musgrave, 15
 Mutations, 117, 181
Mya arenaria, 576
Mycetobia pallipes, 543
 Mycetozoa, 34, 89, 90, 145, 195, 329,
 335-342
 Mycetothrix, 594
 erlangeri, 594, 595
 Myers, 395, 396, 397
 Mylestoma, 666-667
 bipartitum, 666, 667
 Mylestomidae, 665, **666-667**
 Myonemes, 52, **53-54, 113**
 Myophrisks, 54
 Myriapoda, 442, 447, 449, 454, 464,
 470, 477, 478
 Myriophryidae, 407, **414-415**

Myriophrys, 414-415
 paradoxa, 415
 Myriospora, 468
 trophoniae, 468
Mytilus edulis, 624, 626
 galloprovincialis, 457
 minimus, 457
 Myxamoeba, 335
 Myxidiidae, 526-528
 Myxidium, 526-527
 immersum, 527
 kudoii, 528
 liberkühni, 140, 146, 527
 lindoyense, 527
 serotinum, 140, 526, 527-528
 Myxobolidae, 99, 526, 530-531
 Myxobolus, 530
 conspicuus, 529, 530
 intestinalis, 27, 530
 orbiculatus, 529, 530
 pfeifferi, 141, 520, 529, 530
 squamosus, 529, 530
 Myxochrysis, 196, 205
 paradoxa, 204, 205
 Myxoflagellate, 337
 Myxogasteres, 335
 Myxomonas, 306, 307
 polymorpha, 307
 Myxomycetes, 335
 Myxophyllum, 624
 steenstrupi, 624, 625
 Myxoproteus, 521
 cordiformis, 521
 Myxosoma, 528
 catostomi, 130, 162, 528, 529
 cerebralis, 520, 529
 Myxosomatidae, 526, 528-530
 Myxosporidia, 9, 14, 27, 34, 65, 100,
 130, 145, 164, 515-531
 Myxosporidian cyst, 517
 Myxotheca, 42, 378
 arenilega, 377, 378

N

Nadinella, 388
 tenella, 387, 388
 Nagana, 9, 14, 277-278
 Nägler, 351
 Naegleria, 344
 Naiadaceae, 329
 Nassoidae, 423
 Nasonov, 69, 76
 Nassula, 70, 585
 aurea, 21, 585, 587
 Nassulidae, 585-586
Nasutitermes kirbyi, 300
Natrix cyclopion, 365
 rhombifer, 365
 sipedon, 365
 s. sipedon, 365
 Natural death, 166
 Navicula, 218
 Naville, 131, 154, 166, 460, 467, 518
Nebalia bipes, 256
 geoffroyi, 633, 682
 Nebela, 391
 collaris, 391, 392
 Necturus, 692
 Needham, 712
 Negri, 510
 Nelson, 718-719
 Nematocyst, 66, 257, 258
 Nematocystis, 432
 vermicularis, 432, 433
 Nematodinium, 66, 249
 partitum, 249, 250
 Nematopsis, 457
 legeri, 456, 457
 ostrearum, 457
 Nemeczek, 720
 Nemertinea, 438, 512
 Neoactinomyxum, 533
 globosum, 532, 533
 Neosporidia, 427
 Neotermes, 304
 connexus, 304
 erythraeus, 306
 greeni, 306
 simplicicornis, 302
Neotoma fuscipes macrotis, 277
 micropus micropus, 277
Nepa cinerea, 435, 460, 477
 Nephroselmidae, 213, 215-216
 Nephroselmis, 215
 olvacea, 214, 215
Nereis beaucourdrayi, 441
 cultrifera, 441
 Neresheimer, 44, 53
 Net-plasmodium, 329
 Neuromotor system or apparatus,
 54-57, 58-61, 113, 659
 Neurophanes, 53
 Neusina, 400
 Neusinidae, 400
 Neutral red, 69, 90, 358, 720
 Newt, 279
 Nicolle, 716
 Nicollella, 591
 ctenodactyli, 591, 592
 Nigrosin, 721
 Nina, 449
 gracilis, 140, 429, 430, 448, 449
 Nirenstein, 89, 90
Nitocra typica, 700
 N N N medium, 716
 Noctiluca, 11, 33, 135, 145, 251
 miliaris, 251
 scintillans, 71, 100, 250, 251
 Noctilucidae, 248, 251
 Noguchi, 282
 Noland, 102, 161, 569, 572, 575, 582,
 585, 618, 619, 640
 Nöller, 477
 Non-cellular organisms, 5
 Nonionidae, 402

- Nosema, 537
 anophelis, 537
 apis, 10, 537
 bombycis, 10, 14, 537
 bryozoides, 537
 cyclopis, 537
 lophii, 535
 notabilis, 525, 538
 Nosema-disease, 537
 Nosematidae, 537-541
 Notosolenus, 242
 apocamptus, 240, 242
 sinuatus, 240, 242
 Notropis blennius, 530
 cornutus, 530
 gilberti, 530
 Novy, 15, 716
 Nowikoff, 94
 Nuclear reaction, Feulgen's, 35, 37,
 38, 68, 122, 726
 Nuclear cleft, 125
 Nuclear division, 122-142
 direct, 122-130
 indirect, 130-142
 Nuclear influence, 186-188
 Nuclear membrane, 34
 reorganization, 124-130, 168,
 169, 180, 181
 stains, 34, 721, 725
 Nuclearia, 331
 delicatula, 331
 simplex, 332
 Nucleic acid, 34, 35
 Nucleolus, 34
 Nucleophaga, 722, 723
 Nucleoplasm, 34, 35
 Nucleus, 33, 34-37, 103, 186, 351, 546
 compact, 35-37
 macro-, 34, 35, 37, 546
 micro-, 34, 37, 546
 vesicular, 34-35
 Nutrition, 84-94
 autotrophic, 92-93
 heterotrophic, 84-92
 holophytic, 84, 92-93
 holozoic, 84-92
 mixotrophic, 93-94
 parasitic, 93
 phytotrophic, 92-93
 sapropelic, 20
 saprophytic, 93
 saprozoic, 84, 93
 zootrophic, 84-92
Nycotobates pennsylvanica, 452
 Nyctotherus, 13, 54, 74, 99, 129, 644
 cordiformis, 160, 645, 646
 ovalis, 25, 36, 37, 54, 125, 644, 646

 O
 Obelia commissuralis, 703
 geniculata, 703
 Ocellus, 80, 249, 250
 Ochromonadidae, 201, 206-208
 Ochromonas, 199, 206
 ludibunda, 206, 207
 mutabilis, 206, 207
 O'Connor, 297, 357, 358, 359, 361
 Octolasion complanatum, 432
 Octomitus, 312
 Octomyxa, 341
 Octopus tetracirrhous, 555
 Octosporea, 542
 muscae-domesticae, 541, 542
 Odor of water due to Protozoa, 100,
 205
 Oedogonium, 701
 Oesophageal fibers, 54
 process, 59
 Oikomonadidae, 268, 271-272
 Oikomonas, 271
 termo, 22, 272
 Oikopleura dioica, 254
 Oil, 91, 100
 Oligosaprobic Protozoa, 20
 Oligotricha, 636, 652-663
Oncopeltus fasciatus, 282
 Onychodactylus, 587
 Onychodromopsis, 676
 flexilis, 675, 676
 Onychodromus, 674-676
 grandis, 157, 675, 676
 Oocyst, 152, 465, 475, 484
 Oodinium, 254
 poucheti, 254, 255
 Ookinete, 152, 484, 504
 Oospora, 632
 Opalina, 13, 34, 54, 72, 113
 carolinensis, 548
 chorophili, 548
 hylaena, 547, 548
 kennicotti, 548
 obtrigonoidea, 547, 548
 oregonensis, 548
 pickeringii, 548
 spiralis, 548
 Opalinidae, 547-550
 Opalinopsidae, 552, 555
 Opalinopsis, 555
 sepiolae, 555, 556
 Opercular fibers, 56
 Opercularia, 687
 plicatilis, 686, 687
 stenostoma, 686, 687
 Operculina, 402
 ammonoides, 402
 Ophelia limacina, 554
 Ophiothrix fragilis, 634
 Ophisthotrichum, 659
 janus, 659
 thomasi, 659
 Ophiurespira, 634
 weilli, 633, 634
 Ophryidiidae, 683, 685
 Ophryidium, 33, 685
 ectatum, 76, 685

Ophrydium—*continued*
sessile, 684, 685
vernalis, 684, 685
Ophryocephalus, 700
capitatum, 700, 701
Ophryocystidae, 458, 459–460
Ophryocystis, 459
mesnili, 459
Ophryodendridae, 695, 698–699
Ophryodendron, 698
belgicum, 698, 699
porcellanum, 698, 699
Ophryoglena, 617
atra, 617
collini, 616, 617
intestinalis, 616, 617
parasitica, 617
pyriformis, 616, 617
Ophryoglenidae, 608, 617
Ophryoscolecidae, 61, 74, 90, 99, 652, 654–659
Ophryoscolecina, 61
Ophryoscolex, 655
bicoronatus, 655, 656
caudatus, 655, 656
quadricoronatus, 655, 656
Ophthalmidiidae, 400
Opisthodon, 580
Opisthonecta, 684–685
henneguyi, 684, 685, 705
Opisthostyla, 687
annulata, 686, 687
Opisthotricha, 668
Opossum, 277
Opsanus beta, 525
tau, 525
Oral basket, 62
membrane, 51
Orang-outang, 639
Orbitoides, 405
Orbitoididae, 405
Orbitolinidae, 400
Orbulina universa, 176
Orcadella, 340
operculata, 339
Orcheobius, 479
herpobdellae, 140, 479
Orchestia agilis, 552, 590
palustris, 590
Orchitophrya, 554
stellarum, 553, 554
Organella, 5
Oriental sore, 284
Origin of parasitism, 29–31
O'Roke, 500, 501
Orthognathotermes wheeleri, 310
Orosphaera, 422
Orosphaeridae, 422
Orthodon, 586
hamatus, 586, 587
Orthomorpha, 442
gracilis, 442

Oryctes, 299, 443
nasicornis, 443
Osmerus, 539
Osmiophile structures, 69
Osmium tetroxide, 71
Ostracoda, 630
Ostracodinium, 658–659
dentatum, 659, 660
Ostrea virginica, 350, 457
Otus asio naevius, 497
Ovis orientalis cycloceros, 655
Oxidation, 101–102
Oxygen on Protozoa, 25, 90, 102–103
Oxymonadidae, 294, 301–302
Oxymonas, 301–302
dimorpha, 301, 302
Oxnerella, 409
maritima, 130, 131, 140, 409
Oxyphysis, 261
oxytoxoides, 260, 261
Oxyrrhis, 144, 249
marina, 136, 250
Oxytricha, 20, 50, 56, 668
bifaria, 668, 669
fallax, 18, 141, 159, 165, 668, 669
hymenostoma, 168
ludibunda, 668, 669
setigera, 668, 669
Oxytrichidae, 668–676
Oyster, 350, 457
Owl, 279

P

Pachygrapsus crassipes, 445
Pace and Belda, 714
Pack, 570
Packchanian, 277
Paedogamy, 162, 164–165, 166, 517
Palacalanus parvus, 254
Palaemonetes, 633
Palatinella, 195, 204
cyrtophora, 202, 204
Paldina vivipara, 706
Palmella stage, 198
Pamphagus, 42, 136, 382
armatus, 20
mutabilis, 380, 382
Pandorina, 80, 100, 147, 229–230
morum, 151, 153, 229, 230
Panesthia javanica, 648, 649
spadica, 648, 649
Panopeus herbesti, 457
Pansporoblast, 517
Pantin, 109
Pantothenic acid, 98
Panzer, 100
Parabasal apparatus, 66–67
body, 47, 66
thread, 66
Parablepharisma, 644
pellitum, 642, 644
Paracalanus, 554
parvus, 256, 635

- Parachaenia, 575-576
 myae, 575, 576
 Paracineta, 700
 limbata, 700, 701
 Paraclevelandia, 648-649
 brevis, 648, 649
 simplex, 129
 Paradesmose, 131
 Paradevescovina, 304
 Paradileptus, 584
 conicus, 583, 584
 robustus, 583, 584
 Paradinium, 256
 poucheti, 255, 256
 Paraellobiopsis, 256
 coutieri, 255, 256
 Paraeuplotes, 677-679
 tortugensis, 93, 679
 Paraeuplotidae, 668, 677-679
 Parafolliculina, 648
 violacea, 648, 650
 Paraglaucoma, 612
 rostrata, 609, 612
 Paraglycogen, 61, 99
 Paraholosticha, 674
 herbicola, 673, 674
 Paraisotricha, 605
 beckeri, 605, 606
 colpoidea, 605, 606
 Paraisotrichidae, 77, 593, 605
 Paraisotrichopsis, 578
 composita, 578
 Parajoenia, 61, 304
 grassii, 304, 305
 Parajulus venustus, 442
 Paramaecium, 598
 Parameciidae, 593, 598-601
 Paramecium, 11, 21, 23, 24, 56, 64,
 65, 70, 74, 86, 88, 89, 94, 95, 99,
 102, 104, 115, 116, 117, 118, 184,
 598
 aurelia, 7, 23, 37, 96, 128, 129, 141,
 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 163,
 165, 168, 169, 184, 187, 598, 599
 bursaria, 7, 22, 23, 25, 93, 156, 157,
 159, 599, 600
 calkinsi, 21, 156, 157, 599, 600
 caudatum, 17, 18, 19, 22, 23, 37, 63,
 64, 89, 90, 94, 96, 102, 104,
 105, 115, 122, 123, 129, 154,
 155, 156, 161, 163, 168, 178,
 179, 186, 187, 598, 599, 600,
 601, 715
 multimicronucleatum, 18, 22, 23, 58,
 59, 60, 74, 75, 76, 129, 156,
 598-599
 polycaryum, 599, 600
 putrinum, 96, 599, 600
 trichium, 156, 163, 599, 600
 woodruffi, 74, 599, 600
 Paramoeba, 371
 pigmentifera, 369, 371
 schaudinni, 371
 Paramoebidae, 343, 371
 Paramylon, 99-100, 430
 Paranassula, 585
 microstoma, 585, 587
 Paraesophageal fibrils, 59
 Parapodophrya, 699
 typha, 86, 699, 701
 Parapolytoma, 222
 satura, 221, 222
 Parasite, 25
 Parasitic nutrition, 93
 Parasitic Protozoa, 24-31
 Parasitism, 25-29
 Origin of, 29-31
 Paraspathidium, 560
 trichostomum, 560
 Paravorticella, 685
 clymenellae, 684, 685
 Pareuglypha, 389
 Parmulina, 384
 cyathus, 383, 384
 Parophrys vetulus, 521
 Paroxysm, 484, 489
 Pascher, 151, 194, 195, 196
 Passer domesticus, 475, 495, 497
 Passerine birds, 475
 Pasteur, 14
 Patella caerulea, 629
 Patellina, 403
 corrugata, 140, 397
 Pathological changes in host, 25-29
 Patten, 468, 546
 Paulinella, 92, 390
 chromatophora, 390
 Pavillardia, 251
 tentaculifera, 251
 Pavonina, 403
 flabelliformis, 402
 Pearson, 568
 Pébrine disease, 10, 14, 537
 Pecten, 28
 maximus, 468
 Pectinella, 50
 Pedigree culture, 13
 Pelamphora, 563
 brütschlii, 563
 Pelatractus, 563
 grandis, 563, 564
 Pellicle, 38
 Pelodinium, 665
 reniforme, 665, 666
 Pelomyxa, 34, 90, 91, 99, 100, 145,
 348
 carolinensis, 11, 42, 349-350, 714
 palustris, 20, 91, 348-349
 villosa, 349
 Penard, 65, 77, 170, 348, 379, 572,
 581, 643
 Penardia, 333-334
 mutabilis, 332, 334
 Penardiella, 562
 crassa, 561, 562

- Peneroplis, 42, **400**
 pertusus, 41, 215, 394, 401
 Peneroplidae, 400
 Penfield, 358
 Penniculus, 59
 Pentatrichomonas, 311
 bengalensis, 311
 Pentatrichomonoides, 311
 scroa, 310, 311
 Peranema, 38, 45, 70, 110, **239**, 713
 granulifera, 241
 trichophorum, 71, 111, 138, **239**, 240
 Perca, 530
 fluvialis, 280
 Perezella, 65, **554**
 pelagica, 553, 554
 Perezia, 539
 mesnili, 537, 539
 Periacineta, 703
 buckei, 703, 704
 Pericaryon, 635
 cesticola, 633, 635
 Peridiniidae, 257-261
 Peridiniinea, 246, **248-261**
 Peridinin, 78
 Peridinioidae, 248, **257-261**
 Perdinium, 100, 118, **257-258**
 divergens, 258, 259
 tabulatum, 258
 Perioral membrane, 51
 Periplaneta americana, 361, 438
 Peripylea, 420, **421-423**
 Perispira, 562
 strephosoma, 561, 562
 Peristome, 48, 49, 51
 Peritricha, 24, 41, 53, 146, 196, 551,
 683-693
 Peritromidae, 637, **649**
 Peritromus, 649
 californicus, 649, **650**
 emmae, 649
 Permanent preparations, 722-729
 Peromyscus maniculatus, 279
 Perty, 12, 379
 Petalomonas, 241
 mediocanellata, 240, 241
 Petalostoma minutum, 531
 Petrocheliden l. lunifrons, 497
 Pfeiffer, 94
 Pfeifferinella, 475
 ellipsoides, 475, 476
 impudica, 475
 Phacodinium, 644
 metschnikoffi, 641, 644
 Phacotidae, 217, **225**
 Phacotus, 225
 lenticularis, 223, 225
 Phacus, 21, 47, 117, **236**
 acuminata, 236, 238
 anacoelus, 236, 238
 longicaudus, 236, 238
 pleuronectes, 236, 238
 pyrum, 139, **236**, 238
 Phacus—continued
 triqueter, 236, 238
 Phacocapsina, 213, **216**
 Phacodium, 417
 Phaeosphaera, 212
 gelatinosa, 209, 212
 Phaeothamnion confervicolum, 214, 216
 Phagocytosis, 29, 455, 457
 Phalangium cornutum, 454
 crassum, 454
 opilio, 454
 Phalansteriidae, 268
 Phalansterium, 268
 digitatum, 268, 269
 Pharyngeal basket, 62
 Phascolodon, 588
 vorticella, 587, 588
 Pheasant, 473
 fire-back, 266, 498
 Pheretima barbadensis, 432, 435
 beaufortii, 436
 hawayana, 435
 heterochaeta, 436
 rodericensis, 435
 sermowaiana, 436
 wendessiana, 436
 Phialoides, 455
 ornata, 453, 455
 Phialonema, 239
 Philaster, 621
 armata, 620, 621
 digitiformis, 620, 621
 Philasteridae, 608, **621**
 Philasterides, 621
 Philips, 171
 Phlebotomus, 282
 argentipes, 283, 284
 intermedius, 284
 papatasi, 282, 284
 sergenti, 284
 Phorcus richardi, 457
 Phoretrophrya, 633
 nebaliae, 632, 633
 Phormia, 282
 Phormobothrys, 424
 Phoront, 630
 Phosphorescence, 100, 251
 Photrophrya, 634-635
 insidiosa, 633, 635
 Photosynthesis, 19, 22, 79, 92, 117
 Phryganella, 387
 acropodia, 387, 388
 Phycochrisin, 78
 Phycocyanin, 78
 Phyllognathus, 443
 Phyllomitus, 291
 undulans, 290, 291
 Phyllomonas, 220
 phacoides, 220
 Phylogeny of Protozoa, 193-197
 Phylloxanthin, 78
 Physalophrya, 601
 spumosa, 597, 601

- Physaridae, 338
 Physematiidae, 421
 Physiological solution, 720
 Physiology of Protozoa, 84-118
 Physomonas, 287
 Physophaga, 632
 Phytodiniidae, 257, 261
 Phytodinium, 261
 simplex, 260, 261
 Phytomastigina, 6, 18, 20, 52, 73,
 148, 194, 195, 200-262, 712
 Phytomonadina, 78, 200, 217-230
 Phytomonas, 273, 281
 dauidi, 281
 elmassiani, 282
 Phytomyxinea, 341
 Phytotrophic nutrition, 92-93
 Pickard, 56
Pieris brassicae, 539
 Pierson, 125
 Pig, 278, 364, 366, 471, 472, 475, 510,
 639
 Pigeon, 473, 500
 Pigments, 27, 38, 65, 78-79
 Pileocephalus, 429, 452
 striatus, 450, 453
 Pimelia, 451
 Pimelic acid, 98
Pimephales notatus, 530
 Pinaciophora, 414
 fluvialis, 413, 414
 Pipetta, 423
 tuba, 422
 Piroplasma, 502
Pisania maculosa, 457
 Pithiscus, 222
 Pithothorax, 574
 ovatus, 573, 574
 Pituophis, 299
Placobdella catenigera, 480
 marginata, 279, 449, 476
 Placocista, 391
 spinosa, 391
 Placopsilina, 400
 cenomana, 399
 Placopsilinidae, 400
 Placus, 571-572
 socialis, 570, 572
 Plagiocampa, 196, 569
 marina, 569, 570
 Plagiophrys, 42, 382
 parvipunctata, 380, 382
 Plagiopyla, 23, 596
 minuta, 597
 nasuta, 596, 597
 Plagiopylidae, 593, 596-598
 Plagiopyxis, 386
 callida, 386, 387
 Plagiospira, 628
 crinita, 627, 628
 Plagiotricha, 670
 Planaria, 692
 limacina, 556
 Planaria—continued
 torva, 557
 ulvae, 556
Planorbis corneus, 475
 Planorbulina, 405
 Planorbulinidae, 404
 Plant growth substances, 98
 Plants, 5, 281, 329, 330, 341, 342
 Plasmagel, 39, 108, 109, 110
 Plasmalemma, 108, 109, 110
 Plasma-membrane, 39
 Plasmasol, 39, 108, 109, 110
 Plasmodia, 335, 510
 Plasmodiidae, 486-499
 Plasmodiophora, 341
 brassicae, 139, 341
 Plasmodium, 7, 8, 26, 28, 33, 118,
 145, 151, 179, 486-491, 718
 catheimerium, 486, 487, 497, 498
 circumflexum, 487, 497, 498
 elongatum, 486, 497, 498
 falciparum, 27, 28, 489, 490, 491,
 492-493, 496
 gallinaceum, 487, 497, 498
 hexamerium, 497, 498
 inconstans, 495
 inui, 19
 knowlesi, 19, 29
 lophurae, 498-499
 malariae, 489, 490, 491, 493-494,
 496
 nucleophilum, 487, 497, 498
 oti, 497-498
 ovale, 491, 494-495
 polare, 497, 498
 praecox, 15, 495
 relictum, 15, 487, 495, 498
 rouxi, 497, 498
 tenue, 492
 vaughani, 496, 498
 vivax, 28, 152, 485, 486, 488, 490,
 491-492, 496
 Plasmodroma, 193, 198-543
 Plasmogamy, 336, 520
 Plasmosome, 34
 Plasmotomy, 145, 146, 335, 350, 517
 Plastin, 34
 Platycola, 691
 longicollis, 690, 691
 Platydorina, 147, 228
 caudata, 228, 229
 Platyhelminthes, 513, 554, 556, 617,
 692
 Platyneumatium, 614
 sociale, 21, 614
 Platyophrya, 571
 lata, 570, 571
 Platyasporea, 521, 526-531
 Platytheca, 272
 microspora, 272
 Plectoidae, 423
 Pleodorina, 230
 californica, 230

- Pleodorina—*continued*
illinoisensis, 79, 229, 230
 Pleurocoptes, 620
hydractiniae, 620
 Pleurocystis, 434
cuenoti, 434, 435
 Pleuromonas, 289
jaculans, 289, 290
 Pleuronema, 618
anodontae, 618
coronatum, 21, 618
crassum, 618
jaculans, 21
marinum, 618, 619
setigerum, 618
 Pleuronematidae, 608, 618–620
 Pleurostomata, 560, 580–584
 Pleurotricha, 674
lanceolata, 97, 141, 673, 674
 Plistophora, 540
longifilis, 535, 540
simulii, 540
Plodia interpunctella, 460
Plumatella fungosa, 537
repens, 537
 Pocillomonas, 225
flos aquae, 223, 225
 Podocyathus, 709
diadema, 708, 709
 Podophrya, 699
collini, 699
elongata, 698, 699
fixa, 698, 699
gracilis, 698, 699
 Podophryidae, 695, 699–700
 Pohl, 105
 Poisonous substances, 64, 86
 Polar capsule, 65, 515
 filament, 65–66, 515, 535
 Poljansky, 655
 Polyblepharides, 224
singularis, 223, 225
 Polyblepharididae, 217, 224–225
 Polychaetes, 256
Polydora caeca, 552
flava, 552
 Polygastricha, 12
 Polykrikidae, 248, 257
 Polykrikos, 66, 146, 257, 635
barnegatensis, 257
kofoidi, 257, 258
 Polymastigidae, 293, 299–301
 Polymastigina, 61, 91, 195, 263, 293–316
 Polymastix, 299
melolonthae, 299, 300
 Polymnia, 554
nebulosa, 468
 Polymonadina, 293, 315–316
 Polymorpha, 577
ampulla, 577, 578
 Polymorphina, 402
 Polymorphinidae, 402
 Polymyxa, 342
 Polypastron, 657
multivesiculatum, 61, 657, 660
 Polyrhabdina, 441
spionis, 441, 443
 Polysaprobic Protozoa, 20, 101
 Polyspira, 635
delagei, 634, 635
 Polystomella, 402
 Polytoma, 11, 182, 194, 222
pascheri, 182, 183, 184
uvella, 46, 93, 97, 139, 166, 182, 183, 221, 222
 Polytomella, 80, 118, 224
agillis, 101, 139, 223, 224
caeca, 224
Pomoxis sparoides, 27, 526, 530
 Pompholyxophrys, 412
punicea, 412, 413
 Pontigulasia, 386
vas, 140, 387
Pontosphaera haeckeli, 209
 Popoff, 166, 180
Porcellana platycheles, 699
 Porifera, 692
 Porochrysis, 195, 204–205
aspergillus, 204, 205
 Porospora, 456
galloprovincialis, 457
gigantea, 456, 457
 Porosporidae, 441, 455–457
Porolermes adamsoni, 311, 320, 322
grandis, 311
Portunus depurator, 466, 634, 682
 Posey, 509
 Posterior neuromotor chain, 59
 Postoesophageal fibrils, 59
Potamilla reniformis, 461, 462
 Poteriodendron, 146, 271
petiolatum, 271
 Pouchetia, 249
fusus, 249, 250
maxima, 249, 250
 Pouchetiidae, 248, 249–251
 Powdery scab, 342
 Powell, 138
 Powers, 92, 565, 604, 605, 640
 Prandtl, 165
 Pratje, 100
 Precystic stage, 355
 Prehensile tentacle, 51
 Preparations, 719–729
 Fresh, 719–722
 Permanent, 722–729
 blood film, 727–729
 smear, 722–727
 section, 729
 Primate, 430
 Pringsheim, 24, 78, 93, 151
 Prismatospira, 451
evansi, 450, 451
 Proboscidiella, 302
kofoidi, 301, 302

- Procavia brucei*, 591
capensis, 591
 Proceros, 556
 Procryptotermes, 306
 Proloculum, 395
 megalospheric, 395
 microspheric, 395
 Prolophomonas, 322
 locopola, 321, 322
 Promitosis, 122
 Pronoctiluca, 249
 tentaculatum, 249, 250
 Pronoctilucidae, 248, 249
 Prorocentridae, 247-248
 Prorocentrinea, 245, 246-248
 Prorocentrum, 247
 micans, 247
 triangulatum, 247
 Prorodon, 64, 65, 571
 discolor, 21, 570, 571
 griseus, 571
 utahensis, 570
 Prorodonopsis, 577
 coli, 577, 578
 Prostomata, 560-578
 Protanoplophrya, 555
 stomata, 555, 556
 Protective organellae, 61-65
 Proteomyxa, 329-334
 Proteromonas, 289
 lacertae, 289-290
 Prot erythroptosis, 249
 crassicaudata, 249, 250
 Proteus, 11, 345
 Protista, 6, 12
 Protochrysis, 215
 phaeophycearum, 214, 216
 Protociliata, 25, 48, 73, 93, 100, 145,
 196, 365, 547-550
 Protocruzia, 644
 pigerrima, 641, 644
 Protomagalhaesia, 444
 serpentula, 443, 444
 Protomerite, 429
 Protomite, 630
 Protomonadina, 195, 263, 268-292
 Protomonas, 330
 amylis, 330, 331
 Protomont, 630
 Protoopalina, 34, 549
 intestinalis, 141, 549
 mitotica, 549
 saturnalis, 549
 Protophrya, 555
 ovicola, 553, 555
 Protophyta vs. Protozoa, 5-6
 Protoplasm, 12
 Protoplasmic movements, 88-90, 106-
 113
 Protopsis, 249
 ochrea, 249, 250
 Protoradiophrya, 146, 559
 fissispiculata, 558, 559
 Protospongia, 147, 270
 haeckeli, 269, 270
 Protozoa
 as non-cellular organisms, 5
 as unicellular organisms, 5
 coining of term, 12
 colonial, 6, 145-147
 definition of, 5
 distinguished from Protophyta, 5-6
 Metazoa, 6
 ecology of, 17-31
 fossil, 10, 193, 394, 417
 geographical distribution of, 17, 24
 in faeces, 21
 thermal waters, 18
 parasitic in man, *see* Man
 Protozoa, 215, 256, 330,
 365, 635, 685, 700
 Phylogeny of, 193-197
 physiology of, 84-118
 reproduction of, 122-172
 size of, 33, 94, 95, 643-644
 Protozoology in relation to
 biology, 6-7
 cytology, 8
 economic entomology, 7-8, 10
 evolution, 7
 genetics, 7
 geography, 8
 geology, 10
 medicine, 8, 9
 phylogeny, 7-8
 pisciculture, 9
 sanitary science, 9
 soil biology, 9-10
 veterinary medicine, 8, 9
 zoogeography, 8
 Prot richocyst, 38, 65, 215
 Prot richomonas, 301
 legeri, 300, 301
 Prowazek, 117, 600
 Prowazekella, 289
 Prowazekia, 289
 Prunoidae, 422
Psammodromus hispanicus, 477
Psammoryctes barbatus, 533
Psammospaera bowmanni, 40
 fusca, 40
 parva, 40
 rustica, 40
 Pseudoblepharisma, 644
 tenuis, 642, 644
Pseudoboa clelia, 365
Pseudocalanus elongatus, 256
 Pseudochitinous substance, 40, 53
 Pseudochlamys, 381
 patella, 380, 381
 Pseudochromosomes, 138
 pseudocyst, 430
 Pseudodevescovina, 306
 uniflagellata, 306, 307
 Pseudodiffugia, 143, 389
 gracilis, 387, 389

- Pseudofolliculina, 647-648
 arctica, 648, 650
 Pseudogemma, 703-704
 pachystyla, 704, 707
 Pseudoklossia, 468
 pectinis, 468, 469
Pseudolynchia maura, 500
 Pseudomallomonas, 203
 Pseudomicrothorax, 595
 agilis, 594, 595
 Pseudopodia, 41-45, 51, 84-86, 106-110, 114, 193
 Pseudoprorodon, 571
 farctus, 62, 570, 571
 Pseudospora, 330
 eudorini, 330
 parasitica, 330
 volvocis, 330, 331
 Pseudosporidae, 329, 330
 Pseudotriconympha, 326
 grassii, 326
 Pseudotrypanosoma, 62, 311
 giganteum, 310, 311
 Psilotricha, 670
 acuminata, 670, 671
 Pteridomonas, 195, 265-266
 pulex, 265, 266
 Pterocephalus, 449
 Pteromonas, 225
 angulosa, 223, 225
 Pterospora, 438-439
 maldaneorum, 439
Ptychoptera contaminata, 453
 Ptychostomum, 626
 bacteriophilum, 625, 626
 Pulsating vacuole, 73-76
 Pulsella, 47
 Purkinje, 12
 Pusule, 93, 199, 246
 Pütter, 102
 Pycnothricidae, 585, 590-592
 Pycnothrix, 590-591
 monocystoides, 591
 Pyorrhoea alveolaris, 364
 Pyramidochrysis, 203
 modesta, 202, 203
 Pyramidomonas, 222
 Pyramimonas, 222-223, 224
 montana, 223
 tetrarhynchus, 223
 Pyrenoids, 79, 92
 Pyrimidine, 96
 Pyrocystis, 261
 Pyrotheca, 540
 incurvata, 541
 Pyrsonympha, 69, 70, 302
 granulata, 302, 303
 vertens, 302, 303
 Python, 299
 sebae, 365
 Pyxicola, 691
 affinis, 690, 691
 socialis, 690, 691
 Pyxidicula, 143, 380
 operculata, 380-381
 Pyxidium, 687
 urceolatum, 686, 687
 vernale, 686, 687
 Pyxnia, 454
 bulbifera, 453, 454
 Pyxinoides, 445
 balani, 445
- Q
- Quadrula, 392
 symmetrica, 392
 Quails, 266, 313, 472, 473, 500
Querquedula crecca, 501
 discors, 501
- R
- Rabbit, 279, 299, 364, 470
 Races of Protozoa, 176-179, 355-356
Rachidelus brazili, 365
 Radial cytostomal fibrils, 59
 Radiating canals, 74-76
 Radiolaria, 10, 12, 25, 33, 40, 61, 100, 106, 145, 193, 215, 406, 417-425
 Radiophrya, 146, 557
 hoplites, 558
 Radium rays, 117
 Raffaele, 487
 Rainey's corpuscles, 507, 508
 Raja, 280, 526
 oxyrhynchus, 280
 Rana, 547
 areolata, 548
 cantabrigensis, 548
 calesbeiana, 548
 clamitans, 528
 fusca, 300
 pipiens, 528
 palustris, 555
 sphenocephala, 528, 548
Ranatra linearis, 703
 Raphidiophrys, 412
 pallida, 412, 413
 Raphidocystis, 412
 tubifera, 412, 413
 Ratcliffe, 365, 639, 716
 Rats, 277, 279, 296, 299, 314, 357, 364, 472, 482, 510
 Reaction of Protozoa to
 chemical stimuli, 116
 current, 115
 electrical stimuli, 118
 gravity, 115
 light, 117
 mechanical stimuli, 114-115
 radium rays, 117
 Röntgen ray, 117
 temperature, 117-118
 ultraviolet rays, 117
 Reconstruction band, 125
 Red snow, 18

- Red water, 247, 253, 260, 565
 Red-water fever, 502, 504
 Red-winged black bird, 497
 Redi, 11
 Reduction division, 165-166
 Reduviid bugs, 277
 Rees, 56, 718
 Refrangent body, 91, 348
 Regeneration, 33, 129-130, 144, 169, 170-172
 Reichenow, 37, 38, 78, 101, 122, 123, 218, 365, 663
 Reindeer, 656, 657, 659
 Relation between
 neuromotor and silverline systems, 58-61
 nucleus and cytosome, 33-34, 170-172, 186-188
 Remanella, 64, 77, 584
 rugosa, 583, 584
 Renn, 329
 Reophacidae, 398
 Reophax, 398
 nodulosus, 397, 398
 Reorganization band, 125
 Reproduction in Protozoa, 122-170
 asexual, 147-149
 sexual, 149-170
 Reptiles, 290, 299, 365, 473, 477, 480, 482, 705, 706
 Reserve food matter, 98-101
 Reservoir hosts, 277, 366
 Respiration, 101-103
 Reticularia, 340
 lycoperdon, 339
 Reticulariidae, 340
Reticulitermes flaviceps, 325
 flavipes, 302, 318, 320, 325, 539
 hageni, 319, 322
 hesperus, 302, 320, 322, 325
 lucifugus, 318, 325, 539
 speratus, 318, 325, 326
 tibialis, 325
 Retortamonas, 290
 blattae, 290
 gryllotalpae, 290
 intestinalis, 290, 291, 715
 Reynolds, 25, 30, 178, 287, 370, 601
 Rhabdammina, 395, 398
 abyssorum, 397
 Rhabdocystis, 432
 claviformis, 432, 433
 Rhabdophrya, 697
 trimorpha, 697, 698
 Rhabdostyla, 687
 vernalis, 686, 687
 Rhagadostoma, 571
 Rhaphiceros, 659
 Rhaphidomonas, 243
Rhinoceros unicornis, 663
Rhipicephalus evertsi, 505
 sanguineus, 505
 Rhipidodendron, 286
 splendidum, 286
Rhithrogena semicolorata, 540
 Rhizammia, 398
 algaeformis, 397, 398
 Rhizaminidae, 398
 Rhizobium, 350
 Rhizocaryum, 65, 552
 concaum, 552, 553
 Rhizochrysidina, 194, 201, 209-210
 Rhizochrysis, 136, 194, 203, 210
 schierfeli, 139, 209, 210, 211
 Rhizomastigina, 52, 195, 263-267, 343
 Rhizomastix, 266-267
 gracilis, 265, 267
 Rhizoplasma, 333
 kaiseri, 332, 333
 Rhizoplast, 47, 67, 68
 Rhizopoda, 12, 328, 329-405
 Rhizopodia, 42, 44
 Rhizotrogus, 299, 455
 Rhodes, 297
 Rhodomonas, 215
 lens, 214, 215
 Rhopalonia, 447
 hispidia, 447, 448
 Rhopalophrya, 574
 salina, 87, 574, 575
 Rhumbler, 84, 91, 106, 107, 117, 176
 Rhyncheta, 708
 cyclopum, 708
Rhynchobolus americanus, 442
 Rhynchocystidae, 431, 433-434
 Rhynchocystis, 433
 pilosa, 433-434, 435
 porrecta, 434, 435
 Rhynchogromia, 374
 Rhynchomonas, 289
 marina, 289
 nasuta, 20, 21, 289, 290
 Rhynchonympha, 324
 tarda, 139, 324, 325
 Rhynchophrya, 707
 palpans, 707
 Riboflavin, 97
 Richardson, 72
 Riddle, 96
 Ringer's solution, 716, 717, 720
 Ringform, 485
 Robertson, 56
 Robin, 496
 Rodhain, 365
 Röntgen rays, 117
 Rosenhoff, 11
 Root, 178, 357, 358, 361
 Root hernia, 341
 Roskin, 42, 53, 86, 90
 Ross, 15
 Rossbach, 104
 Rostellum, 298, 302

- Rotalia, 403
 beccarii, 402
 Rotaliidae, 403
 Rotifera, 513
 Roubaud, 361
 Roudabush, 150
 Roudsky, 180
 Rugitermes, 306
 Rumjantzew, 38, 99
 Rupertia, 405
 stabilis, 404
 Rupertiidae, 405
 Ruppia, 329, 341
 Russel, 9
- S**
- Sabin, 506
 Saccammina, 398
 sphaerica, 397, 398
 Saccaminidae, 398
Saccharomyces cerevisiae, 97
 Saccinobaculus, 303
 amplioazostylus, 303
Sagartia leucolena, 630
 parasitica, 613
 Sagenoscene, 424
 Sagitta, 554
 claparedei, 371
 Sagosphaeridae, 424
 St. Remy, 509
 Salamander, 555
 Salinity and Protozoa, 21-22
Salmo irideus, 297
 Salmon, 313
 Salmonella, 639
 Salmonoid fish, 370, 521, 529
 Salpa, 254
 Salpingoeca, 270
 fusiformis, 270, 271
Salvelinus fontinalis, 297
 Sand flies, 282
 Sanders, 355, 718
 Sandon, 24
 Sapro, 179
 Sapotaceae, 281
 Sappinia, 351
 diploidea, 351
 Saprodinium, 665
 dentatum, 665, 666
 putrinum, 665, 666
 Saproelice Protozoa, 20, 665-667
 Saprophilus, 614
 agilatus, 614
 muscorum, 614, 615
 Saprophytic nutrition, 93
 Saprozoic nutrition, 84, 93
Sarcina flava, 101
 Sarcocystine, 28, 508
 Sarcocystis, 508
 bertrami, 510
 lindemanni, 509-510
 miescheriana, 507, 510
 Sarcocystis—continued
 muris, 510
 rileyi, 510
 tenella, 507, 508, 510
 Sarcode, 12
 Sarcodina, 9, 10, 13, 38, 193, 195, 198,
 328-425
 Sarcophaga, 282
 Sarcosporidia, 14, 28, 65, 507-510
 Sarcosporidiotoxin, 28
 Sardine, 473
 Sassuchin, 101
 Satellite, 430
 Saunders, 89
Scaphiopus albus, 548
 solitarius, 550
 Schaeffer, 11, 105, 109, 345, 350
 Schaudinn, 13, 15, 85, 91, 131, 136,
 427, 464, 486, 489
 Schaudinnella 436-437
 henleae, 437
 Schaudinnellidae, 431, 436-437
 Schellackia, 477
 bolivari, 477
 Scherffel, 194, 195
 Schewiakoff, 104, 615
 Schiffmann, 94
 Schiller, 248
 Schizamoeba 30, 370
 salmonis, 369, 370
 Schizocystidae, 458, 460-462
 Schizocystis, 460
 gregarinoides, 458, 460
 Schizogony, 147, 427, 458, 464, 484
 erythrocytic, 487
 exoerythrocytic, 487
 Schizogregarinaria, 428, 457-462
 Schizonts, 147, 149, 427, 484
Schizotrypanum cruzi, 276
 Schneider, 171
 Schneideria, 454
 mucronata, 453, 454
 Schröder, 53, 176
 Schuberg, 54, 655
 Schubotz, 105
 Schüffner's dots, 489
 Schultze, 378
 diffuens, 375, 378
 Schultzeina, 557
 mucronata, 557, 558
 Schumacher, 101
 Schwartz, 171
 Sciadophora, 454
 phalangii, 453, 454
 Sciadostoma, 595
 Sclerotia, 335
Scololepis fuliginosa, 441, 475
 Scolopendra, 447, 449
 cingulata, 449, 478
 heros, 454
 subspinipes, 449
Scoloplos mülleri, 512

- Scott, 508
 Scourfieldia, 220
 complanata, 219, 220
 Screech owl, 497
 Scutigera, 449
 Scyphidia, 685
 constricta, 684, 685
 Scyphidiidae, 683, 685
 Scytomonas, 241
 pusilla, 21, 240, 241
 Secondary nucleus, 37, 38
 Secretion, 103-106, 158
 Segregation of factors, 182, 183, 185
 Selective power of Protozoa, 40
 Selenidium, 461
 potamillae, 461
 Selenococcidiidae, 465, 466
 Selenococcidium, 196, 466
 intermedium, 466
 Senescence, 166, 167, 168
 Sensomotor apparatus, 61
Sepia elegans, 555
 officinalis, 466
Sepiola rondeletii, 555
 Sericostoma, 453
Serinus canaria, 495
 Sessilia, 683-692
 Seticephalus, 449
 elegans, 448, 449
 Sewage organisms, 20
 Sex factors, 184
 reaction types, 7, 122, 155-156,
 157, 158, 166, 184, 185, 186
 substance, 150-151
 Sex-linked inheritance, 184
 Sexual fusion, 150-154, 166, 181
 Sexual reproduction, 149-170
 amphimixis, 150-161
 autogamy, 161, 162-164
 automixis, 161-165
 conjugation, 154-161
 paedogamy, 162, 164-165
 sexual fusion, 150-154
 syngamy, 150-154
 Shapiro, 89, 90
 Sharp, 54, 654, 659
 Sheep, 278, 299, 364, 470, 471, 510,
 605, 655, 657, 658, 659
 Shell, 39-41, 61, 374, 394-395
 Shortt, 283
 Shottenfeld, 97
 Shumway, 94
Sialia s. sialia, 497
 Sida, 687
 Siebold, 12, 14
 Sieboldiellina, 557
 planariarum, 556, 557
 Siedlecki, 15
 Silica, 40
 Silicina, 398
 limitata, 397, 398
 Silicinidae, 398
 Silicoflagellidae, 201, 209
Siliqua patula, 624
 Silkworm, 537
Silpha laevigata, 452
 thoracica, 452
 Silver-impregnation method, 57, 727
 Silver line, 57
 Silverline system, 57
 Simulium, 535, 540
 venustum, 502
 Sinton, 491
 Sinuolinea, 525
 dimorpha, 524, 525
 Siphonophora, 285
 Siphostoma, 528
 Sipunculoida, 460, 531
 Sipunculus, 438
 Size of Protozoa, 33, 545
 Skeleton, 61, 106, 193, 406, 417, 418,
 419
Slavina appendiculata, 478, 541
 Sleeping sickness, 15, 275, 276
 Gambian, 15, 275
 Rhodesian, 276
 Slides, 719
 Slime molds, 335
 Smear preparations, 722-729
 Smelt, 539
 Smith, G. M., 223, 226
 Smith, T., 14, 266
 Snails, 475, 479
 Snake, 299, 365, 473
 Snyder, 355, 358
 Snyderella, 315
 tobogae, 316
 Sodium chloride on nucleus, 35
 on Protozoa, 21-22,
 103-104
 Soil Protozoa, 9, 24
 Sokoloff, 171
 Solanum, 342
 Solenophrya, 703
 inclusa, 703, 704
 pera, 703, 704
 Sonderia, 597-598
 pharyngea, 597, 598
 vorax, 597, 598
 Sonneborn, 7, 123, 129, 130, 154, 157,
 158, 166, 169, 184, 187
 Sorodiscus, 341
 Sorphora, 338, 341
 Sorosphaera, 341
 Soule, 102
Spadella bipunctata, 371
 inflata, 371
 serratodentata, 371
 Sparrow, 279, 475, 495
 Spasmostoma, 569
 viride, 569, 570
 Spathidiella, 561
 Spathidiidae, 560-563
 Spathidioides, 561
 sulcata, 561
 Spathidiopsis, 571

- Spathidium, 560
 spathula, 62, 129, 168, 560, 561
 Specht, 102
 Spencer, 62, 168, 560
 Species, protozoan, 6, 282
 Spector, 179, 357
 Spermatozopsis, 224
 exultans, 223, 224
 Sphaenochloris, 221
 printzi, 221
 Sphaeractinomyxon, 532-533
 gigas, 532, 533
 stolci, 532, 533
 Sphaerastrum, 42, 410
 fockei, 410, 411
 Sphaerella, 218
 Sphaerellopsis, 218
 fluvialis, 218, 219
 Sphaerium, 618
 corneum, 554, 555
 Sphaerita, 38, 648, 722, 723
 Sphaerocapsa, 421
 Sphaerocapsidae, 421
 Sphaerocystis, 446
 simplex, 446
 Sphaeroeca, 270
 volvox, 269, 270
 Sphaeroidae, 422
 Sphaeromyxa, 528
 balbianii, 140, 145, 146, 527, 528
 sabrazesi, 140, 154, 162, 517-520,
 527, 528
 Sphaerophrya, 699
 magna, 700
 soliformis, 699, 701
 stentoris, 700
 Sphaerorhynchus, 451
 ophioides, 451
 Sphaerospora, 524
 polymorpha, 140, 524, 525, 538
 tinae, 524, 525
 Sphaerosporea, 521, 523-526
 Sphaerosporidae, 523, 524-525
 Sphaerzoidae, 423
 Sphaerzoum, 423
 ovodimare, 422
 Sphaleromantis, 203
 ochracea, 202, 203
 Sphenoderia, 392
 lenta, 392
 Sphenophrya, 628-629
 dosinae, 629
 Sphenophryidae, 623, 628-629
 Spheroid colony, 147
 Spindle fibers, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134
 Spionidae, 441
 Spiraulax, 261
 jolkiffei, 260, 261
 Spireme ball, 129, 160
 Spirillina, 403
 vivipara, 140, 395-397
Spirillum volutans, 101
Spirobolus spinigerus, 442
 Spirochona, 681-682
 gemnipara, 681, 682
 Spirochonidae, 681-682
 Spirocystis, 459-460
 nidula, 459, 460
 Spirodinium, 660-661
 equi, 661
 Spiroglugea, 542
 octospora, 541, 542
 Spirogonium, 224
 chlorogonioides, 223, 224
 Spirogyra, 91, 330
 Spiroloculina, 400
 limbata, 399
 Spiromonas, 286
 augusta, 286
 Spirolympha, 320
 Spirophrya, 630
 subparasitica, 631, 632
 Spirorhynchus, 640
 verrucosus, 640, 641
 Spirostomidae, 636, 641-645
 Spirostomum, 23, 52, 75, 92, 102, 104,
 117, 118, 125, 641-642
 ambiguum, 19, 22, 23, 92, 102, 171,
 642-643
 filum, 642, 643
 intermedium, 642, 643
 loxodes, 642, 643
 minus, 21, 642, 643
 teres, 21, 642, 643
 Spirotricha, 196, 551, 636-679
 Spirotrichonympha, 319
 bispira, 144
 leidy, 319
 polygyra, 134, 135, 139, 320
 pulchella, 319
 Spirotrichonymphella, 320
 pudibunda, 320
 Spirotrichosoma, 320
 capitata, 320
 Spirozoa, 596
 caudata, 594, 596
 Spirozonidae, 593, 596
 Spleen index, 26
 Splitting of chromosomes, 137-138
 Spondylomorum, 225, 228
 quaternarium, 228, 229
 Sponge, 692
Spongilla fluvialis, 692
 Spongomonas, 146, 285
 uvella, 285, 286
 Spongospira, 342
 Sporadin, 429
 Sporangium, 336
 Spore, 149, 427, 515, 535
 actinomyxidian, 531
 cnidosporidian, 515
 haplosporidian, 510
 microsporidian, 535
 mycetozoan, 337
 myxosporidian, 515-516
 telosporidian, 430, 465

- Spore membrane, 515, 535
 Sporoblast, 465
 Sporocytes, 518
 Sporogony, 162, 427, 518
 Sporokinete, 504
 Sporont, 504, 517, 536
 monosporoblastic, 517
 disporoblastic, 517
 Sporophore, 337
 Sporoplasm, 515, 516, 535
 Sporozoa, 14, 38, 193, 196, 198, 427-543
 Sporozoite, 427, 465, 484
 Sprague, 166, 444
 Sprat, 473
 Squalorophrya, 705
 macrostyla, 705, 706
 Squirrel, 277
 Stabler, 309, 363, 365
 Stains,
 Delafield, 67, 725
 Fontana, 727
 Giemsa, 725-726, 729
 Heidenhain, 725
 Mayer, 725
 Silver-impregnation, 727
 vital, 720
 Wright, 729
 Stalk, 65
 Starling, 496
 Stasziecella, 248
 Statocyst, 77
 Statolith, 77
 Staurocycilia, 423
 phacostaurus, 422
 Staurojoenina, 324
 assimilis, 139, 323, 324
 Staurojoeninidae, 324
 Staurophrya, 697
 elegans, 697-698
 Steenbok, 659
Stegomyia scutellaris, 612
 Stein, 12, 14, 241
 Steinecke, 78
 Steinella, 65, 555
 uncinata, 556
 Steinia, 668
 Steinina, 452
 rotunda, 450, 452
 Stemonitidae, 339
 Stemonitis, 339
 splendens, 338
 Stempellia, 539
 magna, 535, 536, 539, 540
 Stenophagous Protozoa, 24
 Stenophora, 442
 larvata, 442, 443
 robusta, 442, 443
 Stenophoridae, 440, 442
Stenostomum leucops, 554
 Stentor, 11, 33, 41, 50, 52, 65, 75, 118, 125, 180, 645, 700
 Stentor—continued
 amethystinus, 25, 646, 647
 coeruleus, 19, 23, 38, 52, 117, 141, 171, 645, 646
 igneus, 646
 mülleri, 645, 646
 multiformis, 647
 niger, 647
 polymorphus, 645, 646
 pyriformis, 647
 roeseli, 645-646
 striatus, 645
 Stentoridae, 636, 645-647
 Stentorin, 38
 Stephanonympha, 315
 nelumbium, 315, 316
 Stephanoon, 147, 228
 askenasi, 228, 229
 Stephanopogon, 571
 colpoda, 570, 571
 Stephanosphaera, 229
 pulvialis, 151, 152, 229
 Stephoidae, 423
 Stern, 131, 136
Stichopus californicus, 649
 Stichotricha, 672
 secunda, 671, 672
 Sticklebacks, 539
 Stictospora, 454
 provincialis, 453, 455
 Stigma, 79, 80
Stigmatogaster gracilis, 447
 Stokes, 13, 685
 Stokesia, 617
 vernalis, 616, 617
 Stokesiella, 287
 dissimilis, 287, 288
 leptostoma, 287, 288
 Stole, 91, 170, 349
Stolotermes victoriensis, 320
 Stomatophora, 435
 coronata, 435
 Stomatophoridae, 431, 434-436
 Stomatostyle, 605
 Strains of Protozoa, 176-179
 Stratman-Thomas, 486, 490, 491
 Streblomastigidae, 293, 298
 Streblomastix, 298
 strix, 130, 144, 298, 300
 Strelkow, 61, 655
 Streptomonas, 287
 cordata, 286, 287
 Strickland, 602
 Strobilidiidae, 652, 653-654
 Strobilidium, 653-654
 gyrans, 653, 654
 Strombidinopsis, 654
 gyrans, 653, 654
 Strombidium, 652
 calkinsi, 652, 653
 Strong, 638
 Strongylidium, 672
 californicum, 671, 672

- Strongylocentrotus franciscanus*, 597
 droebachiensis, 597, 604
 purpuratus, 597, 603
 Stump, 387
Sturnus v. vulgaris, 496
 Stylobryon, 146, 288
 abbotti, 288
 Stylocephalidae, 441, 450-451
 Stylocephalus, 450
 giganteus, 450
 Stylochona, 682
 coronata, 681, 682
 Stylochrysalis, 206
 parasita, 206
 Stylocometes, 699
 digitatus, 699
 Stylocystis, 453
 praecox, 450, 453
 Stylonychia, 11, 20, 21, 37, 49, 50, 51, 90, 95, 674
 mytilus, 674, 675
 notophora, 674, 675
 pustulata, 23, 97, 104, 126, 141, 157, 159, 167, 674, 675
 putrina, 674, 675
 Stylopyxis, 208
 mucicola, 207, 208
 Styloscolex, 558, 559
 Succinia, 479
 putris, 624
 Sucker, 65
 Suctoria, 12, 34, 51, 136, 145, 193, 196, 545, 695-709
 Suctorial tentacle, 51
 Sudan III and IV, 721
 Sulcoareus, 578
 pellucidulus, 578
 Sulcus, 245
 Summers, 126, 674, 679
 Supportive organellae, 61-65
 Surface tension, 106, 107
 Surra, 278
 Sutherland, 320
 Sutural plane, 515
 Swaminath, 282
 Swarms, 182, 419
 Swellengrebel, 357, 358, 359
 Swezey, 663
 Swezy, 38, 47, 66, 67, 130, 132, 144, 246
 Swingle, 96
 Sycia, 441
 inspinata, 441, 443
Syllis gracilis, 512
 Symbiosis, 25, 92-93, 293, 599, 619, 638, 645, 647, 652, 653, 670
 Symmetry, 33
 bilateral, 33, 311
 radial, 33
 universal, 33
Sympetrum rubicundulum, 451
 Synactinomyxon, 533
 tubificis, 532, 533
 Synapta, 438
 Synchaeta, 513
 Syncrypta, 205
 volvox, 205, 206
 Syncryptidae, 201, 205-206
 Syncystis, 460
 mirabilis, 460, 461
 Syndinium, 256
 turbo, 139, 255, 256
 Syngamy, 150-154, 166
 Synkarion, 151
 Synophrya, 633-634
 hypertrophica, 632, 634
 Synura, 47, 100, 205
 adamsi, 205, 206
 uwella, 205, 206
 Systemus, 448, 461
 Systole, 73, 74
 Syzygy, 430

T

- Tabanid flies, 278
 Tachyblaston, 703
 ephelotensis, 703, 704
 Tachysoma, 669
 parvistyla, 669
 Tactile organellae, 47, 50
 Taeniocystis, 454
 mira, 453, 454
 Talbott, 659
 Taliaferro, 29, 179
Talorchestia longicornis, 590
 Tanypus, 453
 Tarentola, 290
 Tate, 487
 Taylor, 50, 56, 57, 104, 113, 602, 712
 Teal, blue-winged, 501
 Teal duck, 501
 Tectin, 40
 Teichmann, 28
 Tejera, 361
 Teleuscolex, 558, 559
 Tellina, 468, 628
 balthica, 624
 Telomyxa, 542
 glugeiformis, 541, 542
 Telomyxidae, 542
 Telosporidia, 196, 427-506
 Telotroch, 683
 Temperature and Protozoa, 17-19, 117-118, 176, 358, 490
 ten Kate, 54, 61
Tenebrio molitor, 459
 Tentacles, 51, 86, 695
 Tentaculifera, 584, 695
 Teratonympha, 326
 mirabilis, 323, 326
 Teratonymphidae, 326
 Teredo, 628
 navalis, 628

- Termite Protozoa, 25, 295, 298, 300,
 302, 304, 306, 310, 311, 315, 316,
 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324,
 325, 326, 353, 441, 444, 539
 Termones, 151
Termopsis angusticollis, 298
Terrapene carolina, 365
 Test, 39-40, 143, 170, 171, 394-395
 Testacea, 40, 42, 73, 145, 329, 374-
 392, 398, 714
Testudo argentina, 365
 calcarata, 365
 graeca, 365
 Tetrablepharis, 224
 multifilis, 223, 224
 Tetractinomyxidae, 531
 Tetractinomyxon, 531
 intermedium, 531, 532
 Tetrahymena, 610
 geleii, 23, 29, 97, 178, 609, 610, 611
 vorax, 23, 94, 95, 176, 610
 Tetramastix, 222
 Tetramitidae, 293, 296-298
 Tetramitus, 296
 pyriformis, 296
 rostratus, 18, 51, 295, 296
 salinus, 296
 Tetramyxa, 341
 Tetrataxis, 400
 palaeotrochus, 399
 Tetratoxum, 663
 escavatum, 663
 parvum, 663
 unifasciculatum, 661, 663
 Teutophrys, 562
 trisula, 563, 564
 Texas fever, 9, 14, 502, 504
 Textularia, 399
 agglutinans, 399
 Textulariidae, 399
Thalassema neptuni, 449
 Thalassicolla, 419, 421
 nucleata, 140, 171, 421, 422
 Thalassicollidae, 421
 Thalassophysa, 422
 Thalassophysidae, 419, 421
 Thalassothamnidae, 422
 Thalassothamnus, 422
 Thaumatomastix, 244
 setifera, 243, 244
 Thaumatophrya, 706
 troid, 706, 707
 Thecacineta, 703
 cothurnioides, 703, 704
 gracilis, 703, 704
 Thecamoeba, 374
 Thecoplasm, 53
 Theileria, 505
 parva, 504, 505
 Thelohanelius, 530
 notatus, 27, 130, 529, 530
 Thelohania, 539
 legeri, 7, 149, 162, 539, 540
 multispora, 535
 opacita, 7, 535, 539, 540
 Theobaldia, 490, 495, 497
 annulata, 30
 Thermal waters and Protozoa, 18
Thermobia domestica, 447
 Thiamine, 96, 97
 Thiazole, 96
 Thigmophrya, 624
 macomae, 624
 Thigmophryidae, 623, 624
 Thigmotricha, 23, 551, 623-629
 Thomson, 358
 Thoracophrya, 571
 Thorakomonas, 220
 sabulosa, 219, 220
 Thuricola, 691
 folliculata, 21, 690, 691
 Thuricolopsis, 691
 kellicottiana, 690, 691
 Thylacidium, 638
 truncatum, 637, 638
 Thylacomonas, 272
 compressa, 272
 Tiarella, 628
 Tiarina, 566
 fusus, 566
 Ticks, 281, 482, 503, 504, 505
 Tillina, 75, 602
 helia, 612
 magna, 21, 602
Tiliqua scincoides, 365
Tinca tinca, 525
 Tintinnidae, 41, 256, 652, 654
 Tintinnidium, 654
 fluviatile, 653, 654
 semiciliatum, 653, 654
 Tintinnopsis, 56, 654
 cylindrata, 653, 654
 illinoisensis, 653, 654
 Tipula, 267, 299, 365
 Toads, 301, 521, 527, 528, 547, 548,
 549, 550, 645, 692
 Tokophrya, 701-702
 cyclosum, 145, 702-703
 infusum, 702
 Tomite, 630
 Tomont, 630
 Tönniges, 64
 Tontonia, 653
 gracillima, 653
 Torodinium, 253-254
 robustum, 252, 254
 Torpedo, 526
 Torquenympha, 322
 octopus, 321, 322
 Torrey, 96
 Toxicyst, 64
 Toxin, 28, 64, 508
 Toxoglugea, 542
 vibrio, 541, 542

- Toxoplasma*, 488, 505
 gondii, 505-506
Toxoplasmosis, 506
Tracheliidae, 580, 582-584
Trachelius, 582
 ovum, 582, 583
Trachelocerca, 52, 574-575
 phoenicopterus, 575
 subviridis, 575
Trachelomonas, 46, 47, 80, 118, 237
 hispida, 79, 237, 238
 piscatoris, 237, 238
 urceolata, 237, 238
 vermiculosa, 237, 238
 verrucosa, 237, 238
Trachelophyllum, 574
 clavatum, 573, 574
Tractella, 47
Tramea lacerta, 451
Transverse fibrils, 59-61
 flagellum, 245-246
Traumatophthora, 635
 punctata, 634, 635
Treillard, 30
Tremalith, 208
Trembley, 11
Trentonia, 243
 flagellata, 243
Trepomonas, 314
 agilis, 20, 21, 312, 314
 rotans, 46, 312, 314
Triactinomyxidae, 531-533
Triactinomyxon, 531
 dubium, 532
 ignotum, 531, 532
 legeri, 532
 magnum, 532
 mrazeki, 532
Triadinium, 661
 caudatum, 661
 galea, 661
 minimum, 661
Triatoma, 277
 dimidiata, 462
 gerstaeckeri, 277
 heidemanni, 277
 longipes, 277
 megista, 277
 protracta, 277
 rubida, 277
Tricaudalia, 663
Tricercomitus, 311
 termopsidis, 311
Tricercomonas, 297
 intestinalis, 298
Trichia, 340
 affinis, 339
Trichiidae, 340
Trichites, 62, 64
Trichlorididae, 217, 222
Trichloris, 222
 paradoxa, 221, 222
Trichocera annulata, 370
 hiemalis, 370
 regelationis, 370
Trichocyst, 11, 59, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 635
Trichodina, 141, 692, 693
 pediculus, 692, 693
 urinicola, 692, 693
Trichodubosegia, 539-540
 epeori, 540
Trichomastix, 299
Trichomonadidae, 294, 308-311
Trichomonas, 13, 14, 47, 61, 62, 308
 buccalis, 309
 caviae, 308
 elongata, 139, 309, 715
 hominis, 308-309, 715
 linearis, 310
 macacovaginae, 309-310
 tenax, 309
 termilis, 310
 vaginalis, 309, 311, 715
Trichonympha, 324
 agilis, 325
 campanula, 132, 139, 325
 grandis, 139, 326
Trichonymphidae, 324-326
Trichopelma, 595
 sphagnetrum, 594, 595
Trichopelmidae, 593, 595
Trichophrya, 696
 columbiae, 696, 697
 epistylidis, 696, 697
 salparum, 696, 697
 sinuosa, 696
 micropteri, 696
Trichorhynchus, 448
 pulcher, 448, 449
Trichospira, 596
 inversa, 594, 596
Trichospiridae, 593, 596
Trichostomata, 551, 593-607
Trichotaxis, 674
 stagnatilis, 673, 674
Trichuris, 368
Trigonomonas, 314
 compressa, 312, 315
Triloculina, 400
 trigonula, 399
Trimastigamoeba, 344
 philippinensis, 344, 345
Trimastigidae, 293, 294-295
Trimastix, 294
 marina, 294
Trimyema, 196, 595-596
 compressum, 21, 594, 596
Trimyemidae, 593, 595-596
Trinema, 391
 enchelys, 24, 391, 392
Tripalmaria, 663
 dogieli, 662, 663
Triplagia, 423
 primordialis, 423

- Triplumaria, 663
 hamertoni, 663
Tripneustes esculentus, 605, 621
 Tripylea, 420, 424-425
 Triticum, 342
 Triton, 301, 685
 taeniatus, 301
 Tritrichomonas, 310
 augusta, 139, 311
 batrachorum, 139, 311
 brevicollis, 310
 fecalis, 30, 311
 foetus, 98, 310-311
 Triturus, 692
 viridescens, 279
 Trochammina, 400
 inflata, 399
 Trochamminidae, 400
 Trochilia, 586
 palustris, 586, 587
 Trochilioides, 586
 recta, 21, 586, 587
Trochocochlea articulata, 457
 mutabilis, 457
 turbinata, 457
 Trochodinium, 254
 prismaticum, 252, 254
 Troglodytella, 56, 663
 abrassarti, 662, 663
 var. *acuminata*, 663
 gorillae, 663
 Trophochromatin, 37
 Trophocyte, 254
Trophonia plumosa, 468
 Trophont, 630
 Trophozoite, 147
 Tropidoscypus, 242
 octocostatus, 240, 242
 Trout, 313
Trutta fario, 313
 Trypanodinium, 256
 ovicola, 255, 256
 Trypanoplasma, 284
 Trypanosoma, 8, 14, 29, 47, 100, 118,
 179, 273, 280, 716
 americanum, 278
 brucei, 14, 180, 277-278
 cruzi, 26, 98, 276-277, 716
 danilewskyi, 280
 diemyctyli, 279, 280
 duttoni, 279
 equinum, 278
 equiperdum, 278
 evansi, 278
 gambiense, 15, 18, 26, 273-275
 giganteum, 280
 granulosum, 280
 inopinatum, 279, 280
 lewisi, 14, 28, 102, 179, 274, 278, 279
 melophagium, 278
 nabiasi, 279
 noctuae, 279
 paddae, 279
 Trypanosoma—continued
 percae, 280
 peromysci, 279
 rajae, 280
 remaki, 280
 rhodesiense, 275-276
 rotatorium, 47, 279, 280
 theileri, 278
 triatomae, 276
 Trypanosomatidae, 93, 268, 272-284
 Trypanosomiasis, 273, 275, 276, 277
Trutta fario, 313
 Tschenzoff, 136
 Tsetse flies, 14, 274, 278
 Tubifex, 438, 541
 inflatus, 557
 tubifex, 531, 532, 533
 Tubulina, 340
 fragiformis, 339
 Tubulinidae, 340
 Tunicates, 254, 256, 696
 Turbellaria, 556, 557, 617
Turdus, m. migratorius, 496
 Turkey, 266, 472
 Turner, 57, 125
 Turtles, 365, 480, 705, 706
 Tuscarora, 425
 murrayi, 425
 Tuscaroridae, 425
 Tussetia, 222
 Twist disease, 521, 529
 Tyzzer, 266, 361, 472

U

- Uca pugilator*, 442
 pugnax, 442
 Ulivina, 442
 rhynchoboli, 442
 Ultraviolet rays, 117
 Undulating membranes, 47, 49, 51
 Unicapsula, 524
 muscularis, 164, 520, 523, 524
 Unicapsulidae, 523, 524
 Uradiophora, 444
 cuenoti, 444
 Urceolaria, 692
 mitra, 692, 693
 paradoxa, 692, 693
 Urceolariidae, 692-693
 Urceolus, 47, 239
 cyclostomus, 46, 239, 240
 sabulosus, 239, 240
 Urea, 103, 104
Urechis caupo, 442
 Uric acid, 104
 Urinympha, 324
 talea, 139, 323, 324
 Urnula, 700
 epistylidis, 700, 701
 Urocentrum, 615
 turbo, 127, 615, 616
 Uroglena, 47, 147, 206-207
 vulvox, 207

- Uroglenopsis, 100, 147, 207
 americana, 207–208
 europaea, 208
 Uroleptopsis, 672
 citrina, 671, 672
 Uroleptus, 72, 671
 dispar, 671
 halseyi, 126, 141, 166, 671–672, 675
 limnetis, 671
 longicaudatus, 671
 mobilis, 159, 167, 180
 Uronema, 616
 marina, 21, 616, 617
 pluricaudatum, 616, 617
 Uronychia, 171, 677
 setigera, 677, 678
 Urophagus, 315
 rostratus, 46, 312, 315
 Urosoma, 669
 caudata, 669
 Urospora, 438
 chiridotae, 439, 438
 Urosporidae, 431, 438–440
 Urosporidium, 512
 fuliginosum, 512
 Urostyla, 37, 672
 caudata, 672, 673
 grandis, 113, 129, 671, 672
 trichogaster, 671, 672
 Urotricha, 196, 569
 agilis, 569, 570
 farcata, 569, 570
 labiata, 571
 parvula, 569
 Urozoa, 615
 bütschlii, 615, 616
 Usinger, 277
 Utricaceae, 281
 Uyemura, 18, 176
- V
- Vacuolaria, 243
 virescens, 139, 243
 Vaginicola, 690
 annulata, 690
 leptostoma, 690
 Vaginicolidae, 690–691
 Vahlkampfia, 30, 350
 limax, 18, 42, 349, 350
 patuxent, 349, 350
 Valentin, 14
 Valvulina, 400
 triangularis, 399, 400
 Valvulinidae, 399
 Vampyrella, 91, 330
 lateritia, 330–331
 Vampyrellidae, 329, 330–334
 Vampyrophrya, 635
 pelagica, 633, 634, 635
 Van Wagtendonk, 712
 Varanus salvator, 365
 varius, 365
 Variation in Protozoa, 94, 176–188
- Vasicola, 563
 ciliata, 563, 564
 grandis, 563
 Vasudevan, 509
 Vaucheria, 329
 Vectors, 275, 277, 284
 Vegetative form or stage, 147
 Ventral cirri, 49, 50, 51
 Ventral motor strand, 54
 Venus fasciata, 628
 Verneuilina, 399
 propinqua, 399
 Verneulinidae, 399
 Veronica, 341
 Vertebralina, 400
 striata, 399
 Verworn, 33, 44, 85, 111, 117, 118, 170, 171
 Vesicular nucleus, 34–35
 Viability of cysts, 147, 246, 357–361, 603, 639
 Vipera aspis, 475
 Visscher, 56, 64
 Vital stains, 720
 Vitamins and Protozoa, 96–98
 Vitamin B₁, 97, 98
 B₆, 97, 98
 Vitrina, 479
 Viviparus japonicus, 555
 malleatus, 555
 Vlk, 45, 46, 47
 Volkonsky, 350
 Volutin, 101
 Volvocidae, 217, 225–230, 330
 Volvox, 11, 33, 100, 147, 226–228, 330
 aureus, 150, 226, 227
 globator, 226, 227
 perglobator, 228
 spermatozophora, 226
 tertius, 226
 weismannia, 226–228
 Vorticella, 11, 20, 52, 70, 90, 99, 687
 campanula, 687–688
 convallaria, 688
 microstoma, 688
 monilata, 39, 688, 689
 nebulifera, 161
 picta, 688, 689
 Vorticellidae, 683, 687–690
- W
- Wagnerella, 412–413
 borealis, 413
 Wailes, 259, 261, 696, 699
 Wardia, 522
 ovinoqua, 523, 524
 Wardiidae, 521, 522–523
 Weatherby, 104
 Weismann, 13, 161, 166
 Weissenberg, 299
 Wenrich, 266, 308, 309, 368, 563, 567
 Wenyon, 297, 308, 357, 358, 359, 361, 430

Wenyonella, 473
africana, 471, 473
 Werbitzki, 180
 Wermel, 38, 99, 370
 Whelk, 468
 Whip-flagellum, 45, 46
 Wichterman, 159, 163, 645
 Wickware, 501
 Wilson, H. V., 350
 Wolfson, 19
 Wood, 297
 Woodcock, 67, 358
 Wood rat, 277
 Woodroach, 303, 313, 320, 322, 323,
 324, 326, 648, 649
 Woodruff, 11, 62, 96, 128, 157, 158,
 168, 560
 Woodruffia, 603
metabolica, 603
rostrata, 602, 603
 Wormy halibut, 520, 524
 Wrisberg, 11

X

Xanthophyll, 78
Xenotis megalotis, 526
Xiphocaridina compressa, 635
 Xylophagous Protozoa, 293

Y

Yarborough, 15, 718
 Yatren, 359
 Yeast, 97
 Yellow-throat, Maryland, 497
 Yocom, 22, 56, 57
 Yonge, 93
 Yorke, 358, 359, 719
 Young, 329

Z

Zannichellia, 329, 341
 Zelleriella, 8, 34, 353, 550
antilliensis, 141, 550
hirsuta, 550
intermedia, 137, 138, 181, 550
scaphiopodos, 548, 550
 Zonomyxa, 383
violacea, 383
 Zooamylon, 99, 430
 Zoochlorellae, 25, 93, 599, 619, 638,
 645, 647, 652, 653, 670
 Zoomastigina, 20, 73, 195, 263-326
 Zoopurpurin, 38
Zootermopsis angusticollis, 300, 311,
 325, 441, 444
laticeps, 311, 325
nevadensis, 300, 311,
 325, 441, 444
 Zoothamnium, 33, 53, 580, 689
adamsi, 689
arbuscula, 689
 Zootrophic nutrition, 84-92
 Zooxanthellae, 25, 93, 214, 215, 418
 Zostera, 329
marina, 329
 Zschokkella, 528
hildae, 527, 528
 Zuelzer, 38, 103, 117
 Zuluta, 54
 Zumstein, 94, 194
 Zweibaum, 72
 Zygozystidae, 431, 434
 Zygozystis, 434
wenrichi, 434, 435
 Zygosoma, 441
globosum, 140, 441-442, 443
 Zygotc, 56, 151, 152, 165, 182
 Zyrphaea *crispata*, 629

This Book

(3rd Edition)

PROTOZOLOGY

By RICHARD R. KUDO, D.Sc.

was set, printed and bound by The Collegiate Press of Menasha, Wisconsin. The type face is Monotype 8A and 25J set 10 point on 12 point. The type page is 25 x 44 picas. The page size is 5½ x 8¾. The text paper is 45-lb. White Lexington E.F. The binding is DuPont Fabrikoid; Quality 700; Color 2055; Grain 0-7 (Roller); Plia. Med.; Finish S.B. The jacket is Hammermill Cover, Sepia, Antique Finish.

With THOMAS BOOKS careful attention is given to all details of manufacturing and design. It is the Publisher's desire to present books that are satisfactory as to their physical qualities and artistic possibilities and appropriate for their particular use. THOMAS BOOKS will be true to those laws of quality that assure a good name and good will.